XENOPHON'S ANABASIS

BOOKS I-IV

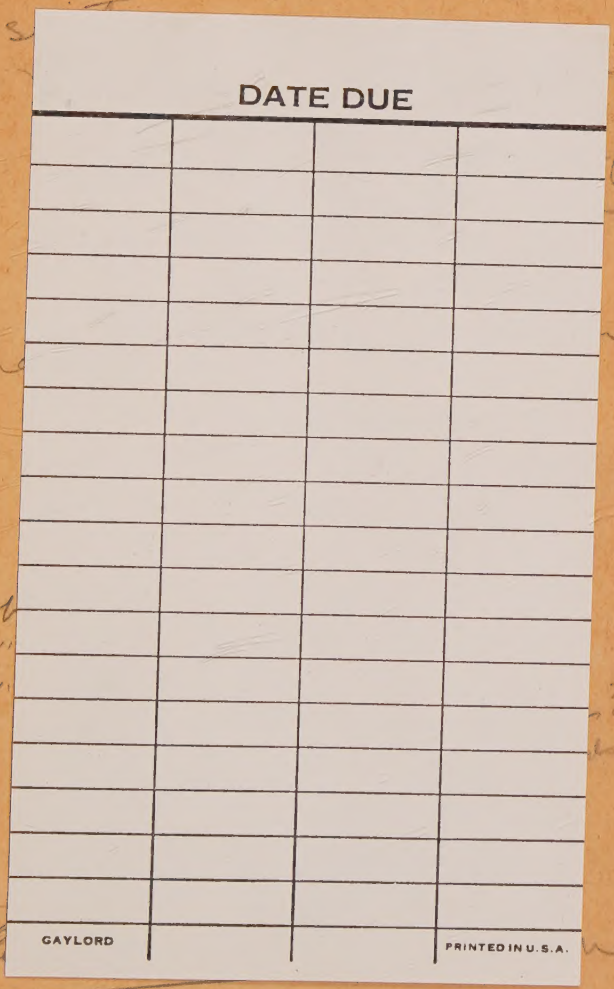
SMITH

Xenophon's Anabasis /
480 S644x
Smith, C.F.
Williams Baptist Coll Library
106248

4287

480 4287
S644x Smith, C F
Xenophon's anabasis.

Southern Baptist College
FELIX GOODSON
LIBRARY
Walnut Ridge, Ark.


DATE DUE
GAYLORD
PRINTED IN U.S.A.

2 classes μι verbs (ημι) στα

1. ημι, ωμι stem in α α ε ἵστημι
2. νῦμι . (ωμι) δίδωμι (δο)

Present system suffers
Imperfect, present
2nd aorist στας for in 2nd perfect.
Other tenses like ed verbs we've had,
μι verbs in present reduplicate with, δ letter σ (ι)
(ΠΙΣΤημι)
μι stem vowel lengthened in sing only
S
ΣΙ α to η
ΤΟΝ ε " "
ΤΟΝ ο " ω
ΜΕΝ
ΤΕ
ΑΣΙ

ΤΙΘημι
Dε

3rd plu. ΤΙΘέΑΣΙ
" " ἱΣΤΑΣΙ
" " ΔΙΔόΑΣΙ

νῦμι verbs
δεικ/νυμι no reduplication but adds νυ)
if ends in consonant if ends in vowel
adds double ν.
differ from all the verbs only in pres & imperf.

Imper.

ἵΣΤην

ἘΤΙΘην
ΕΙΣ
ΕΙ

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT, HARVARD UNIVERSITY
BERNADOTTE PERRIN, YALE UNIVERSITY
ANDREW FLEMING WEST, PRINCETON UNIVERSITY

1. Socrates — his influence on contemporary life + thought; ~~original influence~~ value or permanence of his influence on Xenophon + Plato. life + death

~~His~~ both wrote about him — the death + were associated with him in life

2. Historical situation at Athens during period in which Xenophon was active as a soldier + man of letters. (Government, etc) Party + form of govt. Why was Xenophon not living at Athens?

3. Comparison of Herodotus, Xenophon + Thucydides as to:
   (a) subject matter
   (b) style
   (c) influence on later historians
   (d) briefly life + characters of the 3

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS

THE FIRST FOUR BOOKS

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND VOCABULARY

BY

CHARLES FORSTER SMITH

PROFESSOR OF GREEK AND CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN

WITH THE COÖPERATION OF

CAMPBELL BONNER

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NASHVILLE (PEABODY COLLEGE FOR TEACHERS)

AND

FREDERICK STILLMAN MORRISON

TEACHER OF GREEK IN THE HARTFORD PUBLIC HIGH SCHOOL

4787

LIBRARY
SOUTHERN BAPTIST COLLEGE
WALNUT RIDGE, ARK.

NEW YORK

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

1905

MISSOURI BAPTIST COLLEGE LIBRARY
POPLAR BLUFF, MISSOURI

COPYRIGHT, 1905, BY
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

Stetson Univ.
9
7-18-49 W

480
S644x

PREFACE

THE text of this edition of the first four books of the *Anabasis* is in general the Teubner text (1899), edited by Gemoll, but it is much more conservative, following the reading of the manuscripts in very many cases where Gemoll has admitted emendations. The work is independent, not being based upon any other edition, though the most important school editions of the *Anabasis*—German, American, and English—have been consulted at every point. My ideal of a commentary on the *Anabasis* has been for twenty-five years that of Rehdantz, and after such a model I should edit the whole *Anabasis*, if I dared to do so and could. It is easy to see, then, that I am more indebted to the Rehdantz-Carnuth edition in matters of grammatical construction and interpretation, as well as for illustrative citations, than to any other source. Next, I make acknowledgment for help to the editions of Goodwin and White, Vollbrecht, Krüger, Dindorf, Marshall (Book i), and Edwards (Books ii–iv). Several of the cuts to illustrate tactical manœuvres and dispositions have been taken from Goodwin and White or from Vollbrecht, indebtedness for which is hereby gratefully acknowledged. Copious references are made, especially in the notes on Book i, to all the leading American school Greek grammars.

Mr. Frederick Stillman Morrison, teacher of Greek in the Hartford Public High School and editor of *Greek Lessons for Beginners* in this series, who went over the whole of the manuscript of the Notes, to see that they were adapted to the school-boy, offered many valuable suggestions and criticisms. I have had the help also of the sound scholarship and good judgment of Professor Campbell Bonner, of the University of Nashville, at many points in the preparation of the Notes and in the reading of the whole of the galley-proofs. The proofs have had the benefit also of the watchful eyes of Mr. Morrison and of Assistant Professor Laird, of the University of Wisconsin. The book has had, further, the oversight of Professor Wright, of Harvard University, one of the editors-in-chief of this series.

The Vocabulary is the separate and independent work of Professor Bonner, who has explained its aim in a Prefatory Note.

CHARLES FORSTER SMITH.

MADISON, WISCONSIN,
September 1, 1904.

CONTENTS

PAGE

INTRODUCTION . . . . . ix–xxiv

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS:

Book I 1

Book II 46

Book III 77

Book IV 110

NOTES 153

PREFATORY NOTE TO VOCABULARY 301

VOCABULARY 303

INTRODUCTION TO THE ANABASIS

PERSIA AND THE PERSIANS

§ 1. The Persian empire was founded, about the middle of the sixth century B. C., by Cyrus the Great. He was followed (omitting several—including the false Smerdis—who held power for only a few weeks or months) by Cambȳses, Darīus, Xerxes, Darīus II. The empire extended from Ephesus to the river Indus, covering perhaps 2,000,000 square miles, with a population probably of 80,000,000. It was a heterogeneous conglomeration of peoples, all liable to military service and, except the Persians, subject to tribute, but unrestricted otherwise; many, like the Cilicians, even remained under their native princes, and others, like the Pisidians and Carduchians, were never completely subdued.

§ 2. The Persian government was despotic, all, even his own brother, being regarded as slaves of the king. The court, which resided in the winter at Susa or Babylon, in the summer at Ecbatana, was composed of numberless officials. The sons of the nobles were brought up at court, thus serving as hostages while getting special training for the royal service, the satraps and other higher officials being chosen from their number. The throne was surrounded with pomp and ceremony. It was forbidden on pain of death to approach the king unannounced, and whoever was permitted to speak with him must do obeisance (*προσκυνεῖν*, *kiss the earth*) before him. Even his meals the king partook of alone, separated by a curtain from his "table companions."

§ 3. It was Darīus I (521–485 B. C.), of the second branch

of the royal Achaemenidae and slayer of the false Smerdis, who thoroughly organized the empire. After proclaiming himself king and maintaining a constant struggle against revolts for six years, he devoted himself to the task of ordering affairs throughout his dominions. He divided the empire into twenty[1] or twenty-three[2] satrapies, or provinces, each under a satrap or viceroy, who with his lieutenants (ὕπαρχοι) had complete charge of the civil administration and to whom the provincial troops were amenable. The garrisons and other royal troops in the provinces, on the other hand, were under officers (φρούραρχοι and χιλίαρχοι) appointed by and directly responsible to the king, and to these the satraps turned over the tribute which they raised. There was a royal secretary whose duty probably consisted mainly in keeping the king informed of all that went on in the province, thus acting as a check on the other two officers, as they were indeed mutual checks. Real authority thus remained with the king alone. From time to time also special officers were sent from court to inspect the satrapies.

§ 4. The measures established by Darīus I for the internal administration proved especially successful. The tribute (δασμός) in money and kind, based upon the productiveness of the land, was impartially imposed (only the people of Persis, the cradle of the race, being exempt), and the annual revenue reached, according to some estimates, the sum of $175,000,000. A uniform coinage of gold and silver was attempted for the empire, with, however, only partial success. Roads were made or improved throughout the empire for the advantage of trade and to facilitate the movement of troops; and in particular the Royal Road extending from Susa (*via* Nineveh, the Cilician Gates, Tyana, Ancyra) to Sardis, was the first great postal route of which we have knowledge. On it were one hundred and eleven stations, with mounted couriers ready day and night to transmit royal dispatches.

[1] According to Hdt. iii. 89.

[2] According to the Behistun inscription.

§ 5. The commander-in-chief of the army was the king. Under him were four chief generals or field-marshals (στρατηγός, in Persian κάρανος), each in command of a fourth of the whole—in the time of Cyrus the younger 300,000 men—made up of smaller ethnic divisions which remained intact in the larger corps. Of the infantry, the tactical divisions seem to have been companies of one hundred (τάξις), thousands (χιλιοστύς), ten thousands (μύριοι); of the cavalry squadrons (ἴλη) of seventy.

Instead of the helmet, cuirass, and greaves of the Greeks, the Persian foot-soldier wore cap, jacket, and trousers of leather. He carried a wicker shield (γέρρον), and used for offense a great bow (τόξον) and quiver (φαρέτρα), a spear (παλτόν), a short sword (ἀκινάκης), and sometimes a battle-axe (σάγαρις). The sling (σφενδόνη) also was in extensive use among the Persian light-armed troops. Some peoples, too, had arms peculiar to themselves, e. g., the Egyptians at Cunaxa carried wooden shields reaching to their feet, the Mossynoeci wicker shields shaped like an ivy-leaf; the Chalybians of Pontus linen cuirasses, helmets, greaves, and spears fifteen cubits long.

The cavalryman wore helmet, white cuirass (λευκοθώραξ), thigh-pieces (παραμηρίδια), and carried a sword and two spears, and his horse was protected by a frontlet (προμετωπίδιον) and breast-plate (προστερνίδιον). The cavalry were posted on the wings, and scythe-bearing chariots (δρεπανηφόρα) were placed at intervals in front of the line.

THE EXPEDITION OF CYRUS

§ 6. It was in the year 401 B. C. that Cyrus, younger son of Darīus II, king of Persia, made the attempt described in the *Anabasis* to wrest the crown from his elder brother, king Artaxerxes. He was at that time twenty-three years of age and was satrap or governor of Lydia, Phrygia, and Cappadocia, and commander-in-chief of all the troops of Western Asia Minor, to which positions he had been appointed six years before, when only seventeen years of age.

He superseded Tissaphernes, whose jurisdiction was now limited to Caria, and soon adopted a radical change of policy toward the warring Greek states. It had been, namely, the policy of Tissaphernes to wear out the Greeks by supporting alternately both Athens and Sparta in their struggle for supremacy in the Peloponnesian War, then entering upon its twenty-fifth year. Cyrus adopted the Spartan cause, doubtless under the approval and authority of King Darīus, who seems to have determined with the help of Sparta to re-establish Persian authority over the Ionic cities of Asia Minor which had been under Athenian protection, and furnished large sums of money for the maintenance of Spartan fleets and armies. Cyrus's change of policy was natural in view of the fact that Athens was the traditional enemy of Persia, since the original attack upon Sardis (500 B. C.), and not only had been the leading spirit of Greek defense during the Persian invasions, but also had had the hegemony in Greece in the half-century between the Persian invasions and the Peloponnesian War. He was also doubtless much influenced in his attitude by the shrewd and able Spartan admiral, Lysander. At the instance of the latter, Cyrus had raised the pay of the Peloponnesian fleet, and, when he was summoned to his father's sick-bed, he turned over to the Spartan commander all the money he could spare and assigned to him the tribute due himself from the cities. Persian gold and influence thus unstintingly lent to the Spartan cause was largely instrumental in turning the tide of war definitely and finally in that direction, and Cyrus's relations with the Greeks at this time made it easier for him after a while, when he had determined on an expedition against his brother, to collect a large Greek mercenary force.

§ 7. Meanwhile (405 B. C.) Cyrus had been summoned by his father, who was on his death-bed, the occasion being that he had caused to be put to death two cousins of his who had appeared before him without thrusting their hands into their sleeves, as was the custom in the king's presence.

This was an assumption of a royal prerogative. Cyrus accordingly went up taking Tissaphernes on the pretext of friendship, but really because he distrusted him and was afraid to leave him behind. Cyrus seems to have received pardon for his offence. He probably hoped and expected at this time through the support of his mother, Parysatis, to be appointed successor to the kingship, to the exclusion of his elder brother, for Artaxerxes had been born while Darīus was still a private citizen, but Cyrus, who was his mother's favorite, after his father's accession to the throne. So queen Atossa had secured the kingship for her son Xerxes from Darīus I to the exclusion of an elder brother born out of the purple. Darīus II was a man of weak character and greatly influenced by his bold and intriguing wife (and step-sister), Parysatis, at whose instigation he had murdered his brother and attained the throne. Artaxerxes, the elder son, was in character much like his father, but Cyrus had his mother's ambition and energy, was of a kingly if somewhat arrogant spirit, and bore, too, the name of the great founder of the empire. But the plan of Cyrus and the queen-mother did not succeed, and Arsaces received the crown, taking on his accession the name Artaxerxes (II; 405–360 B. C.).

§ 8. Tissaphernes having made accusation to the new king that Cyrus was plotting to assassinate him in the temple on the occasion of his investiture with the royal authority, the king had the prince arrested with the intention of putting him to death. But his mother begged him off and secured his return to his province and his dignities. The charge of Tissaphernes was a slander, according to both Xenophon and Ctesias, the body-physician of the king. At any rate, after this danger and dishonor, the spirit of revenge, as well as of ambition, rankled in the young prince's heart, and he secretly plotted to overthrow his brother and secure the kingship. Parysatis seems to have worked in his interest at the capital, seeking to create a party in his favor while he himself sought to win over all who came to him from the king. But only

battle he knew could bring him the prize, and so he devoted himself forthwith to the secret raising of an adequate military force.

XENOPHON'S CONNECTION WITH THE EXPEDITION

Date and Purpose of the Story

§ 9. Xenophon's estimate of the character of Cyrus the younger, is contained in the *Anabasis* i. 9. Characterizations of the three leading spirits of the Greek force before the calamity which brought Xenophon, the Athenian, to the front, namely Clearchus, the Lacedaemonian, Proxenus, the Boeotian, and Menon, the Thessalian, are found in the *Anabasis* ii. 6. Xenophon himself had been induced to join the expedition by his friend Proxenus, who had promised to introduce him to Cyrus, with the assurance that the latter would prove better to him than his fatherland. Xenophon, being a disciple of Socrates, asked the latter's advice, who, suspecting that to join an expedition in the interest of an ally and partisan of Sparta might have the appearance of treason to Athens, advised him to consult the Delphic oracle. But Xenophon, as if Socrates had approved the undertaking, asked the god, not whether he should go, but what god he should offer sacrifices to, so as to make the expedition most successfully.[1] So Xenophon had joined the expedition, not knowing it was against the king. Up to the time of the loss of the four generals through the treachery of Tissaphernes, as described at the end of Book ii., he had not been directly connected with it either as general or soldier. At that time he was elected Proxenus' successor, being probably not over thirty years of age, though some statements of later historians would imply that he was more than forty. From that time he was the soul and the saviour of the Greek force, and the simple narration of events from this time on becomes an indirect characterization of the author and chief actor of the story.

[1] iii. 1. 4–7.

§ 10. In the third book of the *Hellenica*, when Xenophon reaches the date of Cyrus's expedition, he says briefly: "Now in what manner Cyrus collected his army and with it went up against his brother, and how the battle took place, and how he was slain, and how thereafter the Greeks made their way to the coast, has been related by Themistogenes, the Syracusan." Except this statement of Xenophon's we have no knowledge of Themistogenes, and there is no other mention of the work ascribed to him. Many even of the ancients believed that Themistogenes was merely a pseudonym for Xenophon himself. Themistogenes may have written an account of the expedition that Xenophon used in the compilation of his own narrative, which as being better caused the earlier account to be neglected and forgotten, as some have conjectured; certainly the *Anabasis* is Xenophon's own composition, as all the internal evidence unmistakably proves.

§ 11. Did the *Anabasis* of Xenophon have any object beyond giving a clear and interesting account of the most important episode in Xenophon's experience? There are signs in the later books that he had been criticised for his conduct of the expedition, and we know that for some reason he was for many years under sentence of banishment from his native city. The *Anabasis* was probably intended, then, primarily to justify his conduct and defend his reputation, and so would naturally appear no long time after the expedition. But there are passages also, especially in the first book (notably 7. 3, 4), which gain point if understood as indicating to his countrymen that the Persian empire was really rotten at the core and readily accessible to an invasion from a strong Greek force. Such passages seem more significant when it is remembered that in 396 B. C. Agesilāus, king of Sparta, who was at that time in close communication with Xenophon, began war against the Persians with an initiatory sacrifice at Aulis, as if intimating by his imitation of Agamemnon that he would do for Persia what Agamem-

non had done for Troy. Personal and political considerations alike point, then, to a publication of the *Anabasis* at a date not much later than 396. With this view we must regard as notes appended to a later edition of his work passages like that in Book v. 3, where Xenophon speaks of his sons taking part in hunting expeditions at Scillus, for it is clear from Book vii. 6. 34 that Xenophon had no sons at the time of the expedition.

§ 12. "Xenophon could not see all that was meant in the future by the expedition in which he shared as soldier and historian; yet the premonition of it is everywhere cheerfully present; and even in the later books, when little has to be told but of trial and loss, there is still apparent the serene confidence of a nation that was already preparing itself for another Anabasis, which should be no mere brilliant and ineffectual episode, but the sure foundation of a new order of things. It is in this way that the Anabasis of Cyrus, as recorded by Xenophon, was the prologue and preparation for the mighty conquests of Alexander" (Marshall).

THE GREEK ARMY OF CYRUS

§ 13. The Greek contingent of the army with which Cyrus attempted to wrest the throne from his brother, Artaxerxes, was collected mainly from the Peloponnese, as was natural in view of the previous relations of Cyrus with the Spartans. When Cyrus reminded Sparta of his opportune espousal of her cause and asked help in return, the government not only directed the Spartan admiral to place the fleet at Cyrus's disposal and allowed Cheirisophus to go with an auxiliary force, but permitted extensive enlistments of troops by Cyrus's agents in various provinces. The Peloponnesian War, in which nearly all Greeks had been soldiers, had recently ended, and many men were out of employment; revolutions, too, which had occurred in various cities during or after the war, had cast many adrift. Such old soldiers

and exiles had become unfitted for steady work at home, and the spirit of adventure was strong in these, as in young men generally, especially when the service was to be with a young, high-spirited prince, known to be at once generous and trustworthy, as Cyrus was. The expedition, too, was given out to be not against the king, but against the Pisidians, and so would probably be short, full of adventure, and not especially dangerous. The leaders might expect to return home richly rewarded by Cyrus, and Persian pay, with the prospect of rich booty, was enough to attract the private soldier. So the levies were secretly made in various parts of Greece by Greek leaders in the employ of Cyrus, as described in the *Anabasis* i. 1. 6–11. The largest proportion of the troops came from those natural hives of mercenaries, Arcadia and Achaia.

§ 14. The army was organized as follows: (1) *Hoplites* (ὁπλῖται) or heavy-armed soldiers. Their defensive arms were (*a*) *helmet* (κράνος), (*b*) *cuirass* (θώραξ), (*c*) *greaves* (κνημῖδες), (*d*) *shield* (ἀσπίς), round or oval. Besides the bronze coat-of-mail, leathern cuirasses are also mentioned (iii. 3. 20, iv. 1. 18). The weapons of offense were (*a*) *spear* (δόρυ), (*b*) *sword* (ξίφος) or *sabre* (μάχαιρα), straight *dagger* (ἐγχειρίδιον), curved *dagger* (ξυήλη). (2) *Gymnetes* (γυμνῆτες, γυμνοί, ψιλοί) or light-armed troops, consisting of *javelin-throwers* (ἀκοντισταί), *bowmen* (τοξόται), and *slingers* (σφενδονῆται). A common collective designation of light-armed troops was also peltasts (πελτασταί), though strictly these were intermediate between hoplites and light-armed troops proper; they carried the small *light shield* (πέλτη) from which they derived their name, a *javelin*, and a *sword*. (3) *Cavalry*. This was not a part of the Greek force at first, but a small troop was organized in the course of the retreat. The horse was protected by a *frontlet* (προμετωπίδιον) and *breastplate* (προστερνίδιον); the horseman wore a *helmet*, *cuirass*, *thigh-pieces* (παραμηρίδια), and *greaves*, and carried a spear and straight two-edged sword, but no shield. No saddle was used. The

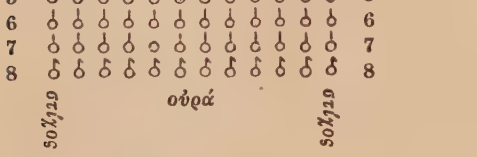
cavalry were arranged in squadrons (εἴλαι or ἴλαι), numbering, according to later tacticians, 64 men, probably with a front of 16 and a depth of 4, if we may consider a single mention as typical.

§ 15. Divisions and Officers: 1. *Hoplites.*—There was no fixed number for a division and there were as many divisions as generals. For each general (στρατηγός) there was a sub-general (ὑποστρατηγός). Each division was divided into a number of companies (λόχος). The standard, but not invariable, number of a λόχος was 96 hoplites and 4 officers. The λόχος was subdivided into two pentecostyes (πεντηκοστύες) and these again into two enomoties (ἐνωμοτίαι). The commanders of the larger divisions were called πεντηκοντῆρες (first lieutenants), of the smaller, ἐνωμόταρχοι (second lieutenants). It is probable that there were only two ἐνωμόταρχοι to each λόχος, the other two enomoties being commanded by the πεντηκοντῆρες. Over the whole was a captain (λοχαγός), whose sub-captain (ὑπολοχαγός) was doubtless one of the πεντηκοντῆρες. Two λόχοι constituted a τάξις, whose commander was called ταξίαρχος. The τάξις, however, sometimes consisted of a larger number of λόχοι, and sometimes the name was used as synonymous with λόχος. 2. *Light-armed Troops.*—The divisions here were of 100 men each; they were called τάξεις, and their leader seems to have been named sometimes ταξίαρχος, sometimes λοχαγός.

§ 16. The tactical unit of the Greek hoplite force seems to have been the enomoty. Ranged in line of battle this has a front of 3 and a depth of 8. The four enomoties constituting the company, arranged side by side, had thus a front of 12 and a depth of 8—i. e., they were arranged in 8 ranks and 12 files. According to later military writers, when in line of battle the files were three feet apart, the ranks two. When in march, both ranks and files were six feet apart.

The first man in the file had the post of honor, as he was the first to meet the enemy, and was designated as ἡγούμενος

(also λοχαγός). The twelve file-leaders thus constituting the front rank (*μέτωπον, στόμα*[1]) consisted of the youngest, nimblest, and strongest men. The last men in each file, called *οὐραγοί*, also held very important positions, since this rear rank (*ἡ οὐρά*), in case of attack from behind, faced about

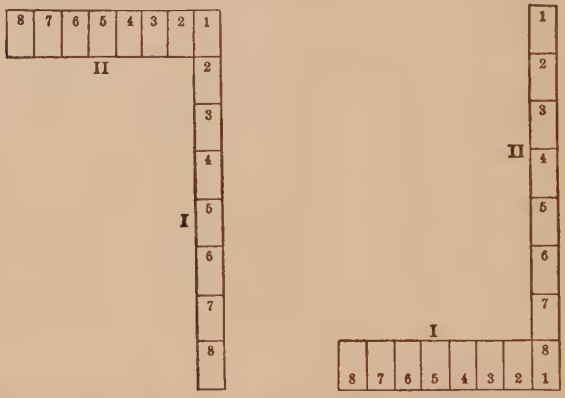


and became file-leaders. This rank consisted of the oldest men, distinguished for strength, courage, and prudence. The officers, who were all except the generals on foot, doubtless had their positions in front of their respective commands. The phalanx was divided into right wing (*τὸ δεξιόν*), centre (*τὸ μέσον*), and left wing (*τὸ εὐωνυμόν*), the right being the post of danger and honor, since the right side was exposed, the shield being carried on the left arm.

§ 17. The order of march was in column (*κατὰ κέρας* or *ἐπὶ κέρως*), *i. e.*, with narrow front and great depth, the separate divisions (enomoty, company, or taxis) following one another, in single, double, triple file, etc., as the case might be (*ἐφ' ἑνός, εἰς δύο*), and with corresponding depth. The change from the order of march to line of battle may be seen from the accompanying figure. Suppose that the companies are marching three abreast, with the four enomoties

[1] These designations (*κέρας, στόμα, μέτωπον, οὐρά, πλευρά*) are figurative, borrowed from fighting bulls or lions.

one behind the other [$(3 \times 8 = 24) \times 4 = 96$]. The first enomoty halts and the others march in order to the left (*παρ' ἀσπίδα*) and take their positions, the second beside the first, the third beside the second, and so on.



The change from line of battle to march order would take place in reverse order, viz., the first enomoty, say on the right, marched directly forward, the second fell in behind it, and the others in like sequence.

§ 18. The baggage train of the Greek army was necessarily large. The tents, tent furniture, personal property of the soldiers, cooking utensils, provisions, etc., required an immense train of wagons and pack animals (*ὑποζύγια*), and those who had charge of these formed a large body of non-combatants. There were besides shield-bearers (*ὑπασπισταί*)—mostly slaves—and other attendants of the soldiers (*ὑπηρέται*), surgeons, priests, seers, heralds, trumpeters, women, and children. Wounded and sick men, too, as well as captives, tended constantly to swell the number of non-combatants, so that the whole crowd of camp-followers (*ὄχλος*) was at least as large as the fighting force.

This large body of non-combatants not only doubled the necessary amount of provisions to be carried for the army,

but required for its protection a considerable body of troops. It interfered, too, with rapid marching, and necessitated, in a mountainous region, the choice of a route practicable for wagons and beasts of burden. Hence soon after the Greeks began their retreat, they burned their wagons, tents, and superfluous baggage, and in the rough Carduchian mountains they found it necessary to free all their captives and leave behind everything but the bare necessaries.

§ 19. A day's march is called in the *Anabasis* σταθμός, i. e., the distance between two stations, and was measured in parasangs (about 30 stadia). The usual day's march was 6 or 7 parasangs, or about twenty miles, but the distance traveled varied, of course, according to circumstances. But Xenophon's parasang was probably not an exact and invariable distance; rather, as Grote suggested, a length of time, so many parasangs standing for about so many hours of marching.

§ 20. On breaking camp in the morning the first thing was the usual sacrifice to the gods; then, at the first signal, the tents were struck and the baggage packed up (*συσκευάζειν*); at the second signal, the baggage was put upon the wagons and beasts of burden; at the third, the men fell in and the start was made. In what order the generals with their respective divisions led on the march to Cunaxa is unknown. On the retreat, Cheirisophus led the van and Xenophon the rear; but there was a daily change in the company at the head of the column, and the post of captain of the company leading for the day was one of especial honor and responsibility.

§ 21. Two meals a day were taken. On the march, between ten and eleven o'clock, halt was made for breakfast (*καταλῦσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον*); then the march was pursued till four or five o'clock in the afternoon, when a second halt was made and the army encamped for the night (*στρατοπεδεύεσθαι*). The different divisions encamped separately, even in a general camp each having its own place.

The beasts of burden were unyoked, the baggage unpacked, and the tents, which were made of hides stretched on a wooden framework, were pitched. The arms were stacked at a special place in front of the camp, called often simply τὰ ὅπλα. Then fodder was gathered for the beasts of burden, fires were kindled, and dinner (τὸ δεῖπνον) prepared. After dinner, about sunset, sentinels and outposts were stationed, the password was communicated, and orders for the night, if any, were given out. Then at a signal (ἀναπαυστήριον) the soldiers turned in. The night was divided into three (possibly four) watches, the first lasting till midnight, the second till daybreak, the third from dawn till the start was made. Watch-fires were kept burning all night, and in case of alarm the call to arms was made, probably with a blast upon a horn.

In camp, announcements were made to the soldiers by heralds, or, to keep the enemy from understanding, by means of trumpet signals. In case of especial secrecy, the word was passed along from mouth to mouth.

§ 22. *Provisions.*—A supply of provisions to be used in case of necessity was carried in wagons or on beasts of burden. Other supplies (σῖτος, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια) were offered for sale by hucksters in a special market-place in the camp under the oversight of commissaries, and on rest days these were replenished by purchase from the natives. This was the course followed so long as the Greeks had money, and, even on the retreat, only when their money was exhausted did they resort to plundering, going out in the evenings after halt was made in bands for this purpose (καθ' ἁρπαγήν, ἐπὶ λείαν, ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐξιέναι). It may be taken for granted that there was much secret plundering on the part of the soldiers, while sometimes it is expressly stated that they were allowed to plunder certain villages.

Booty, it may be further stated, not necessary for maintenance, such as prisoners taken, was considered common property (τὸ κοινόν). It was used for common expenses dur-

ing the march, and what was left at the end of the expedition was sold, that the proceeds might be distributed among the soldiers, a tenth being set aside for gifts for the gods. In the case of the Ten Thousand this happened when they reached Trapezus on the Black Sea.

§ 23. In a body of troops enlisted, as was the Greek force of Cyrus, in greater and smaller numbers from so many quarters, and with gain as their main motive, it was hardly to be expected that discipline would be as rigorous as in the regular Spartan army, or as in modern armies. The Greek soldier on the expedition of Cyrus was treated rather as a citizen, with a voice in affairs, and one is constantly reminded, in the doings of the soldiers, of the proceedings of the popular assembly at Athens. If a general is to be chosen to fill a vacancy, the captains nominate and a meeting of the soldiers elects. The very terms used by Xenophon in describing army meetings are those of the Athenian assembly: e. g., to *call a meeting* is ἐκκλησίαν συνάγειν or ποιεῖν; to *hold a meeting* is ἐκκλησιάζειν; to *deliberate*, βουλεύεσθαι; to *come forward* (to speak), παρελθεῖν; to *speak before*, λέγειν ἐν; to *give an opinion*, γνώμην ἀποφαίνεσθαι or ἀποδείκνυσθαι; to *propose*, εἰπεῖν; to *put to the vote*, ἐπιψηφίζειν; to *vote*, ψηφίζειν; to *raise the hand*, ἀνατείνειν (αἴρειν) τὴν χεῖρα; *it was resolved*, ἔδοξε ταῦτα. On the retreat, there was a military court, composed probably of generals and captains, before which any one might have to undergo trial (δίκην ὑποσχεῖν), and before which even a general might be summoned (εἰς δίκας καταστῆσαι). In their assemblies, the soldiers sometimes made conditions for further service or demanded more pay. If their leaders attempted to force them against their will, there was likely to be an uproar and a threat to decamp with bag and baggage. If a general struck a soldier of another division than his own, there might be serious trouble, as, for example, when Clearchus struck a soldier of Menon. At least one instance is given where a large body of troops left one general and went over to another (i. 3. 7).

§ 24. The democratic constitution of the army manifested itself also in the rates of pay. The captain received pay only double, the general quadruple, that of the private soldier. The last received a daric (about $3.60) per month, with the promise later of a daric and a half. From that, however, the soldier had to equip and support himself. His arms he usually brought with him, and his provisions he bought either from what the natives offered for sale or from the market in camp; for merchants or hucksters followed the army, offering for sale bread, wine, etc., ready to buy, too, from the soldiers the booty they had taken. Pay commenced with enlistment, but ended usually with the attainment of the object of the expedition, the soldiers getting home as best they could. It is mentioned as especially generous on the part of Cyrus, that he promised his Greek mercenaries to continue their pay till they got back to Ionia.

ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ
ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ

Α

CYRUS SUMMONED TO HIS FATHER'S DEATHBED. ARTAXERXES KING AND CYRUS' LIFE IN DANGER.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται παῖδες δύο, 1
πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος·
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθένει Δαρεῖος καὶ ὑπώπτευε τελευτὴν τοῦ
βίου, ἐβούλετο τὼ παῖδε ἀμφοτέρω παρεῖναι. ὁ μὲν 2
οὖν πρεσβύτερος παρὼν ἐτύγχανε· Κῦρον δὲ μετα-
πέμπεται ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἧς αὐτὸν σατράπην ἐποίησε·
καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε πάντων ὅσοι εἰς
Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται. ἀναβαίνει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος
λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔχων
ὁπλίτας ἀνέβη τριακοσίους, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν
Παρράσιον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτελεύτησε Δαρεῖος καὶ κατέστη 3
εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν Ἀρταξέρξης, Τισσαφέρνης διαβάλ-
λει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ.
ὃ δὲ πείθεται καὶ λαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν· ἡ δὲ
μήτηρ ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν
ἀρχήν.

CYRUS IN REVENGE PLOTS HIS BROTHER'S OVERTHROW.

Ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς, βου- 4
λεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλά,

ἣν δύνηται, βασιλεύσει ἀντ' ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν 1
δὴ ἡ μήτηρ ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον
ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην· ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο 5
τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν πάντας οὕτω διατιθεὶς
ἀπεπέμπετο ὥστε αὐτῷ μᾶλλον φίλους εἶναι ἢ βασιλεῖ.
καὶ τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δὲ βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο ὡς πολε-
μεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἴησαν καὶ εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν αὐτῷ. τὴν 6
δὲ Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν ἤθροιζεν ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο
ἐπικρυπτόμενος, ὅπως ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον λάβοι βα-
σιλέα.

CYRUS, UNDER COVER OF WAR WITH TISSAPHERNES, COLLECTS GREEK MERCENARIES. HIS MOTHER CONNIVES AND THE KING IS HOODWINKED.

Ὧδε οὖν ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν. ὁπόσας εἶχε φυ-
λακὰς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι παρήγγειλε τοῖς φρουράρχοις
ἑκάστοις λαμβάνειν ἄνδρας Πελοποννησίους ὅτι πλεί-
στους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος Τισσαφέρ-
νους ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις
Τισσαφέρνους τὸ ἀρχαῖον ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι, τότε
δὲ ἀφειστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου· ἐν 7
Μιλήτῳ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισθόμενος τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα
βουλευομένους, ἀποστῆναι πρὸς Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν
ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ' ἐξέβαλεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν
τοὺς φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολιόρκει Μί-
λητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο
κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας. καὶ αὖτη αὖ ἄλλη πρό-
φασις ἦν αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα. πρὸς δὲ 8
βασιλέα πέμπων ἠξίου ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ δοθῆναι οἱ
ταύτας τὰς πόλεις μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν αὐ-
τῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα· ὥστε βα-

σιλεὺς τὴν μὲν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλὴν οὐκ ἠσθάνετο, I
Τισσαφέρνει δὲ ἐνόμιζε πολεμοῦντα αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ
στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἧχθετο αὐτῶν πολε-
μούντων. καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε τοὺς γιγνομέ-
νους δασμοὺς βασιλεῖ ἐκ τῶν πόλεων ὧν Τισσαφέρ-
νους ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.

CLEARCHUS IN THE CHERSONESE.

Ἄλλο δὲ στράτευμα αὐτῷ συνελέγετο ἐν Χερρο- 9
νήσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου τόνδε τὸν τρόπον.
Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς ἦν· τούτῳ συγγενό-
μενος ὁ Κῦρος ἠγάσθη τε αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ
μυρίους δαρεικούς. ὃ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον στράτευμα
συνέλεξεν ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων καὶ ἐπολέμει ἐκ
Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος τοῖς Θρᾳξὶ τοῖς ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσ-
ποντον οἰκοῦσι καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ὥστε καὶ
χρήματα συνεβάλλοντο αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν στρα-
τιωτῶν αἱ Ἑλλησποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι. τοῦτο δ'
αὖ οὕτω τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα.

ARISTIPPUS IN THESSALY.

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς ξένος ὢν ἐτύγχανεν 10
αὐτῷ, καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν
ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον καὶ αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους
ξένους καὶ τριῶν μηνῶν μισθόν, ὡς οὕτως περιγενό-
μενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν
αὐτῷ εἰς τετρακισχιλίους καὶ ἓξ μηνῶν μισθόν, καὶ
δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντι-
στασιώτας πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσηται. οὕτω δὲ αὖ
τὸ ἐν Θετταλίᾳ ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ τρεφόμενον στρά-
τευμα.

Πρόξενον δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ξένον ὄντα ἐκέλευσε λα- I
βόντα ἄνδρας ὅτι πλείστους παραγενέσθαι, ὡς εἰς 11
Πισίδας βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι, ὡς πράγματα παρ-
εχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ.

Σοφαίνετον δὲ τὸν Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν
Ἀχαιόν, ξένους ὄντας καὶ τούτους, ἐκέλευσεν ἄνδρας
λαβόντας ἐλθεῖν ὅτι πλείστους, ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσα-
φέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι τοῖς Μιλησίων. καὶ ἐποίουν
οὕτως οὗτοι.

PRETENSE OF ATTACKING THE PISIDIANS. MUSTER OF THE TROOPS AT SARDIS.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἤδη πορεύεσθαι αὐτῷ ἄνω, τὴν μὲν II
πρόφασιν ἐποιεῖτο ὡς Πισίδας βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν
παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει ὡς ἐπὶ τού-
τους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. ἐνταῦθα
καὶ παραγγέλλει τῷ τε Κλεάρχῳ λαβόντι ἥκειν ὅσον
ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα, καὶ τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ συναλλαγέντι
πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὃ εἶχε στρά-
τευμα· καὶ Ξενίᾳ τῷ Ἀρκάδι, ὃς αὐτῷ προειστήκει τοῦ
ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ξενικοῦ, ἥκειν παραγγέλλει λαβόντα
τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν ὁπόσοι ἱκανοὶ ἦσαν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις
φυλάττειν. ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μίλητον πολιορκοῦν- 2
τας, καὶ τοὺς φυγάδας ἐκέλευσε σὺν αὐτῷ στρατεύ-
εσθαι, ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν ἐφ'
ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσασθαι πρὶν αὐτοὺς
καταγάγοι οἴκαδε. οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπείθοντο· ἐπίστευον
γὰρ αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρ-
δεις. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων λαβὼν παρ- 3
εγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις ὁπλίτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους, Πρό-
ξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὁπλίτας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους

καὶ χιλίους, γυμνῆτας δὲ πεντακοσίους, Σοφαίνετος δὲ II
ὁ Στυμφάλιος ὁπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους, Σωκράτης δὲ ὁ
Ἀχαιὸς ὁπλίτας ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους, Πασίων δὲ ὁ
Μεγαρεὺς τριακοσίους μὲν ὁπλίτας, τριακοσίους δὲ
πελταστὰς ἔχων παρεγένετο· ἦν δὲ καὶ οὗτος καὶ ὁ
Σωκράτης τῶν ἀμφὶ Μίλητον στρατευομένων. οὗτοι
μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.

TISSAPHERNES WARNS THE KING.

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ μείζονα 4
ἡγησάμενος εἶναι ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας τὴν παρασκευήν,
πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα ᾗ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἱππέας ἔχων
ὡς πεντακοσίους. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε 5
Τισσαφέρνους τὸν Κύρου στόλον, ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.

DEPARTURE FROM SARDIS. MARCH THROUGH LYDIA AND PHRYGIA. ROYAL PALACE AT CELAENAE. MYTH OF MARSYAS. REVIEW AND ENUMERATION OF TROOPS.

Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὡρμᾶτο ἀπὸ Σάρδεων
καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρα-
σάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν.
τούτου τὸ εὖρος δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἐπῆν ἑπτὰ
ἐζευγμένη πλοίοις. τοῦτον διαβὰς ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυ- 6
γίας σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας ὀκτὼ εἰς Κολοσσάς,
πόλιν οἰκουμένην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην. ἐν-
ταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας ἑπτά· καὶ ἦκε Μένων Θετταλὸς
ὁπλίτας ἔχων χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς πεντακοσίους,
Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξε- 7
λαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν εἰς Κε-
λαινάς, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ
εὐδαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα Κύρῳ βασίλεια ἦν καὶ παράδει-
σος μέγας ἀγρίων θηρίων πλήρης, ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν

ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε γυμνάσαι βούλοιτο ἑαυτόν τε καὶ 11
τοὺς ἵππους. διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου ῥεῖ ὁ
Μαίανδρος ποταμός· αἱ δὲ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν
βασιλείων· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως. ἔστι 8
δὲ καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως βασίλεια ἐν Κελαιναῖς ἐρυμ-
νὰ ἐπὶ ταῖς πηγαῖς τοῦ Μαρσύου ποταμοῦ ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκρο-
πόλει· ῥεῖ δὲ καὶ οὗτος διὰ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἐμβάλλει
εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τοῦ δὲ Μαρσύου τὸ εὖρός ἐστιν
εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Ἀπόλλων
ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ σοφίας,
καὶ τὸ δέρμα κρεμάσαι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί.
διὰ δὲ τοῦτο ὁ ποταμὸς καλεῖται Μαρσύας. ἐνταῦθα 9
Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ ἀπ-
εχώρει, λέγεται οἰκοδομῆσαι ταῦτά τε τὰ βασίλεια καὶ
τὴν Κελαινῶν ἀκρόπολιν. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε Κῦρος ἡμέ-
ρας τριάκοντα· καὶ ἦκε Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος
φυγὰς ἔχων ὁπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς Θρᾷκας
ὀκτακοσίους καὶ τοξότας Κρῆτας διακοσίους. ἅμα δὲ
καὶ Σῶσις παρῆν ὁ Συρακόσιος ἔχων ὁπλίτας τρια-
κοσίους, καὶ Σοφαίνετος Ἀρκάδας ἔχων ὁπλίτας χι-
λίους. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν
Ἑλλήνων ἐποίησεν ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ
σύμπαντες ὁπλῖται μὲν μύριοι χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ
ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους.

CELEBRATION OF THE LYCAEA. VISIT OF EPYAXA. ARREARS PAID TO THE TROOPS.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα 10
εἰς Πέλτας, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας
τρεῖς· ἐν αἷς Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε καὶ
ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε· τὰ δὲ ἆθλα ἦσαν στλεγγίδες χρυσαῖ·

ἐθεώρει δὲ τὸν ἀγῶνα καὶ Κῦρος. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει II
σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δώδεκα εἰς Κεράμων ἀγο-
ράν, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, ἐσχάτην πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρᾳ.
ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας τριά- 11
κοντα εἰς Καΰστρου πεδίον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐν-
ταῦθ' ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε· καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις
ὠφείλετο μισθὸς πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ πολλάκις
ἰόντες ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπῄτουν. ὃ δὲ ἐλπίδας λέγων
διῆγε καὶ δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος· οὐ γὰρ ἦν πρὸς τοῦ
Κύρου τρόπου ἔχοντα μὴ ἀποδιδόναι. ἐνταῦθα ἀφι- 12
κνεῖται Ἐπύαξα ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλίκων βα-
σιλέως παρὰ Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο Κύρῳ δοῦναι χρή-
ματα πολλά. τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ τότε ἀπέδωκε Κῦρος
μισθὸν τεττάρων μηνῶν. εἶχε δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα φυλακὴν
περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπενδίους· ἐλέγετο δὲ καὶ
συγγενέσθαι Κῦρον τῇ Κιλίσσῃ.

MIDAS AND THE SATYR. GENERAL REVIEW AT TYRIAËUM. MOCK CHARGE OF THE GREEKS. FRIGHT OF EPYAXA AND THE BARBARIANS.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας 13
δέκα εἰς Θύμβριον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἦν
παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη τοῦ Φρυ-
γῶν βασιλέως, ἐφ' ᾗ λέγεται Μίδας τὸν Σάτυρον
θηρεῦσαι οἴνῳ κεράσας αὐτήν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει 14
σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα εἰς Τυριάειον, πόλιν
οἰκουμένην. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας τρεῖς. καὶ λέ-
γεται δεηθῆναι ἡ Κίλισσα Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στρά-
τευμα αὐτῇ· βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδεῖξαι ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖ-
ται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων.
ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς εἰς μάχην 15

οὕτω ταχθῆναι καὶ στῆναι, συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς II
ἑαυτοῦ. ἐτάχθησαν οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὲν
δεξιὸν Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον Κλέαρ-
χος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου, τὸ δὲ μέσον οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί·
ἐθεώρει οὖν ὁ Κῦρος πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· 16
οἳ δὲ παρήλαυνον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ κατὰ
τάξεις· εἶτα δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἅρμα-
τος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἁρμαμάξης. εἶχον δὲ πάν-
τες κράνη χαλκᾶ καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικοῦς καὶ κνημῖδας
καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκκεκαλυμμένας. ἐπειδὴ δὲ πάντας 17
παρήλασε, στήσας τὸ ἅρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος μέσης,
πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα καὶ
ἐπιχωρῆσαι ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα προ-
εῖπον τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλπιγξε, προβα-
λόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπῆσαν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου θᾶττον προϊόν-
των σὺν κραυγῇ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου δρόμος ἐγένετο
τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ βαρβάρων 18
φόβος πολύς, καὶ ἥ τε Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐπὶ τῆς ἁρμα-
μάξης καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς καταλιπόντες τὰ ὤνια
ἔφυγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλωτι ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς
ἦλθον. ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ
τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐθαύμασε. Κῦρος δὲ
ἥσθη τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φό-
βον ἰδών.

EPYAXA RETURNS HOME.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας 19
εἴκοσιν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, τῆς Φρυγίας πόλιν ἐσχάτην. ἐν-
ταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς
Λυκαονίας σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα.

ταύτην τὴν χώραν ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν II
ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος τὴν Κίλισσαν 20
εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν ἀποπέμπει τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν· καὶ
συνέπεμψεν αὐτῇ τοὺς στρατιώτας οὓς Μένων εἶχε καὶ
αὐτόν. Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καπ-
παδοκίας σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ
πέντε πρὸς Δάνα, πόλιν οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐ-
δαίμονα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος
ἀπέκτεινεν ἄνδρα Πέρσην Μεγαφέρνην, φοινικιστὴν
βασίλειον, καὶ ἕτερόν τινα τῶν ὑπάρχων δυνάστην,
αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.

CYRUS PASSES THE CILICIAN GATES AND REACHES TARSUS.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· ἡ 21
δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτὸς ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἀμή-
χανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι, εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν. ἐλέ-
γετο δὲ καὶ Συέννεσις εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων φυλάττων
τὴν εἰσβολήν· διὸ ἔμειναν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ. τῇ
δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἦκεν ἄγγελος λέγων ὅτι λελοιπὼς εἴη
Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο ὅτι τὸ Μένωνος στρά-
τευμα ἤδη ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἦν εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι
τριήρεις ἥκουε περιπλεούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν
Ταμὼν ἔχοντα τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων καὶ αὐτοῦ Κύρου.
Κῦρος δ' οὖν ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, 22
καὶ εἶδε τὰς σκηνὰς οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. ἐντεῦ-
θεν δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς πεδίον μέγα καὶ καλόν, ἐπίρ-
ρυτον, καὶ δένδρων παντοδαπῶν σύμπλεων καὶ ἀμπέ-
λων· πολὺ δὲ καὶ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην καὶ κέγχρον
καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθὰς φέρει. ὄρος δ' αὐτὸ περιεῖχεν
ὀχυρὸν καὶ ὑψηλὸν πάντῃ ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.

καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τούτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε σταθμοὺς II
τέτταρας παρασάγγας πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν εἰς Ταρσούς, 23
τῆς Κιλικίας πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, οὗ ἦν τὰ
Συεννέσιος βασίλεια τοῦ Κιλίκων βασιλέως· διὰ μέ-
σου δὲ τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμὸς Κύδνος ὄνομα, εὖρος
δύο πλέθρων. ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἐνοικοῦν- 24
τες μετὰ Συεννέσιος εἰς χωρίον ὀχυρὸν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη
πλὴν οἱ τὰ καπηλεῖα ἔχοντες· ἔμειναν δὲ καὶ οἱ παρὰ
τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς.

TWO COMPANIES OF MENON'S FORCE LOST IN CROSSING THE MOUNTAINS. FRIENDLY MEETING OF CYRUS AND SYENNESIS.

Ἐπύαξα δὲ ἡ Συεννέσιος γυνὴ προτέρα Κύρου πέντε 25
ἡμέραις εἰς Ταρσοὺς ἀφίκετο· ἐν δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τῶν
ὀρῶν τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον δύο λόχοι τοῦ Μένωνος στρα-
τεύματος ἀπώλοντο· οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἁρπάζοντάς τι κα-
τακοπῆναι ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων, οἱ δὲ ὑπολειφθέντας καὶ
οὐ δυναμένους εὑρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς
ὁδοὺς εἶτα πλανωμένους ἀπολέσθαι· ἦσαν δ' οὖν οὗτοι
ἑκατὸν ὁπλῖται. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, τήν τε πόλιν 26
τοὺς Ταρσοὺς διήρπασαν, διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συ-
στρατιωτῶν ὀργιζόμενοι, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ.
Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν, μετεπέμπετο
τὸν Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὃ δ' οὔτε πρότερον οὐδενί
πω κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν ἔφη οὔτε τότε
Κύρῳ ἰέναι ἤθελε, πρὶν ἡ γυνὴ αὐτὸν ἔπεισε καὶ πί-
στεις ἔλαβε. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, 27
Συέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλὰ εἰς τὴν
στρατιάν, Κῦρος δὲ ἐκείνῳ δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται παρὰ
βασιλεῖ τίμια, ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον καὶ στρεπτὸν χρυ-
σοῦν καὶ ψέλια καὶ ἀκινάκην χρυσοῦν καὶ στολὴν

Περσικήν, καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι διαρπάζεσθαι· τὰ δὲ II
ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα, ἤν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν, ἀπολαμ-
βάνειν.

THE GREEKS REFUSE TO ADVANCE. CLEARCHUS IN DANGER OF BEING STONED TO DEATH.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ὁ Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ἡμέρας III
εἴκοσιν· οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι τοῦ
πρόσω· ὑπώπτευον γὰρ ἤδη ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἰέναι· μισθω-
θῆναι δὲ οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν. πρῶτος δὲ Κλέ-
αρχος τοὺς αὑτοῦ στρατιώτας ἐβιάζετο ἰέναι· οἱ δ'
αὐτόν τε ἔβαλλον καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου, ἐπεὶ
ἄρξαιντο προϊέναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ τότε μὲν μικρὸν 2
ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, ὕστερον δ' ἐπεὶ ἔγνω
ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν
τῶν αὑτοῦ στρατιωτῶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐδάκρυε πο-
λὺν χρόνον ἑστώς· οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώ-
πων. εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

SPEECH OF CLEARCHUS. HE WILL STAND BY HIS COUNTRYMEN.

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλεπῶς 3
φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασιν. ἐμοὶ γὰρ ξένος Κῦρος
ἐγένετο καί με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος τά τε ἄλλα
ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς· οὓς ἐγὼ λαβὼν
οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ καθηδυπάθησα,
ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς ἐδαπάνων. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς 4
Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἐτιμωρού-
μην μεθ' ὑμῶν, ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου αὐτοὺς ἐξελαύνων
βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας Ἕλληνας
τὴν γῆν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπο-
ρευόμην, ἵνα εἴ τι δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνθ' ὧν εὖ
ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς οὐ βούλεσθε συμ- 5

πορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δή μοι ἢ ὑμᾶς προδόντα τῇ Κύ- III
ρου φιλίᾳ χρῆσθαι ἢ πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ψευσάμενον μεθ' ὑμῶν εἶναι. εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω οὐκ οἶδα, αἱρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν ὅ,τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. καὶ οὔποτε ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ Ἕλληνας ἀγαγὼν εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν τῶν βαρβάρων φιλίαν εἱλόμην, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμοὶ 6
οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ σὺν ὑμῖν ἕψομαι καὶ ὅ,τι ἂν δέῃ πείσομαι. νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐμοὶ εἶναι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ συμμάχους, καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν οἶμαι εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ὦ, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὢν οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς οἶμαι εἶναι οὔτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι. ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν ἰόντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε.

CLEARCHUS OPENLY REFUSES TO GO TO CYRUS, BUT SECRETLY REASSURES HIM.

Ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οἵ τε αὐτοῦ ἐκείνου 7
καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες ὅτι οὐ φαίη παρὰ βασιλέα πορεύεσθαι ἐπῄνεσαν· παρὰ δε Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος πλείους ἢ δισχίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κῦρος δὲ τούτοις ἀπορῶν τε καὶ λυπούμενος μετεπέμ- 8
πετο τὸν Κλέαρχον· ὃ δὲ ἰέναι μὲν οὐκ ἤθελε, λάθρᾳ δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ δέον. μεταπέμπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν· αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι.

SECOND ASSEMBLY AND SPEECH OF CLEARCHUS.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τούς θ' ἑαυτοῦ στρα- 9
τιώτας καὶ τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων

τὸν βουλόμενον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὰ μὲν δὴ Κύρου δῆλον ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς ὥσπερ τὰ ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἡμεῖς ἐκείνου ἔτι στρατιῶται, ἐπεί γε οὐ συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι ἡμῖν μισθοδότης. ὅτι μέντοι ἀδικεῖσθαι νομίζει ὑφ' ἡμῶν οἶδα· ὥστε καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν, τὸ μὲν μέγιστον αἰσχυνόμενος ὅτι συνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ πάντα ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν, ἔπειτα καὶ δεδιὼς μὴ λαβών με δίκην ἐπιθῇ ὧν νομίζει ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἠδικῆσθαι. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐχ ὥρα εἶναι ἡμῖν καθεύδειν οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ βουλεύεσθαι ὅ,τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων. καὶ ἕως γε μένομεν αὐτοῦ σκεπτέον μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ὅπως ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα ἄπιμεν, καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἕξομεν· ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ πολλοῦ μὲν ἄξιος ᾧ ἂν φίλος ᾖ, χαλεπώτατος δ' ἐχθρὸς ᾧ ἂν πολέμιος ᾖ, ἔχει δὲ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἱππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν ἣν πάντες ὁμοίως ὁρῶμέν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω δοκοῦμέν μοι αὐτοῦ καθῆσθαι. ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ,τι τις γιγνώσκει ἄριστον εἶναι. ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. III 10 11 12

PROPOSALS AND COUNTER PROPOSALS OF AGENTS OF CLEARCHUS AGGRAVATE THE SITUATION.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἀνίσταντο οἳ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον, οἳ δὲ καὶ ὑπ' ἐκείνου ἐγκέλευστοι, ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία ἄνευ τῆς Κύρου γνώμης καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι. εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε προσ- 13 14 ποιούμενος σπεύδειν ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα στρατηγοὺς μὲν ἑλέσθαι ἄλλους ὡς τάχιστα,

εἰ μὴ βούλεται Κλέαρχος ἀπάγειν· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' III
ἀγοράζεσθαι — ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ ἦν ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ στρατεύματι — καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· ἐλθόντας δὲ Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα, ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον ὅστις διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας ἀπάξει. ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ ἡγεμόνα διδῷ, συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, πέμψαι δὲ καὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως μὴ φθάσωσι μήτε Κῦρος μήτε οἱ Κίλικες καταλαβόντες, ὧν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες. οὗτος μὲν τοιαῦτα εἶπε.

Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος εἶπε τοσοῦτον· Ὡς μὲν 15
στρατηγήσοντα ἐμὲ ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω· πολλὰ γὰρ ἐνορῶ δι' ἃ ἐμοὶ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον· ὡς δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε πείσομαι ἥ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων. μετὰ 16
τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη, ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτεῖν κελεύοντος, ὥσπερ πάλιν τὸν στόλον Κύρου ποιουμένου, ἐπιδεικνὺς δὲ ὡς εὔηθες εἴη ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα τὴν πρᾶξιν. εἰ δὲ καὶ τῷ ἡγεμόνι πιστεύσομεν ὃν ἂν Κῦρος διδῷ, τί κωλύει καὶ τὰ ἄκρα ἡμῖν κελεύειν Κῦρον προκαταλαβεῖν; ἐγὼ γὰρ οἰκοίην μὲν ἂν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα ἐμβαί- 17
νειν ἃ ἡμῖν δοίη, μὴ ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς τριήρεσι καταδύσῃ, φοβοίμην δ' ἂν τῷ ἡγεμόνι ὃν δοίη ἕπεσθαι, μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀγάγῃ ὅθεν οὐκ ἔσται ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών· ὃ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν. ἀλλ' ἐγώ φημι ταῦτα μὲν φλυαρίας εἶναι· δοκεῖ δέ μοι ἄνδρας ἐλθόντας πρὸς Κῦρον οἵτινες ἐπι- 18
τήδειοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκεῖνον τί βούλεται ἡμῖν

χρῆσθαι· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ πρᾶξις ᾖ παραπλησία οἵαπερ III
καὶ πρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο τοῖς ξένοις, ἕπεσθαι καὶ ἡμᾶς καὶ
μὴ κακίους εἶναι τῶν πρόσθεν τούτῳ συναναβάντων·
ἐὰν δὲ μείζων ἡ πρᾶξις τῆς πρόσθεν φαίνηται καὶ ἐπι- 19
πονωτέρα καὶ ἐπικινδυνοτέρα, ἀξιοῦν ἢ πείσαντα ἡμᾶς
ἄγειν ἢ πεισθέντα πρὸς φιλίαν ἀφιέναι· οὕτω γὰρ καὶ
ἑπόμενοι ἂν φίλοι αὐτῷ καὶ πρόθυμοι ἑποίμεθα καὶ
ἀπιόντες ἀσφαλῶς ἂν ἀπίοιμεν· ὅ,τι δ' ἂν πρὸς ταῦτα
λέγῃ ἀπαγγεῖλαι δεῦρο· ἡμᾶς δ' ἀκούσαντας πρὸς
ταῦτα βουλεύεσθαι.

EMBASSY TO CYRUS, WHO EVADES THE TRUTH, BUT PROMISES MORE PAY.

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα, καὶ ἄνδρας ἑλόμενοι σὺν Κλεάρχῳ 20
πέμπουσιν οἳ ἠρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα τῇ στρατιᾷ.
ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμαν ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα
ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ εἶναι, ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθ-
μούς· πρὸς τοῦτον οὖν ἔφη βούλεσθαι ἐλθεῖν· κἂν μὲν
ᾖ ἐκεῖ, τὴν δίκην ἔφη χρῄζειν ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτῷ, ἢν δε
φύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσόμεθα. ἀκού- 21
σαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ αἱρετοὶ ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώ-
ταις· τοῖς δὲ ὑποψία μὲν ἦν ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς βασιλέα,
ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἕπεσθαι. προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν· ὁ
δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται ἡμιόλιον πᾶσι δώσειν οὗ πρό-
τερον ἔφερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρεικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς
τῷ στρατιώτῃ· ὅτι δὲ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἄγοι οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα
ἤκουσεν οὐδεὶς ἐν τῷ γε φανερῷ.

ADVANCE TO ISSUS. ARRIVAL OF THE FLEET WITH REINFORCEMENTS.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα IV
ἐπὶ τὸν Ψάρον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος τρία πλέθρα.

ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας πέντε IV
ἐπὶ τὸν Πύραμον ποταμόν, οὗ ἦν τὸ εὖρος στάδιον.
ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας πεντε-
καίδεκα εἰς Ἰσσούς, τῆς Κιλικίας ἐσχάτην πόλιν ἐπὶ
τῇ θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. ἐν- 2
ταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Κύρῳ παρῆσαν αἱ ἐκ
Πελοποννήσου νῆες τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε καὶ ἐπ' αὐταῖς
ναύαρχος Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐταῖς
Ταμὼς Αἰγύπτιος ἐξ Ἐφέσου, ἔχων ναῦς ἑτέρας Κύρου
πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε Τισσα-
φέρνει φίλη ἦν, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν.
παρῆν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, 3
μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἑπτακοσίους ἔχων ὁπλίτας,
ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν παρὰ
τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα
μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κῦρον
τετρακόσιοι ὁπλῖται καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο ἐπὶ βασιλέα.

"SYRIAN GATEWAY" PASSED.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγγας πέντε
ἐπὶ πύλας τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. ἦσαν δὲ 4
ταῦτα δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλι-
κίας Συέννεσις εἶχε καὶ Κιλίκων φυλακή, τὸ δὲ ἔξω τὸ
πρὸ τῆς Συρίας βασιλέως ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ φυλάττειν.
διὰ μέσου δὲ ῥεῖ τούτων ποταμὸς Κάρσος ὄνομα,
εὖρος πλέθρου. ἅπαν δὲ τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν
στάδιοι τρεῖς· καὶ παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἦν βίᾳ· ἦν γὰρ ἡ
πάροδος στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καθή-
κοντα, ὕπερθεν δ' ἦσαν πέτραι ἠλίβατοι· ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς
τείχεσιν ἀμφοτέροις ἐφειστήκεσαν πύλαι. ταύτης 5
ἕνεκα τῆς παρόδου Κῦρος τὰς ναῦς μετεπέμψατο, ὅπως

ὁπλίτας ἀποβιβάσειεν εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν IV
βιασομένους τοὺς πολεμίους εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς
Συρίαις πύλαις, ὅπερ ᾤετο ποιήσειν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν
Ἀβροκόμαν, ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Ἀβροκόμας
δὲ οὐ τοῦτ' ἐποίησεν, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ἐν
Κιλικίᾳ ὄντα, ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης παρὰ βασιλέα
ἀπήλαυνεν, ἔχων, ὡς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας
στρατιᾶς.

ADVANCE TO MYRIANDUS. XENIAS AND PASION DESERT THE EXPEDITION.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας σταθμὸν ἕνα παρα- 6
σάγγας πέντε εἰς Μυρίανδον, πόλιν οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ
Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· ἐμπόριον δ' ἦν τὸ χωρίον
καὶ ὥρμουν αὐτόθι ὁλκάδες πολλαί. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν
ἡμέρας ἑπτά· καὶ Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς στρατηγὸς καὶ 7
Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμβάντες εἰς πλοῖον καὶ τὰ
πλείστου ἄξια ἐνθέμενοι ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς
πλείστοις ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες ὅτι τοὺς στρατιώτας
αὐτῶν τοὺς παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἀπελθόντας ὡς ἀπιόντας
εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πάλιν καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα εἶα Κῦρος
τὸν Κλέαρχον ἔχειν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς, διῆλθε
λόγος ὅτι διώκοι αὐτοὺς Κῦρος τριήρεσι· καὶ οἳ μὲν
ηὔχοντο ὡς δειλοὺς ὄντας αὐτοὺς ληφθῆναι, οἳ δ' ᾤκτι-
ρον εἰ ἁλώσοιντο.

CYRUS SAYS "LET THEM GO." THE TROOPS ARE PLEASED.

Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπεν· Ἀπο- 8
λελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέν-
τοι ἐπιστάσθων ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν· οἶδα γὰρ ὅπῃ
οἴχονται· οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν· ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις ὥστε
ἑλεῖν τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον· ἀλλὰ μὰ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε

αὐτοὺς διώξω, οὐδ' ἐρεῖ οὐδεὶς ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν ἂν παρῇ IV
τις χρῶμαι, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ἀπιέναι βούληται, συλλαβὼν
καὶ αὐτοὺς κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ.
ἀλλὰ† ἰέτωσαν, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς
ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. καίτοι ἔχω γε αὐτῶν καὶ τέκνα
καὶ γυναῖκας ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ
τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται τῆς πρόσθεν
ἕνεκα περὶ ἐμὲ ἀρετῆς. καὶ ὃ μὲν ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ 9
Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβα-
σιν, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν ἥδιον καὶ προθυμό-
τερον συνεπορεύοντο.

ADVANCE TO THAPSACUS ON THE EUPHRATES. CYRUS ANNOUNCES THAT THE EXPEDITION IS AGAINST THE KING. THE SOLDIERS ARE ANGRY AND DEMAND MORE PAY. LIBERAL PROMISES OF CYRUS.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς τέτταρας
παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Χάλον ποταμόν, ὄντα
τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου, πλήρη δ' ἰχθύων μεγάλων καὶ
πραέων, οὓς οἱ Σύροι θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον καὶ ἀδικεῖν οὐκ
εἴων οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. αἱ δὲ κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκή-
νουν Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν εἰς ζώνην δεδομέναι. ἐντεῦ- 10
θεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα
ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Δάρδατος ποταμοῦ, οὗ τὸ εὖρος
πλέθρου. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ Βελέσυος βασίλεια τοῦ
Συρίας ἄρξαντος, καὶ παράδεισος πάνυ μέγας καὶ κα-
λός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὧραι φύουσι. Κῦρος δ' αὐτὸν
ἐξέκοψεν καὶ τὰ βασίλεια κατέκαυσεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξε- 11
λαύνει σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ
τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων στα-
δίων· καὶ πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων
Θάψακος ὄνομα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἡμέρας πέντε. καὶ

Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλή- IV
νων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα μέγαν εἰς
Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα τοῖς στρα-
τιώταις καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἕπεσθαι. οἳ δὲ ποιήσαντες 12
ἐκκλησίαν ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐχα-
λέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς πάλαι
ταῦτ' εἰδότας κρύπτειν, καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή
τις αὐτοῖς χρήματα διδῷ, ὥσπερ τοῖς προτέροις μετὰ
Κύρου ἀναβᾶσι παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου, καὶ
ταῦτα οὐκ ἐπὶ μάχην ἰόντων, ἀλλὰ καλοῦντος τοῦ
πατρὸς Κῦρον. ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ Κύρῳ ἀπήγγελ- 13
λον. ὃ δ' ὑπέσχετο ἀνδρὶ ἑκάστῳ δώσειν πέντε
ἀργυρίου μνᾶς, ἐπὰν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἥκωσι, καὶ τὸν
μισθὸν ἐντελῆ μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰς
Ἰωνίαν πάλιν. τὸ μὲν δὴ πολὺ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ οὕτως
ἐπείσθη.

MENON PERSUADES HIS TROOPS TO CROSS FIRST. CYRUS GREATLY PLEASED. PASSAGE OF THE EUPHRATES.

Μένων δὲ πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι τί ποιήσουσιν οἱ ἄλλοι
στρατιῶται, πότερον ἕψονται Κύρῳ ἢ οὔ, συνέλεξε
τὸ αὑτοῦ στράτευμα χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε.
Ἄνδρες, ἐάν μοι πεισθῆτε, οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε 14
πονήσαντες τῶν ἄλλων πλέον προτιμήσεσθε στρα-
τιωτῶν ὑπὸ Κύρου. τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι; νῦν δεῖ-
ται Κῦρος ἕπεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἐγὼ
οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ποτα-
μὸν πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι ὅ,τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρι-
νοῦνται Κύρῳ. ἢν μὲν γὰρ ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι, 15
ὑμεῖς δόξετε αἴτιοι εἶναι ἄρξαντες τοῦ διαβαίνειν, καὶ
ὡς προθυμοτάτοις οὖσιν ὑμῖν χάριν εἴσεται Κῦρος καὶ

ἀποδώσει· ἐπίσταται δ' εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος· ἢν δὲ ἀπο- IV
ψηφίσωνται οἱ ἄλλοι, ἄπιμεν μὲν ἅπαντες τοὔμπαλιν,
ὑμῖν δὲ ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστοτάτοις χρήσεται
καὶ εἰς φρουραρχίας καὶ εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ ἄλλου οὑ-
τινος ἂν δέησθε οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλου τεύξεσθε Κύρου.
ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπείθοντο καὶ διέβησαν πρὶν τοὺς 16
ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Κῦρος δ' ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο διαβε-
βηκότας, ἥσθη τε καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι πέμψας Γλοῦν
εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ὑμᾶς ἐπαινῶ· ὅπως
δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ ἐπαινέσετε ἐμοὶ μελήσει, ἤ μηκέτι
με Κῦρον νομίζετε. οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατιῶται ἐν ἐλπίσι 17
μεγάλαις ὄντες ηὔχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι, Μένωνι δὲ
καὶ δῶρα ἐλέγετο πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς. ταῦτα δὲ
ποιήσας διέβαινε· συνείπετο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἄλλο στρά-
τευμα αὐτῷ ἅπαν. καὶ τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποτα-
μὸν οὐδεὶς ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ
ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὐπώποθ' οὗτος 18
ὁ ποταμὸς διαβατὸς γένοιτο πεζῇ εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ
πλοίοις, ἃ τότε Ἀβροκόμας προϊὼν κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα
μὴ Κῦρος διαβῇ. ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον εἶναι σαφῶς καὶ
ὑποχωρῆσαι τὸν ποταμὸν Κύρῳ ὡς βασιλεύσοντι.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας σταθμοὺς ἐννέα 19
παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς τὸν
Ἀράξην ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν κῶμαι πολλαὶ με-
σταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς
καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

MARCH THROUGH THE SYRIAN-ARABIAN DESERT. GAME ABOUNDS AND THE HORSEMEN HAVE FINE SPORT.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὸν Εὐφρά- V
την ποταμὸν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἔχων σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους πέντε

παρασάγγας τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ V
τόπῳ ἦν μὲν ἡ γῆ πεδίον ἅπαν ὁμαλὲς ὥσπερ θά-
λαττα, ἀψινθίου δὲ πλῆρες· εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο ἐνῆν
ὕλης ἢ καλάμου, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα·
δένδρον δ' οὐδὲν ἐνῆν, θηρία δὲ παντοῖα, πλεῖστοι 2
ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλαὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ αἱ μεγάλαι· ἐνῆσαν
δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες· ταῦτα δὲ τὰ θηρία οἱ
ἱππεῖς ἐνίοτε ἐδίωκον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεί τις διώ-
κοι, προδραμόντες ἔστασαν· πολὺ γὰρ τῶν ἵππων
ἔτρεχον θᾶττον· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν οἱ ἵπποι,
ταὐτὸν ἐποίουν, καὶ οὐκ ἦν λαβεῖν, εἰ μὴ διαστάντες
οἱ ἱππεῖς θηρῷεν διαδεχόμενοι. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἁλι-
σκομένων ἦν παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, ἀπαλώτερα
δέ. στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ διώξαντες τῶν 3
ἱππέων ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἀπέσπα φεύγουσα,
τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ δρόμῳ, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ
ἱστίῳ χρωμένη. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας ἄν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ
ἔστι λαμβάνειν· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες
καὶ ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα ἦν.

MANY BEASTS OF BURDEN PERISH FOR FODDER, AND THE ARMY SUFFERS FOR BREAD.

Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφικνοῦνται 4
ἐπὶ τὸν Μάσκαν ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐν-
ταῦθα ἦν πόλις ἐρήμη, μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ Κορ-
σωτή· περιερρεῖτο δ' αὖτη ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα κύκλῳ.
ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο. ἐν- 5
τεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρεῖς καὶ δέκα
παρασάγγας ἐνενήκοντα τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν ἐν
δεξιᾷ ἔχων, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. ἐν τούτοις
τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο ὑπὸ

λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον, V
ἀλλὰ ψιλὴ ἦν ἅπασα ἡ χώρα· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες ὄνους
ἀλέτας παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὀρύττοντες καὶ ποιοῦντες
εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἦγον καὶ ἐπώλουν καὶ ἀνταγοράζοντες
σῖτον ἔζων. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ὁ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε, καὶ 6
πρίασθαι οὐκ ἦν εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ Κύρου
βαρβαρικῷ, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων τεττάρων
σίγλων. ὁ δὲ σίγλος δύναται ἕπτ' ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιο-
βέλιον Ἀττικούς· ἡ δὲ καπίθη δύο χοίνικας Ἀττικὰς
ἐχώρει. κρέα οὖν ἐσθίοντες οἱ στρατιῶται διεγί-
γνοντο. ἦν δὲ τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὓς πάνυ μακροὺς 7
ἤλαυνεν, ὁπότε ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ βούλοιτο διατελέσαι ἢ
πρὸς χιλόν.

GOOD DISCIPLINE OF THE PERSIAN NOBLES. CAUSE OF CYRUS' HASTE.

Καὶ δή ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος ταῖς
ἁμάξαις δυσπορεύτου ἐπέστη ὁ Κῦρος σὺν τοῖς περὶ
αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις καὶ ἔταξε Γλοῦν
καὶ Πίγρητα λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ συνεκ-
βιβάζειν τὰς ἁμάξας. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως 8
ποιεῖν, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς περὶ αὐτὸν Πέρσας
τοὺς κρατίστους συνεπισπεῦσαι τὰς ἁμάξας. ἔνθα
δὴ μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας ἦν θεάσασθαι. ῥίψαντες
γὰρ τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς ὅπου ἔτυχεν ἕκαστος
ἑστηκώς, ἵεντο ὥσπερ ἂν δράμοι τις ἐπὶ νίκῃ καὶ μάλα
κατὰ πρανοῦς γηλόφου, ἔχοντες τούς τε πολυτελεῖς
χιτῶνας καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, ἔνιοι δὲ καὶ
στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς
χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰσπηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν
πηλὸν θᾶττον ἢ ὥς τις ἂν ᾤετο μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν

τὰς ἁμάξας. τὸ δὲ σύμπαν δῆλος ἦν Κῦρος ὡς σπεύ- V
δων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐ διατρίβων ὅπου μὴ ἐπισι- 9
τισμοῦ ἕνεκα ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου ἐκαθέζετο, νομί-
ζων, ὅσῳ θᾶττον ἔλθοι, τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ
βασιλεῖ μαχεῖσθαι, ὅσῳ δὲ σχολαίτερον, τοσούτῳ
πλέον συναγείρεσθαι βασιλεῖ στράτευμα. καὶ συνι-
δεῖν δ' ἦν τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν τῇ βασιλέως ἀρχῇ
πλήθει μὲν χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα, τοῖς δὲ
μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ διεσπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις
ἀσθενής, εἴ τις διὰ ταχέων τὸν πόλεμον ποιοῖτο.

NOVEL METHOD OF CROSSING THE RIVER.

Πέραν δὲ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ κατὰ τοὺς ἐρή- 10
μους σταθμοὺς ἦν πόλις εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη, ὄνομα
δὲ Χαρμάνδη· ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον τὰ
ἐπιτήδεια, σχεδίαις διαβαίνοντες ὧδε. διφθέρας ἃς
εἶχον στεγάσματα ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου κούφου, εἶτα
συννῆγον καὶ συνέσπων, ὡς μὴ ἅπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης
τὸ ὕδωρ· ἐπὶ τούτων διέβαινον καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ
ἐπιτήδεια, οἶνόν τε ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου πεποιημένον τῆς
ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος καὶ σῖτον μελίνης· τοῦτο γὰρ ἦν ἐν
τῇ χώρᾳ πλεῖστον.

QUARREL BETWEEN SOLDIERS OF MENON AND CLEARCHUS. THE LATTER ATTACKED. COLLISION IMMINENT BETWEEN THE TWO DIVISIONS, BUT CYRUS ALLAYS THE STRIFE.

Ἀμφιλεξάντων δέ τι ἐνταῦθα τῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος 11
στρατιωτῶν καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας
ἀδικεῖν τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν· ὁ δὲ
ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα ἔλεγεν· ἀκούσαν-
τες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυ-
ρῶς τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. τῇ δὲ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος ἐλθὼν 12

ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμε- V
νος τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν διὰ
τοῦ Μένωνος στρατεύματος σὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς περὶ αὐ-
τόν· Κῦρος δὲ οὔπω ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλαυνε· τῶν
δὲ Μένωνος στρατιωτῶν ξύλα σχίζων τις ὡς εἶδε
Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἴησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ οὗτος μὲν
αὐτοῦ ἥμαρτεν· ἄλλος δὲ λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος, εἶτα πολλοί,
κραυγῆς γενομένης. ὁ δὲ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ 13
στράτευμα, καὶ εὐθὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ
τοὺς μὲν ὁπλίτας αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευσε μεῖναι τὰς ἀσπίδας
πρὸς τὰ γόνατα θέντας, αὐτὸς δὲ λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾷκας
καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι
πλείους ἢ τετταράκοντα, τούτων δὲ οἱ πλεῖστοι Θρᾷ-
κες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπε-
πλῆχθαι καὶ αὐτὸν Μένωνα, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα·
οἳ δὲ καὶ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι. ὁ δὲ 14
Πρόξενος — ἔτυχε γὰρ ὕστερος προσιὼν καὶ τάξις
αὐτῷ ἑπομένη τῶν ὁπλιτῶν — εὐθὺς οὖν εἰς τὸ μέσον
ἀμφοτέρων ἄγων ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλεάρ-
χου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. ὁ δ' ἐχαλέπαινεν ὅτι αὐτοῦ ὀλίγου
δεήσαντος καταλευσθῆναι πράως λέγοι τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος,
ἐκέλευσέ τε αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ μέσου ἐξίστασθαι. ἐν τούτῳ 15
δ' ἐπῄει καὶ Κῦρος καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· εὐθὺς δ'
ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας καὶ σὺν τοῖς παροῦσι
τῶν πιστῶν ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε.
Κλέαρχε καὶ Πρόξενε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες Ἕλ- 16
ληνες, οὐκ ἴστε ὅ,τι ποιεῖτε· εἰ γάρ τινα ἀλλήλοις
μάχην συνάψετε, νομίζετε ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἐμέ τε
κατακεκόψεσθαι καὶ ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ἐμοῦ ὕστερον· κακῶς
γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων ἐχόντων πάντες οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε

βάρβαροι πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν ἔσονται τῶν παρὰ βα- V
σιλεῖ ὄντων. ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐν ἑαυτῷ 17
ἐγένετο· καὶ παυσάμενοι ἀμφότεροι κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο
τὰ ὅπλα.

TREACHEROUS PLOT OF ORONTAS, A PERSIAN NOBLE, DISCOVERED.

Ἐντεῦθεν προϊόντων ἐφαίνετο ἵχνια ἵππων καὶ κό- VI
προς. ἠκάζετο δ' εἶναι ὁ στίβος ὡς δισχιλίων ἵππων.
οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο χρήσι-
μον ἦν. ‖ Ὀρόντας δὲ Πέρσης ἀνὴρ γένει τε προσήκων
βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις
Περσῶν ἐπιβουλεύει Κύρῳ καὶ πρόσθεν πολεμήσας,
καταλλαγεὶς δέ. οὗτος Κύρῳ εἶπεν, εἰ αὐτῷ δοίη ἱπ- 2
πέας χιλίους, ὅτι τοὺς προκατακαίοντας ἱππέας ἢ κατα-
κάνοι ἂν ἐνεδρεύσας ἢ ζῶντας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ἂν ἕλοι
καὶ κωλύσειε τοῦ καίειν ἐπιόντας, καὶ ποιήσειεν ὥστε
μήποτε δύνασθαι αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ Κύρου στράτευμα
βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι. τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα
ἐδόκει ὠφέλιμα εἶναι, καὶ ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν
μέρος παρ' ἑκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. ὁ δ' Ὀρόντας 3
νομίσας ἑτοίμους εἶναι αὐτῷ τοὺς ἱππέας γράφει ἐπι-
στολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων ἱππέας ὡς ἂν δύ-
νηται πλείστους· ἀλλὰ φράσαι τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν
ἐκέλευεν ὡς φίλιον αὐτὸν ὑποδέχεσθαι. ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν
τῇ ἐπιστολῇ καὶ τῆς πρόσθεν φιλίας ὑπομνήματα καὶ
πίστεως. ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρί,
ὡς ᾤετο· ὃ δὲ λαβὼν Κύρῳ δίδωσιν. ἀναγνοὺς δὲ 4
αὐτὴν ὁ Κῦρος συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόνταν, καὶ συγκαλεῖ
εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν Πέρσας τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν περὶ
αὐτὸν ἑπτά, καὶ τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἐκέ-
λευσεν ὁπλίτας ἀγαγεῖν, τούτους δὲ θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα

περὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ σκηνήν. οἱ δὲ ταῦτα ἐποίησαν, ἀγα- VI
γόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὁπλίτας.

THE CULPRIT TRIED BEFORE A COURT OF SEVEN NOBLE PERSIANS. CLEARCHUS, WHO WAS PRESENT, TOLD THE STORY.

Κλέαρχον δὲ καὶ εἴσω παρεκάλεσε σύμβουλον, ὅς 5
γε καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐδόκει προτιμηθῆναι
μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξῆλθεν, ἀπήγγειλε
τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὡς ἐγένετο· οὐ
γὰρ ἀπόρρητον ἦν. ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου 6
ὧδε. Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως σὺν ὑμῖν
βουλευόμενος ὅ,τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς
ἀνθρώπων, τοῦτο πράξω περὶ Ὀρόντα τουτουί. τοῦ-
τον γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκεν ὑπήκοον
εἶναι ἐμοί· ἐπεὶ δὲ ταχθείς, ὡς ἔφη αὐτός, ὑπὸ τοῦ
ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων τὴν ἐν Σάρ-
δεσιν ἀκρόπολιν καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν προσπολεμῶν ἐποίησα
ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ τοῦ πρὸς ἐμὲ πολέμου παύσασθαι,
καὶ δεξιὰν ἔλαβον καὶ ἔδωκα, μετὰ ταῦτα, ἔφη, ὦ 7
Ὀρόντα, ἔστιν ὅ,τι σε ἠδίκησα; ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὔ.
πάλιν δὴ ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτα· Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς αὐτὸς
σὺ ὁμολογεῖς, οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἀδικούμενος ἀποστὰς εἰς
Μυσοὺς κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν ὅ,τι ἐδύνω;
ἔφη Ὀρόντας. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁπότ' αὖ ἔγνως
τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος
βωμὸν μεταμέλειν τέ σοι ἔφησθα καὶ πείσας ἐμὲ πιστὰ
πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; καὶ ταῦθ' 8
ὁμολόγει Ὀρόντας. Τί οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς
ὑπ' ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγο-
νας; εἰπόντος δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντα ὅτι οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς,
ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτόν· Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν περὶ ἐμὲ

ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι; Ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη Ὀρόντας. VI
ἐκ τούτου πάλιν ἠρώτησεν ὁ Κῦρος· Ἔτι οὖν ἂν γέ-
νοιο τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πι-
στός; Ὃ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε,
σοί γ' ἄν ποτε ἔτι δόξαιμι. πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε 9
τοῖς παροῦσιν· Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ τοιαῦτα μὲν πεποίηκε,
τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει· ὑμῶν δὲ σὺ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε,
ἀπόφηναι γνώμην ὅ,τι σοι δοκεῖ. Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε
τάδε. Συμβουλεύω ἐγὼ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῦτον ἐκποδὼν
ποιεῖσθαι ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς μηκέτι δέῃ τοῦτον φυλάττε-
σθαι, ἀλλὰ σχολὴ ᾖ ἡμῖν τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι τοὺς
ἐθελοντὰς φίλους εὖ ποιεῖν. ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ γνώμῃ ἔφη 10
καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι.

CONDEMNATION AND DEATH OF ORONTAS.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἔφη κελεύοντος Κύρου ἔλαβον τῆς
ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόνταν ἐπὶ θανάτῳ ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες
καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς· εἶτα δ' ἐξῆγον αὐτὸν οἷς προσετάχθη.
ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἵπερ πρόσθεν προσεκύνουν, καὶ
τότε προσεκύνησαν, καίπερ εἰδότες ὅτι ἐπὶ θάνατον
ἄγοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν εἰσήχθη 11
τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα
οὔτε ζῶντα Ὀρόνταν οὔτε τεθνηκότα οὐδεὶς εἶδε πώ-
ποτε οὐδὲ ὅπως ἀπέθανεν οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς ἔλεγεν· ἤκαζον
δὲ ἄλλοι ἄλλως· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς πώποτε αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη.

REVIEW AT MIDNIGHT.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς VII
τρεῖς παρασάγγας δώδεκα. ἐν δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ
Κῦρος ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρ-
βάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ περὶ μέσας νύκτας· ἐδόκει γὰρ

εἰς τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἕως ἥξειν βασιλέα σὺν τῷ στρατεύ- VII
ματι μαχούμενον· καὶ ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον μὲν τοῦ
δεξιοῦ κέρως ἡγεῖσθαι, Μένωνα δὲ [τὸν Θετταλὸν]
τοῦ εὐωνύμου, αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ διέταξε. μετὰ 2
δὲ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκον αὐτό-
μολοι παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως στρατιᾶς.

COUNCIL OF WAR. CYRUS' SPEECH TO THE GREEK GENERALS AND CAPTAINS.

Κῦρος δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχα-
γοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνεβουλεύετό τε πῶς ἂν τὴν μά-
χην ποιοῖτο καὶ αὐτὸς παρῄνει θαρρύνων τοιάδε. Ὦ 3
ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐκ ἀνθρώπων ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων
συμμάχους ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ἀλλὰ νομίζων ἀμείνονας καὶ
κρείττους πολλῶν βαρβάρων ὑμᾶς εἶναι, διὰ τοῦτο
προσέλαβον. ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευ-
θερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ἧς ὑμᾶς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω. εὖ
γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἑλοίμην ἂν ἀντὶ ὧν ἔχω
πάντων καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίων. ὅπως δὲ καὶ εἰδῆτε 4
εἰς οἷον ἔρχεσθε ἀγῶνα, ὑμᾶς εἰδὼς διδάξω. τὸ μὲν
γὰρ πλῆθος πολὺ καὶ κραυγῇ πολλῇ ἐπίασιν· ἂν δὲ
ταῦτα ἀνάσχησθε, τὰ ἄλλα καὶ αἰσχυνεῖσθαί μοι δοκῶ
οἵους ἡμῖν γνώσεσθε τοὺς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ὄντας ἀνθρώ-
πους. ὑμῶν δὲ ἀνδρῶν ὄντων καὶ εὖ τῶν ἐμῶν γενο-
μένων, ἐγὼ ὑμῶν τὸν μὲν οἴκαδε βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι
τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτὸν ποιήσω ἀπελθεῖν, πολλοὺς δὲ οἶμαι
ποιήσειν τὰ παρ' ἐμοὶ ἑλέσθαι ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι.

THE VAST RESOURCES OF THE EMPIRE WILL ENABLE CYRUS TO KEEP ALL PROMISES.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης παρὼν φυγὰς Σάμιος, πιστὸς δὲ 5
Κύρῳ, εἶπεν· Καὶ μήν, ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι

πολλὰ ὑπισχνῇ νῦν διὰ τὸ ἐν τοιούτῳ εἶναι τοῦ κιν- VII
δύνου προσιόντος, ἂν δὲ εὖ γένηταί τι, οὐ μεμνήσε-
σθαί σέ φασιν· ἔνιοι δὲ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῆτό τε καὶ βούλοιο
δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνῇ. ἀκούσας ταῦτα 6
ἔλεξεν ὁ Κῦρος· Ἀλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ
ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῴα πρὸς μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι οὗ διὰ
καῦμα οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν ἄνθρωποι, πρὸς δὲ ἄρκτον
μέχρι οὗ διὰ χειμῶνα· τὰ δ' ἐν μέσῳ τούτων πάντα
σατραπεύουσιν οἱ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι. ἢν δ' 7
ἡμεῖς νικήσωμεν, ἡμᾶς δεῖ τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους
τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς ποιῆσαι. ὥστε οὐ τοῦτο δέδοικα μὴ
οὐκ ἔχω ὅ,τι δῶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων, ἂν εὖ γένηται,
ἀλλὰ μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ. ὑμῶν δὲ τῶν Ἑλ- 8
λήνων καὶ στέφανον ἑκάστῳ χρυσοῦν δώσω. οἱ δὲ
ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες αὐτοί τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι
καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐξήγγελλον.

CYRUS IS CONFIDENT THE KING WILL FIGHT.

Εἰσῆσαν δὲ παρ' αὐτὸν οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ τῶν
ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων τινὲς ἀξιοῦντες εἰδέναι τί σφίσιν ἔσ-
ται, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν. ὁ δὲ ἐμπιμπλὰς ἁπάντων τὴν
γνώμην ἀπέπεμπε. παρεκελεύοντο δὲ αὐτῷ πάντες 9
ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο μὴ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὄπισθεν ἑαυ-
τῶν τάττεσθαι. ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ὧδέ
πως ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Οἴει γάρ σοι μαχεῖσθαι, ὦ
Κῦρε, τὸν ἀδελφόν; Νὴ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, εἴπερ γε
Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδός ἐστι παῖς, ἐμὸς δὲ ἀδελφός,
οὐκ ἀμαχεὶ ταῦτ' ἐγὼ λήψομαι.

NUMBERS OF THE OPPOSING ARMIES.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν 10
μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἀσπὶς μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία, πελτασταὶ

δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ Κύρου βαρ- VII
βάρων δέκα μυριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἀμφὶ
τὰ εἴκοσι. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ 11
εἴκοσι μυριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα διακόσια.
ἄλλοι δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἱππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης
ἦρχεν· οὗτοι δ' αὖ πρὸ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως τεταγμένοι
ἦσαν. τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως στρατεύματος ἦσαν ἄρχον- 12
τες [καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες] τέτταρες, τριάκοντα
μυριάδων ἕκαστος, Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γω-
βρύας, Ἀρβάκης. τούτων δὲ παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατὸν
καὶ πεντήκοντα· Ἀβροκόμας δὲ ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης
ἡμέραις πέντε, ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων. ταῦτα δὲ ἤγγελ- 13
λον πρὸς Κῦρον οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες [ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων]
παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως πρὸ τῆς μάχης, καὶ μετὰ
τὴν μάχην οἳ ὕστερον ἐλήφθησαν τῶν πολεμίων ταὐτὰ
ἤγγελλον.

THE GREAT TRENCH PASSED. A SOOTHSAYER REWARDED FOR A FAVORABLE PROPHECY. CONVICTION GROWS THAT THE KING WILL NOT FIGHT.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παρα- 14
σάγγας τρεῖς συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι παντὶ καὶ
τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ· ᾤετο γὰρ ταύτῃ τῇ
ἡμέρᾳ μαχεῖσθαι βασιλέα· κατὰ γὰρ μέσον τὸν σταθ-
μὸν τοῦτον τάφρος ἦν ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ μὲν εὖρος
ὀργυιαὶ πέντε, τὸ δὲ βάθος ὀργυιαὶ τρεῖς. παρετέτατο 15
δὲ ἡ τάφρος ἄνω διὰ τοῦ πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρα-
σάγγας μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους.[1] ἦν δὲ παρὰ τόν

[1] [ἔνθα αἱ διώρυχες, ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ ῥέουσαι· εἰσὶ δὲ τέτταρες, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, βαθεῖαι δὲ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς σιταγωγά· εἰσβάλλουσι δὲ εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, διαλείπουσι δ' ἑκάστη παρασσάγγην, γέφυραι δ' ἔπεισιν.]

Εὐφράτην πάροδος στενὴ μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς VII
τάφρου ὡς εἴκοσι ποδῶν τὸ εὖρος· ταύτην δὲ τὴν τά- 16
φρον βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ μέγας ἀντὶ ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυν-
θάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα. ταύτην δὴ τὴν πάροδον
Κῦρός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω
τῆς τάφρου. ταύτῃ μὲν οὖν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐμαχέσατο 17
βασιλεύς, ἀλλ᾽ ὑποχωρούντων φανερὰ ἦσαν καὶ ἵππων
καὶ ἀνθρώπων ἴχνη πολλά. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος Σιλανὸν 18
καλέσας τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην μάντιν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ δαρει-
κοὺς τρισχιλίους, ὅτι τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ
πρότερον θυόμενος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς οὐ μαχεῖ-
ται δέκα ἡμερῶν, Κῦρος δ᾽ εἶπεν· Οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖ-
ται, εἰ ἐν ταύταις οὐ μαχεῖται ταῖς ἡμέραις· ἐὰν δ᾽
ἀληθεύσῃς, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. τοῦτο τὸ
χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ παρῆλθον αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι.
ἐπεὶ δ᾽ ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ οὐκ ἐκώλυε βασιλεὺς τὸ Κύρου 19
στράτευμα διαβαίνειν, ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος 20
ἐπορεύετο ἠμελημένως μᾶλλον. τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπί τε τοῦ
ἅρματος καθήμενος τὴν πορείαν ἐποιεῖτο καὶ ὀλίγους
ἐν τάξει ἔχων πρὸ αὑτοῦ, τὸ δὲ πολὺ αὐτῷ ἀνατεται-
ραγμένον ἐπορεύετο καὶ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρατιώταις
πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν ἤγοντο καὶ ὑποζυγίων.

HORSEMAN ANNOUNCES, "THE KING IS COMING." HASTY CALL TO ARMS. ORDER OF BATTLE. ARMOR OF CYRUS AND HIS BODY-GUARD.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν καὶ πλη- VIII
σίον ἦν ὁ σταθμὸς ἔνθα ἔμελλε καταλύειν, ἡνίκα Πα-
τηγύας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον χρηστὸς προ-
φαίνεται ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ, καὶ

εὐθὺς πᾶσιν οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν ἐβόα καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ VII
ἑλληνικῶς ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ προσ-
έρχεται ὡς εἰς μάχην παρεσκευασμένος. ἔνθα δὴ πο- 1
λὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο· αὐτίκα γὰρ ἐδόκουν οἱ Ἕλληνες 2
καὶ πάντες δὲ ἀτάκτοις σφίσιν ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι· Κῦρός τε 3
καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος τὸν θώρακα ἐνεδύετο
καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας
ἔλαβε, τοῖς τε ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλεν ἐξοπλίζεσθαι
καὶ καθίστασθαι εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν ἕκαστον. ἔνθα 4
δὴ σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ καθίσταντο, Κλέαρχος μὲν τὰ
δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος ἔχων πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ,
Πρόξενος δὲ ἐχόμενος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι μετὰ τοῦτον, Μέ-
νων δὲ [καὶ τὸ στράτευμα] εὐώνυμον κέρας ἔσχε
τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. τοῦ δὲ βαρβαρικοῦ ἱππεῖς μὲν Πα- 5
φλαγόνες εἰς χιλίους παρὰ Κλέαρχον ἔστησαν ἐν τῷ
δεξιῷ καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν, ἐν δὲ τῷ εὐω-
νύμῳ Ἀριαῖός τε ὁ Κύρου ὕπαρχος καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρ-
βαρικόν, Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ἱππεῖς τούτου ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι 6
⟨κατὰ τὸ μέσον⟩, ὡπλισμένοι θώραξι μὲν αὐτοὶ καὶ
παραμηριδίοις καὶ κράνεσι πάντες πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος
δὲ ψιλὴν ἔχων τὴν κεφαλὴν εἰς τὴν μάχην καθίστατο.[1]
οἱ δ' ἵπποι πάντες [οἱ μετὰ Κύρου] εἶχον καὶ προ- 7
μετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· εἶχον δὲ καὶ μαχαίρας οἱ
ἱππεῖς Ἑλληνικάς.

ORDER OF APPROACH OF THE KING'S FORCES. SCYTHE-BEARING CHARIOTS.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας καὶ οὔπω καταφανεῖς 8
ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι· ἡνίκα δὲ δείλη ἐγίγνετο, ἐφάνη

[1] [λέγεται δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας ψιλαῖς ταῖς κεφαλαῖς ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ διακινδυνεύειν.]

κονιορτὸς ὥσπερ νεφέλη λευκή, χρόνῳ δὲ συχνῷ ὕστε- VIII
ρον ὥσπερ μελανία τις ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ πολύ. ὅτε
δὲ ἐγγύτερον ἐγίγνοντο, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἤστρα-
πτε καὶ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις καταφανεῖς ἐγίγνοντο.
καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου 9
τῶν πολεμίων· Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο τούτων ἄρχειν·
ἐχόμενοι δὲ γερροφόροι, ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὁπλῖται σὺν πο-
δήρεσι ξυλίναις ἀσπίσιν. Αἰγύπτιοι δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο
εἶναι· ἄλλοι δ' ἱππεῖς, ἄλλοι τοξόται. πάντες δ' οὗτοι
κατὰ ἔθνη ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων ἕκαστον τὸ
ἔθνος ἐπορεύοντο. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἅρματα διαλείποντα 10
συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων τὰ δὴ δρεπανηφόρα καλούμενα·
εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον ἀπο-
τεταμένα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς δίφροις εἰς γῆν βλέποντα, ὡς
διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς εἰς
τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐλῶντα καὶ διακόψοντα. ὃ 11
μέντοι Κῦρος εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο τοῖς
Ἕλλησι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρβάρων ἀνέχεσθαι,
ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο· οὐ γὰρ κραυγῇ ἀλλὰ σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυ-
στὸν καὶ ἡσυχῇ ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως προσῇσαν.

CLEARCHUS DISOBEYS ORDERS TO ATTACK THE KING AT THE CENTER.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κῦρος παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι 12
τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι τῷ Κλεάρχῳ
ἐβόα ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ μέσον τὸ τῶν πολεμίων,
ὅτι ἐκεῖ βασιλεὺς εἴη· κἂν τοῦτ', ἔφη, νικῶμεν, πάνθ'
ἡμῖν πεποίηται. ὁρῶν δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος τὸ μέσον στῖφος 13
καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου ἔξω ὄντα τοῦ [Ἑλληνικοῦ] εὐωνύμου
βασιλέα — τοσοῦτον γὰρ πλήθει περιῆν βασιλεὺς ὥστε
μέσον τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ἔχων τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου ἔξω ἦν —

ἀλλ' ὅμως ὁ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι ἀπὸ τοῦ VIII
ποταμοῦ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέρωθεν, τῷ δὲ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλει ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι.

CYRUS SPEAKS TO XENOPHON. THE SACRIFICES FAVORABLE. THE WATCHWORD.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στρά- 14
τευμα ὁμαλῶς προῄει, τὸ δὲ Ἑλληνικὸν ἔτι ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μένον συνετάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ στρατεύματι κατεθεᾶτο ἑκατέρωσε ἀποβλέπων εἴς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς φίλους. ἰδὼν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ 15
Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, πελάσας ὡς συναντῆσαι ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι. ὃ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευε πᾶσιν ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια καλά. ταῦτα 16
δὲ λέγων θορύβου ἤκουσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων ἰόντος, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἴη. ὃ δὲ [Κλέαρχος] εἶπεν ὅτι σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον ἤδη. καὶ ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει καὶ ἤρετο ὅ,τι εἴη τὸ σύνθημα. ὃ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀκού- 17
σας Ἀλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω. ταῦτα δ' εἰπὼν εἰς τὴν αὑτοῦ χώραν ἀπήλαυνε.

CHARGE OF THE GREEKS. FLIGHT OF THE PERSIANS. THE CHARIOTS USELESS.

Καὶ οὐκέτι τρία ἢ τέτταρα στάδια διειχέτην τὼ φάλαγγε ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ἡνίκα ἐπαιάνιζόν τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις. ὡς δὲ πορευο- 18
μένων ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος, τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον ἤρξατο δρόμῳ θεῖν· καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγξαντο πάντες οἷον

τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι, καὶ πάντες δὲ ἔθεον. λέγουσι VIII
δὲ ὥς τινες καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἐδούπησαν
φόβον ποιοῦντες τοῖς ἵπποις. πρὶν δὲ τόξευμα ἐξ- 19
ικνεῖσθαι ἐκκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ
ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος οἱ Ἕλληνες,
ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἐν τάξει ἕπε-
σθαι. τὰ δ' ἅρματα ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν δι' αὐτῶν τῶν 20
πολεμίων, τὰ δὲ καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κενὰ ἡνιόχων.
οἳ δ' ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, διίσταντο· ἔστι δ' ὅστις καὶ κα-
τελήφθη ὥσπερ ἐν ἱπποδρόμῳ ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ οὐδὲν
μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν ἔφασαν, οὐδ' ἄλλος δὲ τῶν
Ἑλλήνων ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἔπαθεν οὐδεὶς οὐδέν, πλὴν
ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοξευθῆναί τις ἐλέγετο.

CYRUS WATCHES WHAT THE KING WILL DO. FLANKING MOVEMENT OF THE LATTER.

Κῦρος δ' ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντας τὸ καθ' 21
αὑτοὺς καὶ διώκοντας, ἡδόμενος καὶ προσκυνούμενος
ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη
διώκειν, ἀλλὰ συνεσπειραμένην ἔχων τὴν τῶν σὺν
ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων τάξιν ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ,τι ποιήσει
βασιλεύς. καὶ γὰρ ᾔδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι τοῦ
Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ πάντες δ' οἱ τῶν βαρ- 22
βάρων ἄρχοντες μέσον ἔχοντες τὸ αὑτῶν ἡγοῦνται,
νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ εἶναι, ἢν ᾖ ἡ
ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἑκατέρωθεν, καὶ εἴ τι παραγγεῖλαι χρῄ-
ζοιεν, ἡμίσει ἂν χρόνῳ αἰσθάνεσθαι τὸ στράτευμα.
καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε μέσον ἔχων τῆς αὑτοῦ στρατιᾶς 23
ὅμως ἔξω ἐγένετο τοῦ Κύρου εὐωνύμου κέρατος. ἐπεὶ
δ' οὐδεὶς αὐτῷ ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου οὐδὲ τοῖς αὐτοῦ
τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν, ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν.

CYRUS ROUTS THE KING'S SIX THOUSAND AND ATTACKS THE KING.

VIII 24 Ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ ὄπισθεν γενόμενος κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος· καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις νικᾷ τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους καὶ εἰς φυγὴν ἔτρεψε τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους, καὶ ἀποκτεῖναι λέγεται αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. 25 ὡς δ' ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο, διασπείρονται καὶ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμήσαντες, πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἀμφ' αὐτὸν κατελείφθησαν, σχεδὸν οἱ ὁμοτράπεζοι καλούμενοι. 26 σὺν τούτοις δὲ ὢν καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον στῖφος· καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο, ἀλλ' εἰπὼν Τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρῶ ἴετο ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὥς φησι Κτησίας ὁ ἰατρός, καὶ ἰᾶσθαι αὐτὸς τὸ τραῦμά φησι.

CYRUS SLAIN. DEATH OF THE FAITHFUL ARTAPATES.

27 Παίοντα δ' αὐτὸν ἀκοντίζει τις παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν βιαίως· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μαχόμενοι καὶ βασιλεὺς καὶ Κῦρος καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου, ὁπόσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνῃσκον Κτησίας λέγει· παρ' ἐκείνῳ γὰρ ἦν· Κῦρος δὲ αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. 28 Ἀρταπάτης δ' ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπτούχων θεράπων λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ πεπτωκότα εἶδε Κῦρον, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. 29 καὶ οἱ μέν φασι βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάξαι αὐτὸν Κύρῳ, οἱ δ' ἑαυτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι σπασάμενον τὸν ἀκινάκην· εἶχε γὰρ χρυσοῦν· καὶ στρεπτὸν δ' ἐφόρει καὶ ψέλια καὶ τἆλλα ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι Περσῶν· ἐτετίμητο γὰρ ὑπὸ Κύρου δι' εὔνοιάν τε καὶ πιστότητα.

CHARACTERIZATION OF CYRUS. THE KINGLIEST MAN SINCE CYRUS THE GREAT. AS A BOY, STRONG, MODEST, ADVENTUROUS, FEARLESS.

Κῦρος μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν, ἀνὴρ ὢν Περ- IX
σῶν τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον τὸν ἀρχαῖον γενομένων βασιλικώτατός τε καὶ ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος, ὡς παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται τῶν Κύρου δοκούντων ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἔτι παῖς ὢν ὅτ' ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν 2
τῷ ἀδελφῷ καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισί, πάντων πάντα κράτιστος ἐνομίζετο. πάντες γὰρ οἱ τῶν ἀρίστων Περ- 3
σῶν παῖδες ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις παιδεύονται· ἔνθα πολλὴν μὲν σωφροσύνην καταμάθοι ἄν τις, αἰσχρὸν δ' οὐδὲν οὔτ' ἀκοῦσαι οὔτ' ἰδεῖν ἔστι. θεῶνται 4
δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ τοὺς τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι, καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες μανθάνουσιν ἄρχειν τε καὶ ἄρχεσθαι. ἔνθα Κῦρος αἰδημονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον τῶν ἡλικιω- 5
τῶν ἐδόκει εἶναι, τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων μᾶλλον πείθεσθαι, ἔπειτα δὲ φιλιππότατος καὶ τοῖς ἵπποις ἄριστα χρῆσθαι· ἔκρινον δ' αὐτὸν καὶ τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων, τοξικῆς τε καὶ 6
ἀκοντίσεως, φιλομαθέστατον εἶναι καὶ μελετηρότατον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ ἡλικίᾳ ἔπρεπε, καὶ φιλοθηρότατος ἦν καὶ πρὸς τὰ θηρία μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος. καὶ ἄρκτον ποτὲ ἐπιφερομένην οὐκ ἔτρεσεν, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν, ὧν καὶ τὰς ὠτειλὰς εἶχεν, τέλος δὲ κατέκανε· καὶ τὸν πρῶτον μέντοι βοηθήσαντα πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν.

AS SATRAP, HE KEPT FAITH WITH FRIEND AND FOE.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς σατράπης 7
Λυδίας τε καὶ Φρυγίας τῆς μεγάλης καὶ Καππαδοκίας,

στρατηγὸς δὲ καὶ πάντων ἀπεδείχθη οἷς καθήκει εἰς **IX**
Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν ἐπέδειξεν
αὑτὸν ὅτι περὶ πλείστου ποιοῖτο, εἴ τῳ σπείσαιτο καὶ
εἴ τῳ συνθοῖτο καὶ εἴ τῳ ὑπόσχοιτό τι, μηδαμῶς ψεύ-
δεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἐπίστευον μὲν αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις 8
ἐπιτρεπόμεναι, ἐπίστευον δ' οἱ ἄνδρες· καὶ εἴ τις πολέ-
μιος ἐγένετο, σπεισαμένου Κύρου ἐπίστευε μηδὲν ἂν
παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς παθεῖν. τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ Τισσαφέρ- 9
νει ἐπολέμησε, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι Κῦρον εἵλοντο
ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν Μιλησίων· οὗτοι δὲ ὅτι οὐκ
ἤθελε τοὺς φεύγοντας προέσθαι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν. καὶ 10
γὰρ ἔργῳ ἐπεδείκνυτο καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἄν ποτε
προοῖτο, ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ φίλος αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο, οὐδ' εἰ ἔτι
μὲν μείους γένοιντο, ἔτι δὲ κάκιον πράξειαν.

KIND TO FRIENDS, BITTER TO FOES, SEVERE TO EVIL-DOERS.

Φανερὸς δ' ἦν καὶ εἴ τίς τι ἀγαθὸν ἢ κακὸν ποιή- 11
σειεν αὐτόν, νικᾶν πειρώμενος· καὶ εὐχὴν δέ τινες
αὐτοῦ ἐξέφερον ὡς εὔχοιτο τοσοῦτον χρόνον ζῆν ἔστε
νικῴη καὶ τοὺς εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς ποιοῦντας ἀλεξό-
μενος. καὶ γὰρ οὖν πλεῖστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἑνί γε ἀνδρὶ 12
τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐπεθύμησαν καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ
τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα προέσθαι. οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτ' 13
ἄν τις εἴποι ὡς τοὺς κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους εἶα κατα-
γελᾶν, ἀλλὰ ἀφειδέστατα πάντων ἐτιμωρεῖτο· πολλάκις
δ' ἦν ἰδεῖν παρὰ τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς καὶ ποδῶν
καὶ χειρῶν καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν στερομένους ἀνθρώπους·
ὥστ' ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀρχῇ ἐγένετο καὶ Ἕλληνι καὶ βαρ-
βάρῳ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι ἀδεῶς πορεύεσθαι ὅπῃ τις ἤθε-
λεν, ἔχοντι ὅ,τι προχωροίη.

REWARDED BRAVERY, LOYALTY, AND HONESTY.

Τούς γε μέντοι ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον ὡμολόγητο **IX** διαφερόντως τιμᾶν. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἦν αὐτῷ πόλεμος **14** πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· στρατευόμενος οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας οὓς ἑώρα ἐθέλοντας κινδυνεύειν, τούτους καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐποίει ἧς κατεστρέφετο χώρας, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἄλλοις δώροις ἐτίμα· ὥστε φαί- 15 νεσθαι τοὺς μὲν ἀγαθοὺς εὐδαιμονεστάτους, τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς δούλους τούτων ἀξίως εἶναι. τοιγαροῦν πολλὴ ἦν ἀφθονία αὐτῷ τῶν ἐθελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις οἴοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι. εἴς γε μὴν δικαιοσύνην 16 εἴ τις φανερὸς γένοιτο ἐπιδείκνυσθαι βουλόμενος, περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο τούτους πλουσιωτέρως ζῆν ποιεῖν τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου φιλοκερδούντων. καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄλλα τε 17 πολλὰ δικαίως αὐτῷ διεχειρίζετο καὶ στρατεύματι ἀληθινῷ ἐχρήσατο. καὶ γὰρ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, οἳ χρημάτων ἕνεκα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἔπλευσαν, ἔγνωσαν κερδαλεώτερον εἶναι Κύρῳ καλῶς ὑπάρχειν ἢ τὸ κατὰ μῆνα κέρδος. ἀλλὰ μὴν εἴ γέ τίς τι αὐτῷ προστάξαντι 18 καλῶς ὑπηρετήσειεν, οὐδενὶ πώποτε ἀχάριστον εἴασεν τὴν προθυμίαν. τοιγαροῦν κράτιστοι δὴ ὑπηρέται παντὸς ἔργου Κύρῳ ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι.

Εἰ δέ τινα ὁρῴη δεινὸν ὄντα οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ δι- 19 καίου καὶ κατασκευάζοντά τε ἧς ἄρχοι χώρας καὶ προσόδους ποιοῦντα, οὐδένα ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ πλείω προσεδίδου· ὥστε καὶ ἡδέως ἐπόνουν καὶ θαρραλέως ἐκτῶντο καὶ ὃ ἐπέπατο αὖ τις ἥκιστα Κῦρον ἔκρυπτεν· οὐ γὰρ φθονῶν τοῖς φανερῶς πλουτοῦσιν ἐφαίνετο, ἀλλὰ πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων χρήμασι.

TO FRIENDS, FAITHFUL, GENEROUS, HOSPITABLE, MARKEDLY ATTENTIVE. FRIENDS LOYAL TO HIM EVEN UNTO DEATH.

Φίλους γε μὴν ὅσους ποιήσαιτο καὶ εὐνους γνοίη IX
ὄντας καὶ ἱκανοὺς κρίνειε συνεργοὺς εἶναι ὅ,τι τυγ- 20
χάνοι βουλόμενος κατεργάζεσθαι, ὁμολογεῖται πρὸς
πάντων κράτιστος δὴ γενέσθαι θεραπεύειν. καὶ γὰρ 21
αὐτὸ τοῦτο οὗπερ αὐτὸς ἕνεκα φίλων ᾤετο δεῖσθαι,
ὡς συνεργοὺς ἔχοι, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειρᾶτο συνεργὸς τοῖς
φίλοις κράτιστος εἶναι τούτου ὅτου αἰσθάνοιτο ἕκαστον
ἐπιθυμοῦντα. δῶρα δὲ πλεῖστα μὲν οἶμαι εἷς γε ἀνὴρ 22
ἐλάμβανε διὰ πολλά· ταῦτα δὲ πάντων δὴ μάλιστα
τοῖς φίλοις διεδίδου, πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἑκάστου σκο-
πῶν καὶ ὅτου μάλιστα ὀρῴη ἕκαστον δεόμενον. καὶ 23
ὅσα τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ κόσμον πέμποι τις ἢ ὡς εἰς
πόλεμον ἢ ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμόν, καὶ περὶ τούτων λέγειν
αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἑαυτοῦ σῶμα οὐκ ἂν δύναιτο
τούτοις πᾶσι κοσμηθῆναι, φίλους δὲ καλῶς κεκοσμη-
μένους μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ νομίζοι. καὶ τὸ μὲν 24
τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα οὐδὲν θαυ-
μαστόν, ἐπειδή γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν· τὸ δὲ τῇ
ἐπιμελείᾳ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων καὶ τῷ προθυμεῖσθαι
χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε μᾶλλον δοκεῖ ἀγαστὰ εἶναι.
Κῦρος γὰρ ἔπεμπε βίκους οἴνου ἡμιδεεῖς πολλάκις 25
ὁπότε πάνυ ἡδὺν λάβοι, λέγων ὅτι οὔπω δὴ πολλοῦ
χρόνου τούτου ἡδίονι οἴνῳ ἐπιτύχοι· τοῦτον οὖν σοὶ
ἔπεμψε καὶ δεῖταί σου τήμερον τοῦτον ἐκπιεῖν σὺν
οἷς μάλιστα φιλεῖς. πολλάκις δὲ χῆνας ἡμιβρώτους 26
ἔπεμπε καὶ ἄρτων ἡμίσεα καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐπιλέγειν
κελεύων τὸν φέροντα. Τούτοις ἥσθη Κῦρος· βούλεται
οὖν καὶ σὲ τούτων γεύσασθαι. ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς σπάνιος 27

πάνυ εἴη, αὐτὸς δὲ δύναιτο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ IX
πολλοὺς ἔχειν ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν, δια-
πέμπων ἐκέλευε τοὺς φίλους τοῖς τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα
ἄγουσιν ἵπποις ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν, ὡς μὴ
πεινῶντες τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ φίλους ἄγωσιν. εἰ δὲ δή ποτε 28
πορεύοιτο καὶ πλεῖστοι μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν
τοὺς φίλους ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοίη οὓς τιμᾷ.
ὥστε ἐγὼ μέν γε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω οὐδένα κρίνω ὑπὸ
πλειόνων πεφιλῆσθαι οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων.
τεκμήριον δὲ τούτου καὶ τόδε. παρὰ μὲν Κύρου δού- 29
λου ὄντος οὐδεὶς ἀπῄει πρὸς βασιλέα, πλὴν Ὀρόντας
ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ οὗτος δὴ ὃν ᾤετο πιστόν οἱ εἶναι ταχὺ
αὐτὸν ηὗρε Κύρῳ φιλαίτερον ἢ ἑαυτῷ· παρὰ δὲ βασι-
λέως πολλοὶ πρὸς Κῦρον ἀπῆλθον, ἐπειδὴ πολέμιοι
ἀλλήλοις ἐγένοντο, καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ἑαυτοὺς
ἀγάμενοι, νομίζοντες παρὰ Κύρῳ ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ ἀξιω-
τέρας ἂν τιμῆς τυγχάνειν ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. μέγα δὲ 30
τεκμήριον καὶ τὸ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου αὐτῷ γενό-
μενον ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθὸς καὶ κρίνειν ὀρθῶς
ἐδύνατο τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὔνους καὶ βεβαίους. ἀπο- 31
θνῄσκοντος γὰρ αὐτοῦ πάντες οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν φίλοι
καὶ συντράπεζοι ἀπέθανον μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου
πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ
τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τοῦ ἱππικοῦ ἄρχων· ὡς δ' ἤσθετο Κῦρον
πεπτωκότα, ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν οὗ
ἡγεῖτο.

CYRUS'S CAMP PLUNDERED. THE GREEK GUARD MAKES A STAND.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμνεται ἡ κεφαλὴ καὶ ἡ X
χεὶρ ἡ δεξιά. βασιλεὺς δὲ [καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ] διώκων

εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κύρειον στρατόπεδον· καὶ οἱ μὲν μετὰ X
Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἵστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ αὐτῶν
στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμὸν ἔνθεν ὥρμηντο· τέτταρες
δ' ἐλέγοντο παρασάγγαι εἶναι τῆς ὁδοῦ. βασιλεὺς δὲ 2
καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ τά τε ἄλλα πολλὰ διαρπάζουσι καὶ
τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν Κύρου παλλακίδα τὴν σοφὴν καὶ
καλὴν λεγομένην εἶναι [λαμβάνει]. ἡ δὲ Μιλησία 3
[ἦν νεωτέρα ἢ] ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα
ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, οἳ ἔτυχον ἐν τοῖς
σκευοφόροις ὅπλα ἔχοντες καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες πολλοὺς
μὲν τῶν ἁρπαζόντων ἀπέκτειναν, οἳ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν
ἀπέθανον· οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην ἔσω-
σαν καὶ τἆλλα ὁπόσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν καὶ χρήματα καὶ
ἄνθρωποι ἐγένοντο πάντα ἔσωσαν. ἐνταῦθα διέσχον 4
ἀλλήλων βασιλεύς τε καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὡς τριάκοντα
στάδια, οἳ μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὑτούς [ὡς πάντα
νικῶντες], οἳ δ' ἁρπάζοντες ὡς ἤδη πάντα νικῶντες.

THE GREEKS PREPARE TO RECEIVE THE KING'S ATTACK, BUT HE TAKES UP TISSAPHERNES AND WITHDRAWS.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἤσθοντο οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν 5
τῷ στρατεύματι ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις εἴη, βασιλεὺς δ'
αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῷεν τὸ
καθ' αὑτοὺς καὶ εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν οἴχονται διώκοντες,
ἔνθα δὴ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀθροίζει τε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ
συντάττεται, ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο Πρόξενον καλέ-
σας, πλησιαίτατος γὰρ ἦν, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας ἢ πάντες
ἴοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀρήξοντες. ἐν τούτῳ καὶ 6
βασιλεὺς δῆλος ἦν προσιὼν πάλιν ὡς ἐδόκει ὄπισθεν.
καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς
ταύτῃ προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταύτῃ

μὲν οὐκ ἀπῆγεν, ᾗ δὲ παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου X
κέρατος ταύτῃ καὶ ἀπῆγεν, ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς ἐν
τῇ μάχῃ κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας αὐτομολήσαντας καὶ
Τισσαφέρνην καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ. ὁ γὰρ Τισσα- 7
φέρνης ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ οὐκ ἔφυγεν, ἀλλὰ διή-
λασε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πελτα-
στάς· διελαύνων δὲ κατέκανε μὲν οὐδένα, διαστάντες
δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπαιον καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτούς· Ἐπι-
σθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἦρχε τῶν πελταστῶν καὶ
ἐλέγετο φρόνιμος γενέσθαι.

THE GREEKS AND THE PERSIANS AGAIN FACE EACH OTHER. THE FORMER CHARGE AND THE LATTER AGAIN FLEE.

Ὁ δ' οὖν Τισσαφέρνης ὡς μεῖον ἔχων ἀπηλλάγη, 8
πάλιν μὲν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει, εἰς δὲ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἀφι-
κόμενος τὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ
ὁμοῦ δὴ πάλιν συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν 9
κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Ἑλλήνων κέρας, ἔδεισαν οἱ
Ἕλληνες μὴ προσάγοιεν πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ περιπτύ-
ξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτοὺς κατακόψειαν· καὶ ἐδόκει
αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας καὶ ποιήσασθαι ὄπισθεν
τὸν ποταμόν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο, καὶ δὴ 10
βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστη-
σεν ἀντίαν τὴν φάλαγγα ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον μαχούμενος
συνήει. ὡς δὲ εἶδον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγύς τε ὄντας καὶ
παρατεταγμένους, αὖθις παιανίσαντες ἐπῆσαν πολὺ
προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. οἱ δ' αὖ βάρβαροι οὐκ 11
ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν ἔφευγον· οἷ
δ' ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι κώμης τινός· ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν
οἱ Ἕλληνες· ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης γήλοφος ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ 12
ἀνεστράφησαν οἱ ἀμφὶ βασιλέα, πεζοὶ μὲν οὐκέτι, τῶν

δὲ ἱππέων ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη, ὥστε τὸ ποιούμενον X
γιγνώσκειν. καὶ τὸ βασίλειον σημεῖον ὁρᾶν ἔφασαν
ἀετόν τινα χρυσοῦν ἐπὶ πέλτῃ [ἐπὶ ξύλου] ἀνατετα-
μένον. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἐχώρουν οἱ Ἕλληνες, λεί- 13
πουσι δὴ καὶ τὸν λόφον οἱ ἱππεῖς· οὐ μὴν ἔτι ἀθρόοι
ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν· ἐψιλοῦτο δ' ὁ λόφος τῶν ἱππέων·
τέλος δὲ καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. ὁ οὖν Κλέαρχος 14
οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτὸν στήσας
τὸ στράτευμα πέμπει Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον
ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ
λόφου τί ἐστιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι. καὶ ὁ Λύκιος ἤλασέ τε 15
καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγγέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. σχε-
δὸν δ' ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν καὶ ἥλιος ἐδύετο.

THE GREEKS WONDER WHERE CYRUS IS. THEY RETURN ABOUT SUPPER TIME TO THEIR CAMP, TO FIND IT PLUNDERED, AND PASS THE NIGHT HUNGRY.

Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἔστησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ θέμενοι τὰ 16
ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι οὐδα-
μοῦ Κῦρος φαίνοιτο οὐδ' ἄλλος ἀπ' αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς πα-
ρήει· οὐ γὰρ ᾔδεσαν αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' ἤκαζον ἢ
διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι ἢ καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακέναι·
καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο εἰ αὐτοῦ μείναντες τὰ σκευο- 17
φόρα ἐνταῦθα ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἀμφὶ δορπη-
στὸν ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. ταύτης μὲν τῆς ἡμέρας τοῦτο 18
τὸ τελος ἐγένετο. καταλαμβάνουσι δὲ τῶν τε ἄλλων
χρημάτων τὰ πλεῖστα διηρπασμένα καὶ εἴ τι σιτίον ἢ
ποτὸν ἦν, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ οἴνου,
ἃς παρεσκευάσατο Κῦρος, ἵνα εἴ ποτε σφόδρα τὸ στρά-
τευμα λάβοι τις ἔνδεια, διαδιδοίη τοῖς Ἕλλησιν —

ἦσαν δ' αὗται τετρακόσιαι ὡς ἐλέγοντο ἄμαξαι — καὶ X
ταύτας τότε οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν. ὥστε ἄδειπνοι 19
ἦσαν οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι· πρὶν γὰρ δὴ καταλῦσαι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οὕτω διεγένοντο.

B

THE GREEKS HEAR OF CYRUS'S DEATH AND OFFER TO MAKE ARIAEUS KING.

[1] Ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθόντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθαύ- 2
μαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε ἄλλον πέμπει σημανοῦντα ὅ,τι
χρὴ ποιεῖν οὔτε αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς
συσκευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένοις προϊέναι
εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἕως Κύρῳ συμμείξειαν. ἤδη δὲ ἐν 3
ὁρμῇ ὄντων ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνέχοντι ἦλθε Προκλῆς ὁ Τευ-
θρανίας ἄρχων, γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος,
καὶ Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ. οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν τέ-
θνηκεν, Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἴη μετὰ
τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ὅθεν τῇ προτεραίᾳ ὥρμηντο,
καὶ λέγει ὅτι ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν περιμενοῖεν αὐ-
τούς, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἥκειν, τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ ἀπιέναι φαίη ἐπὶ
Ἰωνίας, ὅθενπερ ἦλθε. ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ 4
καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι βαρέως ἔφερον.
Κλέαρχος δὲ τάδε εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' ὤφελε μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν·
ἐπεὶ δὲ τετελεύτηκεν, ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ ὅτι ἡμεῖς
νικῶμέν τε βασιλέα καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἡμῖν μά-
χεται, καὶ εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἤλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἂν ἐπὶ

[1] [Ὡς μὲν οὖν ἠθροίσθη Κύρῳ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅτε ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀρταξέρξην I
ἐστρατεύετο, καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ ἐπράχθη καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο καὶ ὡς Κῦρος
ἐτελεύτησε καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐλθόντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκοιμήθησαν οἰόμενοι
τὰ πάντα νικᾶν καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.]

βασιλέα. ἐπαγγελλόμεθα δὲ Ἀριαίῳ, ἐὰν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, 1
εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασίλειον καθιεῖν αὐτόν· τῶν γὰρ
μάχην νικώντων καὶ τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστί. ταῦτα εἰπὼν 5
ἀποστέλλει τοὺς ἀγγέλους καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον
τὸν Λάκωνα καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· καὶ γὰρ αὐ-
τὸς Μένων ἐβούλετο· ἦν γὰρ φίλος καὶ ξένος Ἀριαίου.

BEASTS OF BURDEN KILLED FOR FOOD.

Οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο, Κλέαρχος δὲ περιέμενε· τὸ δὲ στρά- 6
τευμα ἐπορίζετο σῖτον [καὶ ποτὸν] ὅπως ἐδύνατο ἐκ
τῶν ὑποζυγίων κόπτοντες τοὺς βοῦς καὶ ὄνους· ξύλοις
δὲ ἐχρῶντο μικρὸν προϊόντες ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος οὗ ἡ
μάχη ἐγένετο τοῖς τε οἰστοῖς πολλοῖς οὖσιν, οὓς ἠνάγ-
καζον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκβάλλειν τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ
βασιλέως, καὶ τοῖς γέρροις καὶ ταῖς ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλί-
ναις ταῖς Αἰγυπτίαις· πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ πέλται καὶ
ἄμαξαι ἦσαν φέρεσθαι ἔρημοι ⟨οὖσαι⟩· οἷς πᾶσι χρώ-
μενοι κρέα ἕψοντες ἤσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.

THE KING SENDS PHALINUS TO DEMAND THE SURRENDER OF THE GREEKS.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἀμφὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγορὰν καὶ ἔρ- 7
χονται παρὰ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες οἱ
μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι, ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος εἷς Ἕλλην,
ὃς ἐτύγχανε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνει ὢν καὶ ἐντίμως ἔχων·
καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο ἐπιστήμων εἶναι τῶν ἀμφὶ τάξεις
τε καὶ ὁπλομαχίαν. οὗτοι δὲ προσελθόντες καὶ καλέ- 8
σαντες τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἄρχοντας λέγουσιν ὅτι βασι-
λεὺς κελεύει τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει καὶ
Κῦρον ἀπέκτονε, παραδόντας τὰ ὅπλα ἰόντας ἐπὶ βασι-
λέως θύρας εὑρίσκεσθαι ἄν τι δύνωνται ἀγαθόν. ταῦτα 9

μὲν εἶπον οἱ βασιλέως κήρυκες· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες βαρέως I
μὲν ἤκουσαν, ὅμως δὲ Κλέαρχος τοσοῦτον εἶπεν ὅτι
οὐ τῶν νικώντων εἴη τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι· ἀλλ', ἔφη,
ὑμεῖς μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί, τούτοις ἀποκρίνασθε
ὅ,τι κάλλιστόν τε καὶ ἄριστον ἔχετε· ἐγὼ δὲ αὐτίκα
ἥξω. ἐκάλεσε γάρ τις αὐτὸν τῶν ὑπηρετῶν, ὅπως ἴδοι
τὰ ἱερὰ ἐξῃρημένα· ἔτυχε γὰρ θυόμενος.

COLLOQUY BETWEEN GREEK LEADERS AND PHALINUS.

Ἔνθα δὴ ἀπεκρίνατο Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἀρκὰς πρεσβύ- 10
τατος ὢν ὅτι πρόσθεν ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ τὰ ὅπλα παραδοίησαν· Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Θηβαῖος, Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη, ὦ
Φαλῖνε, θαυμάζω πότερα ὡς κρατῶν βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ
ὅπλα ἢ ὡς διὰ φιλίαν δῶρα. εἰ μὲν γὰρ ὡς κρατῶν,
τί δεῖ αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐ λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα; εἰ δὲ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν, λεγέτω τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις,
ἐὰν αὐτῷ ταῦτα χαρίσωνται. πρὸς ταῦτα Φαλῖνος 11
εἶπε· Βασιλεὺς νικᾶν ἡγεῖται, ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε.
τίς γὰρ αὐτῷ ἔτι τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀντιποιεῖται; νομίζει δὲ
καὶ ὑμᾶς ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι, ἔχων ἐν μέσῃ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ
καὶ ποταμῶν ἐντὸς ἀδιαβάτων καὶ πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων
ἐφ' ὑμᾶς δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν ὅσον οὐδ' εἰ παρέχοι ὑμῖν
δύναισθε ἂν ἀποκτεῖναι. μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθη-
ναῖος εἶπεν· Ὦ Φαλῖνε, νῦν, ὡς σὺ ὁρᾷς, ἡμῖν οὐδὲν 12
ἔστιν ἀγαθὸν ἄλλο εἰ μὴ ὅπλα καὶ ἀρετή. ὅπλα μὲν
οὖν ἔχοντες οἰόμεθα ἂν καὶ τῇ ἀρετῇ χρῆσθαι, παραδόντες δ' ἂν ταῦτα καὶ τῶν σωμάτων στερηθῆναι. μὴ
οὖν οἷον τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ ἡμῖν ὄντα ὑμῖν παραδώσειν,
ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ περὶ τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγαθῶν
μαχούμεθα. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Φαλῖνος ἐγέλασε καὶ 13

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ φιλοσόφῳ μὲν ἔοικας, ὦ νεανίσκε, καὶ I
λέγεις οὐκ ἀχάριτα· ἴσθι μέντοι ἀνόητος ὤν, εἰ οἴει
τὴν ὑμετέραν ἀρετὴν περιγενέσθαι ἂν τῆς βασιλέως
δυνάμεως. ἄλλους δέ τινας ἔφασαν λέγειν ὑπομαλα- 14
κιζομένους ὡς καὶ Κύρῳ πιστοὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ βασιλεῖ
ἂν πολλοῦ ἄξιοι γένοιντο, εἰ βούλοιτο φίλος γενέσθαι·
καὶ εἴτε ἄλλο τι θέλοι χρῆσθαι εἴτ' ἔπ' Αἴγυπτον στρα-
τεύειν, συγκαταστρέψαιντ' ἂν αὐτῷ.

PHALINUS, TOLD THAT THE GREEKS WILL NOT GIVE UP THEIR ARMS, ANNOUNCES THE KING'S TERMS OF TRUCE.

Ἐν τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἧκε, καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη ἀπο- 15
κεκριμένοι εἶεν. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑπολαβὼν εἶπεν· Οὗτοι
μέν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει· σὺ δ' ἡμῖν εἰπὲ τί
λέγεις. ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἐγώ σε, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος ἑώ- 16
ρακα, οἶμαι δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες· σύ τε γὰρ Ἕλλην
εἶ καὶ ἡμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ὅσους σὺ ὁρᾷς· ἐν τοιού-
τοις δὲ ὄντες πράγμασι συμβουλευόμεθά σοι τί χρὴ
ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις. σὺ οὖν πρὸς θεῶν συμβού- 17
λευσον ἡμῖν ὅ,τι σοι δοκεῖ κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον εἶναι,
καὶ ὃ σοι τιμὴν οἴσει εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον ἀναλεγό-
μενον, ὅτι Φαλῖνός ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως κε-
λεύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὰ ὅπλα παραδοῦναι ξυμβου-
λευομένοις ξυνεβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς τάδε. οἶσθα δὲ ὅτι
ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἃ ἂν ξυμβουλεύσῃς.
ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ὑπήγετο βουλόμενος καὶ αὐτὸν 18
τὸν παρὰ βασιλέως πρεσβεύοντα συμβουλεῦσαι μὴ
παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα, ὅπως εὐέλπιδες μᾶλλον εἶεν οἱ
Ἕλληνες. Φαλῖνος δὲ ὑποστρέψας παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐ-
τοῦ εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων μία τις 19
ὑμῖν ἐστι σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω

μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα· εἰ δέ τοι μηδεμία σωτηρίας I
ἐστὶν ἐλπὶς ἄκοντος βασιλέως, ξυμβουλεύω σῴζεσθαι
ὑμῖν ὅπῃ δυνατόν. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· 20
Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ σὺ λέγεις· παρ' ἡμῶν δὲ ἀπάγ-
γελλε τάδε ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἰόμεθα, εἰ μὲν δέοι βασιλεῖ φίλους
εἶναι, πλείονος ἂν ἄξιοι εἶναι φίλοι ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα ἢ
παραδόντες ἄλλῳ, εἰ δὲ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἄμεινον ἂν πολε-
μεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα ἢ ἄλλῳ παραδόντες. ὁ δὲ Φαλῖ- 21
νος εἶπε· Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ τάδε
ὑμῖν εἰπεῖν ἐκέλευσε βασιλεὺς ὅτι μένουσι μὲν ὑμῖν αὐ-
τοῦ σπονδαὶ εἴησαν, προϊοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιοῦσι πόλεμος.
εἴπατε οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ σπον-
δαί εἰσιν ἢ ὡς πολέμου ὄντος παρ' ὑμῶν ἀπαγγελῶ.
Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεξεν· Ἀπάγγελλε τοίνυν καὶ περὶ τού- 22
του ὅτι καὶ ἡμῖν ταὐτὰ δοκεῖ ἅπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ. Τί
οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ Κλέ-
αρχος· Ἢν μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαί, ἀπιοῦσι δὲ καὶ
προϊοῦσι πόλεμος. ὃ δὲ πάλιν ἠρώτησε· Σπονδὰς ἢ 23
πόλεμον ἀπαγγελῶ; Κλέαρχος δὲ ταὐτὰ πάλιν ἀπε-
κρίνατο· Σπονδαὶ μένουσιν, ἀπιοῦσι δὲ ἢ προϊοῦσι
πόλεμος. ὅ,τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.

ARIAEUS DECLINES THE OFFER OF THE GREEKS, BUT INVITES THEM TO JOIN HIM.

Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ ᾤχετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ παρὰ II
Ἀριαίου ἦκον Προκλῆς καὶ Χειρίσοφος· Μένων δὲ
αὐτοῦ ἔμενε παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ· οὗτοι δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι πολ-
λοὺς φαίη ὁ Ἀριαῖος εἶναι Πέρσας ἑαυτοῦ βελτίους,
οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ
βούλεσθε συναπιέναι, ἤκειν ἤδη κελεύει τῆς νυκτός.
εἰ δὲ μή, αὔριον πρῲ ἀπιέναι φησίν. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος 2

εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' οὕτω χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἐὰν μὲν ἥκωμεν, ὥσπερ II
λέγετε· εἰ δὲ μή, πράττετε ὁποῖον ἄν τι ὑμῖν οἴησθε
μάλιστα συμφέρειν. ὅ,τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐδὲ τούτοις εἶπε.

ARIAEUS' INVITATION ACCEPTED. CLEARCHUS IN COMMAND. FIRST DESERTION.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἤδη ἡλίου δύνοντος συγκαλέσας στρα- 3
τηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες,
θυομένῳ ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά. καὶ
εἰκότως ἄρα οὐκ ἐγίγνετο· ὡς γὰρ ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνο-
μαι, ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ βασιλέως ὁ Τίγρης ποταμός
ἐστι ναυσίπορος, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμεθα ἄνευ πλοίων
διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἔχομεν. οὐ μὲν δὴ αὐ-
τοῦ γε μένειν οἷόν τε· τὰ γὰρ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκ ἔστιν
ἔχειν· ἰέναι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς Κύρου φίλους πάνυ καλὰ
ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν. ὧδε οὖν χρὴ ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας δειπ- 4
νεῖν ὅ,τι τις ἔχει· ἐπειδὰν δὲ σημήνῃ τῷ κέρατι ὡς
ἀναπαύεσθαι, συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὰν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον,
ἀνατίθεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ τρίτῳ ἕπεσθε
τῷ ἡγουμένῳ, τὰ μὲν ὑποζύγια ἔχοντες πρὸς τοῦ πο-
ταμοῦ, τὰ δὲ ὅπλα ἔξω. ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρα- 5
τηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπῆλθον καὶ ἐποίουν οὕτω. καὶ τὸ
λοιπὸν ὃ μὲν ἦρχεν, οἳ δὲ ἐπείθοντο, οὐχ ἑλόμενοι,
ἀλλὰ ὁρῶντες ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα,
οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄπειροι ἦσαν.[1]

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ σκότος ἐγένετο Μιλτοκύθης μὲν ὁ 7
Θρᾷξ ἔχων τούς τε ἱππέας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς τετ-

[1] [ἀριθμὸς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἣν ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας μέχρι τῆς μάχης σταθμοὶ 6
τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα, παρασάγγαι πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντακόσιοι, στάδιοι
πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακισχίλιοι καὶ μ′ριοι· ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης ἐλέγοντο εἶναι εἰς βα-
βυλῶνα στάδιοι ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι.]

MISSOURI BAPTIST COLLEGE LIBRARY

ταράκοντα καὶ τῶν πεζῶν Θρᾳκῶν ὡς τριακοσίους ηὐ- 11
τομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα.

SOLEMN COVENANT BETWEEN THE GREEKS AND ARIAEUS. THE LATTER'S PLAN OF RETREAT.

Κλέαρχος δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγεῖτο κατὰ τὰ παρηγ- 8
γελμένα, οἳ δ' εἵποντο· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶ-
τον σταθμὸν παρ' Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου στρατιὰν
ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα
ξυνῆλθον οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρ'
Ἀριαῖον· καὶ ὤμοσαν οἵ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος
καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ κράτιστοι μήτε προδώσειν ἀλλή-
λους σύμμαχοί τε ἔσεσθαι· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσώμο-
σαν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι ἀδόλως. ταῦτα δὲ ὤμοσαν, σφάξ- 9
αντες ταῦρον καὶ κάπρον καὶ κριὸν εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν
Ἕλληνες βάπτοντες ξίφος, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι λόγχην.
ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο, εἶπεν ὁ Κλέαρχος· Ἄγε δή, 10
ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπείπερ ὁ αὐτὸς ὑμῖν στόλος ἐστὶ καὶ ἡμῖν,
εἰπὲ τίνα γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας, πότερον
ἄπιμεν ἥνπερ ἤλθομεν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ ἐννενοηκέναι δο-
κεῖς ὁδὸν κρείττω. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· Ἦν μὲν ἤλθομεν ἀπι- 11
όντες παντελῶς ἂν ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἀπολοίμεθα· ὑπάρχει
γὰρ νῦν ἡμῖν οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. ἑπτακαίδεκα γὰρ
σταθμῶν τῶν ἐγγυτάτω οὐδὲ δεῦρο ἰόντες ἐκ τῆς χώ-
ρας οὐδὲν εἴχομεν λαμβάνειν· ἔνθα δέ τι ἦν, ἡμεῖς
διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπανήσαμεν. νῦν δ' ἐπινοοῦμεν
πορεύεσθαι μακροτέραν μέν, τῶν δ' ἐπιτηδείων οὐκ
ἀπορήσομεν. πορευτέον δ' ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθ- 12
μοὺς ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους, ἵνα ὡς πλεῖστον
ἀποσπάσωμεν τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος· ἦν γὰρ
ἅπαξ δύο ἢ τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπόσχωμεν, οὐκέτι μὴ

δύνηται βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς καταλαβεῖν. ὀλίγῳ μὲν γὰρ II
στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι· πολὺν δ' ἔχων
στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται ταχέως πορεύεσθαι· ἴσως δὲ καὶ
τῶν ἐπιτηδείων σπανιεῖ. ταύτην, ἔφη, τὴν γνώμην
ἔχω ἔγωγε.

RETREAT BEGUN. SIGNS OF THE ENEMY.

Ἦν δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία οὐδὲν ἄλλο δυναμένη ἢ 13
ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν· ἡ δὲ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλ-
λιον. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο ἐν δεξιᾷ
ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον, λογιζόμενοι ἥξειν ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι
εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ
ἐψεύσθησαν. ἔτι δὲ ἀμφὶ δείλην ἔδοξαν πολεμίους 14
ὁρᾶν ἱππέας· καὶ τῶν τε Ἑλλήνων οἳ μὴ ἔτυχον ἐν
ταῖς τάξεσιν ὄντες εἰς τὰς τάξεις ἔθεον, καὶ Ἀριαῖος,
ἐτύγχανε γὰρ ἐφ' ἁμάξης πορευόμενος διότι ἐτέτρωτο,
καταβὰς ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὡπλί- 15
ζοντο ἦκον λέγοντες οἱ προπεμφθέντες σκοποὶ ὅτι οὐχ
ἱππεῖς εἶεν ἀλλ' ὑποζύγια νέμοιντο. καὶ εὐθὺς ἔγνω-
σαν πάντες ὅτι ἐγγύς που ἐστρατοπεδεύετο βασιλεύς·
καὶ γὰρ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω.

FIRST ENCAMPMENT; TERROR AMONG THE ENEMY; PANIC AMONG THE GREEKS.

Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκ ἦγεν· 16
ᾔδει γὰρ καὶ ἀπειρηκότας τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἀσίτους
ὄντας· ἤδη δὲ καὶ ὀψὲ ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε,
φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη φεύγειν, ἀλλ' εὐθύωρον ἄγων
ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ δυομένῳ εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω κώμας τοὺς
πρώτους ἔχων κατεσκήνωσεν, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ
τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν
οἰκιῶν ξύλα. οἱ μὲν οὖν πρῶτοι ὅμως τρόπῳ τινὶ 17

ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, οἱ δὲ ὕστεροι σκοταῖοι προσιόντες II
ὡς ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστοι ηὐλίζοντο, καὶ κραυγὴν πολλὴν
ἐποίουν καλοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους
ἀκούειν· ὥστε οἱ μὲν ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ
ἔφυγον ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. δῆλον δὲ τοῦτο τῇ ὑστε-
ραίᾳ ἐγένετο· οὔτε γὰρ ὑποζύγιον ἔτ' οὐδὲν ἐφάνη 18
οὔτε στρατόπεδον οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. ἐξ-
επλάγη δέ, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρα-
τεύματος. ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο οἷς τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἔπραττε.
προϊούσης μέντοι τῆς νυκτὸς ταύτης καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι 19
φόβος ἐμπίπτει, καὶ θόρυβος καὶ δοῦπος ἦν οἷον εἰκὸς
φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίγνεσθαι. Κλέαρχος δὲ Τολμίδην 20
Ἠλεῖον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ κήρυκα ἄρι-
στον τῶν τότε, ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε σιγὴν κηρύξαντα ὅτι
προαγορεύουσιν οἱ ἄρχοντες, ὃς ἂν τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν
ὄνον εἰς τὰ ὅπλα μηνύσῃ, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαν-
τον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατιῶται 21
ὅτι κενὸς ὁ φόβος εἴη καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. ἅμα δὲ
ὄρθρῳ παρήγγειλεν ὁ Κλέαρχος εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὅπλα
τίθεσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἥπερ εἶχον ὅτε ἦν ἡ μάχη.

HERALDS FROM THE KING. TRUCE CONCLUDED FOR THE GREEKS TO GET SUPPLIES.

Ὁ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ, III
τῷδε δῆλον ἦν. τῇ μὲν γὰρ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων
τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι ἐκέλευε, τότε δὲ ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνα-
τέλλοντι κήρυκας ἔπεμψε περὶ σπονδῶν. οἳ δ' ἐπεὶ 2
ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρχοντας.
ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον οἱ προφύλακες, Κλέαρχος τυχὼν
τότε τὰς τάξεις ἐπισκοπῶν εἶπεν τοῖς προφύλαξι κε-
λεύειν τοὺς κήρυκας περιμένειν ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ. ἐπεὶ 3

δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὡς καλῶς ἔχειν ὁρᾶσθαι III
πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνήν, ἐκτὸς τῶν ὅπλων δὲ μη-
δένα καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ αὐ-
τός τε προῆλθε τούς τε εὐοπλοτάτους ἔχων καὶ εὐει-
δεστάτους τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
στρατηγοῖς ταὐτὰ ἔφρασεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγ- 4
γέλοις, ἀνηρώτα [πρῶτα] τί βούλοιντο. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον
ὅτι περὶ σπονδῶν ἥκοιεν ἄνδρες οἵτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσον-
ται τά τε παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀπαγγεῖλαι καὶ
τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο·
Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοίνυν αὐτῷ ὅτι μάχης δεῖ πρῶτον· ἄρι- 5
στον γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων περὶ σπονδῶν
λέγειν τοῖς Ἕλλησι μὴ πορίσας ἄριστον. ταῦτα ἀκού- 6
σαντες οἱ ἄγγελοι ἀπήλαυνον, καὶ ἦκον ταχύ· ᾧ καὶ
δῆλον ἦν ὅτι ἐγγύς που βασιλεὺς ἦν· ἢ ἄλλος τις ᾧ
ἐπετέτακτο ταῦτα πράττειν· ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι εἰκότα δο-
κοῖεν λέγειν βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἥκοιεν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες οἳ
αὐτούς, ἐὰν σπονδαὶ γένωνται, ἄξουσιν ἔνθεν ἔξουσι
τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ ἠρώτα εἰ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι 7
σπένδοιτο τοῖς ἰοῦσι καὶ ἀπιοῦσιν, ἢ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
ἔσοιντο σπονδαί. οἱ δέ, Ἅπασιν, ἔφασαν, μέχρι ἂν
βασιλεῖ τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν διαγγελθῇ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶπον, 8
μεταστησάμενος αὐτοὺς ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο· καὶ
ἐδόκει τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖσθαι ταχὺ [τε] καὶ καθ' ἡσυ-
χίαν ἐλθεῖν τε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ λαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ 9
Κλέαρχος εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μὲν κἀμοὶ ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι
ταχύ γε ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἔστ' ἂν οἰκήσωσιν
οἱ ἄγγελοι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ ἡμῖν τὰς σπονδὰς ποιήσασθαι·
οἶμαί γε μέντοι, ἔφη, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις
τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον παρέσεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει καιρὸς

εἶναι, ἀπήγγελλεν ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ εὐθὺς ἡγεῖσθαι III
ἐκέλευε πρὸς τἀπιτήδεια.

CLEARCHUS HASTENS THE MARCH; HIS SUSPICIONS AROUSED.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο, Κλέαρχος μέντοι ἐπορεύετο 10
τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς ποιησάμενος, τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἔχων
ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ὠπισθοφυλάκει. καὶ ἐνετύγχανον
τάφροις καὶ αὐλῶσιν ὕδατος πλήρεσιν ὡς μὴ δύνασθαι
διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο διαβάσεις ἐκ
τῶν φοινίκων οἳ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξέ-
κοπτον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν Κλέαρχον καταμαθεῖν ὡς 11
ἐπεστάτει, ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ ἔχων,
ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἴ τις αὐτῷ δοκοίη τῶν
πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένων βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν
ἐπιτήδειον ἔπαισεν ἄν, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς προσελάμβανεν
εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐμβαίνων· ὥστε πᾶσιν αἰσχύνην εἶναι
μὴ οὐ συσπουδάζειν. καὶ ἐτάχθησαν πρὸς αὐτὸ οἱ 12
⟨εἰς⟩ τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες· ἐπεὶ δὲ Κλέαρχον ἑώ-
ρων σπουδάζοντα, προσελάμβανον καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι.
πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδεν, ὑποπτεύων μὴ 13
αἰεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις εἶναι τὰς τάφρους ὕδατος· οὐ γὰρ
ἦν ὥρα οἷα τὸ πεδίον ἄρδειν· ἀλλ' ἵνα ἤδη πολλὰ
προφαίνοιτο τοῖς Ἕλλησι δεινὰ εἰς τὴν πορείαν, τού-
του ἕνεκα βασιλέα ὑπώπτευεν ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον τὸ ὕδωρ
ἀφεικέναι.

VILLAGES WITH ABUNDANT SUPPLIES. DATES AND PALM-WINE.

Πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας ὅθεν ἀπέδειξαν 14
οἱ ἡγεμόνες λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐνῆν δὲ σῖτος
πολὺς καὶ οἶνος φοινίκων καὶ ὄξος ἕψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν
αὐτῶν. αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων οἷας μὲν 15
ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν τοῖς οἰκέταις ἀπέκειντο,

αἱ δὲ τοῖς δεσπόταις ἀποκείμεναι ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, III
θαυμάσιαι τοῦ κάλλους καὶ μεγέθους, ἡ δὲ ὄψις ἠλέκ-
τρου οὐδὲν διέφερεν· τὰς δέ τινας ξηραίνοντες τραγή-
ματα ἀπετίθεσαν. καὶ ἦν καὶ παρὰ πότον ἡδὺ μέν,
κεφαλαλγὲς δέ. ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοί- 16
νικος πρῶτον ἔφαγον οἱ στρατιῶται, καὶ οἱ πολλοὶ
ἐθαύμαζον τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν ἰδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς.
ἦν δὲ σφόδρα καὶ τοῦτο κεφαλαλγές. ὁ δὲ φοίνιξ
ὅθεν ἐξαιρεθείη ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ὅλος ηὐαίνετο.

CONFERENCE WITH TISSAPHERNES.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ παρὰ μεγάλου 17
βασιλέως ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως γυναι-
κὸς ἀδελφὸς καὶ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τρεῖς· δοῦλοι δὲ πολ-
λοὶ εἵποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς οἱ τῶν Ἑλλή-
νων στρατηγοί, ἔλεγε πρῶτος Τισσαφέρνης δι' ἑρμη-
νέως τοιάδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, γείτων οἰκῶ τῇ 18
Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐπεὶ ὑμᾶς εἶδον εἰς πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα
πεπτωκότας, εὕρημα ἐποιησάμην εἴ πως δυναίμην παρὰ
βασιλέως αἰτήσασθαι δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι ὑμᾶς εἰς
τὴν Ἑλλάδα. οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν οὐκ ἀχαρίστως μοι ἔχειν
οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν οὔτε πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. ταῦτα 19
δὲ γνοὺς ᾐτούμην βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ ὅτι δικαίως ἄν
μοι χαρίζοιτο, ὅτι αὐτῷ Κῦρόν τε ἐπιστρατεύοντα
πρῶτος ἤγγειλα καὶ βοήθειαν ἔχων ἅμα τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ
ἀφικόμην, καὶ μόνος τῶν κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας τεταγμέ-
νων οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ διήλασα καὶ συνέμειξα βασιλεῖ
ἐν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ ἔνθα βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο,
ἐπεὶ Κῦρον ἀπέκτεινε καὶ τοὺς ξὺν Κύρῳ βαρβάρους
ἐδίωξε σὺν τοῖσδε τοῖς παροῦσι νῦν μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ
αὐτῷ εἰσι πιστότατοι. καὶ περὶ μὲν τούτων ὑπέσχετό 20

μοι βουλεύσεσθαι· ἐρέσθαι δέ με ὑμᾶς ἐκέλευεν ἐλ- III
θόντα τίνος ἕνεκεν ἐστρατεύσατε ἐπ' αὐτόν. καὶ συμ-
βουλεύω ὑμῖν μετρίως ἀποκρίνασθαι, ἵνα μοι εὐπρακ-
τότερον ᾖ ἐάν τι δύνωμαι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν παρ' αὐτοῦ
διαπράξασθαι.

CLEARCHUS STATES HOW THE GREEKS CAME TO MAKE THE EXPEDITION, AND THEIR WISH NOW SIMPLY TO RETURN HOME.

Πρὸς ταῦτα μεταστάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐβουλεύοντο· 21
καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο, Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε
συνήλθομεν ὡς βασιλεῖ πολεμήσοντες οὔτε ἐπορευό-
μεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ πολλὰς προφάσεις Κῦρος
ηὕρισκεν, ὡς καὶ σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα ὑμᾶς τε ἀπαρασκεύ-
ους λάβοι καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἀγάγοι. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἤδη 22
αὐτὸν ἐωρῶμεν ἐν δεινῷ ὄντα, ᾐσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς
καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ
παρέχοντες ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς εὖ ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος 23
τέθνηκεν, οὔτε βασιλεῖ ἀντιποιούμεθα τῆς ἀρχῆς οὔτ'
ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα βουλοίμεθα ἂν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν
κακῶς ποιεῖν, οὐδ' αὐτὸν ἀποκτεῖναι ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν,
πορευοίμεθα δ' ἂν οἴκαδε, εἴ τις ἡμᾶς μὴ λυποίη·
ἀδικοῦντα μέντοι πειρασόμεθα σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύ-
νασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις ἡμᾶς καὶ εὖ ποιῶν ὑπάρχῃ,
καὶ τούτου εἴς γε δύναμιν οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα εὖ ποι-
οῦντες. ὃ μὲν οὕτως εἶπεν· ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρ- 24
νης Ταῦτα, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ καὶ ὑμῖν πάλιν
τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· μέχρι δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἥκω αἱ σπονδαὶ
μενόντων· ἀγορὰν δὲ ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν.

THE KING CONSENTS AND A COMPACT IS MADE.

Καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἧκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ Ἕλ- 25
ληνες ἐφρόντιζον· τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἥκων ἔλεγεν ὅτι

διαπεπραγμένος ἥκοι παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι αὐτῷ III
σῴζειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πολλῶν ἀντιλεγόντων
ὡς οὐκ ἄξιον εἴη βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν
στρατευσαμένους. τέλος δὲ εἶπε· Καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν 26
ὑμῖν πιστὰ λαβεῖν παρ' ἡμῶν ἢ μὴν φιλίαν παρέξειν
ὑμῖν τὴν χώραν καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
ἀγορὰν παρέχοντας· ὅπου δ' ἂν μὴ ᾖ πρίασθαι, λαμ-
βάνειν ὑμᾶς ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐάσομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὑμᾶς 27
δὲ αὖ ἡμῖν δεήσει ὁμόσαι ἢ μὴν πορεύσεσθαι ὡς διὰ
φιλίας ἀσινῶς σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ λαμβάνοντας ὁπόταν μὴ
ἀγορὰν παρέχωμεν· ἣν δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγοράν, ὠνου-
μένους ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν 28
καὶ δεξιὰς ἔδοσαν αὖ Τισσαφέρνης καὶ ὁ τῆς βασιλέως
γυναικὸς ἀδελφὸς τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς καὶ
λοχαγοῖς καὶ ἔλαβον παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. μετὰ δὲ 29
ταῦτα Τισσαφέρνης εἶπεν· Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς
βασιλέα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ δέομαι, ἥξω συ-
σκευασάμενος ὡς ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ
αὐτὸς ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ ἀρχήν.

GROWING MISTRUST OF ARIAEUS. BUT CLEARCHUS IS VERY UNWILLING THAT THE GREEKS GO AWAY.

Μετὰ ταῦτα περιέμενον Τισσαφέρνην οἵ τε Ἕλληνες IV
καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἡμέ-
ρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται
πρὸς Ἀριαῖον καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι
καὶ πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ Περσῶν τινες, παρεθάρρυνόν
τε καὶ δεξιὰς ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως ἔφερον μὴ μνη-
σικακήσειν βασιλέα αὐτοῖς τῆς σὺν Κύρῳ ἐπιστρατείας
μηδὲ ἄλλου μηδενὸς τῶν παροιχομένων. τούτων δὲ 2
γιγνομένων ἔνδηλοι ἦσαν οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον ἧττον προσ-

ἔχοντες τοῖς Ἕλλησι τὸν νοῦν· ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο IV
τοῖς μὲν πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλὰ
προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἔλεγον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις στρα-
τηγοῖς· Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι βασιλεὺς 3
ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι ἂν περὶ παντὸς ποιήσαιτο, ἵνα καὶ τοῖς
ἄλλοις Ἕλλησι φόβος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα μέγαν στρατεύ-
ειν; καὶ νῦν μὲν ἡμᾶς ὑπάγεται μένειν διὰ τὸ διεσπάρ-
θαι αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα· ἐπὴν δὲ πάλιν ἁλισθῇ αὐτῷ
ἡ στρατιά, οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν. ἴσως 4
δέ που ἢ ἀποσκάπτει τι ἢ ἀποτειχίζει, ὡς ἄπορος ᾖ ἡ
ὁδός. οὐ γάρ ποτε ἑκών γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντας
εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀπαγγεῖλαι ὡς ἡμεῖς τοσοίδε ὄντες
ἐνικῶμεν τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ καὶ κατα-
γελάσαντες ἀπήλθομεν. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς 5
ταῦτα λέγουσιν· Ἐγὼ ἐνθυμοῦμαι μὲν καὶ ταῦτα πάν-
τα· ἐννοῶ δ' ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν, δόξομεν ἐπὶ πολέμῳ
ἀπιέναι καὶ παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς ποιεῖν. ἔπειτα πρῶτον
μὲν ἀγορὰν οὐδεὶς παρέξει ἡμῖν οὐδὲ ὅθεν ἐπισιτιού-
μεθα· αὖθις δὲ ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς ἔσται· καὶ ἅμα
ἂν ταῦτα ποιούντων ἡμῶν εὐθὺς Ἀριαῖος ἀποσταίη·
ὥστε φίλος ἡμῖν οὐδεὶς λελείψεται, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ πρό-
σθεν ὄντες πολέμιοι ἡμῖν ἔσονται. ποταμὸς δ' εἰ μέν 6
τις καὶ ἄλλος ἄρα ἡμῖν ἐστι διαβατέος οὐκ οἶδα· τὸν
δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην οἴδαμεν ὅτι ἀδύνατον διαβῆναι κω-
λυόντων πολεμίων. οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν μάχεσθαί γε δέῃ
ἱππεῖς εἰσιν ἡμῖν ξύμμαχοι, τῶν δὲ πολεμίων ἱππεῖς
εἰσιν [οἱ] πλεῖστοι καὶ πλείστου ἄξιοι· ὥστε νικῶντες
μὲν τίνα ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; ἡττωμένων δὲ οὐδένα οἷόν
τε σωθῆναι. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν βασιλέα, ᾧ οὕτω πολλά 7
ἐστι τὰ σύμμαχα, εἴπερ προθυμεῖται ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσαι,

οὐκ οἶδα ὅ,τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὀμόσαι καὶ δεξιὰν δοῦναι καὶ IV
θεοὺς ἐπιορκῆσαι καὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ πιστὰ ἄπιστα ποιῆσαι
Ἕλλησί τε καὶ βαρβάροις. τοιαῦτα πολλὰ ἔλεγεν.

TISSAPHERNES RETURNS AND ALL SET OFF. MUTUAL DISTRUST.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ 8
δύναμιν ὡς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιὼν καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
δύναμιν· ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τὴν βασιλέως ἐπὶ
γάμῳ. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἤδη Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου καὶ 9
ἀγορὰν παρέχοντος ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ Ἀρι-
αῖος τὸ Κύρου βαρβαρικὸν ἔχων στράτευμα ἅμα Τισ-
σαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντᾳ καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν
ἐκείνοις. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους αὐτοὶ ἐφ' 10
ἑαυτῶν ἐχώρουν ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο
δὲ ἑκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλήλων παρασάγγην καὶ
πλέον· ἐφυλάττοντο δὲ ἀμφότεροι ὥσπερ πολεμίους
ἀλλήλους, καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ὑποψίαν παρεῖχεν. ἐνίοτε 11
δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ χόρτον καὶ ἄλλα
τοιαῦτα ξυλλέγοντες πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον ἀλλήλοις· ὥστε
καὶ τοῦτο ἔχθραν παρεῖχε.

"MEDIAN WALL." CANALS FROM THE TIGRIS.

Διελθόντες δὲ τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ 12
Μηδίας καλούμενον τεῖχος, καὶ παρῆλθον εἴσω αὐτοῦ.
ἦν δὲ ᾠκοδομημένον πλίνθοις ὀπταῖς ἐν ἀσφάλτῳ κει-
μέναις, εὖρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν, ὕψος δὲ ἑκατόν· μῆκος
δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασαγγῶν· ἀπεῖχε δὲ Βαβυ-
λῶνος οὐ πολύ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς 13
δύο παρασάγγας ὀκτώ· καὶ διέβησαν διώρυχας δύο,
τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ γεφύρας, τὴν δὲ ἐζευγμένην πλοίοις
ἑπτά· αὗται δ' ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ·

κατετέτμηντο δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν καὶ τάφροι ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν, IV
αἱ μέν πρῶται μεγάλαι, ἔπειτα δὲ ἐλάττους· τέλος
δὲ καὶ μικροὶ ὀχετοί, ὥσπερ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐπὶ τὰς
μελίνας.

FALSE WARNING TO THE GREEKS OF INTENDED ATTACK BY TISSAPHERNES.

Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν· πρὸς
ᾧ πόλις ἦν μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος ᾗ ὄνομα Σιτ-
τάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ σταδίους πεντεκαίδεκα.
οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἕλληνες παρ' αὐτὴν ἐσκήνησαν ἐγγὺς 14
παραδείσου μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ καὶ δασέος παντοίων
δένδρων, οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τίγρητα·
οὐ μέντοι καταφανεῖς ἦσαν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ἔτυ- 15
χον ἐν περιπάτῳ ὄντες πρὸ τῶν ὅπλων Πρόξενος καὶ
Ξενοφῶν· καὶ προσελθὼν ἄνθρωπός τις ἠρώτησε τοὺς
προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον ἢ Κλέαρχον· Μέ-
νωνα δὲ οὐκ ἐζήτει, καὶ ταῦτα παρ' Ἀριαίου ὢν τοῦ
Μένωνος ξένου. ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι αὐτός 16
εἰμι ὃν ζητεῖς, εἶπεν ὁ ἄνθρωπος τάδε. Ἔπεμψέ με
Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος, πιστοὶ ὄντες Κύρῳ καὶ ὑμῖν
εὖνοι, καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι μὴ ὑμῖν ἐπιθῶνται
τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ βάρβαροι· ἔστι δὲ στράτευμα πολὺ ἐν
τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. καὶ παρὰ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ 17
Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ πέμψαι κελεύουσι φυλακήν, ὡς
διανοεῖται αὐτὴν λῦσαι Τισσαφέρνης τῆς νυκτός, ἐὰν
δύνηται, ὡς μὴ διαβῆτε ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ ἀποληφθῆτε
τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα 18
ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον καὶ φράζουσιν ἃ
λέγει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας ἐταράχθη σφόδρα καὶ
ἐφοβεῖτο.

Νεανίσκος δέ τις τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας εἶπεν ὡς IV
οὐκ ἀκόλουθα εἴη τό τε ἐπιθήσεσθαι καὶ τὸ λύσειν 19
τὴν γέφυραν. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους ἢ νικᾶν
δεήσει ἢ ἡττᾶσθαι. ἐὰν μὲν οὖν νικῶσι, τί δεῖ λύειν
αὐτοὺς τὴν γέφυραν; οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν πολλαὶ γέφυραι
ὦσιν ἔχοιμεν ἂν ὅποι φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθῶμεν. ἐὰν 20
δὲ ἡμεῖς νικῶμεν, λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας οὐχ ἕξουσιν
ἐκεῖνοι ὅποι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὴν βοηθῆσαι πολλῶν
ὄντων πέραν οὐδεὶς αὐτοῖς δυνήσεται λελυμένης τῆς
γεφύρας.

EXPLANATION OF THE FALSE MESSAGE.

Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ταῦτα ἤρετο τὸν ἄγγελον 21
πόση τις εἴη χώρα ἡ ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς
διώρυχος. ὃ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι πολλὴ καὶ κῶμαι ἔνεισι καὶ
πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι. τότε δὴ καὶ ἐγνώσθη ὅτι 22
οἱ βάρβαροι τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὑποπέμψαιεν, ὀκνοῦντες
μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν μείναιεν ἐν τῇ
νήσῳ ἐρύματα ἔχοντες ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα, ἔνθεν
δὲ τὴν διώρυχα· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἔχοιεν ἐκ τῆς ἐν
μέσῳ χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀγαθῆς οὔσης καὶ τῶν ἐργα-
σομένων ἐνόντων· εἶτα δὲ καὶ ἀποστροφὴ γένοιτο εἴ
τις βούλοιτο βασιλέα κακῶς ποιεῖν.

THE GREEKS CROSS THE TIGRIS.

Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· ἐπὶ μέντοι τὴν γέφυ- 23
ραν ὅμως φυλακὴν ἔπεμψαν· καὶ οὔτε ἐπέθετο οὐδεὶς
οὐδαμόθεν οὔτε πρὸς τὴν γέφυραν οὐδεὶς ἦλθε τῶν
πολεμίων, ὡς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ 24
ἕως ἐγένετο, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν ἐζευγμένην πλοί-
οις τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ ὡς οἷόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγ-

μένως· ἐξήγγελλον γάρ τινες τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους IV
Ἑλλήνων ὡς διαβαινόντων μέλλοιεν ἐπιθήσεσθαι. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ψευδῆ ἦν· διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς αὐτῶν ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν τὸν ποταμόν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶδεν, ᾤχετο ἀπελαύνων.

MARCH TO THE RIVER ZAPATAS.

Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτ- 25
ταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσιν ἐπὶ τὸν Φύσκον ποταμόν, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου· ἐπῆν δὲ γέφυρα. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ᾠκεῖτο πόλις μεγάλη ὄνομα Ὦπις· πρὸς ἣν ἀπήντησε τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὁ Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου νόθος ἀδελφὸς ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ Ἐκβατάνων στρατιὰν πολλὴν ἄγων ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στρά- 26
τευμα παρερχομένους τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐθεώρει. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο μὲν εἰς δύο, ἐπορεύετο δὲ ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος· ὅσον δ' οὖν χρόνον τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπιστήσειε, τοσοῦτον ἦν ἀνάγκη χρόνον δι' ὅλου τοῦ στρατεύματος γίγνεσθαι τὴν ἐπίστασιν· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Ἕλλησι δόξαι πάμπολυ εἶναι, καὶ τὸν Πέρσην ἐκπεπλῆχθαι θεωροῦντα. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας 27
σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους ἓξ παρασάγγας τριάκοντα εἰς τὰς Παρυσάτιδος κώμας τῆς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως μητρός. ταύτας Τισσαφέρνης Κύρῳ ἐπεγγελῶν διαρπάσαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐπέτρεψε πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων. ἐνῆν δὲ σῖτος πολὺς καὶ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα. ἐντεῦθεν δ' 28
ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμὸν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες. ἐν δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταθμῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ πόλις ᾠκεῖτο

μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων ὄνομα Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι IV
διῆγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον.

CLEARCHUS SEEKS AN INTERVIEW WITH TISSAPHERNES.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν, V
τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέ-
ρας τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις ὑποψίαι μὲν ἦσαν, φανερὰ δὲ
οὐδεμία ἐφαίνετο ἐπιβουλή. ἔδοξεν οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ 2
ξυγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ εἴ πως δύναιτο παῦ-
σαι τὰς ὑποψίας πρὶν ἐξ αὐτῶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι· καὶ
ἔπεμψέν τινα ἐροῦντα ὅτι ξυγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ χρῄζει. ὃ
δὲ ἑτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἥκειν.

CLEARCHUS SPEAKS: TISSAPHERNES HAS NO GROUND FOR MISTRUSTING THE GREEKS; HE IS NOW THEIR ONLY HOPE; ALLIANCE WITH THE GREEKS WOULD MAKE HIM INVINCIBLE.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ξυνῆλθον, λέγει ὁ Κλέαρχος τάδε. Ἐγώ, 3
ὦ Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ἡμῖν ὅρκους γεγενημένους
καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας μὴ ἀδικήσειν ἀλλήλους· φυλαττ-
όμενον δὲ σέ τε ὁρῶ ὡς πολεμίους ἡμᾶς καὶ ἡμεῖς
ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν οὐ 4
δύναμαι οὔτε σὲ αἰσθέσθαι πειρώμενον ἡμᾶς κακῶς
ποιεῖν ἐγώ τε σαφῶς οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδὲ ἐπινοοῦ-
μεν τοιοῦτον οὐδέν, ἔδοξέ μοι εἰς λόγους σοι ἐλθεῖν,
ὅπως εἰ δυναίμεθα ἐξέλοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν ἀπιστίαν.
καὶ γὰρ οἶδα ἀνθρώπους ἤδη τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς 5
τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐξ ὑποψίας ὅτι φοβηθέντες ἀλλήλους
φθάσαι βουλόμενοι πρὶν παθεῖν ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα
κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλλοντας οὔτ' αὖ βουλομένους τοιοῦ-
τον οὐδέν. τὰς οὖν τοιαύτας ἀγνωμοσύνας νομίζων 6
συνουσίαις μάλιστα παύεσθαι ἥκω καὶ διδάσκειν σε
βούλομαι ὡς σὺ ἡμῖν οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς. πρῶτον 7

μὲν γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον οἱ θεῶν ἡμᾶς ὅρκοι κωλύουσι V
πολεμίους εἶναι ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων σύνοιδεν
αὐτῷ παρημεληκώς, τοῦτον ἐγὼ οὔποτ' ἂν εὐδαιμονί-
σαιμι. τὸν γὰρ θεῶν πόλεμον οὔτ' οἶδα ἀπὸ ποίου ἂν
τάχους οὔτε ὅποι ἄν τις φεύγων ἀποφύγοι οὔτ' εἰς ποῖον
〈ἂν〉 σκότος ἀποδραίη οὔθ' ὅπως ἂν εἰς ἐχυρὸν χωρίον
ἀποσταίη. πάντῃ γὰρ πάντα τοῖς θεοῖς ὕποχα καὶ
πάντων ἴσον οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι. περὶ μὲν δὴ τῶν 8
θεῶν τε καὶ τῶν ὅρκων οὕτω γιγνώσκω, παρ' οὓς
ἡμεῖς τὴν φιλίαν συνθέμενοι κατεθέμεθα· τῶν δ' ἀν-
θρωπίνων σὲ ἐγὼ ἐν τῷ παρόντι νομίζω μέγιστον
εἶναι ἡμῖν ἀγαθόν. σὺν μὲν γὰρ σοὶ πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς 9
εὔπορος, πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς διαβατός, τῶν τε ἐπιτηδείων
οὐκ ἀπορία· ἄνευ δὲ σοῦ πᾶσα μὲν διὰ σκότους ἡ
ὁδός· οὐδὲν γὰρ αὐτῆς ἐπιστάμεθα· πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς
δύσπορος, πᾶς δὲ ὄχλος φοβερός, φοβερώτατον δ'
ἐρημία· μεστὴ γὰρ πολλῆς ἀπορίας ἐστίν. εἰ δὲ δὴ 10
καὶ μανέντες σε κατακτείναιμεν, ἄλλο τι [ἂν] ἢ τὸν
εὐεργέτην κατακτείναντες πρὸς βασιλέα τὸν μέγιστον
ἔφεδρον πολεμήσομεν; ὅσων δὲ δὴ καὶ οἵων ἂν ἐλπί-
δων ἐμαυτὸν στερήσαιμι, εἰ σέ τι κακὸν ἐπιχειρήσαιμι
ποιεῖν, ταῦτα λέξω. ἐγὼ γὰρ Κῦρον ἐπεθύμησά μοι 11
φίλον γενέσθαι, νομίζων τῶν τότε ἱκανώτατον εἶναι
εὖ ποιεῖν ὃν βούλοιτο· σὲ δὲ νῦν ὁρῶ τήν τε Κύρου
δύναμιν καὶ χώραν ἔχοντα καὶ τὴν σαυτοῦ [χώραν]
σῴζοντα, τὴν δὲ βασιλέως δύναμιν, ᾗ Κῦρος πολεμίᾳ
ἐχρῆτο, σοὶ ταύτην ξύμμαχον οὖσαν. τούτων δὲ τοι- 12
ούτων ὄντων τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεται
σοὶ φίλος εἶναι; ἀλλὰ μὴν ἐρῶ γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα ἐξ ὧν
ἔχω ἐλπίδας καὶ σὲ βουλήσεσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν εἶναι.

οἶδα μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν Μυσοὺς λυπηροὺς ὄντας, οὓς νομίζω V
ἂν σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν παρασχεῖν· 13
οἶδα δὲ καὶ Πισίδας· ἀκούω δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ
τοιαῦτα εἶναι, ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἐνοχλοῦντα ἀεὶ τῇ
ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Αἰγυπτίους δέ, οἷς μάλιστα ὑμᾶς
γιγνώσκω τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὁρῶ ποίᾳ δυνάμει συμ-
μάχῳ χρησάμενοι μᾶλλον ἂν κολάσαισθε τῆς νῦν σὺν
ἐμοὶ οὔσης. ἀλλὰ μὴν ἔν γε τοῖς πέριξ οἰκοῦσι σὺ 14
εἰ μὲν βούλοιο φίλος ὡς μέγιστος ἂν εἴης, εἰ δέ τίς
σε λυποίη, ὡς δεσπότης ⟨ἂν⟩ ἀναστρέφοιο ἔχων ἡμᾶς
ὑπηρέτας, οἵ σοι οὐκ ἂν μισθοῦ ἕνεκα ὑπηρετοῖμεν
ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος ἣν σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ σοὶ ἂν
ἔχοιμεν δικαίως. ἐμοὶ μὲν ταῦτα πάντα ἐνθυμουμένῳ 15
οὕτω δοκεῖ θαυμαστὸν εἶναι τὸ σὲ ἡμῖν ἀπιστεῖν ὥστε
καὶ ἥδιστ' ἂν ἀκούσαιμι τὸ ὄνομα, τίς οὕτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς
λέγειν ὥστε σε πεῖσαι λέγων ὡς ἡμεῖς σοί ἐπιβουλεύο-
μεν. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν τοσαῦτα εἶπε· Τισσαφέρνης
δὲ ὧδε ἀπημείφθη.

TISSAPHERNES SPEAKS: THE GREEKS ARE COMPLETELY IN HIS POWER; BUT IT IS HIS INTEREST TO SAVE THEM.

Ἀλλ' ἥδομαι μέν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, [καὶ] ἀκούων σου 16
φρονίμους λόγους· ταῦτα γὰρ γιγνώσκων εἴ τι ἐμοὶ
κακὸν βουλεύοις, ἅμα ἄν μοι δοκεῖς καὶ σαυτῷ κακό-
νους εἶναι. ὡς δ' ἂν μάθῃς ὅτι οὐδ' ἂν ὑμεῖς δικαίως
οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοὶ ἀπιστοίητε, ἀντάκουσον. εἰ 17
γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι, πότερά σοι δοκοῦμεν
ἱππέων πλήθους ἀπορεῖν ἢ πεζῶν ἢ ὁπλίσεως ἐν ᾗ
ὑμᾶς μὲν βλάπτειν ἱκανοὶ εἴημεν ἄν, ἀντιπάσχειν δὲ
οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος; ἀλλὰ χωρίων ἐπιτηδείων ὑμῖν ἐπιτί- 18
θεσθαι ἀπορεῖν ἄν σοι δοκοῦμεν; οὐ τοσαῦτα μὲν
πεδία ἃ ὑμεῖς φίλια ὄντα σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ διαπορεύ-

εσθε, τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὁρᾶτε ὑμῖν ὄντα πορευτέα, ἃ V
ἡμῖν ἔξεστι προκαταλαβοῦσιν ἄπορα ὑμῖν παρέχειν,
τοσοῦτοι δ' εἰσὶ ποταμοὶ ἐφ' ὧν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ταμιεύ-
εσθαι ὁπόσοις ἂν ὑμῶν βουλώμεθα μάχεσθαι; εἰσὶ
δ' αὐτῶν οὓς οὐδ' ἂν παντάπασι διαβαίητε, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς
ὑμᾶς διαπορεύοιμεν. εἰ δ' ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἡττῴμεθα, 19
ἀλλὰ τό γέ τοι πῦρ κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ ἐστιν· ὃν
ἡμεῖς δυναίμεθ' ἂν κατακαύσαντες λιμὸν ὑμῖν ἀντι-
τάξαι, ᾧ ὑμεῖς οὐδ' εἰ πάνυ ἀγαθοὶ εἴητε μάχεσθαι
ἂν δύναισθε. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἔχοντες τοσούτους πόρους 20
πρὸς τὸ ὑμῖν πολεμεῖν, καὶ τούτων μηδένα ἡμῖν ἐπι-
κίνδυνον, ἔπειτα ἐκ τούτων πάντων τοῦτον ἂν τὸν
τρόπον ἐξελοίμεθα ὃς μόνος μὲν πρὸς θεῶν ἀσεβής,
μόνος δὲ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων αἰσχρός; παντάπασι δὲ ἀπό- 21
ρων ἐστὶ καὶ ἀμηχάνων καὶ ἐν ἀνάγκῃ ἐχομένων, καὶ
τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι δι' ἐπιορκίας τε
πρὸς θεοὺς καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους πράττειν τι.
οὐχ οὕτως ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὔτε ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε
ἠλίθιοί ἐσμεν. ἀλλὰ τί δὴ ὑμᾶς ἓξὸν ἀπολέσαι οὐκ 22
ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἤλθομεν; εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι ὁ ἐμὸς ἔρως τούτου
αἴτιος τὸ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐμὲ πιστὸν γενέσθαι, καὶ ᾧ
Κῦρος ἀνέβη ξενικῷ διὰ μισθοδοσίας πιστεύων τούτῳ
ἐμὲ καταβῆναι δι' εὐεργεσίαν ἰσχυρόν. ὅσα δ' ἐμοὶ 23
χρήσιμοι ὑμεῖς ἐστε τὰ μὲν καὶ σὺ εἶπας, τὸ δὲ μέ-
γιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· τὴν μὲν γὰρ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ τιάραν
βασιλεῖ μόνῳ ἔξεστιν ὀρθὴν ἔχειν, τὴν δ' ἐπὶ τῇ καρ-
δίᾳ ἴσως ἂν ὑμῶν παρόντων καὶ ἕτερος εὐπετῶς ἔχοι.

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἀληθῆ λέγειν· καὶ 24
εἶπεν· Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, οἵτινες τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς φιλίαν
ὑπαρχόντων πειρῶνται διαβάλλοντες ποιῆσαι πολε-

μίους ἡμᾶς ἄξιοί εἰσι τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν; Καὶ ἐγὼ V
μέν γε, ἔφη ὁ Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ βούλεσθέ μοι οἵ τε 25
στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐλθεῖν, ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ λέξω
τοὺς πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγοντας ὡς σὺ ἐμοὶ ἐπιβουλεύεις καὶ
τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ. Ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, ἄξω 26
πάντας, καὶ σοὶ αὖ δηλώσω ὅθεν ἐγὼ περὶ σοῦ ἀκούω.
ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσαφέρνης φιλοφρονού- 27
μενος τότε μὲν μένειν τε αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε καὶ σύνδειπνον
ἐποιήσατο.

CLEARCHUS IS DECEIVED, AND PERSUADES FOUR OTHER GENERALS AND TWENTY CAPTAINS TO COME TO A SECOND INTERVIEW.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀπελθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρα-
τόπεδον δῆλός τ' ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς οἰόμενος διακεῖσθαι
τῷ Τισσαφέρνει καὶ ἃ ἔλεγεν ἐκεῖνος ἀπήγγελλεν,
ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ Τισσαφέρνην οὗς ἐκέλευσεν,
καὶ οἳ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὡς
προδότας αὐτοὺς καὶ κακόνους τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὄντας
τιμωρηθῆναι. ὑπώπτευε δὲ εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα 28
Μένωνα, εἰδὼς αὐτὸν καὶ ⟨λάθρᾳ⟩ συγγεγενημένον
Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ
ἐπιβουλεύοντα, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα ἅπαν πρὸς αὐτὸν
λαβὼν φίλος ᾖ Τισσαφέρνει. ἐβούλετο δὲ καὶ Κλέαρ- 29
χος ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην
καὶ τοὺς παραλυποῦντας ἐκποδὼν εἶναι. τῶν δὲ στρα-
τιωτῶν ἀντέλεγόν τινες αὐτῷ μὴ ἰέναι πάντας τοὺς
λοχαγοὺς καὶ στρατηγοὺς μηδὲ πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει.
ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἰσχυρῶς κατέτεινεν, ἔστε διεπράξατο 30
πέντε μὲν στρατηγοὺς ἰέναι, εἴκοσι δὲ λοχαγούς· συνη-
κολούθησαν δὲ ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρα-
τιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι.

THESE ARE SEIZED OR SLAIN.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ θύραις ταῖς Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ μὲν V 31
στρατηγοὶ παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω, Πρόξενος Βοιώτιος,
Μένων Θετταλός, Ἀγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων,
Σωκράτης Ἀχαιός· οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἐπὶ θύραις ἔμενον.
οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου οἵ τ' 32
ἔνδον συνελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. μετὰ
δὲ ταῦτα τῶν βαρβάρων τινὲς ἱππέων διὰ τοῦ πεδίου
ἐλαύνοντες ᾧτινι ἐντυγχάνοιεν Ἕλληνι ἢ δούλῳ ἢ
ἐλευθέρῳ πάντας ἔκτεινον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τήν τε 33
ἱππασίαν ἐθαύμαζον ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὁρῶντες καὶ
ὅ,τι ἐποίουν ἠμφεγνόουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἧκε
φεύγων τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα καὶ τὰ ἔντερα
ἐν ταῖς χερσὶν ἔχων, καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα.
ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα πάντες 34
ἐκπεπληγμένοι καὶ νομίζοντες αὐτίκα ἥξειν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ
τὸ στρατόπεδον.

PRESENTLY ARIAEUS APPROACHES, BUT FAILS TO DECEIVE THE GREEKS, AND HIS DEMANDS ARE REJECTED.

Οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ Ἀρ- 35
τάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἳ ἦσαν Κύρῳ πιστότατοι·
ὁ δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἑρμηνεὺς ἔφη καὶ τὸν Τισσαφέρ-
νους ἀδελφὸν σὺν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν καὶ γιγνώσκειν· ξυνη-
κολούθουν δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν τεθωρακισμένοι εἰς
τριακοσίους. οὗτοι ἐπεὶ ἐγγὺς ἦσαν, προσελθεῖν ἐκέ- 36
λευον εἴ τις εἴη τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγός,
ἵνα ἀπαγγείλωσι τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξῆλ- 37
θον φυλαττόμενοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ μὲν Κλε-
άνωρ Ἐρχομένιος καὶ Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, σὺν

αὐτοῖς δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ V
Προξένου· Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὼν ἐν κώμῃ
τινὶ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζομένοις. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔστησαν 38
εἰς ἐπήκοον, εἶπεν Ἀριαῖος τάδε. Κλέαρχος μέν, ὦ
ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ ἐπιορκῶν τε ἐφάνη καὶ τὰς
σπονδὰς λύων, ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε, Πρόξενος
δὲ καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπιβουλήν,
ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ εἰσιν. ὑμᾶς δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰ ὅπλα
ἀπαιτεῖ· αὐτοῦ γὰρ εἶναί φησιν, ἐπείπερ Κύρου ἦσαν
τοῦ ἐκείνου δούλου. πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίναντο οἱ Ἕλ- 39
ληνες, ἔλεγε δὲ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἐρχομένιος· Ὦ κάκιστε
ἀνθρώπων Ἀριαῖε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἦτε Κύρου φίλοι,
οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς οὔτ' ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες
ὀμόσαντες ἡμῖν τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς νο-
μιεῖν, προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ἀθεωτάτῳ
τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ τούς τε ἄνδρας αὐτοὺς οἷς ὤμνυτε
ἀπολωλέκατε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἡμᾶς προδεδωκότες ξὺν
τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἔρχεσθε, ὁ δὲ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε· 40
Κλέαρχος γὰρ πρόσθεν ἐπιβουλεύων φανερὸς ἐγένετο
Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντᾳ, καὶ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν τοῖς ξὺν
τούτοις. ἐπὶ τούτῳ Ξενοφῶν τάδε εἶπε. Κλέαρχος 41
μὲν τοίνυν εἰ παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους ἔλυε τὰς σπονδάς,
τὴν δίκην ἔχει· δίκαιον γὰρ ἀπόλλυσθαι τοὺς ἐπιορ-
κοῦντας· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ Μένων ἐπείπερ εἰσὶν ὑμέ-
τεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι δὲ στρατηγοί, πέμψατε
αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι φίλοι γε ὄντες ἀμφοτέ-
ροις πειράσονται καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν τὰ βέλτιστα
ξυμβουλεῦσαι. πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι πολὺν χρό- 42
νον διαλεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις ἀπῆλθον οὐδὲν ἀποκρινά-
μενοι.

CHARACTERIZATION OF THE CAPTURED GENERALS. CLEARCHUS, A BORN SOLDIER, SEVERE DISCIPLINARIAN, TRUSTED BUT NOT LOVED BY HIS MEN.

VI Οἱ μὲν δὴ στρατηγοὶ οὕτω ληφθέντες ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα καὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλὰς ἐτελεύτησαν, εἷς μὲν αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν ἐμπεῖρως αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων δόξας γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ πολεμικὸς καὶ φιλοπόλεμος ἐσχάτως. καὶ γὰρ δὴ 2 ἕως μὲν πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς Δακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους παρέμενεν, ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο, πείσας τὴν αὑτοῦ πόλιν ὡς οἱ Θρᾷκες ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ διαπραξάμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν ἐφόρων ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμήσων τοῖς ὑπὲρ Χερρονήσου καὶ Περίνθου Θρᾳξίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ μεταγνόντες πως οἱ 3 ἔφοροι ἤδη ἔξω ὄντος ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν ἐπειρῶντο ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείθεται, ἀλλ' ᾤχετο πλέων εἰς Ἑλλήσποντον. ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν 4 ἐν Σπάρτῃ τελῶν ὡς ἀπειθῶν. ἤδη δὲ φυγὰς ὢν ἔρχεται πρὸς Κῦρον, καὶ ὁποίοις μὲν λόγοις ἔπεισε Κῦρον ἄλλῃ γέγραπται, δίδωσι δὲ αὐτῷ Κῦρος μυρίους δαρεικούς· ὁ δὲ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐπὶ ῥᾳθυμίαν ἐτράπετο, 5 ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων συλλέξας στράτευμα ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θρᾳξί, καὶ μάχῃ τε ἐνίκησε καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου δὴ ἔφερε καὶ ἦγε τούτους καὶ πολεμῶν διεγένετο μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος· τότε δὲ ἀπῆλθεν ὡς ξὺν ἐκείνῳ αὖ πολεμήσων. ταῦτα οὖν 6 φιλοπολέμου μοι δοκεῖ ἀνδρὸς ἔργα εἶναι, ὅστις ἐξὸν μὲν εἰρήνην ἄγειν ἄνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης αἱρεῖται πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ ῥᾳθυμεῖν βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε πολεμεῖν, ἐξὸν δὲ χρήματα ἔχειν ἀκινδύνως αἱρεῖται πολεμῶν μείονα ταῦτα ποιεῖν. ἐκεῖνος δὲ ὥσπερ εἰς

παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς ἄλλην τινὰ ἡδονὴν ἤθελε δαπανᾶν εἰς VI
πόλεμον. οὕτω μὲν φιλοπόλεμος ἦν· πολεμικὸς δὲ 7
αὖ ταύτῃ ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι φιλοκίνδυνός τε ἦν καὶ ἡμέ-
ρας καὶ νυκτὸς ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ ἐν τοῖς
δεινοῖς φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες πανταχοῦ πάντες
ὡμολόγουν. καὶ ἀρχικὸς δ' ἐλέγετο εἶναι ὡς δυνατὸν 8
ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου οἷον κἀκεῖνος εἶχεν. ἱκανὸς
μὲν γὰρ ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος φροντίζειν ἦν ὅπως ἔχοι ἡ
στρατιὰ αὐτῷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα,
ἱκανὸς δὲ καὶ ἐμποιῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν ὡς πειστέον
εἴη Κλεάρχῳ. τοῦτο δ' ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ χαλεπὸς εἶναι· 9
καὶ γὰρ ὁρᾶν στυγνὸς ἦν καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχύς, ἐκό-
λαζέ τε ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ὀργῇ ἐνίοτε, ὡς καὶ αὐτῷ μετα-
μέλειν ἔσθ' ὅτε. καὶ γνώμῃ δ' ἐκόλαζεν· ἀκολάστου 10
γὰρ στρατεύματος οὐδὲν ἡγεῖτο ὄφελος εἶναι, ἀλλὰ
καὶ λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν ὡς δέοι τὸν στρατιώτην
φοβεῖσθαι μᾶλλον τὸν ἄρχοντα ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ
μέλλοι ἢ φυλακὰς φυλάξειν ἢ φίλων ἀφέξεσθαι ἢ
ἀπροφασίστως ἰέναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ἐν μὲν οὖν 11
τοῖς δεινοῖς ἤθελον αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν σφόδρα καὶ οὐκ
ἄλλον ἤροῦντο οἱ στρατιῶται· καὶ γὰρ τὸ στυγνὸν
τότε φαιδρὸν αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις προσώποις ἔφασαν
φαίνεσθαι καὶ τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐρρωμένον πρὸς τοὺς πολε-
μίους ἐδόκει εἶναι, ὥστε σωτήριον, οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν
ἐφαίνετο· ὅτε δ' ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ γένοιντο καὶ ἐξείη 12
πρὸς ἄλλον ἀρξομένους ἀπιέναι, πολλοὶ αὐτὸν ἀπέ-
λειπον· τὸ γὰρ ἐπίχαρι οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ χαλεπὸς
ἦν καὶ ὠμός· ὥστε διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ στρατιῶται
ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. καὶ γὰρ οὖν φιλίᾳ 13
μὲν καὶ εὐνοίᾳ ἑπομένους οὐδέποτε εἶχεν· οἵτινες δὲ

ἢ ὑπὸ πόλεως τεταγμένοι ἢ ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι ἢ ἄλλῃ VI
τινὶ ἀνάγκῃ κατεχόμενοι παρείησαν αὐτῷ, σφόδρα
πειθομένοις ἐχρῆτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄρξαιντο νικᾶν ξὺν αὐτῷ 14
τοὺς πολεμίους, ἤδη μεγάλα ἦν τὰ χρησίμους ποιοῦντα
εἶναι τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ στρατιώτας· τό τε γὰρ πρὸς τοὺς
πολεμίους θαρραλέως ἔχειν παρῆν καὶ τὸ τὴν παρ'
ἐκείνου τιμωρίαν φοβεῖσθαι εὐτάκτους ἐποίει. τοιοῦτος 15
μὲν δὴ ἄρχων ἦν· ἄρχεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ ἄλλων οὐ μάλα
ἐθέλειν ἐλέγετο. ἦν δὲ ὅτε ἐτελεύτα ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντή-
κοντα ἔτη.

PROXENUS, AMBITIOUS, JUST, BUT NOT AWE-INSPIRING.

Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιώτιος εὐθὺς μὲν μειράκιον ὢν 16
ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν ἱκανός·
καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε Γοργίᾳ ἀργύ-
ριον τῷ Λεοντίνῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ, ἱκανὸς 17
νομίσας ἤδη εἶναι καὶ ἄρχειν καὶ φίλος ὢν τοῖς πρώ-
τοις μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς
σὺν Κύρῳ πράξεις· καὶ ᾤετο κτήσεσθαι ἐκ τούτων
ὄνομα μέγα καὶ δύναμιν μεγάλην καὶ χρήματα πολλά·
τοσούτων δ' ἐπιθυμῶν σφόδρα ἔνδηλον αὖ καὶ τοῦτο 18
εἶχεν ὅτι τούτων οὐδὲν ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι μετὰ ἀδι-
κίας, ἀλλὰ σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ ᾤετο δεῖν τού-
των τυγχάνειν, ἄνευ δὲ τούτων μή. ἄρχειν δὲ καλῶν 19
μὲν καὶ ἀγαθῶν δυνατὸς ἦν· οὐ μέντοι οὔτ' αἰδῶ τοῖς
στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτε φόβον ἱκανὸς ἐμποιῆσαι,
ἀλλὰ καὶ ᾐσχύνετο μᾶλλον τοὺς στρατιώτας ἢ οἱ ἀρ-
χόμενοι ἐκεῖνον· καὶ φοβούμενος μᾶλλον ἦν φανερὸς
τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ
ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ. ᾤετο δὲ ἀρκεῖν πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν 20

εἶναι καὶ δοκεῖν τὸν μὲν καλῶς ποιοῦντα ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν VI
δὲ ἀδικοῦντα μὴ ἐπαινεῖν. τοιγαροῦν αὐτῷ οἱ μὲν
καλοί τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ τῶν συνόντων εὔνοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ
ἄδικοι ἐπεβούλευον ὡς εὐμεταχειρίστῳ ὄντι. ὅτε δὲ
ἀπέθνῃσκεν ἦν ἐτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα.

MENON, GAIN-GREEDY, GIVEN TO PERJURY, LYING AND DECEPTION, SHAMEFULLY IMMORAL.

Μένων δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς δῆλος ἦν ἐπιθυμῶν μὲν πλου- 21
τεῖν ἰσχυρῶς, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ ἄρχειν, ὅπως πλείω λαμ-
βάνοι, ἐπιθυμῶν δὲ τιμᾶσθαι, ἵνα πλείω κερδαίνοι·
φίλος τε ἐβούλετο εἶναι τοῖς μέγιστα δυναμένοις, ἵνα
ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίη δίκην. ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ κατεργάζεσθαι 22
ὧν ἐπιθυμοίη συντομωτάτην ᾤετο ὁδὸν εἶναι διὰ τοῦ
ἐπιορκεῖν τε καὶ ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν, τὸ δ' ἁπλοῦν
καὶ ἀληθὲς τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ ἠλιθίῳ εἶναι. στέργων δὲ 23
φανερὸς μὲν ἦν οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίη φίλος εἶναι, τούτῳ
ἔνδηλος ἐγίγνετο ἐπιβουλεύων. καὶ πολεμίου μὲν οὐ-
δενὸς κατεγέλα, τῶν δὲ συνόντων πάντων ὡς κατα-
γελῶν ἀεὶ διελέγετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν τῶν πολεμίων 24
κτήμασιν οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε· χαλεπὸν γὰρ ᾤετο εἶναι
τὰ τῶν φυλαττομένων λαμβάνειν· τὰ δὲ τῶν φίλων
μόνος ᾤετο εἰδέναι ῥᾷστον ὂν ἀφύλακτα λαμβάνειν.
καὶ ὅσους μὲν [ἂν] αἰσθάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ ἀδίκους 25
ὡς εὖ ὡπλισμένους ἐφοβεῖτο, τοῖς δὲ ὁσίοις καὶ ἀλή-
θειαν ἀσκοῦσιν ὡς ἀνάνδροις ἐπειρᾶτο χρῆσθαι. ὥσ- 26
περ δέ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ θεοσεβείᾳ καὶ ἀληθείᾳ καὶ
δικαιότητι, οὕτω Μένων ἠγάλλετο τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν δύνα-
σθαι, τῷ πλάσασθαι ψεύδη, τῷ φίλους διαγελᾶν· τὸν
δὲ μὴ πανοῦργον τῶν ἀπαιδεύτων ἀεὶ ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι.
καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ, διαβάλ-

λων τοὺς πρώτους τοῦτο ᾤετο δεῖν κτήσασθαι. τὸ VI
δὲ πειθομένους τοὺς στρατιώτας παρέχεσθαι ἐκ τοῦ 27
συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐμηχανᾶτο. τιμᾶσθαι δὲ καὶ θερα-
πεύεσθαι ἠξίου ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι πλεῖστα δύναιτο
καὶ ἐθέλοι ἂν ἀδικεῖν. εὐεργεσίαν δὲ κατέλεγεν,
ὁπότε τις αὐτοῦ ἀφίσταιτο, ὅτι χρώμενος αὐτῷ οὐκ
ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν. καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ἀφανῆ ἔξεστι περὶ 28
αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, ἃ δὲ πάντες ἴσασι τάδ' ἐστί. παρὰ
Ἀριστίππου μὲν ἔτι ὡραῖος ὢν στρατηγεῖν διεπράξατο
τῶν ξένων, Ἀριαίῳ δὲ βαρβάρῳ ὄντι, ὅτι μειρακίοις
καλοῖς ἥδετο, οἰκειότατος [ἔτι ὡραῖος ὢν] ἐγένετο,
αὐτὸς δὲ παιδικὰ εἶχεν Θαρύπαν ἀγένειος ὢν γενει-
ῶντα. ἀποθνῃσκόντων δὲ τῶν συστρατήγων ὅτι ἐστρά- 29
τευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα σὺν Κύρῳ, ταὐτὰ πεποιηκὼς οὐκ
ἀπέθανε, μετὰ δὲ τὸν τῶν ἄλλων θάνατον στρατηγῶν
τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ ὥσπερ Κλέ-
αρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς
κεφαλάς, ὅσπερ τάχιστος θάνατος δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἀλλὰ
ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς ἐνιαυτὸν ὡς πονηρὸς λέγεται τῆς τελευ-
τῆς τυχεῖν.

AGIAS AND SOCRATES.

Ἀγίας δὲ ὁ Ἀρκὰς καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιὸς καὶ 30
τούτω ἀπεθανέτην. τούτων δὲ οὔθ' ὡς ἐν πολέμῳ
κακῶν οὐδεὶς κατεγέλα οὔτ' εἰς φιλίαν αὐτοὺς ἐμέμ-
φετο. ἦστην δὲ ἄμφω ἀμφὶ τὰ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα
ἔτη ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.

Γ

THE GREEKS DISTRESSED AND DESPONDENT.

[1] Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν I
λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπισπόμενοι ἀπωλώ- 2
λεσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐννοούμενοι μὲν, ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλῳ δὲ αὐτοῖς πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμιαι ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξειν ἔμελλεν, ἀπεῖχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μεῖον ἢ μύρια στάδια, ἡγεμὼν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διῄργον ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἰκαδε ὁδοῦ, προὐδεδώκεσαν δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἱππέα οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὔδηλον ἦν ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη· ταῦτ' 3
ἐννοούμενοι καὶ ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν σίτου ἐγεύσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὅπλα πολλοὶ οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύγχανεν ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων, γονέων, γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς οὔποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

---

[1] [Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀναβάσει οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης, 1
καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐγένετο ἀπιόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.]

HOW XENOPHON CAME TO JOIN THE EXPEDITION.

Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς I
οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὢν 4
συνηκολούθει, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο οἴκοθεν ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος· ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσειν, ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρείττω ἑαυτῷ νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος. ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν 5
ἀναγνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπτεύσας μή τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως ὑπαίτιον εἴη Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι, ὅτι ἐδόκει ὁ Κῦρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας συμπολεμῆσαι, συμβουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. ἐλθὼν δ' ὁ Ξενο- 6
φῶν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν θύων καὶ εὐχόμενος κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν ἐπινοεῖ καὶ καλῶς πράξας σωθείη. καὶ ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει θύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε, 7
λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. ὃ δ' ἀκούσας ᾐτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο πρῶτον ἠρώτα πότερον λῷον εἴη αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθείη. ἐπεὶ μέντοι οὕτως ἤρου, ταῦτ', ἔφη, χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω θυσάμενος 8
οἷς ἀνεῖλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν, καὶ συνεστάθη Κύρῳ. προθυμουμένου δὲ 9
τοῦ Προξένου καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμπροθυμεῖτο μεῖναι αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία λήξῃ, εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψει αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς

Πισίδας. ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐξαπατηθείς — I
οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ᾔδει τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα 10
ὁρμὴν οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἤδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν· ὧν εἷς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν.

XENOPHON'S DREAM.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία ἦν, ἐλυπεῖτο μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις 11
καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο καθεύδειν· μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου λαχὼν εἶδεν ὄναρ. ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βροντῆς γενομένης σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πατρῴαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου λάμπεσθαι πᾶσα. περίφοβος δ' εὐθὺς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ τὸ 12
ὄναρ τῇ μὲν ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν πόνοις ὢν καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διὸς ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε· τῇ δὲ καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι, κύκλῳ δὲ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι τὸ πῦρ, μὴ οὐ δύναιτο ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξελθεῖν τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν ὑπό τινων ἀποριῶν. ὁποῖόν τι μὲν 13
δή ἐστι τὸ τοιοῦτον ὄναρ ἰδεῖν ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ. γίγνεται γὰρ τάδε. εὐθὺς ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη πρῶτον μὲν ἔννοια αὐτῷ ἐμπίπτει· τί κατάκειμαι; ἡ δὲ νὺξ προβαίνει· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἥξειν. εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα μὲν τὰ χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδόντας, πάντα δὲ τὰ δεινότατα παθόντας ὑβριζομένους ἀποθανεῖν; ὅπως δ' ἀμυνούμεθα οὐδεὶς παρα- 14
σκευάζεται οὐδὲ ἐπιμελεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ

ἐξὸν ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν. ἐγὼ οὖν τὸν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως I
στρατηγὸν προσδοκῶ ταῦτα πράξειν; ποίαν δ' ἡλικίαν
ἐμαυτῷ ἐλθεῖν ἀναμείνω; οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσβύ-
τερος ἔσομαι, ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολε-
μίοις.

XENOPHON'S ADDRESS TO THE CAPTAINS OF PROXENUS. IMMEDIATE ACTION NECESSARY; HE IS READY TO FOLLOW OR TO LEAD.

Ἐκ τούτου ἀνίσταται καὶ συγκαλεῖ τοὺς Προξένου 15
πρῶτον λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξεν. Ἐγώ, ὦ
ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε καθεύδειν δύναμαι, ὥσπερ οἶμαι
οὐδ' ὑμεῖς, οὔτε κατακεῖσθαι ἔτι, ὁρῶν ἐν οἵοις ἐσμέν.
οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολέμιοι δῆλον ὅτι οὐ πρότερον πρὸς ἡμᾶς 16
τὸν πόλεμον ἐξέφηναν πρὶν ἐνόμισαν καλῶς τὰ ἑαυ-
τῶν παρασκευάσασθαι, ἡμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς οὐδὲν ἀντεπι-
μελεῖται ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. καὶ μὴν 17
εἰ ὑφησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ γενησόμεθα, τί οἰόμεθα
πείσεσθαι; ὃς καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου ἀδελφοῦ καὶ τεθνη-
κότος ἤδη ἀποτεμὼν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνε-
σταύρωσεν· ἡμᾶς δέ, οἷς κηδεμὼν μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστιν,
ἐστρατεύσαμεν δὲ ἐπ' αὐτὸν ὡς δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως
ποιήσοντες καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί ἂν
οἰόμεθα παθεῖν; ἆρ' οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι ὡς ἡμᾶς 18
τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκισάμενος πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον παρά-
σχοι τοῦ στρατεῦσαί ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν; ἀλλ' ὅπως τοι
μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα πάντα ποιητέον. ἐγὼ μὲν 19
οὖν ἔστε μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὔποτε ἐπαυόμην ἡμᾶς
μὲν οἰκτίρων, βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ μακαρί-
ζων, διαθεώμενος αὐτῶν ὅσην μὲν χώραν καὶ οἵαν
ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ ἄφθονα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ θερά-

πόντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνη, χρυσὸν δέ, ἐσθῆτα δέ· τὰ δ' I
αὖ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὁπότε ἐνθυμοίμην, ὅτι τῶν μὲν 20
ἀγαθῶν τούτων οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετείη, εἰ μὴ πριαίμεθα,
ὅτου δ' ὠνησόμεθα ἤδειν ἔτι ὀλίγους ἔχοντας, ἄλλως
δέ πως πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἢ ὠνουμένους ὅρκους
ἤδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς· ταῦτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος ἐνίοτε
τὰς σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἐφοβούμην ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον.
ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκεῖνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδάς, λελύσθαι μοι 21
δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ ἐκείνων ὕβρις καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα ὑποψία. ἐν
μέσῳ γὰρ ἤδη κεῖται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ ἆθλα ὁπότεροι
ἂν ἡμῶν ἄνδρες ἀμείνονες ὦσιν, ἀγωνοθέται δ' οἱ
θεοί εἰσιν, οἳ σὺν ἡμῖν, ὡς τὸ εἰκός, ἔσονται. οὗτοι 22
μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἐπιωρκήκασιν· ἡμεῖς δὲ πολλὰ ὁρῶν-
τες ἀγαθὰ στερρῶς αὐτῶν ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς τῶν
θεῶν ὅρκους· ὥστε ἐξεῖναί μοι δοκεῖ ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὸν
ἀγῶνα πολὺ σὺν φρονήματι μείζονι ἢ τούτοις. ἔτι δ' 23
ἔχομεν σώματα ἱκανώτερα τούτων καὶ ψύχη καὶ θάλπη
καὶ πόνους φέρειν· ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ ψυχὰς σὺν τοῖς
θεοῖς ἀμείνονας· οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες καὶ τρωτοὶ καὶ θνητοὶ
μᾶλλον ἡμῶν, ἢν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν νίκην
ἡμῖν διδῶσιν. ἀλλ' ἴσως γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοι ταὐτὰ ἐνθυ- 24
μοῦνται, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους ἐφ'
ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα,
ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους
ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετήν· φάνητε τῶν λοχαγῶν ἄριστοι καὶ τῶν
στρατηγῶν ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι. κἀγὼ δέ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς 25
ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἕπεσθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι,
εἰ δ' ὑμεῖς τάττετ' ἐμὲ ἡγεῖσθαι, οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι
τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀκμάζειν ἡγοῦμαι ἐρύκειν ἀπ'
ἐμαυτοῦ τὰ κακά.

APOLLONIDES, WHO ALONE OPPOSES XENOPHON, UNMASKED AND EXPELLED AS NOT A GREEK, BUT A LYDIAN.

Ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ δὲ ἀρχηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες I
ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον πάντες, πλὴν Ἀπολλωνίδης τις ἦν 26
βοιωτιάζων τῇ φωνῇ· οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι φλυαροίη
ὅστις λέγει ἄλλως πως σωτηρίας ἂν τυχεῖν ἢ βασιλέα
πείσας, εἰ δύναιτο, καὶ ἅμα ἤρχετο λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας.
ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν μεταξὺ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ὦ 27
θαυμασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε, σύγε οὐδὲ ὁρῶν γιγνώσκεις
οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. ἐν ταὐτῷ γε μέντοι ἦσθα
τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρο-
νήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ πέμπων ἐκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα.
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι ἐλ- 28
θόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ ἐποίησε πρέσβεις
πέμπων καὶ σπονδὰς αἰτῶν καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
ἔστε σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; ἐπεὶ δ' αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ 29
λοχαγοί, ὥσπερ δὴ σὺ κελεύεις, εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς
ἄνευ ὅπλων ἦλθον πιστεύσαντες ταῖς σπονδαῖς, οὐ
νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι, ὑβριζόμενοι οὐδὲ
ἀποθανεῖν οἱ τλήμονες δύνανται, καὶ μάλ' οἶμαι ἐρῶν-
τες τούτου; ἃ σὺ πάντα εἰδὼς τοὺς μὲν ἀμύνασθαι
κελεύοντας φλυαρεῖν φῄς, πείθειν δὲ πάλιν κελεύεις
ἰόντας; ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ τὸν ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον 30
μήτε προσίεσθαι εἰς ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἀφελομένους
τε τὴν λοχαγίαν σκεύη ἀναθέντας ὡς τοιούτῳ χρῆσθαι.
οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα καταισχύνει καὶ πᾶσαν
τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι Ἕλλην ὢν τοιοῦτός ἐστιν. ἐντεῦθεν 31
ὑπολαβὼν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ
γε οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας προσήκει οὐδὲν οὔτε τῆς Ἑλλάδος
παντάπασιν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ὥσπερ Λυδὸν ἀμ-

φότερα τὰ ὦτα τετρυπημένον. καὶ εἶχεν οὕτως. τοῦ- I
τον μὲν οὖν ἀπήλασαν. 32

ASSEMBLY OF THE SURVIVING GENERALS AND CAPTAINS.

Οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες ὅπου μὲν στρα-
τηγὸς σῶος εἴη τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν, ὁπόθεν
δὲ οἴχοιτο τὸν ὑποστράτηγον, ὅπου δ' αὖ λοχαγὸς
σῶος εἴη τὸν λοχαγόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες συνῆλθον, εἰς 33
τὸ πρόσθεν τῶν ὅπλων ἐκαθέζοντο· καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ
συνελθόντες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν.
ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν σχεδὸν μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες. ἐνταῦθα 34
Ἱερώνυμος Ἠλεῖος πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν Προξένου
λοχαγῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν ὧδε. Ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρα-
τηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὁρῶσι τὰ παρόντα ἔδοξε καὶ αὐτοῖς
συνελθεῖν καὶ ὑμᾶς παρακαλέσαι, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα
εἴ τι δυναίμεθα ἀγαθόν. λέξον δ', ἔφη, καὶ νῦν, ὦ
Ξενοφῶν, ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς.

SECOND SPEECH OF XENOPHON. ELECT NEW OFFICERS; CHEER UP THE MEN.

Ἐκ τούτου λέγει τάδε Ξενοφῶν. Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν 35
δὴ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης
οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν, τοῖς δ' ἄλ-
λοις δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύουσιν, ὡς ἢν δύνωνται ἀπολέ-
σωσιν. ἡμῖν δέ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ὡς μήποτε
ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνοι
ἐφ' ἡμῖν. εὖ τοίνυν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι ὑμεῖς τοσοῦτοι 36
ὄντες ὅσοι νῦν συνεληλύθατε μέγιστον ἔχετε καιρόν.
οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὗτοι πάντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς βλέπουσι,
κἂν μὲν ὑμᾶς ὁρῶσιν ἀθύμους, πάντες κακοὶ ἔσονται,
ἂν δὲ ὑμεῖς αὐτοί τε παρασκευαζόμενοι φανεροὶ ἦτε
ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλῆτε, εὖ

ἴστε ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν καὶ πειράσονται μιμεῖσθαι. ἴσως I
δέ τοι καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων. 37
ὑμεῖς γάρ ἐστε στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι καὶ λοχα-
γοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν ὑμεῖς καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς
τούτων ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε· καὶ νῦν τοίνυν ἐπεὶ πόλεμός
ἐστιν ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους
εἶναι καὶ προβουλεύειν τούτων καὶ προπονεῖν, ἤν που
δέῃ. καὶ νῦν πρῶτον μὲν οἶομαι ἂν ὑμᾶς μέγα ὠφελῆ- 38
σαι τὸ στράτευμα, εἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε ὅπως ἀντὶ τῶν
ἀπολωλότων ὡς τάχιστα στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀντι-
κατασταθῶσιν. ἄνευ γὰρ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε
καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο ὡς μὲν συνελόντι εἰπεῖν
οὐδαμοῦ, ἐν δὲ δὴ τοῖς πολεμικοῖς παντάπασιν. ἡ μὲν
γὰρ εὐταξία σῴζειν δοκεῖ, ἡ δὲ ἀταξία πολλοὺς ἤδη
ἀπολώλεκεν. ἐπειδὰν δὲ καταστήσησθε τοὺς ἄρχοντας 39
ὅσους δεῖ, ἦν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας συλλέγητε
καὶ παραθαρρύνητε, οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ
ποιῆσαι. νῦν γὰρ ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε ὡς 40
ἀθύμως μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα, ἀθύμως δὲ πρὸς τὰς
φυλακάς· ὥστε οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων οὐκ οἶδα ὅ,τι ἄν τις
χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς εἴτε νυκτὸς δέοι εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. ἦν 41
δέ τις αὐτῶν τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο μόνον
ἐννοῶνται τί πείσονται ἀλλὰ καὶ τί ποιήσουσι, πολὺ
εὐθυμότεροι ἔσονται. ἐπίστασθε γὰρ δὴ ὅτι οὔτε πλῆ- 42
θός ἐστιν οὔτε ἰσχὺς ἡ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ τὰς νίκας ποι-
οῦσα, ἀλλ' ὁπότεροι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ταῖς ψυχαῖς
ἐρρωμενέστεροι ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τούτους ὡς
ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἀντίοι οὐ δέχονται. ἐντεθύμημαι δ' 43
ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοῦτο ὅτι ὁπόσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι
ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις, οὗτοι μὲν

κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχρῶς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνῄσκουσιν, I
ὁπόσοι δὲ τὸν μὲν θάνατον ἐγνώκασι πᾶσι κοινὸν εἶναι
καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις, περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνῄ-
σκειν ἀγωνίζονται, τούτους ὁρῶ μᾶλλόν πως εἰς τὸ
γῆρας ἀφικνουμένους καὶ ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν εὐδαιμονέστε-
ρον διάγοντας. ἃ καὶ ἡμᾶς δεῖ νῦν καταμαθόντας, ἐν 44
τοιούτῳ γὰρ καιρῷ ἐσμεν, αὐτούς τε ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς
εἶναι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλεῖν. ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰπὼν 45
ἐπαύσατο.

FIVE NEW GENERALS CHOSEN. XENOPHON TAKES THE PLACE OF PROXENUS.

Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον εἶπε Χειρίσοφος· Ἀλλὰ πρόσθεν
μέν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τοσοῦτον μόνον σε ἐγίγνωσκον ὅσον
ἤκουον Ἀθηναῖον εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε ἐφ' οἷς
λέγεις τε καὶ πράττεις καὶ βουλοίμην ἂν ὅτι πλείστους
εἶναι τοιούτους· κοινὸν γὰρ ἂν εἴη τὸ ἀγαθόν. καὶ 46
νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες
ἤδη αἱρεῖσθε οἱ δεόμενοι ἄρχοντας, καὶ ἑλόμενοι ἥκετε
εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς αἱρεθέντας
ἄγετε· ἔπειτ' ἐκεῖ συγκαλοῦμεν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώ-
τας. παρέστω δ' ἡμῖν, ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ κῆρυξ. 47
καὶ ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀνέστη, ὡς μὴ μέλλοιτο ἀλλὰ
περαίνοιτο τὰ δέοντα. ἐκ τούτου ᾑρέθησαν ἄρχοντες
ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς, ἀντὶ δὲ Σω-
κράτους Ξανθικλῆς Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Ἀγίου [Ἀρκά-
δος] Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἐρχομένιος, ἀντὶ δὲ Μένωνος Φιλή-
σιος Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Προξένου Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

ASSEMBLY OF THE SOLDIERS. CHEIRISOPHUS AND CLEANOR SPEAK

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ᾑρηντο, ἡμέρα τε σχεδὸν ὑπέφαινε καὶ εἰς II
τὸ μέσον ἦκον οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς προ-

φυλακὰς καταστήσαντας συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας. II
ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται συνῆλθον, ἀνέστη
πρῶτος μὲν Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ἔλεξεν
ὧδε. Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρόντα, 2
ὁπότε ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερόμεθα καὶ λο-
χαγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον
οἱ πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι ὄντες προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς· ὅμως 3
δὲ δεῖ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τελέθειν καὶ
μὴ ὑφίεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως ἢν μὲν δυνώμεθα
καλῶς νικῶντες σῳζώμεθα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε
ἀποθνῄσκωμεν, ὑποχείριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶν-
τες τοῖς πολεμίοις. οἶομαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα πα-
θεῖν οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν. ἐπὶ τούτῳ 4
Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ἐρχομένιος ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Ἀλλ'
ὁρᾶτε μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τὴν βασιλέως ἐπιορκίαν καὶ
ἀσέβειαν, ὁρᾶτε δὲ τὴν Τισσαφέρνους ἀπιστίαν, ὅστις
λέγων ὡς γείτων τε εἴη τῆς Ἑλλάδος καὶ περὶ πλείστου
ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις αὐτὸς ὀμό-
σας ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς δεξιὰς δούς, αὐτὸς ἐξαπατήσας συνέ-
λαβε τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ Δία ξένιον ᾐδέσθη,
ἀλλὰ Κλεάρχῳ γε καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος γενόμενος αὐτοῖς
τούτοις ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν. Ἀριαῖος 5
δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθιστάναι, καὶ ἐδώκα-
μεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, καὶ
οὗτος οὔτε τοὺς θεοὺς δείσας οὔτε Κῦρον τεθνηκότα
αἰδεσθείς, τιμώμενος μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος νῦν
πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου ἐχθίστους ἀποστὰς ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου
φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ 6
θεοὶ ἀποτείσαιντο· ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα ὁρῶντας μήποτε
ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὡς

ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα τοῦτο ὅ,τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς 11
πάσχειν.

XENOPHON, SPLENDIDLY ARRAYED, MAKES A LONG SPEECH. WE MUST FIGHT OUR WAY WITH THE HELP OF THE GODS.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ πόλε- 7
μον ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα, νομίζων, εἴτε νίκην διδοῖεν οἱ θεοί, τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον τῷ νικᾶν πρέπειν, εἴτε τελευτᾶν δέοι, ὀρθῶς ἔχειν τῶν καλλίστων ἑαυτὸν ἀξιώσαντα ἐν τούτοις τῆς τελευτῆς τυγχάνειν· τοῦ λόγου δὴ ἤρχετο ὧδε. Τὴν μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιορκίαν 8
τε καὶ ἀπιστίαν λέγει μὲν Κλεάνωρ, ἐπίστασθε δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς οἶμαι. εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλόμεθα πάλιν αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας ἰέναι, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς πολλὴν ἀθυμίαν ἔχειν, ὁρῶντας καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἳ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, οἷα πεπόνθασιν· εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὧν τε πεποιήκασι δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς ἰέναι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πολλαὶ ἡμῖν καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίας.

A SNEEZE IS AN OMEN OF GOOD.

Τοῦτο δὲ λέγοντος αὐτοῦ πτάρνυταί τις· ἀκούσαντες 9
δ' οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες μιᾷ ὁρμῇ προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν, καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπεὶ περὶ σωτηρίας ἡμῶν λεγόντων οἰωνὸς τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, εὔξασθαι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ θύσειν σωτήρια ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν χώραν ἀφικώμεθα, συνεπεύξασθαι δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς θύσειν κατὰ δύναμιν. καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτ', ἔφη, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ἐκ τούτου ηὔξαντο

καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς εἶχεν, **II**
ἤρχετο πάλιν ὧδε.

THEY HAVE BROKEN THEIR OATHS; WE HAVE KEPT THEM. OUR ANCESTORS DEFEATED THEM AT MARATHON AND SALAMIS.

Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες 10
ἡμῖν εἶεν σωτηρίας. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπε-
δοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὅρκους, οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐπιωρκή-
κασί τε καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους λελύκασιν.
οὕτω δ' ἐχόντων εἰκὸς τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις ἐναντίους
εἶναι τοὺς θεούς, ἡμῖν δὲ συμμάχους, οἵπερ ἱκανοί
εἰσι καὶ τοὺς μεγάλους ταχὺ μικροὺς ποιεῖν καὶ τοὺς
μικροὺς κἂν ἐν δεινοῖς ὦσι σῴζειν εὐπετῶς, ὅταν
βούλωνται. ἔπειτα δέ, ἀναμνήσω γὰρ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς 11
τῶν προγόνων τῶν ἡμετέρων κινδύνους, ἵνα εἰδῆτε
ὡς ἀγαθοῖς τε ὑμῖν προσήκει εἶναι σῴζονταί τε σὺν
τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ἐκ πάνυ δεινῶν οἱ ἀγαθοί. ἐλθόντων
μὲν γὰρ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτοῖς παμπληθεῖ στόλῳ
ὡς ἀφανιούντων [αὖθις] τὰς Ἀθήνας, ὑποστῆναι αὐτοὶ
Ἀθηναῖοι τολμήσαντες ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς. καὶ εὐξάμενοι 12
τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὁπόσους [ἂν] κατακάνοιεν τῶν πολεμίων
τοσαύτας χιμαίρας καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ εἶχον
ἱκανὰς εὑρεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν πεντακοσίας
θύειν, καὶ ἔτι νῦν ἀποθύουσιν. ἔπειτα ὅτε Ξέρξης 13
ὕστερον ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιὰν ἦλθεν ἐπὶ
τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε ἐνίκων οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι τοὺς
τούτων προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν. ὧν
ἔστι μὲν τεκμήρια ὁρᾶν τὰ τρόπαια, μέγιστον δὲ μαρ-
τύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν πόλεων ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε
καὶ ἐτράφητε· οὐδένα γὰρ ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην ἀλλὰ
τοὺς θεοὺς προσκυνεῖτε. τοιούτων μέν ἐστε προγόνων.

YOU HAVE DEFEATED THEM AT CUNAXA.

Οὐ μὲν δὴ τοῦτό γε ἐρῶ ὡς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε II
αὐτούς· ἀλλ᾽ οὐ πολλαὶ ἡμέραι ἀφ᾽ οὗ ἀντιταξάμενοι 14
τούτοις τοῖς ἐκείνων ἐκγόνοις πολλαπλασίους ὑμῶν
αὐτῶν ἐνικᾶτε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ περὶ 15
τῆς Κύρου βασιλείας ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δ᾽ ὁπότε
περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστι πολὺ δήπου
ὑμᾶς προσήκει καὶ ἀμείνονας καὶ προθυμοτέρους εἶναι.
ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ θαρραλεωτέρους νῦν πρέπει εἶναι πρὸς 16
τοὺς πολεμίους. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἄπειροι ὄντες αὐτῶν,
τό τε πλῆθος ἄμετρον ὁρῶντες, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν
τῷ πατρίῳ φρονήματι ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς· νῦν δὲ ὁπότε
καὶ πεῖραν ἤδη ἔχετε αὐτῶν ὅτι οὐ θέλουσι καὶ πολλα-
πλάσιοι ὄντες [μὴ] δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι ὑμῖν προσ-
ήκει τούτους φοβεῖσθαι;

Μηδὲ μέντοι τοῦτο μεῖον δόξητε ἔχειν ὅτι οἱ Ἀριαίου 17
πρόσθεν σὺν ἡμῖν ταττόμενοι νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν. ἔτι
γὰρ οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ὑφ᾽ ἡμῶν ἡττημένων·
ἔφυγον γοῦν [πρὸς] ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς. τοὺς
δὲ θέλοντας φυγῆς ἄρχειν πολὺ κρεῖττον σὺν τοῖς
πολεμίοις ταττομένους ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει ὁρᾶν.

OUR LACK OF CAVALRY IS NOT A SERIOUS DISADVANTAGE. WE CAN SEIZE NATIVE GUIDES WHO WILL BE MORE RELIABLE THAN TISSAPHERNES, AND PLUNDER SUPPLIES MORE CHEAPLY THAN BUY THEM.

Εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυμεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἱπ- 18
πεῖς, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεισιν, ἐνθυμήθητε
ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοί εἰσιν ἄν-
θρωποι· ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδεὶς πώποτε
οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ἀπέθανεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες
εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ, τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται.

οὐκοῦν τῶν ἱππέων πολὺ ἡμεῖς ἐπ᾽ ἀσφαλεστέρου II
ὀχήματός ἐσμεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ᾽ ἵππων κρέμανται φο- 19
βούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν·
ἡμεῖς δ᾽ ἐπὶ γῆς βεβηκότες πολὺ μὲν ἰσχυρότερον
παίσομεν, ἤν τις προσίῃ, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὅτου ἂν
βουλώμεθα τευξόμεθα· ἐνὶ δὲ μόνῳ προέχουσιν οἱ
ἱππεῖς ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν ἢ
ἡμῖν. εἰ δὲ δὴ τὰς μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε, ὅτι δὲ οὐκέτι 20
ὑμῖν Τισσαφέρνης ἡγήσεται οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς ἀγορὰν
παρέξει, τοῦτο ἄχθεσθε, σκέψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον
Τισσαφέρνην ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν, ὃς ἐπιβουλεύων ἡμῖν
φανερός ἐστιν, ἢ οὓς ἂν ἡμεῖς ἄνδρας λαβόντες ἡγεῖ-
σθαι κελεύωμεν, οἳ εἴσονται ὅτι ἤν τι περὶ ἡμᾶς ἁμαρ-
τάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἑαυτῶν ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἁμαρτή-
σονται. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πότερον ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττον 21
ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἧς οὗτοι παρεῖχον μικρὰ μέτρα πολλοῦ
ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας, ἢ αὐτοὺς λαμβάνειν,
ἤνπερ κρατῶμεν, μέτρῳ χρωμένους ὁπόσῳ ἂν ἕκαστος
βούληται;

NO RIVER IS IMPASSABLE AT ITS SOURCE.

Εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν γιγνώσκετε ὅτι κρείττονα, τοὺς δὲ πο- 22
ταμοὺς ἄπορον νομίζετε εἶναι καὶ μεγάλως ἡγεῖσθε ἐξα-
πατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε εἰ ἄρα τοῦτο καὶ μωρό-
τατον πεποιήκασιν οἱ βάρβαροι. πάντες γὰρ ποταμοί,
εἰ καὶ πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν ἄποροί εἰσι, προσιοῦσι πρὸς
τὰς πηγὰς διαβατοὶ γίγνονται οὐδὲ τὸ γόνυ βρέχοντες.

IF WE TRIED TO STAY HERE, THE KING WOULD HELP US TO GET HOME.

Εἰ δὲ μήθ᾽ οἱ ποταμοὶ διήσουσιν ἡγεμών τε μηδεὶς 23
ἡμῖν φανεῖται, οὐδ᾽ ὡς ἡμῖν γε ἀθυμητέον. ἐπιστά-

μεθα γὰρ Μυσούς, οὓς οὐκ ἄν ἡμῶν φαίημεν βελτίους II
εἶναι, ὅτι ἐν βασιλέως χώρᾳ πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας
καὶ μεγάλας πόλεις οἰκοῦσιν, ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας
ὡσαύτως, Λυκάονας δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἴδομεν ὅτι ἐν τοῖς
πεδίοις τὰ ἐρυμνὰ καταλαβόντες τὴν τούτων χώραν
καρποῦνται· καὶ ἡμᾶς δ' ἂν ἔφην ἔγωγε χρῆναι μήπω 24
φανεροὺς εἶναι οἴκαδε ὡρμημένους, ἀλλὰ κατασκευάζε-
σθαι ὡς αὐτοῦ οἰκήσοντας. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι καὶ Μυσοῖς
βασιλεὺς πολλοὺς μὲν ἡγεμόνας ἂν δοίη, πολλοὺς δ'
ἂν ὁμήρους τοῦ ἀδόλως ἐκπέμψειν, καὶ ὁδοποιήσειέ
γ' ἂν αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰ σὺν τεθρίπποις βούλοιντο ἀπιέναι.
καὶ ἡμῖν γ' ἂν οἶδ' ὅτι τρισάσμενος ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ
ἑώρα ἡμᾶς μένειν κατασκευαζομένους. ἀλλὰ γὰρ δέ- 25
δοικα μή, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ἀργοὶ ζῆν καὶ ἐν ἀφθό-
νοις βιοτεύειν, καὶ Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν καλαῖς καὶ
μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις ὁμιλεῖν, μὴ ὥσπερ οἱ
λωτοφάγοι ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ. δοκεῖ οὖν 26
μοι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον εἶναι πρῶτον εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
καὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι καὶ ἐπι-
δεῖξαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ὅτι ἑκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς
τοὺς νῦν [οἴκοι] σκληρῶς ἐκεῖ πολιτεύοντας ἐνθάδε
κομισαμένους πλουσίους ὁρᾶν.

WE MUST BURN OUR TENTS AND WAGONS AND TAKE ONLY WHAT IS ABSOLUTELY NECESSARY.

Ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, πάντα ταῦτα τἀγαθὰ δῆλον
ὅτι τῶν κρατούντων ἐστί· τοῦτο δὲ δεῖ λέγειν ὅπως 27
ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι
δέοι ὡς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα. πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη,
δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἁμάξας ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα μὴ
τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν στρατηγῇ, ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ὅπῃ ἂν

τῇ στρατιᾷ συμφέρῃ· ἔπειτα καὶ τὰς σκηνὰς συγκα- II
τακαῦσαι. αὗται γὰρ αὖ ὄχλον μὲν παρέχουσιν ἄγειν,
συνωφελοῦσι δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ' εἰς
τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν 28
τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν πλὴν ὅσα πολέμου ἕνεκεν ἢ
σίτων ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν, ἵνα ὡς πλεῖστοι μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν
τοῖς ὅπλοις ὦσιν, ὡς ἐλάχιστοι δὲ σκευοφορῶσι. κρα-
τουμένων μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι πάντα ἀλλότρια· ἢν
δὲ κρατῶμεν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους δεῖ σκευοφόρους ἡμε-
τέρους νομίζειν.

OFFICERS MUST BE MORE VIGILANT AND SOLDIERS MORE OBEDIENT THAN BEFORE.

Λοιπόν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. 29
ὁρᾶτε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐξ-
ενεγκεῖν ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πόλεμον πρὶν τοὺς
στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον, νομίζοντες ὄντων μὲν
τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ ἡμῶν πειθομένων ἱκανοὺς εἶναι
ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ, λαβόντες δὲ τοὺς ἄρ-
χοντας ἀναρχίᾳ ἂν καὶ ἀταξίᾳ ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς ἀπο-
λέσθαι. δεῖ οὖν πολὺ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐπιμελεστέ- 30
ρους γενέσθαι τοὺς νῦν τῶν πρόσθεν, πολὺ δὲ τοὺς
ἀρχομένους εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειθομένους μᾶλλον τοῖς
ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν· ἢν δέ τις ἀπειθῇ, ψηφί- 31
σασθαι τὸν ἀεὶ ὑμῶν ἐντυγχάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι
κολάζειν· οὕτως οἱ πολέμιοι πλεῖστον ἐψευσμένοι ἔσον-
ται· τῇδε γὰρ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μυρίους ὄψονται ἀνθ' ἑνὸς
Κλεάρχους τοὺς οὐδενὶ ἐπιτρέψοντας κακῷ εἶναι. ἀλλὰ 32
γὰρ καὶ περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα· ἴσως γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι
αὐτίκα παρέσονται. ὅτῳ οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν,
ἐπικυρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα ἔργῳ περαίνηται. εἰ

δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτῃ, τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης II
διδάσκειν· πάντες γὰρ κοινῆς σωτηρίας δεόμεθα.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' εἰ μέν τινος 33
ἄλλου δεῖ πρὸς τούτοις οἷς λέγει Ξενοφῶν, καὶ αὐτίκα
ἐξέσται σκοπεῖν· ἃ δὲ νῦν εἴρηκε δοκεῖ μοι ὡς τάχιστα
ψηφίσασθαι ἄριστον εἶναι· καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνα-
τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἀνέτειναν πάντες.

XENOPHON'S PROPOSALS ADOPTED. CHEIRISOPHUS TO LEAD THE VAN, XENOPHON THE REAR.

Ἀναστὰς δὲ πάλιν εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· Ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀκού- 34
σατε ὧν προσδοκεῖ μοι. δῆλον ὅτι πορεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς
δεῖ ὅπου ἕξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἀκούω δὲ κώμας εἶναι
καλὰς οὐ πλέον εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας· οὐκ ἂν 35
οὖν θαυμάζοιμεν εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥσπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες
τοὺς μὲν παριόντας διώκοντες καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἢν δύ-
νωνται, τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας φεύγουσιν, εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ
ἡμῖν ἀπιοῦσιν ἐπακολουθοῖεν. ἴσως οὖν ἀσφαλέστερον 36
ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι πλαίσιον ποιησαμένους τῶν ὅπλων,
ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος ἐν ἀσφαλεστέ-
ρῳ εἴη. εἰ οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθείη τίνας χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι
τοῦ πλαισίου καὶ τὰ πρόσθεν κοσμεῖν καὶ τίνας ἐπὶ
τῶν πλευρῶν ἑκατέρων εἶναι, τίνας δ' ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν,
οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιεν βουλεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς
δέοι, ἀλλὰ χρῴμεθα ἂν εὐθὺς τοῖς τεταγμένοις. εἰ 37
μὲν οὖν ἄλλο τις βέλτιον ὁρᾷ, ἄλλως ἐχέτω· εἰ δὲ μή,
Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγοῖτο, ἐπειδὴ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιός ἐστι·
τῶν δὲ πλευρῶν ἑκατέρων δύο τὼ πρεσβυτάτω στρα-
τηγὼ ἐπιμελοίσθην· ὀπισθοφυλακοῖμεν δ' ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώ-
τατοι ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίων τὸ νῦν εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν 38
πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως βουλευσόμεθα ὅ, τι ἂν

ἀεὶ κράτιστον δοκῇ εἶναι. εἰ δέ τις ἄλλο ὁρᾷ βέλ- II
τιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, εἶπεν· Ὅτῳ
δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Νῦν 39
τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα. καὶ
ὅστις τε ὑμῶν τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω
ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου τυχεῖν.
ὅστις τε ζῆν ἐπιθυμεῖ, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ
νικώντων τὸ καίνειν, τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ ἀποθνῄ-
σκειν ἐστί· καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθυμεῖ, κρατεῖν
πειράσθω· τῶν γὰρ νικώντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν
σῴζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων λαμβάνειν.

MITHRADATES ENDEAVORS TO ENTER INTO RELATIONS WITH THE GREEKS, BUT IS DISCOVERED TO BE A TOOL OF TISSAPHERNES.

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν καὶ ἀπελθόντες κατὰ- III
καιον τὰς ἁμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ περιττῶν
ὅτου μὲν δέοιτό τις μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα
εἰς τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίπτουν. ταῦτα ποιήσαντες ἠριστο-
ποιοῦντο. ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθρα-
δάτης σὺν ἱππεῦσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ καλεσάμενος
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει ὧδε. Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄν- 2
δρες Ἕλληνες, καὶ Κύρῳ πιστὸς ἦν, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπί-
στασθε, καὶ νῦν ὑμῖν εὔνους· καὶ ἐνθάδε δ' εἰμὶ σὺν
πολλῷ φόβῳ διάγων. εἰ οὖν ὁρῴην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι
βουλευομένους, ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς θερά-
ποντας πάντας ἔχων. λέξατε οὖν πρός με τί ἐν νῷ
ἔχετε ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὔνουν καὶ βουλόμενον κοινῇ
σὺν ὑμῖν τὸν στόλον ποιεῖσθαι. βουλευομένοις τοῖς 3
στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ ἔλεγε Χει-
ρίσοφος· Ἡμῖν δοκεῖ, εἰ μέν τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι οἴ-
καδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα ἀσι-

νέστατα· ἦν δέ τις ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐπικωλύῃ, διαπο- III
λεμεῖν τούτῳ ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα. ἐκ τούτου 4
ἐπειρᾶτο Μιθραδάτης διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἴη βασι-
λέως ἄκοντος σωθῆναι. ἔνθα δὴ ἐγιγνώσκετο ὅτι ὑπό-
πεμπτος εἴη· καὶ γὰρ τῶν Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκείων
παρηκολουθήκει πίστεως ἕνεκα. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει 5
τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βέλτιον εἶναι δόγμα ποιήσασθαι τὸν
πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον εἶναι ἔστ' ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ εἶεν·
διέφθειρον γὰρ προσιόντες τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ ἕνα
γε λοχαγὸν διέφθειραν Νίκαρχον Ἀρκάδα, καὶ ᾤχετο
ἀπιὼν νυκτὸς σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὡς εἴκοσι.

PASSAGE OF THE GREAT ZAB. ATTACK OF MITHRADATES. THE GREEK REAR DISTRESSED BY THE PERSIAN SLINGERS AND CAVALRYMEN, WHO SHOOT PARTHIAN FASHION AS THEY FLEE.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες καὶ διαβάντες τὸν Ζα- 6
πάταν ποταμὸν ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι τὰ ὑποζύγια
καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες. οὐ πολὺ δὲ προελη-
λυθότων αὐτῶν ἐπιφαίνεται πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης, ἱπ-
πέας ἔχων ὡς διακοσίους καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας
εἰς τετρακοσίους μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους. καὶ 7
προσῄει μὲν ὡς φίλος ὢν πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας· ἐπεὶ
δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο, ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ
ἱππεῖς καὶ πεζοί, οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον. οἱ
δὲ ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν κακῶς,
ἀντεποίουν δ' οὐδέν· οἵ τε γὰρ Κρῆτες βραχύτερα τῶν
Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἅμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων
κατεκέκλειντο, οἱ δὲ ἀκοντισταὶ βραχύτερα ἠκόντιζον
ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι τῶν σφενδονητῶν. ἐκ τούτου Ξενο- 8
φῶντι ἐδόκει διωκτέον εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὁπλι-
τῶν καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν οἳ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ ὀπισθο-

φυλακοῦντες· διώκοντες δὲ οὐδένα κατελάμβανον τῶν III
πολεμίων. οὔτε γὰρ ἱππεῖς ἦσαν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν οὔτε οἱ 9
πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο καταλαμβάνειν
ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ· πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἷόν τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ
ἄλλου στρατεύματος διώκειν· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἱππεῖς 10
καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμα ἐτίτρωσκον εἰς τοὔπισθεν τοξεύοντες
ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, ὁπόσον δὲ διώξειαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, το-
σοῦτον πάλιν ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει. ὥστε τῆς 11
ἡμέρας διῆλθον οὐ πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων,
ἀλλὰ δείλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας.

XENOPHON ADMITS THE ERROR IN HIS MEASURES OF DEFENCE. HIS PLAN FOR ORGANIZING SLINGERS AND CAVALRY ADOPTED.

Ἔνθα δὴ πάλιν ἀθυμία ἦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος καὶ
οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα ᾐτιῶντο
ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτός τε ἐκινδύνευε
καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο βλάπτειν.
ἀκούσας δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς αἰτιῷντο καὶ 12
αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς μαρτυροίη. ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη,
ἠναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἑώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν
κακῶς μὲν πάσχοντας, ἀντιποιεῖν δὲ οὐ δυναμένους.
ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδιώκομεν, ἀληθῆ, ἔφη, ὑμεῖς λέγετε· κακῶς 13
μὲν γὰρ ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδυνάμεθα τοὺς πολε-
μίους, ἀνεχωροῦμεν δὲ παγχαλέπως. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς 14
χάρις ὅτι οὐ σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἦλθον,
ὥστε βλάψαι μὲν μὴ μεγάλα, δηλῶσαι δὲ ὧν δεόμεθα.
νῦν γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι τοξεύουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσιν ὅσον 15
οὔτε οἱ Κρῆτες ἀντιτοξεύειν δύνανται οὔτε οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς
βάλλοντες ἐξικνεῖσθαι· ὅταν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωμεν,
πολὺ μὲν οὐχ οἷόν τε χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος
διώκειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ οὐδ' εἰ ταχὺς εἴη πεζὸς πεζὸν

ἂν διώκων καταλαμβάνοι ἐκ τόξου ῥύματος. ἡμεῖς III
οὖν εἰ μέλλοιμεν τούτους εἴργειν ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι 16
βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, σφενδονητῶν τὴν ταχί-
στην δεῖ καὶ ἱππέων. ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύ-
ματι ἡμῶν Ῥοδίους, ὧν τοὺς πολλούς φασιν ἐπίστασθαι
σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ διπλάσιον φέ-
ρεσθαι τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν. ἐκεῖναι γὰρ διὰ τὸ 17
χειροπληθέσι τοῖς λίθοις σφενδονᾶν ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξ-
ικνοῦνται, οἱ δὲ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ταῖς μολυβδίσιν ἐπίστα-
νται χρῆσθαι. ἢν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες πέ- 18
πανται σφενδόνας, καὶ τῷ μὲν δῶμεν αὐτῶν ἀργύριον,
τῷ δὲ ἄλλας πλέκειν ἐθέλοντι ἄλλο ἀργύριον τελῶμεν,
καὶ τῷ σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ ἐθέλοντι ἄλλην
τινὰ ἀτέλειαν εὑρίσκωμεν, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκα-
νοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν. ὁρῶ δὲ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρα- 19
τεύματι, τοὺς μέν τινας παρ' ἐμοί, τοὺς δὲ τῶν Κλε-
άρχου καταλελειμμένους, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ἄλλους αἰχμα-
λώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. ἂν οὖν τούτους πάντας ἐκ-
λέξαντες σκευοφόρα μὲν ἀντιδῶμεν, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους
εἰς ἱππέας κατασκευάσωμεν, ἴσως καὶ οὗτοί τι τοὺς
φεύγοντας ἀνιάσουσιν. ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. καὶ ταύτης 20
τῆς νυκτὸς σφενδονῆται μὲν εἰς διακοσίους ἐγένοντο,
ἵπποι δὲ καὶ ἱππεῖς ἐδοκιμάσθησαν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ εἰς
πεντήκοντα, καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες αὐτοῖς ἐπορί-
σθησαν, καὶ ἵππαρχος ἐπεστάθη Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστρά-
του Ἀθηναῖος.

MITHRADATES ATTACKS THE GREEKS.

Μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπο- IV
ρεύοντο πρωαίτερον ἀναστάντες. χαράδραν γὰρ ἔδει
αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι ἐφ' ᾗ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς

διαβαίνουσιν οἱ πολέμιοι. διαβεβηκόσι δὲ αὐτοῖς πάλιν IV
φαίνεται Μιθραδάτης, ἔχων ἱππέας χιλίους, τοξότας δὲ 2
καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· τοσούτους γὰρ
ᾔτησε Τισσαφέρνην, καὶ ἔλαβεν ὑποσχόμενος, ἂν τού-
τους λάβῃ, παραδώσειν αὐτῷ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, κατα-
φρονήσας, ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ ὀλίγους ἔχων
ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι. ἐπεὶ 3
δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες ἀπεῖχον τῆς χαράδρας
ὅσον ὀκτὼ σταδίους, διέβαινε καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης ἔχων
τὴν δύναμιν. παρήγγελτο δὲ τῶν τε πελταστῶν οὓς
ἔδει διώκειν καὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν, καὶ τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν εἴρητο
θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὡς ἐφεψομένης ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως.
ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατειλήφει, καὶ ἤδη σφενδόναι 4
καὶ τοξεύματα ἐξικνοῦντο, ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἕλλησι τῇ
σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθὺς ἔθεον ὁμόσε οἷς εἴρητο καὶ οἱ
ἱππεῖς ἤλαυνον· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐπὶ
τὴν χαράδραν. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ διώξει τοῖς βαρβάροις 5
τῶν τε πεζῶν ἀπέθανον πολλοὶ καὶ τῶν ἱππέων ἐν τῇ
χαράδρᾳ ζωοὶ ἐλήφθησαν εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα. τοὺς δὲ
ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἠκίσαντο, ὡς
ὅτι φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις εἴη ὁρᾶν.

RUINS OF ANCIENT CITIES.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ 6
Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας
ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα πόλις 7
ἦν ἐρήμη μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισα· ᾤκουν
δ' αὐτὴν τὸ παλαιὸν Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῆς ἦν
τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν· τοῦ
δὲ κύκλου ἡ περίοδος δύο παρασάγγαι· ᾠκοδόμητο δὲ
πλίνθοις κεραμεαῖς· κρηπὶς δ' ὑπῆν λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος

εἴκοσι ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς Περσῶν ὅτε παρὰ IV
Μήδων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ 8
τρόπῳ ἐδύνατο ἑλεῖν· ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα
ἠφάνισε μέχρι ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἑάλω.
παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν πυραμὶς λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν 9
εὖρος ἑνὸς πλέθρου, τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. ἐπὶ
ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλησίον
κωμῶν ἀποπεφευγότες.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγ- 10
γας ἓξ πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα κείμενον· ὄνομα δὲ
ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτήν ποτε ᾤκουν.
ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπὶς λίθου ξεστοῦ κογχυλιάτου, τὸ
εὖρος πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ 11
δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπῳκοδόμητο πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος
πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους
ἡ περίοδος ἓξ παρασάγγαι. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Μήδεια
γυνὴ βασιλέως καταφυγεῖν ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν
ὑπὸ Περσῶν Μῆδοι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν 12
ὁ Περσῶν βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ ἑλεῖν οὔτε
βίᾳ· Ζεὺς δὲ βροντῇ κατέπληξε τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας, καὶ
οὕτως ἑάλω.

SKIRMISHING BETWEEN THE GREEKS AND TISSAPHERNES.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἕνα παρασάγ- 13
γας τέτταρας. εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν σταθμὸν Τισσα-
φέρνης ἐπεφάνη, οὗς τε αὐτὸς ἱππέας ἤγαγεν ἔχων καὶ
τὴν Ὀρόντα δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχον-
τος καὶ οὓς Κῦρος ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους καὶ οὓς ὁ
βασιλέως ἀδελφὸς ἔχων βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς
τούτοις ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ, ὥστε τὸ στρά-
τευμα πάμπολυ ἐφάνη. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν 14

τῶν τάξεων ὄπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια IV
παραγαγὼν ἐμβαλεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ' ἐβούλετο
διακινδυνεύειν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρήγγειλε καὶ τοξεύειν.
ἐπεὶ δὲ διαταχθέντες οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν καὶ οἱ 15
[Σκύθαι] τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν ἀν-
δρός, οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνυ προὐθυμεῖτο ῥᾴδιον ἦν, καὶ ὁ
Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει καὶ
αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν.

Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἳ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, οἳ δ' 16
εἵποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τῇ τότε ἀκρο-
βολίσει· μακρότερον γὰρ οἵ γε Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν
ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν. μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τόξα τὰ 17
Περσικά ἐστιν· ὥστε χρήσιμα ἦν ὁπόσα ἁλίσκοιτο
τῶν τοξευμάτων τοῖς Κρησί, καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι
τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων τοξεύμασι, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν
ἄνω ἱέντες μακράν. ηὑρίσκετο δὲ καὶ νεῦρα πολλὰ ἐν
ταῖς κώμαις καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς
σφενδόνας. καὶ ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ κατεστρα- 18
τοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες κώμαις ἐπιτυχόντες, ἀπῆλθον
οἱ βάρβαροι μεῖον ἔχοντες τῇ ἀκροβολίσει· τὴν δ'
ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν ἔμειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο·
ἦν γὰρ πολὺς σῖτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ
ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης εἵπετο
ἀκροβολιζόμενος.

THE HOLLOW SQUARE FOUND TO BE IMPRACTICABLE ON THE MARCH. NEW ORDER OF MARCH.

Ἔνθα δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον 19
ὅτι πονηρὰ τάξις εἴη πολεμίων ἑπομένων. ἀνάγκη
γάρ ἐστιν, ἢν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου ἢ
ὁδοῦ στενοτέρας οὔσης ἢ ὀρέων ἀναγκαζόντων ἢ γεφύ-

LIBRARY
SOUTHERN BAPTIST COLLEGE
WALNUT RIDGE, ARK.

ρας, ἐκθλίβεσθαι τοὺς ὁπλίτας καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως, ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, ἅμα δὲ ταραττομένους, ὥστε δυσχρήστους εἶναι [ἀνάγκη] ἀτάκτους ὄντας· ὅταν δ' αὖ διάσχῃ τὰ κέρατα, ἀνάγκη διασπᾶσθαι τοὺς τότε ἐκθλιβομένους καὶ κενὸν γίγνεσθαι τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων, καὶ ἀθυμεῖν τοὺς ταῦτα πάσχοντας πολεμίων ἐπομένων. καὶ ὁπότε δέοι γέφυραν διαβαίνειν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ διάβασιν, ἔσπευδεν ἕκαστος βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος· καὶ εὐεπίθετον ἦν ἐνταῦθα τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαν ἐξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπέστησαν καὶ ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχους. οὗτοι δὲ πορευόμενοι ὁπότε μὲν συγκύπτοι τὰ κέρατα ὑπέμενον, ⟨οἱ μὲν⟩ ὕστεροι [οἱ λοχαγοί], ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι, τοὺς δὲ παρῆγον ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων. ὁπότε δὲ διάσχοιεν αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου, τὸ μέσον ἂν ἐξεπίμπλασαν, εἰ μὲν στενότερον εἴη τό διέχον, κατὰ λόχους, εἰ δὲ πλατύτερον, κατὰ πεντηκοστῦς, εἰ δὲ πάνυ πλατύ, κατ' ἐνωμοτίας· ὥστε ἀεὶ ἔκπλεων εἶναι τὸ μέσον. εἰ δὲ καὶ διαβαίνειν τινὰ δέοι διάβασιν ἢ γέφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ μέρει οἱ λόχοι διέβαινον· καὶ εἴ που δέοι τι τῆς φάλαγγος, ἐπιπαρῆσαν οὗτοι. τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας. IV 20 21 22 23

HARASSED BY THE ENEMY AS THEY MARCH OVER THE HILLS.

Ἡνίκα δὲ τὸν πέμπτον ἐπορεύοντο, εἶδον βασίλειόν τι καὶ περὶ αὐτὸ κώμας πολλάς, τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ γηλόφων ὑψηλῶν γιγνομένην, οἷ καθῆκον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦσαν αἱ κῶμαι. καὶ 24

εἶδον μὲν τοὺς λόφους ἄσμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκὸς IV
τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἱππέων· ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ 25
τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον γήλοφον καὶ
κατέβαινον, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα
ἐπιγίγνονται οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ εἰς τὸ
πρανὲς ἔβαλλον, ἐσφενδόνων, ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων, 26
καὶ πολλοὺς ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων
γυμνήτων καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων·
ὥστε παντάπασι ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἄχρηστοι ἦσαν ἐν
τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες καὶ οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται.
ἐπεὶ δὲ πιεζόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν, 27
σχολῇ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀφικνοῦνται ὁπλῖται ὄντες, οἱ
δὲ πολέμιοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. πάλιν δὲ ὁπότε ἀπίοιεν 28
πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα ταὐτὰ ἔπασχον, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ
δευτέρου γηλόφου ταὐτὰ ἐγίγνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου
γηλόφου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας πρὶν
ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον πελ-
ταστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ 29
τῶν ἑπομένων πολεμίων, οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμιοι
τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοικότες μὴ ἀποτμηθείησαν καὶ
ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτῶν γένοιντο οἱ πολέμιοι. οὕτω τὸ 30
λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἳ μὲν τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ
τοὺς γηλόφους, οἳ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπιπαριόντες, ἀφί-
κοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας· καὶ ἰατροὺς κατέστησαν ὀκτώ.
πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι.

AFTER THREE DAYS' HALT THE MARCH IS RESUMED. THE GREEKS ENCAMP WHEN ATTACKED.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν τετρωμέ- 31
νων ἕνεκα καὶ ἅμα ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ εἶχον, ἄλευρα,
οἶνον, κριθὰς ἵπποις συμβεβλημένας πολλάς. ταῦτα

δὲ συνενηνεγμένα ἦν τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. IV
τετάρτῃ δ' ἡμέρᾳ καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. ἐπεὶ 32
δὲ κατέλαβεν αὐτοὺς Τισσαφέρνης σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδιδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἡ ἀνάγκη κατασκηνῆσαι οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ ἀπόμαχοι, ⟨οἵ τε⟩ τετρωμένοι καὶ οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες καὶ οἱ τῶν φερόντων τὰ ὅπλα δεξάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν καὶ ἐπεχείρησαν αὐτοῖς 33
ἀκροβολίζεσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι πρὸς τὴν κώμην προσιόντες, πολὺ περιῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες· πολὺ γὰρ διέφερεν ἐκ χώρας ὁρμῶντας ἀλέξασθαι ἢ πορευομένους ἐπιοῦσι τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι.

A PERSIAN CAMP AT NIGHT.

Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δείλη, ὥρα ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς πολε- 34
μίοις· οὔποτε γὰρ μεῖον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἑξήκοντα σταδίων, φοβούμενοι μὴ τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς. πονη- 35
ρὸν γὰρ νυκτός ἐστι στράτευμα Περσικόν. οἵ τε γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἕνεκα εἰ λυθείησαν, ἐάν τέ τις θόρυβος γίγνηται, δεῖ ἐπισάξαι τὸν ἵππον Πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ καὶ χαλινῶσαι, δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα χαλεπὰ νύκτωρ καὶ θορύβου ὄντος. τούτου ἕνεκα πόρρω ἀπεσκήνουν τῶν Ἑλλήνων.

BY A RUSE THE GREEKS GET SUCH A START OF THE ENEMY AS TO BE UNMOLESTED FOR THREE DAYS.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίγνωσκον αὐτοὺς οἱ Ἕλληνες βουλομέ- 36
νους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους, ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἕλ-

λησι συσκευάζεσθαι ἀκουόντων τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ IV
χρόνον μέν τινα ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας οἱ βάρβαροι,
ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὀψὲ ἐγίγνετο, ἀπῆσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λύειν
αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι καὶ κατάγεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ
στρατόπεδον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπιόντας ἤδη ἑώρων 37
οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες καὶ
διῆλθον ὅσον ἑξήκοντα σταδίους. καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦ-
τον μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ
ἐφάνησαν οἱ πολέμιοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ
νυκτὸς προελθόντες καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερ-
δέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ᾗ ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παριέναι,
ἀκρωνυχίαν ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ
πεδίον.

XENOPHON'S PLAN TO DISLODGE THE ENEMY FROM A HEIGHT COMMANDING THE LINE OF MARCH.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἑώρα Χειρίσοφος προκατειλημμένην τὴν 38
ἀκρωνυχίαν, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς καὶ
κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ
πρόσθεν· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τοὺς μὲν πελταστὰς οὐκ ἦγεν· 39
ἐπιφαινόμενον γὰρ ἑώρα Τισσαφέρνην καὶ τὸ στρά-
τευμα πᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ προσελάσας ἠρώτα Τί καλεῖς; ὃ
δὲ λέγει αὐτῷ· Ἔξεστιν ὁρᾶν· κατείληπται γὰρ ἡμῖν
ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως λόφος, καὶ οὐκ ἔστι παρελθεῖν,
εἰ μὴ τούτους ἀποκόψομεν. ἀλλὰ τί οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς 40
πελταστάς; ὃ δὲ λέγει ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἔρημα
καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὄπισθεν πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. Ἀλλὰ
μὴν ὥρα γ', ἔφη, βουλεύεσθαι πῶς τις τοὺς ἄνδρας
ἀπελᾷ ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου. ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τοῦ 41
ὄρους τὴν κορυφὴν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν στρατεύ-
ματος οὖσαν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον

ἔνθα ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ λέγει· Κράτιστον, ὦ Χει- IV
ρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἴεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. ἢν γὰρ
τοῦτο λάβωμεν, οὐ δυνήσονται μένειν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς
ὁδοῦ. ἀλλά, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ
δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ χρῄζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ
ὄρος, ἐγὼ δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ. Ἀλλὰ δίδωμί σοι, ἔφη ὁ 42
Χειρίσοφος, ὁπότερον βούλει ἑλέσθαι. εἰπὼν ὁ Ξενο-
φῶν ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν αἱρεῖται πορεύεσθαι, κελεύει
δέ οἱ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἄνδρας· μακρὸν
γὰρ ἦν ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς λαβεῖν. καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος 43
συμπέμπει τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος πελταστάς, ἔλαβε
δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον πλαισίου. συνέπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευ-
σεν αὐτῷ καὶ τοὺς τριακοσίους οὓς αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν
ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ πλαισίου.

SUCCESS OF XENOPHON'S STRATEGY. HE WINS APPLAUSE BY SHARING THE DIFFICULTIES OF THE ASCENT JUST AS A COMMON SOLDIER.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. οἱ δ' 44
ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου πολέμιοι ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν
ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὥρμησαν ἁμιλλᾶσθαι
ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ μὲν κραυγὴ ἦν 45
τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυ-
τῶν, πολλὴ δὲ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην τοῖς
ἑαυτῶν διακελευομένων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρελαύνων ἐπὶ 46
τοῦ ἵππου παρεκελεύετο· Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα
νομίζετε ἁμιλλᾶσθαι, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς
γυναῖκας, νῦν ὀλίγον πονήσαντες ἀμαχεὶ τὴν λοιπὴν
πορευσόμεθα. Σωτηρίδας δὲ ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· Οὐκ 47
ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν· σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου
ὀχῇ, ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα φέρων. καὶ 48

ὃς ἀκούσας ταῦτα καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὠθεῖται IV
αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀφελόμενος ὡς
ἐδύνατο τάχιστα ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ
θώρακα ἔχων τὸν ἱππικόν· ὥστ' ἐπιέζετο. καὶ τοῖς
μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν παρεκελεύετο, τοῖς δὲ ὄπισθεν
παριέναι μόλις ἑπόμενος. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατιῶται 49
παίουσι καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτηριδαν,
ἔστε ἠνάγκασαν ἀναλαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι.
ὃ δ' ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν,
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε πεζῇ.
καὶ φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους.

AFTER TAKING THE HEIGHT THE GREEKS DESCEND TO ONE OF THE VILLAGES IN THE PLAIN, WHICH TISSAPHERNES ATTEMPTS TO BURN.

Ἔνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον ᾗ V
ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ
δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ἄλ-
λην ὁδὸν ᾤχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες
ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν.
ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι κῶμαι πολλαὶ πλήρεις πολλῶν
ἀγαθῶν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τίγρητα ποτα-
μόν. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν δείλη ἐξαπίνης οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιφαί- 2
νονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν
τινας τῶν ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἁρπαγήν·
καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς
τὸ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατελήφθησαν. ἐνταῦθα Τισ- 3
σαφέρνης καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ καίειν ἐπεχείρησαν τὰς
κώμας. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἠθύμησάν τινες, ἐν-
νοούμενοι μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ καίοιεν, οὐκ ἔχοιεν
ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον 4

ἀπῆσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς τάξεις ἡνίκα ἀπὸ τῆς βοηθείας ἀπήντησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔλεγεν· Ὁρᾶτε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ὑφιέντας τὴν χώραν ἤδη ὑμετέραν εἶναι; ἃ γὰρ ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο διεπράττοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, νῦν αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν. ἀλλ' ἐάν που καταλείπωσί γε αὐτοῖς ἐπιτήδεια, ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα πορευομένους. ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Οὔκουν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς, ἔφη, καίωμεν, καὶ οὕτω θᾶττον παύσονται. V

THE COMMANDERS ARE IN PERPLEXITY ABOUT THEIR ROUTE, BUT REJECT THE INGENIOUS DEVICE OF A RHODIAN SOLDIER FOR SETTING THEM OVER THE RIVER.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν, στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνῆσαν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ ἀπορία ἦν. ἔνθεν μὲν γὰρ ὄρη ἦν ὑπερύψηλα, ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος βάθος ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους. ἀπορουμένοις δ' αὐτοῖς προσελθών τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ τετρακισχιλίους ὁπλίτας, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὧν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ὅτου δέοιτο, Ἀσκῶν, ἔφη, δισχιλίων δεήσομαι· πολλὰ δ' ὁρῶ πρόβατα καὶ αἶγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ ἀποδαρέντα καὶ φυσηθέντα ῥᾳδίως ἂν παρέχοι τὴν διάβασιν. δεήσομαι δὲ καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν οἷς χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τούτοις ζεύξας τοὺς ἀσκοὺς πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὁρμίσας ἕκαστον ἀσκὸν λίθους ἀρτήσας καὶ 6 7 8 9 10

ἀφεὶς ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, διαγαγὼν καὶ ἀμ- V
φοτέρωθεν δήσας ἐπιβαλῶ ὕλην καὶ γῆν ἐπιφορήσω· 11
ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐ καταδύσεσθε αὐτίκα μάλα εἴσεσθε·
πᾶς γὰρ ἀσκὸς δύ' ἄνδρας ἕξει τοῦ μὴ καταδῦναι.
ὥστε δὲ μὴ ὀλισθάνειν ἡ ὕλη καὶ ἡ γῆ σχήσει. ἀκού- 12
σασι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα χαρίεν
ἐδόκει εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον. ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ κω-
λύσοντες πέραν πολλοὶ ἱππεῖς, οἳ εὐθὺς τοῖς πρώτοις
οὐδὲν ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τούτων ποιεῖν.

AFTER LEARNING FROM PRISONERS THAT THE CARDUCHIANS ARE NOT SUBSERVIENT TO THE KING, THEY DECIDE TO ENTER THEIR TERRITORY.

Ἐνταῦθα τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν ἐπανεχώρουν εἰς τοὔμ- 13
παλιν [ἢ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα] εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους κώμας,
κατακαύσαντες ἔνθεν ἐξῆσαν· ὥστε οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ
προσήλαυνον, ἀλλὰ ἐθεῶντο καὶ ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θαυμά-
ζουσιν ὅποι ποτὲ τρέψονται οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῷ
ἔχοιεν. ἐνταῦθα οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπι- 14
τήδεια ἦσαν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ πάλιν συνῆλθον, καὶ
συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἁλωκότας ἤλεγχον τὴν κύκλῳ
πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἑκάστη εἴη. οἳ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ 15
πρὸς μεσημβρίαν τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἴη καὶ Μηδίαν,
δι' ἥσπερ ἤκοιεν, ἡ δὲ πρὸς ἕω ἐπὶ Σοῦσά τε καὶ
Ἐκβάτανα φέροι, ἔνθα θερίζειν λέγεται βασιλεύς, ἡ δὲ
διαβάντι τὸν ποταμὸν πρὸς ἑσπέραν ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ
Ἰωνίαν φέροι, ἡ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ πρὸς ἄρκτον
τετραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι. τούτους δὲ 16
ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικοὺς εἶναι, καὶ
βασιλέως οὐκ ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς
αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν στρατιὰν δώδεκα μυριάδας· τούτων

δ' οὐδέν' ἀπονοστῆσαι διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. ὁπότε V
μέντοι πρὸς τὸν σατράπην ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ σπείσαιντο, καὶ
ἐπιμειγνύναι σφῶν τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς
ἑαυτούς. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκάθισαν 17
χωρὶς τοὺς ἑκασταχόσε φάσκοντας εἰδέναι, οὐδὲν [δὲ]
δῆλον ποιήσαντες ὅποι πορεύεσθαι ἔμελλον. ἐδόκει
δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τῶν ὀρέων εἰς
Καρδούχους ἐμβάλλειν· τούτους γὰρ διελθόντας ἔφα-
σαν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἥξειν, ἧς Ὀρόντας ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ
εὐδαίμονος. ἐντεῦθεν δ' εὔπορον ἔφασαν εἶναι ὅποι
τις ἐθέλοι πορεύεσθαι. ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως 18
ἡνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς ὥρας τὴν πορείαν ποιοῖντο· τὴν
γὰρ ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὀρέων ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ προκα-
ταληφθείη· καὶ παρήγγειλαν, ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν,
συσκευασαμένους πάντας ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἕπεσθαι
ἡνίκ' ἄν τις παραγγέλλῃ.

Δ

ENTERING THE CARDUCHIAN MOUNTAINS THEY ARE ATTACKED BY THE INHABITANTS.

[1] Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακὴν καὶ 5
ἐλείπετο τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον σκοταίους διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον,
τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι
ἀφικνοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἔνθα δὴ 6
Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγεῖτο τοῦ στρατεύματος λαβὼν τὸ
ἀμφ' αὑτὸν καὶ τοὺς γυμνῆτας πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ
σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξιν ὁπλίταις εἵπετο οὐδένα ἔχων
γυμνῆτα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μή τις
ἄνω πορευομένων ἐκ τοῦ ὄπισθεν ἐπίσποιτο. καὶ 7
ἐπὶ μὲν τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει Χειρίσοφος πρίν τινας
αἰσθέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων· ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγεῖτο· ἐφείπετο
δὲ ἀεὶ τὸ ὑπερβάλλον τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς τὰς κώμας

---

[1] [Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει ἐγένετο μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν I
μάχην ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς ἃς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες Ἕλληνες ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα παραβάντος τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντάπασιν ἄπορος 2
ἦν διὰ τὸ βάθος καὶ μέγεθος, πάροδος δὲ οὐκ ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη ἀπότομα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο, ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς διὰ τῶν ὀρέων πορευτέον εἶναι. ἤκουον γὰρ τῶν ἁλισκομένων ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη, ἐν 3
τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἣν μὲν βούλωνται, διαβήσονται, ἣν δὲ μὴ βούλωνται, περίασι. καὶ τοῦ Εὐφράτου δὲ τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἐμβολὴν 4
ὧδε ποιοῦνται, ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους καταλαβεῖν τὰ ἄκρα.]

τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκεσί τε καὶ μυχοῖς τῶν ὀρέων. ἔνθα I
δὴ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίας ἔχοντες 8
καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ
ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἦν λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ καὶ χαλκώ-
μασι παμπόλλοις κατεσκευασμέναι αἱ οἰκίαι, ὧν οὐδὲν
ἔφερον οἱ Ἕλληνες, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον,
ὑποφειδόμενοι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι διιέναι
αὐτοὺς ὡς διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας, ἐπείπερ βασιλεῖ πολέ-
μιοι ἦσαν· τὰ μέντοι ἐπιτήδεια ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι 9
ἐλάμβανεν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε
καλούντων ὑπήκουον οὔτε ἄλλο φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποίουν·
ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς 10
τὰς κώμας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι — διὰ γὰρ
τὸ στενὴν εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἡ ἀνά-
βασις αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο καὶ κατάβασις — τότε δὴ
συλλεγέντες τινὲς τῶν Καρδούχων τοῖς τελευταίοις
ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν τινας καὶ λίθοις καὶ τοξεύ-
μασι κατέτρωσαν, ὀλίγοι ὄντες· ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου γὰρ
αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους 11
συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ
στρατεύματος. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα οὕτως ἐν
ταῖς κώμαις ηὐλίσθησαν· οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι πυρὰ πολλὰ
ἔκαιον κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ συνεώρων ἀλλήλους.

THEY LET GO CAPTIVES AND LEAVE ANIMALS BEHIND.

Ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθοῦσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ 12
λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε τῶν τε ὑποζυγίων τὰ
ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα ἔχοντας πορεύεσθαι, κατα-
λιπόντας τἆλλα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα ἀνδρά-
ποδα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάντα ἀφεῖναι. σχολαίαν γὰρ 13

ἐποίουν τὴν πορείαν πολλὰ ὄντα τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ I
αἰχμάλωτα, πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὄντες ἀπόμαχοι
ἦσαν, διπλάσιά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἔδει πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρε-
σθαι πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων. δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα
ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν.

DIFFICULT ADVANCE IN BAD WEATHER AND UNDER REPEATED ATTACKS.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, ὑποστήσαντες 14
ἔν τῳ στενῷ οἱ στρατηγοί, εἴ τι εὑρίσκοιεν τῶν εἰρη-
μένων μὴ ἀφειμένον, ἀφῃροῦντο, οἷ δ' ἐπείθοντο, πλὴν
εἴ τις ἔκλεψεν, οἷον ἢ παιδὸς ἐπιθυμήσας ἢ γυναικὸς
τῶν εὐπρεπῶν. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως
ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ μέν τι μαχόμενοι τὰ δέ τι ἀναπαυό-
μενοι. εἰς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν γίγνεται χειμὼν πολύς, 15
ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἱκανὰ τἀπιτή-
δεια. καὶ ἡγεῖτο μὲν Χειρίσοφος, ὠπισθοφυλάκει δὲ
Ξενοφῶν. καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ 16
στενῶν ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγὺς προσιόντες ἐτόξευον
καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ὥστε ἠναγκάζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπι-
διώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι·
καὶ θαμινὰ παρήγγελλεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε
οἱ πολέμιοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπικέοιντο. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος 17
ἄλλοτε μὲν ὅτε παρεγγυῷτο ὑπέμενε, τότε δὲ οὐχ
ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως καὶ παρηγγύα ἕπεσθαι,
ὥστε δῆλον ἦν ὅτι πρᾶγμά τι εἴη· σχολὴ δ' οὐκ ἦν
ἰδεῖν παρελθόντι τὸ αἴτιον τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία
ὁμοία φυγῇ ἐγίγνετο τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα 18
ἀποθνῄσκει ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Κλεώνυμος τοξευ-
θεὶς διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς σπολάδος εἰς τὰς πλευ-
ράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκὰς διαμπερὲς τὴν κεφαλήν.

DISPUTE BETWEEN XENOPHON AND CHIRISOPHUS.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταθμόν, εὐθὺς ὥσπερ εἶχεν I
ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον ᾐτιᾶτο αὐτὸν 19
ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἠναγκάζοντο φεύγοντες ἅμα
μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν δύο καλώ τε καὶ ἀγαθὼ ἄνδρε
τέθνατον καὶ οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι ἐδυνάμεθα.
ἀποκρίνεται ὁ Χειρίσοφος· Βλέψον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη 20
καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· μία δ᾽ αὕτη ὁδὸς ἣν
ὁρᾷς ὀρθία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὁρᾶν ἔξεστί σοι
ὄχλον τοσοῦτον, οἳ κατειληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἔκβα-
σιν. ταῦτ᾽ ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον καὶ διὰ τοῦτό σε οὐχ ὑπέμε- 21
νον, εἴ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι πρὶν κατειλῆφθαι τὴν
ὑπερβολήν· οἱ δ᾽ ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν οὔ φασιν εἶναι
ἄλλην ὁδόν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἀλλ᾽ ἐγὼ ἔχω δύο 22
ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρεῖχον, ἐνηδρεύ-
σαμεν, ὅπερ ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησε, καὶ ἀπεκ-
τείναμέν τινας αὐτῶν, καὶ ζῶντας προὐθυμήθημεν λα-
βεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου ἕνεκα ὅπως ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν
χώραν χρησαίμεθα.

EXAMINATION OF TWO PRISONERS.

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἤλεγχον δια- 23
λαβόντες εἴ τινα εἰδεῖεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν.
ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος οὐκ ἔφη μάλα πολλῶν φόβων προσ-
αγομένων· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον ἔλεγεν, ὁρῶντος
τοῦ ἑτέρου κατεσφάγη. ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος 24
μὲν οὐ φαίη διὰ ταῦτα εἰδέναι ὅτι αὐτῷ ἐτύγχανε
θυγάτηρ ἐκεῖ παρ᾽ ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· αὐτὸς δ᾽ ἔφη
ἡγήσεσθαι δυνατὴν καὶ ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι ὁδόν.
ἐρωτώμενος δ᾽ εἰ εἴη τι ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον χωρίον, 25

ἔφη εἶναι ἄκρον ὃ εἰ μή τις προκαταλήψοιτο, ἀδύνατον I
ἔσεσθαι παρελθεῖν.

CALL FOR VOLUNTEERS TO SEIZE A HEIGHT.

Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγοὺς καὶ 26
πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν λέγειν τε τὰ παρόντα καὶ
ἐρωτᾶν εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι
ἂν γενέσθαι καὶ ὑποστὰς ἐθελοντὴς πορεύεσθαι. ὑφί- 27
σταται τῶν μὲν ὁπλιτῶν Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς
[Ἀρκὰς] καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος [Ἀρκάς], ἀντι-
στασιάζων δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος [Ἀρκὰς
καὶ οὗτος] ἔφη ἐθέλειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν ἐθελον-
τὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος· ἐγὼ γάρ, ἔφη, οἶδα
ὅτι ἕψονται πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου. ἐκ 28
τούτου ἐρωτῶσιν εἴ τις καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιάρχων
ἐθέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται Ἀριστέας Χῖος, ὃς
πολλαχοῦ πολλοῦ ἄξιος τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα
ἐγένετο.

THE VOLUNTEERS ADVANCE, AND XENOPHON ATTEMPTS A DIVERSION TO MISLEAD THE ENEMY, WHO ROLL DOWN HUGE STONES.

Καὶ ἦν μὲν δείλη, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόν- II
τας πορεύεσθαι. καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα δήσαντες παρα-
διδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἣν
λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ
ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας
ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς κατέχοντας τὴν φανερὰν ἔκβασιν, αὐτοὶ
δὲ συμβοηθήσειν ἐκβαίνοντες ὡς ἂν δύνωνται τάχιστα.
ταῦτα συνθέμενοι οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς δισχί- 2
λιοι· καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων
τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἡγεῖτο πρὸς τὴν φανερὰν ἔκβασιν,
ὅπως ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν

καὶ ὡς μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ περιόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν II
ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἣν ἔδει διαβάντας πρὸς 3
τὸ ὄρθιον ἐκβαίνειν, τηνικαῦτα ἐκυλίνδουν οἱ βάρβαροι
ὁλοιτρόχους ἁμαξιαίους καὶ μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἳ
φερόμενοι πρὸς τὰς πέτρας παίοντες διεσφενδονῶντο·
καὶ παντάπασιν οὐδὲ πελάσαι οἷόν τ' ἦν τῇ εἰσόδῳ.
ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ δύναιντο, ἄλλῃ 4
ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα ἐποίουν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο·
ἐπεὶ δὲ ᾤοντο ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπιόντες, τότε ἀπῆλθον
ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· ἐτύγχανον δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι ὄντες
αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες. οἱ μέντοι πολέμιοι
οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς κυλινδοῦντες τοὺς
λίθους· τεκμαίρεσθαι δ' ἦν τῷ ψόφῳ.

THE GREEKS DISLODGE THE ENEMY FROM THE PASS.

Οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα κύκλῳ περιόντες κατα- 5
λαμβάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας ἀμφὶ πῦρ καθημένους· καὶ
τοὺς μὲν κατακαίνοντες τοὺς δὲ καταδιώξαντες αὐτοὶ
ἐνταῦθ' ἔμενον ὡς τὸ ἄκρον κατέχοντες. οἳ δ' οὐ 6
κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ
στενὴ αὕτη ὁδὸς ἐφ' ᾗ ἐκάθηντο οἱ φύλακες. ἔφοδος
μέντοι αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἦν οἳ ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ
ὁδῷ ἐκάθηντο. καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐνταῦθα διήγαγον· 7
ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ὑπέφαινεν, ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ συντεταγ-
μένοι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ὁμίχλη ἐγένετο,
ὥστ' ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς προσελθόντες· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλή-
λους, ἥ τε σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγξατο καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἴεντο
ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόν-
τες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες ὀλίγοι ἀπέθνῃσκον· εὔζωνοι
γὰρ ἦσαν. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς 8

σάλπιγγος εὐθὺς ἵεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδόν· II
ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς ἐπορεύ-
οντο ᾗ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύ-
ναντο ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι 9
συνέμειξαν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον.

TWO HILLS CAPTURED.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμί-
σεις ἐπορεύετο ᾗπερ οἱ τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες· εὐοδω-
τάτη γὰρ ἦν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις· τοὺς δὲ ἡμίσεις ὄπισθεν
τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἔταξε. πορευόμενοι δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι 10
λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων,
οὓς ἢ ἀποκόψαι ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ διεζεῦχθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλ-
λων Ἑλλήνων. καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ᾗπερ οἱ
ἄλλοι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια οὐκ ἦν ἄλλῃ ἢ ταύτῃ ἐκβῆναι.
ἔνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις προσβάλλουσι 11
πρὸς τὸν λόφον ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ ἀλλὰ
καταλιπόντες ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλοιντο φεύ-
γειν. καὶ τέως μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπῃ ἐδύνατο 12
ἕκαστος οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ
προσίεντο, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ τοῦτόν
τε παρεληλύθεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἕτερον ὁρῶσιν ἔμ-
προσθεν λόφον κατεχόμενον ἐπὶ τοῦτον αὖθις ἐδόκει
πορεύεσθαι. ἐννοήσας δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν μή, εἰ ἔρημον 13
καταλίποι τὸν ἑαλωκότα λόφον, [καὶ] πάλιν λαβόντες
οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιθοῖντο τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις παριοῦσιν —
ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια ἅτε διὰ στενῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ
πορευόμενα — καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου λοχαγοὺς
Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀμφικρά-
την Ἀμφιδήμου Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν Ἀργεῖον

φυγάδα, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν II
δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον αἱροῦσιν.

XENOPHON OCCUPIES A THIRD HILL.

Ἔτι δὲ αὐτοῖς τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺ ὀρθιώ- 14
τατος ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης φυλακῆς
τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν ἐθελοντῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγέ- 15
νοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀμαχητὶ τὸν
μαστόν, ὥστε θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι γενέσθαι καὶ ὑπώπτευον
δείσαντας αὐτοὺς μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῖντο ἀπο-
λιπεῖν. οἳ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου καθορῶντες τὰ
ὄπισθεν γιγνόμενα πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας 16
ἐχώρουν. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέ-
βαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν,
ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμείξειαν, καὶ προελθόν-
τας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα εἶπε.

THE GREEKS DISLODGED FROM THE SECOND HILL. NEGOTIATIONS FOR A TRUCE.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀρ- 17
γεῖος πεφευγὼς καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ
λόφου καὶ ὅτι τεθνᾶσι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης
καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι μὴ ἁλάμενοι κατὰ τῆς πέτρας πρὸς
τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἀφίκοντο. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξά- 18
μενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἦκον ἐπ' ἀντίπορον λόφον τῷ μα-
στῷ· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως
περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπῄτει. οἳ δὲ ἔφασαν 19
ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς οἰκίας. συνωμολόγει
ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα
παρῆν, οἳ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο, πάντες οἱ ἐκ τούτου
τοῦ τόπου συνερρύησαν ἐνταῦθα [οἱ πολέμιοι]. καὶ 20

ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ πρὸς τοὺς II
ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειντο, ἵεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι
πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ
τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινεν,
ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρους· καὶ ἑνὸς μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος,
Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστὴς ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέ-
λιπεν· Εὐρύλοχος δὲ Λουσιεὺς [Ἀρκὰς] προσέδραμεν 21
αὐτῷ ὁπλίτης, καὶ πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβεβλημένος ἀπεχώ-
ρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους ἀπῆλθον.

WELL-STOCKED HOUSES REACHED. BURIAL OF THE DEAD.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, καὶ 22
ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ
ἐπιτηδείοις δαψιλέσι· καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὥστε
ἐν λάκκοις κονιατοῖς εἶχον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρί- 23
σοφος διεπράξαντο ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέ-
δοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν τοῖς ἀποθα-
νοῦσιν ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀνδράσιν
ἀγαθοῖς.

MARCH CONTINUED UNDER HARASSING ATTACKS OF THE NATIVES.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο· μαχό- 24
μενοι δ' οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ ὅπῃ εἴη στενὸν χωρίον προ-
καταλαμβάνοντες ἐκώλυον τὰς παρόδους. ὁπότε μὲν 25
οὖν τοὺς πρώτους κωλύοιεν, Ξενοφῶν ὄπισθεν ἐκβαί-
νων πρὸς τὰ ὄρη ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῖς
πρώτοις ἀνωτέρω πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλυόντων,
ὁπότε δὲ τοῖς ὄπισθεν ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων 26
καὶ πειρώμενος ἀνωτέρω γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλυόντων ἔλυε
τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου τοῖς ὄπισθεν· καὶ ἀεὶ

οὕτως ἐβοήθουν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἀλλήλων ἐπε- II
μέλοντο.

THE CARDUCHIAN BOWMEN AND THEIR LONG BOWS.

Ἦν δὲ καὶ ὁπότε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι πολλὰ πράγ- 27
ματα παρεῖχον οἱ βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουσιν· ἐλαφροὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥστε καὶ ἐγγύθεν φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν· οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. ἄριστοι δὲ καὶ τοξόται ἦσαν· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς 28
τριπήχη, τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη· εἶλκον δὲ τὰς νευρὰς ὁπότε τοξεύοιεν πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ τόξου τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ προσβαίνοντες. τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. ἐχρῶντο δὲ αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἀκοντίοις ἐναγκυλῶντες. ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χωρίοις οἱ Κρῆτες χρησιμώτατοι ἐγένοντο. ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

THE GREEKS CAMP IN PLENTY BY THE CENTRITES, RECOUNTING THEIR ADVENTURES.

Ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν ηὐλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς III
κώμαις ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν, εὖρος ὡς δίπλεθρον, ὃς ὁρίζει τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν τῶν Καρδούχων χώραν. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα ἀνέπνευσαν ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες πεδίον· ἀπεῖχε δὲ τῶν ὀρέων ὁ ποταμὸς ἓξ ἢ ἑπτὰ στάδια τῶν Καρδούχων. τότε μὲν οὖν ηὐλίσθησαν μάλα ἡδέως καὶ 2
τἀπιτήδεια ἔχοντες καὶ πολλὰ τῶν παρεληλυθότων πόνων μνημονεύοντες. ἑπτὰ γὰρ ἡμέρας ὅσασπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρδούχων πάσας μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν, καὶ ἔπαθον κακὰ ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους. ὡς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων ἡδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.

DIFFICULTY OF THE PASSAGE OF THE CENTRITES. ENEMIES BEFORE AND BEHIND THEM.

Ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁρῶσιν ἱππεῖς που πέραν τοῦ III
ποταμοῦ ἐξωπλισμένους ὡς κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, 3
πεζοὺς δ' ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις παρατεταγμένους ἄνω τῶν
ἱππέων ὡς κωλύσοντας εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν ἐκβαίνειν.
ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι Ὀρόντα καὶ Ἀρτούχα Ἀρμένιοι καὶ 4
Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι μισθοφόροι. ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ
Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἄλκιμοι εἶναι· ὅπλα δ' εἶχον
γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχας. αἱ δὲ ὄχθαι αὗται ἐφ' ὧν 5
παρατεταγμένοι οὗτοι ἦσαν τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα
ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπεῖχον· ὁδὸς δὲ μία ἡ ὁρωμένη ἦν
ἄγουσα ἄνω ὥσπερ χειροποίητος· ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο δια-
βαίνειν οἱ Ἕλληνες. ἐπεὶ δὲ πειρωμένοις τό τε ὕδωρ 6
ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ τραχὺς ἦν ὁ ποταμὸς
μεγάλοις λίθοις καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς, καὶ οὔτ' ἐν τῷ ὕδατι
τὰ ὅπλα ἦν ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ μή, ἥρπαζεν ὁ ποταμός· ἐπί
τε τῆς κεφαλῆς τὰ ὅπλα εἴ τις φέροι, γυμνοὶ ἐγίγνοντο
πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ τἆλλα βέλη· ἀνεχώρησαν καὶ
αὐτοῦ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. ἔνθα δὲ 7
αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους ἑώρων
τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς συνειλεγμένους ἐν τοῖς
ὅπλοις. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν,
ὁρῶσι μὲν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν δυσπορίαν, ὁρῶσι δὲ τοὺς
διαβαίνειν κωλύσοντας, ὁρῶσι δὲ τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν
ἐπικεισομένους τοὺς Καρδούχους ὄπισθεν.

XENOPHON'S DREAM.

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα ἔμειναν ἐν 8
πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὄναρ εἶδεν· ἔδοξεν
ἐν πέδαις δεδέσθαι, αὗται δὲ αὐτῷ αὐτόμαται περιρ-

ρυῆναι, ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ διαβαίνειν ὁπόσον ἐβούλετο. III
ἐπεὶ δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον καὶ
λέγει ὅτι ἐλπίδας ἔχει καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ διηγεῖται
αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. ὃ δὲ ἥδετό τε καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέ- 9
φαινεν ἐθύοντο πάντες παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοί. καὶ
τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἦν εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. καὶ ἀπιόντες
ἀπὸ τῶν ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ παρήγγελ-
λον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι.

DREAM FULFILLED; A FORD DISCOVERED.

Καὶ ἀριστῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι προσέτρεχον δύο 10
νεανίσκοι· ἤδεσαν γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἐξείη αὐτῷ καὶ
ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι προσελθεῖν καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι
ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τίς τι ἔχοι τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλε-
μον. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν φρύγανα συλλέ- 11
γοντες ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ, κἄπειτα κατίδοιεν ἐν τῷ πέραν
ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμὸν γέροντά
τε καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παιδίσκας ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱμα-
τίων κατατιθεμένους ἐν πέτρᾳ ἀντρώδει. ἰδοῦσι δὲ 12
σφίσι δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διαβῆναι· οὐδὲ γὰρ τοῖς
πολεμίοις ἱππεῦσι προσβατὸν εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. ἐκ-
δύντες δ᾽ ἔφασαν ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς
νευσόμενοι διαβαίνειν· πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν δια-
βῆναι πρὶν βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα· καὶ διαβάντες, λαβόντες
τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν ἥκειν.

PLANS FOR CROSSING.

Εὐθὺς οὖν Ξενοφῶν αὐτός τε ἔσπενδε καὶ τοῖς νεα- 13
νίσκοις ἐγχεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ εὔχεσθαι τοῖς φήνασι
θεοῖς τά τε ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν πόρον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ
ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι. σπείσας δ᾽ εὐθὺς ἦγε τοὺς νεανί-

σκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται ταὐτά. III
ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος σπονδὰς ἐποίει. σπεί- 14
σαντες δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγελλον συσκευάζεσθαι, αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα διαβαῖεν καὶ τούς τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῷεν καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ὄπισθεν μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν. καὶ 15
ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι καὶ διαβαίνειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἥμισυ ἔτι ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων διαβαίνειν.

CHIRISOPHUS PREPARES TO CROSS.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς εἶχεν ἐπορεύοντο· ἡγοῦντο 16
δ' οἱ νεανίσκοι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ὡς τέτταρες στάδιοι. πορευομένων δ' αὐτῶν ἀντιπαρῆσαν αἱ τάξεις τῶν 17
ἱππέων. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλε, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἐκέλευεν ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. καὶ οἱ μὲν μάντεις ἐσφαγιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ δὲ πολέ- 18
μιοι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ἀλλ' οὔπω ἐξικνοῦντο· ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ σφάγια, ἐπαιάνιζον πάντες οἱ στρα- 19
τιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, συνωλόλυζον δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι. πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἑταῖραι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι.

CHIRISOPHUS CROSSES EASILY, WHILE XENOPHON DECEIVES THE ENEMY BY A FEINT.

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· 20
ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνο-

τάτους ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον τὸν κατὰ III
τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, προσποιούμενος ταύτῃ διαβὰς ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς παρὰ τὸν ποτα- 21
μὸν ἱππεῖς. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὁρῶντες μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς τὸ ὕδωρ περῶντας, ὁρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοὔμπαλιν, δείσαντες μὴ ἀποληφθείησαν φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω ἔκβασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Λύκιος δ' ὁ τὴν 22
τάξιν ἔχων τῶν ἱππέων καὶ Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἑώρων ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντας, εἵποντο· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὖ ἐπεὶ διέβη, τοὺς ἱππέας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν, 23
εὐθὺς δὲ κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας ὄχθας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐξέβαινεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους. οἱ δὲ ἄνω, ὁρῶντες μὲν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἱππέας φεύγοντας, ὁρῶντες δ' ὁπλίτας σφίσιν ἐπιόντας, ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα.

XENOPHON, SEEING THAT CHIRISOPHUS IS SAFELY OVER, FACES THE ENEMY.

Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ πέραν ἑώρα καλῶς γιγνόμενα, 24
ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στράτευμα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον καταβαίνοντες ὡς ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ ἄνω κατεῖχε, Λύκιος δὲ σὺν 25
ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπιδιῶξαι ἔλαβε τῶν σκευοφόρων τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἐσθῆτά τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκπώματα. καὶ τὰ μὲν σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων 26
καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέβαινε, Ξενοφῶν δὲ στρέψας

πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἀντία τὰ ὅπλα ἔθετο, καὶ παρ- III
ήγγειλε τοῖς λοχαγοῖς κατ' ἐνωμοτίας ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ λόχον, παρ' ἀσπίδα παραγαγόντας τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν ἐπὶ φάλαγγος· καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἐνωμοτάρχους πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων ἰέναι, οὐραγοὺς δὲ καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ 27
Καρδοῦχοι ὡς ἑώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους καὶ ὀλίγους ἤδη φαινομένους, θᾶττον δὴ ἐπῆσαν ᾠδάς τινας ᾄδοντες. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπεὶ τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, πέμπει παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν ὅ,τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ.

XENOPHON GIVES DIRECTIONS ABOUT CROSSING.

Ἰδὼν δ' αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας Ξενοφῶν πέμψας ἄγγε- 28
λον κελεύει αὐτοῦ μεῖναι ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ διαβάντας· ὅταν δ' ἄρξωνται αὐτοὶ διαβαίνειν, ἐναντίους ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν σφῶν ἐμβαίνειν ὡς διαβησομένους, διηγκυλωμένους τοὺς ἀκοντιστὰς καὶ ἐπιβεβλημένους τοὺς τοξότας· μὴ πρόσω δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ προβαίνειν. τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἑαυτῷ παρήγγειλεν, ἐπειδὰν σφενδόνη 29
ἐξικνῆται καὶ ἀσπὶς ψοφῇ, παιανίσαντας θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπειδὰν δ' ἀναστρέψωσιν οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁ σαλπικτὴς σημήνῃ τὸ πολεμικόν, ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ ἡγεῖσθαι μὲν τοὺς οὐραγούς, θεῖν δὲ πάντας καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι τάχιστα ᾗ ἕκαστος τὴν τάξιν εἶχεν, ὡς μὴ ἐμποδίζειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν γένηται.

THE CARDUCHIANS PUT TO FLIGHT, AND THE RIVER CROSSED.

Οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὁρῶντες ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοι- III
30 πούς — πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ τῶν μένειν τεταγμένων ᾤχοντο
ἐπιμελόμενοι οἳ μὲν ὑποζυγίων, οἳ δὲ σκευῶν, οἳ δ'
ἑταιρῶν — ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασέως καὶ ἤρχοντο
σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες 31
ὥρμησαν δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἳ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· καὶ
γὰρ ἦσαν ὡπλισμένοι ὡς μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ἱκανῶς
πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ φεύγειν, πρὸς δὲ τὸ εἰς χεῖρας
δέχεσθαι οὐχ ἱκανῶς. ἐν τούτῳ σημαίνει ὁ σαλπικτής· 32
καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι ἔφευγον πολὺ ἔτι θᾶττον, οἱ δὲ
Ἕλληνες τἀναντία στρέψαντες ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποτα-
μοῦ ὅτι τάχιστα. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ μέν τινες αἰσθό- 33
μενοι πάλιν ἔδραμον ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τοξεύοντες
ὀλίγους ἔτρωσαν, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ πέραν ὄντων τῶν
Ἑλλήνων ἔτι φανεροὶ ἦσαν φεύγοντες. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντή- 34
σαντες ἀνδριζόμενοι καὶ προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ προϊόν-
τες ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ Ξενοφῶντος διέβησαν πάλιν·
καὶ ἐτρώθησάν τινες καὶ τούτων.

THE GREEKS IN ARMENIA. VISIT OF TIRIBAZUS, THE PERSIAN GOVERNOR.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέ- IV
ρας ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδίον ἅπαν καὶ
λείους γηλόφους οὐ μεῖον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας· οὐ
γὰρ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους
τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους. εἰς δὲ ἣν ἀφίκοντο κώμην 2
μεγάλη τε ἦν καὶ βασίλειον εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ καὶ ἐπὶ
ταῖς πλείσταις οἰκίαις τύρσεις ἐπῆσαν· ἐπιτήδεια δ' ἦν
δαψιλῆ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρα- 3
σάγγας δέκα μέχρι ὑπερῆλθον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος

ποταμοῦ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τρεῖς IV
παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν.
οὗτος δ' ἦν καλὸς μέν, μέγας δ' οὔ· κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ
περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία 4
ἐκαλεῖτο ἡ πρὸς ἑσπέραν. ὕπαρχος δ' ἦν αὐτῆς Τιρί-
βαζος, ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος γενόμενος, καὶ ὁπότε πα-
ρείη, οὐδεὶς ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀνέβαλλεν.
οὗτος προσήλασεν ἱππέας ἔχων, καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμη- 5
νέα εἶπεν ὅτι βούλοιτο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς
δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀκοῦσαι· καὶ προσελθόντες εἰς
ἐπήκοον ἠρώτων τί θέλει. ὃ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι 6
βούλοιτο ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖν μήτε
ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς οἰκίας, λαμβάνειν τε τἀπιτήδεια
ὅσων δέοιντο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ ἐσπεί-
σαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.

WINTER SETS IN. HEAVY SNOW.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τρεῖς διὰ πε- 7
δίου παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα· καὶ Τιρίβαζος παρ-
ηκολούθει ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἀπέχων ὡς δέκα
σταδίους· καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασίλεια καὶ κώμας πέριξ
πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων μεστάς. στρατοπεδευο- 8
μένων δ' αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς χιὼν πολλή· καὶ
ἕωθεν ἔδοξε διασκηνῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρα-
τηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς κώμας· οὐ γὰρ ἑώρων πολέμιον οὐ-
δένα καὶ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
χιόνος. ἐνταῦθα εἶχον [τὰ ἐπιτήδεια] ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθά, 9
ἱερεῖα, σῖτον, οἴνους παλαιοὺς εὐώδεις, ἀσταφίδας,
ὄσπρια παντοδαπά. τῶν δὲ ἀποσκεδαννυμένων τινὲς
ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον ὅτι κατίδοιεν νύκτωρ
πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντα. ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ 10

ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν τὸ στρά- IV
τευμα πάλιν. ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον· καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει
διαιθριάζειν. νυκτερευόντων δ' αὐτῶν ἐνταῦθα ἐπι- 11
πίπτει χιὼν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὅπλα καὶ
τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους· καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια
συνεπόδισεν ἡ χιών· καὶ πολὺς ὄκνος ἦν ἀνίστασθαι·
κατακειμένων γὰρ ἀλεεινὸν ἦν ἡ χιὼν ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα
ὅτῳ μὴ παραρρυείη. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε γυμ- 12
νὸς ἀναστὰς σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' [ἂν] ἀναστάς τις καὶ
ἄλλος ἐκείνου ἀφελόμενος ἔσχιζεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ
ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες πῦρ ἔκαιον καὶ ἐχρίοντο· πολὺ γὰρ 13
ἐνταῦθα ηὑρίσκετο χρῖμα, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου,
σύειον καὶ σησάμινον καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν
καὶ τερμίνθινον. ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον
ηὑρίσκετο.

RECONNOITRING PARTY SENT OUT AND A PERSIAN PRISONER BROUGHT IN.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν διασκηνητέον εἶναι [εἰς 14
τὰς κώμας] εἰς στέγας. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ στρατιῶται σὺν
πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ ἡδονῇ ᾖσαν ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας καὶ τὰ
ἐπιτήδεια· ὅσοι δὲ πρότερον ἀπῆσαν [καὶ] τὰς οἰκίας
ἐμπρήσαντες ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας, δίκην ἐδίδοσαν κακῶς
σκηνοῦντες. ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην 15
Τημνίτην ἄνδρας δόντες ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἔνθα ἔφασαν οἱ
ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· οὗτος γὰρ ἐδόκει
καὶ πρότερον πολλὰ ἤδη ἀληθεῦσαι τοιαῦτα, τά τε ὄντα
ὡς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. πορευθεὶς 16
δὲ τὰ μὲν πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα δὲ συλλαβὼν
ἦκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα τόξον Περσικὸν καὶ φαρέτραν καὶ
σάγαριν οἷανπερ καὶ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. ἐρωτώμενος 17

δὲ ποδαπὸς εἴη Πέρσης μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' IV
ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατοπέδου, ὅπως ἐπιτήδεια λάβοι.
οἱ δὲ ἠρώτων αὐτὸν τὸ στράτευμα ὁπόσον τ' εἴη καὶ
ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι Τιρίβαζος εἴη 18
ἔχων τήν τε αὑτοῦ δύναμιν καὶ μισθοφόρους Χάλυβας
καὶ Ταόχους· παρεσκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν ἔφη ὡς ἐπὶ τῇ
ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς ᾗπερ μοναχῇ εἴη
πορεία, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιθησόμενον τοῖς Ἕλλησιν.

CAPTURE OF TIRIBAZUS' TENT.

Ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε τὸ στρά- 19
τευμα συναγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς φύλακας καταλιπόντες
καὶ στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμ-
φάλιον ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἁλόντα ἄνθρω-
πον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ 20
προϊόντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον οὐκ ἔμειναν
τοὺς ὁπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρα-
τόπεδον. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον 21
οὐχ ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον· ὅμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν
τινες τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ ἵπποι ἑάλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ
ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τιριβάζου ἑάλω καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ κλῖναι ἀργυ-
ρόποδες καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ οἱ ἀρτοκόποι καὶ οἱ οἰνο-
χόοι φάσκοντες εἶναι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα οἱ 22
τῶν ὁπλιτῶν στρατηγοί, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι τὴν
ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μή τις ἐπίθεσις γένοιτο
τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ
σάλπιγγι ἀπῆσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο αὐθημερὸν ἐπὶ τὸ
στρατόπεδον.

PASSAGE OF THE EUPHRATES.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδόκει πορευτέον εἶναι ὅπῃ δύναιντο V
τάχιστα πρὶν ἢ συλλεγῆναι τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν καὶ

καταλαβεῖν τὰ στενά. συσκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθὺς ἐπο- V
ρεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολ-
λούς· καὶ αὐθημερὸν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον ἐφ' ᾧ
ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τιρίβαζος κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο.
ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους τρεῖς παρα- 2
σάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ
διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν. ἐλέ-
γοντο δ' οὐδ' αἱ πηγαὶ πρόσω εἶναι.

SNOW SIX FEET DEEP.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς καὶ πεδίου 3
σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα. ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγέ-
νετο χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνεμος βορρᾶς ἐναντίος ἔπνει παν-
τάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα καὶ πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.
ἔνθα δή τῶν μάντεών τις εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ 4
ἀνέμῳ, καὶ σφαγιάζεται· καὶ πᾶσι δὴ περιφανῶς
ἔδοξεν λῆξαι τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος. ἦν δὲ τῆς
χιόνος τὸ βάθος ὀργυιά· ὥστε καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων
καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ ἀπώλετο καὶ τῶν στρατιω-
τῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. διεγένοντο δὲ τὴν νύκτα πῦρ 5
καίοντες· ξύλα δ' ἦν ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ πολλά· οἱ δὲ
ὀψὲ προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ εἶχον. οἱ οὖν πάλαι ἥκοντες
καὶ πῦρ καίοντες οὐ προσίεσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ τοὺς
ὀψίζοντας, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς πυροὺς ἢ ἄλλο τι
εἴ τι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν. ἔνθα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις 6
ὧν εἶχον ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, διατηκομέ-
νης τῆς χιόνος βόθροι ἐγένοντο μεγάλοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ
δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος.

MEN SUFFER FROM "BULIMY."

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν ὅλην ἐπορεύοντο 7
διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐβουλιμίασαν,

Ξενοφῶν δ' ὀπισθοφυλακῶν καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς V
πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἠγνόει ὅ,τι τὸ πάθος εἴη.
ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶπέ τις αὐτῷ τῶν ἐμπείρων ὅτι σαφῶς βου- 8
λιμιῶσι κἄν τι φάγωσιν ἀναστήσονται, περιιὼν περὶ
τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ πού τι ὁρᾷη βρωτόν, διεδίδου καὶ
διέπεμπε διδόντας τοὺς δυναμένους παρατρέχειν τοῖς
βουλιμιῶσιν. ἐπειδὴ δέ τι ἐμφάγοιεν, ἀνίσταντο καὶ 9
ἐπορεύοντο.

CHIRISOPHUS' DIVISION QUARTERED IN A VILLAGE.

Πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας πρὸς
κώμην ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ ὑδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς κώμης
πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας καταλαμβάνει
ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἐρύματος. αὗται ἠρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες 10
εἶεν. ὁ δ' ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπε περσιστὶ ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως
πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι
οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἴη, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην. οἱ
δ', ἐπεὶ ὀψὲ ἦν, πρὸς τὸν κώμαρχον συνεισέρχονται
εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα σὺν ταῖς ὑδροφόροις. Χειρίσοφος μὲν 11
οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐνταῦθα
ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, τῶν δ' ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ μὴ
δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν ἄσιτοι
καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες ἀπώλοντο τῶν στρα-
τιωτῶν.

TERRIBLE SUFFERINGS FROM COLD.

Ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινὲς καὶ 12
τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἥρπαζον καὶ ἀλλήλοις
ἐμάχοντο περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν
οἵ τε διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς οἵ
τε ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀπο-

σεσηπότες. ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα V
τῆς χιόνος εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν 13
ἐπορεύετο, τῶν δὲ ποδῶν εἴ τις κινοῖτο καὶ μηδέποτε
ἡσυχίαν ἔχοι καὶ εἰς τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο· ὅσοι δὲ 14
ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο, εἰσεδύοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ
ἱμάντες καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο· καὶ γὰρ
ἦσαν, ἐπειδὴ ἐπέλιπε τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα, καρβά-
τιναι πεποιημέναι ἐκ τῶν νεοδάρτων βοῶν.

SOME OF THE SOLDIERS IN DESPAIR REFUSE TO PROCEED.

Διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας ὑπελείποντό τινες 15
τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίον διὰ
τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα ᾔκαζον τετηκέναι·
καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην τινὰ ἢ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα
ἐν νάπῃ. ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο καὶ οὐκ
ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύ- 16
λακας ὡς ἤσθετο, ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ
μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων ὅτι ἔπονται πολλοὶ πολέμιοι
συνειλεγμένοι, καὶ τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαινεν. οἱ δὲ σφάτ-
τειν ἐκέλευον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι. ἐν- 17
ταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἑπομένους πολεμίους
φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ ἐπίοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. καὶ
ἦν μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ προσῆσαν πολλῷ θορύβῳ
ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ ὀπισθο- 18
φύλακες ἅτε ὑγιαίνοντες ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς
τοὺς πολεμίους· οἱ δὲ κάμνοντες ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον
ἐδύναντο μέγιστον τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἔκρου-
σαν. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι δείσαντες ἦκαν αὐτοὺς κατὰ
τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ
ἐφθέγξατο.

XENOPHON AND HIS MEN BIVOUAC WITHOUT FIRE OR SUPPER.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἰπόντες τοῖς V 19
ἀσθενοῦσιν ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἥξουσί τινες ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι πρὶν τέτταρα στάδια διελθεῖν ἐντυγχάνουσιν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπαυομένοις ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ φυλακὴ οὐδεμία καθειστήκει· καὶ ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. ὁ δὲ παριὼν καὶ παρα- 20
πέμπων τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλῦον. οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι ὅλον οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ἐνταῦθα καὶ 21
οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ηὐλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι, φυλακὰς οἵας ἐδύναντο καταστησάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας τοὺς νεωτάτους ἀναστήσαντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν προϊέναι.

CHIRISOPHUS SENDS HELP TO THE REAR. ALL QUARTERED IN VILLAGES.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης 22
σκεψομένους πῶς ἔχοιεν οἱ τελευταῖοι. οἱ δὲ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες τοὺς μὲν ἀσθενοῦντας τούτοις παρέδοσαν κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ηὐλίζετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλή- 23
λοις ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κώμας ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες ἃς ἑώρων κώμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες. ἔνθα δὴ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχα- 24
γὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφιέναι ἑαυτόν· καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους, θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην ἣν εἰλήχει Ξενοφῶν κατα-

λαμβάνει πάντας ἔνδον τοὺς κωμήτας καὶ τὸν κώμαρ- V
χον, καὶ πώλους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ τρεφομένους ἑπ-
τακαίδεκα, καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου ἐνάτην
ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην· ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς λαγῶς ᾤχετο
θηράσων καὶ οὐχ ἑάλω ἐν τῇ κώμῃ.

UNDERGROUND HOUSES. BARLEY BEER.

Αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα ὥσπερ 25
φρέατος, κάτω δ' εὐρεῖαι· αἱ δὲ εἴσοδοι τοῖς μὲν ὑπο-
ζυγίοις ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλί-
μακος. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες,
ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα
χιλῷ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ κριθαὶ 26
καὶ ὄσπρια καὶ οἶνος κρίθινος ἐν κρατῆρσιν. ἐνῆσαν
δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαὶ ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέ-
κειντο, οἱ μὲν μείζους οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα οὐκ
ἔχοντες· τούτους ἔδει ὁπότε τις διψῴη λαβόντα εἰς τὸ 27
στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνυ ἄκρατος ἦν, εἰ μή τις ὕδωρ
ἐπιχέοι· καὶ πάνυ ἡδὺ συμμαθόντι τὸ πῶμα ἦν.

XENOPHON ENTERTAINS THE VILLAGE CHIEF.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς κώμης ταύτης 28
σύνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο καὶ θαρρεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε λέγων
ὅτι οὔτε τῶν τέκνων στερήσοιτο τήν τε οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ
ἀντεμπλήσαντες τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἀπίασιν, ἢν ἀγαθόν
τι τῷ στρατεύματι ἐξηγησάμενος φαίνηται ἔστ' ἂν ἐν
ἄλλῳ ἔθνει γένωνται. ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ 29
φιλοφρονούμενος οἶνον ἔφρασεν ἔνθα ἦν κατορωρυγ-
μένος. ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως
ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται,
ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες τὸν κώμαρχον καὶ τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ
ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς.

SOLDIERS FEASTING EVERYWHERE IN THE VILLAGES.

Τῇ δ' ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κώμαρχον V 30
πρὸς Χειρίσοφον ἐπορεύετο· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι κώμην,
ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ κατελάμβανε
πανταχοῦ εὐωχουμένους καὶ εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδα-
μόθεν ἀφίεσαν πρὶν παραθεῖναι αὐτοῖς ἄριστον· οὐκ 31
ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν
κρέα ἄρνεια, ἐρίφεια, χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθεια, σὺν
πολλοῖς ἄρτοις τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις τοῖς δὲ κριθίνοις.
ὁπότε δέ τις φιλοφρονούμενός τῳ βούλοιτο προπιεῖν, 32
εἶλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα, ἔνθεν ἐπικύψαντα ἔδει ῥο-
φοῦντα πίνειν ὥσπερ βοῦν. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἐδίδοσαν
λαμβάνειν ὅ,τι βούλοιτο. ὃ δὲ ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέχετο,
ὅπου δέ τινα τῶν συγγενῶν ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἀεὶ
ἐλάμβανεν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατελάμ- 33
βανον κἀκείνους σκηνοῦντας ἐστεφανωμένους τοῦ ξηροῦ
χιλοῦ στεφάνοις, καὶ διακονοῦντας Ἀρμενίους παῖδας
σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς στολαῖς· τοῖς δὲ παισὶν ἐδείκνυσαν
ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὅ,τι δέοι ποιεῖν.

XENOPHON AND CHIRISOPHUS QUESTION THE VILLAGE CHIEF.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἀλλήλους ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο Χειρίσοφος 34
καὶ Ξενοφῶν, κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κώμαρχον διὰ
τοῦ περσίζοντος ἑρμηνέως τίς εἴη ἡ χώρα. ὃ δ' ἔλεγεν
ὅτι Ἀρμενία. καὶ πάλιν ἠρώτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέ-
φονται. ὃ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι βασιλεῖ δασμός· τὴν δὲ πλη-
σίον χώραν ἔφη εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔφραζεν
ᾗ εἴη. καὶ αὐτὸν τότε μὲν ᾤχετο ἄγων ὁ Ξενοφῶν πρὸς 35
τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκέτας, καὶ ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαίτερον
δίδωσι τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῦσαι, ὅτι ἥκουεν

αὐτὸν ἱερὸν εἶναι τοῦ Ἡλίου, δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· V
ἐκεκάκωτο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν πώλων
λαμβάνει, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν
ἔδωκεν ἑκάστῳ πῶλον. ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτῃ ἵπποι μείονες 36
μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, θυμοειδέστεροι δὲ πολύ. ἐνταῦθα
δὴ καὶ διδάσκει ὁ κώμαρχος περὶ τοὺς πόδας τῶν
ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων σακία περιειλεῖν, ὅταν διὰ
τῆς χιόνος ἄγωσιν· ἄνευ γὰρ τῶν σακίων κατεδύοντο
μέχρι τῆς γαστρός.

CHIRISOPHUS ILL-TREATS THE VILLAGE CHIEF AND THE LATTER RUNS AWAY.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν ὀγδόη, τὸν μὲν ἡγεμόνα παρα- VI
δίδωσι Χειρισόφῳ, τοὺς δὲ οἰκέτας καταλείπει τῷ
κωμάρχῳ, πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος· τοῦτον
δὲ Πλεισθένει Ἀμφιπολίτῃ δίδωσι φυλάττειν, ὅπως εἰ
καλῶς ἡγήσοιτο, ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν
οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ εἰσεφόρησαν ὡς ἐδύναντο πλεῖστα, καὶ
ἀναζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτοῖς ὁ κώ- 2
μαρχος λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος· καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ
τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη ὅτι
οὐκ εἰς κώμας ἤγαγεν. ὃ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ
τόπῳ τούτῳ. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος αὐτὸν ἔπαισεν, ἔδησε
δ' οὔ. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐκεῖνος τῆς νυκτὸς ἀποδρὰς ᾤχετο 3
καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. τοῦτό γε δὴ Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενο-
φῶντι μόνον διάφορον ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐγένετο, ἡ τοῦ ἡγε-
μόνος κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια. Πλεισθένης δὲ ἠράσθη
τοῦ παιδὸς καὶ οἴκαδε κομίσας πιστοτάτῳ ἐχρῆτο.

THE NATIVES BLOCK THE WAY. COUNCIL OF OFFICERS.

Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ σταθμοὺς ἀνὰ πέντε 4
παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν ποταμόν,

εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς VI
δύο παρασάγγας δέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὑπερ- 5
βολῇ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ
Φασιανοί. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατεῖδε τοὺς πολεμίους 6
ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων εἰς
τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ κατὰ κέρας ἄγων πλησιάσῃ
τοῖς πολεμίοις· παρήγγειλε δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν
τοὺς λόχους, ὅπως ἐπὶ φάλαγγος γένοιτο τὸ στράτευμα.
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, συνεκάλεσε στρα- 7
τηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. Οἱ μὲν πολέ-
μιοι, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς τοῦ ὄρους·
ὥρα δὲ βουλεύεσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα.
ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι 8
τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλεύεσθαι εἴτε τήμερον
εἴτε αὔριον δοκεῖ ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος. Ἐμοὶ δέ γε, 9
ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ, ἐπὰν τάχιστα ἀριστήσωμεν,
ἐξοπλισαμένους ὡς κράτιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας.
εἰ γὰρ διατρίψομεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, οἵ τε νῦν ἡμᾶς
ὁρῶντες πολέμιοι θαρραλεώτεροι ἔσονται καὶ ἄλλους
εἰκὸς τούτων θαρρούντων πλείους προσγενέσθαι.

XENOPHON SUGGESTS A RUSE BY WHICH TO GET POSSESSION OF THE HEIGHTS. HE BADGERS CHIRISOPHUS.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δ' οὕτω γιγνώσκω. 10
εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευάσα-
σθαι ὅπως ὡς κράτιστα μαχούμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα
ὡς ῥᾷστα ὑπερβάλλειν, τοῦτό μοι δοκεῖ σκεπτέον εἶναι
ὅπως ὡς ἐλάχιστα μὲν τραύματα λάβωμεν, ὡς ἐλά-
χιστα δὲ σώματα ἀνδρῶν ἀποβάλωμεν. τὸ μὲν οὖν 11
ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ ὁρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἐφ' ἑξήκοντα στάδια,
ἄνδρες δ' οὐδαμοῦ φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς φανεροί εἰσιν ἀλλ'

ἢ κατ᾽ αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· πολὺ οὖν κρεῖττον τοῦ ἐρήμου VI
ὄρους καὶ κλέψαι τι πειρᾶσθαι λαθόντας ἢ ἁρπάσαι
φθάσαντας, εἰ δυναίμεθα, μᾶλλον ἢ πρὸς ἰσχυρὰ χωρία
καὶ ἀνθρώπους παρεσκευασμένους μάχεσθαι. πολὺ γὰρ 12
ῥᾷον ὄρθιον ἀμαχεὶ ἰέναι ἢ ὁμαλὲς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν
πολεμίων ὄντων, καὶ νύκτωρ ἀμαχεὶ μᾶλλον ἂν τὰ
πρὸ ποδῶν ὁρῴη τις ἢ μεθ᾽ ἡμέραν μαχόμενος, καὶ
ἡ τραχεῖα τοῖς ποσὶν ἀμαχεὶ ἰοῦσιν εὐμενεστέρα ἢ ἡ
ὁμαλὴ τὰς κεφαλὰς βαλλομένοις. καὶ κλέψαι δ᾽ οὐκ 13
ἀδύνατόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἐξὸν μὲν νυκτὸς ἰέναι, ὡς
μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι, ἐξὸν δ᾽ ἀπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὡς μὴ αἴσθη-
σιν παρέχειν. δοκοῦμεν δ᾽ ἄν μοι ταύτῃ προσποιού-
μενοι προσβαλεῖν ἐρημοτέρῳ ἂν τῷ ὄρει χρῆσθαι·
μένοιεν γὰρ αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον ἀθρόοι οἱ πολέμιοι. ἀτὰρ 14
τί ἐγὼ περὶ κλοπῆς συμβάλλομαι; ὑμᾶς γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ
Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ὅσοι ἐστὲ τῶν
ὁμοίων εὐθὺς καὶ ἐκ παίδων κλέπτειν μελετᾶν, καὶ
οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν ὅσα μὴ κωλύει
νόμος. ὅπως δὲ ὡς τάχιστα κλέπτοντες καὶ πειρᾶσθε 15
λανθάνειν, νόμιμον παρ᾽ ὑμῖν ἐστιν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε
κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. νῦν οὖν μάλα σοι καιρός
ἐστιν ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μὴ
ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὡς μὴ πληγὰς λάβω-
μεν.

RETORT OF CHIRISOPHUS.

Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, κἀγὼ ὑμᾶς τοὺς 16
Ἀθηναίους ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια,
καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ κινδύνου τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς
κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ ὑμῖν οἱ κράτιστοι
ἄρχειν ἀξιοῦνται· ὥστε ὥρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι

τὴν παιδείαν. Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἕτοιμός VI
εἰμι τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἔχων, ἐπειδὰν δειπνήσωμεν, 17
ἰέναι καταληψόμενος τὸ ὄρος. ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας·
οἱ γὰρ γυμνῆτες τῶν ἑπομένων ἡμῖν κλωπῶν ἔλαβόν
τινας ἐνεδρεύσαντες· τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι οὐκ
ἄβατόν ἐστι τὸ ὄρος, ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν·
ὥστε ἐάνπερ ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους, βατὰ καὶ
τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ἔσται. ἐλπίζω δὲ οὐδὲ τοὺς πολεμίους 18
μενεῖν ἔτι, ἐπειδὰν ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν
ἄκρων· οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν ἐθέλουσι καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον
ἡμῖν. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἰέναι καὶ 19
λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ ἄλλους πέμψον, ἂν
μή τινες ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ φαίνωνται.

VOLUNTEERS OFFER FOR THE ATTEMPT ON THE HEIGHTS.

Ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς ἔρχεται ὁπλί- 20
τας ἔχων καὶ Ἀριστέας ὁ Χῖος γυμνῆτας καὶ Νικό-
μαχος Οἰταῖος γυμνῆτας· καὶ σύνθημα ἐποιήσαντο,
ὁπότε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα, πυρὰ καίειν πολλά. ταῦτα συν- 21
θέμενοι ἠρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου προήγαγεν ὁ Χει-
ρίσοφος τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν ὡς δέκα σταδίους πρὸς τοὺς
πολεμίους, ὅπως ὡς μάλιστα δοκοίη ταύτῃ προσάξειν.

THE GREEKS VICTORIOUS BOTH ON THE HEIGHTS AND BELOW.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν καὶ νὺξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν 22
ταχθέντες ἀπῆρχοντο, καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος,
οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ ἀνεπαύοντο. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐπεὶ
ᾔσθοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρεσαν καὶ ἔκαιον
πυρὰ πολλὰ διὰ νυκτός. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο 23
Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ
τὸ ὄρος καταλαβόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα ἐπῆσαν. τῶν δὲ 24

πολεμίων τὸ μὲν πολὺ ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ VI
ὄρους, μέρος δ' αὐτῶν ἀπήντα τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. πρὶν
δὲ ὁμοῦ εἶναι τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλήλων, συμμειγνύασιν
οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ διώ-
κουσιν. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου οἱ μὲν 25
πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δρόμῳ ἔθεον πρὸς τοὺς πα-
ρατεταγμένους, Χειρίσοφος δὲ βάδην ταχὺ ἐφείπετο
σὺν τοῖς ὁπλίταις. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ 26
ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἄνω ἑώρων ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ ἀπέ-
θανον μὲν οὐ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, γέρρα δὲ πάμπολλα
ἐλήφθη· ἃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες
ἀχρεῖα ἐποίουν. ὡς δ' ἀνέβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρό- 27
παιον στησάμενοι κατέβησαν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ εἰς
κώμας πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν γεμούσας ἦλθον.

IN TAOCHIAN TERRITORY.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους σταθμοὺς VII
πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέ-
λειπε· χωρία γὰρ ᾤκουν ἰσχυρὰ οἱ Τάοχοι, ἐν οἷς
καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἅπαντα εἶχον ἀνακεκομισμένοι. ἐπεὶ 2
δ' ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον ὃ πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ'
οἰκίας — συνεληλυθότες δ' ἦσαν αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ
γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη πολλὰ — Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν πρὸς
τοῦτο προσέβαλλεν εὐθὺς ἥκων· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη
τάξις ἀπέκαμνεν, ἄλλη προσήει καὶ αὖθις ἄλλη· οὐ
γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι, ἀλλ' ἀπότομον ἦν κύκλῳ.

STRONGHOLD ON THE HEIGHTS FROM WHICH STONES ARE ROLLED DOWN ON THOSE WHO APPROACH. XENOPHON'S STRATAGEM.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι 3
καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὁπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρί-
σοφος· Εἰς καλὸν ἥκετε· τὸ γὰρ χωρίον αἱρετέον· τῇ

γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα VII
τὸ χωρίον. ἐνταῦθα δὴ κοινῇ ἐβουλεύοντο· καὶ τοῦ 4
Ξενοφῶντος ἐρωτῶντος τί τὸ κωλῦον εἴη εἰσελθεῖν
εἶπεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος· Μία αὕτη πάροδός ἐστιν ἣν ὁρᾷς·
ὅταν δέ τις ταύτῃ πειρᾶται παριέναι, κυλινδοῦσι λίθους
ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας· ὃς δ' ἂν κατα-
ληφθῇ, οὕτω διατίθεται. ἅμα δ' ἔδειξε συντετριμμένους
ἀνθρώπους καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. Ἢν δὲ τοὺς λίθους 5
ἀναλώσωσιν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν κωλύει
παριέναι; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ὁρῶμεν εἰ μὴ
ὀλίγους τούτους ἀνθρώπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς
ὡπλισμένους. τὸ δὲ χωρίον, ὡς καὶ σὺ ὁρᾷς, σχεδὸν 6
τρία ἡμίπλεθρά ἐστιν ὃ δεῖ βαλλομένους διελθεῖν·
τούτου δὲ ὅσον πλέθρον δασὺ πίτυσι διαλειπούσαις
μεγάλαις, ἀνθ' ὧν ἑστηκότες ἄνδρες τί ἂν πάσχοιεν
ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδομένων;
τὸ λοιπὸν οὖν γίγνεται ὡς ἡμίπλεθρον, ὃ δεῖ ὅταν
λωφήσωσιν οἱ λίθοι παραδραμεῖν. Ἀλλὰ εὐθύς, ἔφη 7
ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπειδὰν ἀρξώμεθα εἰς τὸ δασὺ προσιέναι,
φέρονται οἱ λίθοι πολλοί. Αὐτὸ ἄν, ἔφη, τὸ δέον εἴη·
θᾶττον γὰρ ἀναλώσουσι τοὺς λίθους. ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα
ἔνθεν ἡμῖν μικρόν τι παραδραμεῖν ἔσται, ἢν δυνώμεθα,
καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ῥᾴδιον, ἢν βουλώμεθα.

CAPTURE OF THE STRONGHOLD. WOMEN THROW THEIR CHILDREN AND THEMSELVES OVER THE CLIFFS.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ 8
Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος λοχαγός· τούτου γὰρ ἡγε-
μονία ἦν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγῶν ἐκείνῃ τῇ
ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ.
μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα ἄνθρωποι

ὡς ἑβδομήκοντα, οὐχ ἁθρόοι ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕνα, ἕκαστος VII
φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. Ἀγασίας δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος 9
καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς καὶ οὗτοι τῶν ὀπισθο-
φυλάκων λοχαγοὶ ὄντες, καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω
τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις
ἑστάναι πλέον ἢ τὸν ἕνα λόχον. ἔνθα δὴ Καλλίμαχος 10
μηχανᾶταί τι· προὔτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν
αὐτὸς δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ λίθοι φέροιντο,
ἀνέχαζεν εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἑκάστης δὲ τῆς προδρομῆς
πλέον ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι πετρῶν ἀνηλίσκοντο. ὁ δὲ Ἀγα- 11
σίας ὡς ὁρᾷ τὸν Καλλίμαχον ἃ ἐποίει, τὸ στράτευμα
πᾶν θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὗτος πρῶτος παραδράμῃ
εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ τὸν Ἀριστώνυμον πλησίον ὄντα
παρακαλέσας οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα ἑταίρους
ὄντας οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα χωρεῖ αὐτός, καὶ παρέρχεται
πάντας. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὁρᾷ αὐτὸν παριόντα, 12
ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἴτυος· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παραθεῖ
αὐτοὺς Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον
Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο
ἀρετῆς καὶ ἀντηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως
ἐρίζοντες αἱροῦσι τὸ χωρίον. ὡς γὰρ ἅπαξ εἰσέδραμον,
οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἄνωθεν ἠνέχθη. ἐνταῦθα δὴ δεινὸν ἦν 13
θέαμα. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες ῥίπτουσαι τὰ παιδία εἶτα ἑαυ-
τὰς ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως. ἐνταῦθα
δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς ἰδών τινα θέοντα
ὡς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτὸν στολὴν ἔχοντα καλὴν ἐπιλαμβάνε-
ται ὡς κωλύσων· ὃ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισπᾶται, καὶ ἀμφότεροι 14
ᾤχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ ἀπέθανον.
ἐντεῦθεν ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες
δὲ καὶ ὄνοι πολλοὶ καὶ πρόβατα.

IN THE COUNTRY OF THE CHALYBES. CROSSING OF THE HARPASUS.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμοὺς ἑπτὰ VII
παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα. οὗτοι ἦσαν ὧν διῆλθον 15
ἀλκιμώτατοι, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ θώρακας
λινοῦς μέχρι τοῦ ἤτρου, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν πτερύγων σπάρτα
πυκνὰ ἐστραμμένα. εἶχον δὲ καὶ κνημῖδας καὶ κράνη 16
καὶ παρὰ τὴν ζώνην μαχαίριον ὅσον ξυήλην Λακω-
νικήν, ᾧ ἔσφαττον ὧν κρατεῖν δύναιντο, καὶ ἀποτέ-
μνοντες ἂν τὰς κεφαλὰς ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ ἦδον
καὶ ἐχόρευον ὁπότε οἱ πολέμιοι αὐτοὺς ὄψεσθαι ἔμελλον.
εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων μίαν λόγχην
ἔχον. οὗτοι ἐνέμενον ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ 17
παρέλθοιεν οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἵποντο ἀεὶ μαχούμενοι. ᾤκουν
δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὀχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνα-
κεκομισμένοι ἦσαν· ὥστε μηδὲν λαμβάνειν αὐτόθεν
τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν ἃ ἐκ
τῶν Ταόχων ἔλαβον. ἐκ τούτων οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο 18
ἐπὶ Ἅρπασον ποταμόν, εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων. ἐν-
τεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Σκυθηνῶν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας
παρασάγγας εἴκοσι διὰ πεδίου εἰς κώμας· ἐν αἷς ἔμει-
ναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

A GUIDE LEADS THEM, AFTER FIVE DAYS, TO A MOUNTAIN WHENCE THEY GET THEIR FIRST GLIMPSE OF THE SEA. "THE SEA! THE SEA!" THEY SHOUT, WITH A TUMULT OF REJOICING.

Ἐντεῦθεν διῆλθον σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας 19
εἴκοσι πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκου-
μένην ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὁ
ἄρχων τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς
ἑαυτῶν πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος 20
λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν

ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μή, τεθνάναι ἐπηγγείλατο. VII
καὶ ἡγούμενος ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλλεν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ πο-
λεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο αἴθειν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν χώραν·
ᾧ καὶ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα ἔλθοι, οὐ
τῆς τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐνοίας. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ 21
ὄρος τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης.
ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους, κραυγὴ
πολλὴ ἐγένετο. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπι- 22
σθοφύλακες ᾠήθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι
πολεμίους· εἵποντο γὰρ ὄπισθεν ἐκ τῆς καιομένης
χώρας, καὶ αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀπέκτειναν τέ
τινας καὶ ἐζώγρησαν ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι, καὶ γέρρα
ἔλαβον δασειῶν βοῶν ὠμοβόεια ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν.
ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ βοὴ πλείων τε ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἐγγύτερον καὶ 23
οἱ ἀεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀεὶ βοῶντας καὶ
πολλῷ μείζων ἐγίγνετο ἡ βοὴ ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους ἐγί-
γνοντο, ἐδόκει δὴ μεῖζόν τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ 24
ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας ἀναλα-
βὼν παρεβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοώντων τῶν
στρατιωτῶν Θάλαττα θάλαττα καὶ παρεγγυώντων. ἔνθα
δὴ ἔθεον πάντες καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια
ἠλαύνετο καὶ οἱ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ 25
τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὴ περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρα-
τηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς δακρύοντες. καὶ ἐξαπίνης ὅτου
δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ
ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίθεσαν δερμάτων 26
πλῆθος ὠμοβοείων καὶ βακτηρίας καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα
γέρρα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν αὐτός τε κατέτεμνε τὰ γέρρα καὶ
τοῖς ἄλλοις διεκελεύετο. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν ἡγεμόνα οἱ 27
Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον

καὶ φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δαρει- VII
κοὺς δέκα· ἤτει δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε
πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν. κώμην δὲ δείξας αὐ-
τοῖς οὗ σκηνήσουσι καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν πορεύσονται εἰς
Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ ἑσπέρα ἐγένετο, ᾤχετο [τῆς νυκτὸς]
ἀπιών.

IN THE COUNTRY OF THE MACRONES.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ Μακρώ- VIII
νων σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα. τῇ πρώτῃ
δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ὃς ὥριζε τὴν τῶν
Μακρώνων καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκυθηνῶν. εἶχον δ' ὑπὲρ 2
δεξιῶν χωρίον οἷον χαλεπώτατον καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς
ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς ὃν ἐνέβαλλεν ὁ ὁρίζων, δι' οὗ ἔδει
διαβῆναι. ἦν δὲ οὗτος δασὺς δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὔ,
πυκνοῖς δέ. ταῦτ' ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔκοπτον,
σπεύδοντες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα ἐξελθεῖν. οἱ 3
δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τριχίνους
χιτῶνας κατ' ἀντιπέραν τῆς διαβάσεως παρατεταγμένοι
ἦσαν καὶ ἀλλήλοις διεκελεύοντο καὶ λίθους εἰς τὸν ποτα-
μὸν ἔρριπτον· ἐξικνοῦντο γὰρ οὔ, οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον οὐδέν.

A MACRONIAN, WHO HAD BEEN A SLAVE AT ATHENS, ACTS AS INTERPRETER, AND TERMS ARE CONCLUDED.

Ἔνθα δὴ προσέρχεται Ξενοφῶντι τῶν πελταστῶν 4
ἀνὴρ Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι, λέγων ὅτι γιγνώ-
σκοι τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ἐμὴν
ταύτην πατρίδα εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μή τι κωλύει ἐθέλω αὐ-
τοῖς διαλεχθῆναι. Ἀλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ 5
διαλέγου καὶ μάθε πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν. οἱ δ' εἶπον
ἐρωτήσαντος ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα τοίνυν, ἔφη, αὐ-
τοὺς τί ἀντιτετάχαται καὶ χρῄζουσιν ἡμῖν πολέμιοι

εἶναι. οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο Ὅτι ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν VIII
χώραν ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ 6
κακῶς γε ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες
ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλό-
μεθα ἀφικέσθαι. ἠρώτων ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων 7
τὰ πιστά. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέ-
λειν. ἐντεῦθεν διδόασιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν
λόγχην τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλλη-
νικήν· ταῦτα γὰρ ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ' ἐπε-
μαρτύραντο.

THE COLCHIAN BORDER REACHED.

Μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθὺς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα 8
συνεξέκοπτον τήν τε ὁδὸν ὡδοποίουν ὡς διαβιβάσοντες
ἐν μέσοις ἀναμεμειγμένοι τοῖς Ἕλλησι, καὶ ἀγορὰν
οἵαν ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέ-
ραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ Κόλχων ὅρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἕλλη-
νας. ἐνταῦθα ἦν ὄρος μέγα· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι 9
παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ Ἕλληνες
ἀντιπαρετάξαντο φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς τὸ
ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλεύσασθαι
συλλεγεῖσιν ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιοῦνται.

XENOPHON'S PLAN OF ATTACK.

Ἔλεξεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ὅτι δοκοίη παύσαντας τὴν 10
φάλαγγα λόχους ὀρθίους ποιῆσαι· ἡ μὲν γὰρ φάλαγξ
διασπασθήσεται εὐθύς· τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἄνοδον τῇ δὲ εὔο-
δον εὑρήσομεν τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ἀθυμίαν ποιή-
σει ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα ταύτην διεσπασμένην
ὁρῶσιν. ἔπειτα ἂν μὲν ἐπὶ πολλοὺς τεταγμένοι προσ- 11
άγωμεν, περιττεύσουσιν ἡμῶν οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ τοῖς

περιττοῖς χρήσονται ὅ τι ἂν βούλωνται· ἐὰν δὲ ἐπ' VIII
ὀλίγων τεταγμένοι ὦμεν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ
διακοπείη ἡμῶν ἡ φάλαγξ ὑπὸ ἀθρόων καὶ βελῶν καὶ
ἀνθρώπων ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δέ πῃ τοῦτο ἔσται, τῇ
φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται. ἀλλά μοι δοκεῖ ὀρθίους τοὺς 12
λόχους ποιησαμένους τοσοῦτον χωρίον κατασχεῖν δια-
λιπόντας τοῖς λόχοις ὅσον ἔξω τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους
γενέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων· καὶ οὕτως ἐσόμεθα
τῆς τε τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω οἱ ἔσχατοι λόχοι
καὶ ὀρθίους ἄγοντες οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν πρῶτοι προσ-
ίασιν, ᾗ τε ἂν εὐοδον ᾖ ταύτῃ ἕκαστος ἄξει ὁ λοχαγός.
καὶ εἴς τε τὸ διαλεῖπον οὐ ῥᾴδιον ἔσται τοῖς πολεμίοις 13
εἰσελθεῖν ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν λόχων ὄντων, διακόψαι τε
οὐ ῥᾴδιον ἔσται λόχον ὄρθιον προσιόντα. ἄν τέ τις
πιέζηται τῶν λόχων, ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. ἤν τε εἷς
πῃ δυνηθῇ τῶν λόχων ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβῆναι, οὐδεὶς
μηκέτι μείνῃ τῶν πολεμίων.

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποίουν ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους. 14
Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ
ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· Ἄνδρες, οὗτοί εἰσιν οὓς ὁρᾶτε
μόνοι ἔτι ἡμῖν ἐμποδὼν τὸ μὴ ἤδη εἶναι ἔνθα πάλαι
ἐσπεύδομεν· τούτους, ἤν πως δυνώμεθα, καὶ ὠμοὺς δεῖ
καταφαγεῖν.

SUCCESS OF THE SCHEME.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς 15
λόχους ὀρθίους ἐποιήσαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν
ὁπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος
σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν· τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς καὶ τοὺς
τοξότας τριχῇ ἐποιήσαντο, τοὺς μὲν τοῦ εὐωνύμου
ἔξω, τοὺς δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ μέσον, σχεδὸν

ἑξακοσίους ἑκάστους. ἐκ τούτου παρηγγύησαν οἱ VIII
στρατηγοὶ εὔχεσθαι· εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες 16
ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ
σὺν αὐτοῖς πελτασταὶ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω
γενόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο· οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὡς εἶδον αὐτούς, 17
ἀντιπαραθέοντες οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ το
εὐώνυμον διεσπάσθησαν, καὶ πολὺ τῆς αὑτῶν φάλαγ-
γος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ κενὸν ἐποίησαν. οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρ- 18
καδικὸν πελτασταί, ὧν ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν,
νομίσαντες φεύγειν ἀνακραγόντες ἔθεον· καὶ οὗτοι
πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀναβαίνουσι· συνεφείπετο δὲ αὐ-
τοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὁπλιτικόν, ὧν ἦρχε Κλεάνωρ ὁ
Ἐρχομένιος. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι, ὡς ἤρξαντο θεῖν, οὐκέτι 19
ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλῃ ἐτράπετο.

THE GREEKS POISONED BY EATING HONEY.

Οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀναβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν
πολλαῖς κώμαις καὶ τἀπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἐχούσαις. καὶ 20
τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν ὅ,τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· τὰ δὲ σμήνη
πολλὰ ἦν αὐτόθι, καὶ τῶν κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον τῶν
στρατιωτῶν πάντες ἄφρονές τε ἐγίγνοντο καὶ ἤμουν
καὶ κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀρθὸς οὐδεὶς ἐδύνατο
ἵστασθαι, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες σφόδρα
μεθύουσιν ἐῴκεσαν, οἱ δὲ πολὺ μαινομένοις, οἱ δὲ
καὶ ἀποθνῄσκουσιν. ἔκειντο δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ 21
τροπῆς γεγενημένης, καὶ πολλὴ ἦν ἀθυμία. τῇ δ'
ὑστεραίᾳ ἀπέθανε μὲν οὐδείς, ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτήν πως
ὥραν ἀνεφρόνουν· τρίτῃ δὲ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο
ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.

ARRIVAL AT TRAPEZUS.

VIII 22 Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμοὺς παρασάγγας ἑπτά, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ Σινωπέων ἀποικίαν ἐν τῇ Κόλχων χώρᾳ. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἐν ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων κώμαις· κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώμενοι ἐλῄζοντο τὴν Κολ- 23 χίδα. ἀγορὰν δὲ παρεῖχον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζούντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό τε τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ ξένια ἔδοσαν βοῦς καὶ ἄλφιτα καὶ οἶνον. συνδιεπράττοντο δὲ καὶ 24 ὑπὲρ τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα οἰκούντων, καὶ ξένια καὶ παρ' ἐκείνων ἦλθον βόες.

SACRIFICES PAID ACCORDING TO THEIR VOWS.

Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν ἣν ηὔξαντο παρεσκευά- 25 ζοντο· ἦλθον δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι τῷ Διὶ σωτήρια καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς ἃ ηὔξαντο. ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθαπερ ἐσκήνουν. εἵλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε παῖς ὢν οἴκοθεν, παῖδα κατακανὼν ξυήλῃ πατάξας, δρόμου τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τοῦ ἀγῶνος προστατῆσαι.

GAMES ARE CELEBRATED.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο, τὰ δέρματα παρέδοσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον 26 πεποιηκὼς εἴη. ὃ δὲ δείξας οὗπερ ἑστηκότες ἐτύγχανον, Οὗτος ὁ λόφος, ἔφη, κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἄν τις βούληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται παλαίειν ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως; ὃ δ' εἶπε· Μᾶλλόν τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ καταπεσών. ἠγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες μὲν στάδιον 27

τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλεῖστοι, δόλιχον δὲ Κρῆτες πλείους VIII
ἢ ἑξήκοντα [ἔθεον], πάλην δὲ καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγ-
κράτιον ἕτεροι, καὶ καλὴ θέα ἐγένετο· πολλοὶ γὰρ
κατέβησαν καὶ ἅτε θεωμένων τῶν ἑταίρων πολλὴ φιλο-
νικία ἐγίγνετο. ἔθεον δὲ καὶ ἵπποι καὶ ἔδει αὐτοὺς 28
κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς ἐλάσαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀπο-
στρέψαντας πάλιν πρὸς τὸν βωμὸν ἄγειν. καὶ κάτω
μὲν οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλινδοῦντο· ἄνω δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς
ὄρθιον μόγις βάδην ἐπορεύοντο οἱ ἵπποι· ἔνθα πολλὴ
κραυγὴ καὶ γέλως καὶ παρακέλευσις ἐγίγνετο.

NOTES

(For list of abbreviations, see page 300.)

March of the
TEN THOUSAND GREEKS
Satrapy of Cyrus
Route of the Ten Thousand
PERSIAN PARASANGS OF 30 STADIA EACH
0 10 20 30 40 50
ENGLISH MILES
0 25 50 100 200
PONTUS EUXINUS
Colchis
Phasis F.
Iberi
Moschi
Cyrus F.
Thyni
Bithynia
Salmydessus
Byzantium
Bosporus
Chalcedon
Calpe
Heraclea
Sinope
Thermodon F.
Iasonium Pr.
Cerasus
Hieron Pr.
Trapezus
Mossynoeci
Colchi
Drilae
Mechones M.
Hesperitae
Tibareni
Macrones
Chalybes
Scythini
Gymnias
Taochi
Phasis (Arsanias F.)
Halys F.
Euphrates
Euphrates F.
Thospitis L.
Centrites F.
Carduchi
Zapatas
Tigris F.
Mesopotamia
Nisibis
Mesopotamia
Mesopotamia
Mesopotamia

NOTES

BOOK I

CHAPTER I

CAUSES OF AND PREPARATIONS FOR THE EXPEDITION

1. Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται: predicate genitive of source or origin. Gl. 509 a; G. 1094, 6; H. 750; B. 365. For the historical or more strictly "annalistic" (see Gildersleeve *Syntax*, § 201) present, which is to be translated as aorist, see Gl. 454 b; G. 1252; H. 828; B. 525. *Darius II* (B. C. 424–405) or *Nothus* (*νόθος*, bastard), natural son of Artaxerxes I; Parysatis, half-sister and wife of Darius.——**παῖδες δύο**: Xenophon's narrative is concerned only with these two sons, though there were thirteen children in all.——**πρεσβύτερος . . . Κῦρος**: *an elder, Artaxerxes, and a younger, Cyrus.* Artaxerxes was called Mnemon (*μνήμων*) on account of his memory. Cyrus was known as the Younger, in contradistinction to Cyrus the Great. ——**ἠσθένει**: *was sick*, imperfect denoting continuance. Gl. 459; G. 1250, 2; H. 829. *ἀσθενέω* is a denominative verb (Gl. 399; G. 861) formed from the adjective *ἀσθενής* (Gl. 416 c; G. 866; H. 571, 3).——**Δαρεῖος**: for the order, see Gl. 675, 677 and a.——**ὑπώπτευε**: for augment, see Gl. 268 b; G. 543; H. 362 a; B. 174; for derivation, see Gl. 438 a, 417 a; G. 863.——**τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου**: a collective idea (*Lebensende*), in connection with which usually only the dependent genitive has the article, as *Mem.* i. 5. 2; *ἀπαλλαγῆς τοῦ βίου Cyrop.* v. 1. 13; *ἐν ἀκμῇ τοῦ βίου Cyrop.* vii. 2. 20, though sometimes the article stands with both nouns, as *τοῦ βίου ἡ τελευτή Cyrop.* viii. 7. 2.——**τὼ παῖδε**: note the dual, though the plural was used above. G. 155; H. 634. For construction, see Gl. 570 d; G. 895, 1; H. 939; B. 629.——**ἀμφοτέρω**: for position, see Gl. 554; G. 976; H. 673 a.

Page 1.

2. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος: *μέν* (postpositive) comes regularly between the article and its noun; otherwise after the emphatic word. Gl. 669 a;

H. 1037, 12. *οὖν*, *now*, is here continuative.——**παρὼν ἐτύγχανε**: *chanced to be present.* The predicate (supplementary) participle contains the leading idea. Gl. 585 a; G. 1586; H. 984; B. 660 N.——**Κῦρον μεταπέμπεται**: *sends for, summons Cyrus.* For order, see Gl. 677. For force of middle, see Gl. 500 d; G. 1242, 2; H. 813.——**ἀπό**: Gl. 598; G. 1205 a; H. 794 a.——**σατράπην**: predicate accusative, Gl. 534; G. 1077; H. 726; B. 320. This title (viceroy or governor of a province), for which Herodotus always uses *ὕπαρχος*, seems to have become current among the Greeks through Ctesias and Xenophon. The number of satrapies into which the Persian empire had been divided by Darius I was twenty (Herodotus iii. 89), and the powers of the satrap were very extensive (*Cyrop.* viii. 6. 3; *Oec.* 4. 5, 11).——**ἐποίησε**: *had made.* Gl. 463; H. 837. ——**καὶ στρατηγὸν δὲ αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξε**: *and he had appointed him general also.* The connective is *δέ*. *καί* emphasizes the new dignity to which Cyrus was appointed. Note the transition from relative clause to independent construction.——**πάντων**: for accent, see Gl. 161 b; G. 128. ——**εἰς Καστωλοῦ πεδίον ἀθροίζονται**: the plain of Castolus, where the annual review was held, was probably in Lydia. The present is not historical, but denotes a customary action. The verb implies motion, hence *εἰς*. Gl. 598 b; G. 1207 a; H. 796 a.——**ἀναβαίνει, ἀνέβη**: note the change, as often, from historical present to aorist. The word is used especially of proceeding from the coast into the interior. For the order (*chiasmus*), see Gl. 682 a.——**λαβών**: *with*, participle of attendant circumstance, as *ἔχων* below. Gl. 583 a; G. 1563, 7; H. 968 b; B. 653, N. 3. ——**ὡς φίλον**: *on the pretext of friendship.* Tissaphernes, now only satrap of Caria, had been superseded by Cyrus and was really the enemy of the latter, who probably feared to leave him behind.——**τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὁπλίτας τριακοσίους**: chosen as a bodyguard from the Greeks in his service.——**ἄρχοντα**: appositive, Gl. 502; G. 916; H. 624 b.—— **Παρράσιον**: from Parrhasia in Arcadia.

3. **ἐπεὶ ἐτελεύτησε καὶ κατέστη**: the aorist after *ἐπεί* (Gl. 629) generally = pluperfect (G. 1261). Cf. *postquam* with perfect.——**κατέστη εἰς**: see on **ἀθροίζονται εἰς** in § 2.——**διαβάλλει τὸν Κῦρον**: *accuses Cyrus falsely.* For the article, see Gl. 551 a; G. 943; H. 663; B. 446. The story was that Cyrus had plotted to kill Artaxerxes at the time of the coronation. For the proleptic accusative, *i. e.* brought in before its proper place, see H. 878.——**πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν**: *to his brother.* The article instead of possessive adjective pronoun, Gl. 551 d; G. 949; H. 658; B. 447. Cf. *ἡ δὲ μήτηρ* and *τὴν ἀρχήν* below.——**ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι**: indirect optative after historical present. Gl. 624 b; G. 1487; H. 932, 2 b; B. 673. In Xenophon the proportion of indicatives (retained) to optatives is about 1:3 (in *Cyrop.* and *Hellen.*, indicatives 98, optatives 289; see Pfudel,

Progr. Colberg 1864). **ὡς** indicates a subjective, hence often groundless, assertion. Cf. v. 7. 1, 5.——**αὐτῷ**: dependent on compound verb. Gl. 598 a; G. 1179; H. 775; B. 394.——**ὃ δέ**: *and he.* Gl. 205, 549 b; G. 983; H. 654 e.——**συλλαμβάνει**: *arrests, comprehendit.* Gl. 603.——**ὡς ἀποκτενῶν**: *apparently intending to put him to death.* Gl. 583 b, 593 c; G. 1563, 4, 1574; H. 969 c, 978; B. 656, 3.——**ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν ἀποπέμπει**: *begged him off and sent him away.* Note the use of participle (Gl. 583; G. 1563, 1; H. 968; B. 653, 8) and verb where English idiom requires two finite verbs. **αὐτόν** is common to both participle and verb, such object being usually only once expressed when both verbs govern the same case.

4. ὡς: *as, when (ut).* Gl. 633 c.——**κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς**: *with danger and dishonor.* Gl. 583; G. 1563; H. 969.——**ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται**: for the object clause with future indicative, see Gl. 638 a; G. 1372; H. 885; B. 593. For the negative, see Gl. 486; G. 1610;

Page 2. H. 1021.——**ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ**: *in the power of his brother.* H. 799, 2 d; B. 593.——**ἣν δύνηται**: for accent of **δύνηται**, see Gl. 365 a; G. 729; H. 487, 2. For condition, see Gl. 650; G. 1403; H. 898.——**ἀντ'**: G. 1204; H. 793.——**Παρύσατις μέν**: correlative to **ὅστις δέ** (§ 5), his mother's support being contrasted with Cyrus' own efforts towards the kingship.——**ὑπῆρχε τῷ Κύρῳ**: *was for Cyrus.* Gl. 523; G. 1159; H. 764, 2.——**φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον**: (imperfect) participle of cause. Gl. 583; G. 1563, 2; H. 969 b; B. 653, 4. She had already sought before the death of Darius to secure the succession for Cyrus on the ground which had determined Darius I to appoint Xerxes, namely, that he was the first son born after his father became king (Herodotus vii. 3).——**βασιλεύοντα**: attributive participle as adjective. See Gl. 582; G. 1559; H. 965.

5. ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο: for the indicative in place of the regular optative of general condition, see Gl. 618 c; G. 1432.——**τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως**: *of those from the King.* The genitive **τῶν** is partitive or genitive of whole, after **ὅστις** (Gl. 506 a; G. 1088; H. 729 e; B. 355). **παρά** takes the genitive by anticipation (G. 1213, 1; H. 802, 1) after the verb of motion instead of the dative. In full the expression would be **τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ παρὰ βασιλέως**. The article is commonly omitted when **βασιλεύς** designates the king of Persia. G. 957; H. 660 c; B. 446 N.——**πάντας**: plural, though the indefinite relative (**ὅστις**) was singular. See Gl. 613 a; G. 1021 c; H. 629 b. For the object common to both verbs, see on **αὐτόν** in § 3.——**οὕτω διατιθεὶς ὥστε εἶναι**: *so disposing them as to be.* Gl. 566 b; G. 1450; H. 953; B. 595. With **δια-τίθημι** cf. *dispono.*——**αὐτῷ**: for personal pronoun instead of indirect reflexive (G. 987; H. 683), see G. 992.——**μᾶλλον φίλους**: this periphrasis for the comparative (Gl. 180;

G. 356; H. 256) is more common than *φιλτέρους*.——**καὶ . . . δέ**: see on § 2. The remote position of **δέ** is unusual, allowing *καί*, *also*, to contrast *τῶν παρ' ἑαυτῷ* with *τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως* above.——**τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπεμελεῖτο**: Gl. 511 c; G. 1102; H. 742; B. 358. For emphasis the noun is transferred proleptically from the dependent to the leading clause. See on *τὸν Κῦρον* in § 3.——**ὡς πολεμεῖν τε ἱκανοὶ εἶησαν**: for the object clause with optative, see Gl. 638 c; G. 1374, 1; H. 885 b; B. 593, 1. The regular construction is *ὅπως* with future indicative (Gl. 638 a; G. 1372; H. 885; B. 593), so that Xenophon violates here, as often, Attic usage. For *πολεμεῖν* with *ἱκανοί*, see Gl. 565 and a; G. 1526; H. 952. ——**εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν**: = *εὖνοι εἶησαν αὐτῷ*. For *ἔχω* intransitive, see G. 1232; H. 810. Cf. *ἀθύμως ἔχοντες*, *being dispirited*, iii. 1. 3; *ἐντίμως ἔχων*, *being in honor*, ii. 1. 7. For derivation of the adverb *εὐνοϊκῶς*, see Gl. 229; G. 365; H. 257.

6. **τὴν δὲ . . . βασιλέα**: *and his Greek force he collected concealing it as best he could, that he might catch the king as unprepared as possible.* ——**τὴν Ἑλληνικήν**: Cyrus collected a Greek force because, as he says in 7. 3, he considered them "braver and better than many barbarians." For the article (*τὴν*) = possessive pronoun, see on *τὸν ἀδελφόν* in § 3.——**ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο**: cf. *ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα* iii. 2. 6; *ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα* iii. 2. 7; *ἧ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα* 2. 4. Gl. 633 f; H. 651 a.——**ἐπικρυπτόμενος**: Gl. 583; G. 1563, 3; H. 969 a.——**ὅπως . . . λάβοι**: optative in final clause. Gl. 638 c; G. 1365; H. 881; B. 590.——**ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον**: cf. *ὅτι πλείστους* §§ 6 and 11. H. 651.——**ὧδε**: *in the following manner* = *τόνδε τὸν τρόπον* (§ 9). Adverb to **δδε**, as *οὕτω* to *οὗτος*. Gl. 236; G. 436, 1005; H. 272 c, 696.——**ἐποιεῖτο**: for middle, see Gl. 500 b; G. 1242, 2; H. 813; B. 504.——**φυλακάς**: antecedent attracted into relative clause. Gl. 613 d; G. 1037; H. 995; B. 485.——**τοῖς φρουράρχοις ἑκάστοις**: *to the several garrison commanders.* For predicate position, see Gl. 554; G. 976; H. 673 a.——**λαμβάνειν**: *enlist.*——**ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος . . . ταῖς πόλεσι**: *on the ground that Tissaphernes was plotting against the cities.* Gen. abs. Gl. 590; G. 1568; H. 970. For *ὡς* with the circumstantial participle, see Gl. 593 c; G. 1574; H. 978; B. 656, 3. Cf. *ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοι* in § 3. For the dative, see on *αὐτῷ* § 3.——**καὶ γάρ**: *and in fact.* Gl. 672 d; H. 1050, 4 d.——**ἦσαν**: *had belonged*, with pluperfect force.——**Τισσαφέρνους**: predicate genitive of possession. Gl. 508; G. 1094, 1; H. 732; B. 348, 1. Cf. *Παρυσάτιδος ἦσαν* 4. 9; *ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι* ii. 1. 11.——**τὸ ἀρχαῖον**: *formerly*, adverbial accusative. Gl. 540; G. 1060; H. 719 b; B. 336.——**ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομέναι**: *having been given by the king.* Participle descriptive. Gl. 583; G. 1563, 7; H. 969 a. In this construction (*ἐκ* = *ὑπό*), common in the poets and in Ionic, but rather infrequent in Attic prose (Xen., Thuc.), the agent is generally to be

viewed as the source. G. 1209 c; H. 798 c; B. 407. See on ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων ii. 6. 1. Cf. δεδομέναι ὑπό vii. 7. 1.——**πλὴν Μιλήτου**: cf. 9. 9.

7. προαισθόμενος: *having found out beforehand, i. e.*, before the execution of the plot.——**τὰ αὐτά**: *same.* Gl. 199 b; G. 399; H. 265. Cognate accusative. Gl. 536 b; G. 1054; H. 716 b; B. 334.——**βουλευομένους**: predicate or supplementary participle in indirect discourse (Gl. 586 a; G. 1588; H. 982; B. 661) used substantively.——**ἀποστῆναι**: appositive to τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα.——**τοὺς μέν, τοὺς δέ**: *some, others*, the article in its original demonstrative force. Gl. 549 a; G. 981; H. 654; B. 443, 1.——**αὐτῶν**: partitive genitive. Gl. 506 a; G. 1088; H. 729 e; B. 355.——**ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς φεύγοντας**: *when he had taken under his protection those who were in exile*, subordinate to συλλέξας ἐπολιόρκει (= συνέλεξε καὶ ἐπολιόρκει).——**κατὰ γῆν**: G. 1211, 2 a; H. 800, 2 a.——**κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπτωκότας**: *to bring back* (home) *those who were banished.* ἐκπίπτω passive of ἐκβάλλω.——**καὶ αὖτη αὖ ἄλλη πρόφασις . . . στράτευμα**: *and in this again he had another pretext for collecting an army.* αὕτη is assimilated to the gender of the predicate noun. αὐτῷ, dative denoting possessor, Gl. 524 a; G. 1173; H. 768; B. 379.——**τοῦ ἀθροίζειν**: objective genitive of the articular infinitive depending on πρόφασις. Gl. 575; G. 1547; H. 959; B. 639.

8. ἀδελφὸς ὢν αὐτοῦ: *on the ground that he was his brother.* Gl. 583; G. 1563, 2; H. 969 b; B. 653, 4.——**δοθῆναι οἱ . . . πόλεις**: infinitive clause object of ἠξίου. Gl. 570 c; G. 1519; H. 948. For the emphatic (Gl. 197; G. 144; H. 119 b) indirect reflexive pronoun, see

Page 3. G. 987; H. 685.——**ἄρχειν αὐτῶν**: construction of infinitive, same as δοθῆναι. In full it would be: *rather than* (*he thought it right* ἠξίου) *that Tissaphernes should rule them.* For the genitive, see Gl. 510 c; G. 1109; H. 741; B. 356.——**συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ ταῦτα**: *coöperated with him in this.*——**ὥστε . . . οὐκ ἠσθάνετο**: Gl. 639 a; G. 1450; H. 927 a; B. 595. Cf. ὥστε εἶναι in § 5.——**πρὸς ἑαυτόν**: *against himself.* G. 1216, 3 b; H. 805, 3 b. For the attributive position of the prepositional phrase, see Gl. 555 a; G. 952; H. 666 a, c; B. 451, 1.——**Τισσαφέρνει δέ**: placed first in the clause, as antithesis to τὴν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἐπιβουλήν. See Gl. 677 a. The dative is governed by πολεμοῦντα. Gl. 525; G. 1160; H. 764, 2; B. 392, 1. πολεμοῦντα participle of cause, Gl. 583; G. 1563, 2; H. 969 b.——**αὐτὸν ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν**: *that he was incurring expense about his forces.* Object infinitive in indirect discourse. Gl. 578; G. 1522, 1523; H. 946 b; B. 646. For ἀμφί, see G. 1202, 3; H. 793, 3. More common is the construction εἴς τι δαπανᾶν, as in 3. 3, ii. 6. 6.——**ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο αὐτῶν πολεμούντων**: *so that he was not at all displeased at their being at war.* For ὥστε see above. The adverbial accusative οὐδέν (Gl. 540; G. 1060; H. 719 b; B. 336) was originally a

cognate (Gl. 536 b; G. 1054; H. 716 b; B. 334; Kr. *Spr.* 46, 5, 9). **αὐτῶν πολεμούντων** may be construed as genitive absolute (Gl. 590; G. 1568; H. 970), but it is probably really the circumstantial participle expressing cause.——**καὶ γάρ**: *and* (the more) *because.* Cf. **καὶ γάρ** in § 6.——**ἀπέπεμπε**: *used to remit* (*send what was due*). Gl. 459; G. 1253, 2; H. 830.——**τοὺς γιγνομένους δασμούς**: *the accruing tribute.* Cf. v. 3. 4 **τὸ ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀργύριον γενόμενον**, *the money accruing from the captives*, Herodotus iii. 57 **τὰ γινόμενα τῷ ἐνιαυτῷ ἑκάστῳ χρήματα**, *the money that accrued each year.* **δασμός** is applied in Xenophon chiefly to the Persian tribute. The regular Attic term is **φόρος**.——**ὧν**: relative attracted from accusative (**ἅς**) into case of antecedent. Gl. 613 b; G. 1031; H. 994; B. 484.——**ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων**: *happened to possess.* See on **παρὼν ἐτύγχανε** in § 2.

9. αὐτῷ συνελέγετο: dative of advantage. Gl. 523; G. 1165; H. 767; B. 378. Note force of imperfect. Gl. 459; G. 1250, 2; H. 829.——**ἐν Χερρονήσῳ**: this peninsula was known to the Athenians, in whose possession it remained till 343 B. C., as **ἡ Θρᾳκία Χερρόνησος** or simply **ἡ Χερρόνησος**. For the omission of the article, see G. 959, 2.——**τόνδε τὸν τρόπον**: *in the following manner.* Gl. 540; G. 1060; H. 719; B. 336. For the force of **τόνδε**, see G. 1003; H. 696.——**Κλέαρχος**: for characterization of this leading spirit among the Greek allies of Cyrus, see ii. 6. 1–15.——**ἠγάσθη**: *came to admire.* Ingressive aorist. Gl. 464; G. 1260; H. 841; B. 529.——**δίδωσιν**: change from aorist to historical present. Note the reverse change in § 2.——**δαρεικούς**: the common Persian gold coin, worth about $5.40, with the image of the King on one side and a kneeling archer on the other. Gl. 425. Cf. *Napoleon.*—**ὁ δέ**: see on § 3. Gl. 549 b.——**ἀπό**: *by means of.* For the Greek the money is the source, for us the means.——**ἐκ Χερρονήσου ὁρμώμενος**: "making the Chersonese his base of operations," lit. *setting out from.*——**τοῖς Θρᾳξί**: for construction, see on **Τισσαφέρνει** in § 8. Gl. 525.——**τοῖς . . . οἰκοῦσι**: for the order, see Gl. 552 b; G. 959, 2; H. 668; B. 451, 452. Cf. **ἐν Χερρονήσῳ τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου** above.——**ὑπὲρ Ἑλλήσποντον**: *above* (*i. e. beyond*) *the Hellespont*, the accusative expressing extent. G. 1218, 2; H. 807, 2.——**ὥστε . . . συνεβάλλοντο**: see on **ὥστε** in § 8.——**αὐτῷ**: dative of indirect object. Gl. 520; G. 1158; H. 763; B. 375.——**εἰς**: *for.* G. 1207 d; H. 796 c.——**ἑκοῦσαι**: *willingly.* G. 926; H. 619 a.——**τοῦτο δ' αὖ . . . τὸ στράτευμα**: *and this army again was thus secretly maintained for him.* **τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν**, Gl. 585 a; G. 1586; H. 984; B. 660 N. **αὐτῷ** dative of advantage, as above.

10. ξένος: *guest-friend.* The word, which means originally stranger, is here **ὁ ἀπὸ ξένης φίλος**, *i. e.* a citizen of another state with whom one has a compact of hospitality. It may designate also either party to the

compact—here the guest, in 3. 3 the host—and is often applied to foreign soldiers serving for hire, as just below.——**ὑπὸ τῶν οἴκοι ἀντιστασιωτῶν**: the agent with the passive, G. 1234; H. 818 a. For the adjective force of the adverb, see Gl. 555 a; G. 952; H. 666 a; B. 429, 1.——**καὶ αἰτεῖ . . . μισθόν**: *and asks him for three months' pay for 2,000 mercenaries.* For the double accusative with verb of asking, see Gl. 535; G. 1069; H. 724; B. 340. For the genitive of measure, see Gl. 506 a; G. 1085, 5; H. 729 d; B. 352. The Greek would bear the interpretation, *and asks him for about* (G. 1207 c; H. 796 c.) *2,000 mercenaries and three months' pay.*——**ὡς . . . ἀντιστασιωτῶν**: *on the ground that thus he would prove superior to his antagonists.* For *ὡς* with participle, see on § 6. *περιγενόμενος ἄν* stands for *περιγένοιτο ἄν* (Gl. 595; G. 1308, 2; H. 987 a; B. 662), the protasis, or conditional clause, being implied in *οὕτω* Gl. 481; G. 1413; H. 902. For the genitive, see Gl. 509 b; G. 1120; H. 749; B. 364.——**ἀντιστασιώτης**: cf. Herodotus i. 92, iv. 164.——**δεῖται . . . καταλῦσαι**: *asks of him not to come to terms.* The deponent meaning primarily 'lack,' then 'ask,' takes genitive of person with infinitive. Gl. 509 a (ex). For the regular *μή*, see Gl. 564; G. 1611; H. 1023; B. 633.——**πρόσθεν . . . πρίν**: GMT. 658.——**πρὶν ἂν αὐτῷ συμβουλεύσηται**: for *πρίν* with subjunctive, see Gl. 644 b; G. 1470, 1471, 2; H. 924; B. 627. For the dative, see Gl. 598 a; G. 1179; H. 775; B. 394.——**οὕτω δὲ . . . τρεφόμενον στράτευμα**: see on § 9.

11. Πρόξενον: for characterization of Proxenus, who induced Xenophon to join the expedition, see ii. 6. 16–20.——**ξένον**: see on § 10.——**λαβόντα**: see on *λαβών* in § 2.——**ὅτι πλείστους**: cf. § 6.——**παραγενέσθαι**: *to present himself* (aorist). Cf. *παρών* in § 1.——**ὡς βουλόμενος**: *on the ground that he wished*, giving the reason for the request (*ἐκέλευσε*). Gl. 593 c; G. 1574; H. 978; B. 656, 3.

Page 4.

See on *ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος* in § 6.——**στρατεύεσθαι εἰς Πισίδας**: *to make an expedition against, i. e. into the territory of, the Pisidians.* Gl. 570 a. Cf. *εἰς Μυσούς* 6. 7; *εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους* 3. 5; *εἰς Καρδούχους* iii. 5. 15; *εἰς Ταόχους* iv. 7. 1. The Pisidians, occupying a mountainous and wild district of Asia Minor (see map), did not acknowledge the supremacy of Persia.——**ὡς πράγματα παρεχόντων τῶν Πισιδῶν**: *on the pretext that the Pisidians were giving trouble.* Cf. iv. 1. 22, 2. 27. The genitive absolute (Gl. 590; G. 1568; H. 970; B. 657) with *ὡς* gives the alleged ground of *βουλόμενος στρατεύεσθαι*.——**τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χώρᾳ**: for the attributive position of the reflexive pronoun, see Gl. 554 a; G. 960; H. 673 b.——**καὶ τούτους**: *these also.*——**λαβόντας**: see on *λαβών* in § 2.——**ὡς πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει**. See on § 8. *ὡς* with the future participle of purpose gives the reason alleged by Cyrus for his request. Gl. 593 c; G. 1574; H. 978; B. 656, 3.——**σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι**: *with the aid of, or in*

company with, the fugitives. Cf. § 7. G. 1217 b; H. 806. The poetical preposition *σύν* is very frequent in Xenophon, and occurs thirty-seven times in Thucydides, but is rare elsewhere in Attic prose.——**τῶν Μιλησίων**: partitive genitive (genitive of the whole). Gl. 506; G. 1088; H. 729 e; B. 355.

CHAPTER II

ADVANCE FROM SARDIS TO TARSUS

1. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει . . . ἄνω: *but when it now seemed best to him to march up.* Gl. 520 b. **ἄνω** lit. *up, i. e.* away from the coast. Cf. **ἀναβαίνειν** in § 2.——**τὴν μὲν πρόφασιν . . . ὡς βουλόμενος**: *he kept making the pretext that he wished*, lit. 'as though wishing.' See on *ὡς βουλόμενος* in 1. 11. The complement to be expected (*τῇ δ' ἀληθείᾳ ἐπὶ βασιλέα ἦν ὁ στόλος*) is only implied, not formally expressed, in § 4.——**ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους**: *ostensibly against these*, *ὡς* introducing the alleged purpose, as with participles.——**τὸ βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν**: *sc. στράτευμα.*——**ἐνταῦθα**: *thither, i. e.* to Sardis. Cf. § 3 *οὗτοι μὲν εἰς Σάρδεις αὐτῷ ἀφίκοντο.*——**λαβόντι**: see on *λαβών* 1. 2.——**ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα**: *whatever force he had.* Cf. *ὃ εἶχε στράτευμα* below, and *ὁπόσας εἶχε φυλακάς* in 1. 6. For the incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause, see Gl. 613 d; G. 1037; H. 995; B. 485.——**τῷ Ἀριστίππῳ**: Aristippus seems to have sent Menon in his stead (§ 6).——**συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς οἴκοι**: *having become reconciled with those at home.* Cf. *καταλῦσαι πρὸς τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας* in 1. 10.——**αὐτῷ**: *for him*, Gl. 523; G. 1165; H. 767; B. 378. For *αὐτῷ* where *οἱ* might have been used, see G. 992; H. 684 a.——**προειστήκει τοῦ . . . ξενικοῦ**: *sc. στρατεύματος.* Gl. 457. For the attributive position of *ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι*, see G. 968; H. 666 a. For the genitive, see Gl. 555 a; G. 1109; H. 741; B. 356.——**λαβόντα**: for the accusative (cf. *λαβόντι*, just above), agreeing with the omitted subject of *ἥκειν*, see Gl. 571 c; G. 928, 1; H. 941.——**πλήν**: *sc. τοσούτων.*——**ἱκανοὶ . . . φυλάττειν**: see on 1. 5. Gl. 565 a.

2. ἐκάλεσε . . . ἐκέλευσε: note the chiastic order. Gl. 682 a.——**δὲ καί**: *and also.*——**σὺν αὐτῷ**: see on 1. 11. *αὐτῷ* as in § 1.——**εἰ . . . καταπράξειεν**: the optative for *ἐὰν καταπράξῃ*, as in indirect discourse. Gl. 659, 662; G. 1497, 2; H. 932, 2. So below *πρὶν καταγάγοι* for *πρὶν ἂν καταγάγῃ.*——**ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο**: *sc. ταῦτα ἐφ' ἃ*, Gl. 614; G. 1026, 1027; H. 996; B. 486. Cf. Xenophon, *Cyrop.* iv. 3. 21 *ἴσασι γὰρ ἐφ' ἃ ἥκομεν.* For the imperfect where the optative might have been expected, see

Gl. 624 c; G. 1501; H. 936; GMT. 674, 2.——**μὴ παύσασθαι**: the construction is not felt as indirect discourse, hence the aorist, not future, infinitive. G. 1286; GMT. 685; H. 948 a. The negative of the infinitive, not being in indirect discourse, is of course *μή*.——**καταγάγοι**: see on i. 7. **οἴκαδε** is really tautological. For optative after *πρίν*, see Gl. 644 c; G. 1497, 2; H. 932, 2; B. 627.——**παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις**: the preposition with accusative, because of motion implied. G. 1225, 1; H. 788. Cf. **παρεγένετο** in § 3; *παρεῖναι εἰς Ἑλλήσποντον* vii. 2. 5. Sardis was the capital of Lydia and the residence of Cyrus.

3. δή: *accordingly*, referring to § 1. H. 1337, 4 a.——**τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων**: *terminus ex quo* by anticipation. Cf. *οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς* in § 18; *τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως* i. 5.——**εἰς**: *to the number of, about*. Gl. 598 b; G. 1207 c; H. 796 c; B. 405. Cf. *ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους* in § 9.

Page 5. ——**ἔχων**: Gl. 583 a. See on **λαβών** i. 2.——**ὡς**: *about*, adverb modifying the adjective, not preposition governing accusative, as **εἰς** and **ἀμφί**.——**ἦν**: agrees with the nearer subject. Gl. 498 c; G. 901; H. 607; B. 496, 1.——**τῶν . . . στρατευομένων**: participle imperfect. G. 1289; H. 856 a. The genitive is possessive. Gl. 508; G. 1094, 1; H. 732; B. 348, 1.——**ἀμφί**: frequent in Xenophon, but elsewhere chiefly poetical and Ionic.——**οὗτοι μέν**: in contrast with others who joined him later elsewhere (§§ 6 and 9).——**αὐτῷ**: a *for*-dative (advantage). See on i. 9.

4. μείζονα . . . ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ Πισίδας: literally *greater than as* (or *as if*) *against the Pisidians*.——**ὡς βασιλέα**: *to the King*. G. 1220, 8; H. 722 a; B. 418.——**ἧ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα**: *as he could quickest*. H. 651 a. See on i. 6.

5. ἥκουσε: with genitive and accusative. Gl. 511 a; G. 1103; H. 742 c; B. 365.——**σταθμοὺς τρεῖς**: *three stages*, or days' march. *σταθμοί*, 'halting-places,' put for the distance between two halts, is more distinctly defined in *παρασάγγας εἴκοσι καὶ δύο*. Gl. 538; G. 1062; H. 720; B. 338.——**Μαίανδρον**: for the position, see G. 970; H. 624 a.——**τὸ εὖρος**: *sc. ἦν*.——**γέφυρα ἐζευγμένη πλοίοις**: *a pontoon-bridge*, literally, a bridge yoked with boats. Cf. ii. 4. 13.

6. διαβάς: *having crossed*. Gl. 581 a, 583; G. 1288; H. 856; B. 545. ——**ἐξελαύνει**: historical present. Gl. 454 b; G. 1252; H. 828; B. 525. ——**οἰκουμένην**: *inhabited*, many cities of Asia Minor being then, as now, deserted, *ἔρημοι*.——**ἡμέρας ἑπτά**: accusative of time how long. Gl. 538; G. 1062; H. 720; B. 338. Cyrus was awaiting the coming of Menon. ——**ἧκε**: *was come*. Gl. 454 f; G. 1256; H. 827.——**Μένων**: whom Aristippus sent in his stead. See on § 1. For characterization of Menon, cf. ii. 6. 21–29.

7. τῆς Φρυγίας: *in Phrygia*. Partitive genitive, strictly "chorographic" (*i. e.* descriptive of place). Cf. *ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας* ii. 2. 6;

also vi. 1. 15, 6. 38, vii. 8. 8.——**Κύρῳ**: dative of possessor. Gl. 524 a; G. 1173; H. 768; B. 379.——**βασίλεια**: *palace.* The neuter adjective used substantively (generally plural). Cf. iii. 4. 24 *βασίλειόν τι, sc.* **δῶμα.** Lat. *regia, sc. domus.*——**ἦν**: neuter plural takes singular verb. Gl. 496; G. 899, 2; H. 604; B. 498. The imperfect, by a kind of attraction, represents the time of narration.

Page 6.

——**θηρίων πλήρης**: Gl. 512; G. 1140; H. 753 c; B. 357.——**ἀπὸ ἵππου**: *on horseback, terminus ex quo* with verbs of hunting and fighting. Lat. *ex equo.* Cf. *ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου μαχόμενος Hellen.* iv. 1. 32; **πολεμήσων ἀπὸ τούτων** *Cyrop.* vii. 1. 49.——**ὁπότε βούλοιτο**: relative sentence expressing general condition in past time. Gl. 627 last ex., 616 b; G. 1431, 2; H. 914, B. 2; B. 625.——**διὰ μέσου τοῦ παραδείσου**: *through the middle of the park.* Gl. 556; G. 978, 1; H. 671; B. 454.——**αὐτοῦ**: for predicate position, see G. 977, 1; H. 673 b.——**ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων**: indicating *terminus ex quo.* See on § 3.——**τῆς Κελαινῶν πόλεως**: the genitive of designation, instead of apposition, is poetical. G. 1086; H. 729 g.

8. ἔστι: for accent, see Gl. 384 b; G. 144, 5; H. 480, 2; B. 262, 1.——**μεγάλου βασιλέως**: frequent designation of the king of Persia. Cf. 7. 2, 13, ii. 3. 17. For omission of article, see on 1. 5.——**ὑπό**: *at the foot of.* G. 1219, 2; H. 808, 2.——**καὶ οὗτος**: *this too, i. e.* as well as the Maeander.——**ποδῶν**: genitive of measure. Gl. 506 a; G. 1094, 5; H. 732, 729 d; B. 352.——**λέγεται . . . ἐκδεῖραι**: the Greek is fond of the personal construction. Xenophon has it with **λέγεται** in books i. and ii. twenty-four times, the accusative with infinitive twice (i. 2. 12, 8. 6). Gl. 578 a; G. 1522, 2; H. 944; B. 634.——**οἱ**: the unemphatic and hence unaccented indirect reflexive pronoun. See on **οἵ** in 1. 8.——**περὶ σοφίας**: *about skill* in music.——**ὅθεν**: = **ἐξ οὗ**. Cf. ii. 1. 3, 3. 16, iv. 7. 20.

9. τῇ μάχῃ: *in the* (famous) *battle, i. e.* Salamis.——**ἔμεινε ἡμέρας τριάκοντα**: *i. e.* for the reinforcements mentioned below—the longest halt of the expedition.——**Θρᾷκας, Κρῆτας**: apposition with attributive force. H. 624 a. Cretan bowmen were famous and in much demand as mercenaries.——**Σῶσις**: Doric form for **Σωσίας**. He is mentioned nowhere else in the Anabasis.——**Σοφαίνετος**: probably a copyist's slip for Agias. Sophaenetus had already joined Cyrus at Sardis (§ 3).——**ἐποίησεν**: *arranged.* Cf. (§ 14) **ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται**, *holds a review.*——**ἐγένοντο οἱ σύμπαντες**: *the sum-total amounted to,* the predicate being **ὁπλῖται μέν, πελτασταὶ δέ.**——**πελτασταί**: here used generically for light-armed troops, including the 500 **γυμνῆτας** in § 3 and the 200 **τοξότας** just above (in § 9).——**ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους**: *about two thousand.* See on **εἰς** in § 3. For the article, see G. 948 b; H. 664 c. The exact number of light-armed troops (**πελτασταί**), as here enumerated, was 2,300, of hoplites 10,600.

10. Hitherto the general direction of the march has been southeast, as if against the Pisidians. Here Cyrus turns back—probably to conceal his real intention—and marches northwest till he strikes the main road to the east at Ceramōn-agora. See the map. The reasons for this Xenophon does not mention, as Cyrus has not yet disclosed the real object of the expedition. For the whole passage, see Gl. 679 c.——**τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε**: *offered the Lycaean sacrifices, i. e.* in honor of Zeus of Mt. Lycaeus in Arcadia. For the cognate accusative, see Gl. 536 a; G. 1051, 1052; H. 715, 716 a; B. 333.——**ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε**: *instituted a contest.* Cf. **ἀγῶνα ποιεῖν** iv. 8. 25, v. 5. 5.——**ἦσαν**: agreeing with the predicate nominative (Gl. 498 d; G. 904; H. 610), though Xenophon more frequently than other authors has plural verb with neuter plural subject. See Sauppe *Lexil. Xenophon.* p. 88.——**Κεράμων ἀγοράν**: literally, *Tile-market.* Cf. English Newmarket.——**ἐσχάτην πρός**: *the last next to.*

11. **ἐντεῦθεν**: here Cyrus turns eastward, and the next three marches are the longest recorded in the Anabasis.——**Καΰστρου πεδίον**: *Caÿster-field.* Cf. Springfield, Creedmoor.——**πλέον**: neuter singular, for **πλέων**, used practically adverbially. Cf. iv. 7. 9, 10.——**ἀπῄτουν**:
Page 7. *demanded the debt.* Cf. just below **ἀποδιδόναι**, *give what is due, pay.* See on **ἀπέπεμπε**, 1. 8.——**ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε**: *kept expressing hopes.* For predicate (supplementary) participle, see G. 1589; H. 981. The participle might be taken as circumstantial. Gl. 503. ——**δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος**: personal construction with predicate (supplementary) participle in indirect discourse. Gl. 585 a; G. 1589; H. 981; B. 634.——**πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου**: *according to Cyrus's way.* G. 1216, 1; H. 805, 1 b.——**ἔχοντα**: agreeing with omitted subject of **ἀποδιδόναι**. Gl. 571 c; G. 928, 2; H. 941.——**μή**: for the negative, see Gl. 564; G. 1611; H. 1023; B. 431, 1.

12. **Συεννέσιος**: Ionic genitive. G. 255; H. 201 d. This is the hereditary title of the Cilician kings. Cf. Pharaoh. He is said to have played a double game, giving one son to Cyrus, the other to Artaxerxes, planning to be on the right side whatever the issue.——**ἐλέγετο δοῦναι**: personal construction. Gl. 578 a. See on **λέγεται ἐκδεῖραι** in § 8.——**τῇ δ' οὖν στρατιᾷ**: *to the army at any rate,* whatever the source of the money. Cf. **δ' οὖν** in §§ 22, 25. The Greek army is meant.——**Ἀσπενδίους**: from Aspendus in Pamphylia.——**Κῦρον συγγενέσθαι**: accusative and infinitive as 8. 6, instead of the usual personal construction. See on § 8.

13. **παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν**: *along by the way,* st. **παρὰ τῇ ὁδῷ**. The preposition indicates extension. G. 1213, 3; H. 802, 3 a; B. 411, 3 B. Cf. iii. 4. 9.——**κρήνη ἡ Μίδου καλουμένη**: *the so-called spring of Midas.* Gl. 582 b. Cf. 8. 10, 25. For the article omitted before **κρήνη**, see G. 959, 2.——**τὸν σάτυρον**: *i. e.* Silenus. Xenophon presupposes acquaint-

ance with the legend.——**οἴνῳ κεράσας αὐτήν**: literally, *mixing it with wine.* Gl. 525.

14. δεηθῆναι . . . Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι: see on **δεῖται αὐτοῦ καταλῦσαι** i. 10. ——**βουλόμενος οὖν ἐπιδεῖξαι**: the display was intended to impress Syennesis, through Epyaxa, with the strength of Cyrus's army.——**ποιεῖται**: *holds.* See on **ἐποίησεν** in § 9.

15. ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς: *as was their custom, sc.* **ἐστὶ τάττεσθαι.** On **ὡς**, see Gl. 633 a.——**στῆναι**: *to be placed,* not to stand, which would require the perfect.——**συντάξαι δ' ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ**: *and that each* (*sc.* **στρατηγόν**) *draw up his own men.* Cf. **ἕκαστοι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες** iv. 5. 23.——**ἐπὶ τεττάρων**: *four deep.* Ten thousand six hundred hoplites drawn up four deep (106 companies with a front of 24) would make a line nearly a mile and a half long. The usual phalanx order was **ἐπὶ ὀκτώ.**——**εἶχε**: agrees with the nearer subject. See on **ἦν** in § 3.——**τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν κτέ**: the positions are named in the order of danger, and hence of honor. Those on the right had their sides unprotected, since the shield was carried on the left arm. ——**οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ**: substantive omitted. Gl. 555 b; G. 952, 2; H. 621 a. Cf. **τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως** i. 5.——**τὸ εὐώνυμον**: euphemistic for **ἀριστερόν** 'left,' to avoid this term, because to a Greek augur, looking north, unlucky signs came from the left.

Page 8.

16. οἱ δέ: see on **ὃ δέ** i. 3.——**παρήλαυνον**: *marched by*; here intransitive, in § 17 transitive.——**κατ' ἴλας καὶ κατὰ τάξεις**: *by squadrons* (of cavalry) *and battalions* (of infantry).——**εἶτα δέ**: correlative to **πρῶτον μέν** above, from which clause **ἐθεώρει** is to be supplied here.——**πάντες**: *i. e.* the Greeks.——**κράνη κτέ**: through the brilliant color of their tunics and the gleam of their metal armor, Epyaxa was to be impressed with the splendor of the Greek troops.——**ἐκκεκαλυμμένας**: *uncovered, i. e.* without the usual leathern covering (**σάγμα**). For the construction, see Gl. 545; G. 1563, 3; H. 969 a; B. 653, 3.

17. παρήλασε: *had ridden past.* See on **ἐτελεύτησε** i. 3.——**στήσας**: *having halted,* subordinate to **πέμψας.** See on **ὑπολαβών** i. 7.——**μέσης**: see on **μέσου** in § 7.——**προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**: *to advance their arms* (*i. e.* with shields forward and spears in rest) as if to attack. Cf. to charge bayonets.——**ἐπιχωρῆσαι**: usually **ἐπίεναι.**——**ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα**: *the phalanx in a body.* Gl. 547; G. 979; H. 672 c; B. 455.——**οἱ δέ**: cf. **οἱ δέ** in § 16.——**ἐσάλπιγξε**: the subject implied. Gl. 493; G. 897, 4; H. 602 c; B. 305.——**ἐκ τούτου**: *thereupon,* as in 3. 13, 6. 8.——**θᾶττον προϊόντων . . . ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς**: *as they were advancing more and more rapidly, with a shout the soldiers of their own accord began to run towards their tents.* **προϊόντων**, *sc.* **αὐτῶν.**——**ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου**: *sua sponte.* Cf. **ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου** 3. 13.——**σὺν κραυγῇ**: cf. **σὺν γέλωτι** in

§ 18, and see on *σύν* in 1. 11.——**δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις**: common periphrasis in Greek. Cf. i. 8. 25, ii. 4. 26, iv. 1. 10. For the dative, see Gl. 524 a; G. 1173; H. 768; B. 379.

18. τῶν βαρβάρων: subjective genitive. Gl. 506; G. 1094, 2; H. 729 b; B. 349.——**φόβος**: *sc.* *ἦν*.——**καί**: connects the double statement that follows (*τε . . . καί*) with what precedes.——**οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς**: see on *τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων* in § 3.——**ἔφυγεν, ἔφυγον**: expressive repetition in vivid description, frequent in Xenophon. Cf. *ἤγγελλον, ἤγγελλον* i. 7. 13; *ἔσωσαν, ἔσωσαν* i. 10. 3; *ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα* ii. 1. 20.——**τοῦ στρατεύματος**: note the irregular position of the attributive adnominal genitive. G. 965; H. 666 b.——**τὸν ἐκ . . . φόβον**: *the fear inspired by the Greeks in the barbarians.* The prepositional phrases in the attributive position are practically adjectives.

19. ἐπέτρεψε . . . τοῖς Ἕλλησιν: *turned over to the Greeks to plunder.* Cf. ii. 4. 27. For the infinitive, see Gl. 565; G. 1532;
Page 9. H. 951; B. 592.——**ὡς πολεμίαν οὖσαν**: *on the ground that it was hostile.* Gl. 593 c. See on *ὡς βουλόμενος* 1. 11.

20. ἀποπέμπει, συνέπεμψεν: note change from historical present to aorist, and cf. *ἀναβαίνει, ἀνέβη* 1. 2.——**τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν**: free cognate (adverbial) accusative. Gl. 540; G. 1060; H. 719; B. 336.——**ἐν ᾧ**: *sc.* *χρόνῳ* as in 10. 10. Cf. *ἐν τούτῳ*, 5. 15, 8. 12.——**ἕτερόν τινα . . . δυνάστην**: *another nobleman of his under-officers.*——**αἰτιασάμενος . . . αὐτῷ**: for the infinitive, see Gl. 578; G. 1522, 1; H. 946; B. 638.——**αὐτῷ**: for *οἱ*. Gl. 197; G. 992; H. 684; B. 471.

21. ἡ εἰσβολή: *pass*, the so-called *Κιλίκιαι πύλαι*.——**ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτός**: *a wagon-road.*——**ἰσχυρῶς**: note the emphatic position, as in i. 7. 15; *Oec.* 11. 10; *Cyrop.* iv. 2. 10. But cf. *Anab.* iv. 8. 28, v. 2. 3.——**ἀμήχανος εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι**: for the infinitive, see Gl. 565; G. 1526; H. 952; B. 641; for the dative, see Gl. 523; G. 1165; H. 767; B. 378.——**εἴ τις ἐκώλυεν**: *if anyone tried to prevent*, conative imperfect. Gl. 459 a; G. 1255; H. 832; B. 527.——**εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων κτέ**: this was part doubtless of his double play, intended to give the impression of loyalty to the king. See on § 12.——**διό**: for *δι' ὅ*, *quamobrem.* Cf. *δι' ἅ* 3. 15.——**τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ**: time when. Gl. 527 c; G. 1192; H. 782: B. 397, 1.——**λελοιπὼς εἴη**: for *λέλοιπε* of direct discourse. For compound tense, see Gl. 295, 456 d; G. 733.——**ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο . . . καὶ ὅτι . . . ἥκουε**: past tenses of the direct generally remain unchanged in indirect discourse, Gl. 662, 664 ex. 2; G. 1482; H. 935 b, c; B. 675, 3.——**ἦν**: for the regular *εἴη*. Gl. 624 c; G. 1489; H. 936. See on *ἐστρατεύετο* in § 2.——**τριήρεις ἥκουε . . . τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων**: the construction is *ἥκουε Ταμὼν ἔχοντα τριήρεις περιπλεούσας . . . τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων*. The difficulty is caused by the effort to emphasize by its position the important word, *τριήρεις*. Cf.

Hellen. ii. 2. 5 ἔπεμψε δέκα τριήρεις ἔχοντα Ἐτεόνικον. For the predicate or supplementary participle in indirect discourse, see Gl. 586 a; G. 1588; H. 982; B. 661.——**Ταμώ**: from Memphis in Egypt and formerly ὕπαρχος of Lydia under Tissaphernes. Cf. Thuc. viii. 31, 87.——**τὰς Λακεδαιμονίων**: for the position, see Gl. 680 a; G. 959, 2, 960; H. 668 a; B. 451, 452, 3.

22. δ' οὖν: see on § 12.——**οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος**: *unhindered.* Gl. 589; G. 1568; H. 970; B. 657.——**τὰς σκηνάς**: *the camp,* as in iii. 5. 7.——**οὗ**: *where,* relative adverb.——**ἐφύλαττον**: *had been guarding.* For the pluperfect force, cf. ἦσαν i. 6.——**κατέβαινεν**: note the change of tense from ἀνέβη. Gl. 466.——**σύμπλεων**: elsewhere only in Hippoc. 296, 35, for ἔμπλεων. For the genitive with it, cf. θηρίων πλήρης in § 7.——**πυροὺς καὶ κριθάς**: the former occurs generally, the latter always, in the plural.——**ὄρος**: Mt. Taurus.——**αὐτό**: *sc.* τὸ πεδίον.

23. Ταρσούς: the birthplace of St. Paul. Xenophon alone uses the plural Ταρσοί and Ἰσσοί (§ 24), other writers the singular.——**μέσον**: used substantively, as in the phrase μέσον ἡμέρας 8. 8.——

Page 10. **ὄνομα, εὖρος**: accusative of specification. Gl. 537; G. 1058; H. 718; B. 337.——**δύο πλέθρων**: the genitive of measure depends on ποταμός. Gl. 506; G. 1085, 5; H. 729 d; B. 352. δύο, as indeclinable, with the genitive plural. Cf. ii. 2. 12, v. 9. 9, vii. 6. 1. On the other hand δυοῖν μηνοῖν vii. 5. 9.

24. οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες: used substantively. Gl. 582 a; G. 1560, 1; H. 966; B. 650, 1.——**ἐξέλιπον εἰς χωρίον ὀχυρόν**: *had left for a stronghold.* Cf. Herodotus vii. 100. 9 ἐκλιπεῖν τὴν πόλιν ἐς τὰ ἄκρα.——**ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη**: this accusative also on account of ἐξέλιπον.——**πλὴν οἱ ἔχοντες**: *sc.* οὐκ ἐξέλιπον.——**πλήν**: adverb, as in § 1.——**τὰ καπηλεῖα**: *retail-shops, caupones.*——**οἱ παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες**: the preposition and accusative implying extension, as παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν in § 13.

25. προτέρα Κύρου: comparative predicate adjective for adverb (Gl. 546; G. 926; H. 619 a; B. 425) with genitive. Gl. 517; G. 1153; H. 755; B. 363.——**πέντε ἡμέραις**; dative of degree of difference. Gl. 526 c; G. 1184; H. 781; B. 388.——**τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον**: prepositional phrase with adjective force. Cf. τῇ κατ' ἀντιπέρας Ἀβύδου i. 9.——**οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ**: *some . . . others,* as τοὺς μὲν . . . τοὺς δέ i. 7. For the asyndeton (Gl. 600 a), cf. ii. 1. 6, 3. 24.——**ἁρπάζοντάς τι κατακοπῆναι**: *while committing some act of depredation they had been cut down.* For the infinitive in indirect discourse, see Gl. 658; G. 1522, 1; H. 946; B. 646. τι is cognate accusative. Gl. 536 b; G. 1054; H. 716 b; B. 334.——**ὑπολειφθέντας**: *left behind.*——**καὶ οὐ**: *and not,* connects with an affirmative expression, οὐδέ continues a negative one. Gl. 667.——**εἶτα**: *then.* Cf. iv. 7. 13.——**δ' οὖν**: see on §§ 12 and 22.——**ἑκατὸν ὁπλῖται**: if the text be sound, the

δύο λόχοι were only half size, the normal strength of a λόχος being 100 men. Kr. inserts ἕκαστος.

26. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι: *i. e.* of Menon's troops; emphatic position (before ἐπεί). Cf. **Κῦρος δ' ἐπεί** just below.——**ἦκον**: with pluperfect force. Gl. 454 f; G. 1256; H. 827.——**διήρπασαν**: *sacked* (literally, 'tore up'); stronger than ἁρπάζοντας just above.——**συστρατιωτῶν**: cf. σύμμαχοι, *commilitones.*——**τὰ ἐν αὑτῇ**: Gl. 552 b.——**μετεπέμπετο πρὸς ἑαυτόν**: *summoned repeatedly to himself.* Gl. 459; G. 1253, 2; H. 830.——**οὔτε . . . οὔτε**: *both not . . . and not.* Omit *both* in translation.——**οὐδενί**: dative of advantage (a *for*-dative) dependent on **εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν** with force like that of the possessive genitive. Gl. 523. For the compound negative, see Gl. 487; G. 1619; H. 1030; B. 433.——**κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ**: for the genitive, see Gl. 517; G. 1153; H. 755; B. 363.——**ἐλθεῖν**: infinitive in indirect discourse. Gl. 577 a, 658; G. 1494; H. 854.——**Κύρῳ**: construction same as **οὐδενί** above.——**ἰέναι**: *sc.* **εἰς χεῖρας.**——**οὔτε τότε Κύρῳ ἰέναι**: *and at this time he refused to come into Cyrus's power.*——**ἤθελε**: this might be explained as a transition to direct discourse where ἐθέλειν, dependent, like ἐλθεῖν, on ἔφη, was to be expected.——**πρὶν ἔπεισε . . . ἔλαβε**: for πρίν with indicative, see Gl. 644 a; G. 1471, 2; H. 924.——**ἔλαβε**: *sc.* **Συέννεσις.**

27. παρὰ βασιλεῖ: *at court*, literally at the (great) King's. For the omission of the article, see on 1. 5.——**διαρπάζεσθαι**: object, as ἀπολαμβάνειν below, of ἔδωκε. Gl. 570 c, d; G. 1518; H. 948;
Page 11. B. 638.——**ἣν που ἐντυγχάνωσιν**: for the protasis (condition), see Gl. 650; G. 1403; H. 898; B. 604.——**ἀπολαμβάνειν**: *sc.* **αὐτούς**, *i. e.* Syennesis and the Cilicians.

CHAPTER III

THE GREEK FORCE MUTINIES, BUT IS FINALLY PERSUADED BY CYRUS TO ADVANCE

1. ἔμεινεν: agrees with the nearest subject. See on **ἦν** in 2. 3.——**ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν**: except that of 30 days at Celaenae, this was the longest delay of the march.——**οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι**: *refused to go*, said that they would not go.——**ἰέναι**: future in sense. Gl. 385 b; G. 1257; H. 828 a; B. 524 N. Cf. **οὔτε . . . ἐλθεῖν ἔφη** in 2. 26 and **μισθωθῆναι οὐκ ἔφασαν** below.——**τοῦ πρόσω**: *forward*, genitive of place. Gl. 515 *end*; G. 1138; H. 760 a; B. 358. This construction, which is perhaps an Epic survival, is especially poetical, appearing in Attic prose only in a few phrases.——

ὑπώπτευον: see on i. 1.——**μισθωθῆναι οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἔφασαν**: *insisted that they had not been hired for this purpose.*——**πρῶτος**: for the difference between *πρῶτος* and *πρῶτον*, see Gl. 546; G. 926; H. 619 b.——**τοὺς αὑτοῦ στρατιώτας**: for position of dependent genitive of reflexive pronoun, see Gl. 554 a; G. 960; H. 673 b, 692, 3; B. 457, 2.——**ἐβιάζετο**: *tried to force.* Gl. 459 a. See on *ἐκώλυε* 2. 21.——**ἔβαλλον**: cf. v. 7. 19 *βαλεῖν τοῖς λίθοις.*——**αὐτόν τε . . . καὶ . . . τὰ ἐκείνου**: note *ἐκείνου* of the same person as *αὐτόν*. Cf. 2. 15, 3. 4, 8. 26, ii. 2. 8, iv. 3. 20, vi. 4. 11.——**ἐπεὶ ἄρξαιντο**: protasis of a general conditional sentence. See on *ὁπότε βούλοιτο* 2. 7.

2. ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι: *narrowly escaped being stoned to death.*——**μικρόν**: adverb, perhaps really cognate accusative. Gl. 540, 536 b; G. 1060; H. 719; B. 336.——**μή**: strengthens the negative idea contained in *ἐξέφυγε*. Gl. 572; G. 1615, 1549; H. 1029; B. 434. With **καταπετρωθῆναι** cf. **κατακοπῆναι** 2. 25 and **καταλευσθῆναι** 5. 14.——**ἔγνω**: *recognized.*——**ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται**: original mood retained in indirect discourse. Gl. 659; G. 1487; H. 932, 1, 2; B. 674.——**συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν**: *convoked an assembly* of the soldiers, just as at Athens of citizens, as the army was, according to the ancient Greek conception, simply the people in camp.——**ἐδάκρυε . . . ἐστώς**: *stood and wept a long time*, perfect participle with present force. Gl. 583; G. 507, 508; H. 336; B. 535. *χρόνον*, accusative of time how long.——**τοιάδε**: *about as follows.* Gl. 211; G. 1005; H. 696; B. 482. *He spoke as follows* would be *ἔλεξε τάδε.*

3. ἄνδρες στρατιῶται: the noun denoting state or condition in explanatory apposition with the generic noun, as a term of respect. Cf. *ἄνδρες δικασταί*. H. 625 a.——**μὴ θαυμάζετε**: present imperative in prohibition. Gl. 485; G. 1346; H. 874; B. 584.——**ὅτι χαλεπῶς φέρω**: *that I am troubled.* Gl. 622 b.——**χαλεπῶς φέρω** = *χαλεπαίνω*. Cf. *βαρέως φέρειν* ii. 1. 4; *χαλεπῶς ἔχειν* vi. 4. 16; Lat. *moleste ferre.*——**τοῖς πράγμασιν**: dative of cause. Gl. 526 a; G. 1181; H. 776; B. 391.——**ξένος ἐγένετο**: for the facts, cf. 1. 9; for *ξένος*, see on 1. 10.——**φεύγοντα**: *when in exile.* Cf. *τοὺς φεύγοντας* 1. 7.——**τὰ ἄλλα ἐτίμησε**: cognate accusative. Gl. 536 c; G. 1054; H. 716 b; B. 334. Cf. *Cyrop.* vii. 3. 12.——**οὐκ εἰς τὸ ἴδιον κατεθέμην ἐμοί**: *did not lay up* (deposit) *for my own private use.*——**εἰς τὸ ἴδιον**: prepositional phrase used adverbially. Cf. vii. 7. 39; *Cyrop.* v. 4. 11.——**καθηδυπάθησα**: *waste in pleasure*, rare word. Cf. Plut. *Ant.* 28; Luc. *Dial. Mort.* 12. 6. For the force of **κατα-** cf. **καταδαπανᾶν** ii 2. 11.——**εἰς ὑμᾶς ἐδαπάνων**: cf. *ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν* 1. 8.

4. πρὸς τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐπολέμησα: the construction *πρός* with accusative as in iv. 1. 1, vii. 8. 24. For the construction with dative, cf. 1. 8, 9. 9. The aorist is ingressive, *began war.* Gl. 464; G. 1260; H. 841; B. 529.——**ἐτιμωρούμην**: *sc. αὐτούς. I was taking vengeance on them*

(τιμωρεῖν, *help*, τιμωρεῖσθαι, *avenge oneself on*).——**ἀφαιρεῖσθαι**: with double accusative. Gl. 535; G. 1069; H. 724; B. 340.——**ἐπειδή**: Gl. 629.——**ἵνα**: pure final particle, in most frequent use in Xenophon and other prose writers. GMT. 311. For ἵνα with optative (ὠφελοίην), see Gl. 642 b.——**εἴ τι δέοιτο**: *if he should have any need.* For the cognate accusative, see Gl. 536 b; G. 1114; H. 743 a. δέοιτο goes over from subjunctive to optative with ὠφελοίην in final clause after secondary tense. Gl. 651 (3); G. 1365, 1503; H. 881 a, 937; B. 677.——**ἀνθ' ὧν . . . ὑπ' ἐκείνου**: *in return for the benefits I had received from him.* ἀνθ' ὧν for ἀντὶ τούτων ἅ. Gl. 613 b, 614; G. 1032; H. 996 a; B. 484.——**εὖ πάσχειν**: = passive of εὖ ποιεῖν. Gl. 499 a; G. 1241; H. 820.

5. **ὑμεῖς**: expressed for emphasis. Gl. 557; G. 985; H. 677; B. 467. Cf. ἐγώ and ὑμεῖς just below.——**ἀνάγκη δή μοι**: (*sc.* ἐστί) *I must of course.* For force of δή, see Gl. 671 c (2); H. 1037, 4.——**προδόντα**: for the accusative after μοι, see on λαβόντα 2. 1.——**τῇ φιλίᾳ**:

Page 12. for the dative, see G. 1183; H. 777; B. 387 N.——**εἰ**: *whether*, indirect question. Gl. 655; G. 1605; H. 1016; B. 578.——**αἱρήσομαι . . . πείσομαι**: observe the chiasmus. Gl. 682 a.——**δ' οὖν**: see on 2. 12.——**ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ**: *sc.* πάσχειν. Conditional relative clause. Gl. 618 a; G. 1434; H. 916; B. 623.——**οὔποτε . . . οὐδείς**: for the strengthened negative, see on οὐδενί 2. 26. Gl. 487.——**ὡς . . . εἰλόμην**: Gl. 635.——**εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους**: cf. εἰς Πισίδας 1. 11.——**ἀγαγών, προδούς**: for the relation of the two participles, see on ὑπολαβὼν συλλέξας 1. 7.

6. **ἐπεί**: causal. Gl. 629 ex. 2.——**ἐμοί**: for dative with πείθεσθαι, see Gl. 520 a; G. 1159, 1160; H. 764, 2; B. 376.——**σὺν ὑμῖν ἕψομαι**: for the simple dative with ἕπεσθαι, like Lat. *consectari*. Cf. σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠκολούθησαν vii. 5. 3.——**ἂν εἶναι**: infinitive in indirect discourse (Gl. 578, 579; G. 1494; H. 964 a; B. 671) representing the potential or hypothetical optative (Gl. 479; G. 1327–9; H. 872; B. 563).——**τίμιος**: for the adjective in nominative agreeing with the omitted subject of the infinitive, see Gl. 571; G. 927; H. 940; B. 631.——**ὅπου ἂν ὦ**: *wherever I shall be, ubicumque ero*; more vivid form of condition with potential (hypothetical) optative in apodosis (conclusion). Gl. 620; G. 1437, 1421, 2; H. 918, 901 a; B. 612.——**ὑμῶν**: genitive with adjective of want. Gl. 512; G. 1140; H. 753 c; B. 362, 2.——**ὧν**: = εἰ εἶην, containing protasis (condition) to οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς εἶναι, which is infinitive of indirect discourse. Gl. 583; G. 1413; H. 902; B. 653, 6.——**οὔτ' ἄν, οὔτ' ἄν**: ἄν repeated with the dependent infinitives, though belonging to οὐκ ἂν εἶναι. G. 1312; H. 864; B. 439 N. 2. For the compound negative strengthening the negative, see Gl. 487; G. 1619; H. 1030; B. 433.——**ὠφελῆσαι, ἀλέξασθαι**: dependent on ἱκανός. Gl. 565 and a; G. 1256; H. 952; B. 641. Cf.

1. 5.——**ὡς ἐμοῦ οὖν . . . ἔχετε**: *be fully assured that I shall go then wherever you go.* For **ὡς** with genitive absolute depending on **τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε**, see Gl. 594 end; G. 1593, 2; GMT. 918; H. 978; B. 661 N. 4. ——**ὑμεῖς**: *sc.* **ἴητε**.——**τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε**: **γιγνώσκετε**. The periphrasis, as well as the order, expresses emphasis.

7. ταῦτα εἶπεν: *thus he spoke.* G. 1005; H. 696; B. 482. Cf. **τοιάδε** in § 2.——**οὐ φαίη**: *denied.* Cf. **οὐκ ἔφασαν μισθωθῆναι** in § 1. Optative of indirect discourse.——**παρά**: note the occurrence in this paragraph of this preposition, in its usual personal construction, with accusative, genitive, and dative.——**παρὰ Ξενίου**: the preposition with the genitive since antecedent motion is implied in **ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο**.——**τὰ σκευοφόρα**: *the baggage-train, i. e.* animals and wagons.

8. τούτοις: dative of cause. Gl. 526 a; G. 1181; H. 776, 778; B. 391. See on **τοῖς παροῦσι** in § 3.——**οὐκ ἤθελε**: *refused.* Cf. **οὔτε ἤθελε** 2. 26. **ἐθέλειν** generally denotes a decision of the mind, **βούλεσθαι**, *velle*, a desire of the heart. Note the force of the imperfects in this sentence. ——**λάθρᾳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν**: for the genitive, see Gl. 518 b; G. 1150; H. 757 a; B. 362, 3.——**ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν**: *bade him be of good courage.* Gl. 658 end; GMT. 99. Cf. **εἶπε κελεύειν** ii. 3. 2.——**ὡς καταστησομένων . . . εἰς τὸ δέον**: *as this will be settled in the proper way*, literally 'as this will settle into the necessary course.' **ὡς** with genitive absolute gives Clearchus's ground for encouragement. Gl. 593 c; G. 1574; H. 978; B. 656, 3.——**τὸ δέον**: used substantively. Gl. 582 a; G. 932, 1; H. 621 b; B. 650, 1. Cf. iv. 7. 7.——**μεταπέμπεσθαι**: *to keep sending for him.*——**αὐτὸς δ' οὐκ ἔφη ἰέναι**: *but for himself, he said he would not go.* **αὐτός** belongs with omitted subject of the infinitive. Gl. 571; G. 927; H. 940; B. 631. Cf. **αὐτός** in i. 8. 26, iii. 1. 4, iv. 1. 24, vii. 2. 27.

9. τοὺς προσελθόντας αὐτῷ: *i. e.* those from Xenias and Pasion (§ 7). ——**τῶν ἄλλων τὸν βουλόμενον**: partitive genitive. Gl. 506; G. 1088; H. 729 e; B. 355. For the participle used substantively, see Gl. 582 b; G. 1560; H. 966; B. 650, 1. The article is generic.——**ἔλεξε**

Page 13. **τοιάδε**: see on § 2.——**τὰ Κύρου**: *sc.* **πράγματα** or some such general idea, *res Cyri*.——**τὰ ἡμέτερα**: *res nostrae.* Gl. 507 b; G. 953; H. 621 b.——**δῆλον ὅτι**: *evidently*, used parenthetically. Gl. 493 b; H. 1049, 1 a. Cf. iii. 1. 16, 35, vi. 4. 12. Cf. **οἶδ' ὅτι** i. 4. 15.——**οὕτως ἔχει . . . πρὸς ἐκεῖνον**: *are towards us just as ours towards him.* **ἔχει**, intransitive, = **ἐστί**. H. 810; Kr. *Spr.* 52, 2, 2.——**ἐπεί γε**: *since indeed, quandoquidem.*——**συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ**: cf. **σὺν ὑμῖν ἕψομαι** in § 6. ——**ἡμῖν**: dependent on verbal noun. Gl. 522; G. 1174; H. 765 a; B. 393.——**ὅτι κτέ**: Gl. 622 c.

10. καὶ μεταπεμπομένου αὐτοῦ: *although he keeps sending.* For **καί** with concessive participle, see Gl. 590, 670 a; G. 1573; H. 979; B. 656, 2.

——**τὸ μὲν μέγιστον**: *chiefly*, adverbial accusative. Gl. 540; G. 1060; H. 719; B. 336.——**ὅτι σύνοιδα**: Gl. 622 b.——**πάντ' ἐψευσμένος**: for nominative of supplementary participle in indirect discourse, see Gl. 587; G. 1590; H. 982 a; B. 661. For *πάντα*, cognate accusative, see on 8. 11.——**ἔπειτα**: without **δέ**, though correlative to *τὸ μὲν μέγιστον*. Gl. 669 a.——**δεδιὼς μὴ ἐπιθῇ**: for *μή* with subjunctive after verb of fearing, see Gl. 611 b; G. 1378; H. 887; B. 594.——**δίκην ὧν . . . ἠδικῆσθαι**: *punishment for that wherein he thinks he has been wronged by me.* Note the perfect infinitive. *ὧν = τούτων ἅ*, the assimilation of the cognate accusative as in § 4.

11. οὐχ, οὐδέ: the construction is really that of indirect discourse as shown by the negatives. Gl. 578 a, 564; G. 1611; H. 1024; B. 633.——**καθεύδειν**: *to be idle*, figurative as in *Hellen.* v. 1. 20; Dem. xix. 303. The infinitive depends on *ὥρα*. Gl. 565; G. 1521; H. 952; B. 641.——**ἡμῶν αὐτῶν**: for the genitive, see Gl. 511 c; G. 1102; H. 742; B. 356.——**ὅ τι χρή**: indirect question. Gl. 621; G. 1600; H. 1011; B. 580.——**ἐκ τούτων**: *in consequence, under these circumstances.*——**ἕως**: *as long as*, with causal connotation, 'now that.'——**αὐτοῦ**: *here*, adverb, originally genitive of place.——**σκεπτέον μοι εἶναι**: for the impersonal verbal, see Gl. 596 b; G. 1597; H. 990; B. 665.——**ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μενοῦμεν**: object clause after verb of caring for. Gl. 638 a; G. 1372; H. 885; B. 593.——**ἤδη**: *straightway*, with *ἀπιέναι*.——**ἄπιμεν**: future. Gl. 385 b; G. 1257; H. 828 a; B. 524 N.——**οὔτε στρατηγοῦ . . . οὐδέν**: (*sc. ἐστιν*) *neither general nor private is of any use.* See on § 5. Cf. ii. 6. 10.

12. ὁ δ' ἀνήρ: *i. e.* Cyrus.——**πολλοῦ**: genitive of value. Gl. 516 a, end; G. 1135; H. 753 f; B. 353, 1.——**ἄξιος . . . φίλος ᾖ**: *sc. ἐστι* with **ἄξιος**. For the general supposition with relative, see Gl. 616 a; G. 1431, 1; H. 914, B. 1; B. 625.——**χαλεπώτατος δ' . . . ᾖ**: *but a very bitter personal enemy to whomsoever he may be hostile.* *ἐχθρός inimicus*, *πολέμιος hostis.*——**πάντες ὁμοίως**: *all alike.*——**καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ πόρρω**: *for by no means* (literally 'not even') *far.*——**δοκοῦμέν μοι**: for the personal construction with the infinitive in indirect discourse, see Gl. 574 a, 578 a; G. 1522, 2; H. 944 a; B. 634.——**αὐτοῦ**: governed by *πόρρω*. Gl. 518 b; G. 1149; H. 757; B. 362, 3.——**ὥρα**: *sc. ἐστί*, and see on *ὥρα καθεύδειν* in § 11.

13. ἀνίσταντο: note the imperfect.——**ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου**: cf. *ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου* 2. 17.——**λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγνωσκον**: *to express their opinion.* Gl. 583 b; G. 1563, 4; H. 969 c; B. 653, 5.——**ὑπ' ἐκείνου**: Clearchus.——**ἐπιδεικνύντες**: participle of attendant circumstance.——**οἷα**: *of what sort*, when we should say *how great*, or *what*.——**εἴη**: for the optative, see Gl. 621 a, 661; G. 1487; H. 932, 2; B. 673. See on *ἐπιβουλεύοι* 1. 3.——**μένειν, ἀπιέναι**: dependent on *ἀπορία*. See on *ὥρα καθεύδειν* in § 11.

14. **εἷς δὲ δὴ εἶπε**: *but one indeed suggested.* **δή** emphasizes the antithesis.——**προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν**: *pretending to be eager, simulans se studere.*——**ἐλέσθαι**: dependent, as also **ἀγοράζεσθαι** and the following infinitives of the section, on **εἶπε**. See on **ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν** in § 8. See Gl. 664 end, for the whole section.——**εἰ μὴ βούλεται**: the present optative would have been ambiguous. Gl. 662; G. 1499; H. 933 a; B. 673.——**ἡ δ' ἀγορὰ . . . στρατεύματι**: parenthetical explanation inserted by the author to show that without Cyrus's permission they could not even get supplies.——**ἐλθόντας**: agrees with omitted subject of **αἰτεῖν**.——**Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα**: for double accusative, see Gl. 535; G. 1069; H. 724; B. 340.——**ὡς ἀποπλέοιεν**: for optative, see Gl. 636 b; G. 1365; H. 881; B. 673. **ὡς**, which is the most common final particle in tragedy, is rare in Attic prose except in Xenophon. GMT. 312, 3.——**ἐὰν μὴ διδῷ**: original mood and tense retained. Gl. 662; G. 1497, 2; H. 933; B. 674.——**ὅστις . . . ἀπάξει**: relative clause of purpose. Gl. 619; G. 1442; H. 911; B. 591.——**φιλίας**: predicate adjective. Gl. 552 d; G. 971; H. 670 a; B. 453, 1.——**μηδέ**: *not even.*——**τὴν ταχίστην**: adverbial accusative. Gl. 540; G. 1060; H. 719; B. 336.——**προκαταληψομένους**: *sc.* **ἄνδρας**. For the future participle of purpose (Gl. 583 b), see on **λέξοντες** in 13.——**ὅπως . . . καταλαβόντες**: *in order that neither Cyrus nor the Cilicians might seize them first.* For the retention of the original mood and tense (**φθάσωσι**), see G. 1369; H. 881 a; B. 674. For the predicate or supplementary participle with **φθάσωσι**, see Gl. 585 a; G. 1586; H. 984; B. 660 N. Note in this paragraph three ways of expressing purpose. **ὅπως**, like **ὡς** originally a relative adverb of manner, is the commonest final particle in Thucydides and Xenophon. GMT. 313, 2.——**ὧν**: the antecedent is **οἱ Κίλικες**; it is partitive genitive with **πολλούς** and possessive genitive with **χρήματα**. Gl. 506 a; G. 1085, 1 and 7; H. 729 a and e; B. 355, 348.——**ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες**: periphrastic perfect = **ἀνηρπάκαμεν καὶ ἔχομεν**. Cf. Lat. *domitos habere.* Gl. 456 d; G. 1262; H. 981 a; B. 536, 2. Cf. iv. 7. 1. Note the transition to direct discourse in first person. See Gl. 663, 664 end.

15. **τοσοῦτον**: *only so much,* as in ii. 1. 9 (cf. **τοσοῦτον μόνον** iii. 1. 45); irregularly referring to what follows. G. 1005; H. 696.——**ὡς μὲν στρατηγήσοντα . . . λεγέτω**: *let no one of you speak of me as ready to assume this generalship.* The participle is practically in indirect discourse. Gl. 594; G. 1593, 1; H. 982; GMT. 919; B. 661, N. 4. For the order, see Gl. 680. Cf. Eur. *Alc.* 387 **ὡς οὐκέτ' οὖσαν οὐδὲν ἂν λέγοις ἐμέ**, *speak of me as no longer living.*——**τὴν στρατηγίαν**: cognate accusative. Gl. 536 a; G. 1051; H. 715 a; B. 331.——**μηδεὶς λεγέτω**: see on **θαυμάζετε** in § 3. Gl. 484.——**ἐνορῶ**: *I see in* that course.——**ἐμοί**: for the dative, see Gl. 524 b; G. 1596, 1597; H. 991; B. 666.——**ποιητέον**: *sc.* **ἐστί**. The

construction may be personal or impersonal. Gl. 596 a, b; G. 1594; H. 988; B. 663.——**ὡς δὲ κτέ**: *sc.* λεγέτω from *μηδεὶς λεγέτω*.——**τῷ ἀνδρί**: for the dative, see Gl. 520 a; G. 1160; H. 764, 2; B. 376.——**ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε**: for the future condition, see Gl. 616 a; G. 1434; H. 916; B. 623. See on *ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ* in § 5.——**ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα**: (*sc. ἐστι*) *as far as it is possible.* ——**ἵνα**: see on § 4 and Gl. 642 a.——**ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος**: *sc. ἐπίσταται.* This parenthetical expression, or the commoner *εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος*, adds a superlative force.——**μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων**: *best of men* (partitive genitive), belongs to *ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι*, but is logically unnecessary after *ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος*.

16. ἐπιδεικνὺς μέν, ἐπιδεικνὺς δέ: anaphora, *i. e.* repetition of initial word in following clause, of which Xenophon is very fond. See Gl. 681 c, 682 c.——**τοῦ κελεύοντος**: participle used substantively. Gl. 582 a; G. 1560, 1; H. 966; B. 650, N. 2.——**ὥσπερ . . . ποιουμένου**: *just as if Cyrus were making the journey back.* Gl. 593 d; G. 1576; H. 978 a; B. 656 N.——**ὡς εὐήθες εἴη**: *how silly it was*, virtually repeating *τὴν εὐήθειαν* above. For the mood, see on *εἴη* in § 13.——**παρὰ τούτου**: for the simple accusative; cf. *ἡγεμόνα αἰτεῖν Κῦρον* in § 14.——**ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα**: *for*-dative (disadvantage). Gl. 523. Note the reversion to direct discourse which continues to the end of the speech.——**τὴν πρᾶξιν**: *his undertaking, i. e. τὸν στόλον.*——**εἰ πιστεύσομεν**: *if we are going to trust*, the future expressing present intention. Gl. 648 a; G. 1391; H. 893 c; B. 533 N.——**ὃν ἂν . . . διδῷ**: see on *ὃν ἂν ἕλησθε* in § 15.——**τί κωλύει . . . προκαταλαβεῖν**: ironical, *i. e.* if we are going to trust Cyrus's guide, what hinders our bidding him also to preoccupy the heights for us, instead of doing it ourselves? *ἡμῖν* is dative of advantage, a *for*-dative (see Gl. 523), and the subject of *κελεύειν* is *ἡμᾶς* understood. Krüger takes *ἡμῖν* as dative of disadvantage and *Κῦρον* as subject of *κελεύειν*, which is grammatically possible; but for that the order should be *Κ. κελεύειν ἡμῖν π.* Besides, it is clearly not what the context demands. For the omission of the negative with the infinitive, see Gl. 572 b.

17. ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην ἄν: *for I should hesitate*, even if he should grant such requests. See Gl. 557, 479 for emphatic personal pronoun and for optative.——**ἃ δοίη**: relative less vivid future conditional sentence. Gl. 616 b; G. 1436; H. 917; B. 624.——**μὴ . . . κα-**

Page 15. **ταδύσῃ**: construction after *ὀκνοίην ἄν* just as after *φοβοίμην ἄν*. Gl. 611 b; G. 1378; H. 887; B. 594.——**αὐταῖς τριήρεσι**: Gl. 525 a; G. 1191; H. 774 a; B. 475, 3 N. 2.——**ὃν δοίη**: optative as *ἃ δοίη* just above.——**ἕπεσθαι**: infinitive as object. Gl. 570 a.——**ὅθεν**: *whence, i. e.* to a point from which.——**οὐκ ἔσται**: *it will not be possible.* Cf. *οὐκ ἔστι*.——**ἄκοντος ἀπιὼν Κύρου**: *invito abiturus Cyro.* *ἀπιών* = *εἰ ἀπίοιμι*. Gl. 583; G. 1413; H. 902; B. 614.——**λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών**: *to*

get off unobserved by him. Gl. 585; G. 1586; H. 984; B. 660 N. See on τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανε. i. 9. For the order, see Gl. 680, § 2.——εἶναι: for infinitive, see Gl. 578.

18. δοκεῖ: the following infinitive clauses (to βουλεύεσθαι) are subjects of δοκεῖ.——ἄνδρας: subject of ἐρωτᾶν.——οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι: (*sc.* εἰσι) *such as are friends.* ἐπιτήδειος = *necessarius.*——τί . . . χρῆσθαι: *what use he wishes to make of us,* dative of means and cognate accusative. Gl. 536 b; G. 1183; H. 777 a; B. 387 N.——ἐὰν . . . ᾖ: more vivid future condition, the apodosis (conclusion) being the infinitives ἔπεσθαι, εἶναι representing, with δοκεῖ, of which they are subjects, future time. Gl. 650; G. 1403; H. 898; B. 604.——οἵαπερ: assimilation for τοιαύτῃ οἵανπερ, where οἵανπερ would be cognate accusative (possibly accusative of specification) and τοῖς ξένοις, dative of means, as just explained above.——καί: literally *also,* though better not translated. Cf. the Gospel of Mark 3. 19 ὃς καὶ παρέδωκεν αὐτόν, *who also betrayed him.* It is regularly placed after relative adverbs (cf. ὅπῃ . . . καί § 6; ὥς τις καί § 15; ὥσπερ καί 4. 12) and with hypothetical conjunctions (cf. εἴ τις καί 4. 15).——πρόσθεν: for the time, cf. i. 1. 2.——τούτῳ: *i. e.* with Cyrus.

19. τῆς πρόσθεν: *sc.* πράξεως. For genitive after the comparative, see Gl. 517; G. 1153; H. 755; B. 363.——ἀξιοῦν: the subject is ἄνδρας, as with the two preceding infinitives, and on this depend the two following infinitives. Render: *demand that he win our consent and lead us on or let us go back with his consent.*——πείσαντα: *sc.* αὐτόν (Κῦρον). The means implied is clear from § 21.——πρὸς φιλίαν: *in friendship,* prepositional phrase for adverb φιλίως.——ἑπόμενοι, ἀπιόντες: equivalent to protases (conditions). See on ἀπιών in § 17.——πρὸς ταῦτα: *with regard to this.*

20. ἔδοξε ταῦτα: the asyndeton (continuation without connecting particles) emphasizes the sudden change of mind of the soldiers. Gl. 600 (2). Cf. iii. 2. 38; 3. 20.——τὰ δόξαντα: *what had been voted* (ἃ ἔδοξεν). Gl. 582 a.——ὃ δέ: see on ὃ δέ i. 3.——ἀκούει: retains the mood of direct discourse (ἀκούω). See on the whole sentence, Gl. 664, § 3.——ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα: see on ἐχθρός in § 12.——εἶναι: infinitive with ἀκούει in about the same sense as the predicate (supplementary) participle. Gl. 583 a, b; G. 1592, 1; H. 986.——δώδεκα σταθμούς: the army takes nineteen days to make the distance. For the accusative, see on 2. 5.——πρὸς τοῦτον: πρός expresses hostile intent less definitely than ἐπί. Cf. πρὸς βασιλέα and ἐπὶ βασιλέα in § 21.——τὴν δίκην: the article perhaps indicates the punishment proper under the circumstances. H. 657 b.——ἡμεῖς . . . βουλευσόμεθα: note the sudden reversion to direct discourse.

21. τοῖς δὲ . . . ἦν: *but they had a suspicion,* periphrasis for ὑπώπτευον. With τοῖς δέ, cf. ὃ δέ in § 20, and for the dative, see on αὐτῷ in

1. 7.——**ὅτι ἄγει**: mood of direct discourse retained, though it changes to optative just below (*ἄγοι*). Cf. *ἀκούει* in § 20.——**προσαιτοῦσι δὲ μισθόν**: *but they demand more pay.*——**ἡμιόλιον**: *half as much again* (*ἡμι* + *ὅλος*), with the force of the comparative, takes the genitive. Gl. 517 end; G. 1154; H. 755. Cf. *διπλάσια ἀπέδωκεν ὧν ἔλαβεν Cyrop.* viii. 3. 38.——**δώσειν**: for the future infinitive, see Gl. 577 a; G. 1286; H. 948 a; B. 549, 2.——**οὗ**: assimilation for *τούτου ὅ*. See on *ὧν* in § 4.——**τοῦ μηνός**: *per month.* For the genitive of time, see Gl. 515; G. 1136; H. 759; B. 352.——**τῷ στρατιώτῃ**: the article has distributive force. G. 951; H. 657 c.——**οὐδείς**: for the strengthening force of the compound negative after *οὐδέ*, see Gl. 487; G. 1619; H. 1030; B. 433.——**ἐν τῷ γε φανερῷ**: *openly at least.* Prepositional phrase for adverb (*φανερῶς*). Cf. *πρὸς φιλίαν* in § 19.

CHAPTER IV

THE CILICIAN–SYRIAN PASSES; MARCH THROUGH SYRIA; PASSAGE OF THE EUPHRATES

1. ἐπί: *to*, as in 2. 5, 17, 18. Cf. *ἐπὶ βασιλέα, against the king* 3. 21.——**ἐσχάτην**: *the last*, without art., as in 2. 10.——**ἐπὶ τῇ**
Page 16. **θαλάττῃ οἰκουμένην**: *situated by the sea.* Cf. *πόλις αὐτόθι ᾠκεῖτο* in § 11.

2. Κύρῳ: dat. of advantage. Gl. 523; G. 1165; H. 767; B. 378. Cf. *αὐτῷ* 2. 4.——**αἱ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου νῆες**: the same fleet already mentioned in 2. 21.——**ἐπ' αὐταῖς**: *over them*, the dat., acc. to Rehdantz, because Pythagoras was present as *admiral*, whereas *ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν* in § 3 (*on the ships*) is purely local.——**ἡγεῖτο αὐταῖς**: *was acting as pilot for them.*——**ἐπολιόρκει**: *had been besieging*, plpf. force as *ἐφύλαττον* 2. 22.

3. ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ: *of which he was commander under Cyrus.* For the gen., see Gl. 510 c; G. 1109; H. 741; B. 356.——**παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν**: *off the tent of Cyrus*, the prep. with accus. implying extension in space.——**οἱ παρὰ Ἀβροκόμα**: the gen. influenced by *ἀποστάντες*. See on *τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως* 1. 5. For the Doric gen., see Gl. 72 e; G. 188, 3; H. 146 D. With the contingent of Chirisophus and the deserters from Abrocomas the Greek force of Cyrus is complete.

4. πύλας: *pass*, without art. as if a proper name.——**ἦσαν δὲ . . . τείχη**: *ταῦτα* is assimilated to the gender of *τείχη* here. See on *αὕτη* 1. 7. The verb is plur. here prob. because the individual things (*δύο τείχη*) composing the neut. plur. subj. are mentioned. This const. is more freq. in Xen. (53 times) than other authors. See Sauppe, *Lexil. Xen.* p. 88.——**τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν**: *sc. τεῖχος*.——**τὸ πρὸ τῆς Κιλικίας**: attribu-

tive explanation of τὸ ἔσωθεν. Gl. 552 a, b; G. 960; H. 666 a; B. 452. ——εἶχε: agrees with the nearest subj.——διὰ μέσου τούτων: *between these.* See on διὰ μέσου in 2. 23.——ὄνομα, εὖρος πλέθρου: accus. of spec. and gen. of measure. See on 2. 23.——ἅπαν τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν: *all the space between the walls.*——ἦσαν: takes the number of the pred. ——οὐκ ἦν: *it was not possible.*——καθήκοντα: *sc.* ἦν = καθῆκε.——ὑπερθεν . . . ἠλίβατοι: *precipitous crags overhung* the pass. Cf. *mons altissimus impendebat.* ἠλίβατος (perhaps from α + γλιβ, lit. *without moisture*, hard, rough; cf. ἅλιψ, *rock*, Hesych.) is Ionic and poetical.——ἐπὶ δὲ . . . πύλαι: *at both walls gates were placed.* These πύλαι were actual gates (the plur. on account of the two wings or doors). Cf. above πύλας, *pass.* ἐφειστήκεσαν, indicating state = ἐπῆσαν. Cf. Hdt. vii. 176 ἐδέδμητο τεῖχος κατὰ . . . τὰς εἰσβολὰς, καὶ . . . πύλαι ἐπῆσαν. On this pass, cf. Dio C. xliii. 41 πύλας ἐν αὐτῇ (*sc.* τῇ στενοπορίᾳ) μετὰ τείχους ἐνοικοδομηθῆναι.

5. ὅπως: see on 3. 14.——εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν: *within and without the pass, i. e.* between the two walls and outside on the Syrian side.——βιασομένους: for fut. ptc. of purpose, cf. προκαταληψομένους 3. 14. ——εἰ φυλάττοιεν: practically indir. disc., following the change of mood in ἀποβιβάσειεν dependent on secondary tense. Gl. 651 (3).——ὅπερ: *just what*, referring to the idea of the preceding clause.——ἔχοντα: causal.——ὄντα: pred. or suppl. ptc. in indir. disc. Gl. 586 a; G. 1588; H. 982; B. 661. Cf. ἀκούει εἶναι 3. 20. See Gl. 588 b.——στρατιᾶς: *of soldiers*, part. gen. Cf. τέτταρες παρασάγγαι τῆς ὁδοῦ 10. 1.

Page 17.

6. ἐμπόριον: pred., as shown by the absence of the art. Gl. 551 g; G. 956; H. 669; B. 449. It was a *trading-place* of merchants (ἔμποροι), to which they brought goods in merchantmen (ὁλκάδες) to be sold to retail dealers (κάπηλοι).

7. ἐνθέμενοι: *putting on board.* For the mid., see Gl. 500 b; G. 1242, 3; H. 813; B. 504.——ὡς μὲν κτέ: μέν implies that another opinion also obtained, but the antithesis (τοῖς δέ) is suppressed.——ἐδόκουν: personal const. as in 7. 1, 8. 2. Gl. 574 a; G. 1522, 2; H. 944 a; B. 634.——φιλοτιμηθέντες: *piqued*, causal explanation of ἀπέπλευσαν, as ὅτι . . . εἷα Κῦρος is of this partic.——τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν: obj. of ἔχειν. For pred. position of gen. of pers. pron., see Gl. 554; G. 960; H. 673 b; B. 457.——τοὺς . . . ἀπελθόντας: cf. 3. 7. For the attrib. partic. clause, see Gl. 552 b; G. 960; H. 668; B. 452.——ὡς ἀπιόντας: *supposing that they were going back*; for fut. ptc., see on ὡς ἀποκτενῶν 1. 3, and for fut. force of ἄπ-ειμι, see Gl. 385 b; G. 1257; H. 828 a; B. 524 N.——καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα: *sc.* ἰόντας from ἀπιόντας.——ὅτι διώκοι: opt. of indir. disc.——ὡς . . . ὄντας: for ὡς with circumstantial ptc., see on ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος 1. 6.——ᾤκτιρον

εἰ ἁλώσοιντο: *pitied them in case they should be captured.* The opt. (Gl. 651 (3), 652; G. 1502, (2); H. 937; B. 677) is for *εἰ ἁλώσονται*, which comes under the general head of *minatory* and *monitory* conditions. Gl. 648 b, end; GMT. 447.

8. ἀλλ' εὖ γε μέντοι ἐπιστάσθων: *but well indeed let them know, however.* *ἀλλά* < *ἄλλος*, hence introducing something different, opposed; *μέντοι*, *however*, = *μέν* (cf. *μήν*) + *τοι*. *γε* emphasizes the word it follows. ——**οὔτε ἀποδεδράκασιν, οὔτε ἀποπεφεύγασιν**: *neither have they escaped by stealth* (*i. e.* as runaway slaves, so that I do not know where they are gone), *nor have they fled out of reach* (so that they can not be overtaken). The distinction is made clear by the *γάρ* clauses.——**ὥστε ἐλεῖν**: result. Gl. 566 b; G. 1449; H. 953; B. 595.——**τὸ ἐκείνων πλοῖον**: for the position of the gen., see G. 960; H. 666 b; B. 457, 2.——**μὰ τοὺς θεούς**: *no by the gods.* Gl. 493 c, 532; G. 1067; H. 723; B. 344.——

Page 18. **οὐδ' . . . οὐδείς**: for the strengthened neg., see on 2. 26, 3. 5. ——**ἕως μὲν ἂν . . . χρῶμαι**: a temporal clause implying, as often, a condition.——**αὐτούς**: pl. referring to the collective *τις*. Cf. *πάντας* after *ὅστις* 1. 5. *αὐτούς* is obj. of both *κακῶς ποιῶ* and *ἀποσυλῶ*. ——**κακῶς ποιῶ**: for adv. for accus. of thing, see Gl. 530 a; G. 1074; H. 712; B. 330.——**τὰ χρήματα ἀποσυλῶ**: for two accus. with verb of depriving, see Gl. 535; G. 1069; H. 724; B. 340.——**περὶ ἡμᾶς**: *towards us.* Cf. *περὶ ἐμὲ ἄδικος* 6. 8.——**καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας**: the usual order, owing to the higher importance, in the Greek view, of children as preservers of name and race.——**ἐν Τράλλεσι φρουρούμενα**: a fortress in Lydia. The partic. is neut. pl. because the children and women are thought of as possessions.——**τούτων στερήσονται**: the pron. is doubtless neut., the verb fut. mid. as pass.——**ἀπολήψονται**: *sc.* *ταῦτα*. In Greek when an object is common to two verbs it is usually expressed only once, though the cases required may be different.——**ἀρετῆς**: lit. *virtue*, here *merit*, below (§ 9) *generosity*.

9. εἴ τις καὶ ἀθυμότερος ἦν πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν: *if any one was even somewhat discouraged with regard to the expedition.* Cf. *ἀθυμοῦσι πρὸς τὴν ἔξοδον* vii. 1. 9. For the force of the compar., see H. 649 b; B. 426, 1. The antithesis is emphasized by the paronomasia *ἀθυμότερος*, *προθυμότερον*. ——**μετὰ ταῦτα**: note the asyndeton. Gl. 600 (2) and a.——**ὄντα**: *which was*, circumstantial partic.——**τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου**: accus. of spec. and gen. of measure. Cf. § 11 and for gen., see on 2. 8.——**οὓς . . . θεοὺς ἐνόμιζον**: for the obj. and pred. accus., see Gl. 634; G. 1077; H. 726; B. 341. *οὓς* is obj. also of *ἀδικεῖν*. The Syrians believed that Semiramis had been changed into a dove, her mother Derceto into a fish, hence this worship. Diod. iii. 4. 20.——**ἐνόμιζον, εἴων**: the impf. for the pres. by a kind of attraction into the time when Xen. observed these facts.——**οὐδὲ τὰς περι-**

στεράς: observe the transition from the rel. to demonstr. const. Gl. 615 a.——Παρυσάτιδος: for the pred. poss. gen., see on Τισσαφέρνους i. 6.——εἰς ζώνην: *for girdle-money* (our 'pin-money').

10. τοῦ Δάρδατος: exact position unknown, but doubtless west of Thapsacus, where Cyrus crossed the Euphrates eight days later.——τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου: *sc.* ἦν. Gen. of measure.——τοῦ Συρίας ἄρξαντος: *who had been ruler of Syria, i. e.* before the coming of Cyrus. The aor. as plpf., as ἐποίησε i. 2.——ὥραι: without the art., which is omitted with general designations of time and place. G. 958; H. 661.——αὐτόν: *i. e.* τὸν παράδεισον.——ἐξέκοψε: of trees, as in ii. 3. 10. Cf. κατακοπῆναι of men 2. 25.

11. ὄντα . . . σταδίων: now about so many πλέθρα in width. The const. as ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου in § 9.——αὐτόθι: *ibi*, as αὐτοῦ 3. 11.——ᾠκεῖτο: *was inhabited, lay.* Cf. οἰκουμένην in § 1.——Θάψακος: Tiphsah (*i. e. crossing*) *of Kings* 4. 24. Here was the oldest and most passable ford of the Euphrates, at low water only 3 to 4 feet deep.——ἔσοιτο: though Cyrus now acknowledges what the soldiers had been suspecting

Page 19. (3. 21), he uses the fut., as if to put his conduct as favorably as possible.——βασιλέα μέγαν: cf. 7. 6, ii. 4. 3.——ἀναπείθειν: *to win over.* The obj. accus. is to be supplied from τοῖς στρατιώταις. See on ἀπολήψονται in § 8.

12. ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν: cf. συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν 3. 2, ἐξέ·ασιν ἐποίησεν 2. 9. The aor. act. merely states the fact; the middle voice would express direct participation. Cf. ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν i. 6.——ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς: for the dat., see Gl. 520 a; G. 1159, 1160; H. 764, 2; B. 376.——πάλαι ταῦτ' εἰδότες: *although long aware of this.* For the concessive force, see Gl. 583; G. 1563, 6; H. 969 e; B. 653, 7, and for πάλαι εἰδότες, Gl. 454 d; G. 1258; H. 826; B. 522.——κρύπτειν: impf. inf.——οὐκ ἔφασαν ἰέναι: as 3. 1.——ἐὰν μὴ . . . διδῷ: orig. mood retained, as in 3. 14. The indef. pron. gives the force of the English pass. const. χρήματα here means not increased pay, but *largess.*——ὥσπερ . . . ἀναβᾶσι: *just as to those who went up before with Cyrus.* προτέροις is pred. to ἀναβᾶσι. Gl. 546; G. 926; H. 619 a; B. 425. Cf. προτέρα ἀφίκετο 2. 25.——παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Κύρου: for the position of this attrib. prep. phrase, see G. 969; H. 667 a. For the position of the adnominal gen., see G. 965; H. 666 b.——καὶ ταῦτα: *and that too*, esp. used with concessive ptcs. Gl. 491 d; G. 1573; H. 612 a; B. 656, 2. Cf. ii. 4. 15, vi. 2. 10, vii. 1. 29.——ἰόντων: *sc.* ἐκείνων from τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι. Gl. 590 a; G. 1568; H. 972 a; B. 657, N. 1. ἰοῦσιν would have been regular. Cf. προιόντων 2. 17.——καλοῦντος: causal. Note the chiasmus in the gen. abs. clauses, and the emphatic repetition of the proper name in the sentence.

13. δώσειν: the fut. inf. is regular in implied indir. disc., though the pres. and aor. are allowed after verbs of promising. Gl. 577 a, 571; G. 1286; H. 948 a; B. 549, 2. See on *δώσειν* 3. 21.——**πέντε ἀργυρίου μνᾶς**: for the gen. of material, see G. 1085, 4; H. 729 f; B. 352. The minas were prob. Persian, about one fourth heavier than the Attic.——**ἐπὰν . . . ἥκωσι**: original mood retained in cond. rel. clause. Gl. 629 ex. 5; G. 1434; H. 916; B. 623. The pres. of *ἥκω*, as of *οἴχομαι* (cf. § 8), has pf. force. Gl. 454 f; G. 1256; H. 827.——**τὸν μισθόν**: *i. e. τρία ἡμιδαρεικὰ τοῦ μηνός* (3. 21).——**μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ**: original mood retained in temporal clause, as in cond. rel. clause just above. Gl. 631; G. 1465; H. 921; B. 626.——**τὸ πολύ**: *the greater part.* Gl. 556; G. 967; H. 665.——**τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ**: *sc. στρατεύματος.*——**πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι**: *before it was evident*, as in § 14. Gl. 568; G. 1470; H. 955; B. 627. Cf. *πρὶν ἀποκρίνασθαι* in § 16.——**τί ποιήσουσιν**: pron. and mood of the dir. disc. retained. Cf. *ὅ τι ἀποκρινοῦνται* below in § 14.——**πότερον . . . ἢ**: epexegetical. For the indirect alternative questions, see Gl. 668; G. 1606; H. 1017; B. 579. The mood of the dir. question is retained as in *τί ποιήσουσιν.*——**οὔ**: for accent, see Gl. 18; G. 138, 1; H. 112 a; B. 69.——**χωρὶς τῶν ἄλλων**: cf. *πόρρω αὐτοῦ* 3. 12. Gl. 518 b; G. 1149; H. 757; B. 362, 3.——**συνέλεξε, ἔλεξε**: note the paronomasia.

14. οὔτε κινδυνεύσαντες οὔτε πονήσαντες: *without risk or labor*, partics. of manner.——**τῶν ἄλλων . . . ὑπὸ Κύρου**: *τῶν ἄλλων* gains emphasis by its prominent position and by the separation from *στρατιωτῶν.* The gen. depends on the idea of comparison implied in *προτιμήσεσθε* (Gl. 509 b; G. 1120; H. 749; B. 364), which is pleonastically strengthened by *πλέον.* Cf. *προλαμβάνειν πρότερον* Dem. iv. 14. For fut. mid. with pass. force, see Gl. 393; G. 1248; H. 496; B. 515, 1. Cf. *καταστησομένων* 3. 8; *ἁλώσοιντο* 4. 7; *στερήσονται* 4. 8; *ἀνιάσεται* iv. 8. 26.——**τί οὖν κελεύω ποιῆσαι**: the rhetorical question is a bid for attention and makes the impression of interchange between speaker and hearer.

15. ἢν μὲν ψηφίσωνται, ἢν δ' ἀποψηφίσωνται: for the anaphora, see on 3. 16. The aor. subjv. is nearly equiv. to the Latin fut. pf. Gl. 650 c; H. 898 c.——**ὑμεῖς, Κῦρος**: placed chiastically. Vollbrecht notes that the speaker never uses a pron. for Cyrus.——**ἄρξαντες**: causal, governing the articular inf. Gl. 575, 510 b; G. 1547, 1099; H. 959, 738; B. 639, 356.——**χάριν εἴσεται καὶ ἀποδώσει**: *gratias habebit et referet.*——**ἐπίσταται**: *sc. χάριν ἀποδιδόναι.*——**εἴ τις καὶ ἄλ-**

Page 20. **λος**: see on 3. 15.——**ἀποψηφίσωνται**: *sc. ἔπεσθαι.*——**τοὔμπαλιν**: crasis for *τὸ ἔμπαλιν*, adv.——**ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις**: *as alone obedient.* Gl. 593 c; G. 1574; H. 978; B. 656, 3.——**πιστοτάτοις**: pred., *as most trustworthy.*——**ἄλλου οὑτινοσ ἂν δέησθε**: *anything else whatsoever you may want.* The const. is perhaps best

explained as *inverted assimilation* (Gl. 613 c; G. 1035; H. 1003; B. 485, N. 1), since τεύξεσθε which might govern ἄλλου takes Κύρου as gen. of source. But cf. v. 7. 33, where it has both gen. of thing and person. For the cond. rel. clause, see on ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ 3. 5.——**οἶδα ὅτι**: cf. iii. 2. 24.

16. ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα: for the asyndeton, see on 3. 20.——**διαβεβηκότας**: *sc.* αὐτούς, pred. or suppl. ptc. Gl. 586 a; G. 1588; H. 982; B. 661.——**Γλοῦν**: son of Tamos.——**ἐγώ, ὑμεῖς**: the use of the noms. emphasizes the antithesis. See on 3. 5.——**ἤδη**: *already*.——**ὅπως . . . ἐπαινέσετε**: the clause (Gl. 638 a; G. 1372; H. 885; B. 593) is practically subj. of μελήσει.——**ἤ**: *or, otherwise*, equivalent to εἰ δὲ μή.——**Κῦρον**: for the emphasis in the name expressed, cf. δέδιθι μηδέν· Καίσαρα φέρεις Plut. *Caes.* 38.

17. ηὔχοντο αὐτὸν εὐτυχῆσαι: *wished him success*.——**ἐλέγετο**: pers. const. See on λέγεται ἐκδεῖραι 2. 8.——**μεγαλοπρεπῶς**: *magnifice*. Cf. *Hellen.* iii. 1. 13; *Cyrop.* vi. 2. 6.——**τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα**: Menon's force was already across (§ 16).——**ὑπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ**: the agent const. of persons; practical personification.

18. γένοιτο: opt. for ἐγένετο of dir. disc.——**εἰ μή**: *except*, after preceding neg. or neg. idea. Gl. 656 a; G. 1414, 1; H. 905 a 1; B. 616. Cf. 5. 6, ii. 1. 12, iv. 7. 5.——**τότε**: substituted in indir. disc. for νῦν of the direct.——**ἀλλὰ πλοίοις**: *but with boats only*. Cf. ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεούς iii. 2. 13; ἀλλὰ τὸ ἱμάτιον *Mem.* iii. 13. 6.——**ἃ τότε . . . διαβῇ**: explanatory addition of the historian. κατέκαυσε, aor. as plpf., as ἐποίησε 1. 2. Note the subjv. after secondary tense.——**ἐδόκει δὴ θεῖον εἶναι**: *it seemed to be divine intervention*, the implied subj. being the lowness of the river. Cf. *Hellen.* iii. 2. 24 σεισμὸς ἐπιγίγνεται· ὁ δ' Ἄγις θεῖον ἡγησάμενος διαφῆκε τὸ στράτευμα, *an earthquake occurred, and Agis thinking it divine interposition disbanded the army*.——**σαφῶς καὶ . . . ὡς βασιλεύοντι**: also subj. of ἔδόκει, with slight change to impers. const. Cf. iii. 1. 11. Κύρῳ is dat. of advantage, *in honor of Cyrus*.——**ὡς βασιλεύοντι**: *as king to be*. For ὡς with circumstantial ptc., see on ὡς πειθομένοις § 15. The whole sent. expresses the sentiment of the Thapsacenes.

19. διὰ τῆς Συρίας: *i. e.* the country between the Euphrates and Tigris, later called by the Greeks Mesopotamia.——**ἐπεσιτίσαντο**: because they were now to cross the Arabian desert.

CHAPTER V

THE SYRIAN–ARABIAN DESERT

1. διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας: *i. e.* southern Mesopotamia, which is still occupied by Arabian nomads.——**ἐν δεξιᾷ**: *sc.* χειρί. G. 932, 2; H. 661;

B. 424.——**ἔχων**: *with*, as in 1. 2.——**ἅπαν**: attracted to the gender of the pred.——**εἰ δέ τι καὶ ἄλλο**: *et si quid aliud.* Cf. *καὶ*

Page 21. *εἴ τι ἄλλο χρησιμὸν ἦν* 6. 1.——**ὕλης ἢ καλάμου**: *of wood or reed*, collective and part. gen. with *τι*.——**ἅπαντα**: pl. after collective *τι*, as *αὐτούς* after *τις* 4. 8.——**ἦσαν**: for pl. verb with neut. pl. subj., see on 4. 4.

2. πλεῖστοι: *very many*.——**στρουθοὶ αἱ μεγάλαι**: *ostriches*, later called *στρουθοκάμηλοι* from their long necks.——**ἐπεί τις διώκοι . . . ἔστασαν**: gen. rel. cond. as *ἐπεὶ πλησιάζοιεν* just below. See on *ὁπότε βούλοιτο* 2. 7.——**πολύ**: widely separated from *θᾶττον* for emphasis.——**οὐκ ἦν**: as in 4. 4.——**εἰ μὴ . . . διαδεχόμενοι**: *unless, posted at intervals, the horsemen pursued in relays.* For past gen. cond., see Gl. 651 (2); G. 1393, 2; H. 894, 2; B. 610. The first circumstantial ptc., which might be rendered by finite verb, is mainly temporal, the other adverbial.——**τοῖς ἐλαφείοις**: *sc. κρέασι*.

3. τῶν ἱππέων: part. gen.——**ἀπέσπα**: intr. *drew off*.——**τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ . . . χρωμένη**: *using its feet in running and its wings raised like a sail.* *δρόμῳ* and *αἰροῦσα* (*sc. αὐτὰς raising them*) express manner. Cf. Diod. iii. 28 *ὅταν κατ' ἀνέμου πνοὰς ἐξαίρῃ τὰς πτέρυγας ὑπεξάγει καθαπερεί τις ναῦς ἱστιοδρομοῦσα, whenever in a blast of wind it raises its wings, it moves away like a ship under sail.*——**ἂν τις ταχὺ ἀνιστῇ**: *if one keep rousing them quickly, i. e.* that they might not by sitting a while get rested. Pres. gen. cond. Gl. 650; G. 1393, 1; H. 894, 1; B. 609.——**ἔστι**: *it is possible.* Gl. 384 b; G. 1445; H. 480, 1; B. 262, 1.——**ἀπαγορεύουσι**: *give out.* Cf. *ὑπὸ πόνων πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων* v. 8. 3. Note the chiastic order of the sentence strengthening the antithesis.

4. πλεθριαῖον: for the gen. of measure (4. 10). Cf. Plato *Crit.* 116 a *γέφυρα πλεθριαία τὸ πλάτος*.——**ἐρήμη**: if this means *abandoned*, the region round about, which is now a desert, must have been then fertile, for *ἐνταῦθ' ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο*. If it was temporarily deserted, we should have expected some such statement as that in 2. 24. Could *πόλις ἐρήμη* mean *a city in the desert*, a depot of supplies?——**ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ**: *sc. ἦν*.——**ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα**: see on § 17. The gen. is Doric.——**κύκλῳ**: with adv. force strengthens, but, as in iv. 7. 2, vii. 1. 14, does not denote complete circumference, which would require *κύκλῳ πάντῃ* (iii. 1. 2) or *πανταχῇ* (Dem. iv. 9).

5. Πύλας: prob. a fortress on the frontier of Babylonia.——**ὑπὸ λιμοῦ**: *by reason of hunger*.——**ἄλλο**: *besides*. G. 966, 2; H. 705; B. 492, N. 2.——**οὐδέν**: see on *οὐδενί* 2. 26.——**ὄνους ἁλέτας**:

Page 22. *millstones.* The specific term follows, in explanatory apposition, the general. Acc. to the grammarians *μύλος* is the lower millstone, *ὄνος* the upper (the stone that turned), possibly so

called from the animal freq. used in turning it. In Hdt. vii. 36 ὄνος ξύλινος means *windlass*.——παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν: *along the river*. Cf. 2. 24.——ποιοῦντες: *fashioning*.——ἔζων: we may translate the sentence, *gained a living by quarrying*, etc., treating the impfs. like the ptcs.

6. ἐπέλιπε: *had failed*, as iv. 5. 14.——οὐκ ἦν: cf. § 2.——εἰ μή: see on 4. 18.——ἐν τῇ Λυδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ: the Lydians had been compelled by the elder Cyrus to devote themselves to huckstering and music, that their spirit of freedom might be tamed (Hdt. i. 155).——βαρβαρικῷ: *sc.* στρατῷ. Cf. § 7.——τὴν καπίθην: the clause is in explanatory apposition, and so this accus. depends on πρίασθαι.——ἀλεύρων ἢ ἀλφίτων: gen. of material. G. 1085, 4; H. 729 f; B. 352.——τεττάρων σίγλων: gen. of price. Gl. 513; G. 1133; H. 746; B. 353. The σίγλος, *shekel*, a Persian coin, is the Graecized form of the Semitic term *schekel*. The Kapithe (two quarts) consequently retailed for some sixty times its value at Athens at this time.——δύναται: *valet, is worth*, with accus.——ἕπτ': for ἑπτά. For accent, see Gl. 34 b; G. 120; H. 107; B. 66.——Ἀττικούς: takes gender and number of the more important noun.——ἐχώρει: *held*, unconscious attraction into past time.——κρέα οὖν . . . διεγίγνοντο: *so the soldiers subsisted on flesh*, lit. 'continued eating.' Cf. πολεμῶν διεγένετο ii. 6. 5. See on λέγων διῆγε 2. 11. Note the emphatic position of κρέα and διεγίγνοντο.

7. ἦν . . . οὕς: *some of these marches*, stereotyped const. in which number and tense were often disregarded. Gl. 614 a; G. 1029; H. 998; B. 486, N. Acc. to Rehdantz (on vi. 2. 6), in Xen. and other Attic writers, the common const. is ἔστιν (ἦν) ὧν, οἷς, οὕς, but εἰσὶν (ἦσαν) οἵ.——οὕς: cog. accus.——μακρούς: the pred. adj. expresses proleptically the result.——ὁπότε . . . βούλοιτο: see on ἐπεὶ διώκοι in § 2.——διατελέσαι: *to get to, i. e.* complete the way to.——καὶ δή ποτε: *once namely*, specifying an instance of the kind.——φανέντος: agrees with the nearer subst.——ταῖς ἁμάξαις δυσπορεύτου: *hard for the wagons to pass*.——τοῖς ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις: *those most prominent and wealthy*.——στρατοῦ: part. gen. with λαβόντας. G. 1097, 1; H. 736; B. 356. Cf. Gl. 510 a.

8. ὥσπερ ὀργῇ: *just as if in anger*. Cf. ὥσπερ with partic., 3. 16.——τοὺς κρατίστους: the ἄριστοι of § 7.——συνεπισπεῦσαι: *to help hasten*. Cf. συσπουδάζειν ii. 3. 11.——ἔνθα δή: *then indeed, tum vero*, as 8. 24, 10. 5. Cf. ἐνταῦθα δή, τότε δή.——τῆς εὐταξίας: *of their discipline, i. e.* the well-known Persian discipline.——τοὺς . . . κάνδυς: for force of art., see Gl. 551 d; G. 949; H. 658; B. 447.——ἔτυχεν . . . ἑστηκώς: see on ἐτύγχανε παρών 1. 2.——ὥσπερ . . . περὶ νίκης: *just as one would run for victory*. The figure is taken from the race-course.——καὶ μάλα . . . γηλόφου: *down a very steep hill*. καὶ μάλα, as in iv. 1. 23, v. 6. 15, 7. 4, belongs to the adj. from which it is separated for emphasis. Cf. πολὺ

. . . θᾶττον in § 2.——περί: with dat., as vii. 4. 4; rare in Attic. Cf. *Cyrop.* i. 2. 13, 3. 2.——θᾶττον ἢ ὡς τις . . . ᾤετο: *more quickly than one would have thought.* Cf. 2. 4. For ἂν ᾤετο *crederes*, see Gl. 633 a, 461 c; G. 1335–37; B. 565.——μετεώρους: *lifted up*, pred. adj. expressing proleptically the result. Cf. μακρούς in § 7. See Gl. 547.

9. τὸ σύμπαν: *on the whole*, adv. accus.——δῆλος ἦν . . . ὡς σπεύδων: *Cyrus was evidently in haste*, pers. const. as 2. 11.

Page 23. ὡς is not freq. so added. Cf. Lys. xii. 90 δῆλοι ἔσεσθε ὡς ὀργιζόμενοι.——πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδόν: accus. of extent of space.——ὅπου μή: *except where*, lit. *where not.* For the neg., see G. 1610; H. 1021; B. 431, 1, 620. Cf. Gl. 620, 617 for μή.——ὅσῳ, τοσούτῳ: *quanto, tanto*, degree of difference.——ἕλθοι: opt. in indir. disc. Gl. 662; G. 1497; H. 932; B. 673.——ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ: pred. adj.——τοσούτῳ . . . στράτευμα: *the greater would be the army that was collecting.* The pres. συναγείρεσθαι expresses the action in progress.——βασιλεῖ: dat. of advantage.——καὶ συνιδεῖν δ' . . . οὖσα: *and it was possible also for the attentive observer to recognize that the king's domain was strong in extent of country and multitude of men.* The const. = δήλη ἦν ἡ ἀρχὴ . . . ἰσχυρὰ οὖσα. Cf. δῆλος ἦν κτέ just above. For καὶ . . . δέ, see on 1. 2. τῷ προσέχοντι, ptc. used subst., as τὸν βουλόμενον 3. 9.——πλήθει: by zeugma with ἀνθρώπων as well as with χώρας.——τῷ διεσπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις: *the separation of its forces.* The artic. inf. with its subj. accus. expresses manner. Gl. 575; G. 1547; H. 959; B. 640.——διὰ ταχέων: = ταχέως. Cf. Thuc. i. 80. 2, iii. 13. 2.——εἰ . . . ποιοῖτο: *in case one should make war.* Gl. 651 (1).

10. κατά: *at, near by.*——ὄνομα: *sc.* ἦν. Cf. 5. 4.——τὰ ἐπιτήδεια: *supplies, res necessarias.*——διφθέρας: Cf. διῆγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις ii. 4. 28. See also iii. 5. 9. Similarly to-day the people of Mesopotamia use skins sewed together for floats.——στεγάσματα: *as tent-covers.*——ἐπίμπλασαν χόρτου: the verb takes accus. of thing filled (διφθέρας) and gen. of material. Gl. 512; G. 1113; H. 743.——συνῆγον καὶ συνέσπων: *drew together and sewed up.*——ὡς μὴ ἅπτεσθαι: inf. of result. ὡς = ὥστε, which occurs only once in Thuc., is not infreq. in Xen. Gl. 566 b; G. 1456; H. 1054, 1 f; B. 595.——τῆς κάρφης: for the gen., see Gl. 510 b; G. 1099; H. 738; B. 356.——οἶνον, σῖτον: explanatory appos. to ἐπιτήδεια.——τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος: for τῆς introducing the attrib. prep. phrase, see Gl. 552 b; G. 960; H. 666 a; B. 451. The fermented juice of the date is still a favorite drink about the lower Euphrates.——μελίνης: gen. of material.——τοῦτο: neut. though referring to μελίνη. Cf. ii. 3. 16.

11. ἀμφιλεξάντων τι: *having had some dispute.* τι is cogn. accus. The verb = ἀμφισβητησάντων καὶ διενεχθέντων (Suid.), is rare. Cf. ἦκεν in § 12, and see *Apol.* 12.——τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ὁ Κλέαρχος: note the

chiastic order of the sent.——**ἀδικεῖν**: *was in the wrong*, indir. disc. after *κρίνας*. For the pf. force, see GMT. 27; H. 827.——**τὸν τοῦ Μένωνος**: *sc. στρατιώτην, i. e.* the one who began the dispute, which doubtless arose between two.——**πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν**: as *Resp. Laced.* 6. 2. *Sc. αὐτῷ*. An obj. common to two verbs is usually expressed only once even though a different case be required with the second. See on 4. 8. Cf. *πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον* ii. 4. 11. Lat., *plagam infligere*.——**ἐχαλέπαινον καὶ ὠργίζοντο ἰσχυρῶς**: *took it hard and were violently angry at.* See on *χαλεπῶς φέρω* 3. 3. For the dat., see on *ἐχαλέπαινον* 4. 12.

12. τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ: dat. of time when. Gl. 527 c; G. 1192; H. 782; B. 397, 1.——**ἀφιππεύει**: rare word. Cf. Diod. ii. 19.——**τοῖς**

Page 24. **περὶ αὐτόν**: *i. e.* his usual retinue, appos. to *ὀλίγοις*.——**ἦκεν**: see on *ἥκωσι* 4. 13.——**ὡς**: *when*, as 1. 4.——**διελαύνοντα**: pred. participle not in indir. disc. Gl. 586 a; G. 1582, 1583.——**ἵησι τῇ ἀξίνῃ**: *sc. αὐτοῦ, hurls [with] his axe at him.* For the omission of *αὐτοῦ*, see on *ἐνέβαλεν* in § 11.——**αὐτοῦ**: for gen., see Gl. 509 a; G. 1099; H. 748; B. 356.——**ἄλλος καὶ ἄλλος**: (*sc. ἵησι*) as vii. 6. 10, *alius atque alius.*

13. παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὅπλα: *calls to arms, ad arma conclamat.* Cf. *κελεύειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα Hellen.* ii. 3. 20; *καλεῖν πρὸς τὰ ὅπλα* Plut. *Pyrrh.* 16. 2.——**τὰς ἀσπίδας . . . θέντας**: *resting their shields on their knees, i. e.* awaiting an attack in case Clearchus should be repulsed.——**τοὺς ἱππέας**: the only Greek cavalry mentioned with Cyrus.——**οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ**: *of which he had.*——**ὥστ' ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλῆχθαι**: *so that they were frightened out of their wits.* Gl. 566 b; G. 1450; H. 953; B. 595. *ἐκπεπλῆχθαι* as in ii. 4. 26, *ἐκ* denoting intensity and the pf. inf. expressing state.——**οἱ δὲ καί**: *but others also.* Correl. to *ἐκείνους*.——**ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγματι**: *stood in perplexity at the affair.* Dat. of cause.

14. ἔτυχε ὕστερος προσιών: *happened to be coming up later.* See on *ἐτύγχανε παρών* 1. 2. For *ὕστερος*, pred. adj. for adv., cf. *πρότερα* 2. 25.——**τάξις**: a *division* or battalion of varying strength.——**οἷν**: resumptive after the parenthesis *ἔτυχε . . . ὁπλιτῶν*.——**ἄγων**: *sc. τὴν τάξιν*.——**ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα**: *halted under arms, ordered arms.*——**ἐδεῖτο . . . μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα**: for the const., see on *δεῖται αὐτοῦ μὴ καταλῦσαι* 1. 10.——**αὐτοῦ . . . καταλευσθῆναι**: *although he had lacked little of being stoned to death.* For the sense, cf. *μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι* 3. 2. For *ὀλίγου*, see Gl. 512; G. 1112; H. 743 b; B. 356.——**λέγοι**: indir. disc. Gl. 622 b, 662; G. 1506; H. 925 b; B. 598 N., 677.——**τὸ αὐτοῦ πάθος**: *i. e.* the attack upon him.——**τε**: *que.* Single *τε*, as in i. 9. 5, iii. 2. 16, as also *τε . . . τε*, rare in Xen. *τε . . . καί* is common.

15. ἐν τούτῳ: *sc. τῷ χρόνῳ, meanwhile.*——**τὰ παλτά**: *his javelins*, as 8. 3. Gl. 551 d; G. 949; H. 658; B. 447. Two spears, which on the

march were carried by an attendant, belonged to the regular equipment of a Persian. Cf. *Cyrop.* i. 2. 6 παλτὰ δύο, ὥστε τὸ μὲν ἀφιέναι, τῷ δ' ἐκ χειρὸς χρῆσθαι, *two javelins, the one to hurl, the other for use hand to hand.*——**τῶν πιστῶν**: *of the faithful, i. e.* Persian royal counsellors. Cf. 8. 1. The gen. is partitive.——**ἦκεν**: cf. § 12 and see on 4. 13. Note the chiastic order of the sentence.

16. οἱ ἄλλοι: appos. to implied *ὑμεῖς*. In case of appos. to a pers. pron. expressed or implied, the art. is regularly used. Cf. ii. 5. 39.——**εἰ . . . συνάψετε**: minatory cond. Gl. 648 b end; G. 1405. For the dat., see Gl. 525; G. 1175; H. 772; B. 376.——**κατακεκόψεσθαι**: fut. pf. implying immediate or decisive action. Gl. 458; G. 1266; H. 855 b; B. 538 N.——**κακῶς . . . ἐχόντων**; *if our affairs are in a bad way.* For prot. thus expressed, see Gl. 590; G. 1413; H. 902; B. 614.——**βάρβαροι**: the insertion of the rel. clause makes the art. unnecessary.——**τῶν παρὰ βασιλεῖ ὄντων**: gen. after comparative.

Page 25.

17. ἀκούσας ταῦτα: for asyndeton, see on 3. 20.——**ἐν ἑαυτῷ ἐγένετο**: *came to himself, ad se rediit.*——**παυσάμενοι**: *i. e.* from their quarrel. ——**κατὰ χώραν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα**: *put their arms in place, i. e.* returned to their quarters.

CHAPTER VI

ENTRANCE INTO BABYLONIA; ORONTAS'S TREACHERY

1. ἐντεῦθεν: resumes the account of the march interrupted at § 3. 10. ——**προϊόντων**: *sc.* *αὐτῶν*. Gl. 590 a.——**ἐφαίνετο ἴχνια**: impf. of repeated occurrence. For sing. verb, see Gl. 496, 498 c; G. 899, 2, 901; H. 604, 607; B. 498.——**ἠκάζετο . . . ὁ στίβος**: *putabantur esse vestigia.* For pers. const., see on λέγεται ἐκδεῖραι 2. 8.——**ὡς**: see on 2. 3.——**οὗτοι**: *i. e.* the ἱππεῖς implied in ἵππων.——**εἴ τι ἄλλο**: cf. 5. 1.——**γένει**: dat. of respect. Gl. 527 b; G. 1182; H. 780; B. 390.——**τὰ πολέμια**: accus. of specification.——**λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις**: *reckoned among the best.* ——**Περσῶν**: part. gen.——**καὶ πρόσθεν**: *even before.*——**πολεμήσας**: *sc.* *αὐτῷ*.——**καταλλαγείς**: cf. συναλλαγέντι 2. 1.

2. δοίη: the opts. remain unchanged from dir. disc. G. 1481, 2.—— **ὅτι**: placed after the hypothetical clause, as *Hellen.* v. 1. 34, vi. 4. 6; *Cyrop.* ii. 4. 8, iii. 1. 3, vii. 5. 31; before it, *Anab.* v. 6. 34.——**κατακάνοι ἄν**: the *ἄν* of hypothet. or pot. opt. retained in indir. disc. κατακαίνω is poetical, occurring in prose only in Xen., who uses the simple verb twice, iii. 2, 39; *Cyrop.* iv. 2. 24.——**τοὺ καιειν ἐπιόντας**: *from attacking and burning.* The ptc. agrees with the understood subj. of καίειν. For the gen. of the artic. inf. after verb of hindering, see Gl. 572 c; G. 1549; H. 963;

B. 643.——**καὶ ποιήσειεν . . . δύνασθαι**: *would make it impossible for them ever.* The force of **ἄν** continues from **ἂν ἕλοι**. G. 1314. **ποιῆσαι ὥστε** as in § 6; *Cyrop.* iii. 2. 29. More usual is the inf. after **ποιῆσαι** without **ὥστε**, as 7. 10, ii. 6. 14.——**βασιλεῖ διαγγεῖλαι**: *carry word through to the king.* Cf. ii. 3. 7, vii. 1. 14. Lat. *internuncium esse.*——**ταῦτα**: subj. of **ἐδόκει.**——**μέρος**: *i. e. a part* of the cavalry of each of the Persian leaders.

3. νομίσας: *having concluded.* Ingressive aor. Gl. 464; G. 1260; H. 841; B. 529.——**ἥξοι, δύνηται**: partial change of mood in indir. disc. G. 1498; B. 674.——**ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους**: see on 1. 6.——**ἀλλά**: refers to a preceding implied neg. clause, *not to receive him as an enemy, but—.*——**τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ ἱππεῦσιν**: *i. e.* of the king.——**ἐκέλευεν**: *sc.* **τὸν βασιλέα.** It governs **φράσαι** as that governs **ὑποδέχεσθαι.**——**τῆς πρόσθεν**: cf. 3. 19 and see on **τῶν οἴκοι** 1. 10.——**δ δέ**: see on 1. 3.

4. ἀναγνούς: from **ἀνά**, *up*, develops the local meaning *back* and the temporal *again*; reading is *knowing* the letters *again.*——**συλλαμβάνει**: as 1. 3.——**ἑπτά**: appos., limiting **τοὺς ἀρίστους.** The number *seven* was sacred among the Persians (*Esther* 1. 10, 14).——**θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**: *order arms*, as 5. 14.

5. ὅς γε: *who indeed*, with a touch of the causal = 'for he indeed.'——**τοῖς ἄλλοις**: *i. e.* the other seven Persians.——**προτιμη-**

Page 26. **θῆναι μάλιστα τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: *to be honored most of the Greeks.* Gl. 507 e. The part. gen. depends on **μάλιστα**, which is further strengthened by **προ—**. See on 4. 14.——**τὴν κρίσιν ὡς ἐγένετο**: prolepsis; see on **τῶν βαρβάρων** 1. 5.——**Ὀρόντα**: Doric gen., as **Ἀβροκόμα** 4. 3.——**ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου**: *began the discussion*, in which others were to take part. Cf. iii. 2. 7 **ἤρχετο τοῦ λόγου**, *began his speech.* For the impf. inf., see Gl. 577 a; G. 1285; H. 853 a; B. 551; the gen., Gl. 510 b; G. 1099; H. 738; B. 356.

6. ὅπως . . . πράξω: aor. subjv. in final clause.——**πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων**: *before gods and men*, as ii. 5. 20. G. 1216, 1; H. 805, 1 a; B. 414, 1.——**τοῦτο**: epanaleptic dem. summing up the foregoing rel. clause.——**τουτονί**: deictic dem. Gl. 210; G. 412; H. 274; B. 147.——**ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ**: for the art., see Gl. 551 c; G. 946, 1; H. 675.——**ὑπήκοον εἶναι ἐμοί**: inf. of purpose. Gl. 565 and a; G. 1532, 1; H. 951; B. 592. For the dat., see Gl. 522, G. 1174; H. 765; B. 376.——**ταχθείς**: *instigated*, as iv. 6. 22, v. 4. 16.——**ὡς ἔφη αὐτός**: for the intens. pron., see Gl. 199 c; G. 989, 1; H. 680, 2; B. 475, 2.——**αὐτόν**: the sent. begins as if **αὐτόν** were to be subj. of **παύσασθαι**, but the insertion of **ὥστε δόξαι τούτῳ** causes a slight anacoluthon, *i. e. made him so that it seemed best to him to stop the war against me.*——**ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι**: see on § 2.——**δεξιάν**: as pledge of faith. Regularly with ellipsis of **χείρ** and without art. Cf. ii. 3. 28, vii. 3. 1.——**μετὰ ταῦτα**: begins the principal

clause with an abrupt change of address from the council to Orontas. ——**ἔστιν**: for accent, see on 5. 3.——**ὅ τι**: cogn. accus. with *ἠδίκησα*. G. 1054, 1076; H. 716 b, 725 a; B. 340. Cf. *τί* and *οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς* in § 8 and see on 3. 10.——**ἀπεκρίνατο**: note the asyndeton, *ἔδοξε* as 3. 20. ——**οὔ**: *sc. ἔστιν*. For accent, see Gl. 18; G. 138, 1; H. 112 a; B. 69, 1.

7. ἠρώτα: *went on asking*. Cf. *ἠρώτησεν* below (§ 8) of a single question.——**οὐκοῦν**: implies affirmative answer. Gl. 668; G. 1603; H. 1015; B. 572, 1.——**οὐδὲν . . . ἀδικούμενος**: concessive clause; cogn. accus.——**ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσούς**: pregnant const. *ἀποστάς* implying also *ἀπελθών*.——**κακῶς ἐποίεις**: Gl. 530 a; G. 1074; H. 712; B. 330.——**ὅ τι ἐδύνω**: *sc. ποιεῖν*. Gl. 365; G. 632; H. 487, 1. *ὅ τι* really refers to *κακόν* implied in *κακῶς*.——**ἔφη**: *said "Yes,"* as vii. 2. 25.——**τὴν σαυτοῦ δύναμιν**: *your own* (lack of) *strength*, as the context shows. Cf. *Mem.* iv. 2. 29.——**τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος**: the Greeks identified the Persian goddess Anahita with their Artemis.——**μεταμέλειν σοι**: representing the impers. *μεταμέλει μοι* of dir. disc. Gl. 520 b; G. 1161.——**πιστά**: including all that is likely to inspire faith and confidence, as oaths, hand-clasp, hostages, etc. Cf. *πίστεις* 2. 26.

8. τί: cogn. accus. with *ἀδικηθείς*, as *οὐδέν* below.——**τὸ τρίτον**: cogn. accus. with *ἐπιβουλεύων*.——**ἐπιβουλεύων μοι φανερὸς γέγονας**: *have you been manifestly plotting against me*. For the pers. const., see on *δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος* 2. 11.——**οὐδὲν ἀδικηθείς**: *sc. ἐπιβουλεύων αὐτῷ φανερὸς γέγονε*.

——**ἦ γὰρ ἀνάγκη**: *i. e.* (*ὁμολογῶ*) *ἦ γὰρ ἀνάγκη* (I confess),
Page 27. *for really it is necessary*.——**ἂν γένοιο**: hypothet. or pot. opt. Gl. 479; G. 1327–29; H. 872; B. 563.——**ὅτι**: introducing dir. quot. Gl. 623; G. 1477; H. 928 b.——**οὐδ' εἰ . . . δόξαιμι**: *not even if I should become so, to you at least should I ever again seem so*. For the form of sentence, cf. ii. 1. 11.

9. πρὸς ταῦτα: *in view of this*. Cf. 3. 19.——**ἀπόφηναι γνώμην**: *express your opinion*. Gl. 500 b; G. 1242, 2; H. 813; B. 504.——**τοῦτον**: observe the contemptuous repetition.——**ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι**: *to put out of the way*. Cf. *ἐκποδὼν εἶναι* ii. 5. 29.——**τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι**: *be on your guard against this man, hunc cavere*. The act. would mean *guard this man*.——**σχολὴ ἢ ἡμῖν**: note the assonance (*η*).——**τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι**: *so far as pertains to this man*. For the abs. inf., see Gl. 569 end; G. 1534, 1535; H. 956 a; B. 642.——**τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς φίλους**: *voluntary friends*, the noun *ἐθελοντάς* in attrib. position being practically an adj.——**εὖ ποιεῖν**: cf. *κακῶς ἐποίεις* in § 7.

10. ἔφη: Clearchus, later, *i. e.* to comrades.——**προσθέσθαι**: abs. *concurred*. Cf. Thuc. vi. 50. 1 *προσέθετο τῇ Ἀλκιβιάδου γνώμῃ*. The original const. is doubtless *ψῆφον προσθέσθαι*, as Thuc. i. 40. 5. Cf. Xen. *Cyrop.* i. 3. 17 *τὴν ψῆφον τίθεμαι*.——**ἔλαβον . . . Ὀρόντην**: *took Orontas by the*

girdle. Gl. 510 b; G. 1100; H. 738 a; B. 356, N. 1.——**ἐπὶ θανάτῳ**: *for death, i. e.* the taking hold of the girdle, which was prescribed by Persian law, was symbolic of the death sentence. Cf. Diod. xvii. 30.——**καὶ οἱ συγγενεῖς**: *even his kinsmen.*——**οἷς προσετάχθη**: *to whom the order had been given, sc.* **ἐξάγειν**. **οἷς** refers to the subject of **ἐξῆγον**.——**οἵπερ**: refers to the subject of **εἶδον**.——**προσεκύνουν**: *did obeisance, kissed the earth before,* an oriental custom consisting in prostration, striking the ground with the forehead, and kissing the earth.——**καίπερ εἰδότες**: *although knowing.* Gl. 593 b; G. 1573; H. 979; B. 656, 2.——**ἐπὶ θάνατον**: *to death,* expressing not purpose, but direction.——**ἄγοιτο**: opt. of indir. disc.

11. τοῦ πιστοτάτου: *the one most in his confidence*; explan. appos. and emphasized by separation from the main word.——**σκηπτούχων**: *wand-bearers,* high officials of the Persian court, chamberlains or adjutants. Cf. English *Usher of the Black Rod.*——**οὔτε . . . οὐδείς, οὐδὲ . . . οὐδείς**: for the emphatic neg., see on 3. 21.——**ὅπως ἀπέθανεν**: prob. he was buried alive in the tent, a Persian custom (Hdt. vii. 114).——**ἔλεγεν, ᾔκαζον**: the chiasmus of the sent. emphasizes the antithesis.——**ἄλλοι ἄλλως**: *alii aliter, some in one way, some in another.*

CHAPTER VII

PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE. AS THE LIKELIHOOD OF A BATTLE LESSENS, CYRUS BECOMES LESS CAUTIOUS

1. ἐντεῦθεν: *i. e.* from Pylae, 5. 5.——**ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται**: *holds a review,* as in 2. 14.——**περὶ μέσας νύκτας**: the pl. with reference to the three watches of the night.——**ἐδόκει**: *sc.* **Κῦρος**, *thought,* his supposition being based doubtless on information brought by scouts and deserters. For **δοκεῖν**, *think,* cf. 8. 2, ii. 2. 14, iii. 1. 12, 2. 17.——**εἰς τὴν . . . ἕω**: *at the following dawn.* **εἰς** with accus. of time looked forward to. G. 1207 b; H. 796 b. Cf. iii. 1. 3, ii. 3. 25, iv. 1. 15, 5. 13. For the Attic second decl. accus. **ἕω**, see Gl. 94; G. 199; H. 161; B. 92.——**μαχούμενον**: fut. ptc. of purpose. See on **λέξοντες** 3. 13.——**τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως**: the post of honor. The Greeks formed the right of Cyrus's entire army, Clearchus occupying the right, Menon the left of the Greek troops.——**τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ**: *his own men.* See on 2. 15.——**διέταξε**: *drew up, disposuit.*

Page 28.

2. ἅμα τῇ . . . ἡμέρᾳ: for **ἅμα** with dat. to express time, see Gl. 525; G. 1176; H. 772 c.——**πῶς ἂν . . . ποιοῖτο**: *how he should make the battle.* For the interrog. adv. introducing indir. ques., see Gl. 621, sec-

ond sentence; G. 1600; H. 700; B. 580. For the hypothet. or pot. opt., see on ἂν γένοιο 6. 8.——**παρῄνει θαρρύνων τοιάδε**: *exhorted and encouraged about as follows.* For τοιάδε, see on 3. 2.

3. **οὐκ . . . βαρβάρων**: *not from lack of barbarians.* Gl. 512; G. 1112; H. 743; B. 356. Note that Cyrus contemptuously calls the barbarians ἄνθρωποι, while he addresses the Greeks as ἄνδρες. H. 625 a. Cf. Lat. use of *homo* and *vir*. Cf. Hdt. vii. 210 ὅτι πολλοὶ μὲν ἄνθρωποι εἶεν, ὀλίγοι δὲ ἄνδρες.——**ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους**: *braver and stronger.*——**διὰ τοῦτο**: emphasizes the cause already stated in νομίζων. Cf. the resumptive μετὰ ταῦτα 6. 11.——**ὅπως οὖν ἔσεσθε**: *see that you be then.* Gl. 638 b; G. 1352; H. 886; B. 583, N. 3.——**τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς . . . καὶ ἧς . . . εὐδαιμονίζω**: *the freedom which you possess and for which I count you happy.* The first ἧς is assimilated from the accus. to the gen. (Gl. 613 b; G. 1031; H. 994; B. 484), the second is gen. of cause (Gl. 509 c; G. 1126; H. 744; B. 366).——**ἀνθ' ὧν . . . πάντων**: assimilation and attraction. Gl. 613 d; G. 1038; H. 995; B. 485. See on 3. 4. In the Persian empire, which was an absolute despotism, the king was regarded as master (δεσπότης), the subjects as slaves (δοῦλοι).

4. **ὅπως . . . ἀγῶνα**: final clause placed first dependent on διδάξω. ἔρχεσθε separates and emphasizes οἷον and ἀγῶνα. Gl. 682 d.——**πολύ**: *sc.* ἐστι.——**ἐπίασιν**: for fut. force, see Gl. 385 b; G. 1257; H. 828 a; B. 524 N.; for plur. after πλῆθος, see Gl. 498 a; G. 900; H. 609; B. 500.——**ταῦτα**: *i. e.* τὸ πλῆθος and κραυγὴ πολλή.——**τὰ ἄλλα**: adv. accus.——**αἰσχυνεῖσθαί μοι δοκῶ**: *methinks I shall be ashamed*, expressing cautiously or modestly what is well known. For the pers. const., see Gl. 574 a; G. 1522, 2; H. 944 a; B. 634.——**οἵους . . . ἀνθρώπους**: *what sort of people you will find our countrymen to be*; the cause of αἰσχυνεῖσθαί, in the form of indir. question, because a verb of considering (λογιζόμενος) is implied. For the ethical dat. ἡμῖν, see Gl. 523 a; G. 1171; H. 770; B. 381. The position at the end and the proximity to ἀνδρῶν emphasize the contemptuous expression ἀνθρώπους. See on § 3.——**ὑμῶν δὲ . . . γενομένων**: *but if you be men and my affairs turn out well.* The gen. abs. expresses cond.——**ὑμῶν**: part. gen.——**τὸν . . . βαυλόμενον**: ptc. used subst., as 3. 9.——**τοῖς οἴκοι**: from οἱ οἴκοι, *to those at home.*——**ζηλωτόν**: *an object of envy*; as μακάριστον 9. 6.——**ποιήσειν**: subj. omitted because it is the same as that of leading verb. G. 895, 2; H. 940; B. 630.——**ἑλέσθαι**: πολλούς is subj., τὰ παρ' ἐμοί is obj.——**τῶν οἴκοι**: from τὰ οἴκοι, *res domesticae.*

5. **πιστὸς δέ**: *in the confidence of Cyrus*; without preceding μέν, as in § 9. Gaulites had perhaps been instigated by Cyrus to speak thus. Cf. 3. 13.——**καὶ μήν**: *yes, but*, as iii. 1. 17. Gl. 671 a.——**διὰ τὸ . . . προσιόντος**: *on account of being in such a crisis of danger that is*

approaching. For the prep. with artic. infin., see Gl. 514; G. 1546; H. 959; B. 638. For the part. gen. dependent on **τῷ τοιούτῳ**, see Gl. 507 c; G. 1088; H. 728 a; B. 355.——**ἂν δὲ . . . τι**: *and if any*
Page 29. *good luck should befall.* **τι** refers with purposed indefiniteness to the undertaking of Cyrus.——**οὐ μεμνήσεσθαι**: the fut. pf. as simple fut., just as **μέμνημαι** has present force. For **οὐ** with inf. in indir. disc., see Gl. 577 b; G. 1611; H. 1024; B. 431, 2.——**ἔνιοι δέ**: *sc. φασί.*——**οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῆο . . . ἀποδοῦναι**: less vivid fut. cond. in indir. disc., the opt. of the protasis remaining unchanged and the inf. with **ἄν** of apodosis representing opt. with **ἄν** of dir. disc. (Gl. 577 c; G. 1494; H. 946, 964 a; B. 672). Cf. 6. 8 **οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην κτέ.** For the form **μεμνῆο**, see Gl. verb-list **μιμνήσκω**; G. 734, 1; H. 465 a; B. 227, N.

6. ἀκούσας ταῦτα: for the asyndeton, see on 3. 20.——**ἀλλ'**: often begins a reply in opposition to something said before. Cf. ii. 1. 4, 5. 16.——**ἔστι μὲν . . . μέχρι οὗ**: *pertinet ad. μέν, indeed,* related to **μήν**, and, like it, intensive in signification. Gl. 671, 669 end. For accent of **ἔστι**, see Gl. 384 b (1); G. 144, 5; H. 480, 2; B. 262, 1.——**ἡμῖν**: dat. of possession. Gl. 524 a; G. 1173; H. 768; B. 379. The reference is to Cyrus and Artaxerxes, or perhaps it is *pluralis maiestatis,* as **ἡμᾶς** in § 7.——**μέχρι οὗ**: lit. *up to where.*——**τὰ δ' . . . πάντα**: *all intervening places.* Cf. 4. 4 **ἅπαν τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν.** With **σατραπεύω** the gen. would naturally be expected, as iii. 4. 31; *Hellen.* iii. 1. 10.

7. τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους: for the art. with poss. pron., see Gl. 551 c; G. 946, 1; H. 675.——**τούτων ἐγκρατεῖς**: Gl. 516 a; G. 1140; H. 753 b; B. 357.——**μὴ οὐκ ἔχω ὅ τι δῶ**: *ne non habeam quod dem,* obj. clause after verb of fearing. Gl. 611 b; G. 1364; H. 887, 1033; B. 594. **δῶ** is delib. subjv. in indir. ques.——**ἱκανοὺς οἷς δῶ**: prob. on analogy of **δῶ** just above, since here there is no indirect question. GMT. 572.——**ὑμῶν τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: the pron. depends on **ἑκάστῳ, τῶν Ἑλλήνων** in appos. with **ὑμῶν.**——**καὶ στέφανον χρυσοῦν**: *a golden crown also, i. e.* in addition to all else promised. Golden crowns were not infrequent rewards of great services in Greece, as medals are given to-day.

8. οἱ δέ: *i. e.* the **στρατηγοί** and **λοχαγοί** of the Greeks whom Cyrus had summoned (§ 2).——**οἱ στρατηγοί**: this doubtless means that they now went individually to Cyrus to ask, his previous promises having been general.——**σφίσιν**: indir. reflexive. Gl. 197; G. 987; H. 685; B. 471.——**ἐμπιμπλὰς ἁπάντων τὴν γνώμην**: *satisfying the expectation of all, i. e.* of each individual. Cf. *Hellen.* vi. 1. 15 **ἐκπλῆσαι τὰς γνώμας αὐτῶν.** On the form **ἐμπιμπλάς**, see Gl. verb-list **πίμπλημι**; G. 795; H. 534, 7 a; B. 729.

9. μὴ μάχεσθαι: *i. e.* not in person.——**οἴει γάρ**: *do you think then?*

γάρ refers doubtless to something in Cyrus's reply which Xen. does not state. Gl. 672 a.——**Νὴ Δία**: affirmative oath, Gl. 532; G. 1067; H. 723; B. 344.——**ἐμὸς ἀδελφός**: *a brother of mine.* Gl. 551 c; G. 946, 1; H. 675.——**ταῦτα**: *this*, prob. with a gesture, indicating the empire described in § 6.

10. δή: refers, as does the art. τῇ, to ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖται in § 1. Gl. 671 c (2).——**ἐγένετο**: *amounted to.*——**ἀσπὶς . . . τετρακοσία**: 10,400 *shields*, for shield-bearers. Cf. Hdt. v. 30 ὀκτακισχιλίην ἀσπίδα, Eur. *Phoen.* 78 πολλὴν ἀθροίσας ἀσπίδα, 442 μυρίαν ἄγων λόγχην. Cf. our expression "a thousand *horse*," which is freq. in Greek, *e. g. Cyrop.* iv. 6. 2 ἵππον ἔχω δισχιλίαν. The discrepancy between the total here and that previously given (2. 9, 4. 3) cannot be fully explained.——

Page 30. **ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα**: described 8. 10.——**ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσι**: see on 2. 9. The art. is used with cardinals to state the number generally: *about, etc.* (esp. after ἀμφί, περί, εἰς, ὑπέρ). Cf. ii. 6. 15, 30.

11. ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες: doubtless exaggerated. Ctesias, the physician of Artaxerxes, says (Plut. *Artox.* 13) 400,000, which is prob. more nearly correct.——**ἄλλοι**: *besides.* See on ἄλλο 5. 5.

12. τοῦ: belongs to στρατεύματος, as βασιλέως referring to the king of Persia needs no article. **[καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες]**: these words, which are very generally bracketed by the editors, following Weiske, were doubtless a marginal explanation of ἄρχοντες.——**τριάκοντα μυριάδων**: *sc.* ἄρχων.——**Ἀβροκόμας**: cf. 4. 5.——**τῆς μάχης**: gen. on account of comparison implied in ὑστέρησε. Gl. 509 b; G. 1120; H. 749; B. 364.——**ἡμέραις πέντε**: degree of difference, Gl. 526 c; G. 1184; H. 781; B. 388. Cf. 2. 25.——**ἐκ Φοινίκης ἐλαύνων**: causal, although, as he was already in front of Cyrus in 4. 18, he might, of course, have been in the battle.

13. ἤγγελλον πρὸς Κῦρον: prep. and accus. for dat., as ii. 5. 25 λέξω τοὺς πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγοντας, *Cyrop.* vi. 2. 39 πρὸς ἐμὲ σημαινέτω.——**τῶν πολεμίων**: part. gen. dependent on οἵ.——**ταὐτὰ ἤγγελλον**: note the chiastic arrangement of the whole sentence, the most important words coming first and again last, while the emphasis is heightened by the juxtaposition of πρὸ τῆς μάχης and μετὰ τὴν μάχην. Gl. 682 a, b.

14. συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι: *with his army drawn up* in battle array. Dat. of manner, as ἱδρυῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ 8. 1, though it might be more strictly defined as dat. of military accompaniment (Gl. 525 a; G. 1190; H. 774; B. 392, 1).——**κατὰ μέσον τὸν σταθμόν**: *at the middle of the day's march.* For κατά cf. 5. 10, and for μέσον, see on 2. 7.——**τάφρος ὀρυκτή**: *a ditch dug*, not a natural trench or gully.——**τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυιαί**: τὸ εὖρος is limiting accus.; ὀργυιαί grammatically in

appos. with τάφρος, where the gen. might have been used, as ποδῶν in § 15. It is possible to take τὸ εὖρος as nom. with ὀργυιαί as pred.

15. ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας: *for twelve parasangs.* G. 1210, 3 b; H. 799, 3 b; B. 408, 3. Cf. *Od.* xi. 577 ἐπ' ἐννέα κεῖτο πέλεθρα, *Hellen.* iv. 8. 38 ἐπὶ πολὺ ἐκτεταμένον, vi. 6. 36 ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας (temporal).——**μέχρι τοῦ Μηδίας τείχους**: so called because built originally by one of the last Babylonian kings as a protection against the Medes on the upper Tigris. The wall was at right angles to the river, starting from near Pylae, and the ditch was cut obliquely across to the wall. [**ἔνθα . . . ἔπεισιν**]: evidently an interpolation, and so bracketed by all the editors.——**αἱ διώρυχες**: *sc.* εἰσί.——**ἑκάστη**: appos. to the implied subj. of διαλείπουσι.

16. πάροδον: cf. 4. 4. Possibly Cyrus's rapid march surprised the king and hence the trench was abandoned when all but complete.——**ἀντὶ ἐρύματος**: cf. Thuc. ii. 2. 3 ὧν ἀντὶ τείχους ἦ, Liv. xxxi.

Page 31. 39 *ut pro muro essent.*——**προσελαύνοντα**: pred. or suppl. ptc. in indir. disc. See on βουλευομένους 1. 7.——**παρῆλθε καὶ ἐγένοντο**: change of number, as in iv. 2. 22. With local adverbs and prepositions γενέσθαι often means *arrive, come.*

17. ταύτῃ μέν: the correlative, if not merely implied in the context, must be found in τῇ δε τρίτῃ § 20.——**ὑποχωροῦντων**: antithesis to ἐμαχέσατο, hence the emphatic position.——**ἦσαν**: plur. verb with neut. plur. subj., as ἤγοντο in § 20. See on 4. 4.

18. τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην: from Ambracia (now Arta) in Epirus.——**θυόμενος**: *offering sacrifice.*——**μαχεῖται**: mood of dir. disc. retained. See on ποιήσουσιν 4. 13.——**δέκα ἡμερῶν**: gen. of time within which. Gl. 515; G. 1136; H. 759; B. 359.——**οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται**: *he will not fight at all then.*——**εἰ . . . οὐ μαχεῖται**: οὐ for regular μή in prot. because the neg. expression is incorporated as a single idea (G. 1383; H. 1021; B. 600 N.), or perhaps οὐ μαχεῖται is consciously repeated by Cyrus from Silanus. For the form of cond., see Gl. 648 a; G. 1405; GMT. 447.——**ἐὰν δ' ἀληθεύσῃς**: *but if you shall prove to have spoken the truth.* Gl. 650 c; G. 1403; H. 898 c; B. 604. The apod. is δώσειν understood.——**ἀπέδωκεν**: *paid.* See on ἀπῄτουν 2. 11.——**αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι**: the art. with dem. force.

19. ἐκώλυε: impf of attempted action. Gl. 459 a; G. 1255; H. 832; B. 527. For inf. after verb of hindering, see Gl. 572 b; G. 1549; H. 963; B. 643.——**ἔδοξε**: pers. const. Gl. 574 a; G. 1522, 2; H. 944 a; B. 634.——**ἀπεγνωκέναι τοῦ μάχεσθαι**: *to have given up the intention of fighting.* Cf. *Hellen.* vii. 5. 7 τοὺς Ἀθηναίους τὸ μὲν κατὰ γῆν πορεύεσθαι ἀπεγνωκέναι. For the const. of the gen. of the artic. inf., see Gl. 575; G. 1547; H. 959; B. 639.——**ἠμελημένως μᾶλλον**: adv. from pf. pass. ptc. Cf. διεσκεμμένως μᾶλλον *Oec.* 7. 18; μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως ii. 4. 24.

20. τὸ δὲ πολύ: *the greater part.* See on 4. 13.——**αὐτῷ**: dat. of disadvantage. Gl. 523 and a; G. 1165; H. 767; B. 378. Cf. ii. 4. 3.——**ἀνατεταραγμένον**: *in disorder.* Cf. Plato *Phaed.* 88 c *ἀναταράξαι.*——**τοῖς στρατιώταις**: dat. of advantage.

CHAPTER VIII

BATTLE OF CUNAXA. DEATH OF CYRUS

1. καὶ ἤδη . . . ἡνίκα: *etiam . . . cum.* Cf. § 8, ii. 1. 7. For the indef. subj., see Gl. 493 a; G. 897, 3; H. 602 d; B. 305.——**ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν**: *about full-market, i. e.* about 9–12 A. M. Cf. Suidas *ὥρα τετάρτη ἢ πέμπτη ἢ ἕκτη. τότε γὰρ μάλιστα πλήθει ἡ ἀγορά.* The other three general divisions of the day that Xen. makes are *πρῴ* (ii. 2. 1), *early morn, μέσον ἡμέρας, i. e.* 12–2 P. M. (8. 8), and **δείλη**, *afternoon, i. e.* 2–6 P. M. (8. 8).——**σταθμός**: *station, halting-place.* See on 2. 5.——**ἔμελλε καταλύειν**: *sc.* **Κῦρος**, *was to halt, i. e.* for breakfast (*πρὸς ἄριστον*). Cf. 10. 19. Gl. 570 b; G. 1254; H. 846 a; B. 533. *καταλύειν*, lit. *unloose, unyoke* (*sc.* *ἵππους*).——**τῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον**: part. gen.——**προφαίνεται**: *comes in sight.*——**ἀνὰ κράτος**: *with all his might, at full speed,* as 10. 15, iv. 3. 20. Cf. *κατὰ κράτος* § 19.——**ἱδροῦντι τῷ ἵππῳ**: *with his horse in a sweat,* as *Hellen.* iv. 5. 7; *Cyrop.* i. 4. 28. Dat. of manner.

Page 32. Cf. *συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατεύματι* 7. 14.——**ἑλληνικῶς**: cf. *ἑλληνιστί* vii. 6. 8.——**σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ**: for the usual simple dat. of accomp., as in *Hellen.* iv. 5. 5, 11. 12, 8. 23.——**ὡς εἰς μάχην**: *as if for battle.* Cf. *ὡς εἰς κύκλωσιν* 8. 23.

2. ἔνθα δή: see on 5. 8.——**τάραχος**: except in Xen. not in Attic, for *ταραχή.*——**αὐτίκα**: first for emphasis, and modifying *ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι*, which comes last for the same reason.——**ἐδόκουν**: *thought,* as in 7. 1.——**καὶ πάντες δέ**: *itemque omnes, i. e.* the Asiatics. Cf. §§ 18, 22.——**σφίσιν**: indir. reflexive, as in 7. 8.——**ἐπιπεσεῖσθαι**: *sc.* *τὸν βασιλέα.*

3. ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος: note five examples in this one sent. of art. like poss. pron. Gl. 551 d; G. 949; H. 658; B. 447.——**τὰ παλτά**: two were carried into battle by each Persian horseman.——**ἐξοπλίζεσθαι**: cf. *ἐξοπλισία* 7. 10. How carelessly they were marching is seen in 7. 20.——**ἕκαστον**: accus. subj. of *καθίστασθαι*, though just before occurs the dat. with *παρήγγειλεν.*

4. σὺν πολλῇ σπουδῇ: any other prose writer would prob. have used merely the dat. of manner.——**τὰ δεξιά**: *sc.* *μέρη, the right* parts.——**τοῦ κέρατος**: *of the wing,* including the whole Greek force, which formed the right wing of the entire army of Cyrus.——**ἐχόμενος**: *next* (*sc.* Κλεάρχου),

Gl. 510 b; G. 1099; H. 738; B. 356. Cf. *ἐχόμενοι* in § 9.——**τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ**: *sc. στρατεύματος*, as in 4. 13.

5. τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ: part. gen.——**ἱππεῖς Παφλαγόνες**: cf. *πελταστὰς Θρᾷκας* 2. 9.——**εἰς χιλίους**: see on *εἰς* 2. 3.——**παρὰ Κλέαρχον**: see on *παρά* 3. 7.——**ἔστησαν**: *took their stand.*——**καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν**: subj. also of *ἔστησαν*. The Paphlagonian horsemen and the Greek peltasts were to follow up the expected victory of the Greek hoplites.——**ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ**: as *ἐν δεξιᾷ* 5. 1. Cf. *ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου* § 9, *ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ* § 20.——**ὁ Κύρου ὕπαρχος**: here, as in iv. 4. 4, of the lieutenant-governor of a satrap; in 2. 20 under-officer in a more general sense; in Hdt. regularly *ὕπαρχος βασιλέως*.

6. Κῦρος δὲ καὶ ἱππεῖς: Rehdantz's view is perhaps right, that the intended predicate is *εἰς μάχην καθίσταντο*, but that a slight anacoluthon arises in that the explanatory *Κῦρος δὲ ψιλήν* necessitated by *πάντες πλὴν Κύρου* attracts this pred. in the singular. Otherwise it will be necessary to understand, as most editors do, *ἔστησαν* from § 5, supplying, perhaps inserting, *κατὰ τὸ μέσον*.——**ὅσον**: *about, quantum*. Cf. *ὅσον ὀκτὼ σταδίους* iii. 4. 3, *ὅσον παρασάγγην* iv. 5. 10, and see on *ὡς* 2. 3.——**αὐτοί**: the antithesis is *οἱ δ' ἵπποι* in § 7, so that strictly the order should have been *αὐτοὶ μέν*.——**πάντες πλὴν Κύρου**: the exception applies only to the helmets, as the following explanatory clause *Κῦρος δὲ ψιλὴν κτέ* shows.——**ψιλήν**: *unprotected*, not bare, *i. e.* with tiara (Ctesias, in Plut. *Artox.* 11) instead of helmet. An oriental never appeared bareheaded. Cf. *γυμνή, lightly clad*, 10. 3.

7. προμετωπίδια: *frontlets.*——**προστερνίδια**: *breast-plates.*——**μαχαίρας**: *sabres*, with straight back and curved edge, for cutting; whereas the *ξίφος*, two-edged and straight, was for thrusting.

8. καὶ ἦδη τε ἦν: as in § 1 and ii. 1. 7.——**μέσον ἡμέρας**: as in iv. 4. 1, vii. 3. 44. See on § 1.——**ἡνίκα**: Gl. 630; H. 1055, 3. Same as *μεσημβρία Hellen.* v. 3. 1.——**δείλη**: in Xen. the general word for afternoon, not distinguished as *πρωΐη* (Hdt. viii. 6) and *ὀψίη*

Page 33. (Hdt. vii. 167).——**ὥσπερ μελανία τις**: *as it were a kind of blackness*——**ἐπὶ πολύ**: *for a great distance*, as iv. 2. 13. Cf. *ἐπὶ πάμπολυ* vii. 5. 12.——**τάχα δή**: *soon*, *δή* emphasizing *τάχα*. Gl. 671 c (1). Cf. iv. 7. 24, v. 7. 21.——**χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε**: *there was a glitter of bronze.* Cf. *Cyrop.* vi. 4. 1, *ἤστραπτε χαλκῷ πᾶσα ἡ στρατιά*. The force of *τις* as with *μελανία* above. Cf. also *ἀετόν τινα χρυσοῦν* 10. 12.

9. λευκοθώρακες: *i. e.* prob. wearing *θώρακας λινοῦς*, as in iv. 7. 15.——**Τισσαφέρνης**: the asyndeton, perhaps, because the explanation is parenthetical.——**ἐχόμενοι**: see on § 4.——**κατὰ ἔθνη**: *by nations.* For this Persian custom of arraying troops, cf. Hdt. vii. 60. *κατά* distrib. as in 2. 16.——**ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων**: *i. e.* solid square. For the hollow

square, cf. iii. 2. 36.——**ἐπορεύετο**: sing. in agreement with *ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος*, which is in distrib. appos. with *πάντες οὗτοι*.

10. ἅρματα: *sc.* *ἐπορεύετο*, or perhaps *ἐπορεύοντο*, since *εἶχον* just below is plur.——**διαλείποντα συχνόν**: *at a considerable interval.* *συχνόν* is cogn. accus. Cf. *διαλείπουσι παρασάγγην* 7. 15.——**καλούμενα**: *so-called.* See on 2. 13.——**εἶχον**: plur. as *ἐντυγχάνοιεν*, though the subj. is neut. plur. See on *ἦσαν* 4. 4 and 7. 17.——**εἰς πλάγιον**: *sideways.* Cf. *Cyrop.* iv. 1. 18 *ἐκ πλαγίου*.——**εἰς γῆν βλέποντα**: *directed towards the earth*, lit. 'looking.' Cf. *Mem.* iii. 8. 9 *ἐν ταῖς πρὸς μεσημβρίαν βλεπούσαις οἰκίαις*.——**ὡς διακόπτειν**: inf. of purpose, as *ὡς συναντῆσαι* in § 15. Gl. 566 b; G. 1452; H. 953 a; B. 595 N. On *ὡς* for *ὥστε*, see on 5. 10——**ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν**: gen. cond. with *εἶχον . . . ὡς διακόπτειν* as apod.——**ἡ δὲ γνώμη ἦν ὡς . . . ἐλῶντα**: *the intention was to drive into, etc.* The ptcs. follow in the nom., as if *γνώμην εἶχον* (*sc.* *τὰ ἅρματα*) had preceded. For *ὡς* with fut. ptc. of purpose, see on *ὡς ἀποκτενῶν* 1. 3.

11. ὃ μέντοι . . . εἶπεν: cf. 7. 4. *ὅ*, *what* (relative), repeated in *τοῦτο* at the end.——**τοῖς Ἕλλησι**: an obj. common to two verbs is usually expressed only once and construed with the nearer. See on 4. 8.——**ἐψεύσθη τοῦτο**: *he was deceived in this.* Cf. *τοῦτο οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν* ii. 2. 13. *τοῦτο* is really cogn. accus. retained with the pass. Cf. v. 7. 11 *εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἢ αὐτὸς ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἂν οἴεται ταῦτα ἢ ἄλλον ἐξαπατῆσαι ταῦτα, λέγων διδασκέτω*.——**σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυστόν**: *as silently as possible.* *ἀνυστόν* = *δυνατόν* (cf. *ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα* 3. 15) is rare in Att. Cf. *Resp. Laced.* 1. 3 *σίτῳ ᾗ ἀνυστὸν μετριωτάτῳ*.——**ἐν ἴσῳ**: *in equal step*, as *Cyrop.* vii. 1. 4 *ἐν ἴσῳ ἕπεσθαι*. Cf. *στράτευμα ὁμαλῶς προσῄει* in § 14.

12. αὐτός: *in person.*——**ἐβόα**: *shouted*, with the const. of *κελεύω*. See on *ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν* 3. 8.——**κατὰ μέσον**: *against the center.* Cf. *καθ' αὑτούς* 10. 4, 5.——**ὅτι . . . εἴη**: implied indir. disc. in causal sent. Gl. 622 b, 662; G. 1506; H. 925 b; B. 677.——**κἂν . . . νικῶμεν**: *si vicerimus.* As *νικῶ* has a perf. force, the subjv. in prot. = fut. pf.——**ἡμῖν πεποίηται**: dat. of agent. Gl. 524 b; G. 1238, 1; H. 769; B. 380. Pf. for fut. pf. in apod., see G. 1264; H. 848; B. 537.

13. ὁρῶν, ἀκούων: concessive.——**τὸ μέσον στῖφος**: *the mass at the center, i. e.* the *ἑξακισχίλιοι ἱππεῖς* of 7. 11.——**Κύρου**: gen. of source. Gl. 509 a; G. 1103; H. 742 c; B. 365.——**ἔξω ὄντα**: pred. or suppl. ptc. in indir. disc. Gl. 586 a; G. 1588; H. 982.——**περιῆν**: *was superior*, as 9. 24. Cf. *περιγενόμενος* 1. 10.——**μέσον**: often without article, as *δεξιόν*, *εὐώνυμον*.——**ἀλλ' ὅμως**: resumptive after the parenthetical
Page 34. sentence. *τοσοῦτον γὰρ . . . ἦν*.——**μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέρωθεν**: *that he might be surrounded from both quarters.* Opt. depending on impf. ptc. Gl. 611 c; G. 1378; H. 887; B. 594.——**ὅτι αὐτῷ μέλει**: *that he was taking care*, the mood of dir. disc. retained. Gl. 624 a;

G. 1161; H. 764, 2; B. 674.——**ὅπως καλῶς ἔχοι**: *that it would be well*, obj. clause, with pres. opt. for fut. ind. Gl. 638 c § 3; G. 1374; H. 885 b; B. 593, 1. Plut. *Artox.* 8. says of Clearchus's neglect of Cyrus's order, **τὸ πᾶν διέφθειρεν.**

14. τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα: *i. e.* of the king.——**ὁμαλῶς**: *evenly* = **ἐν ἴσῳ** in § 11. Cf. Thuc. v. 70 **ὁμαλῶς μετὰ ῥυθμοῦ βαίνοντες.**——**ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ**: *in the same spot.*——**συνετάττετο . . . προσιόντων**: *was forming its line from those still coming up.*——**οὐ πάνυ πρὸς . . . στρατεύματι**: lit. *not quite at the army itself*, *i. e.* at a little distance. Cf. **οὐ πάνυ τι** vi. 1. 26.——**κατεθεᾶτο . . . ἀποβλέπων**: *was surveying the ranks looking in both directions.* Cf. *Cyrop.* iii. 2. 1 **κατεθεᾶτο σκοπῶν.** The adv. **ἑκατέρωσε** is explained by **εἵς τε τοὺς κτέ.**

15. ἰδών: subord. to **πελάσας ἤρετο** = **ἐπέλασε καὶ ἤρετο.** See on **ὑπολαβών** i. 7.——**Ξενοφῶν**: first mention in the *Anabasis.*——**ὡς συναντῆσαι**: see on **ὡς διακόπτειν** in § 10.——**εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι**: *if he had any orders.* Opt. of indir. ques. Gl. 655, 661; G. 1605; H. 1016; B. 581.——**ἐπιστήσας**: *bringing to a stand* (*sc.* **τὸν ἵππον**). Cf. ii. 4. 25 **ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἑαυτοῦ στράτευμα**, *Oec.* 16. 7 **καταστήσαντες** *sc.* **τὴν ναῦν.**——**ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ . . . καλά**: *that the* (regular) *sacrifice and the* (special) *propitiatory offering were favorable.* **ἱερά** are the regular ordinary sacrifices, **σφάγια** the special offerings made in the face of approaching danger, often to propitiate some adverse influence on the part of a divinity (cf. iv. 5. 4), and at the ceremony of a solemn oath or compact. See Stengel, *Hermes* xxi. 307 ff., xxv. 321 ff.; xxxi. 478 ff.

16. θορύβου: gen. of thing with **ἤκουσε.** Cf. **ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος** iv. 2. 8; **θορύβου ἤσθοντο** vii. 2. 18. The pred. ptc. **ἰόντος** is not in indir. disc. Gl. 511 a, 586 a; G. 1582, 1583; B. 661, N. 1.——**τίς . . . εἴη**: the direct interrog. retained here, but below **ὅ τι.** See on 4. 13. Note too the interchange of moods in indir. disc. in this passage.——**σύνθημα**: *watchword*, given out before a battle by the general to the wing-man on the right (**παραγγέλλει**) and passed along the ranks from man to man to the extreme left (**παρέρχεται**), whence it was passed in like manner back (**δεύτερον**) to the starting-point. Cf. *Cyrop.* iii. 3. 58.——**καὶ ὅς**: *and he*, survival of the old demonstrative **ὅς**, occurring in Attic only in such connection. Gl. 560; G. 1023, 2; H. 655 a; B. 144 a.——**ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει**: naturally, since the **σύνθημα** should have started from Cyrus. Note indic. of surprised question with opt. right after.

17. ἀλλά: *well*, marking sudden transition from surprise to acceptance. See on 7. 6.——**δέχομαι**: *accipio*, regular expression for acceptance of a favorable omen. Cf. Hdt. ix. 91 **δέκομαι τὸν οἰωνὸν** (*sc.* **Ἡγησίστρατον**).——**τοῦτο**: *i. e.* **σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη.**——**τὼ φάλαγγε**: note the fem. form (**τώ**) and the dual, uncommon in Att. prose.——**ἐπαιάνιζον**: a paean

was sung before a battle to Ares, after a battle to Apollo.——**ἀντίοι**: pred. adj. for adv. See on *προτέρα* 2. 25.

18. **πορευομένων**: *sc. αὐτῶν, as they advanced.* See on *προιόντων* 2. 17. ——**ἐξεκύμαινέ τι τῆς φάλαγγος**: *sc. μέρος, a part of the line waved out, i. e. surged forward.*——**τὸ ὑπολειπόμενον**: *the part that was being left behind.*——**δρόμῳ θεῖν**: *to go at a run.*——**ἐφθέγξαντο . . . ἔθεον**: observe the chiasmus.——**οἷον**: *as*, originally cogn. accus.

Page 35. ——**τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἐλελίζουσι**: *they raise the war-cry* (cry *ἐλελεῦ*) *to Enyalius*; a sort of "Confederate yell." This was a name of the battle-god Ares. The verb *ἐλελίζειν* is onomatopœic. Cf. *Cyrop.* vii. 1. 26 *ἐξῆρχε παιᾶνα, συνεπήχησε δὲ πᾶς ὁ στρατός· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἐπηλάλαξαν, he raised the paean and the whole army joined in the chant; and after this they shouted the battle-cry to Enyalius.*——**καὶ πάντες δέ**: see on § 2.——**ἐδούπησαν**: the word is onomatopœic and poetical. Cf. the Homeric *δούπησεν δὲ πεσών.* Cf. iv. 5. 18 *τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἔκρουσαν.*

19. **πρὶν δὲ . . . ἐξικνεῖσθαι**: *before an arrow could reach them.* Cf. iii. 3. 15, 4. 4, iv. 3. 18, 29. For the const., see on *πρὶν εἶναι* 4. 13.——**κατὰ κράτος**: see on *ἀνὰ κράτος* in § 1. Where a distinction is to be made, notice that *ἀνὰ κράτος* is up to one's absolute limit with no idea of reserve, as in the 100 yards dash; *κατὰ κράτος*, conserving the strength with a definite object in view till the end is reached, as in the mile run.——**ἐβόων**: see on § 12.

20. **ἐφέροντο**: *ferebantur*, pl. verb. with neut. pl. subj., possibly because Xen. thinks of the individual wagons. But see on *ἦσαν* 4. 4.——**τὰ μέν, τὰ δέ**: in part. appos. to *τὰ ἅρματα.* G. 914; H. 624 d; B. 319. ——**κενὰ ἡνιόχων**: for gen. with adj. of want, see Gl. 512; G. 1140; H. 753 c; B. 357.——**ἐπεὶ προΐδοιεν, διίσταντο**: *stood apart, whenever they saw them in front.* Past gen. cond. Gl. 629; G. 1431, 2; H. 914, B. 2; B. 625.——**ἔστι δ' ὅστις**: where *ἦν* might have been expected. See on *ἦν οὗς* 5. 7.——**ἐκπλαγείς**: *panic-struck, frightened out of* his wits.——**καὶ . . . μέντοι**: *and yet.* Cf. 9. 6, 29.——**οὐδὲν . . . οὐδέ**: strengthened negation. Cf. *οὐδὲ . . . οὐδεὶς οὐδέν* just below, and see on *οὐδενί* 2. 26.——**οὐδὲ . . . δέ**: the neg. of *καὶ . . . δέ.* Cf. Isae. iii. 50 *οἶμαι οὐδ' ἂν τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐκεῖνον οὐδ' ἄλλον δὲ οὐδένα οὕτως εὐήθη γενέσθαι, I think not that one at all and not even any other would have been so simple.*——**τις**: a single man, as *ἔστιν ὅστις* above.

21. **ὁρῶν**: temporal, more vividly descriptive than *ἰδών.*——**νικῶντας, διώκοντας**: suppl. ptcs. in indir. disc. See on *βουλευομένους* 1. 7.——**τὸ καθ' αὑτούς**: *the part opposite themselves.*——**ἡδόμενος**: concessive.——**οὐδ' ὡς**: *not even under these circumstances.* This dem. *ὡς* (= *οὕτως*), esp. after *καί, οὐδέ, μηδέ*, is a survival in prose from the Epic. The Attic

prose word is regularly *οὕτως*.——**συνεσπειραμένην**: circumstantial ptc. of manner. See on *ἐκκεκαλυμμένας* 2. 16.——**ποιήσει**: mood. of dir. disc. retained in obj. clause.——**ᾔδει αὐτὸν ὅτι μέσον ἔχοι**: *knew that he held the center.* For the proleptic accus. in leading clause, see on *τὸν Κῦρον* 1. 3. A pred. or suppl. ptc. (*ἔχοντα*, Gl. 586 a; G. 1588; H. 982; B. 661) might have been used for *ὅτι . . . ἔχοι*.

22. ἡγοῦνται: abs. *command.* This sentence is a general statement of the custom of oriental commanders: they occupy the center when in command of an army, for the reasons given, *νομίζοντες*, *because they believe.*——**ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ**: *in the safest* place. Cf. *ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ* iii. 2. 36.——**ἢν ᾖ . . . καὶ εἴ τι . . . χρῄζοιεν**: *if their force be on either side of them and in case they should want to pass any order along.* *ἢν* with subjv. of a case assumed as real, *εἰ* with opt. of a case assumed as possible.——**ἡμίσει χρόνῳ**: *ἐν* is usual when *χρόνος* has an attrib. G. 1193; H. 782 a. But cf. *τῷ πρώτῳ χρόνῳ Hellen.* ii. 3. 15.——**ἂν αἰσθάνεσθαι**: see on **ἂν εἶναι** 3. 6.

23. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὴ τότε: *and the king accordingly at this time.* *καί* introduces a specific instance and *δή* adds emphasis.——**ὅμως**: *still* after the concessive *ἔχων*. Cf. *ὅμως* in § 13.——**ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου**: *from the opposite side, ex adverso.*——**αὐτοῦ**: separated for emphasis from its governing word (*ἔμπροσθεν*).——**ἐπέκαμπτεν . . . κύκλωσιν**: *bent towards* (*i. e.* wheeled about) *as if to encircle* them. Cf. *ὡς εἰς μάχην* § 1.

24. ὄπισθεν γενόμενος: *getting in the rear, sc. Βασιλεύς.*——**ἀντίος**: pred. adj. = adv. Gl. 546; G. 926; H. 619; B. 425.——**ἑξακοσίοις**: cf. § 6.——**τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους**: cf. 7. 11. It is placed last to contrast more strongly with *τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις*.——**αὐτὸς τῇ ἑαυτοῦ**: Gl. 558; G. 997; H. 688; B. 473.

Page 36.

25. εἰς τὸ διώκειν: for the art. inf., see on *διὰ τὸ εἶναι* 7. 5.——**ὁμοτράπεζοι**: *convictores*, as iii. 2. 4. Cf. *συντράπεζοι* 9. 31; *σύνδειπνον* ii. 5. 27. They ate in the king's presence (in a room in front of the king's, not at his table), were his immediate attendants, and were faithful unto death.

26. τὸ ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον στῖφος: the *ὁμοτράπεζοι* doubtless. In § 13 *στῖφος* is applied to the *ἑξακισχίλιοι*, who had now fled.——**ἠνέσχετο**: double augment, as *ἠνείχοντο* v. 6. 34. Gl. 268 d; G. 544; H. 361 a; B. 175 N.——**παίει**: *thrusts.* Acc. to Ctesias (Plut. *Artox.* 11) *ἠκόντισε*.——**Κτησίας**: from Cnidus in Caria, who was at the Persian court seventeen years, and wrote a Persian history in twenty-three books, of which only fragments survive.——**καὶ ἰᾶσθαι . . . φησι**: *and he says that he himself healed* the wound. For the impf. inf., see Gl. 577 a; G. 1285; H. 853 a; B. 646. For the nom. *αὐτός*, see on 3. 8. Gl. 571; G. 927; H. 940 b; B. 631.

27. ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμόν: the accus. because motion is implied.——

μαχόμενοι κτέ: as if a clause in part. appos. were to follow, but the indir. ques. causes a change of const.——**ἀπέθνησκον, ἀπέθανε**: impf. of repeated occurrences (deaths), aor. of a single event.——**ἔκειντο**: *lay dead, iacebant.* So used, already in Hom., of corpses.

28. Ἀρταπάτης: cf. 6. 11.——**ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ**: *the highest in his confidence.*——**πεπτωκότα**: suppl. ptc. in indir. disc. Gl. 660; G. 1588; B. 661——**περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ**: *to have fallen with his arms about him.* Practically passive; for the act., cf. *περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους* iv. 7. 25. For the dat., see Gl. 598 a; G. 1179; H. 775; B. 394.

29. ἐπισφάξαι αὐτὸν Κύρῳ: *to slay him upon Cyrus.* For the dat., see *αὐτῷ* above. The verb is properly used of sacrifices at a grave or to the dead. Cf. Eur. *Hec.* 505 *κἄμ' ἐπισφάξαι τάφῳ*, and the story of Adrastus in Hdt. i. 45, concluding *ἐπικατασφάζει τῷ τύμβῳ ἑωυτόν.* See also Hom. *Il.* xxiii. 175, where Achilles slays twelve Trojan youths on the pyre of Patroclus.——**ἑαυτὸν ἐπισφάξασθαι**: the reflex. pron. added to intensify the middle. Cf. *ἑαυτῷ . . . περιποιήσασθαι* v. 6. 17.——**χρυσοῦν**: *gilded*, as 2. 27.

CHAPTER IX

CHARACTERIZATION OF CYRUS

1. Κῦρος μέν: without corresponding *δέ*.——**Περσῶν . . . γενομένων**: *i. e.* those of the royal family.——**παρὰ πάντων ὁμολογεῖται**:
Page 37. cf. *ὁμολογεῖται πρὸς πάντων* § 20; *ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων* ii. 6. 1. These preps. in this const. (for *ὑπό*) are rare in Att. prose.——**Κύρου ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι**: *to have had experience of* (acquaintance with) *Cyrus.* Cf. *τῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων* ii. 6. 1; *ἄπειροι ὄντες αὐτῶν* iii. 2. 16.

2. πρῶτον μέν: correl. are *ἐπεὶ δέ* in § 6 and § 7.——**πάντα**: cogn. accus. with *κράτιστος.* Gl. 536 d; G. 1053; H. 717. For the paronomasia (*πάντων πάντα*), cf. *πάντῃ πάντα* ii. 5. 7.

3. παῖδες . . . παιδεύονται: notice the paronomasia, as in *ἐπαιδεύετο . . . παισί* above.——**ἐπὶ ταῖς . . . θύραις**: *at the gates of the king, i. e.* at court. Cf. 2. 11.——**καταμάθοι ἄν**: hypothet. or pot. opt. See on *ἂν γένοιο* 6. 8.——**ἔστι**: for accent, see Gl. 384 b (3); G. 144, 5; H. 480; B. 262, 1.

4. εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες: *from their very childhood, a pueris.* Gl. 592; G. 1572; H. 976; B. 655. Cf. *εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων* iv. 6. 14.——**μανθάνουσιν . . . ἄρχεσθαι**: for the infs., see Gl. 588 c; G. 1592, 1; H. 986.

5. αἰδημονέστατος μὲν πρῶτον: the natural order would be *πρῶτον μὲν αἰ.*, but the adj., as representing the chief ornament of youth, is placed

first for emphasis.——**αἰδημονέστατος τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν**: inexact superlative comparison (for *αἰδημονέστερος τῶν ἡ.*) like *κάλλιστος τῶν ἄλλων* Hom. *Il.* ii. 673.——**τοῖς τε πρεσβυτέροις**: note *τε* used as simple connective (*and*), as i. 5. 14. Cf. iii. 2. 16.——**καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ ὑποδεεστέρων**: *than even those of lower rank than himself.* The gen. *ἑαυτοῦ* dependent on the comp. *ὑποδεεστέρων*, as that on *μᾶλλον*. Gl. 517; G. 1153; H. 755; B. 363.——**πείθεσθαι**: connected by *τε* with *εἶναι* and both dependent, as also *χρῆσθαι*, on *ἔδόκει*.——**φιλιππότατος**: *sc. εἶναι*.——**ἄριστα χρῆσθαι**: *to make the best use of*, cogn. accus.——**ἔκρινον**: *they judged.* Gl. 493; G. 897, 2; H. 602 c; B. 305.——**τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων**: *of military exercises.* Cf. *Cyrop.* viii. 1. 34 *μελέτη τῶν πρὸς πόλεμον*. The gen. depends on the two following adjectives. Gl. 516; G. 1142; H. 754 a; B. 351.

6. ἐπεὶ δὲ . . . ἔπρεπε: *and when it befitted his age.* For the dat., see Gl. 520 b; G. 1159; H. 764, 2; B. 376.——**καὶ ἄρκτον**: *καί* introducing a specific instance, as in 8. 23.——**ἔτρεσεν**: a poetical verb, but used as a technical term at Sparta. Cf. Plut. *Ages.* 30 *οἱ ἐν τῇ μάχῃ καταδειλιάσαντες, οὓς αὐτοὶ τρέσαντας ὀνομάζουσι, cowards in battle, whom they themselves call runaways.*——**τὰ μὲν ἔπαθεν**: *some hurts he received*, cogn. accus.——**ὧν καί**: note Xen.'s fondness for *καί* in rel. clause.——**τέλος δὲ κατέκανε**: *and finally he killed* her. What actually occurred takes the place of the natural correl. clause (*τὰ δὲ ἐποίησε*). For *τέλος*, see Gl. 540; G. 1060; H. 719; B. 336. For *κατακαίνω*, see on 6. 2.——**καὶ τὸν . . . βοηθήσαντα**: *and the one, moreover, who first brought aid.* Cf. *καὶ . . . μέντοι* 8. 20.——**πολλοῖς μακαριστόν**: *an object of envy to many.* Cf. *τοῖς οἴκοι ζηλωτόν* 7. 4.

7. κατεπέμφθη κτέ: cf. 1. 2. The verb is used esp. of going from the interior to the coast. Cf. *ἀναβαίνει* 1. 2.——**σατράπης**: *as satrap.* H. 614; B. 320.——**στρατηγὸς δὲ καί**: see on *καὶ στρατηγὸν δέ* 1. 2.

Page 38. ——**πρῶτον μέν**: correl. is *φανερὸς δέ* § 11.——**αὐτόν**: prolepsis. See on *τῶν βαρβάρων* 1. 5.——**περὶ πλείστου ποιοῖτο κτέ**: quoted pres. gen. condition. For the phrase, *περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι, to consider of the highest importance*, cf. § 16; *περὶ παντός* ii. 4. 3.——**εἴ τῳ σπείσαιτο**: *if ever he made a solemn agreement with any one, i. e.* with an enemy.——**εἴ τῳ συνθοῖτο**: of private agreements.

8. καὶ γὰρ οὖν: *and* (this was) *then* (so) *for*, introducing something certain in proof of something asserted. Cf. §§ 12, 17, ii. 6. 13.——**ἐπίστευον**: note the emphatic repetition (*ἐπίστευον, ἐπίστευον, ἐπίστευε*).——**ἐπίστευον . . . ἐπιτρεπόμεναι**: *showed their confidence in him by putting themselves under his protection.* The ptc. is to be supplied also with *ἄνδρες* (*ἐπιτρεπόμενοι*).——**μηδὲν ἂν παθεῖν**: inf. for hypothet. or pot. opt. of dir. disc. For the neg., see Gl. 579 a; G. 1496; GMT. 685.

9. τοιγαροῦν: *consequently*, as §§ 15, 18. Cf. *καὶ γὰρ οὖν* above. Gl. 673 b.——**ἐπολέμησε**: ingressive aor. See on *ἠγάσθη* 1. 9.——**ἑκοῦσαι**: adj. for adv., as 1. 9. Gl. 546; G. 926; H. 619 a; B. 425.——**πλὴν Μιλησίων**: cf. 1. 7.

10. ἂν προοῖτο: the hypothet. or pot. opt. of dir. disc. remains, of course, in indir. The obj. is to be supplied from *αὐτοῖς*.——**ἐπεὶ . . . ἐγένετο**: for aor. ind. unchanged in indir. disc., see Gl. 662; G. 1499; H. 935 c; B. 675, 3.——**ἔτι μέν, ἔτι δέ**: note the emphatic anaphora. See on 3. 16.——**κάκιον πράξειαν**: *fare worse*. G. 1075; H. 810.

11. φανερὸς δ' ἦν καὶ νικᾶν πειρώμενος: *and it was evident also that he tried to surpass*. For the pers. const., see on *δῆλος ἦν* 2. 11.——**εἰ . . . ποιήσειεν αὐτόν**: prot. of past. gen. cond. For the two accus., see Gl. 536 c; G. 1073; H. 725 a; B. 340.——**εὐχὴν . . . ὡς εὔξοιτο**: cf. *Cyrop.* viii. 2. 14 *λόγος αὐτοῦ ἀπομνημονεύεται ὡς λέγοι*.——**ἐξέφερον**: *reported*. Cf. *ἐκφέρειν λόγον* v. 6. 17, 29.——**ἔστε νικῴη**: for *ἕστ' ἂν νικᾷ* of dir. disc. For force of *νικάω*, see on 8. 12.——**τοὺς εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς ποιοῦντας**: for the advs., see Gl. 530 a end; G. 1074; H. 712; B. 330, and cf. *κάκιον πράξειαν* in § 10.——**ἀλεξόμενος**: here in the general sense *requiting*. Cf. 3. 6 *οὔτ' ἂν φίλον ὠφελῆσαι οὔτ' ἂν ἐχθρὸν ἀλέξασθαι*.

12. καὶ γὰρ οὖν: see on § 8.——**πλεῖστοι δή**: the sup. with *δή* indicates the very highest degree. Gl. 671 c (1). Cf. *κράτιστος δή* §§ 19, 20.——**ἑνί γε ἀνδρί**: *for one man at least* (*i. e.* more than any other man), in appos. with *αὐτῷ*, but modifying the sup. Cf. *εἷς γε ἀνήρ* § 22.——**τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν**: *of the men of our time*. Part. gen. with *αὐτῷ*.——**προέσθαι**: lit. 'give up'; here *intrust*, in § 9 *surrender*.

13. οὐ μὲν δὴ οὐδὲ τοῦτο: *not indeed even this*. For *μέν*, see on 7. 6. Cf. *οὐ μὲν δή* ii. 2. 3, iii. 2. 14. For *οὐ . . . οὐδέ*, see Gl. 486; G. 1619; H. 1030; B. 433.——**καταγελᾶν**: abs. *mock*, as ii. 4. 4; with gen. ii. 6. 30.——**ἦν ἰδεῖν**: *it was possible to see*.——**καὶ ποδῶν κτέ**: English idiom requires rendering *or* (*καί*). For these gens., see Gl. 509 a; G. 1117; H. 748; B. 362, 1.——**ἐγένετο**: = **ἐξῆν μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντι**: cogn. accus. For the neg. (*μή*), see Gl. 582 c; G. 1612; H. 1025; B. 431, 1.——**ὅπῃ τις ἤθελεν**: impf. where we might have had opt. Cf. *ὅστις ἀφικνεῖτο* 1. 5.——**ἔχοντι ὅ τι προχωροίη**: *having whatever it was advantageous* to have, *sc.* *ἔχειν* from *ἔχοντι*. Past gen. rel. condition.

14. τούς γε μέντοι ἀγαθούς: *those certainly, however, who were brave in war*.——**ὡμολόγητο**: *he was confessed*, pers. const., as in
Page 39. § 20. Gl. 578 a.——**πρῶτον μέν**: belongs in sense to *ἄρχοντας ἐποίει*, its correl. being *ἔπειτα δέ*. The sent. in which it stands, though logically subordinate (*ὄντος αὐτῷ πολέμου*), is made a principal one.——**καὶ αὐτός**: *himself too*, *i. e.* not merely sending an army.——**οὓς ἑώρα**: for the indic., see on *ἤθελεν* just above.——**τούτους**: for the

emphatic dem., see G. 1030; H. 996 b.——**ἧς . . . χώρας**: for the attraction and assimilation, see on **ὧν . . . πάντων** 7. 3.

15. ὥστε . . . εἶναι: *so that the good appeared to be fittingly most prosperous and the bad to be fittingly slaves of these.*[1] **φαίνεσθαι** and **ἀξίως εἶναι** are common to both clauses.——**τοιγαροῦν**: cf. § 9.——**ὅπου τις οἴοιτο**: cond. same as **ὅ τι προχωροίη** in § 13.——**Κῦρον**: more emphatic than **αὐτόν** would be.

16. εἴς γε μὴν δικαιοσύνην: *in uprightness though*, limiting **ἐπιδείκνυσθαι**. **γε μήν** emphasizes the antithesis more strongly than **δέ**. Cf. § 20.——**εἴ τις . . . γένοιτο . . .**, **ἐποιεῖτο**: past gen. cond. See on § 5. 2.——**φανερὸς κτέ**: for pers. const., cf. § 11.——**περὶ παντός**: cf. **περὶ πλείονος** § 7.——**τούτους**: plur. after **τις**, as **αὐτούς** 4. 8.——**πλουσιωτέρως . . . φιλοκερδούντων**: the gen. after comp.[2]——**ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου**: *by injustice.* Cf. **ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου** § 19.

17. αὐτῷ: dat. of interest.——**στρατεύματι ἀληθινῷ**: *a true army, i. e.* one worthy of the name. Cf. **ἡγεμὼν ἀληθινός** Isoc. xv. 206.——**ἐχρήσατο**: *came to employ.* Gl. 464; G. 1260; H. 841; B. 529.——**ἔπλευσαν**: *i. e.* came as mercenaries over the sea, namely, Greeks.——**ὑπάρχειν ἢ τὸ . . . κέρδος**: both subjs. of **εἶναι**. Note a similar change of obj. in 2. 27.——**κατὰ μῆνα**: *by the month.* See on 8. 9. Cf. iii. 2. 12 **κατ' ἐνιαυτόν**, *yearly.*

18. ἀλλὰ μήν: *but indeed.* Transitional to something new, common in Xen. (ten times in *Anab.*).——**οὐδενὶ . . . τὴν προθυμίαν**: *never let any one's zeal go unrewarded.* **οὐδενί** is dat. of advantage.——**ὑπηρέται παντὸς ἔργου**: *supporters of every undertaking.*

19. εἰ δὲ . . . ὁρᾷη: prot. of gen. cond. **τινα ὄντα** is suppl. ptc. in ind. disc. Gl. 660.——**κατασκενάζοντα . . . χώρας**: *improving the land over which he ruled.* **ἧς χώρας** attraction and assimilation for **τὴν χώραν ἧς**. For the opt. **ἄρχοι** in cond. rel. clause, see Gl. 616 b; G. 1439; H. 919 a.——**προσόδους ποιοῦντα**: *producing revenues.* Cf. English *making money.*——**οὐδένα ἂν . . . ἀφείλετο**: *he would never deprive any one of it, sc.* **αὐτήν** = **τὴν χώραν**. For the two accus., see Gl. 535; G. 1069; H. 724; B. 340. For **ἄν** of the iterative const. which extends to **προσεδίδου**, see Gl. 467 a; G. 1296; H. 835 a; B. 568.——**ἐπόνουν, ἐκτῶντο**: plur. after and before the collective **τις**.——**ὃ ἐπέπατο**: poetical word, for **ἐκέκτητο**, used by Xen. also iii. 3. 18, v. 9. 12, vii. 6. 9, 41; *Cyrop.* iii. 3. 44. This clause is the second obj. of **ἔκρυπτεν**. Gl. 535; G. 1069; H. 724; B. 340.——**οὐ γὰρ φθονῶν . . . ἐφαίνετο**: *it was evident that he did not envy those who were openly wealthy.* For the force of the

[1] The MS. reading is **ἀξίου σαι**. The reading in the text is Schenkl's conjecture.

[2] The text is Hug's conjecture for **πλουσιωτέρω . . . ποιεῖν** *pr.*, **πλουσιωτέρους ποιεῖν** C_1.

pred. or suppl. ptc., see Gl. 585 a; GMT. 914, 5; H. 986; B. 661, N. 3. For the dat., see Gl. 520 a; G. 1159, 1160; H. 764, 2; B. 376.

20. φίλους γε μήν: obj. of *θεραπεύειν*, emphasized by its position and by *γε μήν*. See on § 16.——**γνοίη ὄντας**: see on *τινα ὄντα* in § 19.——**ὅ τι τυγχάνοι**: = **τούτου ὅ τι τυγχάνοι**. For the cond. rel. with opt., see on *ἧς ἄρχοι* in § 19.——**πρὸς πάντων**: of agent, rare const. in Att. prose. Cf. *Oec.* 4. 2 *ἀδοξοῦνται πρὸς τῶν πόλεων*. See on *παρὰ πάντων* § 1.——**κράτιστος δή**: see on *πλεῖστοι δή* in § 12.

Page 40.

21. αὐτὸ τοῦτο: anticipatory of *ὡς συνέργους ἔχοι* and would naturally have been the obj. of some general word like *ποιεῖν* after *ἐπειρᾶτο* (or possibly pred. after *ἐπειρᾶτο, sc. εἶναι*), but for the general pred. Xen. substitutes a special one, *συνεργὸς . . . ἐπιθυμοῦντα*. Cf. iii. 5. 5 *ἃ . . . καίουσιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν*.——**ὅτου**: gen. with *ἐπιθυμοῦντα*. Gl. 511 c; G. 1102; H. 742; B. 356.——**αἰσθάνοιτο**: see on *τυγχάνοι* in § 20 and *ἄρχοι* in § 19.——**ἐπιθυμοῦντα**: pred. or suppl. ptc. in indir. disc. Gl. 660. The sent. may be rendered: *for having in view the very reason why he thought he needed friends, namely, that he might have co-workers, he too endeavored to be a vigorous co-worker with his friends for that of which he saw each to be desirous.*

22. οἶμαι: parenthetical.——**εἷς γε ἀνήρ**: see on § 12.——**πάντων δὴ μάλιστα**: *most of all, especially.*——**διεδίδου**: *distribuebat.* Cf. **διαπέμπων** § 27, **διαδεχόμενοι** 5. 2.——**πρὸς . . . σκοπῶν**: *having regard to the ways of each.*——**ὅτου**: *i. e.* *πρὸς τοῦτο ὅτου*, or the whole clause might be regarded as the obj. of *σκοπῶν*.

23. ὡς εἰς πόλεμον: *ὡς* marks the purpose of the sender.——**καὶ περὶ τούτων**: *also about these.* The idea is restricted, not quite logically, from the giving of the presents to what Cyrus said about them.——**λέγειν**: impf. inf. *used to say.*——**ἔφασαν**: *i. e.* Xen.'s informants.——**φίλους δὲ κτέ**: for like sentiment, see *Cyrop.* vi. 4. 3.——**νομίζοι**: for *νομίζω* of dir. disc.

24. καὶ τὸ μὲν . . . ποιοῦντα: *and his greatly surpassing his friends in conferring favors.* *τὰ μεγάλα*, best rendered adv., is really cogn. accus. with *νικᾶν*. For the artic. inf., see Gl. 574; G. 1542; H. 959; B. 637.——**ἐπειδή γε καὶ δυνατώτερος ἦν**: *since indeed he was also more able, i. e.* besides other reasons.——**περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων**: for the gen., see Gl. 509 b; G. 1120; H. 749; B. 364. Cf. *περιῆν* 8. 13.——**καὶ τῷ προθυμεῖσθαι χαρίζεσθαι**: *and in being zealous to do favors*, correlated with *τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ*. Gl. 575; G. 1547; H. 959; B. 640.——**ταῦτα**: resumptive of the artic. inf. clause.

25. βίκους οἴνου: gen. of material. G. 1085, 4; H. 729 f; B. 362.——**ὁπότε . . . λάβοι**: prot. of past gen. cond. See on *εἰ ποιήσειεν* § 11,

and cf. §§ 27, 28.——**πολλοῦ χρόνου**: Gl. 515; G. 1136; H. 759; B. 359. ——**τούτου**: gen. with comp.——**οἴνῳ**: Gl. 598 a; G. 1179; H. 775; B. 394.——**σοὶ ἔπεμψε**: lively transition to dir. disc. Cf. the use of the past tense in Latin epistles.——**σὺν οἷς**: for *σὺν τούτοις οὕς*. Gl. 613 b; G. 1032; H. 996 a; B. 484. See on *ἀνθ' ὧν* 3. 4.

26. ἄρτων ἡμίσεα: *halves of loaves.*——**ἐπιλέγειν**: *say besides.*——**τούτοις**: for the const., see Gl. 526 a; G. 1159; H. 778; B. 376.——**τούτων γεύσασθαι**: ingressive aor. *to take a taste of these.* For the gen., see Gl. 510 e; G. 1102; H. 742; B. 356.

27. σπάνιος πάνυ: this position of the adv. emphasizes the adj. Cf. *ὀρθία ἰσχυρῶς* 2. 21.——**διὰ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν**: *on account of the careful attention*, that is, in his service, or his own careful attention in providing, prob. the former.——**διαπέμπων**: *sending round, i. e.* to one and another. See on **διεδίδου** § 22.——**τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν**: that sent by Cyrus.——**τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα**: periphrasis for *ἑαυτούς*. Cf. use of *corpus* in Lat.——**ὡς . . . ἄγωσιν**: subjv. retained, from implied quotation, in final clause after secondary tense. Gl. 662; G. 1369; H. 881 a; B. 674. *ὡς*, the most common final particle in tragedy, is rare in prose except in Xen. Gl. 636; GMT. 312. 3.

Page 41.

28. μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι: *were likely to see.* Cf. *ἔμελλε καταλύειν* 8. 1. ——**ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο**: *i. e. σπουδῇ διαλέγετο.* Cf. *ἐσπουδαιολογήθη Sympos.* 4. 50; *σπουδαιολογῆσαι Sympos.* 8. 41. Not elsewhere in classical writers. ——**οὓς τιμᾷ**: the indic. retained as more definite. Gl. 615, 617; G. 1503; H. 937.——**ἐγὼ μέν γε**: *I for my part*, as ii. 5. 25.——**Ἑλλήνων, βαρβάρων**: limiting *οὐδένα*.

29. τεκμήριον δὲ . . . τόδε: *and a proof of that is also the following.* *τεκμήριον* regularly without copula. For general distinction between *οὗτος* and *ὅδε*, see G. 1005; H. 696; B. 482.——**δούλου ὄντος**: in the Persian empire the king alone was free, all the rest were his slaves. Cf. 7. 3.——**πλήν**: *except that*, as 8. 20.——**καὶ οὗτος . . . ἑαυτῷ**: cf. 6. 6 ff. ——**οἱ**: see on 1. 8.——**αὐτόν**: for the usual emphatic dem. resumptive after a rel. (G. 1030; H. 996 b). An emphatic word immediately precedes. Cf. *αὐτούς* ii. 5. 27.——**καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι**: *and these, moreover.* See on *καὶ . . . μέντοι* 8. 20, 9. 6.——**οἱ μάλιστα ἑαυτοὺς ἀγάμενοι**: *those who thought most of themselves* (Dindorf's conjecture for *ὑπ' αὐτοῦ ἀγαπώμενοι*).——**ἂν . . . τυγχάνειν**: representing hypothet. or pot. opt. of dir. disc., the prot. being *ὄντες*.

30. μέγα τεκμήριον: (*sc. ἐστι*) explained by the *ὅτι* clause.——**καὶ τὸ . . . γενόμενον**: *is also what happened to him at the end of his life.*—— **τοὺς . . . βεβαίους**: single art. because the three adjs. define one class.

31. γάρ: as in § 25.——**συντράπεζοι**: see on *ὁμοτράπεζοι* 8. 25; and for the facts, cf. 8. 27 ff.——**τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν**: Gl. 585 a; G. 1586; H. 984;

B. 660 N.——**ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ**: as 8. 20. See on *ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ* 8. 5.——**πεπτωκότα**: pred. or suppl. ptc. in indir. disc.——**ἔφυγεν ἔχων καί**: *fled with.* *ἔχων καί*, lit. *having also*, as iv. 1. 8. Cf. *καὶ ἔχοντες* iii. 3. 2, v. 2. 17.

CHAPTER X

THE NARRATIVE RESUMED FROM CHAPTER VIII. MOVEMENTS OF THE KING'S ARMY AND OF THE GREEK FORCE AFTER THE DEATH OF CYRUS AND THE CLOSE OF THE BATTLE

1. **ἐνταῦθα**: resumes from 8. 29.——**ἀποτέμνεται . . . δεξιά**: a Persian custom. Ctesias (Plut. *Artox.* 13) says that the king encouraged his dismayed troops by holding up himself, in their sight, the severed head of Cyrus, and Xen. adds later (iii. 1. 17) that he set up the head and hands on a pole.——**διώκων εἰσπίπτει**: construed with the principal subj., as *λαμβάνει* in § 2. Gl. 498 b.——**Κύρειον στρατόπεδον**: poetical const. for **Κύρου στρατόπεδον**. Cf. Hdt. vii. 106 **τοῖσι Μασκαμείοισι ἐκγόνοισι**.——**οἱ μετὰ Ἀριαίου**: *Ariaeus and his troops.*——**ἔνθεν**: *i. e.* on the morning of the battle. Cf. **ὅθεν** 2. 8.——**τέτταρες παρασάγγαι τῆς ὁδοῦ**: lit. *four parasangs of the way.* Cf. *τριάκοντα μυριάδας στρατιᾶς* 4. 5. The ordinary form would be *τεττάρων παρασαγγῶν ὁδόν*, *a distance of four parasangs.*

Page 42.

2. **πολλά**: pred. *many*, or *in large quantities.*——**τὴν Φωκαΐδα**: formerly named Milto, by Cyrus called Aspasia.——**τὴν σοφὴν . . . λεγομένην εἶναι**: Gl. 582 a, b; G. 1560, 1; H. 966; B. 650.

3. **ἦν νεωτέρα**: if genuine, names a chief quality as against the *σοφὴ καὶ καλή* of the other woman. For the const., cf. ii. 1. 7 *οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι βάρβαροι, ἦν δ' αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος, εἷς Ἕλλην, ὃς ἐτύγχανε κτέ.*——**γυμνή**: *i. e.* with merely the *χιτών* or under garment, ordinarily worn alone (without upper garment) only in the house. Cf. iv. 4. 12.——**πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: *i. e.* *πρὸς τούτους* (or *τινας*) . . . **οἵ**, a rare omission. So most editors; but Vollbrecht explains, perhaps correctly, *towards the Greeks.* Cf. Hom. *Il.* xxii. 198 *αὐτὸς δὲ ποτὶ πτόλιος πέτετ' αἰεί.* See Kühn. 441, I.——**οἳ ἔτυχον . . . ἔχοντες**: *who happened to be under arms in the baggage-train.*——**καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες κτέ**: transition from rel. clause to independent const., as in 1. 2.——**οἱ δὲ καὶ αὐτῶν**: *but some also of themselves*, correl. to *πολλοὺς μέν.* Cf. 5. 13.——**οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε**: *did not however flee.* Cf. *οὐ μήν* § 13.——**ὁπόσα ἐντὸς αὐτῶν ἐγένοντο**: *whatsoever had come within their lines.* Cf. *ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος* vi. 5. 7. *ἐγένοντο* is construed with the nearest noun.——**ἔσωσαν**: note the emphatic force of the repetition. See on *ταῦτα ἤγγελλον* 7. 13.

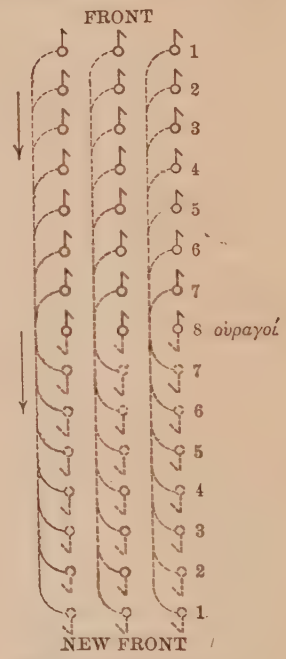
4. διέσχον ἀλλήλων: ablatival gen. Gl. 509 a; G. 1117; H. 743; B. 362, 1. Cf. *διειχέτην . . . ἀπ' ἀλλήλων* 8. 17.——**οἱ Ἕλληνες**: *i. e.* the main body of the Greeks, not the detachment mentioned in the preceding section.——**οἳ μέν**: refers, as *hic*, to the nearest subj., which arrangement produces chiasmus.——**τοὺς καθ' αὑτούς**: *those opposed to themselves.* Cf. § 5, 8. 21.——**οἱ δέ**: the king's troops.——**ὡς ἤδη πάντα νικῶντες**: *as* (*i. e.* thinking that they were) *already completely victorious.* *πάντα* is cogn. accus. *νικᾶν* with perfect force Gl. 454 f; GMT. 27. It seems hardly probable that Xen. would repeat these words in both clauses, and they are certainly more appropriate in the second.

5. ἐπεὶ ἤσθοντο κτέ.: note the chiastic arrangement of subj. and pred. in the temporal clauses.——**εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν**: cf. ii. 1. 2.——**οἴχονται**: note the retention of the indic. after *νικῷεν* in opt. Cf. Gl. 624 b ex. 2; GMT. 670; B. 674.——**ἔνθα δή**: see on 5. 8.——**συντάττεται**: cf. 2. 15.——**εἰ πέμποιεν ἢ ἴοιεν**: for the alternative questions, see Gl. 655, 668; G. 1606; H. 1017; B. 574. The opts. represent delib. subjvs. (Gl. 471; G. 1358; H. 866, 3; B. 577) of dir. disc. Gl. 661; G. 1490; H. 932, 2; B. 673.

6. καὶ βασιλεύς: *the king, too, i. e.* just as the Greeks were purposing to march against him.——**δῆλος ἦν προσιών**: pers. const., see on 2. 11.——**στραφέντες**: *having faced about* (see fig.).——**ὡς . . . δεξόμενοι**: *with the idea that he would come on in that way and to receive him.* Correlation of gen. abs. and pte. of purpose, *ὡς* belonging to both. GMT. 876

Page 43.

——**παρῆλθεν**: aor. as plpf. See on *ἐποίησε* 1. 2.——**τοῦ εὐωνύμου**: though this is now, after the change of

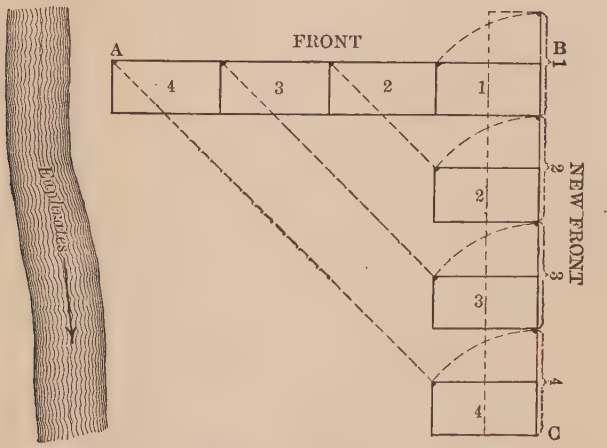


ENOMOTY EXECUTING THE COUNTER-MARCH.

This movement was the Laconian *counter-march.* When the enemy appeared in the rear the troops were ordered to turn 'left about face.' No further movement was made in the line of οὐραγοί or rear-leaders. Then the file-leaders, who, as the strongest men, had been stationed with a view to collision with the enemy, passed each to the right of his file and as far to the front of the οὐραγοί in the new direction as each had stood in the old. Thus the old first rank once more faced the enemy. The other ranks up to the seventh followed and ranged themselves in the original order behind the first. The οὐραγοί were now again in their proper place in the rear.

position, really the right wing of the Greeks, the designation of the first array is kept.——**ταύτῃ**: this and the preceding *ταύτῃ* locative. For the epanaleptic dem., see G. 1030; H. 996 b.——**ἀπῆγεν**: *marched back.*——**ἀναλαβών**: *taking up.*——**τοὺς . . . αὐτομολήσαντας**: lit. *those who during the battle, being opposite the Greeks, had deserted.* Cf. ii. 1. 6.

7. κατά: see on § 4.——**Ἕλληνας**: attrib. The usual prose form of the adj. is *Ἑλληνικούς*.——**κατέκανε**: see on 6. 2.——**διαστάντες**: *standing*



FOUR COMPANIES EXECUTING THE CONTEMPLATED MANŒUVER.

The Greeks were now, after their counter-march (see on *στραφέντες* in § 6), in battle-line, at right angles to the Euphrates, facing up-stream (*A . . . B*). Fearing that the king would take them in the right flank and enfold them on both sides, they determined to wheel round so as to come into battle-line facing the enemy, with the river in their rear. To effect this, the company on the wing (1) would quarter-wheel to the right, whereby the *ἡγούμενοι* would be in front in the new formation, as before. The second company (2), in column, would fall in behind, halt 36 feet (length of company) from the first, and also quarter-wheel to the right. And so with the rest, the whole coming into the position *B . . . C*. The movement seems not to have been executed.

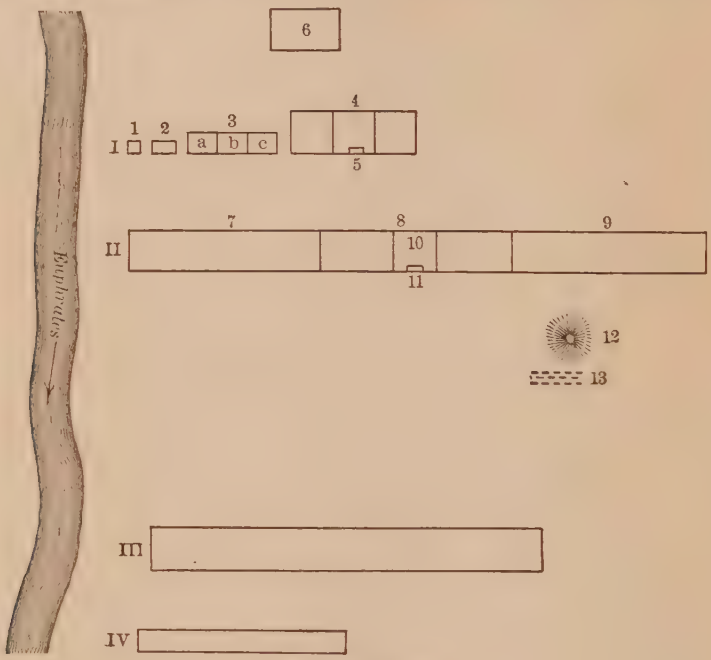
apart. Cf. 5. 2.——**αὐτούς**: referring to *Τισσαφέρνην καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ* above.——**φρόνιμος γενέσθαι**: *to have shown himself sagacious, i. e.* by this manœuver. Cf. *ἄδικος γεγενῆσθαι.*

8. ὡς . . . ἀπηλλάγη: *when he had come off worsted.* *μεῖον ἔχειν*, lit. *have less*, for which in other authors *ἔλαττον ἔχειν*.——**πάλιν . . . ἀναστρέφει**: note the pleonasm and the emphatic position of *πάλιν*. For *ἀναστρέφειν*, cf. § 12 and 4. 5.——**συντυγχάνει**: *falls in with*, as vii. 8. 22.——**ὁμοῦ δή**: *together accordingly*, as v. 4. 25.

9. τὸ εὐώνυμον: see on this term in § 6.——**περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρω-**

θεν: *having folded round on both sides, outflanked.* Cf. *Cyrop.* vii. 1. 26 περιεπτύσσοντο ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν.——**ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ κέρας**: *wheel round* (lit. 'fold back') *the wing* (see fig.).

10. ἐν ᾧ: *sc.* χρόνῳ, *while*, as 2. 20.——**καὶ δὴ βασιλεύς**: *the king now also.*——**παραμειψάμενος**: *having passed by, i. e.* by the left (now right)



PLAN OF BATTLE.

I. First position of Cyrus facing down-stream.
II. First position of king facing up-stream.
III. Second position of king facing down-stream.
IV. Second position of Greeks facing up-stream.

1. Paphlagonian cavalry.
2. Greek peltasts.
3. Greek hoplites.
   a. Clearchus.
   b. Proxenus.
   c. Menon.
4. Ariaeus.
5. Position of Cyrus.
6. Camp of Cyrus.
7. Division of Tissaphernes.
8. Division of Gobryas.
9. Division of Arbaces.
10. The 6,000 of Artagerses.
11. Position of king.
12. Hill.
13. Cunaxa.

wing of the Greeks. Cf. *Cyrop.* v. 4. 50 παραμειβομένου τὴν πόλιν τοῦ στρατεύματος, *while the army was passing along by the city.*——**εἰς τὸ αὐ-**

τὸ . . . συνῆει: *placed his line of battle opposite in the same form as at first he had met them for battle.* **ὥσπερ** refers to **τὸ αὐτό**. Some take **εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα** with **παραμειψάμενος**, *changing to the same form*, which the order rather favors.——**ἐγγύς τε ὄντας καὶ παρατεταγμένους**: *sc.* **αὐτούς**, *that they were near and in battle array.* The ptcs. are suppl. in indir. disc.——**αἷθις παιανίσαντες**: cf. 8. 17.——**ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν**: *than before.* As described 8. 19. Cf. **τὸ πρῶτον** just above.

11. ἐκ πλείονος: lit. *at a greater distance, i. e.* from the Greeks. ——**ἐπεδίωκον**: *pursued after.* Cf. iv. 1. 16, 3. 25.——**κώμης τινός**: prob. Cunaxa (**Κούναξα**, Plut. *Artox.* 8).

12. ὑπέρ: *above*, or *beyond.* Cf. § 14, ii. 6. 2.——**ἀνεστράφησαν**: *had rallied*, lit. 'faced about.' Cf. § 8.——**τῶν δὲ ἱππέων**: change of const., for **ἱππεῖς δὲ ὦν**. For gen., see Gl. 512; G. 1113; H. 743; B.

Page 44. 356.——**τὸ ποιούμενον**: for the more common **τὸ γιγνόμενον**. ——**ὥστε . . . γιγνώσκειν**: *sc.* **τοὺς Ἕλληνας**, *so that the Greeks discerned what was going on*, as they could not in the plain on account of the intervening village.——**τὸ βασίλειον σημεῖον**: *the royal standard.*——**ἀετόν τινα . . . ἀνατεταμένον**: *a sort of golden eagle with extended wings on a shield* (*i. e.* against a background in the shape of a shield). Some explain **πέλτη** here = **δόρυ**, *spear*; but there is no convincing authority for this. Cf. *Cyrop.* vii. 1. 4 **ἦν δὲ αὐτῷ τὸ σημεῖον ἀετὸς χρυσοῦς ἐπὶ δόρατος μακροῦ ἀνατεταμένος.**

13. ἐνταῦθα: with verbs of motion denotes the limit of motion.—— **λείπουσι, ἐψιλοῦτο, ἀπεχώρησαν**: the verbs indicate the beginning, progress, and end of the flight.——**οὐ μὴν ἔτι**: *no longer, however.* See on § 3.——**ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν**: *some from one direction, others from another*, where the English idiom is *some in one direction, etc.*——**ἐψιλοῦτο**: *was getting cleared of.*——**τῶν ἱππέων**: see on § 12. Cf. Gl. 509 a.——**τέλος**: see on 9. 6.——**καὶ πάντες**: see on 8. 2.

14. ἀνεβίβαζεν: *sc.* **τὸ στράτευμα** from the following clause.——**ὑπ' αὐτόν**: *at its foot.* See on **ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμόν** 8. 27.——**κατιδόντας**: *having observed.* Cf. 8. 26, and see on **κατεθεᾶτο** 8. 14.——**τί**: after **τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου** loosely used for **τίνα**, or perhaps as expressing the totality of what was seen. Cf. ii. 1. 22 **τί οὖν ταῦτά ἐστιν.**——**ἀπαγγεῖλαι**: *bring back word.*

15. ἀνὰ κράτος: see on 8. 1; 8. 19.——**σχεδὸν . . . ἦν**: *eodem fere tempore.*——**καὶ ἥλιος ἐδύετο**: *the sun, too, was setting.* **καί**, which emphasizes the coincident occurrence, is really superfluous. **ἥλιος** without art. as vii. 3. 34 **ἦν ἥλιος ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς**, ii. 2. 3 **ἡλίου δύνοντος**, ii. 2. 13 **ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι.** With art. referring to preceding day ii. 2. 16 **ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ δυομένῳ.**

16. θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα: *grounding arms, i. e.* laying down the shield

and sticking the lance in the ground.——**φαίνοιτο**: opt. in causal sent. Gl. 622 b, 662; G. 1506; H. 925 b. See on *ὅτι . . . εἴη* 8. 12.——**παρῇει**: for the indic. retained after the opt., see on *οἴχονται* in § 5. Cf. same const. in reverse order ii. 1. 2, 3.——**αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα**: *that he was dead.* The ptc. as *πεπτωκότα* 8. 28.——**διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι**: *was gone in pursuit.* Gl. 585 c; G. 1587; H. 981.——**καταληψόμενόν τι προεληλακέναι**: *had pushed forward to occupy some place.* Cf. *ἀποσκάπτει τι* ii. 4. 4.

17. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο: with changed const. (for *ἅμα δέ*), induced by the intervening clauses, answering to and continuing *ἅμα μέν*.——**εἰ ἄγοιντο ἢ ἀπίοιεν**: see on **εἰ πέμποιεν ἢ ἴοιεν** in § 5.——**ἀμφὶ δορπηστόν**: *about supper-time.* For *δεῖπνον*, *i. e.* the chief meal of the day taken towards evening. The word is rather poetical. For other similar designations of the time of day, cf. *ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν* 8. 1; *ἀρίστου ὥρα* vi. 5. 1; *περὶ λύχνων ἁφάς* Hdt. vii. 215; *περὶ πρῶτον ὕπνον* Thuc. ii. 2. 1; *βουλυτόνδε* Hom. *Od.* ix. 58, ii. 58.

18. ταύτης μέν: concluding what precedes. *μέν* without *οὖν* as v. 6. 1, vii. 6. 6; with *οὖν* in § 19.——**διηρπασμένα**: for the ptc. const. after *καταλαμβάνουσι*, cf. iii. 1. 8, 5. 9, 33, iv. 2. 5. See on *διελαύνοντα* 5. 12.——**καὶ εἴ τι . . . ἦν**: for *εἴ τι* see on 5. 1. *καί*, *and especially*, as correl. to *τε*, introduces the second obj. of *καταλαμβάνουσι*. Cf. *σιτία καὶ ποτά* vii. 1. 33. More freq. *σῖτον καὶ ποτόν*.——**μεστάς**: pred., *sc.* *οὔσας*.——**σφόδρα**: note the emphatic position.——**λάβοι**: *seized.* Cf. Dem. liv. 20 *γέλως ἔλαβεν οὐδένα*, *laughter seized no one*; Thuc. ii. 49. 1 *τοὺς ἄλλους τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐρυθήματα καὶ φλόγωσις ἐλάμβανε*, *the rest redness of the eyes and inflammation seized.*——**διαδιδοίη**: see on 9. 22.——**ὡς ἐλέγοντο**: parenthetical, as 4. 5. See on 2. 8.——**καὶ ταύτας**: *these too*, repeating, after the intervening clauses, *ἁμάξας*, which is obj. of *διήρπασαν*. Cf. *καὶ οὗτος* ii. 2. 5, 35.

19. ἄδειπνοι ἦσαν, ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι: chiasmus, as in *καταλῦσαι τὸ στράτευμα*, *βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη*. With the adjs., cf. *ἀσίτους* ii. 2. 16.——**καταλῦσαι**: see on 8. 1.——**ταύτην . . . διεγένοντο**: *this night then they passed thus.* Cf. iv 5. 4 *διεγένοντο τὴν νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες*. On *μέν*, see § 18. Cf. *μὲν δή* ii. 1. 20.

Page 45.

BOOK II

CHAPTER I

CLEARCHUS OFFERS THE CROWN TO ARIAEUS AND DEFIES THE KING'S DEMAND FOR THE SURRENDER OF THE GREEKS

1. The introduction to this book, as also those to books iii, iv, v, and vii, are regarded as interpolations of an editor who made
Page 46. the divisions by books.——**ὡς**: *how.* *ὡς* and *ὅσα* introduce the indir. questions which are subjs. of *δεδήλωται.*——**Κύρῳ**: dat. of advantage. See on *αὐτῷ* i. 1. 9.——**τὰ πάντα νικᾶν**: *that they were completely victorious.* For the cogn. accus., see on i. 10. 4. For the subj. of the inf. omitted, see Gl. 571; G. 895, 2; H. 940; B. 630.——**λόγῳ**: *narrative.*

2. **ἅμα δέ**: correl. to *ταύτην μὲν οὖν* i. 10. 19. For *ἅμα* with the dat., see on i. 7. 2.——**ὅτι πέμπει, φαίνοιτο**: for the moods, see on *παρῇει* i. 10. 16.——**σημανοῦντα**: the Greeks and Romans are fond of the fut. ptc. of purpose after verbs of motion.——**εἶχον**: for the indic. instead of opt., see Gl. 624 c; G. 1489; H. 936.——**ἐξοπλισαμένοις**: cf. i. 8. 3.——**εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν**: cf. i. 10. 5.——**ἕως Κύρῳ συμμείξειαν**: representing *ἕως ἂν συμμείξωμεν* of dir. disc. Gl. 631; G. 1502, 3; H. 937 a; B. 673. For the dat., see Gl. 598 a; G. 1179; H. 775; B. 394.

3. **ἤδη . . . ὄντων**: *sc.* *αὐτῶν* (cf. i. 2. 17), *when they were already on the point of starting.*——**ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνέχοντι**: *at sunrise.* Cf. *ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνατέλλοντι* 3. 1. On *ἡλίῳ* without art., see on i. 10. 15.——**ἦλθε**: sing. with nearest subj.——**Τευθρανίας**: a district in Mysia.——**γεγονὼς ἀπό**: *descended from.*——**Δαμαράτου**: the deposed king of Sparta, who fled to Darius. Cf. Hdt. vi. 70.——**Γλοῦς**: cf. i. 4. 16. He had gone over to Artaxerxes.——**Ταμώ**: cf. i. 4. 2.——**τέθνηκεν**: as most important retained in indic., while the other dependent verbs are changed to opt. See on § 2 and i. 10. 16. Cf. Gl. 624 b.——**ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ . . . ὥρμηντο**: cf. i. 10. 1.——**ὅθεν**: = *ἐξ οὗ* as 3. 16. Cf. *ἔνθεν* i. 10. 1.——**τῇ προτεραίᾳ**: always without *ἡμέρᾳ.* Cf. *τῇ ἄλλῃ* just below, and *τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ* 2. 18.——**ὥρμηντο**: notice that the mood and tense seem to be used without reference to the quotation, but from the point of view of the narrator.——**ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν**: time how long. Cf. *ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν* § 6.——**περιμενοῖεν αὐτούς, εἰ μέλλοιεν ἥκειν**: direct form was *περιμενοῦμεν αὐτούς, εἰ μέλλουσιν ἥκειν.*——**τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ . . . φαίη**: *but on the next day*

he would go away, he said. Since no subj. is expressed for the inf., it must be that of ἔφη. See Gl.'s treatment of this sent. 624 b.——**ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας**: ἐπί with gen. of the goal to be reached, *in the direction of.*

4. ἀκούσαντες . . . πυνθανόμενοι: chiasmus.——**πυνθανόμενοι**: impf. ptc., *learned it gradually, i. e.* from the generals who had heard.——**βαρέως ἔφερον**: see on χαλεπῶς φέρω i. 3. 3.——**Ἀλλ'**: see on i. 7. 6.——**ὤφελε . . . ζῆν**: *would that Cyrus were alive.* Gl. 470 b; G. 1512; H. 871 a; B. 588 (2).——**νικῶμεν βασιλέα**: *we are victorious over the king.* For the pf. force, see on i. 10. 4.——**ἡμῖν μάχεται**: *fights us.* Gl. 525; G. 1177; H. 772; B. 376.——**εἰ μὴ ὑμεῖς ἤλθετε, ἐπορευόμεθα ἄν**: *unless you had come, we should be on the march.* Gl. 649, 461 c;

Page 47. G. 1397; H. 895; B. 606.——**ἐὰν ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ**: *if he join us here.* GMT. 90.——**καθιεῖν**: for subj. omitted, see on νικᾶν § 1.——**τῶν γὰρ . . . τὸ ἄρχειν ἐστίν**: *victorum est regnare, the (right to) rule belongs to the victors.* For pred. poss. gen., see Gl. 508; G. 1094, 1; H. 732 a; B. 348, 1. For the cogn. accus., cf. ὅσας μάχας νενικήκατε vi. 5. 23. Gl. 536 a; G. 1051; H. 715 b; B. 333. For the artic. inf., see on τὸ νικᾶν i. 9. 24.

5. τοὺς ἀγγέλους: *i. e.* Procles and Glus.——**καὶ γάρ**: see on i. 1. 8.——**ἐβούλετο**: *sc.* ἀποστέλλεσθαι.——**φίλος καὶ ξένος**: hendiadys. Cf. ξένος alone for this relation 4. 15, i. 1. 10, 3. 3.

6. οἳ μέν: asyndeton. See on i. 2. 25.——**ὅπως**: = ὡς. In prose, as a rule, only with δύνασθαι, βούλεσθαι, superlatives, and as correl. of οὕτως.——**κόπτοντες**: pl. with collective noun.——**ξύλοις**: *as fuel*; pred.——**μικρὸν προϊόντες**: cogn. accus. denoting extent of space. Cf. πολὺ ἀπέσπα and πέτονται βραχύ i. 5. 3; μακρότερον ἐσφενδόνων iii. 4. 16.——**οὗ**: (to) *where.* Cf. ὅπου iii. 2. 34.——**ἠνάγκαζον**: *had from time to time compelled*, for the deserters did not come all at once. Note the pres. ptc. For plpf. force, see on ἐφύλαττον i. 2. 22.——**τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας**: cf. i. 10. 6.——**φέρεσθαι**: inf. of purpose after ἦσαν. Gl. 565; G. 1532; H. 951; GMT. 772 c; B. 592.——**κρέα**: in emphatic position instead of between ptc. and verb.——**ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν**: see on ταύτην τ. ἡ. § 3.

7. καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν: as i. 8. 1, 8.——**περὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγοράν**: see on i. 8. 1.——**βάρβαροι**: *sc.* ὄντες.——**ἦν δ' αὐτῶν . . . Ἕλλην**: independent const. for εἷς δ' Ἕλλην. αὐτῶν part. gen. The εἷς may be directed against Ctesias, who claimed (Plut. *Artox.* 13) to have been also present.——**ἐντίμως ἔχων**: *to be in honor.* See on εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν i. 1. 5.——**προσεποιεῖτο**: *professed*, generally falsely = *simulare.* Cf. i. 3. 14.——**ἐπιστήμων . . . τάξεις**: *gnarus rerum tacticarum.* Gl. 516 b; G. 1142; H. 754 a.——**τῶν ἀμφὶ τάξεις**: periphrasis for τῶν τακτικῶν.

8. νικῶν: see on i. 10. 4.——**παραδόντας**: subord. to **ἰόντας** εὑρίσκεσθαι. See on ὑπολαβών i. 1. 7.——**τὰς βασιλέως θύρας**: cf. i. 9. 3.——**εὑρίσκε-**

σθαι . . . ἀγαθόν: *to seek to obtain some good if they can.* The common obj. is attracted into the dependent clause. Cf. vii. 1. 31 *ἦν μὲν δυνώμεθα παῤ ὑμῶν ἀγαθόν τι εὑρίσκεσθαι.*

9. βαρέως ἤκουσαν: as *Ages.* 8. 2. Cf. § 4, and see on i. 3. 3.——**τοσοῦτον**: *just so much.* See on i. 3. 15.——**τῶν νικώντων**: see on § 4.——**ἔχετε**: *sc.* **ἀποκρίνασθαι**, to which **ὅ τι** is cogn. accus.——**τὰ ἱερὰ ἐξῃρημένα**: *the vitals that had been taken out* of the victims.——**θυόμενος**: cf. i. 7. 18. "*θύειν*, to sacrifice for the divinity's sake, *i. e.* to honor him; *θύεσθαι*, to sacrifice for the worshipper's sake, *i. e.* when he seeks information through omens or has a special request to make of the god" (Stengel).

Page 48.

10. ἔνθα δή: cf. i. 5. 8.——**πρόσθεν ἤ**: *prius quam.*——**ἂν ἀποθάνοιεν**: hypothet. or pot. opt., which is retained in indir. disc. See on i. 6. 2.——**Ἀλλ'**: cf. § 4.——**πότερα . . . ἤ**: indir. alternative questions. See on i. 4. 13.——**ὡς κρατῶν**: see on *ὡς ἐπιβουλεύοντος* i. 1. 6.——**ὡς διὰ φιλίαν**: *on the* (alleged) *ground of friendship*, answering to *ὡς κρατῶν* and = *ὡς φίλος ὤν.*——**δῶρα**: pred. *as gifts.*——**τί δεῖ . . . καὶ οὐ λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα**: cf. *Hellen.* vii. 4. 25 *τί δεῖ ἡμᾶς μάχεσθαι ἀλλ' οὐ σπεισαμένους διαλυθῆναι, why must we fight rather than make a truce and separate?*——**οὐ**: to be taken with **δεῖ**, *why should he not come and get them?*——**πείσας**: opp. to *ὡς κρατῶν.*——**τί ἔσται . . . χαρίσωνται**: cf. i. 7. 8 *τί σφίσιν ἔσται, ἐὰν κρατήσωσιν.*——**ταῦτα**: cogn. accus.

11. πρὸς ταῦτα: *in reply to this*, asyndeton, as i. 3. 20.——**τίς . . . ἀντιποιεῖται**: *who is there who disputes the kingdom with him*, (lit. 'works against him for'). For the dat., see Gl. 525; G. 1177; H. 772; B. 376. For the simple gen. (Gl. 509 c, 510 d; G. 1128; H. 739 a; B. 356) in this const., cf. 3. 23, iv. 7. 12. **περὶ** with gen. v. 2. 11.——**ἑαυτοῦ εἶναι**: pred. poss. gen. See on *Τισσαφέρνους* i. 1. 6.——**ἔχων, δυνάμενος**: causal ptcs. Note the chiastic order.——**μέσῃ τῇ χώρᾳ**: see on *μέσου τοῦ παραδείσου* i. 2. 7.——**οὐδ' εἰ**: *not even if*, the neg. belonging to *δύναισθε ἄν.* Cf. i. 6. 8.——**παρέχοι**: *sc.* **αὐτούς**. Cf. 3. 22.

12. εἰ μή: *except.* See on i. 4. 18.——**ἄν**: belongs in both clauses to the inf., representing pot. opt., the ptcs. forming the protasis. See on *ἂν εἶναι* i. 3. 6.——**παραδώσειν**: *sc.* **ἡμᾶς** from **ἡμῖν**.——**ἀλλὰ . . . μαχούμεθα**: the transition to independent const. adds emphasis.——**σὺν τούτοις**: = *ἔχοντες ταῦτα.* Cf. *ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα* in § 20.

13. Ἀλλὰ . . . ἀχάριτα: ironical.——**φιλοσόφῳ ἔοικας**: *you are like a philosopher, i. e.* unpractical.——**ἀχάριτα**: cf. Hom. *Od.* viii. 236.——**ἴσθι ὤν**: *know that you are.* Gl. 587; G. 1588; H. 982.——**περιγενέσθαι ἄν . . . δυνάμεως**: *would prove superior to the king's power*, the inf. representing pot. opt. Cf. i. 1. 10 *περιγενόμενος ἂν τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν*, and see on const. there.

Page 49.

14. λέγειν: inf. impf., as i. 9. 23.——**ὑπομαλακιζομένους**: *weakening.* ——**ἄλλο τι χρῆσθαι**: *to make any other use* of them. See on *τί χρῆσθαι* i. 3. 18.——**συγκαταστρέψαιντ' ἂν αὐτῷ**: *sc.* **Αἴγυπτον.** The apod. adapted to the second prot., instead of a general apod. suitable to both protases.

15. ἐν τούτῳ: see on i. 5. 15.——**ὑπολαβών**: abs., as iii. 1. 27, 31.—— **ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει**: in part. appos. with *οὗτοι*, the verb agreeing with the nearer subj. For the part. appos., see on *τὰ μέν, τὰ δέ* i. 8. 20. Cf. *ἄλλοι ἄλλως* i. 6. 11.——**λέγεις**: *have to say.*

16. ἄσμενος: for pred. adj. for adv., see on *προτέρα* i. 2. 25.——**οἶμαι**: practically parenthetical, and so without influence on the const. of the sent.——**πράγμασι**: *difficulties*, as i. 3. 3.——**συμβουλευόμεθά σοι**: *we ask your advice.* Cf. i. 1. 10.——**περὶ ὧν**: see on *ἀνθ' ὧν* i. 3. 4.

17. πρὸς θεῶν: see on i. 6. 6.——**εἰς**: see on i. 7. 1.——**ἀναλεγόμενον**: *when told* (lit. 'spoken out'); so used only here in Attic, it seems.——**τάδε**: *as follows.*——**ἂν συμβουλεύσῃς**: cond. rel. See on *ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ* i. 3. 5.

18. ταῦτα ὑπήγετο: *made these suggestions craftily.* For cogn. acc., cf. *τὰ ἄλλα* i. 3. 3.——**ὑποστρέψας**: *turning adroitly, i. e.* eluding the trap.——**παρὰ τὴν δόξαν**: *contrary to his expectation.* Cf. *παρὰ τὰς σπονδάς* i. 9. 8.

19. τῶν μυρίων: for the art. with the numeral, see on *τὰ εἴκοσι* i. 7. 10. ——**μία τις**: *any one*, *τις* emphasizing the indefiniteness.

Page 50. ——**σωθῆναι**: inf. depending on *ἐλπίς* (from *ἐλπίδων*), as *καθεύδειν* on *ὥρα* i. 3. 11.——**πολεμοῦντας**: for accus. after *ὑμῖν*, see on *λαβόντα* i. 2. 1.——**ἄκοντος**: see on i. 3. 17.

20. ἀλλά: see on i. 8. 17.——**ταῦτα μέν**: summing up what Phalinus said. See on i. 10. 18.——**τάδε**: *as follows.* On the distinction between *ταῦτα* and *τάδε*, see G. 1005; H. 696.——**φίλους εἶναι**: *sc.* *ἡμᾶς.*——**πλείονος**: for the gen., see on *πολλοῦ* i. 3. 12.——**ἂν εἶναι**: see on i. 3. 6.—— **ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα**: second prot. to **ἂν εἶναι.**

21. μένουσι . . . εἵησαν: gen. cond. In the dir. form it was *μένουσι μὲν ὑμῖν* (= *ἢν μὲν μένητε*) . . . *σπονδαί εἰσιν.* Cf. *σπονδαί εἰσιν* below. ——**αὐτοῦ**: cf. 2. 1 and see on i. 3. 11.——**εἴπατε**: Gl. 351; G. 671; H. 438. The form *εἴπατε* is more frequent than *εἴπετε.*——**ὡς πολέμου ὄντος . . . ἀπαγγελῶ**: *or on the assumption that there is war shall I take back word from you.* For the const., see on i. 3. 6.

22. ἡμῖν ταὐτὰ δοκεῖ ἅπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ: *we are in exact agreement with the king.* See on *οἷαπερ καί* i. 3. 18.——**τί**: for the sing., see on i. 10. 14.——**ἀπεκρίνατο**: note the asyndeton.——**σπονδαί**: *sc.* **εἰσιν.**

23. ὅ τι ποιήσοι: indir. question. Gl. 621; G. 1287; H. 855 a; B. 673.

CHAPTER II

CLEARCHUS JOINS ARIAEUS IN THE NIGHT. PANIC IN BOTH THE GREEK ARMY AND THAT OF THE KING

1. οἱ παρὰ Ἀριαίου: for the gen., see on i. 1. 5.——**βελτίους**: *of higher rank.*——**οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι**: *who would not tolerate it*, inf. by assimilation for the opt. G. 1524; H. 947; B. 671 N.——**αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος**: gen. abs. = cond. Cf. **ἀνέξεσθαι . . . ὁρῶντα** vii. 7. 47.——**ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε**: transition to dir. disc.——**ἤδη**: *straightway*, as i. 3. 11.——**τῆς νυκτός**: Gl. 515; G. 1136; H. 759; B. 359.——**εἰ δὲ μή**: *otherwise.* If the verb were expressed, we should have **ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἥκητε**. Gl. 656 c; G. 1417; H. 906; B. 616, 3.——**ἀπιέναι**: fut. in sense. See on **ἰέναι** i. 3. 1.

2. χρὴ ποιεῖν: *sc.* **ὑμᾶς**.——**ὥσπερ**: *i. e.* **χρὴ ποιεῖν ὥσπερ**.——**εἰ δὲ μή**: after **ἐὰν μέν**. See on § 1.——**πράττετε**: expresses the same
Page 51. idea, but more vividly than **χρὴ ποιεῖν**.——**ὁποῖόν τι**: *whatsoever*, as iii. 1. 13. For the indefiniteness added by **τι**, see on **χαλκός τις** i. 8. 8.——**οὐδὲ τούτοις**: *not even to these*, as not to Phalinus also. Cf. i. 23.

3. δύνοντος: Ionic form here and § 13 for the usual Attic **δύεσθαι** (§ 16 and freq.).——**ἰέναι**: inf. of purpose with **οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά**, *the sacrifices did not become* (favorable) *for going.* For **οὐκ ἐγίγνετο** in this sense, cf. Dio Chrysostom Or. vii. p. 119 **κυάμων δὲ ἡμίεκτον· οὐ γὰρ ἐγένοντο τῆτες**, *for they did not turn out right.*——**καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα**: *and naturally then*, as vi. 4. 18.——**ἐν μέσῳ**: *between.* Cf. 4. 17, 21.——**Τίγρης**: not the river, as Clearchus supposed, but prob. a canal.——**ἡμεῖς**: expressed for emphasis. Gl. 557; G. 985; H. 677; B. 467.——**οὐ μὲν δή**: *not indeed.* See on i. 9. 13.——**οἷόν τε**: *sc.* **ἐστιν**. G. 1024 b; H. 1000; B. 441 a.

4. ἰέναι: dependent on **καλὰ ἡμῖν τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν**.——**ἀπιόντας**: *sc.* **ἡμᾶς**, *with a view to going away.*——**δειπνεῖν ὅ τι τις ἔχει**: *to dine on whatever one has.*——**ἐπειδὰν σημήνῃ τῷ κέρατι**: *whenever he shall signal with the horn.* The subj. is implied in the verb, as **ἐσάλπιγξε** i. 2. 17.——**ὡς ἀναπαύεσθαι**: *as if to go to rest.* **ὡς** implies Clearchus's intention to deceive.——**συσκευάζεσθε**: note the transition to imperative, as **πράττετε** in § 2.——**τὸ δεύτερον**: *sc.* **σημήνῃ**, cogn. accus.——**ἐπὶ τῷ τρίτῳ**: *sc.* **σημείῳ**, *at the third signal.*——**τῷ ἡγουμένῳ**: (neut.) *the van.* Cf. **τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ στρατεύματος** 4. 26, and **οἱ ἡγούμενοι** vi. 5. 12.——**πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ**: *next to the river.* G. 1216 a; H. 805, 1 a; B. 414, 1. Cf. **πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων** iv. 3. 26.——**τὰ ὅπλα**: for **τοὺς ὁπλίτας**, see on **ἀσπίς** i. 7. 10.——**ἔξω**: *on the outside*, to meet any attack from the enemy.

5. ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες: asyndeton as i. 3. 13.——**τὸ λοιπόν**: *for the future*, adv. acc., as in iii. 2. 8, 38. Cf. *τὸ ἀρχαῖον* i. 1. 6; *τὸ σύμπαν* i. 5. 9. ——**ὃ μὲν ἦρχεν**: *i. e.* Clearchus. *ἄρχειν* of chief command, as vi. 1. 30. ——**οὐχ ἑλόμενοι, ἀλλ' ὁρῶντες**: causal ptcs.——**ἐφρόνει**: the impf. expresses Xen.'s view at the time of writing; *φρονεῖ* or *φρονοίη* would express the view of the soldiers. Gl. 624 c; G. 1489, 1501; H. 936.——**οἷα δεῖ**: *sc. φρονεῖν*.

7. ἐντεῦθεν: *from there*, *i. e.* the camp, where they had been during the events mentioned since i. 10. 17.——**Μιλτοκύθης**: the first deserter from the Greek army.——**εἰς τετταράκοντα**: cf. i. 5. 13. For *εἰς* and *ὡς* with numerals, see on i. 2. 3.

8. τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγεῖτο: = *τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγεμὼν ἦν*, dat. of advantage. *ἡγεῖσθαι* with dat. as in iv. 6. 2, v. 2. 6, vii. 1. 33, 40.——**κα-**

Page 52. **τὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα**: *according to orders*, as mentioned § 4. ——**τὸν πρῶτον σταθμόν**: *i. e.* the first from the battlefield, from which they had set off the day before the battle and whither Ariaeus had fled after the battle (1. 3, i. 10. 1).——**ἐκείνου**: for the sake of more definite expression, though referring to one just mentioned. Cf. i. 2. 15, 8. 26, 27.——**ἐν τάξει θέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα**: *halting in line under arms.* We should have expected *θεμένων*, but the ptc. of the whole takes the case of the parts (*οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί*). Cf. *μαχόμενοι* i. 8. 27. ——**οἱ κράτιστοι**: *the highest in rank.* Cf. *βελτίους* in § 1.——**μήτε, τε**: *both not, and.* Cf. Lat. *neque, et.* For *μή* with inf. in indir. disc., see Gl. 577 b, 579 a; G. 1496; H. 1024; B. 549, 2.——**προσώμοσαν**: *swore besides.* Cf. *προσαιτοῦσι* i. 3. 21.——**ἡγήσεσθαι**: *will lead the way.*

9. σφάξαντες: *after they had slaughtered.* For the relation of this ptc. and *βάπτοντες*, see on *ὑπολαβών* i. 1. 7.——**ταῦρον καὶ κάπρον καὶ κριόν**: cf. Lat. *su-ove-taurilia.*——**εἰς ἀσπίδα**: *i. e.* the blood was caught in the hollow of a shield.——**βάπτοντες . . . λόγχην**: symbolizing the wish for a like fate in case of perjury.

10. ἐπεὶ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο: *when the pledges had been made.* *γενέσθαι*, as often = passive of *ποιεῖν*. Cf. 5. 3. For *τὰ πιστά*, cf. i. 6. 7. With the pledges here given, cf. 3. 28 and iv. 8. 7.——**ἄγε δή**: *age vero.* Cf. v. 4. 9, vii. 6. 33.——**στόλος**: *expedition.* Note the different meaning in § 12.——**ἧπερ ἤλθομεν**: *sc. ὁδόν.* For the const., see Gl. 536 a; G. 1057; B. 333.——**δοκεῖς**: *think*, as i. 7. 1, 8. 2.

11. ἀπιόντες: = *εἰ ἀπίοιμεν*.——**ὑπὸ λιμοῦ**: as i. 5. 5.——**σταθμῶν**: practically gen. of time.——**τῶν ἐγγυτάτω**: for adj. force of the adv., see on *τῶν οἴκοι* i. 1. 10.——**εἴχομεν λαμβάνειν**: Gl. 565 b.——**κατεδαπανήσαμεν**: *consumed.* For force of *κατα—*, cf. *καθηδυπάθησα* i. 3. 3.——**νῦν δέ**: antithesis to *ἦν μέν*.——**πορεύεσθαι μακροτέραν**: *sc. ὁδόν.* For const., see on *ἧπερ* above.

12. πορευτέον: *sc. ἐστί.* Gl. 596 b; G. 1597; H. 990; B. 665.——**σταθμούς**: cogn. acc. Cf. *iter facere.*——**ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα μακροτάτους**: *the longest that we can.* See on i. 1. 6.——**ὡς πλεῖστον**: cogn. acc. Cf. *μικρὸν προϊόντες* i. 6.——**τοῦ β. στρατεύματος**: ablat. gen. See on *διέσχον ἀλλήλων* i. 10. 4.——**τριῶν ἡμερῶν ὁδόν**: gen. of measure and accus. of distance.——**οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται**: for the emphatic negative, see Gl. 489 a; G. 1360; H. 1032; B. 569, 2.——**ὀλίγῳ στρατεύματι**: dat. of

Page 53. military accompaniment. Gl. 525 a; G. 1190; H. 774; B. 392. See on i. 7. 14.——**ἔγωγε**: the pers. pron. emphasized by the position as well as by the particle **γε**.

13. ἣν δυναμένη: *was equivalent to, meant.* *δύνασθαι* = *valere.* The periphrasis adds emphasis. Cf. iv. 5. 15 *ἣν ἀτμίζουσα.*——**ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν**: see on i. 4. 8.——**ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι**: note the omission of the art. in this phrase, though just before we have *τὸν ἥλιον.* Cf. *ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ δυομένῳ* § 16. For *δύνοντι*, see on § 3.——**τοῦτο οὐχ ἐψεύσθησαν**: *in this they were not deceived.* For const. of the acc., see on i. 3. 10, 8. 11.

14. δεῖλην: see on i. 8. 1, 8.——**τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: part. gen. limiting the rel. clause. Cf. i. 7. 13.——**οἳ μὴ ἔτυχον**: cond. rel. clause, hence *μή.* Gl. 615, 486; G. 1610; H. 1021; B. 621.——**ἐτύγχανε γὰρ . . . ἐτέτρωτο**: this clause, which is parenthetical, is explanatory of *καταβὰς κτέ.*——**διότι**: rare in Xen.

15. ἐν ᾧ: *while*, as i. 10. 10.——**νέμοιντο**: for pl. verb with neut. pl. subj., see on i. 4. 4.——**ἐστρατοπεδεύετο**: where pres. indic. or opt. was to be expected. Gl. 624 c; G. 1489; H. 936.

16. ἀπειρηκότας: *exhausted.* Cf. *ἀπαγορεύουσιν* i. 5. 3. For const., see on i. 4. 16.——**οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε**: *he did not, however, turn aside either.* Gl. 487; G. 1619; H. 1030; B. 433.——**εὐθύωρον**: originally a cogn. accus. of the way gone over. See on *ἤπερ* § 10. The word occurs elsewhere only in late writers.——**ἅμα τῷ ἡλίῳ δυομένῳ**: see on § 13.——**τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν ξύλα**: for the prep. *ἀπό* (*terminus ex quo*), see on *τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων* i. 2. 3.

17. ὅμως: *i. e.* although the villages had been pillaged.——**σκοταῖοι**: *in the dark*, adj. for adv., see on *προτέρα* i. 2. 25.——**ἐτύγ-**

Page 54. **χανον**: *sc. αὐλιζόμενοι.*——**ὥστε ἀκούειν, ὥστε ἔφυγον**: on the difference of mood, see Gl. 566 b, last ex., 639 a; G. 1450, 1451; H. 927; B. 595.——**οἱ ἐγγύτατα**: see on *τῶν ἐγγυτάτω* § 11.

18. τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ: see on *τῇ προτεραίᾳ* i. 3.——**οὔτε . . . οὐδὲν . . . οὐδαμοῦ**: for the negs., see on i. 2. 26.——**καὶ βασιλεύς**: *even the king*, as well as *οἱ ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων* (§ 17).——**ἐδήλωσε**: by way of change from *δῆλον ἐγένετο* just above.——**οἷς**: assimilated to case of omitted antecedent, the regular English construction. See on *οἵαπερ* i. 3. 18.

19. καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι: *on the Greeks too*, as well as on the Persians.

For the const., see Gl. 598 a; G. 1179; H. 775; B. 394.——**φόβος**: a so-called *πανικὸς φόβος* or *πανικὸν δεῖμα*.——**δοῦπος**: poetical word. Cf. *δουπεῖν* i. 8. 18.——**οἷον εἰκὸς γίγνεσθαι**: *as is likely to occur*.

20. ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων: see on i. 1. 2.——**ἄριστον τῶν τότε**: cf. Hom. *Il.* v. 786 of *Stentor*.——**ἀνειπεῖν**: *to proclaim*, as v. 2. 18.——**ὃς ἂν . . . μηνύσῃ, ὅτι λήψεται**: rel. more vivid fut. cond.——**τὸν ὄνον**, *the ass*, as though the recognized cause of the disturbance. Cf. Polyaen. iii. 9. 4, who relates this of Iphicrates.——**τὰ ὅπλα**: which, in a Greek camp, were stacked in one place.

21. εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὅπλα τίθεσθαι: *to get in line under arms*.——**ἥπερ εἶχον**: *just as they were*.——**ἡ μάχη**: *the battle* of Cunaxa.

CHAPTER III

ARMISTICE CONCLUDED BETWEEN THE GREEKS AND PERSIANS. AGREEMENT MADE BY TISSAPHERNES WITH THE GREEKS

1. ὃ δὲ δὴ ἔγραψα: *ὅ* relative, *what*. Cf. 2. 18.——**πέμπων**: *sc. κήρυκας*. Cf. 1. 7.——**ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνατέλλοντι**: see on 1. 3.

2. τυχὼν . . . ἐπισκοπῶν: *as he chanced to be at that moment inspecting the ranks*. See on i. 1. 2.——**εἶπεν . . . κελεύειν**: see on *ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν* i. 3. 8.——**ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ**: *until he should get time*. The subjv. retained in indir. disc. See on i. 4. 13. For the ingressive aor., see Gl. 464 a; G. 1260; H. 841; B. 529. *ἄχρι*, *until*, only here in Anab., and rare in Attic prose. Cf. *ἄχρι εἰς* v. 5. 4.

3. ὡς καλῶς ἔχειν ὁρᾶσθαι: *so as to present a fine appearance* (lit. 'so as to be fine to be seen'). For inf. with *καλῶς*, see Gl.
Page 55. 565 a; G. 1528; H. 952; B. 641.——**πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνήν**: *a compact phalanx on all sides*, practically appos. to *στράτευμα*.——**πάντῃ**: originally locative. Cf. *πάντῃ πάντα . . . πάντων* 5. 7.——**δέ**: note late position, after prep. phrase expressing single adv. idea.——**μηδένα**: for neg. with inf., Gl. 564; G. 1611; H. 1023; B. 633.——**τε . . . τε . . . καὶ . . . καί**: the first *τε* correl. with second *καί*, second *τε* with first *καί*.——**τῶν αὐτοῦ στρατιωτῶν**: on the pred. position of the part. gen., see G. 1089; H. 730 d; B. 355 N.; on the attrib. position of *αὐτοῦ*, Gl. 554 a; G. 1089; H. 673 b; B. 457, 2.——**ταὐτά**: *i. e.*, *προελθεῖν . . . εὐειδεστάτους*.

4. ἥκοιεν . . . ἔσονται: on the partial change of mood in indir. disc., see on i. 6. 3.——**ἄνδρες**: appos. to subj. of *ἥκοιεν*.——**ἄνδρες οἵτινες**: *men who* (such that they). Cf. 5. 21, 6. 6, i. 3. 14.——**ἱκανοὶ . . . ἀπαγγεῖλαι**: see on inf. with *ἱκανοί* i. 1. 5.

5. μάχης: gen. of want. Gl. 512; G. 1112; H. 743 b. A very enticing conjecture is Mehler's *μάζης* for *μάχης*, adopted by Cobet and Rehdantz-Carnuth.——**ἄριστον . . . ἄριστον**: for the chiastic order and most important word (*ἄριστον, lunch*) coming first and last, see on *ἤγγελλον* i. 7. 18. Cf. 4. 20, iii. 2. 11, iv. 4. 13. It is the rhetorical figure called *κύκλος*.——**οὐδ' ὁ τολμήσων**: *nor one who will dare.* Cf. *ὁ ἡγησόμενος οὐδεὶς ἔσται* 4. 5.——**μὴ πορίσας**: = *ἐὰν μὴ πορίσῃ*.

6. ἦκον: as in § 24, i. 9.——**ᾧ**: *whereby*, referring to the idea of the preceding clause.——**δοκοῖεν . . . ἥκοιεν**: note the change of subj., *that they* (the Greeks) *seemed to the king to make a reasonable demand* (*i. e.* the king thought that they, etc.), *and that they* (the messengers) *had returned.*——**οἳ . . . ἄξουσιν**: rel. with fut. indic. to express purpose. Gl. 615, 619; G. 1442; H. 911; B. 591. See on *ὅστις ἀπάξει* i. 3. 14.——**ἔνθεν ἕξουσι**: *i. e. ἐκεῖσε ἔνθεν*. Future in rel. clause expressing result. Gl. 615, 620; G., 1447; H. 910; B. 597. Cf. *ὅθεν* i. 3. 17. For the retention of the fut. indic. after *δοκοῖεν, ἥκοιεν*, see on § 4.

7. εἰ αὐτοῖς . . . ἀπιοῦσι: *whether he was making a truce merely with the men who were going and coming, i. e.* with the envoys. The opt. represents indic. of dir. disc. For the dat., see Gl. 523 a; G. 1165; H. 767; B. 378.——**μέχρι ἂν . . . διαγγελθῇ**: for orig. mood retained, see on *ἄχρι ἂν* § 2.

8. μεταστησάμενος: *having caused them to stand aside.* Cf. *μεταστάντες* § 21.——**ἐδόκει . . . ποιεῖσθαι**: cf. *ἐδόκει πορεύεσθαι* i. 2. 1.——**καθ' ἡσυχίαν**: *quietly, i. e.* undisturbed by the enemy. The opposite expression is *κατὰ σπουδήν* (vii. 6. 28).——**ἐπί**: *after, i. e.* to fetch them. Cf. *ἥξουσι ἐπ' αὐτούς·* iv. 5. 19. *πρός* below means simply *to.*

9. οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε: *not quickly, however.* See on i. 4. 8.——**ἔστ' ἄν**: Gl. 631; G. 1465; H. 921; B. 626.——**μὴ ἀποδόξῃ**: obj. clause after verb of fearing. Gl. 611 b; G. 1378; H. 887. For force of *ἀπο* —, cf. *ἀποψηφίσωνται* i. 4. 15. Cf. Hdt. i. 152 *ἀπέδοξέ σφι μὴ τιμωρέειν Ἴωσι*.

10. οἳ μέν: opp. to *Κλέαρχος μέντοι*.——**τὰς μὲν . . . ἐν τάξει**: *though under truce, yet with his army in line*, because he feared
Page 56. treachery.——**ἐνετύγχανον τάφροις**: for dat. see Gl. 598 a; G. 1179; H. 775; B. 394. Cf. *οἷς ἐνετύγχανεν* i. 8. 1.——**ὡς μὴ δύνασθαι**: *so that they could not.* For *ὡς* = *ὥστε*, see on i. 5. 10.——**διαβάσεις**: *crossings.* Cf. iii. 4. 20, 23.——**ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες**: *had fallen*, periphrastic plpf. act., which puts emphasis on the state. See Gl. 456 d; GMT. 45.——**τοὺς δὲ καί**: *but others also.* Cf. *οἳ δὲ καί* i. 5. 13.

11. Κλέαρχον: prolepsis. See on *τῶν βαρβάρων* i. 1. 5.——**τὸ δορύ**: *his spear*, art. because the spear was part of the regular equipment.——**πρὸς τοῦτο**: *i. e.* to the work in hand.——**βλακεύειν**: = *μαλακίζεσθαι*. Cf. v. 8. 15.——**ἔπαισεν ἄν**: iterative aor. (Gl. 467 a; G. 1296; H. 835 a; B.

568) in gen. cond. For an instance of Clearchus' infliction of blows, cf. i. 5. 11.——**προσελάμβανεν**: *laid hold too.* Cf. § 12.——**μὴ οὐ**: double neg. because of the neg. idea implied in **αἰσχύνην εἶναι.** Gl. 572 a; G. 1616; H. 1034; GMT. 817; B. 434.——**συσπουδάζειν**: *to share his zeal.* Cf. *συνεπισπεῦσαι* i. 5. 8.

12. **πρὸς αὐτό**: cf. *πρὸς τοῦτο* § 11.——**εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη**: *up to thirty years.*——**σπουδάζοντα**: *full of zeal.*

13. **πολύ**: adv. = dat. of degree of difference. Cf. *πολὺ θᾶττον* i. 5. 2. ——**μὴ ἀεὶ . . . εἶναι**: indir. form of the question, *μὴ ἀεί εἰσιν, they are not always so full, are they?*——**ἄρδειν**: inf. dependent on *οἷα.* Gl. 565 a, ex. 5; G. 1526; H. 1000; B. 641. Summer was the season to irrigate, and this was the middle of October.——**ἤδη**: *already*, the same idea being further emphasized in **προφαίνοιτο.**——**τούτου ἕνεκα**: emphatic repetition of the idea of the *ἵνα* clause.——**ὑπώπτευεν**: the change of const. requires the repetition of the word.

14. **ὅθεν**: = **ἐξ ὧν.** Cf. § 16, i. 3.——**ἀπέδειξεν**: *pointed out, directed.* ——**οἶνος φοινίκων**: *palm wine.* See on *τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ φοίνικος* i. 5. 10. For the gen. of material, see G. 1085, 4; H. 729 f; B. 352.——**ὄξος . . . αὐτῶν**: *a sour wine made by boiling from the same.*

15. **ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησι**: see on *εἰς Πισίδας* i. 1. 11.——**ἔστιν ἰδεῖν**: *it is possible to see, are to be seen.* On *ἔστιν*, see Gl. 384 b (3); G. 144, 5; H. 480, 1; B. 262, 1.——**τοῖς οἰκέταις ἀπέκειντο**: *were laid aside for the domestics.* **ἀπέκειντο** = pass. of *ἀπετίθεσαν.*——**θαυμάσιαι τοῦ κάλλους**: *wonderful for beauty*, gen. of cause.——**ἠλέκτρου**: abridged for *ἠλέκτρου ὄψεως.* G. 1178; H. 773 b. For const. of gen., see Gl. 509 a; G. 1117; H. 748.——**οὐδὲν διέφερεν**: see on *οὐδὲν ἦχθετο* i. 1. 8.——**τὰς δέ τινας**: *some others.*——**τραγήματα**: *as sweetmeats* (from *τρώγειν*), esp. dried fruits eaten for dessert. Cf. *τὰ τρωκτά* v. 3. 12. ——**ἦν**: *sc. τὸ τράγημα.*——**καὶ παρὰ πότον**: *also at a symposium.*

Page 57.

16. **τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος**: *the crown* (lit. 'brain') *of the palm*, the cabbage-like growth at the top of the tree, containing the germs of the leaves, still a favorite food of Syrians and Arabs.——**τοῦτο**: neuter, though referring to *ἐγκέφαλος.* Cf. i. 5. 10.——**ὅθεν ἐξαιρεθείη**: opt. in gen. rel. cond. For **ὅθεν**, see on § 14.

17. **γυναικός**: the queen's name was Stateira. Cf. Plut. *Artox.* 5. ff. ——**ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς**: *met them*, like Lat. *iis obviam ierunt.*——**δι' ἑρμηνέως**: as iv. 2. 18, 5. 34.——**τοιάδε**: see on i. 3. 2.

18. **πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα**: *many difficulties.* When adjs. like *πολύς* and *ὀλίγος* are thus connected with another attribute the *καί* is usually disregarded in translation.——**εὕρημα ἐποιησάμην**: *I considered it a find.* *εὕρημα* as in vii. 3. 13. Cf. *περὶ πλείστου π.* i. 9. 7.——**εἴ πως δυναίμην**: for the opt., see Gl. 652; G. 1420; H. 907; GMT. 489; B. 613.——**δοῦναι,**

ἀποσῶσαι: δοῦναι dependent on αἰτήσασθαι, ἀποσῶσαι on δοῦναι.——**ἀποσῶσαι ὑμᾶς εἰς**: *get you back safe into.*——**οἶμαι . . . ἔχειν**: *for I think it would not be a thankless task for me.* Note the unusual position of ἄν before οὐκ. For **ἂν ἔχειν**, see on **ἂν εἶναι** i. 9. 1.——**πρὸς ὑμῶν**: *on the part of you.* G. 1216, 1 b; H. 805, 1 c; B. 414, 1.

19. ταῦτα γνούς: *believing this.*——**ἐπιστρατεύοντα**: suppl. ptc. Gl. 586 b; G. 1588; H. 981; B. 661. For the facts, cf. i. 2. 4.——**κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας**: *opposite the Greeks.* Cf. i. 8. 21, 10. 4.——**διήλασα**: cf. i. 10. 7.——**αὐτῷ**: *sc.* βασιλεῖ.

20. βουλεύσεσθαι: for the tense, see Gl. 577 a; G. 1286; 948 a; B. 549, 2. Note the chiasmus (βουλεύσεσθαι· ἐρέσθαι).——**ἐλθόν-**
Page 58. **τα**: expressed for vividness, though not necessary to the sense. Cf. i. 10.——**ἐάν τι δύνωμαι ἀγαθόν**: see on i. 8.——**παρ' αὐτοῦ διαπράξασθαι**: *ab eo impetrare.* Cf. 6. 2 διαπραξάμενος, ὡς ἐδύνατο, παρὰ τῶν ἐφόρων.

21. πρὸς ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο: cf. i. 3. 19.——**μεταστάντες**: *having retired.* Cf. μεταστησάμενος § 8.——**Κλέαρχος δ' ἔλεγεν**: *but Clearchus was spokesman.* Cf. 5. 39.——**ὡς βασιλεῖ πολεμήσοντες**: for ὡς with fut. ptc., see on ὡς ἀποκτενῶν i. 1. 3. For const. of the dat., see on Τισσαφέρνει i. 1. 8.

22. ᾐσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς καὶ ἀνθρώπους: *we were ashamed before gods and men.* For the const., see Gl. 530 a; G. 1049; H. 712; B. 329, 1.——**προδοῦναι**: for the obj. inf., see Gl. 570 c; G. 1519; H. 948; B. 638.——**παρέχοντες κτέ**: *as hitherto we had been allowing ourselves for him to treat us receive favors at his hands* (lit. 'presented ourselves for him to treat us well'). The impf. ptc. is causal. See on στρατευομένων i. 2. 3.——**εὖ ποιεῖν**: inf. of purpose. See on i. 2. 19.

23. οὔτε βασιλεῖ . . . τῆς ἀρχῆς: for const. of dat. and gen., see on i. 11. Gl. 510 d.——**οὔτ' ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα**: *nor is there any reason why.*——**βουλοίμεθ' . . . ἐθέλοιμεν**: chiastic.——**τὴν χώραν κακῶς ποιεῖν**: cf. βασιλέα κακῶς ποιεῖν 4. 22; κακῶς ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν i. 6. 7. For this const. with two accs., see on i. 9. 11.——**ἐθέλοιμεν**: *be inclined* (βουλοίμεθα, *wish*).——**ἀδικοῦντα**: *sc.* τινα. Conditional.——**ἡμᾶς . . . ὑπάρχῃ**: *be the first also to treat us well.* See on κακῶς ποιεῖν just above, and for the suppl. ptc., see Gl. 585 b; G. 1580; H. 981; B. 660.——**τοίτου**: gen. with verb implying comparison. Gl. 509 b; G. 1120; H. 749; B. 364. Cf. περιγενέσθαι τῆς βασιλέως δυνάμεως i. 13.——**εἴς γε δύναμιν**: *so far, at least, as we can.* Cf. κατὰ δύναμιν.——**εὖ ποιοῦντες**: *in doing favors*, ptc. of means or manner. Gl. 583; G. 1563, 3; H. 969 a; B. 653, 2, 3. Cf. νικῴη . . . ἀλεξόμενος i. 9. 11.

24. μέχρι δ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἥκω: for the const., see on πρὶν ἄν i. 1. 10, and for force of ἥκω, on i. 4. 13.——**ἀγορὰν παρέξομεν**: *i. e.* an opportunity to buy provisions.

25. εἰς: see on i. 7. 1.——**διαπεπραγμένος παρὰ βασιλέως**: see on § 20.——**δοθῆναι αὐτῷ**: obj. of *διαπεπραγμένος*. Cf. *δοῦναι* **Page 59.** *ἐμοί* § 18.——**καίπερ**: see on i. 6. 10.——**οὐκ ἄξιον . . . ἀφεῖναι**: *unbecoming the king to let go.* Cf. vii. 3. 19 *ἄξιόν σοι . . . τιμῆσαι.*

26. τέλος: see on i. 9. 6.——**πιστά**: see on i. 6. 7.——**παρέξειν**: *sc. ἡμᾶς*, fut. inf. because of the idea of oaths or promises implied in *πιστά*.——**ἦ μήν**: *in very truth*, regular formula of solemn asseveration.——**ὅπου . . . ᾖ**: for cond. rel. clause, see on *ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ* i. 3. 5.——**ἐάσομεν**: transition to dir. disc.

27. πορεύσεσθαι: for fut. inf., see Gl. 577 a; G. 1286; H. 948 a; B. 549, 2.——**διὰ φιλίας**: *sc. χώρας*.——**σῖτα καὶ ποτά**: cf. iii. 2. 28.——**ἕξειν**: dependent on *ὀμόσαι*.

28. ταῦτ' ἔδοξε: cf. i. 3. 20.——**δεξιάς**: see on i. 6. 6. Cf. the giving and receiving of pledges in 2. 10.——**ὤμοσαν καὶ ἔδοσαν**: cf. § 17, where the verb preceding the subjs. is singular.——**αὖ**: *besides.*

29. ὡς βασιλέα: cf. i. 2. 4.——**ἐπειδὰν διαπράξωμαι**: *whenever I shall have accomplished.* GMT. 90.——**ἃ δέομαι**: cogn. accus. Cf. *εἴ τι δέοιτο* i. 3. 4.——**ὡς ἀπάξων**: with *ἥξω*. For the const., see on *ὡς πολεμήσοντες* § 21.——**ἀρχήν**: Caria.

CHAPTER IV

THE GREEKS, DESPITE THEIR SUSPICIONS, ALLOW TISSAPHERNES TO LEAD THEM ACROSS THE TIGRIS

1. περιέμενον: cf. i. 3.——**ἀναγκαῖοι**: *relatives, necessarii.*——**παρεθάρρυνον**: cf. iii. 1. 39.——**δεξιὰς ἔφερον**: *brought pledges*, symbolical expression. See on 3. 26. Cf. *δεξιὰν πέμπειν, Ages.* 3. 4, *dextram mittere* Nep. *Dat.* 10. 2.——**μὴ μνησικακήσειν**: *will not bear them ill will.* Fut. inf. in indir. disc. after practical verb of promising (*δεξιὰς ἔφερον*). Cf. 5. 3. For *μή*, see Gl. 564, 579 a; G. 1496; H. 1024; B. 549, 2.——**τῆς ἐπιστρατείας**: gen. of cause. Gl. 509 c; G. 1126; H. 744; B. 366.——**μηδενός**: for the comp. neg., see on *οὐδενί* i. 2. 26.——**τῶν παροιχομένων**: *of what was past*, as the pres. of this verb has perf. force.

2. ἔνδηλοι ἦσαν προσέχοντες: for pers. const. with suppl. ptc., see on *δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος* i. 2. 11; also on i. 5. 9.——**οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον**: *Ariaeus and his retinue.* Cf. *τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα* i. 10. 3.——**καὶ διὰ** **Page 60.** **τοῦτο**: *i. e.* this neglect of them by Ariaeus, together with his association with the followers of the king and Tissaphernes' long absence.——**τοῖς . . . οὐκ ἤρεσκον, ἀλλά . . . ἔλεγον**: we may translate, *many of the Greeks were displeased with them, and coming to Clearchus they* (*i. e.* the Greeks) *said.*

3. ἤ: introducing second alternative question without preceding *ἤ*. Cf. *an* in Lat.——**ἄν**: belongs to *ποιήσαιτο* (pot. opt.).——**περὶ παντὸς ποιήσαιτο**: see on *περὶ πλείστου ποιοῖτο* i. 9. 7.——**εἴη**: assimilated to the opt. on which it depends. Gl. 642 b, d end; GMT. 180 b.——**στρατεύειν**: dependent on *φόβος εἴη*, which is a periphrasis for the verb (*φοβεῖσθαι*). Cf. *σχολὴ ἦ εὖ ποιεῖν* i. 6. 9. Gl. 565 a; G. 1521; H. 952; B. 641.——**ὑπάγεται**: see on i. 18.——**διὰ τὸ διεσπάρθαι**: cf. *τῷ διεσπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις* i. 6. 9. ——**αὐτῷ**: may be rendered by *his*, though it is a dat. of disadvantage. ——**ἐπὴν ἁλισθῇ**: for fut. pf. force, see on *διαπράξωμαι* 3. 29. *ἁλίζειν* is Ionic and poetical, rare in Attic.——**οὐκ ἔστιν . . . ἡμῖν**: *it is not possible that he will not attack us.* Cf. *οὐκ ἦν ὅπου οὐ* iv. 5. 31. Gl. 638 e. For the two negs. = an affirmative, see Gl. 487 a; G. 1618; H. 1031; B. 433.

4. ἀποσκάπτει τι: *is trenching off some point.* Cf. *καταληψόμενόν τι* i. 10. 16.——**τοσοίδε**: *only so many, i. e.* so few. See on *τοσοῦτον* i. 3. 15. ——**ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις**: hyperbolical here, of course. For the expression here, cf. i. 2. 11.——**καταγελάσαντες**: as in i. 9. 13.

5. εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν, δόξομεν: for the *monitory* cond., see Gl. 648 b; GMT. 447.——**ἐπὶ πολέμῳ**: *for war.* See on *ἐπὶ θανάτῳ* i. 6. 10. Cf. *ἐπὶ γάμῳ* § 8.——**οὐδ'**: *sc. παρέξει.*——**ὅθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα**: cf. *ἔνθεν ἔξουσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια* 3. 6.——**ὁ ἡγησόμενος**: *who will lead.* Cf. *ὁ τολμήσων* 3. 5. ——**ἅμα . . . ποιούντων**: for the adv. with temporal ptc., see Gl. 592; G. 1572; H. 976; B. 655.——**λελείψεται**: for force of the fut. pf., see on *κατακεκόψεσθαι* i. 5. 16.——**οἱ πρόσθεν ὄντες**: *sc. φίλοι.*

6. ποταμός: subj. of the *εἰ* clause, but emphatic by its position.—— **διαβατέος**: for the pers. const., see Gl. 596 a; G. 1595; H. 895; B. 664. ——**τὸν δ' οὖν Εὐφράτην**: proleptic const. For **δ' οὖν**, *at any rate*, see on i. 2. 12.——**οἴδαμεν**: Ionic form for *ἴσμεν*: rare in Attic. Cf. *Oec.* 20. 14. ——**οὐ μὲν δή**: *not indeed.* See on i. 9. 13.——**τῶν δὲ πολεμίων . . . ἄξιοι**: *but our enemies' horsemen are very numerous and valuable.*——**ἱππεῖς**: the few cavalrymen (40) of Clearchus had deserted to the king, 2. 7.—— **νικῶντες**: = *εἰ νικῷμεν.*——**ἡττωμένων . . . σωθῆναι**: *but if defeated it is not possible that one be saved.* Cf. iii. 1. 2 *ἡττηθέντων δ' αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν ληφθείη.*

7. βασιλέα: construed proleptically with *οἶδα*, its place as subj. of *ὀμόσαι* being supplied by *αὐτόν.*——**τὰ σύμμαχα**: *the things that are in alliance* (*i. e.* men, rivers, etc.).——**ὅ τι**: *why*, representing *τί* of dir. question.——**δεξιάν**: see on § 1; 3. 26.——**θεοὺς ἐπιορκῆσαι**: *swear falsely by gods*, as in iii. 1. 22. For const., see on *ᾐσχύνθημεν θεούς* 3. 22.——**τὰ ἑαυτοῦ πιστὰ ἄπιστα ποιῆσαι**: *to make his faith faithless.* Note the paronomasia. For **πιστά**, see on i. 6. 7.

Page 61.

8. ὡς εἰς οἶκον ἀπιών: *as if to go home.* Cf. 3. 29; *Hellen.* iii. 2. 12 *Καρία ἔνθαπερ ὁ Τισσαφέρνους οἶκος.*——**Ὁρόντας**: satrap of Armenia. Cf. iii. 5. 17.——**ἦγε . . . τὴν θυγατέρα**: *sc.* Ὁρόντας. Her name was Rhodogune. Plut. *Artox.* 27.——**ἐπὶ γάμῳ**: *in marriage*, lit. *with a view to* (living with her in) *marriage.* See on **ἐπὶ πολέμῳ** § 5. The marriage had doubtless already been consummated at Babylon. Cf. iii. 4. 13 *Ὁρόντα . . . τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος.*

9. ἐπορεύοντο· ἐπορεύετο: such repetition, in juxtaposition, of the same word (epanastrophe) gives esp. emphasis. Cf. **πλὴν Μιλήτου· ἐν Μιλήτῳ** i. 1. 7; **πλὴν Κύρου· Κῦρος δέ** i. 8. 6.——**ἅμα**: with dat. having about the force of *σύν* just below.

10. ὑφορῶντες: *suspecting* (*suspicantes*).——**αὐτοὶ ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν**: *alone* (lit. 'themselves by themselves'). Cf. vii. 1. 23.——**καὶ πλέον**: *or more.*——**ἐφυλάττοντο ἀλλήλους**: *were on their guard against one another.* Cf. *cavere.* Note the chiastic arrangement of the sent.

11. ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ: *from the same place.* Cf. *ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ* i. 8. 14. For *ἐκ* of the *terminus ex quo*, see on i. 2. 3.——**πληγὰς ἐνέτεινον**: see on *πληγὰς ἐνέβαλεν* i. 5. 11.——**ἔχθραν παρεῖχε**: cf. *φόβον παράσχοι* iii. 1. 18; *ὄχλον παρέχουσιν* iii. 2. 27.

12. τὸ Μηδίας καλούμενον τεῖχος: *the so-called Median Wall.* See on i. 2. 13. The wall mentioned i. 7. 15. It was built originally (about 580 B. C.) to protect the rich plain of Babylonia against the Medes, but under Persian sway it was no longer needed and was at this time doubtless in ruins at many points.——**παρῆλθον εἴσω αὐτοῦ**: *i. e.* towards Babylon. The march was southeastwards.——**ἦν ᾠκοδομημένον**: periphrasis for *ᾠκοδόμητο.*——**πλίνθοις**: dat. of means and manner.——**κειμέναις**: *laid*, pass. of *τίθημι.*——**εὖρος, ὕψος, μῆκος**: for const., see on *εὖρος* i. 2. 23.——**ποδῶν, παρασαγγῶν**: dependent on *τεῖχος.*——**ἐλέγετο**: impf. of the time of which the author writes.

13. τὴν δ' ἐζευγμένην πλοίοις ἑπτά: *the other bridged with seven boats, i. e.* a pontoon bridge. This is the pass. of *ζευγνύναι διώρυχα* (cf. Lat. *fluvium iungere*). Cf. the fuller expression in Hdt. vii. 24 *τὸν Στρυμόνα ποταμὸν ζεύξαντες γεφυρῶσαι, having yoked the river Strymon*
Page 62. *to bridge it.*——**κατετέτμηντο . . . χώραν**: *and from them ditches, too, had been dug* ('cut down') *over the country.*——**ὥσπερ**: *sc. κατατέμνονται.*——**ἐπὶ τὰς μελίνας**: *over the millet*, for the *millet-fields.*

14. δένδρων: most editors construe as gen. of material with **παραδείσου**, not with *δασέος*, on the ground that elsewhere *δασύς* takes the dat. (iv. 7. 6, 8. 2, etc.). But the position is against this, and Vollbrecht is probably right in taking it with *δασέος* (gen. of material with adj. of plenty).——**οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι**: *sc. ἐσκήνησαν.*

15. **ἐν περιπάτῳ**: *on a stroll.*——**πρὸ τῶν ὅπλων**: *i. e.* before the place of the arms. See on 2. 20.——**ἂν ἴδοι**: hypothet. or pot. opt. Cf. i. 7. 2.——**καὶ ταῦτα ὤν**: see on i. 4. 12.

16. **ὅτι**: introducing direct statement. Cf. i. 6. 8.——**ἔπεμψε**: agreeing with the nearer subj. See on **ἦν** i. 2. 3. For the use of the aor., see on i. 9. 25.——**πιστοὶ . . . εὖνοι**: note the chiasmus. For the dat., see on **Κύρῳ** i. 2.——**μὴ . . . ἐπιθῶνται**: const. after verb of fear or caution.——**τῆς νυκτός**: for const., see on 2. 1.

17. **παρά**: *to*, elsewhere in prose only with persons.——**αὐτὴν λῦσαι**: it was a bridge of boats. Cf. § 24.——**ἐν μέσῳ**: with gen., *between*. Cf. **διὰ μέσου τούτων** i. 4. 4.——**τῆς διώρυχος**: *i. e.* the second of the two mentioned § 13.

18. **ἐταράχθη σφόδρα καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο**: *became greatly disturbed and was afraid.* Note the change of tense. For the ingressive aor., see on **ἠγάσθη** i. 1. 9.

19. **οὐκ ἀκόλουθα εἴη τό τε ἐπιθήσεσθαι καὶ τὸ λύσειν τὴν γέφυραν**: *that the intention to attack and the intention to destroy the* **Page 63.** *bridge were not consistent.* For the force of the fut. inf., see Gl. 574; G. 1277; H. 855 *a*; GMT. 113; B. 549.——**δῆλον γὰρ κτέ**: transition to dir. disc.——**νικᾶν**: *sc.* **αὐτούς**.——**οὐδέ**: belongs to **ἔχοιμεν**. Cf. **οὐδ' εἰ κτέ** i. 6. 8.——**ἂν . . . ὥσιν, ἔχοιμεν ἄν**: for the form of the conditional sent., see Gl. 650; G. 1421, 2; H. 901 *a*; GMT. 505; B. 612, 1. For the meaning of **οὐδὲ ἔχοιμεν**, *not even should we know* ('have'), cf. i. 7. 7 and **οὐχ ἕξουσιν** just below.——**σωθῶμεν**: quoted delib. subjv. Gl. 471 *a*, 661; G. 1358; H. 866, 3; B. 577.

20. **οὐδὲ μήν**: *nor indeed*, as in vii. 6. 22, neg. of **καὶ μήν** (see on i. 7. 5).——**πολλῶν ὄντων**: concessive or conditional.——**οὐδείς**: for the force of the comp. neg., see on **οὐδενί** i. 2. 26.——**λελυμένης τῆς γεφύρας**: note the repetition and the chiastic arrangement of the sent.

21. **πόση τις**: *about how large.* For the force of **τις**, cf. **ὁποῖόν τι** 2. 2, and see on i. 8. 8.——**ἐν μέσῳ**: cf. § 17.——**ὅτι**: cf. § 16.——**πολλή**: *sc.* **ἡ χώρα**.——**πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι**: see on **πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα** 3. 18.

22. **ὑποπέμψαιεν**: *had sent insidiously.* Cf. **ὑπόπεμπτος εἴη** iii. 3. 4, and see on **ὑποστρέψας** i. 18. For indir. opt., see on **ἐπιβουλεύοι** i. 1. 3.——**ὀκνοῦντες μή**: the neg. governs **μείναιεν, ἔχοιεν**, and **γένοιτο**: Gl. 611 *c*; G. 1378; H. 887; B. 594. See on **δεδιὼς μή** i. 3. 10.——**διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν**: *having torn apart the bridge* (of boats). Cf. **διήρουν** v. 2. 21.——**ἔνθεν μέν, ἔνθεν δέ**: *hinc, illinc.* Cf. iii. 5. 7.——**πολλῆς . . . οὔσης καὶ . . . ἐνόντων**: gen. abs. of cause.——**καὶ τῶν ἐργασομένων ἐνόντων**: *and since there were men in it to work it.* Cf. **ὁ ἡγησόμενος** § 5; **ὁ τολμήσων** 3. 5. Cf. also the parallel passage in *Cyrop.* vii. 5. 72 **ἔχομεν καὶ γῆν πολλὴν καὶ ἀγαθὴν καὶ οἵτινες ταύτην ἐργαζόμενοι θρέψουσιν ἡμᾶς.**——**ἀπο-**

στροφή: (a means of) *escape, a retreat* (= *καταφυγή, perfugium*), as in vii. 6. 34.——**εἴ τις βούλοιτο**: for *ἐάν τις βούληται* of the direct thought: Gl. 651 (3); G. 1497, 2; H. 937; B. 673.

23. ἐπὶ μέντοι . . . ἔπεμψαν: *to the bridge, however, they sent nevertheless a guard.* Cf. *ὅμως* 2. 17.——**οὔτε . . . οὐδεὶς οὐδαμόθεν**: see on *οὐδείς* § 20.

24. ἐζευγμένην πλοίοις: see on § 13.——**ὡς οἷόν τε μάλιστα πεφυλαγμένως**: *as guardedly as possible.* See on *ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο* i. 1. 6.——**τῶν παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους Ἑλλήνων**: see on *τῶν παρὰ βασι-*
Page 64. *λέως* i. 1. 5.——**διαβαινόντων**: *sc. αὐτῶν.* The gen. abs. is more emphatic than the regular *διαβαίνουσι.* See on *ἰόντων* i. 4. 12.——**σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν**: *observing whether they were crossing,* indir. for *διαβαίνουσι.*——**ᾤχετο ἀπελαύνων**: *went riding off.* See on *διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι* i. 10. 16.

25. τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου: see on i. 2. 23.——**ᾠκεῖτο**: *was situated.* Cf. § 28, and i. 4. 1, 11.——**πρὸς ἣν ἀπήντησε τοῖς Ἕλλησιν**: *at which met the Greeks.* For dat., see on 3. 17. *ἀπαντᾶν πρός* is rare for *ἀπαντᾶν εἰς* or *ἐπί.*——**ὡς βοηθήσων**: expressing the professed purpose of the king's brother.——**ἐπιστήσας**: see on i. 8. 15.——**παρερχομένους**: of *ἔρχομαι* Attic writers use almost only the indic. pres.

26. εἰς δύο: *two abreast,* the usual order when the army was marching in column.——**ἄλλοτε . . . ἐφιστάμενος**: *halting now and then.*——**τὸ ἡγούμενον**: see on 2. 4.——**ἐπιστήσειε**: iterative opt. (rel. past gen. cond.). Gl. 620, 616 b; G. 1431 b; H. 914 B. 2; B. 625.——**γίγνεσθαι τὴν ἐπίστασιν**: *that the halt be made.*——**ἐκπεπλῆχθαι**: see on i. 5. 13.

27. διὰ τῆς Μηδίας: on the east side of the middle Tigris, formerly called Assyria.——**Κύρῳ ἐπεγγελῶν**: *out of insult to Cyrus.* The dat., both on account of the meaning of the verb (Gl. 520 a; G. 1160; H. 764, 2; B. 376) and the composition (*ἐπι- ἐν- γελάω*).——**διαρπάσαι . . . ἐπέτρεψε**: see on i. 2. 19.——**πλὴν ἀνδραπόδων**: *except captives, i. e.* the inhabitants were not to be enslaved.

28. πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ: *πέραν* in § 20 an adv., here practically a prep.——**Καιναί**: possibly the Kanna mentioned in Ezekiel
Page 65. xxvii. 23.——**ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις**: cf. i. 5. 10 and note.——**ἄρτους, τυρούς, οἶνον**: in enumeration asyndeton heightens the impression of number or amount.

CHAPTER V

CLEARCHUS, SEEKING TO ALLAY THE MISTRUST, AGREES TO A CONFERENCE WITH TISSAPHERNES, AND WITH FIVE OTHER GENERALS IS TREACHEROUSLY MADE PRISONER AND PUT TO DEATH. OPEN TREACHERY OF ARIAEUS

1. τὸ εὖρος . . . πλέθρων: cf. 4. 12.——**ὑποψίαι**: the plural of the abstract represents the various manifestations of the feeling.——**εἴ πως δύναιτο**: dependent on *παῦσαι*, which is second subj. of *ἔδοξεν*. Gl. 651 (3); G. 1502, 1; H. 937; B. 677. His thought was *ἐάν πως δύνωμαι*.——**πρὶν . . . γενέσθαι**: see on *πρὶν δῆλον εἶναι* i. 4. 13.

3. Τισσαφέρνη: rare form of voc. found chiefly in foreign names.——**ἡμῖν ὅρκους γεγενημένους**: *that oaths have been made by us*, suppl. indir. ptc. For *γεγενημένους* = *πεποιημένους*, see on 2. 10. For *ἡμῖν*, dat. of agent, see on i. 8. 12.——**μὴ ἀδικήσειν**: see on *μὴ μνησικακήσειν* 4. 1.——**φυλαττόμενον . . . ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα**: note the chiastic arrangement.——**ἡμᾶς**: obj. of *φυλαττόμενον*. See on *τοῦτον φυλάττεσθαι* i. 6. 9.

4. οὐ δύναμαι οὔτε: to correspond with the following clause *ἐγώ τε οἶδα*, we require strictly *οὔτε δύναμαι*. Cf. *μήτε, τε* 2. 8.——**ἡμᾶς κακῶς ποιεῖν**: see on 3. 23.——**οὐδὲ ἐπινοοῦμεν τοιοῦτον οὐδέν**: *not even think of any such thing*. Cf. *ἐπινοεῖ* iii. 1. 6.——**εἰς λόγους σοι ἐλθεῖν**: *to have an interview with you*. Gl. 525; G. 1177; H. 772 a; B. 392, 1.——**εἰ δυναίμεθα**: for opt., see on *εἴ τι δέοιτο* i. 3. 4. His thought was *ἐὰν δυνώμεθα*.——**ἐξέλοιμεν ἀλλήλων τὴν ἀπιστίαν**: cf. *ἀφαιρεῖσθαι* with two accusatives i. 3. 4.

5. οἶδα ἀνθρώπους . . . ὅτι . . . ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακά: (by prolepsis for *οἶδα ὅτι ἄνθρωποι ἐποίησαν*) *I know that men already, some in consequence of slander, others from mere* (*καί*) *suspicion, through fear of each other wishing to anticipate before suffering ill, have done irreparable injury to those who neither intended nor on the other hand wished to do any such thing*.——**ἀνθρώπους . . . τοὺς μὲν . . . τοὺς δέ**: partitive appos. G. 914; H. 624 d; B. 319.——**πρὶν παθεῖν**: *sc. κακά*.——**τοὺς οὔτε μέλλοντας**: *sc. ποιεῖν, to those neither intending* to do. For the const., see Gl. 536 c; G. 1073; H. 725 a; B. 340.

6. ἀγνωμοσύνας: (instances of ignorance) *misunderstandings*. For the pl., see on *ὑποψίαι* § 1.

7. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ καὶ μέγιστον: adv. accus. See on *τὸ μέγιστον* i. 3. 10. To *μέν*, which is repeated in § 8, the correl. is *δέ* in § 8.——**οἱ θεῶν ὅρκοι**: *oaths by the gods*. For the obj. gen., see Gl. 506 a; G. 1085, 3; H. 729 c; B, 350. Cf. iii. 1. 22, 2. 10.——**τούτων**: *i. e.* the oaths. For gen., see Gl. 511 c; G. 1102; H. 742; B. 356.——**σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκώς**: *is con-*

scious of disregarding these. For const. and case of ptc., see on **ἐψευσμένος** i. 3. 10.——**τὸν θεῶν πόλεμον**: *divine vengeance* ('war from the gods'), obj. of **φεύγων**. Gl. 506 b.——**ἀπὸ ποίου τάχους**: *with what* **Page 66.** *speed.* The starting-point in Greek is means with us. See on **ἀπό** i. 1. 9.——**φεύγων ἀποφύγοι**: as in iv. 2. 27.——**ἀποφύγοι, ἀποδραίη**: see on i. 4. 8.——**οὔθ' ὅπως ἂν . . . ἀποσταίη**: *nor how he could withdraw into a stronghold.* Some editors take **ὅπως** with **ἐχυρόν**, *into how strong a place.* With **εἰς χωρίον ἀποσταίη**, cf. **ἀποστὰς εἰς Μυσούς** i. 6. 7. Note the paronomasia in the verbs of the sent.——**πάντῃ**: see on 3. 3.——**τοῖς θεοῖς**: for const., see Gl. 522; G. 1174; H. 765; B. 392, 2.——**πάντων ἴσον κρατοῦσι**: *rule equally over all.* **ἴσον** is cognate accus. Cf. Hom. Il. i. 78 *μέγα πάντων κρατέει.* With the whole passage cf. Psalm cxxxix. 7–12.

8. γιγνώσκω: *believe, think.*——**παρ' οὓς . . . κατεθέμεθα**: *with whom we having made a compact of friendship have deposited it, i. e.* as one deposits an agreement, signed and witnessed, with a third person for safe keeping. Cf. **καταθήσεσθαι** vii. 6. 34. **οὓς** refers to **θεῶν**.

9. πᾶσα ὁδός: *every way*; but just below **πᾶσα . . . ἡ ὁδός**, *all the way.*——**πᾶσα μέν, πᾶς δέ**: for the anaphora, see on i. 3. 16.——**φοβερώτατον**: for neut. pred. adj., see Gl. 544; G. 925; H. 617; B. 423.——**ἐρημία**: *sc.* **ἀνθρώπων**. Rehdantz calls attention to the cumulative pathetic effect of the numerous short sentences, of the anaphorical sentence-structure, the repetition of the emphatic **πᾶς**, the collocation of **φοβερός, φοβερώτατον** and of **ἐρημία, μεστή**, and the play upon the term **πόρος** (**εὔπορος . . . οὐκ ἀπορία, δύσπορος . . . μεστὴ ἀπορίας**). The pupil will bear in mind that all this is Xen.'s art put into the mouth of Clearchus.

10. κατακτείναιμεν: the compound freq. in Hom. and Trag., but rare in prose. Cf. *Hiero* 6. 14, 7. 12.——**ἄλλο τι ἤ**: *nonne* (lit. 'is it anything else than?'). G. 1604; H. 1015 b; B. 573, N. Cf. iv. 7. 5.——**ἔφεδρον**: *fresh opponent.* The figure is from the palaestra, the **ἔφεδρος** being a contestant who had not drawn an opponent, but was to *sit by* ready to wrestle as a fresh combatant with one who had won. Cf. Plut. *Sylla* 29 **καθάπερ ἔφεδρος ἀθλητῇ καταπόνῳ προσενεχθείς**, *just as an ephedrus brought against a wearied athlete.*——**ταῦτα**: repeats the idea of **ὅσων . . . ἐλπίδων.**

11. τῶν τότε: cf. 2. 20.——**ἱκανώτατον εἶναι**: *sc.* **αὐτόν.**——**ὃν βούλοιτο**: opt. in indir. rel. sent.——**σέ, σοί**: observe the emphatic position.——**τήν τε Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ χώραν**: *i. e.* his general's office and satrapy.——**σῴζοντα**: *keeping.*——**ᾗ Κῦρος πολεμίᾳ ἐχρῆτο**: *which Cyrus found hostile.* In Xen. and late writers, **πολέμιος**, *hostile*; **πολεμικός**, *warlike.*——**ταύτην**: emphatically repeating **τὴν . . . δύναμιν** (epanaleptic dem.).

12. τούτων δὲ τοιούτων ὄντων: *quae cum ita sint.*——**οὕτω . . . ὅστις**: = **οὕτω . . . ὥστε** § 15. For the rel. clause of result, see Gl. 619;

G. 1445; H. 910; B. 597.——**ἀλλὰ μήν**: *but furthermore*, which would naturally be followed directly by the statement **ἔχω ἐλπίδας . . . εἶναι**, instead of which we have by anticipation the grounds for such expectations, **ἐρῶ γὰρ καὶ ταῦτα ἐξ ὧν κτέ.** The **γάρ** is explanatory (Gl. 672 b): *I will tell you the reasons too why.*

13. Μυσούς: cf. i. 6. 7.——**λυπηροὺς ὄντας**: see on **βουλευομένους** i. 1. 7. ——**οὓς νομίζω ἂν παρασχεῖν**: *whom I think I could make*,

Page 67. inf. with **ἄν**, indir. for pot. opt., as **ἂν παῦσαι.**——**οἶδα δὲ καὶ Πισίδας**: *sc.* **λυπηροὺς ὄντας.** See on i. 1. 11. Note the anaphora (**οἶδα δέ**).——**εἶναι**: inf. with **ἀκούω** = *are reported to be.* Gl. 588 b; GMT. 914, 1; B. 661, N. 3.——**ἐνοχλοῦντα**: suppl. ptc. not in indir. disc. Gl. 586; G. 1580; H. 981; B. 660.——**Αἰγυπτίους**: proleptic.——**οἷς**: with **τεθυμωμένους.** Gl. 520 a; G. 1159; H. 763, 2; B. 376.——**χρησάμενοι**: *with*; like Lat. *usi.*——**τῆς . . . οὔσης**: gen. after compar. for **ἢ τῇ . . . οὔσῃ.**

14. ἀλλὰ μήν: resumes the interrupted thought.——**σύ, σοί**: note the emphatic position.——**ὡς μέγιστος**: cf. **ὅτι πλείστους** i. 1. 6.——**ἂν ἀναστρέφοιο**: *could conduct yourself, versari.*——**τῆς χάριτος**: *sc.* **ἕνεκα.** ——**ἣν . . . σοὶ ἂν ἔχοιμεν**: with **χάριν ἔχειν** cf. *gratiam habere.*——**δικαίως**: note the emphatic position.

15. τὸ . . . ἀπιστεῖν: for art. inf., see on i. 9. 24.——**καὶ ἥδιστα**: *vel libentissime.*——**ἀκούσαιμι τὸ ὄνομα τίς**: confusion of two consts., *i. e.* **ἀκούειν τίς** and **ἀκούειν τὸ ὄνομα τούτου ὅστις.**——**δεινὸς λέγειν**: *eloquent speaker.* Cf. **δεινὸς κλέπτειν** iv. 6. 16; **δεινὸς φαγεῖν** vii. 3. 23.——**ἀπημείφθη**: *replied*, poetical usage, freq. in Hom., but always in connection with some other verb. The simple verb, too, which Xen. also uses, is poetical and Ionic.

16. ἀλλ': cf. i. 4, and see on i. 7. 6.——**ἥδομαι καὶ ἀκούων**: *I am glad even to hear.* Cf. **ἥσθη ἰδών** i. 2. 18. Gl. 585 d; G. 1580; H. 983; B. 660, 1. **ἀκούων σου φρονίμους λόγους**: for const., see on i. 2. 5.——**ταῦτα γιγνώσκων**: *entertaining these sentiments.*——**ἄν μοι δοκεῖς**: pers. const. in Greek where Eng. is impers. **ἄν** is to be taken with **εἶναι.**——**ὡς ἂν μάθῃς**: Gl. 636 a; G. 1367; H. 882; B. 590; N. 2. "In Attic prose **ὡς ἄν** with the subjv. is found only in Xen. and in one passage of Thuc. [vi. 91.]" GMT. 326, 2.

17. εἰ γὰρ ὑμᾶς ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι: *why! if we wished to destroy you.* **γάρ** emotional, Gl. 672 a. The prot. is unreal, with which the first apod. **δοκοῦμεν ἀπορεῖν**; (practically = **οὐκ ἀποροῦμεν**) expresses a fixed fact, the second, **ἀπορεῖν ἂν δοκοῦμεν**: denotes a possible case (for pot. opt.). ——**πότερα . . . ἤ**: Gl. 668 end; G. 1606; H. 1017; B. 574.——**οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος**: *sc.* **εἴη ἄν** from the preceding **εἴημεν ἄν.** The noun takes the inf. also v. 1. 6 and vi. 1. 21, just as the verb (iv. 1. 11). Gl. 565 a; G. 1530; H. 952; B. 641.

18. ἀλλά: like *at* in Lat., introducing a question that assumes an objection on the part of Clearchus. Cf. v. 8. 4.——**ἐπιτίθεσθαι**: dependent on *ἐπιτηδείων*. Gl. 565; G. 1526; H. 952; B. 641.——**ἀπορεῖν ἄν σοι δοκοῦμεν**: *do you think that we should be without?* See on § 17.——**οὐ**: belongs to all three clauses.——**τοσαῦτα μὲν πεδία**: construed, as *τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη*, with *ὁρᾶτε ὄντα πορευτέα*. Gl. 596 a. For the cogn. accus., cf. *πορευτέον σταθμούς* 2. 12.——**φίλια ὄντα**: concessive.——**ταμιεύεσθαι**: *measure out for ourselves, apportion, determine.* Cf. Thuc.

Page 68. vi. 18. *οὐκ ἔστιν ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι ἐς ὅσον βουλόμεθα ἄρχειν.* ——**ὁπόσοις μάχεσθαι**: Gl. 525; G. 1177; H. 772 a; B. 376. Cf. § 19; iii. 4. 33.——**εἰσὶ . . . οὕς**: see on i. 5. 7.——**διαπορεύομεν**: *set across*, only here in act. The act. of *πορεύω*, which occurs also in Xen., is a poetical usage.

19. ἀλλὰ τό γέ τοι πῦρ: *yet fire at least surely.* For *ἀλλά* in apod., see G. 1422; H. 1046, 2 a; B. 601, N.——**δν κατακαύσαντες**: cf. i. 6. 1.——**ᾧ μάχεσθαι**: see on § 18.——**οὐδ' εἰ**: see on i. 6. 8.

20. μηδένα: because *ἔχοντες* is conditional.——**ἔπειτα**: *then*, like *εἶτα* i. 2. 25.——**μόνος μέν, μόνος δέ**: anaphora. See on i. 3. 16.——**πρὸς θεῶν**: see on i. 6. 6.——**ἀσεβής**: *sc. ἐστι.*

21. παντάπασι ἀπόρων ἐστί: *it belongs to men entirely without resources.* See on *τῶν νικώντων ἐστίν* i. 4. *παντάπασι* is to be taken with both *ἀπόρων* and *ἀμηχάνων*.——**καὶ τούτων**: *and that too.*——**οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι**: the natural const. would be simply *ἐθέλειν* (*to be willing*); the rel. with verb, as if *ἄποροί εἰσιν* had gone before. See on *ὅστις* § 12. Cf. 6. 6. ——**πράττειν τι**: *to attain their ends.*

22. ἐξόν: Gl. 591; G. 1569; H. 973; B. 658.——**ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἤλθομεν**: *resort to this.* Cf. *ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι* iii. 1. 18.——**τούτου**: *i. e. τοῦ μὴ ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἐλθεῖν.*——**τὸ . . . γενέσθαι**: depends, as also the foll. inf. clause, on the verbal idea in *ἔρως*: *my own desire to show myself faithful to the Greeks.*——**καὶ ᾧ . . . ἰσχυρόν**: *and with what force Cyrus went up trusting in it on account of giving pay, with that to go down strong on account of kindness done.* *ᾧ, τούτῳ* dat. of accomp. (cf. 2. 12). *μισθοδοσίας*, new compound, also in Thuc. viii. 83. Cf. *μισθοδότης* i. 3. 9; *μισθοδοτέω* vii. 1. 13.

23. ὅσα . . . χρήσιμοι: *how useful you are to me.* For the cogn. accus., see Gl. 536 d; G. 1053, 1054; H. 717; B. 332. Cf. *τί χρῆσθαι* i. 3. 18. ——**τιάραν**: tower-shaped head-dress, the top of which in the case of others hung over in front, the king's alone standing upright (*ὀρθή*).—— **τὴν ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ . . . ἔχοι**: *sc. ὀρθήν, that upon the heart, etc., i. e.* royal spirit, with your presence, even another might have. Possibly he hints at revolt from the king, with the help of the Greeks.——**εὐπετῶς**: lit. 'falling well' (figure prob. from dice), so *easily.*

24. εἶπεν . . ., ἔφη: cf. Eng. colloquial "he said . . . , said he."——**τοιούτων . . . ὑπαρχόντων**: *when such grounds for friend-*
Page 69. *ship exist.*——**διαβάλλοντες**: the reference is to Menon. Cf. § 28.——**ἄξιοι . . . παθεῖν**: cf. *ἄρχειν ἀξιώτατος* i. 9. 1.

25. καὶ ἐγὼ μέν γε: cf. i. 9. 28.——**μοι ἐλθεῖν**: *to come for me*, dat. of advantage, though possibly = *πρός με*.——**ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ**: = *ἐμφανῶς*. Cf. *ἐν τῷ φανερῷ* i. 3. 21.

27. ἐκ: *in consequence of.* Cf. *ἐκ τούτου* i. 2. 17.——**φιλοφρονούμενος**: *kindly disposed*, as iv. 5. 29, 32; *greet kindly* iv. 5. 34.——**σύνδειπνον**: see on *ὁμοτράπεζοι* i. 8. 25.——**δῆλος ἦν οἰόμενος**: see on 4. 2; i. 2. 11.——**πάνυ φιλικῶς διακεῖσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει**: *that he was on very friendly terms with T.* Cf. *διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτόν* 6. 12.——**οὓς ἐκέλευσε**: *sc.* Τισσαφέρνης. For aor. indic. retained in indir. disc., see Gl. 662; G. 1499; H. 935 c; B. 675, 3.——**οἱ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι**: mood of dir. disc. retained. Gl. 662; G. 1497, 2; H. 933; B. 674.——**διαβάλλοντες**: indir. suppl. ptc.——**τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: part. gen. with *οἵ*.——**αὐτούς**: resumptive after rel., for the usual emphatic dem. See on *αὐτόν* i. 9. 29.——**τιμωρηθῆναι**: *sc.* *χρῆναι*.

28. αὐτῷ: *i. e.* Clearchus.——**τὸ στράτευμα ἅπαν**: cf. *ἅπαν τ. σ.* § 29. Cf. i. 4. 4.——**ὅπως . . . ᾖ**: mood of dir. disc. retained.

29. πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην: *to be devoted to himself.*——**ἀντέλεγον μή**: because the verb implies a prohibition. Gl. 572. Cf. *ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν* i. 3. 8. See the indir. disc. const. 3. 25.

30. κατέτεινε: *contendebat.* Cf. *κατὰ κράτος ἔτεινον* iv. 3. 21.——**ἔστε διεπράξατο**: Gl. 631; G. 1464; H. 922.——**ὡς εἰς ἀγοράν**: *i. e.* unarmed.

32. οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον: see on *ἡμέραις πέντε* i. 7. 12.——**ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ σημείου**: *at the same signal, i. e.* a purple banner raised
Page 70. on the tent of Tissaphernes (Diod. xiv. 26.).——**οἱ ἔνδον, οἱ ἔξω**: used subst.——**συνελαμβάνοντο . . . κατεκόπησαν**: notice impf. and aor. Perhaps the idea is: *while those within were being seized, etc.* Cf. Gl. 466. Cf. i. 5. 14, i. 8. 27.——**ᾧτινι . . . πάντας**: see on *ὅστις . . . πάντας* i. 1. 5.——**ἔκτεινον**: the simple (poetical) form only here in Xen., but found also in Thuc. and Plato. The prose form is, of course, *ἀποκτείνω*. Cf. Caesar's similar treatment of the leaders of the Usipetes and Tencteri, *Bell. Gall.* iv. 13.

33. ἠμφεγνόουν: double augment. See on *ἠνέσχοντο* i. 8. 26.——**πρὶν . . . ἧκε**: see on *πρὶν ἔπεισε* i. 2. 26.——**εἰς τὴν γαστέρα**: accus. because of implied motion (of the weapon).

36. εἴ τις στρατηγός: *whatever general* (*si quis*). Cf. *εἴ τι καὶ ἄλλο* i. 5. 1. The clause is practically the subj. of *προσελθεῖν*.——**τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως**: cf. 3. 4.

37. φυλαττόμενοι: mid. *on their guard*, or *with a guard*.——**τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: part. gen. Cf. **αὐτῶν** i. 7.——**σὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ Ξενοφῶν**: Xen., who was not yet a commander, is contrasted with the two generals (*στρατηγοὶ μέν*).——**τὰ περὶ Προξένου**: *particulars about Proxenus*.——**ἐτύγχανεν ἀπών**: see i. 1. 2.

Page 71.

38. ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον: *got within hearing distance*. Cf. iii. 3. 1, iv. 4. 5. See on *παρῆσαν εἰς* i. 2. 2.——**ἐπιορκῶν τε ἐφάνη καὶ . . . λύων**: suppl. ptc. in indir. disc.——**τὴν δίκην**: see on i. 3. 20.——**κατήγγειλαν αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπιβουλήν**: Gl. 514 a; G. 1123; H. 752 a; B. 370.——**ὑμᾶς . . . ἀπαιτεῖ**: for double accus., see on *αἰτεῖ* i. 1. 10.——**ἑαυτοῦ, Κύρου**: pred. gens. of possession. See on **Τισσαφέρνους** i. 1. 6.——**ειναι**: *sc.* **τὰ ὅπλα**.——**δούλου**: see on i. 9. 29.

39. ἔλεγε δὲ Κλεάνωρ: see on 3. 21.——**οἱ ἄλλοι**: see on i. 5. 16.——**θεούς, ἀνθρώπους**: see on 3. 22.——**τοὺς αὐτοὺς φίλους**: *the same men as friends*. For obj. and pred. accus., see on i. 4. 9.——**ἡμῖν**: belongs in this position to both *ὀμόσαντες* and *τοὺς αὐτούς*.——**τοὺς ἄλλους ἡμᾶς**: *the rest of us*.——**προδεδωκότες**: the repetition and superfluity of words in the sent. well express the indignation of Cleanor.

40. γάρ: *why!* Gl. 672 a.——**ἐπιβουλεύων . . . ἐγένετο**: cf. i. 6. 8.

41. Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων: the emphatic position ahead of their own clause betrays the excitement of Xen.

42. πρὸς ταῦτα: best taken with **ἀποκρινάμενοι**. Cf. § 39.——**οὐδὲν ἀποκρινάμενοι**: *without reply* (cogn. accus.).

CHAPTER VI

CHARACTERIZATION OF THE CAPTURED GENERALS

1. οὕτω: *i. e.* as above described.——**ὡς βασιλέα**: cf. i. 2. 4.——**ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλάς**: the accus. of part affected retained with the pass. The act. const. was *αὐτοῖς ἀποτέμνουσι τὰς κεφαλάς*. G. 1239; B. 335. For the facts, cf. Plut. *Artox.* 18.

Page 72.

——**εἷς μέν**: part. appos. to *στρατηγοί*. *μέν* is correl. to **δέ** in § 16.——**ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων**: *as was agreed by all*. For *ἐκ*, see on i. 1. 6 and i. 9. 1.——**τῶν ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ ἐχόντων**: *of those who had personal acquaintance with him*. For const. of *αὐτοῦ*, see Gl. 518 a; G. 1147; H. 756; B. 357. Cf. i. 9. 1.——**δόξας**: *reputed*.——**ἐσχάτως**: puts by its position esp. emphasis on *φιλοπόλεμος*.

2. πόλεμος: the Peloponnesian war (431–404 B. C.).——**παρέμενεν**: *remained loyal*. The antithesis is *οὐκέτι πείθεται* § 3.——**ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἕλληνας**: *had wronged the Greeks, i. e.* those in the Thracian Chersonese.

See on i. 5. 11.——**διαπραξάμενος παρὰ τῶν ἐφόρων**: cf. 3. 20. The object is to be supplied from the context (*ἐξέπλει*).——**ὡς πολεμήσων**: see on i. 1. 3.——**Περίνθου**: on the Propontis, afterward called Heracleia.

3. **μεταγνόντες πως**: *having changed their mind somehow.* Compounds with *μετα-* commonly indicate change, transition. Cf. *μεταμέλειν* i. 6. 7.——**ἔξω ὄντος**: *sc. αὐτοῦ.*——**ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ**: of Corinth.——**ἐνταῦθα**: see on *ἔνθα δή* i. 5. 8.——**ᾤχετο πλέων**: cf. 4. 24. Cf. Diod. xiv. 12.

4. **ἐκ τούτου**: see on i. 2. 17.——**ἐθανατώθη**: (= *θανάτου κατεκρίθη*) *was condemned to death* in his absence.——**τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ τελῶν**: *i. e.* the ephors.——**ὡς ἀπειθῶν**: *on the ground of disobedience.* See on i. 1. 6.——**ἄλλῃ**: originally locative. See on *πάντῃ* 3. 3. The arguments (*λόγοις*) are not given elsewhere in Xen.'s writings. Cf. i. 1. 9, 3. 3.——**δαρεικούς**: see on i. 1. 9.

5. **ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων**: see on i. 1. 9.——**ἀπὸ τούτου**: *sc. τοῦ χρόνου.* Cf. *ἀπ' ἐκείνης* i. 7. 18.——**ἔφερε καὶ ἦγε**: *agebat et ferebat*, stock expression for *to plunder* (*φέρειν* of things inanimate, *ἄγειν* of men and things animate).——**πολεμῶν διεγένετο**: *went on warring.* See on *λέγων διῆγε* i. 2. 11.

6. **ὅστις αἱρεῖται**: see on 5. 21.——**ἐξὸν μέν**: for accus. abs., see on 5. 22. Note the threefold anaphora, with the refrain *war* (*πολεμεῖν, πολεμῶν*).——**ὥστε πολεμεῖν**: *on condition of making war.* Gl. 566 c; G. 1453; H. 953 b; B. 596.——**δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον**: see on *δαπανᾶν*

Page 73. *ἀμφί* i. 1. 8. With the sentiment of the sentence, cf. Isoc. xv. 289 *ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς ῥᾳθυμεῖν μηδὲν δαπανωμένοις εἵλοντο πονεῖν χρήματα τελέσαντες, when it was possible to take their ease without any expense, they chose to toil expending money.*

7. **ταύτῃ**: *in this respect*, anticipating the *ὅτι* clause.——**φιλοκίνδυνός τε**: correl. with *καὶ . . . ἄγων, καὶ . . . φρόνιμος.*——**καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτός**: for const., see on 2. 1.——**πανταχοῦ πάντες**: see on i. 9. 2.

8. **ὡς δυνατόν**: *so far as was possible, quantum fieri poterat.*——**ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου τρόπου**: *with such a temper.* Cf. *πρὸς τοῦ Κύρου τρόπου* i. 2. 11.——**οἷον κἀκεῖνος**: for the *καί*, see on i. 3. 18.——**ἱκανὸς μέν . . ., ἱκανὸς δέ**: for the anaphora, see on i. 3. 16.——**ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος**: see on i. 3. 15.——**ὅπως ἔχοι**: for the opt., see on i. 8. 13.——**αὐτῷ**: for dat., see Gl. 523 a; G. 1170; H. 771; B. 378.——**ἐμποιῆσαι . . . Κλεάρχῳ**: cf. *Oec.* 21. 7 *ἐμποιῆσαι τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀκολουθητέον εἶναι.*——**ὡς πειστέον εἴη**: = *ὡς δέοι αὐτοὺς πείθεσθαι.* Cf. Gl. 596 c.——**Κλεάρχῳ**: the proper name more emphatic than *αὐτῷ*. See on *Κῦρον* i. 9. 15.

9. **ἐκ τοῦ χαλεπὸς εἶναι**: for prep. with art. inf., see on i. 7. 5. For *χαλεπός* in nom., see Gl. 571; G. 927; H. 940; B. 631.——**καὶ γάρ**: Gl. 672 d.——**ὁρᾶν στυγνός**: Gl. 565 a; G. 1528; H. 952.——**ὡς . . . μεταμέλειν**: for *ὡς* = *ὥστε*, see on i. 5. 10.——**ἔσθ' ὅτε**: *sometimes,*

alternating with **ἐνίοτε**. Cf. **ἦν δ' ὁπότε** iv. 2. 27.——**καὶ . . . δέ**: see on i. 1. 2.

10. γνώμῃ ἐκόλαζεν: *he punished on principle.*——**ἀκολάστου . . . ὄφελος εἶναι**: cf. i. 3. 11.——**λέγειν αὐτὸν ἔφασαν**: cf. i. 9. 23.——**εἰ μέλλοι**: *if he was to.*——**φυλακὰς φυλάξειν**: *do guard duty.* The so-called *figura etymologica.* Cf. v. 1. 2.——**φίλων ἀφέξεσθαι**: *abstain from injuring friends, i. e.* when marching through a friendly country.

11. αὐτοῦ ἀκούειν σφόδρα: *to obey (hearken to) him implicitly.*——**φαιδρόν**: pred. to *φαίνεσθαι.*——**αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις προσώποις**: *of him* (*i. e.* his sternness) *among the other faces* (which then showed fear). So prob. these words, which Gemoll brackets, must be taken, if retained; **αὐτοῦ**, which would naturally follow *στυγνόν*, being placed before **ἐν τοῖς κτέ** for the sake of stronger contrast. If **ἄλλοις** alone be bracketed, **αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς προσώποις** would mean, *in his features* (plur. so used in poets). With the whole passage, cf. Plut. *Mar.* 14 **τὸ γὰρ ἐν ἀρχῇ σκυθρωπὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ περὶ τὰς τιμωρίας δυσμείλικτον ἐθισθεῖσι σωτήριον ἐφαίνετο, καὶ τὸ τραχὺ τῆς φωνῆς καὶ ἀγριωπὸν τοῦ προσώπου οὐχ αὑτοῖς ἐνόμιζον φοβερόν, ἀλλὰ τοῖς πολεμίοις.**

12. ὅτε δ' . . . γένοιντο: for const., see on **ὁπότε βούλοιτο** i. 2. 7.——**πρὸς ἄλλον ἀρξομένους ἀπιέναι**: *to go off to another to be commanded, i. e. for service* (the fut. mid. as pass.).——**διέκειντο πρὸς αὐτόν**: *were disposed towards him.* **διακεῖσθαι** with dat. 5. 27. Cf. vii. 7. 38.——**ὥσπερ . . . διδάσκαλον**: *i. e.* the relation was one of fear.

13. καὶ γὰρ οὖν: see on i. 9. 8.——**φιλίᾳ καὶ εὐνοίᾳ**: dat. of cause. Gl. 526 a.——**οἵτινες . . . παρείησαν**: rel. past gen. cond. Gl. 618, 616 b; G. 1431, 2; H. 914 B. 2; B. 625.——**ἢ . . . ἢ . . . κατεχόμενοι**: *or forced by reason of want, or by any other necessity.* **ἀνάγκῃ** is dat. of instr.——**σφόδρα πειθομένοις ἐχρῆτο**: *he found exceedingly obedient.* Cf. 5. 11.

Page 74.

14. ἤδη . . . στρατιώτας: *immediately effective became the causes that made his soldiers useful.* The pred. is **μεγάλα ἦν.**——**τό τε γὰρ . . . θαρραλέως ἔχειν**: *his boldness towards the enemy.*——**παρῆν**: *had its effect.*

15. ἄρχεσθαι: cf. i. 3. 15.——**οὐ μάλα ἐθέλειν**: *not much to like.*——**ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη**: for the art. to express a round number, see on i. 2. 9.

16. εὐθὺς μειράκιον ὤν: see on i. 9. 4.——**τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν ἱκανός**: *able to transact important state business.* See L. and S. *s. v.* **πράττειν** II. 6.——**Γοργίας**: a famous sophist and rhetorician of Leontini in Sicily, who came on an embassy to Athens 427 B. C. He remained in Greece as a teacher, charging each pupil a fee of 100 minas (about $1,800).

17. ἐπεὶ συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ: *when he had been his pupil.*——**νομίσας**: see on i. 6. 3.——**φίλος ὢν τοῖς πρώτοις**: *as friend to the foremost men.*

——**μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν**: *not to be outdone in conferring favors.* Cf. *νικῴη ἀλεξόμενος* i. 9. 11.——**ταύτας**: *i. e.* those related by Xen.

18. τοσούτων ἐπιθυμῶν σφόδρα: *although exceedingly desirous of so many things.* Cf. § 21 *ἐπιθυμῶν πλουτεῖν ἰσχυρῶς.* For the gen., see Gl. 511 c; G. 1102; H. 742; B. 356.——**ἔνδηλον . . . εἶχεν**: *this also, on the other hand, he made evident* (lit. 'had evident').——**μετὰ ἀδικίας, ἀλλὰ σὺν . . . καλῷ**: the prep. phrases more expressive than simple advs. (*ἀδίκως, δικαίως, καλῶς*). Cf. *Cyrop.* viii. 2. 23 *ὃς ἂν κτᾶσθαί τε πλεῖστα δύνηται σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ χρῆσθαί τε πλείστοις σὺν τῷ καλῷ.*——**μή**: *sc. τυγχάνειν.*

19. καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν: *men of honor, gentlemen.*——**οὔτ' αἰδῶ ἑαυτοῦ οὔτε φόβον**: *neither respect for himself nor fear* (obj. gen.). Cf. iii. 1. 10 *δι' αἰσχύνην ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου.*——**τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐμποιῆσαι**: see on § 8.——**ᾐσχύνετο τοὺς στρατιώτας**: *stood in awe of his soldiers.* See 3. 22.——**φοβούμενος ἦν φανερός**: cf. similar pers. consts. in §§ 21, 23. See on i. 2. 11.——**τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις**: *to become an object of hatred to his soldiers.* Gl. 523 a.——**τὸ ἀπιστεῖν**: *to be disobedient* (= *ἀπειθεῖν*), as vi. 6. 13.——**ἐκείνῳ**: see on 2. 8.

20. ἀρκεῖν: the subj. is *τὸν μὲν . . . ἐπαινεῖν, τὸν δὲ . . . ἐπαινεῖν.*——**πρὸς τὸ . . . δοκεῖν**: *for being, and being reputed, fit to*
Page 75. *command.*——**τοιγαροῦν**: see on i. 9. 9.——**ἐτῶν**: pred. gen. of measure.

21. ἐπιθυμῶν μὲν κτέ: note the threefold anaphora with the refrain *money* (*πλουτεῖν, πλείω λαμβάνειν, πλείω κερδαίνειν*) in Menon's case, as of *war* in that of Clearchus (§ 6). Observe also the homœoteleuton (*πλείω λαμβάνοι, πλείω κερδαίνοι*).——**τοῖς μέγιστον δυναμένοις**: *those most powerful.*——**ἀδικῶν μὴ διδοίη δίκην**: note the alliteration.——**ἀδικῶν**: *being in the wrong.* See on i. 5. 11.——**διδοίη δίκην**: *poenam daret, pay the penalty.*

22. ὧν: for *ταῦτα ὧν.*——**ἐπιθυμοίη**: opt. of gen. rel. cond.——**τὸ αὐτὸ τῷ ἠλιθίῳ**: *the same thing as folly.* Gl. 526 a end; G. 1175; H. 773; B. 392, 2. Note the poor pun in *ἀληθὲς ἠλιθίῳ.*

23. στέργων . . . ἐπιβουλεύων: chiasmus.——**ὅτῳ . . . εἶναι**: gen. rel. cond.——**τούτῳ**: epanaleptic dem. dependent on *ἐπιβουλεύων. To whomsoever . . . against this one* is not the Eng. idiom. We say *whenever . . . to anyone, against him.*——**τῶν συνόντων**: const. with *καταγελῶν*, though felt (in dat.) also with *διελέγετο.* See on *τούτων στερήσονται, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται* i. 4. 8.

24. τὰ δὲ . . . ἀφύλακτα λαμβάνειν: *but the property of friends he thought that he alone knew that it was easy to take, because unguarded.* For case of *μόνος*, see on *χαλεπός* in § 9. *ῥᾷστον ὄν*, suppl. ptc. Gl. 586 a; G. 1588; H. 982.

26. ἀγάλλεται ἐπί: alternating with dat. of cause, just below. (Gl. 526 a; G. 1181; H. 776; B. 391). Note also the polysyndeton in the first clause and asyndeton in the second.——**δικαιότητι**: only here in classic authors.——**τῶν ἀπαιδεύτων**: part. gen. See on *τῶν στρατευομένων* i. 2. 3.——**παρ' οἷς**: see on *ὅτῳ* § 23.——**πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ**: *to be*
Page 76. *first in friendship.*——**διαβάλλων τοὺς πρώτους**: *by slandering those who were* (already) *first.* *τοὺς πρώτους* = *τοὺς πρωτεύοντας φιλίᾳ.*——**τοῦτο**: *i. e. τὸ πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ.*

27. τὸ δὲ . . . παρέχεσθαι: *rendering his soldiers obedient.* It is obj. of *ἐμηχανᾶτο.*——**ἐμηχανᾶτο**: conative impf. Gl. 459 a; G. 1255; H. 832; B. 527.——**ἠξίου**: *expected.*——**ἐπιδεικνύμενος**: circumst. ptc. of cause.——**ὅτι δύναιτο καὶ ἐθέλοι ἄν**: indir. of *δύναμαι καὶ ἐθέλοιμι ἄν.*——**εὐεργεσίαν κατέλεγεν**: *he counted* (against the other) *as a kindness.*——**οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν**: for force of aor., see on *ἐποίησε* i. 1. 2. The pron. is repeated for emphasis.

28. τὰ μὲν δὴ ἀφανῆ . . . ψεύδεσθαι: *what, indeed, is doubtful it is possible to state falsely.*——**παρ' Ἀριστίππου διεπράξατο**: see on 3. 20. For Aristippus, cf. i. 1. 10.——**ἤδετο**: *i. e.* Ariaeus.——**ἀγένειος ὢν γενειῶντα**: sarcastic collocation.

29. ἀποθνησκόντων: temporal.——**πεποιηκώς**: concessive.——**ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλάς**: see on § 1.——**ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς ἐνιαυτόν**: *after being tortured alive for a year.* For Persian ways of torture, cf. i. 9. 13. Acc. to Diodorus (xiv. 27.) the king hoped that Menon would betray the Greeks. Among later Greeks Menon was synonymous with *traitor* (Chariton i. 7.).——**τῆς τελευτῆς τυχεῖν**: Gl. 510 d; G. 1099; H. 739; B. 356. For *τελευτή*, cf. i. 1. 1.

30. καὶ τούτῳ: *ipsi quoque*, emphatic repetition of the subj. Cf. *καὶ τούτους* i. 1. 11.——**τούτων κατεγέλα**: cf. § 23.——**εἰς φιλίαν**: cf. *εἰς δικαιοσύνην* i. 9. 16.——**αὐτούς**: inserted because *μέμφομαι* does not take gen. of person. Cf. *Oec.* 11. 23. The usual const. even with Xen. is dat. of person.——**τὰ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα ἔτη**: see on 6. 15, i. 2. 9.

BOOK III

CHAPTER I

THERE IS THE GREATEST DEJECTION, BUT XENOPHON AWAKING FROM A REMARKABLE DREAM SUGGESTS THE CHOICE OF NEW
Page 77. GENERALS. THE PROPOSAL PREVAILS, AND GENERALS ARE ELECTED, AMONG THEM XENOPHON.

1. An interpolation. See on ii. 1. 1.——**ὅσα . . . μάχης**: subject of book i.——**ὅσα . . . ἐγένετο**: subject of book ii.——**ἀπιόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: *while the Greeks were going away.*——**ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς**: belongs to *ἐγένετο.* Cf. iv. 1. 1.

2. ἐπεὶ . . . συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν: *i. e.* the generals mentioned ii. 5. 31. Usually the aor., for the plpf., occurs after *ἐπεί.* Cf. i. 1. 3.——**οἱ συνεπισπόμενοι**: *those who had followed.* Cf. ii. 5. 30-32.——**ἐννοούμενοι μέν**: resumed in *ταῦτ' ἐννοούμενοι* § 3. The **δέ** in the following clauses is not strictly correl. to *μέν* here. The seven following **δέ** clauses all depend on *ὅτι.* Note the effect of the polysyndeton (with **δέ**) and of the prominent position of the important word of each new thought in graphically portraying the horror of the situation.——**ἐπὶ ταῖς . . . θύραις**: hyperbolical here, of course, since the Greeks were now more than 200 miles from Babylon. Cf. ii. 4. 4.——**ἦσαν**: this and the foll. impfs. express Xen.'s view at the time of writing. See on *ἐφρόνει* ii. 2. 5. Gl. 624 c; G. 1489; H. 936; B. 676.——**κύκλῳ πάντῃ**: *all around.* Cf. ii. 3. 3, 5. 7. For *κύκλῳ*, see on i. 5. 4.——**πολλά**: agreeing with the nearer noun. G. 923; H. 620 a.——**παρέξειν ἔμελλεν**: *was going to furnish.* Gl. 570 b; G. 1254; H. 846 a; B. 549, 1. Cf. i. 8. 1, 9. 28.——**ἀπεῖχον τῆς Ἑλλάδος**: ablat. gen. Cf. i. 10. 4, ii. 2. 12.——**μύρια στάδια**: merely a round number to signify a great distance, like our *a thousand miles.*——**ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ**: *in the midst of the way home, i. e.* between them and home.——**οὐδ' ἱππέα . . . ἔχοντες**: *without even one cavalryman to aid them.* Note the singular in the negation, as iv. 1. 6, vi. 3. 7.——**νικῶντες, ἡττηθέντων**: both conditional.——**κατακάνοιεν**: see on i. 6. 2.

3. ἀθύμως ἔχοντες: see on *εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν* i. 1. 5; *ἐμπείρως ἐχόντων* ii. 6. 1.——**ὀλίγοι μέν, ὀλίγοι δέ**: anaphora.——**εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν**: *at evening.* See on *εἰς τὴν ἕω* i. 7. 1.——**σίτου ἐγεύσαντο**: Gl. 510 e; G. 1102; H. 742; B. 356.——**ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα**: *to their quarters, i. e.* the place where the arms were. See on ii. 2. 20, 4. 15.——**ἐτύγχανεν**: *sc.* *ὤν.*——**ὑπό**: *by*

reason of. Cf. ὑπὸ λίμου i. 5. 5.——**πατρίδων . . . παίδων**: for the asyndeton, see on ii. 4. 28.——**οὔποτε**: with ὄψεσθαι.——**οὕτω μὲν δή**: conclusive, as ταῦτα μὲν δή ii. 1. 20.——**οὕτω διακείμενοι**: *in such a frame of mind*, pass. of διατιθέναι. Cf. i. 1. 5, ii. 5. 27, 6. 12.

4. Ξενοφῶν: introduced without reference to his previous appearance (i. 8. 15, ii. 5. 37, 41). Note the modest **Ἀθηναῖος**, *an Athe-*

Page 78. *nian*, in contrast with **Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ** (§ 5), *Socrates the Athenian*. The author of the *Anabasis* was son of Gryllus, born prob. about 431 B.C., and a disciple of Socrates.——**αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο**: for change from rel. const. to pers. pron., see Gl. 615 a; G. 1040; H. 1005. Cf. i. 1. 2.——**ξένος**: see on i. 1. 10.——**εἰ ἔλθοι**: for ἐὰν ἔλθῃ of dir. disc.——**αὐτός**: emphasizes the subj. of νομίζειν. See on i. 3. 8.——**κρείττω ἑαυτῷ νομίζειν**: *sc.* εἶναι. The copula not infreq. omitted with verbs like νομίζω. Cf. i. 9. 23.

5. ἀναγνούς: see i. 6. 4.——**ἀνακοινοῦται**: ('communicates') *confers with.*——**ὑποπτεύσας μὴ . . . γενέσθαι**: *suspecting that it might be a cause of blame on the part of the state for him to become a friend to Cyrus.* ὑποπτεύσας has here the const. of a verb of fearing. Gl. 611 c; G. 1378; H. 887; B. 594. τι ὑπαίτιον is pred., Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι subj. to εἴη. πρός with gen. is practically the agent const. (= ὑπό). Cf. i. 9. 20.——**τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις . . . συμπολεμῆσαι**: *aided the Spartans in the war.* Gl. 598 a; G. 1179; H. 775; B. 394. Cyrus supplied the Lacedaemonians with money during the last four years of the Peloponnesian war.——**ἐλθόντα**: agreeing with omitted subj. of ἀνακοινῶσαι. See on λαβόντα i. 2. 1.——**ἀνακοινῶσαι**: *to communicate with, i. e. consult*, as vi. 1. 22. Cf. ἀνακοινοῦται just above.

6. ἐπήρετο: aor. of ἐπερωτάω.——**τίνι ἂν θεῶν . . . ἔλθοι**: Eng. idiom requires that '*by sacrifice and prayer to what one of the gods he should make the journey*' become *to what god he should offer prayer and sacrifice that he might make the journey.*——**κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα**: adv. with ἔλθοι.——**ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδόν**: the opt. (with ἄν) is, of course, potential. For accus., see Gl. 536; G. 1057; H. 715 b; B. 333.——**καλῶς πράξας**: see on κάκιον πράξειαν i. 9. 10.——**σωθείη**: *be saved, i. e.* return safely home.——**ἀνεῖλεν**: *responded, oraculum edidit.* Cf. § 8, v. 3. 7, vii. 6. 44.——**θεοῖς οἷς**: inverse assimilation. Gl. 613 c; G. 1035; H. 1003; B. 484, 2. See on i. 4. 15. On the matter, cf. vi. 1. 22.

7. τοῦτο: anticipating the question πότερον . . . μένειν.——**λῷον εἴη**: the full solemn formula in consulting the gods is λῷον καὶ ἄμεινον (vi. 1. 15, vii. 6. 44).——**ὅπως . . . πορευθείη**: indir. for πῶς ἂν . . . πορευθείην. ——**ἤρου**: transition to dir. disc. Cf. σοὶ ἔπεμψε i. 9. 25.

8. ἀνεῖλεν: *sc.* θύειν.——**ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν**: *to start on the way up.* See on ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδόν § 6. For the force of the adv., see on τῶν οἴκοι

i. 1. 10.——**συνεστάθη Κύρῳ**: *was introduced to Cyrus.* Cf. Lat. *commendare.*

9. συμπρουθυμεῖτο: *joined in urging.* Note the paronomasia.——**ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα**: *cum primum.*——**ἐλέγετο**: see on **λέγεται ἐκδεῖραι** i. 2. 8.——**εἰς Πισίδας**: see on i. 1. 11.

10. τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ὁρμήν: for *τὴν ὁρμὴν οὖσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα.* Cf. *Cyrop.* iii. 2. 6 *ὡς ἔγνωσαν τὴν ὁρμὴν ἄνω οὖσαν.*——**φοβούμενοι**
Page 79. **. . . καὶ ἄκοντες**: concessive.——**οἱ πολλοί**: for those who turned back, cf. i. 4. 7.——**αἰσχύνην . . . Κύρου**: for obj. gen., see on ii. 6. 19. Gl. 506 b end. The statements of this section were doubtless made in view of the decree of banishment against Xen., due prob. to his participation in the expedition of Cyrus.

11. καὶ οὐκ: not *οὐδέ*, because the preceding sent. is affirmative.——**μικρὸν ὕπνου λαχών**: *having got a little sleep.* It is better to take *μικρόν* (*sc. μέρος*) as the thing obtained by lot (Gl. 510 a; G. 1098; H. 737; B. 356, N. 1), than as *for a little while* (Krüger, Rehdantz).——**εἶδεν ὄναρ**: *had a dream.* The regular formula. Cf. iv. 3. 8, vi. 1. 22.——**ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ**: *asyndeton explicativum*, the clause containing the content of the dream.——**πᾶσα**: *sc. οἰκία*, subj. of *ἔδοξεν.*

12. περίφοβος ἀνηγέρθη: *awoke full of fear.*——**τῇ μέν, τῇ δέ**: adv., really local dats. Gl. 527; G. 1198· H. 783 c.——**ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν**: *sc. εἶναι.* See on *νομίζειν* § 4.——**φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διός**: a dream of a bright light was regarded as a favorable omen.——**ἔδοξε**: *thought.* See on i. 7. 1.——**ὅτι . . . τὸ πῦρ**: causal.——**ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως**: *i. e.* as protector of kings.——**μὴ οὐ δύναιτο**: depends on *ἐφοβεῖτο.* See on i. 7. 7.

13. ὁποῖόν τι . . . ἐστι: *what it means.*——**ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν**: *may be seen.* Cf. *ἔξεστι ὁρᾶν* 4. 39.——**ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων**: *from what happened.*——**πρῶτον μέν**: the correl. is *ἐκ τούτου* § 15.——**εἰκός**: *sc. ἐστι.*——**εἰ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ**: *if we shall get into the king's power.* See on i. 1. 4. For the minatory condition, see Gl. 648 b; G. 1405; H. 899.——**τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οὐχὶ . . . ἀποθανεῖν**: *what is in the way of our being put to death with insult, etc.* Gl. 572 a; G. 1550; H. 1034 b; B. 434. See on ii. 3. 11.——**πάντα μέν, πάντα δέ**: anaphora.——**ἐπιδόντας**: *having lived to see, having experienced*, as vii. 1. 30. Cf. *videre.*——**παθόντας ὑβριζομένους**: for the relation of the ptcs., see on *ὑπολαβὼν συλλέξας* i. 1. 7.

14. ὅπως ἀμυνούμεθα: object clause. Gl. 638 a; G. 1372; H. 885.——**ὥσπερ ἐξόν**: *just as if it were permitted.* Gl. 593 d;
Page 80. G. 1576; H. 978 a; B. 656, N. For the accus. abs., see on ii. 5. 22.——**ἐγὼ οὖν . . . πράξειν**: *the general from what state am I then to expect will do this?* Two questions are compressed into one. Cheirisophus, the Spartan general, would naturally occur to

Xen. προσδοκῶ, as well as ἀναμείνω, delib. subjv. Gl. 471 a; G. 1358; H. 866, 3; B. 577.——**ἀναμείνω**: with dep. inf. clause, as § 24.

15. ἐκ τούτου: see on i. 2. 17. It is correl. to πρῶτον μέν § 13.——**τοὺς Προξένου πρῶτον λοχαγούς**: as the friend of Proxenus, Xen. would naturally turn first to these.——**ἄνδρες λοχαγοί**: see on i. 3. 3. ——**ὥσπερ οἶμαι οὐδ' ὑμεῖς**: *sc.* δύνασθε. οἶμαι is parenthetical. See on ii. 1. 16.——**ἐν οἵοις**: *in what straits.* Cf. ἐν τοιούτοις ὄντες πράγμασι ii. 1. 16.

16. δῆλον ὅτι: *evidently.* Parenthetical; see on i. 3. 9.——**τὸν πόλεμον ἐξέφηναν**: = φανερῶς ἐξήνεγκαν, *unmasked their hostility.* Cf. ἐξενεγκεῖν πόλεμον 2. 29. Lat. *bellum ostendere.*——**πρὶν ἐνόμισαν**: see on i. 2. 26.——**οὐδεὶς οὐδέν**: see on i. 2. 26.——**ὅπως . . . ἀγωνιούμεθα**: see on § 14.

17. καὶ μήν: *yes, but.* Cf. i. 7. 5.——**εἰ ὑφήσομεθα**: *if we shall yield ourselves.* Cf. 2. 3. For cond., see on § 13.——**ὅς**: *seeing that he,* really causal. Cf. i. 6. 5.——**καὶ τεθνηκότος ἤδη**: *even when already dead.* Since Homer mutilation of a corpse was considered shameful.——**ἀποτεμὼν τὴν κεφαλήν**: see on i. 10. 1.——**ἡμᾶς**: subj. of παθεῖν, placed first for emphasis; otherwise it might be omitted as it is the same as the subj. of οἰόμεθα. For similar const., cf. 2. 3, vii. 1. 30 εὔχομαι ἐμὲ γενέσθαι.——**κηδεμὼν οὐδείς**: *i. e.* no one to intercede for them, as Cyrus had his mother.——**ἐστρατεύσαμεν**: for change to independent const, see Gl. 615 a; G. 1040; H. 1005. Cf. 2. 5.——**ὡς δοῦλον . . . ποιήσοντες**: *with a view to making him a slave instead of king.*——**ἂν παθεῖν**: see on ἂν εἶναι i. 3. 6.

18. ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι: *resort to everything, go all lengths.* Cf. ii. 5. 22. ——**τὰ ἔσχατα**: cogn. accus. See on i. 3. 3.——**τοῦ στρατεῦσαι**: obj. gen. with φόβον. Gl. 575; G. 1549; H. 959; B. 639.——**ὅπως . . . γενησόμεθα**: obj. clause depending on πάντα ποιητέον. Gl. 638 a; G. 1372; H. 885; B. 593.

19. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν: *I certainly.* The antithesis to which μέν looks is not expressed. Cf. i. 2. 1.——**ἔστε μέν**: balanced by ἐπεὶ μέντοι § 21. ——**ἐπανόμην οἰκτίρων**: see on ἐνοχλοῦντα ii. 5. 13.——**αὐτῶν**: dependent on the following interrog. clauses. Cf. 3. 18.——**ἐσθῆτα**: collective, *vestis.* Cf. iv. 3. 25.

20. τὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν: explained by ὅτι . . . κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς.—— **ὁπότε ἐνθυμοίμην**: this prot. (Gl. 627 end; G. 1431, 2; H. 914 B, 2; B. 625) looks to ἐφοβούμην as apod., which, however, is more
Page 81. directly connected with the intervening resumptive clause ταῦτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος. The const. begun with ἐνθυμοίμην ὅτι is interrupted by the parenthetical ᾔδειν with the suppl. ptcs.——**οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετείη**: for const. of gen. and dat., see Gl. 510 a, 520 b end; G.

1161; H. 734. The opt. indir. for *μέτεστι*.——**ὅτου ὠνησόμεθα**: *the means for purchasing*; gen. of price (Gl. 513; G. 1133; H. 746; B. 353) and rel. clause of purpose (Gl. 619; G. 1442; H. 911; B. 591). The verb is attracted into first pers. by *πριαίμεθα*. The clause is obj. of *ἔχοντας*.——**ἄλλως δέ πως . . . ἡμᾶς**: *but from getting supplies in any other way than by purchase our oaths already restrained us.* For *πορίζεσθαι* with *κατέχοντας* (= verb of hindering), see on i. 7. 19. For the suppl. ptcs. (*ἔχοντας, κατέχοντας*), see Gl. 586 a; G. 1588; H. 982; B. 661.

21. λελύσθαι: *to be ended.* For the force of the pf. inf., see G. 1275; H. 849 a; B. 546.——**δοκεῖ**: pers. const. Gl. 574 a; G. 1522, 2; H. 944 a; B. 634.——**ὑποψία**: some editors adopt *ἀσάφεια, uncertainty*, which Hug holds to be the original reading of Cod. C.——**ἐν μέσῳ . . . ὧσιν**: *for these good things are offered* (lit. 'placed in the midst') *as prizes for whichever of us may be the better men.* *ἐν μέσῳ κεῖσθαι* pass. of *εἰς μέσον τιθέναι, to offer as a prize.* *ὁπότεροι* for *τούτοις ὁπότεροι*. Cf. Dem. iv. 41 *ταῦτα μέν ἐστιν ἅπαντα τὰ χωρία ἆθλα τοῦ πολέμου κείμενα ἐν μέσῳ*.——**ἀγωνοθέται**: the figure of an athletic contest is kept up.

22. αὐτοὺς ἐπιωρκήκασιν: see on ii. 4. 7.——**ὁρῶντες**: concessive.——**θεῶν ὅρκους**: see on ii. 5. 7.——**πολύ**: separated for emphasis from *μείζονι*. Cf. i. 5. 2.——**τούτοις**: depends on *ἐξεῖναι*.

23. ἔτι δέ: *moreover*, as 2. 28. Cf. *πρὸς δ' ἔτι* 2. 2.——**ἱκανώτερα τούτων**: *more capable than these, i. e.* than their bodies. See on *ἠλέκτρου* ii. 3. 15.——**ψύχη καὶ θάλπη**: pl. of intense cold or heat.——**φέρειν**: for inf. with *ἱκανός*, see on *ὠφελῆσαι* i. 3. 6.——**ἔχομεν δὲ καί**: note the anaphora. *μέν* being omitted in the first number, *δὲ καί* especially emphasizes the second.——**σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς**: to soften the arrogance of the assertion.——**οἱ ἄνδρες**: *i. e.* the enemy, as 4. 40. So *οἱ ἄνθρωποι* iv. 2. 7.——**τρωτοὶ καὶ θνητοὶ μᾶλλον ἡμῶν**: *more liable to wounds and death than we, i. e.* as effeminate Asiatics, as opp. to vigorous Greeks.——**ἢν . . . δίδωσιν**: the fut. idea required for the apod. is implied in the verbals.——**τὸ πρόσθεν**: cf. i. 10. 10.

24. ἀλλά: belongs to *ἀναμένωμεν*, the *γάρ* clause being practically parenthetical.——**ἴσως γὰρ . . . ἐνθυμοῦνται**: *for perhaps others also are thinking the same things*, in which case they may make a beginning before us.——**πρὸς τῶν θεῶν**: see on i. 6. 6, ii. 1. 17. Elsewhere in the *Anab.* without the art.——**μὴ ἀναμένωμεν**: Gl. 473 a; G. 1344; H. 866, 1; B. 583. With dependent inf. clause, as § 14.——**παρακαλοῦντας**: fut. ptc. Cf. *παρακαλεῖτε* § 36, *συγκαλοῦμεν* § 46.——**τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι**: gen. with *ἄρξωμεν*. See on i. 4. 15.——**φάνητε**: asyndeton with intensive effect ——**ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι**: prob. coined by Xen., and imitated by Arr. *Anab.* iv. 11. 5.

25. οὐδέν: see on i. 1. 8.——**τὴν ἡλικίαν**: *my age, i. e.* my youth. The

passage seems to favor the later date assigned for Xen.'s birth (ca. 431 B. C.), sometimes placed ten years or more earlier.——**ἀκμάζειν ἐρύκειν**: *at my best to ward off.* ἐρύκειν is a poetical word found only here in Xen.——**τὰ κακά**: perhaps the dangers that might threaten Xen., from those inclined to Persian interests.

26. ἀρχηγοί: note the unusual and prob. poetical term.——**ἡγεῖσθαι**: *sc.* αὐτόν.——**ἦν**: the new person is introduced, for emphasis,
Page 82. with an independent sentence.——**βοιωτιάζων τῇ φωνῇ**: *with a Boeotian* (Aeolic) *accent.* That he was not even a Greek would appear from § 31.——**ὅστις λέγει**: note the indic. retained.——**ἄλλως πως . . . δύναιτο**: *that he could in any other way attain safety than by persuading the king, if he could.*——**ἂν τυχεῖν**: note the inf. with λέγει for the regular ὅτι ἂν τύχοι.——**ἤρχετο λέγειν**: for the inf., cf. i. 8. 18, ii. 6. 14.

27. μεταξὺ ὑπολαβών: *interrupting him in the midst* (of his speech).——**οὐδέ, οὐδέ**: *not even, nor.* For the proverbial expression, cf. [Dem.] xxv. 89 τὸ τῆς παροιμίας, ὁρῶντας μὴ ὁρᾶν καὶ ἀκούοντας μὴ ἀκούειν. See also Gospel acc. to Matth. 13. 13 and Isaiah 6. 9.——**ἐν ταὐτῷ**: *at the same place.* Cf. i. 8. 14.——**γε μέντοι**: cf. i. 9. 14.——**τούτοις**: dependent on ταὐτῷ. Cf. ii. 6. 22. On the matter, see ii. 1. 8 ff.——**μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ**: *highly elated at this.* Cf. ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ θεοσεβείᾳ ii. 6. 26.——**πέμπων ἐκέλευε**: for the relation of the ptcs. here, see on ὑπολαβὼν . . . συλλέξας ἐπολιόρκει i. 1. 7.

28. ἐξωπλισμένοι . . . αὐτῷ: *went under arms and encamped by him.* The pf. ptc. expresses the state, of course. For ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν, see on λαβεῖν ἐλθόντα ii. 1. 10.——**αἰτῶν καὶ παρέχων**: chiasmus.

29. ὥσπερ δή: *as forsooth.*——**εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς ἦλθον**: see on ii. 5. 4.——**οὐ νῦν . . . οὐδὲ . . . δύνανται**: *are they not unable even to die? οὐ . . . οὐδέ nonne, . . . ne quidem.* Their fetters would prevent killing themselves.——**καὶ μάλα . . . τούτου**: *however much desiring this* (*i. e.* τοῦ ἀποθανεῖν). καὶ μάλα as i. 5. 8. οἶμαι, cf. § 15.——**πείθειν . . . ἰόντας**: *sc.* ἡμᾶς, *that we go again and try to persuade him.* For const. of ἰόντας, cf. ἐλθόντας i. 3. 14. For the force of πείθειν, see Gl. 454 c; G. 1255; H. 825; B. 523.

30. μήτε, τε: see on ii. 2. 8.——**εἰς ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς**: see on ἐν ταὐτῷ τούτοις § 27.——**ἀφελομένους**: the subj. (ἡμᾶς) and pers. obj. (αὐτόν) are to be supplied.——**σκεύη . . . χρῆσθαι**: *put baggage on him and use him as such* (σκευοφόρῳ). On the relation of the ptcs. to the verb, see on i. 1. 7.——**τὴν πατρίδα**: Boeotia.——**καταισχύνει**: *puts to shame,* as 2. 14.——**ὤν**: concessive.

31. ἀλλά: yes, *but.* Cf. § 35, and see on i. 7. 6.——**τούτῳ γε . . .**

οὐδέν: *this fellow at least has nothing to do with Boeotia.* For dat. and gen., see Gl. 520 b end; G. 1161; H. 734.——**παντάπασιν**: *omnino.*——**ὥσπερ Λυδόν**: *i. e.* like a barbarian from Asia, where this
Page 83. un-Greek custom obtained.——**τὰ ὦτα τετρυπημένον**: *with his ears bored.* Accus. of part affected. See on **ἀποτμηθέντας τὰς κεφαλάς** ii. 6. 1.——**εἶχεν οὕτως**: *it was so.* Cf. **ἀθύμως ἔχοντες** § 3. See on i. 3. 9.

32. παρὰ τὰς τάξεις: *along the ranks.*——**ὅπου . . . σῶος εἴη**: iterative opt. (gen. cond.). Gl. 620 § 3.——**ὁπόθεν οἴχοιτο**: *from whatever division he* [the general] *was gone.* Gl. 454 f; G. 1256; H. 827. **οἴχοιτο** is a euphemism for **ἀπόλοιτο**. Cf. *Cyrop.* iii. 1. 13 **ὁ παῖς τοὺς πέπλους κατερρήξατο ὡς οἰχομένου τοῦ πατρός.**——**σῶος**: for this form, rare in Attic, see Gl. 96; Krüger *Spr.* 22, 13, 3.

33. εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν . . . ἐκαθέζοντο: *they sat down before the arms, i. e.* at the front of the camp. For this pregnant const., see G. 1225, 1; H. 788. For **εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν**, cf. i. 10. 5; for **τῶν ὅπλων**, cf. § 3.——**ἐγένοντο**: *amounted to,* as i. 2. 9.——**ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν**: see on i. 2. 9.——**μέσαι νύκτες**: for the pl., see on i. 7. 1.

34. ἤρχετο λέγειν: cf. § 26.——**αὐτοῖς**: *ipsis* (Gl. 199 c; G. 990; H. 680, 3; B. 475, 2), attracted to **ἡμῖν**.——**ὅπως . . . ἀγαθόν**: for common obj. in dependent clause, cf. ii. 1. 8.——**ἅπερ καί**: *sc.* **ἔλεξας**. For **καί**, see on i. 3. 18.

35. Ἀλλά: *well.* Cf. i. 8. 17, ii. 1. 20.——**ἐδυνήθησαν**: *sc.* **συλλαμβάνειν.**——**ἡμῶν**: part. gen. with **οὖς**. Cf. ii. 2. 14.——**δῆλον ὅτι**: see on i. 3. 9.——**ὡς . . . ἀπολέσωσιν**: for **ὡς** introducing final clause, see on i. 3. 14.——**ἡμῖν δέ γε**: cf. **ἐμοὶ δέ γε** iv. 6. 9. Antithesis in form to **ταῦτα μέν**, in sense to **βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης.**——**ὡς μήποτε . . . γενώμεθα**: const. strictly un-Attic; see on i. 1. 5. For the regular const., cf. § 18.

36. ὑμεῖς: note the effective recurrence (10 times) of the pron. in §§ 36, 37.——**μέγιστον καιρόν**: *a very great opportunity.*——**ἀθύμους**: *sc.* **ὄντας**. See on **βουλευομένους** i. 1. 7.——**ἢν . . . παρασκευαζόμενοι φανεροὶ ἦτε**: *if you shall be seen to be making preparations.* For the const., see on **δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος** i. 2. 11.——**παρακαλῆτε**: *sc.* **παρασκευάζεσθαι.** Cf. § 44.

37. ἴσως δέ τοι: *and perhaps in truth.*——**διαφέρειν τι τούτων**: *differ somewhat from these, i. e. excel* them—mild expression for
Page 84. strong conviction. For the const. of **τι**, cf. **οὐδὲν διέφερεν** ii. 3. 15.——**χρήμασι**: *i. e.* in pay.——**τούτων**: gen. because the verb implies comparison. Gl. 509 b; G. 1120; H. 749; B. 364.——**ἀξιοῦν δεῖ . . . προπονεῖν**: *it is right to expect that you be both braver than the multitude and plan and labor for these.* **πλήθους** to vary from **τούτων** preceding and following. **τούτων** dependent on **πρό** in comp.

Cf. *βεβουλεῦσθαι πρὸ ὑμῶν* vii. 6. 27; *πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ προκινδυνεύειν* vii. 3. 31. Some editors explain *προβουλεύειν* and *προπονεῖν* as implying comparison.

38. πρῶτον μέν: the correl. is *ἐπειδὰν δέ* § 39.——**μέγα**: *greatly*, adv., strictly cognate accus.——**ὅπως . . . ἀντικατασταθῶσιν**: obj. clause with subjv. retained.——**οὐδὲν οὔτε . . . οὐδαμοῦ**: for the force of the negs., see on *οὐδενί* i. 2. 26.——**ὡς . . . εἰπεῖν**: *to speak concisely.* The abs. inf. (Gl. 569; G. 1534; H. 956; B. 642, 1) often thus used to limit an assertion, either alone, or with some adv. modifier (*συνελόντι* Gl. 523 a; G. 1172, 2; H. 771 b; B. 382).——**ἐν δὲ δὴ τοῖς πολεμικοῖς**: *δή certainly*, in matters that are self-evident.——**παντάπασιν**: *sc. οὐδὲν ἂν . . . γένοιτο* (there could be nothing good) *at all.*——**εὐταξία, ἀταξία**: anaphora, with paronomasia.——**ἀπολώλεκεν**: the pf. is gnomic.

39. ἐπειδὰν καταστήσησθε: with force of Lat. fut. pf. Gl. 650 c; GMT. 90; H. 898 c.——**δεῖ**: *sc. καταστήσασθαι.*——**παραθαρρύνητε**: cf. ii. 4. 1.——**ἂν . . . ποιῆσαι**: *that you would do it quite opportunely.* For the cond., see Gl. 650; G. 1421, 2; H. 901 a; B. 612, 1.

40. ὡς ἀθύμως μέν: *how dejectedly.* Cf. § 3. Note the anaphora. See on i. 3. 16.——**πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς**: *to picket duty.*——**οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων**: *while they are so at least* (*i. e.* dejected). Cf. *ἀθύμως ἔχοντες* § 3.——**ὅ τι . . . χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς**: *what use one could make of them.* Gl. 536 b; G. 1183; H. 777 a; B. 334. See on i. 3. 18.——**δέοι**: *sc. χρήσασθαι.*

41. αὐτῶν: separated for emphasis from *τὰς γνώμας* on which it depends.——**ὡς . . . ἐννοῶνται**: Gl. 636 a; G. 1365, 1366; H. 881; B. 590.

42. ἡ . . . ποιοῦσα: *which makes.* Cf. *οἱ ποιοῦντες* 2. 18; *ὁ τολμήσων* ii. 3. 5. The ptc. takes the gender of the nearer noun.——**ὁπότεροι ἂν . . . ἴωσιν**: gen. rel. cond.——**σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς**: cf. § 23.——**ἐρρωμενέστεροι**: properly comparative of pf. ptc. (*ῥώννυμι*). Gl. 546; G. 926; H. 619; B. 425.——**ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ**: *for the most part.*——**οὐ δέχονται**: *do not await, withstand.* Cf. *hostium impetum excipere.*

43. ὁπόσοι μὲν . . . οὗτοι μὲν . . . ὁπόσοι δὲ . . . τούτους: double anaphora.——**μαστεύουσι**: abs. v. 6. 25; with accus. vii. 3. 11.

Page 85. Poetical verb.——**ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου**: *at all hazards.*——**πως**: *somehow.* Cf. ii. 6. 3.——**ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν**: *as long as they live.* Gen. rel. condition.

44. ἃ καταμαθόντας: (*κατα-* intensive) *in full knowledge of all this.*——**αὐτούς**: *ourselves.*——**παρακαλεῖν**: *sc. ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι.*

45. τοσοῦτον μόνον . . . εἶναι: *so much only I knew of you, that I heard that you were an Athenian.* For *τοσοῦτον*, see on i. 3. 15. *εἶναι, sc. σέ.*——**ἐφ' οἷς**: for the assimilation, see Gl. 614; G. 1032; H. 996 a; B. 486.——**βουλοίμην ἄν**: *I should wish, velim.* Gl. 480 end; G. 1327; H. 903; B. 587, N. 1.——**ὅτι πλείστους**: cf. i. 1. 6, 11.

46. μὴ μέλλωμεν: see on § 24.——**οἱ δεόμενοι**: *sc.* *ἀρχόντων*, appos. to subj. of *αἱρεῖσθε*.——**συγκαλοῦμεν**: fut. Cf. *παρακαλοῦντας* § 24.——**ὁ κῆρυξ**: who was to summon the soldiers.

47. ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰπών: *simul atque haec dixit.* Gl. 592; G. 1572; H. 976; B. 655.——**μὴ μέλλοιτο**: *might not be delayed.*——**Δαρδανεύς**: of Dardanus in the Troad. Clearchus's troops came from that quarter of Asia Minor; so an Arcadian succeeds an Arcadian, an Achaean succeeds an Achaean; but Menon the Thessalian is succeeded by an Achaean, and Proxenus, a Boeotian, by Xenophon, an Athenian. The choice of Xen. may have been due not simply to the impression made by his speech, but to the presence of several Athenian officers in the division of Proxenus (1 taxiarch, 5 lochagi, 1 hipparch).——**Κλεάνωρ**: was already general, according to ii. 5. 37, and was prob. chosen now as general also of the troops of Agias.

CHAPTER II

XENOPHON ENCOURAGES THE SOLDIERS. HIS PROPOSALS ARE ADOPTED

1. ἐπεὶ δ' ἤρηντο: for the plpf., see on i. 2.——**τε . . . καί**: here, as always, implying close concurrence.——**ὑπέφαινε**: *was about dawning, illucescebat.* Note the force of *ὑπο* —. Cf. iv. 2. 7, 3. 9.——**καταστήσαντας**: for the case, see on *λαβόντα* i. 2. 1.——**στρατιῶται**
Page 86. **συνῆλθον**: on the democratic character of the government of Greek troops, see Introd. § 23.——**πρῶτος μέν**: the correl. is *ἐπὶ τούτῳ* § 4. Cf. i. 13. For *πρῶτος*, see Gl. 546; G. 926; H. 619 b.

2. τὰ παρόντα: *the present situation.* Cf. *τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασι* i. 3. 3.——**ὁπότε**: *now that, quando.*——**πρὸς δ' ἔτι καί**: *and still further also.* *πρός* adv. G. 1222, 1; H. 785.——**οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον**: *Ariaeus and his followers.* Cf. *τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα* i. 10. 3; *οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον* ii. 4. 2.

3. ἐκ τῶν παρόντων: *under present circumstances.* Cf. *τὰ παρόντα* § 2.——**τελέθειν**: poetic and dialectic (Ion. and Dor.) for *γίγνεσθαι*. Cf. vi. 6. 36.——**ὑφίεσθαι**: cf. i. 17.——**ὅπως . . . σῳζώμεθα**: the obj. clause (Gl. 638 c; G. 1374; H. 885 b; B. 593, 1) is more emphatic than the usual inf. const. after *πειρᾶσθαι*.——**εἰ δὲ μή**: *otherwise*; see on ii. 2. 1.——**ἀλλά . . . γε**: *yet at least, at . . . certe.* For *ἀλλά* in apod., see on ii. 5. 19.——**ἀποθνήσκωμεν . . . , γενώμεθα**: simpler to take as hortatory subjvs., though the force of *ὅπως* may continue.——**ὑποχείριοι γενώμεθα**: *come into the hands of.* Cf. German "unter die Hände kommen."——**παθεῖν**: = pass. of *ποιῆσαι*. The juxtaposition of these verbs, as here, freq. Cf. i. 41.——**οἷα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς . . . ποιήσειαν**: opt. of wish. For the double accus., see Gl. 536 c; G. 1073; H. 725 a; B. 340.

4. ἐπὶ τούτῳ: *after this one.*——**ὁρᾶτε μέν**: in this sent. note the anaphora and the repetition of *αὐτός*, which effectively emphasizes the voluntary treachery of Tissaphernes ("the very man who, the very man who, this very man").——**ὅστις λέγων**: stronger than *ὅς*, *one who, quippe qui*. For Tissaphernes' speech, see ii. 3. 18–20.——**περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο**: see on i. 9. 7.——**ἐπὶ τούτοις**: *in confirmation thereof.*——**οὐδὲ Δία ξένιον**: *not even Zeus xenios*, the supreme father worshipped under various titles as protector of strangers and suppliants, enforcer of oaths, etc.——**ὁμοτράπεζος**: see on i. 8. 25.——**αὐτοῖς τούτοις**: *by that very means, i. e.* by means of oaths, promises, and table-companionship.

5. ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθιστάναι: cf. ii. 1. 4.——**καὶ ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν**: change from relative to independent const. Cf. i. 1. 7.——**πιστά**: see on i. 6. 7.——**μὴ προδώσειν**: for fut. inf., see on *παρέξειν* ii. 3. 26.——**καὶ οὗτος**: *even he.*——**Κῦρον τεθνηκότα . . . Κύρου ζῶντος**: the antithesis is heightened by the chiasmus. The threefold repetition of Κῦρος is as effective here as of *αὐτός* in § 4.——**τιμώμενος**: impf. ptc., as *λέγων* in § 4.——**ἐκείνου**: gen. because *ἔχθιστος* is treated as a subst.——**φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν**: see on ii. 3. 23.

6. ἀποτείσαιντο: *requite, pay back.* Gl. 476; G. 1507; H. 870; B. 587. See *ἀποτίνω* in vocab. For the force of *ἀπο* —, cf. **ἀπέπεμπε** i. 1. 8.——**ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα**: *as vigorously as we can*, as prot. of a rel. cond., as also *ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ*. Cf. *ὡς ἂν δύνηται πλείστους* i. 6. 3. See on i. 1. 6.

7. ἐκ τούτου: = *ἐπὶ τούτῳ* § 4.——**ἐσταλμένος . . . κάλλιστα**: *equipped for war as splendidly as possible.* This effort to impress
Page 87. the soldiers was very shrewd.——**εἴτε . . . θεοί, εἴτε . . . δέοι**: note the parallelism and similarity of sound.——**τῷ νικᾶν**: *being victorious*, pres. with pf. force. Gl. 454 f; GMT. 27.——**ὀρθῶς ἔχειν . . . τυγχάνειν**: *that it was right, having deemed himself worthy of the most beautiful equipments, to meet death in these.* So Gen. Skobeleff used to go into battle in his best uniform, perfumed, and wearing a diamond-hilted sword, "in order that he might die in his best attire" (Dakyns). Compare Nelson's answer to the suggestion that he should conceal the orders which made him a conspicuous mark for the enemy: "In honor I gained them, and in honor I will die with them."——**τοῦ λόγου δ' ἤρχετο**: *began his speech.* For const., see on *ἄρξαντες* i. 4. 15. Cf. i. 6. 5.

8. τὴν μέν: without correl. *δέ* clause formally expressed. See on i. 2. 1.——**αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας ἰέναι**: *to enter into friendly relations with.* Gl. 525 a; G. 1177; H. 772 a; B. 376. Cf. just below *διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς ἰέναι.*——**τοὺς στρατηγούς**: prolepsis. See on *τῶν βαρβάρων* i. 1. 5.——**αὐτοῖς ἑαυτούς**: antithetical juxtaposition.——**σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις**: *with the help of our arms*, practical personification. Cf. *σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς.*——

ὧν: = *τούτων ἅ*. See on **ἀνθ' ὧν** i. 3. 4.——**τὸ λοιπόν**: see on ii. 2. 5.——**παντὸς πολέμου**: *every kind of war.*——**σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς**: the dominant note of the whole speech.——**πολλαὶ καὶ καλαί**: see on *πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα* ii. 3. 18.——**ἡμῖν**: note the emphatic position as compared with § 10.

9. πτάρνυταί τις: considered as a good omen when occurring in connection with a lucky word or circumstance, here coincident with the word *σωτηρία*. Cf. Hom. *Od.* xvii. 544 *οὐχ ὁράᾳς ὅ μοι υἱὸς ἐπέπταρε πᾶσιν ἔπεσσι. Do you not see that my son sneezed at every word?* Catullus xlv. 6 *amor dextram sternuit approbationem, love sneezed a blessing on the right.*——**μιᾷ ὁρμῇ**: *uno impetu, with one accord.*——**προσεκύνησαν**: *worshipped* (lit. *kissed* the right hand *towards*).——**ἡμῶν λεγόντων**: *while we were talking.*——**οἰωνός**: *an omen*, lit. 'a bird,' the appearance of these being the usual signs from the gods. Cf. Ar. *Aves* 720 *πταρμόν τ' ὄρνιθα καλεῖτε, you call a sneeze a bird.*——**θύσειν σωτήρια**: *sc. ἱερά, to make thank-offerings.* See *τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε* i. 2. 10.——**ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον**: *ubi primum.* For the const., see on *ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ* i. 3. 5. The
Page 88. vow was paid at Trapezus on the Euxine (iv. 8. 25).——**συνεπεύξασθαι**: *to unite with it a further vow.*——**ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα**: the usual method of voting in the Athenian ecclesia. The army was a migrating political community.——**ἐπαιάνισαν**: cf. i. 8. 17.——**τὰ τῶν θεῶν**: *res divinae.*——**καλῶς εἶχεν**: see on *εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν* i. 1. 5.

10. τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὅρκους: see on ii. 5. 7.——**ἐπιωρκήκασι**: *they have sworn falsely, i. e.* they have sworn with the intention not to keep the oath.——**οὕτω δ' ἐχόντων**: *quae cum ita sint.* See on i. 40.——**οἵπερ**: *seeing that they*, causal rel. See on *ὅς* i. 17.——**καὶ τοὺς μεγάλους κτέ**: cf. Gospel acc. to Luke i. 52.——**κἄν**: = *καὶ ἐάν, even if.*

11. ἔπειτα δέ: cf. *πρῶτον μὲν* § 10. The introduction of the parenthetical sent. causes a change of const., in which what should be a leading clause with *ἔπειτα δὲ* (*σῴζονται οἱ ἀγαθοί*) becomes subord. to *ἵνα εἰδῆτε*. In *ἐλθόντων μέν* the const. is resumed without reference to *ἔπειτα δέ*.——**ἀναμνήσω . . . κινδύνους**: for the double accus., see Gl. 535; G. 1069; H. 724; B. 340.——**ἀγαθοῖς**: assimilated to *ὑμῖν*. Gl. 571 c; G. 928, 1; H. 941; B. 631. For the dat. *ὑμῖν*, cf. § 16. For the chiasmus (*ἀγαθοῖς . . . ἀγαθοί*), see on ii. 3. 5.——**γάρ**: Gl. 672 b.——**παμπλήθει στόλῳ**: for military dat., see on ii. 5. 22.——**ὡς ἀφανιούντων τὰς Ἀθήνας**: *with a view to blotting out Athens.* Gl. 593 c; G. 1574; H. 978; B. 656, 3.——**αὐτοί**: *alone.* For case, see Gl. 571; G. 927; H. 940 b; B. 631.——**ἐνίκησαν**: *i. e.* at Marathon (490 B. C.).

12. εὐξάμενοι: as if *ἐψηφίσαντο*, instead of *ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς* were to follow.——**τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι**: *sc. Ἀγροτέρᾳ*. The festival was celebrated on the 6th

of Boedromion (Sept. 20) with a procession.——**κατακάνοιεν**: see on i. 6. 2. ——**οὐκ εἶχον ἱκανὰς εὑρεῖν**: *were not able to find enough.* Cf. *οὐδὲν εἴχομεν λαμβάνειν* ii. 2. 11.——**ἔτι νῦν ἀποθύουσιν**: *i. e.* 90 years after. Plutarch *Morals* 26 mentions the sacrifice as still kept up five centuries after Xen.'s time. For force of *ἀπο—*, cf. *ἀπέπεμπε* i. 1. 8; *ἀπῄτουν* i. 2. 11.

13. ἔπειτα: corresponds to *ἐλθόντων μέν* in § 11.——**τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιάν**: *that innumerable host*, demonstrative article. Cf. *τῇ μάχῃ* i. 2. 9. Hdt. (vii. 185) makes the number of fighting men 2,641,610, and the camp followers still more (vii. 186).——**καὶ τότε**: *then, too, i. e.* at Artemisium (480), Salamis (480), Plataea and Mycale (479), as well as at Marathon.——**ἔστι μὲν τεκμήρια ὁρᾶν**: *there are proofs to be seen.* Though *ἔστι* has a subj., it retains the force of *ἔξεστι*, as § 39. Cf. *ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν* i. 13.——**τρόπαια**: *i. e.* memorials of victory erected on the spot where the enemy turned (*τρέπειν*).——**ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεούς**: *but the gods alone.* See on i. 4. 18.——**προγόνων**: gen. of source. See on i. 1. 1.

14. οὐ μὲν δή: see on i. 9. 13.——**ἀλλά**: as correl. to *μέν*, stronger than *δέ*, *on the contrary*.——**ἡμέραι**: *sc. εἰσίν*.——**ἀφ' οὗ**:
Page 89. *since, ex quo*.——**πολλαπλασίους ὑμῶν αὐτῶν**: Gl. 517; G. 1154; H. 755 a. See on *ἡμιόλιον* i. 3. 21.

15. πολύ: belongs to the two comparatives. For position, cf. *πολύ* i. 22, i. 5. 2.——**ὑμᾶς προσήκει**: cf. *ὑμῖν προσήκει* § 11.——**ἀμείνονας . . . εἶναι**: with the sentiment, cf. i. 22.

16. ἀλλὰ μήν: see on i. 9. 18.——**τότε μέν**: out of position, and so the more emphatic.——**τό τε πλῆθος**: for *τε*, *and*, cf. i. 9. 5.——**ἄμετρον**: (*sc. ὄν.*) pred.——**εἰς αὐτούς**: *into, i. e. against them*, stronger than *ἐπί*. Cf. iv. 3. 29, 5. 18.——**πεῖραν ἔχετε αὐτῶν**: see on *Κύρου ἐν πείρᾳ* i. 9. 1.——**ὅτι οὐ θέλουσι**: explanatory clause after *πεῖραν ἔχετε*, as after a verb of knowing.——**καὶ . . . ὄντες**: concessive.——**δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς**: *receive you, i. e.* abide your attack.

17. μηδὲ . . . ἔχειν: *nor think, moreover, that you have this as a disadvantage.* Refutation of the first difficulty. For the const. *μηδὲ δόξητε*, see Gl. 473 b; G. 1346; H. 874; B. 584. For *δοκεῖν*, *think*, see on i. 7. 1. ——**ὅτι κτέ**: explanatory of *τοῦτο*.——**ἔτι**: emphasized by position and separation from *κακίονες*.——**γοῦν**: introducing an example in proof.——**ταττομένους**: Gl. 586 a; G. 1582; H. 982.

18. εἰ δὲ κτέ: refutation of second difficulty.——**ἐνθυμήθητε**: plur. after *τις ὑμῶν*.——**οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς**: the art. to express a general or familiar number. G. 948; H. 664; B. 444.——**ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἵππου κτέ**: intended to amuse and revive the spirits of the Greeks.——**οἱ ποιοῦντες**: *those who do.* See on i. 42.——**ὅτι ἂν . . . γίγνηται**: cond. rel. clause. *γίγνηται* = pass. of *ποιέω*.

19. τῶν ἱππέων: gen. after the comp.——**πολύ**: for position, see on § 15. Note the anaphora.——**τὸ καταπεσεῖν**: art. inf. as dir. obj.——**βεβηκότες**: *standing firm.* Cf. *Oec.* 8. 17 *βεβηκυίας τῆς οἰκίας ἐν δαπέδῳ.*——**ὅτου**: *sc. τυγχάνειν* (with *βουλώμεθα*). See on *τῆς τελευτῆς τυχεῖν* ii. 6. 29.——**ἡμᾶς**: accus. for the usual gen. after *προέχουσιν.* Cf. Eur. *Hipp.* 1365 *ὅδ' ὁ σωφροσύνῃ πάντας ὑπερέχων.*——**φεύγειν**: note the asyndeton in explanation.

Page 90.

20. εἰ δὲ δὴ κτέ: third difficulty. The prot. includes to **ἄχθεσθε.**——**τὰς μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε**: for const., see Gl. 530 a; G. 1049; H. 712.——**ἡμῖν . . . ἡγήσεται**: in the sense *be a guide to* *ἡγέομαι* takes dat., *be a leader of*, the gen.——**τοῦτ' ἄχθεσθε**: *distressed at this.* This epanaleptic dem. is a cogn. accus. Gl. 536 b; G. 1054; H. 716 b; B. 334.——**οὓς ἂν . . . κελεύωμεν**: prot. of rel. gen. cond.——**ἄνδρας**: attracted into rel. clause. Gl. 613 d; G. 1037; H. 995; B. 485.——**τι ἁμαρτάνωσι**: for cogn. accus., cf. *τί χρῆσθαι* i. 3. 18.——**τὰς ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα**: their lives might be taken, their bodies tortured. For a case in point, cf. iv. 1. 23. The single art., with both nouns, though of different genders, treating them as one whole.

21. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια κτέ: fourth difficulty. Note that this question is direct (*κρεῖττόν ἐστι*), while the former was indirect. The obj. is emphatically placed first.——**ἧς**: for the attraction, see on *ὧν* i. 1. 8.——**παρεῖχον**: *have been furnishing.*——**μικρὰ μέτρα**: appos. to *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.*——**πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου**: for gen. of price, see on *σίγλων* i. 5. 6. Gl. 513.——**μηδὲ . . . ἔχοντας**: *and no longer having even this*, *μηδέ* because the ptc. agrees with *ἡμᾶς* the understood subj. of the inf.——**αὐτούς**: *sc. ἡμᾶς.*——**ὁπόσῳ . . . βούληται**: *as large as each wishes* (*sc. χρῆσθαι*).

22. εἰ δὲ ταῦτα κτέ: fifth difficulty. The proleptic *ταῦτα* is brought into strong antithesis to *ποταμούς* the leading idea of this paragraph.——**ἄπορον**: for neut. pred., see on *φοβερώτατον* ii. 5. 9.——**ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες**: *that you were deceived in crossing.* The reference is to the crossing of the Euphrates (i. 4. 7) and the Tigris (ii. 4. 24), more esp. to the latter.——**σκέψασθε εἰ . . . πεποιήκασιν**: *consider whether perchance they have not in this done actually a very foolish thing* (lit. 'this even most foolish'). The English idiom requires the insertion of *not.* For *καί* = *vel*, cf. *καὶ ἥδιστα* ii. 5. 15. *τοῦτο* refers to *διαβάντες* (*i. e.* in allowing the Greeks to cross the Tigris), for (1) rivers are not impassable, and (2) the Persians will suffer if the Greeks stay in their territory.——**εἰ καί**: *although* (*καὶ εἰ, even if*). Gl. 670 a; H. 1053, 1, 2.——**πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν**: Gl. 518 b; G. 1149; H. 757; B. 362, 3.——**προσιοῦσι**: *for men approaching.* Gl. 523 a; G. 1172, 2; H. 771 b; B. 382. See on *συνελόντι* i. 38. Cf. *πειρωμένοις* 5. 7, iv. 3. 6.

23. μήτε, τε: see on ii. 2. 8.——**διήσουσιν**: *shall let through.* For

fut. in prot., see Gl. 648 a; G. 1405; H. 899.——**οὐδ' ὡς**: see on i. 8. 21.——**ἐπιστάμεθα Μυσούς, . . . ὅτι**: prolepsis. The Mysians were in the northwestern part of Asia Minor.——**οὓς . . . εἶναι**: for accus. and inf. in rel. clause, cf. i. 9. 29.——**Πισίδας**: see on i. 1. 11.——**Λυκάονας . . . αὐτοὶ εἴδομεν**: cf. i. 2. 19.——**τούτων**: *i. e.* the Persians—transition from king to people.

24. καὶ ἡμᾶς: *we too*, emphatic.——**ἂν ἔφην**: *should say, i. e.* if I were not afraid. Gl. 461 e, 481. The prot. to be expected
Page 91. (*εἰ μὴ ἐδεδοίκειν*) is practically expressed in *ἀλλὰ δέδοικα* § 25.——**χρῆναι . . . ὡρμημένους**: *ought not yet to let it be seen that we have started for home.* For suppl. pte. with *φανερὸν εἶναι*, see Gl. 585 a; G. 1589; H. 981; B. 660, N.——**κατασκευάζεσθαι**: *to be preparing*, also dependent on *χρῆναι*.——**ὡς αὐτοῦ που οἰκήσοντας**: *as if to settle somewhere on the spot.* ——**πολλοὺς μέν, πολλοὺς δέ**: anaphora.——**ἂν ὁμήρους**: *sc.* *δοίη*.——**τοῦ . . . ἐκπέμψειν**: obj. gen. with *ὁμήρους*. Cf. *φόβον τοῦ στρατεῦσαι* i. 18. For the fut. inf., see G. 1277; GMT. 113; B. 549.——**καὶ ἡμῖν γε . . . ἐποίει**: *and for us certainly I know, he would be doing this thrice gladly.* **οἶδ' ὅτι** is parenthetical. See on i. 4. 15. For cond., *εἰ ἑώρα*, *if he were to see*, see on *εἰ ἤλθετε* ii. 1. 4. For adj. as adv., see on *προτέρα* i. 2. 25.

25. ἀλλὰ γάρ: *but* (I do not say this) *for*. Cf. §§ 26, 32. But see Gl. 672 d (end).——**ἀργοί**: for case, see Gl. 571; G. 927; H. 940; B. 631. Adj. for adv., as *τρισάσμενος* § 24.——**μάθωμεν ζῆν**: for inf., see on i. 9. 4.——**ἐν •ἀφθόνοις βιοτεύειν**: *to subsist in abundance.* Cf. iv. 5. 29.——**καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις**: *fair and tall.* For a Greek, height was an essential of female beauty.——**μή**: repeated on account of the long intervening clause.——**ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι**: after eating of the lotos flower the followers of Odysseus no longer cared to return home. Cf. Hom. *Od.* ix. 84–102 and Tennyson's *Lotos-Eaters*. The lotos fruit (jujuba) is still eaten in northern Africa, the traditional home of the Lotos-Eaters.——**ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ**: Gl. 511 b; G. 1102; H. 742; B. 356.

26. Ἑλλάδα . . . Ἕλλησιν: chiasmus.——**ἑκόντες**: adj. = adv., see on *τρισάσμενος* § 24.——**ἑξόν**: accus. abs. See on ii. 5. 22.——**κομισαμένους**: after *αὐτοῖς*. See on *λαβόντα* i. 2. 1.——**πλουσίους**: *sc.* *ὄντας*.——**δῆλον ὅτι**: parenthetical. See on i. 3. 9.——**τῶν κρατούντων ἐστί**: possessive. Gl. 508; G. 1094, 1; H. 732 a; B. 348, 1.

27. ὅπως ἂν πορευοίμεθα . . . μαχοίμεθα: chiasmus. Both verbs are pot. opts. in indir. question.——**ἡμῶν στρατηγῇ**: Gl. 510 c;
Page 92. G. 1109; H. 741; B. 356.——**συμφέρῃ**: *sc.* *πορεύεσθαι*.——**ἔπειτα**: correl. to *πρῶτον μέν*. See on i. 3. 10.——**συγκαταkαῦσαι**: *sc.* *δοκεῖ μοι*.——**ὄχλον παρέχουσιν ἄγειν**: *give trouble to carry.* Gl. 565 a; G. 1530; H. 952; B. 641.——**συνωφελοῦσι οὐδέν**: *contribute*

no aid, cogn. accus.——**εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι**: *for fighting.* Gl. 574; G. 1546; H. 959; B. 638 (end).——**οὔτε**: for comp. neg. after **οὐδέν**, see on **οὐδενί** i. 2. 26.

28. ἔτι δέ: see on i. 23.——**ἀπαλλάξωμεν**: *let us get rid of.*——**κρατουμένων . . . ἀλλότρια**: *for of conquered men you know that everything is forfeit, i. e.* all the possessions of conquered men. The ptc. is really cond. with **ἡμῶν** understood as subj., but Xen. purposely avoids this const. as of ill omen.——**νομίζειν**: for obj. and pred. accus., see on i. 4. 9.

29. μέγιστον: this is stated in **δεῖ οὖν κτέ.** § 30, the reasons therefor having been first given in **ὁρᾶτε γὰρ κτέ.**——**καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους**: prolepsis, *the enemy too, i. e.* they as well as I consider it most important.——**ἐξενεγκεῖν πόλεμον**: cf. **τὸν πόλεμον ἐξέφηναν** i. 16.——**πρὶν . . . συνέλαβον**: see on i. 2. 26.——**νομίζοντες**: causal.——**ὄντων μὲν . . . πειθομένων**; *while there were officers and we obeyed.*——**λαβόντες δέ**: transition, after the long explanatory clause (**νομίζοντες κτέ**), to independent const.——**ἂν . . . ἀπολέσθαι**: quoted form for pot. opt.

30. πολὺ μὲν . . . πολὺ δέ: note the anaphora, and the emphasis gained by the separation in each case of **πολύ** from its adj. and of **τοὺς νῦν** from **ἄρχοντας**, as also by the repetition of **νῦν** and **πρόσθεν** (in adverbial relation, **τοὺς νῦν** and **τῶν πρόσθεν** giving the advs. in attributive relation).——**πειθομένους μᾶλλον**: *more obedient.*

31. ψηφίσασθαι: *sc.* **δεῖ**.——**τὸν ἀεὶ ὑμῶν ἐντυγχάνοντα**: *the one of you who on each occasion happens by* (*sc.* **τῷ ἀπειθοῦντι**). Subj. of **κολάζειν**.——**τοὺς οὐδενὶ . . . εἶναι**: *that will permit no one to be a coward.* For the case of **κακῷ**, see on **ἀγαθοῖς** § 10.

32. ἀλλὰ γάρ: see on § 25.——**περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα**: *high time now to finish my speech.*——**εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον**: *sc.* **δοκεῖ ἔχειν.**

Page 93. ——**ὁ ἰδιώτης**: *the common soldier, private*, as i. 3. 11. For the generic article, see G. 950; H. 659.; B. 448.

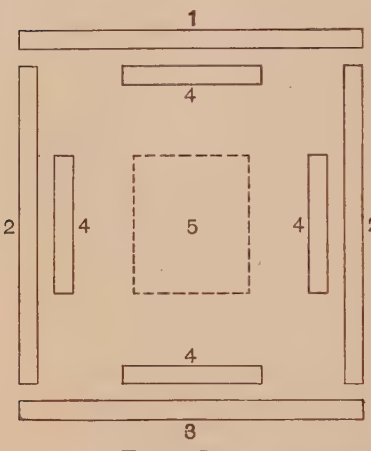
33. ἀλλ': *well*, breaking off further deliberation. Cf. ii. 1. 4.——**οἷς**: assimilation. See on **ᾧ** i. 3. 17.——**καὶ αὐτίκα**: *presently too*, the antithesis of **ὡς τάχιστα.**——**ἄριστον εἶναι**: connect with **δοκεῖ μοι.**——**ἀνέτειναν πάντες**: the asyndeton marks haste of action. See on i. 3. 20.

34. ὧν: = **τούτων ἅ.**——**προσδοκεῖ**: *further* (**προσ —**) *seems good.*——**δῆλον**: *sc.* **ἐστιν.**——**ὅπου**: = **ἐκεῖσε ὅπου**, as iv. 8. 26. Cf. **ἔνθα** iv. 1. 2.

35. εἰ καὶ αὐτοί: *if they too*, like the dogs. It is an emphatic repetition of **εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι**, in which **καί** completes the simile.——**ἐπακολουθοῖεν**: the verb whether simple or compound takes dative.

36. πλαίσιον: *hollow square, agmen quadratum.* Cf. **πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον** 4. 19. The square was formed of hoplites stationed in equal numbers, generally 8 men deep, on all four sides. The front (**στόμα**) was in phalanx-order, with the **λοχαγοί** at the head. On the flanks (**πλευραί**) the

file-leaders occupied the outside rank, the rear-leaders the inside rank. The arrangement of the rear (*οὐρά*) was exactly the reverse of the front, the file-leaders being on the outside, the *οὐραγοί* on the inside. If attack was made from behind, the whole *οὐρά* turned right about face; if from either side, the *πλευρά* turned right face, left face, as the case might be. The light-armed troops stood inside the square supporting the four divisions of hoplites. The cavalry was employed outside of the square wherever occasion demanded. If a charge was to be made by the Greeks against the enemy, light-armed troops and cavalry, supported by hoplites, executed it. Skirmishing was conducted by slingers and bowmen posted outside the square. The centre of the square was occupied by the *ὄχλος* (*non-combatants*).——**ποιησαμένους**: after *ἡμῖν*, cf. *κομισαμένους* 2. 26.——**τῶν ὅπλων**: fig. for *τῶν ὁπλιτῶν*, as ii. 2. 4.——**εἰ νῦν ἀποδειχθείη**: *if it should now be determined* (lit. 'appointed').——**τίνας χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι**: *who are to lead*; indic. retained in indir. question.——**τὰ πρόσθεν κοσμεῖν**: *to arrange the vanguard.*——**ὁπότε . . . ἔλθοιεν**: the opt. is iterative.——**χρώμεθ' ἄν . . . τοῖς τεταγμένοις**: *we should at once make use of the men already drawn up for action.*



HOLLOW SQUARE.

1, *στόμα*; 2, *πλευρά*; 3, *οὐρά*; 4, light-armed troops; 5, *ὄχλος*.

37. **ἄλλως ἐχέτω**: see on *εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν* i. 1. 5.——**εἰ δὲ μή**: see on ii. 2. 1.——**ἡγοῖτο**: exhortation in form of a wish. Gl. 476; G. 1510; H. 870; B. 587.——**ἐπειδὴ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιος**: *i. e.* besides other qualifications. The Lacedaemonians since the Peloponnesian war had the hegemony in Greece.——**ὀπισθοφυλακοῖμεν**: the rear was, of course, really the most important position on a retreat.——**τὸ νῦν εἶναι**: *for the present.* For abs. inf., see on i. 6. 9.

38. **τὸ δὲ λοιπόν**: see on ii. 2. 5.——**πειρώμενοι . . . τάξεως**: Gl. 510 b; G. 1099; H. 738; B. 356.——**ἀεί**: *each time.* Cf. § 31.——

Page 94. **ἔδοξε ταῦτα**: for asyndeton, cf. § 33, and see on i. 3. 20.

39. **ἀπιόντας**: *sc. ὑμᾶς.*——**μεμνήσθω . . . εἶναι**: Gl. 588 c; G. 1592, 2; H. 986; B. 661, N. 3.——**ἔστιν**: see on § 13.——**τῶν νικώντων**:

see on ii. 1. 4.——**καίνειν**: see on i. 6. 2.——**καὶ εἴ τις δὲ ἐπιθυμεῖ**: *and moreover if one desires.* See on **καὶ στρατηγὸν δέ** i. 1. 2. This clause continues the const. **ὅστις τε . . . ὅστις τε.**

CHAPTER III

AN ATTACK BY MITHRADATES LEADS TO THE ADOPTION OF XENOPHON'S SUGGESTION TO ORGANIZE A CORPS OF SLINGERS AND CAVALRYMEN

1. τῶν περιττῶν: part gen. with **ὅτου**, which is governed by **δέοιτο.** Cf. 2. 28.——**Μιθραδάτης**: cf. ii. 5. 35.——**ὡς τριάκοντα**: see on i. 2. 3.——**καλεσάμενος**: *summoning.* For mid., see Gl. 500 d; G. 1245; H. 815; B. 505. Cf. **ἐκείνους καλέσαι** vii. 2. 30.——**εἰς ἐπήκοον**: see on ii. 5. 38.

2. εὖνους: *sc.* **εἰμί.**——**διάγων**: *passing the time.* Cf. 1. 43.——**βουλευομένους**: see i. 1. 7.——**καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας**: *also my attendants.*——**ὡς φίλον**: appos. to **πρός με.**

3. ἔλεγε: *was spokesman,* as ii. 3. 21.——**εἰ μὲν . . . ἢν δὲ . . .**: note the anaphora with sustained parallel arrangement and like endings.——**εἰ μέν τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς**: *if one allows us.* Pres. cond. expressing alternative which the speaker prefers to assume to be true.——**ὡς ἂν**

Page 95. **δυνώμεθα ἀσινέστατα**: *as harmlessly as we can.*——**ἢν δέ τις . . . ἐπικωλύῃ**: *if one shall attempt to keep us from the journey* (fut. cond.). By **τις** Tissaphernes is meant. For the ablat. gen., see Gl. 509 a; G. 1117; H. 748; B. 362, 1.——**διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ**: *to fight it out with this one.*

4. ἐκ τούτου: see on i. 2. 17.——**ἔνθα δή**: see on i. 5. 8.——**ὑπόπεμπτος**: see on ii. 4. 22.——**καὶ γάρ**: *and in fact.*——**τῶν Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκείων**: note the intrusion of **τις** into attrib. position, allowable in Attic when there is another modifier. It emphasizes the preceding word. Cf. ii. 5. 32 **τῶν βαρβάρων τινὲς ἱππέων.**——**πίστεως ἕνεκα**: *i. e.* to make sure of Mithradates' fidelity.

5. δόγμα ποιήσασθαι: = **ψηφίσασθαι,** with dependent inf., as after **δοκῶ.**——**ἀκήρυκτον**: *i. e.* without mediation of heralds.——**ἔστε . . . εἶεν**: for **ἔστ' ἂν ὦμεν** of dir. disc.——**διέφθειρον**: conative impf. See on **ἐκώλυε** i. 2. 21. Cf. **διέφθειραν** (*did corrupt, i. e.* bribe), just below.——**ὥχετο ἀπιών**: see on i. 10. 16, ii. 4. 24.

6. τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν: *the* (great) *Zab.* In the neighborhood is the field of Arbēla where Alexander defeated Darius 330 B. C.——**τεταγμένοι . . . ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες**: cf. 2. 36.——**εὐζώνους**: *well girded,* really the explanation of **ἐλαφρούς.**

7. ὡς φίλος ὤν: see on i. 1. 2.——**ἐγένοντο**: *i. e.* Mithradates and his troops.——**ἐτίτρωσκον**: *i. e.* *οἱ μέν* and *οἱ δέ*.——**ἔπασχον κακῶς**: Gl. 499 a; G. 1241; H. 820; B. 513.——**ἀντεποίουν δ' οὐδέν**: *did nothing in retaliation.*——**Κρῆτες**: cf. i. 2. 9 for the 200 Cretan bowmen of Clearchus.——**βραχύτερα . . . ἐτόξευον**: *had a shorter range than the Persians*, gen. after compar.——**καὶ ἅμα**: introduces a second reason for *ἀντεποίουν οὐδέν*.——**εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων**: = *ὁπλιτῶν*. See on 2. 36.——**βραχύτερα . . . τῶν σφενδονητῶν**: *hurled too short a distance to reach the slingers.* For the const. of the inf., see Gl. 566 a; G. 1531; H. 954; B. 645. For the gen., see on *τῆς τελευτῆς τυχεῖν* ii. 6. 29.

8. διωκτέον εἶναι: indir. for *διωκτέον ἐστίν*.——**τῶν ὁπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν**: part. gen., dependent on the rel. clause. See on ii. 2. 14.

9. ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ· πολύ: cf. § 15, where the subst. is placed with *πολύ* and omitted with *ἐν ὀλίγῳ*.——**οὐχ οἷόν τ' ἦν**: *was not*
Page 96. *expedient.* G. 1024 b; H. 1000; B. 441 a.——**ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατεύματος διώκειν**: *i. e.* to go far from the main body in pursuit. Cf. *ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος* § 11.

10. καὶ φεύγοντες ἅμ' ἐτίτρωσκον: *even while fleeing inflicted wounds.* Gl. 592; G. 1572; H. 976 a; B. 655.——**εἰς τοὔπισθεν τοξεύοντες**: *shooting backward.* See on *εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν* i. 33. Cf. Plut. *Crass.* 24 *ὑπέφευγον ἅμα βάλλοντες οἱ Πάρθοι, καὶ τοῦτο κράτιστα ποιοῦσι μετὰ Σκύθας, the Parthians withdrew, shooting at the same time, and this they do best after the Scythians.*——**διώξειαν**: iterative opt. (gen. cond.).——**ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει**: because the Persian cavalry renewed the attack as soon as they turned back.

11. τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης: time within which. See on *τῆς νυκτός* ii. 2. 1. For the order, see on *ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα* i. 2. 17.——**δείλης**: *late afternoon* (*ὀψίας*) is meant, as seen from *τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης*. See on i. 8. 8.——**εἰς τὰς κώμας**: cf. 2. 34.——**οὐδὲν μᾶλλον**: *i. e.* than if he had not pursued them.

12. αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον: *the actual result.* Gl. 558; G. 980; H. 680, 1; B. 475, 2.——**ἐν τῷ μένειν**: *while we kept still.*——**κακῶς μὲν πάσχοντας . . . οὐδέν**: see on § 7.

13. ἀληθῆ ὑμεῖς λέγετε: *what you say is true, i. e.* of what then happened.——**κακῶς ποιεῖν**: = *βλάπτειν* of § 11. This sent. is not only in itself chiastic, but forms a chiasmus as against § 11, since here *ἀνεχωροῦμεν πάνυ χαλεπῶς* answers to *αὐτός τ' ἐκινδύνευε* there.

14. χάρις: *sc.* *ἔστω*.——**ὥστε βλάψαι μὲν μὴ μεγάλα**: *so as to inflict no great harm.* For inf. implying a result intended or naturally following, see Gl. 566 b; G. 1450; H. 953; B. 595. For cogn. accus., see Gl. 536 b; G. 1054; H. 716 b; B. 334.——**ὧν**: for *ταῦτα ὧν*.

15. ὅσον: for *τοσοῦτον ὅσον, so far that.* Accus. of extent of space, as *ὁπόσον* in § 10.——**οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες**: *i. e.* the *ἀκοντισταί.*——**ἐξικνεῖσθαι**: see on i. 8. 19.——**πολύ**: emphasized by position. See on § 9.——**οὐδ' εἰ**: see on ii. 1. 11.——**ἐκ τόξου ῥύματος**: *with a bow-shot's start* (lit. 'from a bowshot'), *i. e.* when the enemy is a bowshot in advance. Cf. *Hellen.* iv. 5. 15 *ἧρουν οὐδένα ἐξ ἀκοντίου βολῆς ὁπλῖται ὄντες πελταστάς.*

16. ἡμεῖς: const. with *μέλλοιμεν*, though belonging in sense to **δεῖ**.——**εἰ μέλλοιμεν . . . δεῖ**: the pres. indic. in apod. with opt. in prot. is merely an emphatic future expression. GMT. 500.——**εἴργειν ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι βλάπτειν**: one of the numerous consts. of inf. after verbs of hindering. Cf. 5. 11 *ὥστε μὴ ὀλισθάνειν . . . σχήσει.* See Gl. 566 b, 572; G. 1449, 1615; H. 1029; B. 434. For the general const., see also Gl. 572 a, 573; G. 1549–1552; GMT. 807–817; H. 1034; B. 643. See on i. 13, 5. 11, i. 3. 2, 6. 2, 7. 19, iv. 3. 3, 7. 5, 8. 14.——**τὴν ταχίστην**: *sc.* *ὁδόν*, adv. accus., as i. 3. 14.——**ἀκούω εἶναι**: see on ii. 5. 13.——**Ῥοδίους**: famous for their skill as slingers.——**ἐπίστασθαι σφενδονᾶν**: *know how to sling.* Gl. 588 c; G. 1592, 2; H. 986.——**διπλάσιον φέρεσθαι . . . σφενδονῶν**: *carries* (lit. 'is borne') *even twice as far as the Persian slings.* For the gen., see on *πολλαπλασίους ὑμῶν* 2. 14.

Page 97.

17. χειροπληθέσι: pred. adj. (lit. 'handfilling'). Gl. 548.——**ἐπὶ βραχύ**: see on *ἐπὶ πολύ* i. 8. 8.——**ταῖς μολυβδίσιν**: *leaden balls,* originally adj. (*sc.* *σφαίραις*).

18. αὐτῶν: dependent on the following interrog. clause. See on 1. 19.——**πέπανται**: see on i. 9. 19.——**τῷ μέν**: sing., as if *τίς* had preceded, induced perhaps by *τῷ δέ* following.——**αὐτῶν ἀργύριον**: *money for them, i. e.* the slings.——**ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ**: *at the post assigned.*——**ἄλλην τινὰ ἀτέλειαν**: *some exemption besides, i. e.* from guard or other duty. See on *ἄλλο* i. 5. 5.

19. τοὺς μέν τινας: explanatory part. appos.——**τῶν Κλεάρχου**: part. gen.——**καταλελειμμένους**: *i. e.* when cavalry to the number of forty deserted (ii. 2. 7).——**σκευοφόρα**: *i. e.* pack animals, such as mules, asses, oxen.——**εἰς ἱππέας κατασκευάσωμεν**: *equip for horsemen.* Cf. *Hellen.* iv. 2. 7 *ὅπλα εἰς τὴν στρατιὰν κατεσκευάσθη.*

20. σφενδονῆται μὲν . . . ἐγένοντο: *slingers to the number of two hundred were organized,* the first in the Greek army.——**ἐδοκιμάσθησαν**: *were approved,* the stock pression for the examination of would-be cavalrymen.——**σπολάδες**: (Aeolic form) *leathern cuirasses,* unusual for cavalrymen, who generally wore metal ones (*θώρακες*). Cf. iv. 1. 18.

CHAPTER IV

ON THEIR RETREAT THROUGH ASSYRIA, THE GREEKS REPULSE REPEATED ATTACKS OF MITHRADATES AND TISSAPHERNES. AS THEIR SOLID ORDER OF MARCH EXPOSES THEM TO SKIRMISHING ATTACKS, SIX COMPANIES ARE FORMED WHOSE FREER MOVEMENTS FACILITATE THE RETREAT. BY XENOPHON'S STRATEGY A HEIGHT COMMANDING THE ENEMY'S POSITION IS SEIZED

1. τῇ ἄλλῃ: *postridie*, as ii. 1. 3.——**χαράδραν**: the bed of a mountain stream, which at most seasons would be dry.——**ἐπιθοῖντο**: for the usual *ἐπιθεῖντο*, see Gl. 376, 377; G. 741; H. 445 b; B. 170, 4.

2. διαβεβηκόσι δὲ αὐτοῖς: *to them when they had crossed.*——**ᾖτησε**: for double accus., see on i. 1. 10.——**ἂν . . . λάβῃ**: subjv. retained in indir. disc.——**καταφρονήσας**: *having come to despise* (*sc.* *τῶν Ἑλλήνων*). For ingressive aor., see *ἠγάσθη* i. 1. 9.——**οὐδέν, πολλά**: chiasmus.

Page 98.

3. ὅσον: *about.* See on i. 8. 6.——**τὴν δύναμιν**: *his force.* Cf. § 32.——**παρήγγελτο**: *orders had been given.*——**τῶν πελταστῶν**: part. gen. with *οὕς*, which is subj. of *διώκειν.*——**εἴρητο θαρροῦσι διώκειν**: *the orders were to pursue boldly.* For the case of *θαρροῦσι*, see on *ἀγαθοῖς* 2. 11. For *εἴρητο* with inf., see on *ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν* i. 3. 8.——**ὡς . . . δυνάμεως**: *on the understanding that a sufficient force would follow.* For *ὡς*, see Gl. 593 c; G. 1574; H. 978; B. 656, 3.

4. κατειλήφει: *sc.* *αὐτούς.*——**ἐσήμηνε**: with implied subj., see on *ἐσάλπιγξε* i. 2. 17; *σημήνῃ* ii. 2. 4.——**οἷς εἴρητο**: *who had received orders*, subj. of *ἔθεον.* See on § 3.——**οἱ δέ**: *sc.* *πολέμιοι.* Gl. 549 b; G. 983 a; H. 654 e; B. 443, 1.

5. τοῖς βαρβάροις: dat. of disadvantage. See on *αὐτῷ* ii. 4. 3.——**αὐτοκέλευστοι**: *sua sponte.* Cf. *αὐτό-ματος* i. 2. 17; *αὐτό-μολος* i. 7. 2.——**ὅτι φοβερώτατον**: see on *ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον* i. 1. 6.——**ὁρᾶν**: for const. of the inf., see on ii. 3. 3.

7. ἐρήμη: see on i. 5. 4.——**Λάρισα**: the Greek word, which prob. meant originally *citadel* or *fortress*, was perhaps applied as the equivalent of a native designation. The site is now called Nimrud. On Calah and Resen of this neighborhood, really parts of Nineveh, cf. *Genesis* x. 11, 12.——**τὸ παλαιόν**: *anciently.* See on *τὸ ἀρχαῖον* i. 1. 6.——**τὸ εὖρος . . . πόδες**: see on *τὸ μὲν εὖρος ὀργυιαί* i. 7. 14.——**ᾠκοδόμητο πλίνθοις**: see on ii. 4. 12.——**εἴκοσι ποδῶν**: see on *δύο πλέθρων* i. 2. 23.

8. βασιλεύς: Cyrus the Great.——**ἐλάμβανον**: conative impf.——**οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ**: cf. *τρόπῳ τινί* ii. 2. 17.——**ἥλιον νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε**:

covered the sun and hid it, prob. an inexact description of an eclipse. ——**ἐξέλιπον**: *sc.* *τὴν πόλιν*. An eclipse was considered an evil omen.

9. παρὰ ταύτην: see on *παρὰ τὴν ὁδόν* i. 2. 13.——**πυραμὶς λιθίνη**: the explorer Layard states that what appeared to Xen. a pyramidal tower was in reality the remains of a square tower with foundation of stone, but the upper part of brick, which in disintegration had gradually assumed conical shape. This tower was a staged tower (*ziggurat*); it resembled a truncated quadrangular pyramid, and had inclined planes on the outside for ascent. Cf. Perrot and Chipiez, History of Ancient Art in Chaldaea and Assyria, vol. i, pp. 385 f., fig. 178 (Engl. transl.). Recent excavations (since 1845) have revealed here vast numbers of bricks with cuneiform inscriptions which belonged once to a great royal library.——**ἀποπεφευγότες**: cf. i. 4. 8, ii. 2. 13.

Page 99.

10. τεῖχος: *fortress.*——**Μέσπιλα**: the name applied to the part of the ruins of ancient Nineveh on the bank of the Tigris, opposite to the modern city of Mosul. The ruins in this region, forming a parallelogram, Layard thinks were all included in the area of Nineveh, whose circuit was said to be 60 miles ("three days' journey," Jonah 3. 4). Excavations have revealed the sites of three immense palaces, *i. e.* "royal dwellings with their dependent buildings and parks or *paradises*, fortified like the palace-temples of Egypt, capable of standing a prolonged siege, and a place of refuge for the inhabitants in case of invasion" (Layard).——**Μῆδοι**: either confused, here and in § 7, by local tradition with the Assyrians, or possibly referring to the time of the Median occupation (about first half of the sixth cent. B C.). "This seems to be all that Xenophon knew or cared to tell of the history of this famous place. . . . The slight notice of the ruins taken by Xenophon shows at once the completeness of the destruction of Nineveh and the carelessness of even a cultivated Greek about the former glory of 'Barbarians.'" (G. and W. *ad loc.*).——**λίθου . . . κογχυλιάτου**: gen. of material. Such *shelly limestone* is still used for building in that quarter.

11. ἐνταῦθα: with a verb of motion, as i. 2. 1.——**γυνὴ βασιλέως**: *i. e.* of Astyages, the last king of Media.——**ἀπώλλυσαν . . . ὑπὸ Περσῶν**; *were on the point of losing the sovereignty at the hands of the Persians.* With the impf., cf. *ἐλάμβανον* § 8. The pass. force induces the agent const.

13. εἰς τοῦτον τὸν σταθμόν: *on this day's march*, *εἰς* with accus. for *ἐν* with dat. because of motion implied in *ἐπεφάνη*.——**οὓς τε . . . αὐτὸς ἱππέας ἤγαγεν ἔχων**: *having the cavalry whom he himself had brought.* *ἔχων* governs all three rel. clauses. *ἤγαγεν* is Gemoll's conjecture. If the MSS. reading *ἦλθεν* be retained, we must understand in this first rel.

clause a second ἔχων of the same force as that in the other two rel. clauses.——**Ὀρόντα**: Doric gen.——**τοῦ . . . ἔχοντος**: *sc. γυναῖκα, who had* (in marriage) *the king's daughter.* See on ii. 4. 8.——**ἔχων ἀνέβη**: ἔχων, *with*, as just below. Gl. 583 a; G. 1565; H. 968 b; B. 653, 3.——**οὗς ὁ βασιλέως ἀδελφὸς . . . ἐβοήθει**: cf. ii. 4. 25.

14. τὰς μὲν . . . τὰς δὲ . . . παραγαγών: *i. e.* he threatened the Greeks in the rear and on both flanks at once. **τὰ πλάγια**
Page 100. = τὰς πλεύρας (2. 36). Cf. εἰς πλάγιον i. 8. 10. Observe the chiastic arrangement of the four following infs.——**παρήγγειλε**: *passed the order along.* See on i. 8. 16.

15. διαταχθέντες: *posted at intervals, i. e.* outside of the square, for in § 26 it is said κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων.——**οὐδὲ εἰ**: see on i. 6. 8.——**προύθυμεῖτο**: *sc.* τις from οὐδείς.——**ῥᾴδιον ἦν**: *sc.* ἁμαρτάνειν, because the enemy stood so thick. For this form of apod. with unreal prot., see Gl. 460; G. 1400, 1; H. 897; B. 567, 1.

16. ἐσίνοντο: Ionic word (*Od.* and Hdt.) used by Xen. and Plato.——**τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει**: cf. 3. 7.——**μακρότερον γὰρ . . . τῶν τοξοτῶν**: if the text is correct, the sense is: *for the Rhodians, indeed, slung farther than the Persians and the bowmen.* τε (of the MSS.) before Ῥόδιοι would seem to look to something different in the second clause, like Cobet's conjecture for τῶν τοξοτῶν, *i. e.* οἱ Κρῆτες ἐτόξευον. The sense would then be: *for both the Rhodians slung and the archers shot farther than the Persians.*

17. καὶ τὰ τόξα: *i. e.* as well as those of the Greeks.——**ὁπόσα ἀλίσκοιτο**: iterative opt. (gen. rel. cond.).——**τῶν τοξευμάτων**: part. gen. depending on ὁπόσα.——**τοῖς Κρησί**: depends on χρήσιμα.——**διετέλουν χρώμενοι**: *used constantly.* Gl. 585 a; G. 1587; H. 981; B. 660.——**ἐμελέτων . . . μακράν**: *sc.* ὁδόν, *they practised shooting a long way, aiming upward*, so that the arrows might carry farther. Some editors explain, shooting up into the air so as to recover the arrows.——**εἰς**: *for.* See on i. 1. 9.

18. μεῖον ἔχοντες: *having the worst of it.* Cf. i. 10. 8.——**ἀκροβολιζόμενος**: abs. *skirmishing*, with dat. § 33.

19. πλαίσιον: prolepsis. On the forming of the square, cf. 2. 36.——**πολεμίων ἑπομένων**: conditional.——**ἢν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα**: *if the wings draw together.* Pres. gen. cond. as ὅταν . . . διάσχῃ in § 20.
Page 101. τὰ κέρατα as in § 21. Cf. πλευραί in § 22.——**ἢ ὁδοῦ . . . γεφύρας**: causal.——**ἐκθλίβεσθαι**: (*sc.* ἐκ τῆς τάξεως) *be squeezed out of ranks.* Subj. of ἀνάγκη ἐστίν.——**ἀτάκτους ὄντας**: *since they are out of ranks.*

20. ὅταν . . . τὰ κέρατα: *whenever again the wings are separated.*——**τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων**: *i. e.* the intervening space,——**ὁπότε δέοι**:

change to past gen. cond. referring to the case of the army at that time: see on ὁπότε βούλοιτο i. 2. 7.——φθάσαι πρῶτος: pleonasm. Cf. φθάσαι πρίν ii. 5. 5, and see on πλέον προτιμήσεσθε i. 4. 14.——εὐεπίθετον . . . τοῖς πολεμίοις: *it was easy for the enemy to attack.* εὐ-επίθετον verb. adj. from (εὖ-) ἐπιτίθεσθαι.

21. ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας: *one hundred men each.*——ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας: *besides commanders of fifties.* See on ἄλλο i. 5. 5.——οὗτοι: *i. e.* the six lochagi with their companies.——οἳ μέν: the companies of the rear.——τοὺς δέ: the companies of the van.——τοὺς δὲ . . . τῶν κεράτων: *the others they led outside of the wings.* The new arrangement which took the place of the hollow square was an oblong rectangle, the sides being of 8 men each marching abreast (with the ὄχλος between), while three of the picked companies formed the van, three the rear. When the army thus marching came to a bridge or a ford and the flanks closed in, the three forward picked companies drew out of the rectangle and went forward, the three rear picked companies fell behind, leaving the flanks to move forward side by side. The ὄχλος, at such times, might proceed in a thinner line between the sides or remain behind and come after these. When the narrow place was passed and the flanks opened again, the picked companies again filled the gap, in wider or narrower formation according to the size of the gap. These six companies were intended, moreover, not merely to relieve pressure, at narrow places, but to form an efficient guard (at the rear) and to lend aid wherever help was needed. (Rehd. in substance.)

22. ἂν ἐξεπίμπλασαν: for the iterative ἄν, see on i. 9. 19.——εἰ μὲν στενώτερον . . . κατὰ λόχους: *if the space was rather narrow, by companies, i. e.* with the companies in column (3 front by 32 depth).——κατὰ πεντηκοστῦς: *by fifties, i. e.* each company with a front of 6 and a depth of 16.——κατ' ἐνωμοτίας: by *enomoties, i. e.* each company with a front of 12 and a depth of 8.

23. ἐν τῷ μέρει: *each in his turn.*——εἴ που . . . οὗτοι: *if anywhere in the line there was any necessity, these came up.* τῆς φάλαγγος depends on που. With ἐπιπαρῆσαν, cf. ἐπιπαριόντες § 30.

24. βασίλειόν τι: *sc.* δῶμα, doubtless a residence of the satrap of the province. Cf. § 31.——διὰ . . . γιγνομένην: *leading across high hills.*——ὑφ' ᾗ ἦσαν αἱ κῶμαι: *at the foot of which were the villages, i. e.* those connected with the castle (βασίλειόν τι).——ἄσμενοι: cf. ii. 1. 16.——τῶν πολεμίων . . . ἱππέων: gen. abs. giving ground for ἄσμενοι.

25. ὡς . . . ἀναβαίνειν: for ὡς (= ὥστε) with inf., see on

Page 102. i. 5. 10.——ἐπιγίγνονται: *are upon* them, *attack.*——εἰς τὸ πρανές: *down-hill.*——ἔβαλλον, ἐσφενδόνων, ἐτόξευον: note the asyndeton of contemporaneous actions and the polysyndeton in stat-

ing the results (§ 26).——**ὑπὸ μαστίγων**: *under the lash.* So the Persians were driven to the attack at Thermopylae (Hdt. vii. 223).

26. ἐκράτησαν . . . κατέκλεισαν: note the change to aor. in stating individual results.——**Ἑλλήνων**: adj. See on i. 10. 7.——**εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων**: see on **διαταχθέντες** § 15. For **ὅπλων** = **ὁπλιτῶν**, cf. 2. 36, 3. 7.——**ἄχρηστοι**: = **ἀχρεῖοι**, *unserviceable.*——**ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες**: *i. e.* in the crowd of camp-followers.

27. σχολῇ μέν: *slowly*, really dat. of manner, as iv. 1. 16. Strictly the antithesis should be **ταχὺ δέ**, but the chiastic arrangement **ὁπλῖται ὄντες οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι** prevented.——**ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον**: *i. e.* to the hill from which the Greeks had descended and which the enemy had occupied.

28. ὁπότ' ἀπίοιεν: iterative opt. Strictly the indic. should stand, as only the one occurrence is really spoken of, but others that followed were in the mind of the author.——**πρὶν . . . ἀνήγαγον**: *until they had brought up*, the indic. (for **ἀναγάγοιεν**) because **οὐκ ἐκίνησαν** (the effect of **ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν**) was in Xen.'s thought.——**πρὸς τὸ ὄρος**: that mentioned § 24.

29. ἐπεὶ . . . πολεμίων: *i. e.* had reached a point of the mountain higher than that on which the enemy were.——**ἀποτμηθείησαν**: the shorter form (**ἀποτμηθεῖεν**) is more usual in Attic.——**γένοιντο οἱ πολέμιοι**: here the reference is, of course, to the Greeks.

30. οἱ μέν: the main body.——**τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους**: *by the way along the hills.* Cf. § 24.——**οἱ δέ**: the peltasts (§ 28).——**κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπιπαριόντες**: *going on along the mountain parallel* (to the main body).——**εἰς τὰς κώμας**: cf. § 24.——**πολλοί**: pred., as § 32.

31. καὶ ἅμα . . . εἶχον: transition to independent const., where **ὅτι εἶχον** or **ἔχοντες** was to be expected.——**ἄλευρα, οἶνον, κριθάς**: for the asyndeton, see on ii. 4. 28.——**ἵππους**: for dat., see on **αὐτῷ**
Page 103. i. 1. 9.——**τῷ σατραπεύοντι**: either dat. of agent with plpf. pass. (see on **ἡμῖν** i. 8. 12), or, better, dat. of advantage.

32. σὺν τῇ δυνάμει: *with his force.* Cf. **τὴν δύναμιν** § 3.——**ἀπόμαχοι**: *non-combatants.* Cf. iv. 1. 13.

33. κατεσκήνησαν καὶ ἐπεχείρησαν: note the change of subj.——**αὐτοῖς ἀκροβολίζεσθαι**: for dat., cf. **τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι** just below, and see on **ὁπόσοις μάχεσθαι** ii. 5. 18.——**περιῆσαν**: *were superior.* Cf. i. 8. 13, 9. 24.——**πολὺ διέφερεν**: *it was far easier.* **διαφέρειν** has compar. force, hence **ἤ**. Cf. *Mem.* iii. 11. 14 **τηνικαῦτα πολὺ διαφέρει τὰ αὐτὰ δῶρα ἢ πρὶν ἐπιθυμῆσαι διδόναι.**——**ἐκ χώρας ὁρμῶντας**: *starting from a place*, opposed to **πορευομένους**, *on the march.* Cf. the commoner mid. (**ὁρμώμενος**) in the same sense i. 1. 9.

34. ὥρα ἦν ἀπιέναι: for inf., see on **ὥρα καθεύδειν** i. 3. 11.——**τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ**: depends on **ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο.**——**σταδίων**: gen. after comparative.

35. **πονηρόν**: *a wretched thing.* See on **φοβερώτατον** ii. 5. 9.——**αὐτοῖς**: for the dat., see Gl. 523; G. 1170; H. 767; B. 378.——**ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ**: cf. i. 42.——**τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἕνεκα**: prep. with art. inf. (Gl. 576; G. 1546; H. 959; B. 639) as final clause.——**εἰ λυθείησαν**: the apod. is implied in **τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἕνεκα.**——**δεῖ ἐπισάξαι . . . ἀνδρὶ κτέ**: *the Persian has to have his horse saddled and bridled for him and has to put on, etc.* The dat. with inf. for accus. is very rare. Cf. *Mem.* iii. 3. 10 **εἴ σοι δέοι διδάσκειν.** It is better, with Rehdantz, to understand some general subj. like **τινα** for the inf. and **ἀνδρί** as dat. of advantage.——**ἐπισάξαι**: *i. e.* to put on the saddle-cloth (**τὸ ἐφίππιον**, Xen. *Eq.* 7. 5), for the ancients had no saddles.——**δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι**: note the asyndeton. **αὐτόν**, *i. e.* the Persian master, is the implied subj. With this section, cf. *Cyrop.* iii. 3. 27.

36. **διαγγελλομένους**: *passing the word, i. e.* through the ranks. Cf. **διακελευομένων** § 45. The usual term is **παραγγέλλειν** (§ 14). See on i. 8. 16.——**ἐκήρυξε**: *sc.* **ὁ κῆρυξ.** See on **ἐσάλπιγξε** i. 2. 17.——

Page 104. **ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας**: *held back from the march.* Cf. *Cyrop.* iv. 2. 12 **ὅπου ἂν . . . ἐπίσχωσι τῆς πορείας.**——**λύειν**: *to be expedient*, poetical verb for **λυσιτελεῖν**

37. **ἀπιόντας**: *sc.* **τοὺς βαρβάρους.**——**ἀναζεύξαντες**: lit. *having yoked up, i. e.* having broken camp.——**διῆλθον**: the aor. denotes the result of **ἐπορεύοντο.**——**ὅσον**: as in § 3. See on i. 8. 6.——**ἀκρωνυχίαν**: lit. 'nail-tip,' *i. e. crest* = *spur*, as here; for the real crest of this mountain is called **κορυφή** and **ἄκρον** in § 41.——**ἔμελλον**: *were to.* See on i. 2.——**ὑφ' ἧν**: *along the base of which.*

38. **ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς**: *from the rear*, lit. 'tail.' For similar military terms taken from parts of animals, cf. **στόμα** ('mouth') *van* § 42, **πλεῦραι** *flanks*, *latera*, **κέρας** ('horn') *wing.*——**παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν**: *come to the front.* Cf. **παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις** i. 2. 2. For **εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν**, see on i. 33.

39. **ὃ δὲ λέγει**: see on **ὃ δέ** i. 1. 3.——**ἔξεστιν ὁρᾶν**: *one can see.* Cf. **ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν** i. 13.——**ἡμῖν**: dat. of disadvantage. Gl. 523.——**τούτους**: *those* (pointing to them), *i. e.* **τοὺς κατειληφότας.**

40. **τὰ ὄπισθεν**: *the rear.* Cf. **τὰ πρόσθεν** 2. 36.——**ἀλλὰ μήν**: *but indeed*, as i. 9. 18.——**ἔφη**: *sc.* **Χειρίσοφος.**——**πῶς τις . . . ἀπελᾷ**: indir. question.

41. **ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ . . . στρατεύματος**: *right above their*

Page 105. *own army.* **αὐτοῦ** is intensive.——**ἐγὼ δέ**: more emphatic than if the proper antithesis **σὺ μέν** were expressed with **μένε.**

42. **ἀλλά**: see on **i. 7. 6.**——**ἐλέσθαι**: depends on **δίδωμι.** Cf. **δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι** ii. 3. 18. See on **ἔδωκε διαρπάζεσθαι i. 2. 27.**——**εἰπών**: for the asyndeton, see on **ἔδοξε ταῦτα i. 3. 20.**——**αἱρεῖται πορεύεσθαι**: cf. **αἱρεῖται πολεμεῖν** ii. 6. 6.——**οἱ**: indir. reflex. with **συμπέμψαι**, referring to Xen. See on i. 1. 8.——**μακρὸν ἦν**: *it was* (too) *far.*

43. τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος: see on *τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων* i. 2. 3.——**ἔλαβε τοῦ πλαισίου**: *i. e.* Cheirisophus took the peltasts at the middle of the line to supply the place of those from the front, whom he sent with Xen.——**τῶν ἐπιλέκτων**: *i. e.* the six *λόχοι* mentioned § 21.

44. ὥρμησαν ἁμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον: *started to race for the peak.* Note the emphasis lent by the repetition of *ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον*, as if this were the cry of both lines (*διακελευομένων* § 45).

45. πολλὴ μέν . . . , πολλὴ δὲ . . .: note the anaphora and the chiastic conclusion *διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, . . . τοῖς ἑαυτῶν διακελευομένων*.——**στρατεύματος διακελευομένων**: the ptc. agreeing with the pl. implied in the noun. Cf. *στράτευμα . . . κόπτοντες* ii. 1. 6.——**τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην**: *of T. and his men.*

46. ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου: see on i. 2. 7.——**πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας**: *for your children and your wives.* The art. is usually omitted in such connections. For the order, see on *καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας* i. 4. 8.——**τὴν λοιπήν**: *sc.* *ὁδόν*.

48. καὶ ὅς: see on i. 8. 16.——**ἔχων ἐπορεύετο**: *proceeded with it.*——**θώρακα τὸν ἱππικόν**: which was heavier than that of the
Page 106. foot-soldier, since it was of metal. See on 3. 20.——**ὑπάγειν**: *advance slowly.*——**παριέναι**: *to pass by, i. e.* by Xen. who was following with difficulty (*μόλις ἑπόμενος*).

49. δ δέ: Xenophon.——**βάσιμα . . . ἄβατα**: *passable . . . impassable* (*sc.* *τῷ ἵππῳ*). Cf. iv. 6. 17 *βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ἔσται.* Either *τὰ χωρία* is understood, or the const. is impersonal neut. pl., as *ἀδύνατα* and similar neut. pls. in Thucydides.——**πέζῃ**: adv., originally locative. Cf. *πάντῃ* ii. 3. 3.——**φθάνουσι γενόμενοι**: see on *ἐτύγχανε παρών* i. 1. 2.——**τοὺς πολεμίους**: obj. of *φθάνουσιν*.

CHAPTER V

STOP IN THE PLAIN. PERPLEXITY ABOUT ROUTES. DECISION TO MARCH THROUGH THE MOUNTAINS INTO CARDUCHIAN TERRITORY

1. οἱ ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην: see on *οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον* ii. 4. 2.——**ἀποτραπόμενοι . . . ᾤχοντο**: *having turned off another way were gone.* For const. of *ἄλλην ὁδόν*, see on *εὐθύωρον* ii. 2. 16.——**ἀγαθῶν**: *i. e.* supplies, as iv. 4. 9.——**παρὰ τὸν . . . ποταμόν**: *along the river Tigris.* Cf. 4. 9, 37, and see on i. 2. 13.

2. καὶ γὰρ κτέ: explanatory of *ἐσκεδασμένων . . . καθ' ἁρπαγήν*.——**νομαὶ βοσκημάτων**: *herds of grazing cattle.* The *pasture* is put for the

things pastured.——**διαβιβαζόμενοι**: *as they were being driven across.* ——**εἰς τὸ πέραν**: *to the farther side.* Cf. *εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν* 1. 33.

3. **μὴ . . . οὐκ ἔχοιεν**: because fear is implied in *ἐννοούμενοι*.——**τὰ ἐπιτήδεια**: obj. of *λαμβάνοιεν* in emphatic position.——**οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν**: *might not have any source whence they could get.* See on *οὐκ εἶχον* 2. 12. *λαμβάνοιεν* represents delib. subjv. of dir. disc.

4. **ἀπῆσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας**: *returned from lending aid, i. e.* doubtless to their men, who while engaged in plundering were being
Page 107. cut down by the enemy (§ 2).——**ἐπεὶ κατέβη**: *i. e.* from the peak, *τὸ ἄκρον* (§ 1).——**ἡνίκα . . . οἱ Ἕλληνες**: *i. e. οἱ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον.* Xen. uses *οἱ Ἕλληνες*, though referring to only a part of the Greeks, as antithetical to *οἱ πολέμιοι.*

5. **ὁρᾶτε . . . εἶναι**: *do you see that they concede the country to be now ours? ὑφιέντας sc. αὐτούς.* Cf. *ὑφησόμεθα* 1. 17. For the dependent inf., cf. **δίδωμι ἐλέσθαι** 4. 42.——**ἃ γὰρ . . . διεπράττοντο**: *for what they stipulated* (lit. 'tried to effect') *when they made the compact* (ii. 3. 27). ——**μὴ καίειν**: *sc. ἡμᾶς.* Epexegetical inf. appos. to **ἅ**.——**αὐτοὶ καίουσιν**: instead of the general word *ποιοῦσιν*, to be expected here, the specific word *καίουσιν* is repeated with emphatical effect. See on i. 9. 21.—— **ἐνταῦθα πορευομένους**: see on i. 10. 13.

6. **οὔκουν ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ**: perhaps neither general made his suggestion seriously.

7. **ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς**: *to their quarters, i. e.* the village, for their tents had been burned (3. 1).——**περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν**: *were busy about supplies, i. e.* were foraging. Cf. § 14.——**ἔνθεν μὲν . . . ἔνθεν δέ**: *on this side and on that.* Cf. *hinc, illinc.*——**ὄρη ὑπερύψηλα**: *i. e.* the Carduchian Mts., 1. 2.——**τοσοῦτος τὸ βάθος**: see on *ὄνομα* i. 2. 23.——**ὡς** = **ὥστε**. See on i. 5. 10.——**ὑπερέχειν**: intr., as iv. 7. 4. Cf. *ἀπεῖχον* 1. 2; *προέχουσιν* 2. 19; **διάσχῃ** 4. 20.——**πειρωμένοις**: *for men trying,* as iv. 3. 6. See on *προσιοῦσι* 2. 22.

8. **ἀπορουμένοις αὐτοῖς**: dependent esp. on *προσελθών*, though belonging also to *εἶπεν.* Cf. *προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἔλεγον* ii. 4. 2. The mid. is less common than the active.——**κατὰ τετρακισχιλίους**: *four thousand at a time.*——**ἂν ἐμοὶ ὧν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε**: *if you help me to what I need.* **ὧν** = **ταῦτα ἃ**, the implied accus. being cognate with *ὑπηρετήσητε.* Cf. vii. 7. 46 *ὑπηρετῆσαί τί σοι ἐμέ.*

9. **ἃ ἀποδαρέντα**: as if we had *θηρία ἅ*.——**φυσηθέντα**: *sc. τὰ δέρματα* (implied in *ἀποδαρέντα*). The sense is, "which having been flayed and the skins inflated."

10. **τῶν δεσμῶν**: *the girths.*——**ὁρμίσας . . . ὕδωρ**: *having moored the bags by fastening stones to each and sinking the stones*
Page 108. *like anchors in the water.*——**διαγαγών**: *having carried*

them over, i. e. the line of floats.——**ἀμφοτέρωθεν δήσας**: *fastening them at both banks.*——**ἐπιβαλῶ . . . ἐπιφορήσω**: *I shall put on wood and cast on earth.* Note the chiasmus. A clever plan for a pontoon-bridge.

11. ἕξει τοῦ μὴ καταδῦναι: *will keep from sinking.* The gen. of the art. inf. with verb of hindering occurs without *μή* i. 6. 2 *κωλύσειε τοῦ καίειν.* For the tautological *μή*, see on 3. 16. See also on *ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι* i. 3. 2; *οὐδὲν κωλύει παριέναι* iv. 7. 5.——**ὥστε μὴ ὀλισθάνειν**: *sc.* **ἄνδρας**. For this const., after verb of hindering, see on 3. 16.

12. ἀκούσασι: for the asyndeton, see on **ἔδοξε ταῦτα** i. 3. 20.——**τὸ ἐνθύμημα**: *the plan*, as vi. 1. 21.——**τὸ ἔργον**: *the execution.*——**οἱ κωλύσοντες**: *who would prevent it.* See on *ὁ τολμήσων* ii. 3. 5.——**οὐδὲν ἂν ἐπέτρεπον**: *sc.* **εἰ ἐπεχείρουν**. Gl. 461 c; G. 1336; H. 895; B. 365.

13. τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν: see on *ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν* ii. 1. 1.——**εἰς τοὔμπαλιν**: *backward*, as iv. 3. 21. Cf. *εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν* i. 33.——**ἔνθεν**: = **ἐξ ὧν**, as **ὅθεν** ii. 3. 14.——**ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θαυμάζουσιν**: *were like men wondering.*——**τρέψονται . . . ἔχοιεν**: note the change of mood. Gl. 661; G. 1487; H. 932, 2; B. 674.

14. ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ᾖσαν: *went after supplies.* Cf. ii. 3. 8.——**ἤλεγχον**: *inquired about.* Cf. iv. 1. 23.——**τὴν . . . χώραν**: proleptic. Cf. iv. 4. 17. See on *τῶν βαρβάρων* i. 1. 5. For *κύκλῳ*, see on i. 5. 4.

15. τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα ἦσαν: (*sc.* *ὁδοῦ*) *was on* (*of*) *the road to Babylon.* The following **δι' ἥσπερ** would indicate that *χώρας* was in Xen.'s mind; but *ἡ δὲ . . . φέροι* clearly looks back to *ὁδοῦ*.——**θερίζειν**: the Persian monarchs spent the spring at Susa, the summer at Ecbatana, the winter at Babylon. Cf. *Cyrop.* viii. 6. 22.——**διαβάντι**: lit. *for one crossing.* See on *προσιοῦσι* 2. 22.——**τετραμμένη**: *trended.*——**ὅτι**: the way chosen is emphasized by the repetition of *ὅτι*.——**Καρδούχους**: *the Carduchi* (now called Kurds), Armenian *Kordukh.* People for land, as **Πισίδας** i. 1. 11.

16. ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη: *up in the mountains.* Cf. vii. 4. 2 *ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ Θυνῶν πεδίον.* *ἀνά* only with accus. in prose.——**ἀκούειν**: *hearken to, obey*, as ii. 6. 11.——**ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς αὐτούς**: *once invaded them.*——**ἀπονοστῆσαι**: Homeric word; elsewhere in Attic prose only
Page 109. in Thuc. vii. 87.——**πρὸς τὸν σατράπην . . . σπείσαιντο**: for the dat. with *σπένδεσθαι*, cf. i. 9. 7, ii. 3. 7.——**ὁπότε . . . σπείσαιντο, καὶ ἐπιμειγνύναι**: gen. cond. in indir. disc. (for *ὁπόταν . . . σπείσωνται, καὶ ἐπιμειγνύασι*).——**καὶ ἐπιμειγνύναι . . . πρὸς ἑαυτούς**: *some of themselves* (*i. e.* the Persian subjects) *actually* (*καί*) *had dealings with them* (*i. e.* the Kurds), *and some of those with themselves.* **σφῶν, ἐκείνων** part. gens. Gl. 507 a; G. 1091; H. 734; B. 355. These part. gens., or the implied *τινας* on which they depend, subj. of the inf.

17. τοὺς . . . εἰδέναι: *those that alleged they knew the way in each direction.*——**τούτους**: obj. of **διελθόντας**.——**ἔφασαν**: *i. e.* the captives.

18. ἐπὶ τούτοις: *with a view to this, i. e.* undertaking the march (cf. **ἐπὶ θανάτῳ** i. 6. 10); or perhaps simply *thereupon.*——**ἡνίκα καὶ τῆς ὥρας**: *at whatever time.* The part. gen. depends on **ἡνίκα**, which **καί** strengthens. ——**τὴν ὑπερβολήν**: prolepsis. Cf. § 14.——**παρήγγειλαν . . . παραγγέλλῃ**: chiastic. For the military term, see on i. 8. 16.——**ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν**: for **ἐπειδὰν δειπνήσητε** of dir. disc., whereas in **ἡνίκ' ἂν παραγγέλλῃ** the dir. subjv. is retained.

BOOK IV

CHAPTER I

Page 110. THE FIRST THREE DAYS' MARCH THROUGH THE MOUNTAINS OF THE CARDUCHIANS

1. For the bracketed sections (§§ 1–4), see on ii. 1. 1.——**ἅς**: not assimilated. Cf. *οὕς* i. 4. 9.——**ὅσα ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας**: *what warlike operations were carried on against the Greeks.* Cf. *ὁ πόλεμος ἐπολεμεῖτο Hellen.* iv. 8. 1.——**παραβάντος . . . Τισσαφέρνους**: *i. e.* by the treacherous seizure of Clearchus and other Greek commanders in the camp of Tissaphernes ii. 5. 31–33.

2. ἔνθα = ἐκεῖσε ἔνθα. Cf. *οὗ*, (to) *where*, ii. 1. 6; *ὅπου*, iii. 2. 34.——**πάροδος**: *pass, i. e.* along by the river.——**ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ**: *right over the river.* *αὐτοῦ* intensive, as in iii. 4. 41.

3. τῶν ἁλισκομένων: *those that were captured* on the march. Ptc. impf., as i. 5. 2. For const. of gen. and (practical) accus. (*ὅτι* clause), see on i. 2. 5.——**εἰ διέλθοιεν**: representing *ἐάν* with subjv. of the dir. disc. Note the fut. ind. in apod.——**καὶ τοῦ Εὐφράτου δέ**: see on *καὶ στρατηγὸν δέ* i. 1. 2.——**τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο . . . εἶναι**: impers. const., as i. 2. 12, 8. 6. See on i. 2. 8.——**οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος**: abridged for *οὐ πρόσω τῶν τοῦ Τίγρητος.* See on *ἡλέκτρου* ii. 3. 15.——**ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον**: *it is just so*, stronger than *οὕτως ἔχει.*

4. τὴν ἐμβολὴν ποιοῦνται: periphrasis like *ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν* i. 1. 6.——**ἅμα μὲν . . . τὰ ἄκρα**: *trying partly to escape notice* (of the enemy), *partly to get the start before the enemy occupied the heights*, for the common form *καὶ λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ φθάσαι καταλαβόντες τὰ ἄκρα.* *φθάσαι* emphasizes the following *πρίν*, just as in § 21. See GMT. 660.

5. ἡνίκα: resumes the narrative from iii. 5. 18.——**ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακήν**: the third or last watch of the Greeks began about dawn.——**ἐλείπετο . . . τὸ πεδίον**: *there was left enough of the night to cross the plain in the dark.* The inf. dependent on *ὅσον*, as on *οἷος.* Gl. 565 a; GMT. 759. See on ii. 3. 13. For the pred. adj. *σκοταίους* (cf. *σκοταῖοι* § 10) adv., see on *προτέρα* i. 2. 25. The plain is that mentioned iii. 5. 1.——**ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως**: *at the word of command*, alluded to in *ἡνίκ' ἄν τις*

παραγγέλλῃ iii. 5. 18. The same phrase *Eq.* 4. 3. For ἀπό, cf. ii. 5. 32. ——τὸ ὄρος: that mentioned iii. 5. 7, 17.

6. ἡγεῖτο τοῦ στρατεύματος: prob. merely *led the van of the army*, as Cheirisophus was not commander-in-chief.——λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὑτόν: *taking his own command.* λαβών as i. 1. 2.——ὀπισθοφύλαξιν: though a subst., really attrib. to ὁπλίταις. Cf. λόχους φύλακας vi. 5. 9.——μή: *that* (*lest*), after κίνδυνος, as vii. 7. 31, just as after verbs of fearing.——ἄνω πορευομένων: (*sc.* αὐτῶν) *as they went up.*——ἐκ τοῦ ὄπισθεν ἐπίσποιτο: *would pursue from behind.*

7. ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγεῖτο: *and then led on slowly, i. e.* after crossing the height.——ἀεί: really modifies τὸ ὑπερβάλλον, as well
Page 111. as ἐφείπετο, *i. e.* each detachment as it crossed followed after.——μυχοῖς: poetical word, used twice by Thuc. (vii. 4. 21, 52. 10).

8. γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας: the art. is more commonly omitted in such connections. For the more usual order, see on i. 4. 8. Cf. iii. 4. 46.——τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια . . . λαμβάνειν: *and there were provisions in abundance to take.* The limiting inf. as a *to* or *for* dat. Goodell 565.——ὧν: part. gen. with οὐδέν.——ἔφερον: *carried off, plundered.* Cf. the phrase ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν (*agere et ferre*).——οὐδὲ . . . ἐδίωκον: note the transition from rel. to independent const.——εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν: *in case they might be willing.* Gl. 652; G. 1420; H. 907; B. 613. Cf. εἴ πως δυναίμην § 21.——διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας: note the pred. adj., as in i. 3. 14.

9. ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι: *whatever any one chanced upon.* ὅτῳ (conjecture by Stephanus for ὅτι of most MSS.) is collective sing. after τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, as ὅστις referring to πάντας in i. 1. 5. The opt. is iterative (gen. cond.).——καλούντων: *sc.* αὐτῶν. Cf. πορευομένων § 6.——οὔτε . . . οὐδέν: for force of comp. neg. following, see on i. 2. 26.

10. σκοταῖοι: see on σκοταίους § 5.——διὰ τὸ . . . εἶναι: for const. of the art. inf., see Gl. 574; G. 1546; H. 959; B. 638.——ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν: accus. of time how long. Cf. ii. 1. 6.——ἡ ἀνάβασις αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο: *their ascent was made.* Such periphrases are common in Greek. Cf. § 17, see on i. 2. 17.——τότε δή: *now then*, emphasizing after the parenthesis the decisive action.——ὀλίγοι ὄντες: *although being few.*——ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου γάρ: *for unexpectedly* (*ex improviso*), accounting for their fewness.

11. ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν . . . στρατεύματος: *much of the army would have run the risk of perishing.* Gl. 467 c; GMT. 427 b. With πολύ, *a large part*, cf. τὸ πολύ, *the greater part*, i. 4. 13.——ηὐλίσθησαν: *bivouacked.* Cf. 3. 1, ii. 2. 17.——συνεώρων ἀλλήλους: *kept one another in view, i. e.* by means of the fire signals (πυρά, cf. πυρσευόντων vii. 8. 15). Rehdantz explains, "Pregnant construction, *saw one another together, i. e.* called

one another together by signals." Gemoll emends to *συνεβόων*. Cf. vi. 3. 6 *συνεβόων ἀλλήλους*.

12. **συνελθοῦσι . . . ἔδοξε**: we should say, *came together and resolved*. ——**ἔχοντας, καταλιπόντας**: accus., attracted by the inf., where dat. is allowable. See on *λαβόντα* i. 2. 1.——**ὅσα . . . ἀνδράποδα**: cf. *ὅσον ἦν αὐτῷ στράτευμα* i. 2. 1.

13. **ἐποίουν**: for plur. verb, though with neut. plur. subjs., see on *ἦσαν* i. 4. 4. Besides *τὰ αἰχμάλωτα, captives*, is personal.——

Page 112. **οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὄντες**: *those who were over these*. Cf. *ἐπ' αὐταῖς* i. 4. 2; *ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἐπὶ ταῖς καμήλοις ἀνδρῶν Cyrop.* vi. 3. 33.——**ἀπόμαχοι**: cf. iii. 4. 32.——**δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα**: *when this was resolved*, accus. abs. corresponding to *ἔδοξε ταῦτα*. Gl. 591; G. 1569; H. 974 a; B. 343. Cf. Plato *Prot.* 314 c *δόξαν ἡμῖν ταῦτα ἐπορευόμεθα*. The ptc. might be plur., as *δόξαντα ταῦτα Hellen.* iii. 2. 19; Andoc. i. 81.

14. **ὑποστήσαντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ**: *sc. τινας, having secretly posted men in the defile, i. e.* to keep a lookout for things secreted. Cf. *Hellen.* iv. 1. 21 *ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ληφθέντα χρήματα ἀπήγαγον ὑποστήσας ταξιάρχους καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἀφείλετο πάντα.*——**τῶν εἰρημένων**: = *τούτων ἃ εἴρητο sc. ἀφεῖναι, of those things which they were to let go.* Cf. § 12.——**πλὴν . . . ἔκλεψεν**: *unless some one smuggled through something.*——**οἷον . . . τῶν εὐπρεπῶν**: a kind of attraction for *οἷον* (*for example*) *ἢ παῖδα ἢ γυναῖκα τῶν εὐπρεπῶν ἐπιθυμήσας αὐτῶν*. *τῶν εὐπρεπῶν* is part. gen.——**τὰ μέν τι**: *partly*. The cogn. accus., petrified into an adv., modified by *τι*. Gl. 549 a. Cf. *Hellen.* vii. 1. 46 *τὰ μέν τι καὶ χρήμασι διεπράττετο*.

15. **εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν**: *on the next day*. See on i. 7. 1.——**γίγνεται χειμών**: *a storm occurs*. *γίγνομαι* freq. of operations of the weather. Cf. 2. 7, 4. 8.

16. **ἀναχάζοντες**: poetical word = **ἀναχωροῦντες**. In *Cyrop.* vii. 1. 34, Xen. uses *ἀναχάζεσθαι*, which is the epic form.——**θαμινά**: *frequenter*, also *Mem.* iii. 11. 5. Poetical word. Cf. Pind. *O.* i. 85; Ar. *Plut.* 292. Xen. uses also the poetical *θαμά* (*Mem.* ii. 1. 22), as does Plato (*Phaedo* 72 e).——**παρήγγελλεν**: *i. e.* to Cheirisophus.——**ὅτε . . . ἐπικέοιντο**: *whenever the enemy pressed strongly upon them*. Iterative opt. *ἐπικεῖσθαι* (*instare*) corresponding to, but a little stronger than, *ἐπιτίθεσθαι, set upon*. For form, see Gl. 387 b; G. 818: H. 482; B. 264.

17. **ἄλλοτε μὲν . . . τότε δὲ οὐχ ὑπέμενεν**: lit. *at other times, when the word was passed, used to wait, but at this time did not wait, i. e.* coordinate where we should use the subordinate const.——**πρᾶγμά τι**: *some trouble.*——**ἰδεῖν παρελθόντι**: *for one to go forward and see.*

18. **τῆς σπολάδος**: see on iii. 3. 20.——**διαμπερὲς τὴν κεφαλήν**: *sc. τοξευθείς, shot clear through the head*. *τὴν κεφαλήν* may be taken as accus. of the part affected (see on ii. 6. 1), though one is tempted to con-

strue **διαμπερές** as prep. with accus. Cf. vii. 8. 14 **ἐπάταξεν . . . διαμπερὲς τὸν μηρόν**. The const., as well as the word **διαμπερές**, is Homeric. Cf. *Il.* v. 284 **βέβληαι κενεῶνα διαμπερές**, and Aesch. *Choeph.* 381 **τοῦτο διαμπερὲς οὗς ἵκεθ' ἅπερ τι βέλος.**

19. ὥσπερ εἶχεν: *just as he was, sicut erat.* Cf. Thuc. i. 134. 14 **ὥσπερ εἶχεν**, and Thuc. iii. 30. 3 **ὥσπερ ἔχομεν.**——**φεύγοντες ἅμα**: see on ii. 4. 5.——**καὶ νῦν**: introducing a specific instance. Cf. **καὶ ἄρκτον ποτέ** i. 9. 6. The abrupt transition to dir. disc. betrays Xen.'s excitement.——**καλώ τε κἀγαθώ**: cf. ii. 6. 19.——**οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι**: a sacred duty for Greeks. Cf. Hom. *Od.* xi. 71 ff.

Page 113.

20. ἀποκρίνεται: note the asyndeton. Cf. ii. 1. 22.——**μία δ' αὕτη . . . ὀρθία**: *there is only way, right there as you see, a steep one.* Cf. 7. 4 **μία αὕτη πάροδός ἐστιν ἣν ὁρᾷς.** The pron. in such consts. is exclamatory and implies a gesture. Cf. Thuc. i. 51. 6 **νῆες ἐκεῖναι ἐπιπλέουσι**, *ships yonder are sailing up!*——**οἵ**: referring to **ἀνθρώπων**, though it might be plur. in reference to the collective **ὄχλον.**——**τὴν ἔκβασιν**: *the way out.* Cf. 2. 1.

21. ταῦτ' ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον: *therefore I was hastening.* **ταῦτα**, adv., strictly cogn. accus., as in Hom. *Il.* xiii. 235 **ταῦτα δ' ἅμα χρὴ σπεύδειν.** Cf. ii. 1. 18 **ταῦθ' ὑπήγετο.** It is used to vary from **διὰ τοῦτο.** The idiom is freq. in Ar. and is doubtless colloquial.——**εἴ πως δυναίμην**: see on § 8.——**φθάσαι πρὶν κατειλῆφθαι**: see on § 4.——**οὔ φασιν**: *deny.* Cf. § 23, and see on i. 3. 1.

22. πράγματα παρεῖχον: cf. 2. 27, i. 1. 11.——**ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησε**; *made* (*i. e.* allowed) *us to get breath.* Cf. Hom. *Il.* xv. 235 **ὥς κε καὶ αὖτις Ἀχαιοὶ ἀναπνεύσωσι πόνοιο.**——**ὅπως . . . χρησαίμεθα**: *that we might employ as guides men who knew the country.*

23. διαλαβόντες: *taking them apart* or separately.——**εἰ εἰδεῖεν**: *whether they knew*, representing **ἴστε**; of dir. disc.——**οὐκ ἔφη**: *sc.* **εἰδέναι.**——**καὶ μάλα**: see on i. 5. 8.——**φόβων**: *terrors, threats.* For the plur. of the abstract to express different or repeated occurrences of a thing, see on **ὑποψίαι** ii. 5. 1.——**ὀρῶντος τοῦ ἑτέρου**: *before the other's eyes.*

24. ὅτι αὐτῷ . . . ἐκδεδομένη: *because he chanced to have a married daughter* (living) *with her husband there.* For **οὖσα** omitted with **ἐτύγχανε**, cf. iii. 1. 3. **ἐκδεδομένη**, (lit.) *given away*, out of the house.——**αὐτός**: for const., see on i. 3. 8.——**δυνατὴν . . . ὁδόν**: *possible even for beasts of burden to travel.* **δυνατήν** is personally construed. For const. of **ὁδόν**, see Gl. 540; G. 1057; H. 715 b; B. 333.

25. δυσ-πάρ-ιτον: (**εἶμι**) cf. **ἁμαξ-ιτός** i. 2. 21.——**εἰ μή τις . . . παρελθεῖν**: monitory cond. in indir. disc. Gl. 648 b; G. 1405; H. 899; B. 602.

Page 114.

26. λοχαγούς: belongs both to **πελταστάς** (appos.) and **τῶν ὁπλιτῶν** (obj. gen.). With **λοχαγοὺς πελταστάς**, *peltast-captains*, cf. § 6 **τοῖς ὀπισ-**

θοφύλαξιν ὁπλίταις, *hoplite rear-guards.*——**γενέσθαι**: *to prove himself.* Cf. *ἐγένετο* § 28.——**ὑποστὰς ἐθελοντής**: *offering himself as a volunteer.*

27. ὑφίσταται: asyndeton, as *ἀποκρίνεται* § 20. For sing. verb agreeing with the nearer subj., see on *ἦν* i. 2. 3.——**τῶν μὲν ὁπλιτῶν**: part. gen. *ἐκ τούτου* takes the place of the regular correlative (δέ).——**προσλαβών**: *taking besides.*

28. τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιάρχων: *light-armed taxiarchs.* Cf. *λοχαγοὺς πελταστάς* § 16.——**πολλαχοῦ πολλοῦ**: for the paronomasia, cf. *πάντῃ πάντα* ii. 5. 7.——**εἰς**: cf. i. 9. 16, ii. 6. 30.——**ἐγένετο**: cf. *γενέσθαι* § 26.

CHAPTER II

DIFFICULT PROGRESS AMID CONSTANT BATTLING FOR THE HEIGHTS

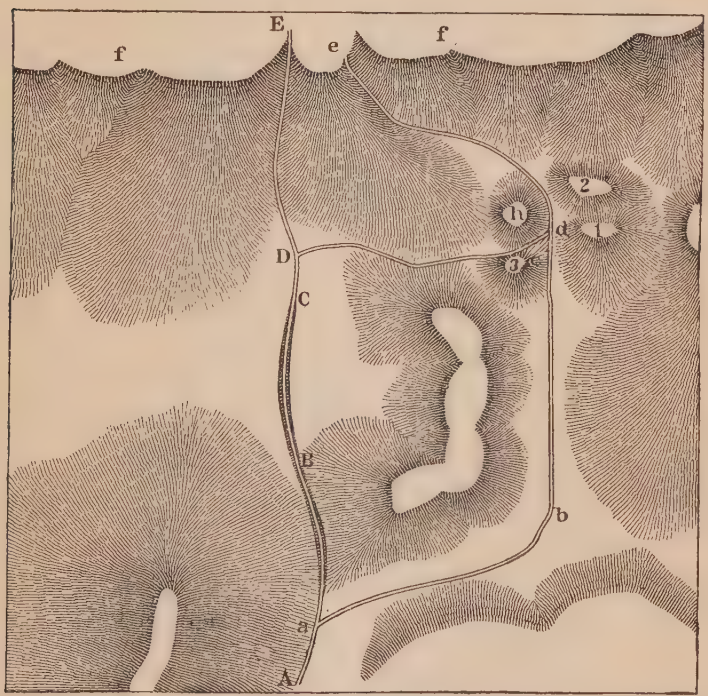
1. καὶ ἦν μὲν δείλη, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον: for the structure of the sent., *cf.* Dem. xviii. 169 *ἑσπέρα μὲν γὰρ ἦν, ἦκε δ' ἀγγέλλων τις ὡς τοὺς πρυτάνεις ὡς Ἐλάτεια κατείληπται.*——**οἱ δέ**: Xen. and Cheirisophus.——**αὐτούς**: the volunteers.——**ἐμφαγόντας**: *after eating hastily.* Cf. 5. 9.——**συντίθενται**: *agree with them* (*i. e.* the volunteers).——**καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας**: *and that those* (*i. e.* the volunteers), *when on the top.*——**αὐτοὶ δέ**: *i. e.* the officers, nom. because same as subj. of leading verb.——**τὴν φανερὰν ἔκβασιν**: *i. e.* the top of the pass. Cf. i. 1. 20.——**συμβοηθήσειν**: fut. inf. because it implies a promise. Cf. vii. 1. 35 *συντίθεται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν παρέσεσθαι.*——**ἐκβαίνοντες**: *i. e.* coming out from below. Cf. 3. 22, 23.——**ὡς ἂν . . . τάχιστα**: see on i. 1. 6.

2. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι: *after this agreement*, οἱ *μέν* and Ξενοφῶν δέ being distrib. appos.——**πλῆθος**: accus. of spec.——**ὡς**: *about.* Cf. *ὡς* and *εἰς* with numbers i. 2. 3.——**ὕδωρ . . . ἐξ οὐρανοῦ**: periphrasis for *ὗε, it rained.*——**ταύτῃ . . . προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν**: cf. i. 5. 9, ii. 5. 29. Note the chiastic arrangement of this clause and the next.——**οἱ περιιόντες**: *i. e.* the volunteers.

Page 115.

3. χαράδρα: see on iii. 4. 1.——**ἦν ἔδει διαβάντας . . . ἐκβαίνειν**: pte. and inf., according to the Greek preference for subordinating the less important idea, where we should say, *which they had to cross before getting out* (or *in order to get out*) *to the steep place.*——**ὁλοιτρόχους**: *rolling stones.* For subst. use, see Buttmann *Lexil.* 102. The word is Ionic and poetic. Cf. Hdt. v. 92. 4; Hom. *Il.* xiii. 137; Theocr. xx. 49.——**φερόμενοι**: for the relation to *παίοντες διεσφενδονῶντο*, see on *ὑπολαβών* i. 1. 7.——**διεσφενδονῶντο**: *were slung in all directions, diffundebantur.* Cf. *σφενδόνη* = *funda.* (Rehdantz.)——**παντάπασιν οὐδέ**: cf. *οὐδὲ παντάπασι* ii. 5. 18.

4. εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ . . . ἄλλῃ ἐπειρῶντο: *sc.* *πελάσαι*. Gen. cond. *ταύτῃ* and *ἄλλῃ* locative. Cf. § 10.——**ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπιόντες**: pers. const. See on *δῆλος* i. 2. 11.——**ἀνάριστοι**: as i. 10. 9. For the cause, cf. i. 15, 16. ——**οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο**: for the cogn. accus., cf. *Mem.* iv. 4. 10 *ἃ δοκεῖ μοι δίκαια εἶναι οὐδὲν παύομαι ἀποδεικνύμενος*.——**κυλινδοῦντες**: suppl. ptc. See on iii. 1. 19.——**ἦν**: *it was possible*. Cf. *οὐκ ἦν ἐκβῆναι* § 10.



A–D, *ὀρθία ὁδός*; B–C, *χαράδρα*; D, main force of the Carduchians guarding the pass; D–E, *ἔκβασις*; E, plateau; a b d e, circuitous route; d D, *στενὴ ὁδός*; c, outpost of the Carduchians; h, *ἄκρον*; 1, 2, first hill, second hill; 3, *μαστός*.

5. οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα: cf. § 1.——**καταλαμβάνουσι . . . καθημένους**: const. as in iii. 1. 8.——**τοὺς φύλακας**: the art. perhaps on account of the implication in i. 25 of guards on the *ἄκρον*, which they supposed they had taken.——**κατακαίνοντες**: see on i. 6. 2.——**ὡς τὸ ἀκρὸν κατέχοντες**: *supposing that they held the height* (i. 25). The height here designated as *τὸ ἄκρον* is called *μάστος* in §§ 6, 14, 18, and 20.

6. οἱ δέ: same as the preceding subj., as often in Hdt.; in Attic usually antithetical.——**μαστός**: *round hill*, lit. 'breast' acc. to the Greek fondness for likening mountain forms to parts of the human body. Cf. **ἀκρωνυχία** iii. 4. 37.——**παρ' ὅν**: *by which*. Cf. i. 2. 13.——**αὕτη**: for attrib. pos. of the dem., see Gl. 553 a; G. 975; H. 673 c; B. 458.——**ἔφοδος**: *way over*, as iii. 4. 41.

7. ὑπέφαινεν: see on iii. 2. 1.——**ἔλαθον . . . προσελθόντες**: for the const., see on **τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν** i. 1. 9.——**ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγξατο**: the signal agreed upon (§ 1).——**ἀλαλάξαντες**: *having raised the battle-cry*. Cf. vi. 5. 26, 27. Poetical word used by Xen. and in late prose.——**τοὺς ἀνθρώπους**: *i. e.* the enemy. Cf. **οἱ ἄνδρες** iii. 1. 23.——**εὔζωνοι**: lit. *well-girt, i. e. nimble*. Cf. iii. 3. 6.

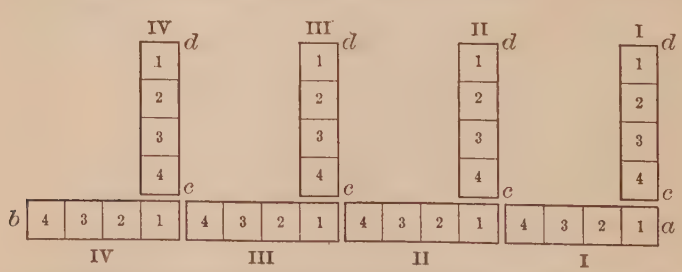
8. ἵεντο . . . ἐπορεύοντο: chiasmus.——**ἕκαστοι**: *each*

Page 116. *party*, as ii. 2. 17.——**ὡς ἐδύναντο**: *as they could* (as 7. 8), with **ἀναβάντες**.——**ἀνίμων**: the verb means originally *draw up by strap* (**ἱμάς**).

9. τοὺς ἡμίσεις: attracted into the gender and number of the part. gen. Cf. **τὸ ἡμίσυ τοῦ στρατεύματος** iv. 3. 15, v. 2. 1.——**ᾗπερ**: *sc.* **ὁδῷ**, *by the very way by which*. See on **ταύτῃ** § 4.——**εὐοδωτάτη**: agreeing with **ὁδός** implied in **ᾗπερ**. Cf. i. 24.

10. ἡ διεξεῦχθαι: *sc.* **αὐτούς**, *or be themselves separated*. For the pf. inf. to denote decisive action, see GMT. 110. Cf. **ἐκπεπλῆχθαι** i. 5. 13.——**ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν**: the prot. is implied in the **τὰ δέ** clause. Gl. 481, 467.——**οἱ ἄλλοι**: *i. e.* the division of Cheirisophus.

11. ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις: *with the companies in file*. Each company was brought from phalanx-order into column by itself. In this move-



Four companies (16 enomoties) in line (*a–b*); reformed in company columns (*c–d*).

ment the first enomoty of each company marched directly forward far enough to allow the three remaining enomoties to fall in behind it. The company thus formed a compact body with greater depth than front

(hence called ὄρθιος). In cases like the present, where the storming of a height was the object, it is probable that the company had a front of 6 men and a depth of 16. It might have a front of 3 and a depth of 32. Each company was formed in line with those on each side of it, but separated from them by greater or less intervals of space. Thus arranged the line was so deep that it was not easy to break through it, and if the enemy dared to venture into the intervals they might be caught between two companies. By increasing the intervals between companies the front line of the whole might be greatly extended. Besides, the arrangement by companies in column allowed much greater freedom of movement in rough ground.——**οὐ κύκλῳ**: *not all round, i. e.* not so as to cut off the enemy completely.——**εἰ βούλοιντο φεύγειν**: *in case they wished to flee.* Cf. *εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν* I. 8.

12. τέως μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας: *as long as they were ascending.* *τέως μέν* means lit. *so long* and is followed generally by some answering word, as *ἐπεὶ δέ* vii. 7. 55.——**ἐδύνατο ἕκαστος**: distrib. appos. to plur. subj.——**ἐγγὺς οὐ προσίεντο**: *did not let them get near.*——**καὶ τοῦτον**: *καί* connects with the preceding the double (*τε, καί*) statement that follows. See on i. 2. 18.——**ὁρῶσιν**: dat. pl. dependent on *ἐδόκει.*

13. ἐννοήσας . . . μή: *fearing that.* See on iii. 5. 3 and cf. vi. 1. 28.——**ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια**: *and the baggage animals covered* (lit. 'were over') *a great space.* Cf. i. 8. 8.——**ἅτε . . . πορευόμενα**: *inasmuch as they were advancing by a road that was narrow.* Gl. 593 a; G. 1575; H. 977; B. 656, 1. Cf. 8. 27.

14. μαστός: see on § 6.——**καταληφθείσης**: the attrib. ptc. has here three modifiers (place, time, and agent). For order of the last two, see G. 969; H. 667 a.

Page 117.

15. ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο: *got near.* See on i. 7. 16. Cf. *ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο* § 22; *ἀνωτέρω γ.* § 25; *ἔξω γ.* 8. 12.——**δείσαντας αὐτούς**: *i. e.* the Carduchians. The ptc. is causal. The whole clause is indir. after *ὑπώπτευον.*——**πολιορκοῖντο**: the force of *πόλις* in the comp. is not felt here of course. Cf. vi. 3. 11, 17, 22.——**οἱ δ' ἄρα**: *but they, in fact, i. e.* as the result proved, *ἄρα* referring not, as usual, to the foregoing, but to the following (§ 17).——**καθορῶντες . . . γιγνόμενα**: *seeing what was going on in their rear,* as narrated § 17.——**ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας**: *i. e.* those left to guard the first hill (§ 13).

16. ἀνέβαινεν: impf. descriptive.——**ὑπάγειν**: *to advance slowly,* as iii. 4. 48.——**οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι**: those left behind, as mentioned § 13.——**προσμείξειαν**: *might join them.*——**θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**: *to halt, take their station,* as i. 5. 14. For const. with *εἶπε,* see on *ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν* i. 3. 2.

17. ἀπεκόπησαν: as § 10, iii. 4. 39.——**ὅσοι μή**: indef. rel., hence *μή.* See on *οἳ μή* ii. 2. 14.——**κατά**: *down from,* as 7. 14.——**πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισ-**

θοφύλακας: doubtless the half of the rear-guard left with the baggage-train (§ 9).

18. ἐπ' ἀντίπορον λόφον: the adj. (a poetic word) would naturally follow. But cf. *κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας ὄχθας* 3. 23.——**ἀπῆτει**: see on i. 2. 11.

19. ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν: *on condition that they burn not.* Gl. 567; G. 1460; H. 999 a; B. 596. Cf. 4. 6.——**συνωμολόγει ταῦτα**: *made this agreement with them.* Note asyndeton.——**οἱ ἐκ . . . τόπου**: *terminus ex quo* by anticipation. See on i. 1. 5, 2. 3 and 18.

20. ἥρξαντο: *i. e.* the Greeks under Xen.——**ἔνθα τὰ**

Page 118. **ὅπλα ἔκειντο**: *where the halt was made.* Pass. of *θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα* § 16. Note pl. verb with *τὰ ὅπλα*, and cf. vii. 1. 24 *ἔκειτο τὰ ὅπλα.*

21. Λουσιεύς: *from Lusi*, a city in northern Arcadia.——**πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβεβλημένος**: *sc. τὴν ἀσπίδα, i. e.* with shield held before both. The ptc. is mid. See on *προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα* i. 2. 17.——**ἀπῆλθον**: note force of aor. here, *came off* (safe).

22. ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν: change of number with collective subj. as i. 7. 16. For *ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο*, see on *ἐγγύς* § 15.——**ἐν . . . ἐπιτηδείοις δαψιλέσι**: cf. *ἐν ἀφθόνοις* 5. 29, iii. 2. 25. *ἄφθονος* is the regular Attic term, *δαψιλής* prob. Ionic.——**ἐν λάκκοις κονιατοῖς**: *in underground cisterns.* Similarly wine is still kept often under mud in the Orient. *κονιατοῖς* is found only here.

23. διεπράξαντο ὥστε: *negotiated that.* Cf. *διεπράττοντο* iii. 5. 5.——**ἐποίησαν τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν**: *they did for those who had died.* See on *ἡμῖν* iii. 2. 24.——**ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν**: *as well as possible.* Cf. *ἐκ τῶν παρόντων* iii. 2. 3.——**ὥσπερ νομίζεται** (*sc. ποιεῖν*) = *ὡς νόμος* i. 2. 15. Cf. *τὰ νομιζόμενα* vii. 3. 10.

24. ὅπη . . . προκαταλαμβάνοντες: *where there was a narrow place pre-occupying it.* Iterative opt.——**ἐκώλυον**: conative impf., as i. 2. 21.——**τὰς παρόδους**: *their passage*, the plur. denoting the repeated attempts.

25. ὄπισθεν: *from the rear.*——**τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ**: *the blockade* (lit. 'fencing off') *of the way.* Cf. § 26 *τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου.* Except in Xen. *ἀπόφραξις* is not classical.——**τοῖς πρώτοις**: dat. of advantage.——**ἀνωτέρω γίγνεσθαι**: see on *ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο* § 15. Observe the change of order in the main clause of § 26 from that here, really chiasmus.

27. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὁπότε: *and there were times also when.* Gl. 614 a; G. 1029; H. 998 b; B. 486 N. Cf. 5. 31 and see on *ἦν . . .*

Page 119. *οὗς* i. 5. 7.——**αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι**: *even to those who had ascended.*——**πάλιν καταβαίνουσιν**: *while coming down again.*——**ἐγγύθεν φεύγοντες**: *with only a slight start*, lit. 'from close by.' Note the paronomasia *φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν.*

28. **ἐγγύς**: *near, almost*, as v. 7. 9, vii. 8. 18.——**πλέον ἤ**: as i. 2. 11.——**πρὸς τὸ κάτω . . . προσβαίνοντες**: *treading on the lower end of the bow with the left foot, i. e.* to steady it. Cf. Arrian, Ind. 16 *τὸ τόξον κάτω ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν θέντες καὶ τῷ ἀριστέρῳ ἀντιβάντες* (*setting the left foot against it*), *οὕτως τοξεύουσι τὴν νευρὴν ἐπὶ μέγα ὀπίσω ἀναγαγόντες*.——**ἀκοντίοις**: pred. *as javelins*.——**ἐναγκυλῶντες**: *fitting them with leather straps* (*ἀγκύλη*), into which the fingers were stuck to aid in hurling the javelins. Cf. *διηγκυλωμένους* 3. 28.

CHAPTER III

PASSAGE OF THE CENTRITES RIVER, A TRIBUTARY OF THE TIGRIS

1. **ηὐλίσθησαν**: see on i. 11.——**παρά**: see on i. 2. 13, 24.——**ὡς**: *about*. Cf. i. 2. 3.——**ἀνέπνευσαν**: see on i. 22.——**ἄσμενοι**: cf. ii. 1. 16, iii. 4. 24.——**ἀπεῖχε**: for impf. instead of pres., see on *ἐνόμιζον* i. 4. 9.——**τῶν Καρδούχων**: depends on *ὀρέων*.

2. **πολλὰ . . . μνημονεύοντες**: *making frequent mention of their past labors*. *πολλά* is strictly cogn. accus. Cf. Hdt. vi. 136 *τῆς . . . μάχης πολλὰ ἐπιμεμνημένοι*. Eur. *Andromeda* Fig. 131 *ἀλλ' ἡδύ τοι σωθέντα μεμνῆσθαι πόνων*, Verg. Aen. i. 203 *forsan et haec olim meminisse iuvabit*, Cic. *iucundi acti labores*.——**ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας**: in which the two following days (§§ 3 and 8) seem to be included, as the preceding account covers only five days.——**μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν**: see on iii. 4. 17.——**ὅσα . . . Τισσαφέρνους**: *sc. ἔπαθον*, lit. *as many as not even all together they had suffered from the king and Tissaphernes, i. e.* even worse than all they had suffered.——**ὡς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι**: *as relieved then*. For *ὡς* with ptc., see on i. 1. 6, 11.

3. **ὡς κωλύσοντας**: *to hinder*. See on *ὡς ἀποκτενῶν* i. 1. 3.

Page 120. ——**ὀχθαῖς**: poetical word. Cf. §§ 5, 17, 23.——**ἄνω**: *above*, that is, back of.

4. **Ὀρόντα**: satrap of Armenia (iii. 5. 17). Poss. gen. See on **Τισσαφέρνους** i. 1. 6.——**μισθοφόροι**: modifies **Χαλδαῖοι** only.

5. **ὁδὸς . . . ἄνω**: *and a single way that was visible was leading up*. *ἡ ὁρωμένη* as *τὸ ὁρώμενον* 6. 11. For the periphrasis *ἦν ἄγουσα*, see on *ἦν δυναμένη* ii. 2. 13, and cf. i. 3, 5. 15.——**ταύτῃ**: because the road opposite led them to infer a ford at this point.

6. **πειρωμένοις**: *on trial*. Cf. iii. 5. 7, and see on *προσιοῦσι* iii. 2. 22.——**ἐφαίνετο, καὶ ταχὺς ἦν**: chiasmus.——**οὐτ'**: the correl. is *τε*, *both not . . . and*, after the parenthetical *εἰ δὲ μὴ . . . ποταμός*. Cf. *μήτε . . . τε* ii. 2. 8. *τε*, *καί*, and *καί* before *οὐτ'* connect the three parts dependent on *ἐπεί*.——**τὰ ὅπλα**: refers esp. to the shield.——**εἰ δὲ μή**: *otherwise*.

Cf. ii. 2. 1.——**γυμνοί**: *unprotected.* Cf. *Hellen.* iv. 5. 13 **ἀκοντιζόμενοι εἰς τὰ γυμνά** (*i. e.* the shieldless side). The plur. adj. referring to the collective **τις**, as **αὐτούς** i. 4. 8.——**παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν**: more closely defining **αὐτοῦ**. Cf. **αὐτοῦ παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ** ii. 2. 1.

7. ἔνθα: *where.* Cf. i. 2.——**ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις**: *under arms*, as iii. 2. 28. ——**ὁρῶσι μὲν . . . ὁρῶσι δὲ . . . ὁρῶσι δέ**: threefold anaphora. Cf. § 23, and see on ii. 6. 6 and 21.——**ἐπικεισομένους**: *ready to attack.*

8. ὅναρ εἶδεν: see on iii. 1. 11.——**ἔδοξεν**: asyndeton as in iii. 1. 11. ——**αὐτῷ**: *for him* (*dat. commodi*).——**αὐτόμαται**: *sua sponte*, adj. for adv. Cf. **ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου** i. 2. 17; **ἐκ τοῦ αὐτ.** i. 3. 13.——**περιρρυῆναι** (*sc.* **ἔδοξαν**): *to fall off.* Cf. Thuc. iv. 12. 1 **ἡ ἀσπὶς περιερρύη ἐς τὴν θάλασσαν.**——**ὥστε λυθῆναι . . . ἐβούλετο**: *so that he was loosed*

Page 121. *and took as long strides as he pleased.* **ὁπόσον** is cogn. accus. The ambiguous **διαβαίνειν**, meaning also *cross*, portended good.

9. ὡς τάχιστα: *ut primum.* Cf. **ᾗ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα** i. 2. 4.——**ὑπέφαινεν**: cf. § 7 and see on iii. 2. 1.——**τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἦν**: see on i. 8. 15.—— **ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου**: *at the first victim*, *sc.* **ἱερείου**, which is expressed vi. 5. 2, but omitted, as here, vi. 5. 8.

10. ἀριστῶντι: *while breakfasting.*——**προσέτρεχον**: note plur. verb with dual subj.——**αὐτῷ**: dependent on **προσελθεῖν.**——**ἐπεγείραντα**: attracted into acc. by the inf. See on i. 12.——**εἴ τίς τι ἔχοι**: *sc.* **εἰπεῖν.**—— **τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον**: cf. **τῶν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργων** i. 9. 5.

11. καὶ τότε: *and this time*, **καί** introducing a specific instance, as i. 8. 24.——**τυγχάνοιεν**: opt. representing impf. indic. of dir. disc. Gl. 624 b (note); G. 1488; H. 935 b; B. 675 N.——**ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ**: *with a view to a fire.* Cf. **ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους** i. 2. 1.——**ἐν τῷ πέραν**: *on the farther side.* ——**ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱματίων**: *what seemed to be bags of clothes.* **μάρσιπος** only here in classical Greek.——**κατατιθεμένους**: suppl. ptc. with **κατίδοιεν.**

12. δόξαι: change of const. in indir. disc. from **ὅτι** clause to inf. Gl. 659 b. So also with **οὐδὲ γὰρ εἶναι.**——**οὐδὲ γὰρ κτέ**: a second ground for supposing the passage safe, the first being the assumption (implied in **ἰδοῦσι**) that the old man, woman, and girls had crossed.——**προσβατόν**: *approachable.* Cf. **εὐεπίθετον** iii. 4. 20.——**κατὰ τοῦτο**: *at this point.*—— **ἐκδύντες**: *undressing*, *stripping*, whereas **ἀποδύς** (§ 17) means *laying off* the outer garment.——**ὡς νευσόμενοι**: *with a view to swimming*, explanatory of **γυμνοί.**——**διαβαίνειν**: representing the conative impf., while **διαβῆναι** means (actually) *crossed.*——**πρόσθεν . . . πρίν**: GMT. 658.——**καὶ διαβάντες . . . ἥκειν**: *and when they had crossed, they took the garments and came back.* For the relation of the ptcs., see on **ὑπολαβών** i. 1. 7, and cf. ii. 1. 8.

13. τοῖς νεανίσκοις ἐγχεῖν: *sc. οἶνον, to pour wine for the young men.* ——**τὰ ὀνείρατα**: *the visions of the night* (cf. *ὄναρ* § 8). Form and (pl.) number poetical.——**καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι**: *to vouchsafe the other blessings also.* Xen. prob. means esp. safe return home.——**σπονδὰς ἐποίει**: not a mere periphrasis, but *had libations made* (general). Cf. *ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν* i. 4. 12. The more usual mid. (i. 1) would indicate personal interest or participation.

14. ὅπως ἂν . . . πάσχοιεν κακόν: pot. opt. in indir. ques. for *πῶς ἂν κτέ.* Cf. i. 7. 2 and iii. 1. 7. On the const., see GMT. App. iv. II.——**τοὺς ἔμπροσθεν**: see § 3.——**τῶν ὄπισθεν**: see § 7.

Page 122.

15. ἔδοξεν: with the foll. inf. clauses as subj. See on **δοκεῖ** i. 3. 18. ——**ἐν μέσῳ τούτων**: i. e. between the two divisions.——**διαβαίνειν**: chiastic to *διαβαίνειν* above.

16. καλῶς εἶχεν: as iii. 2. 9.——**ὁδός**: without art. = *distance.*——**στάδιοι**: nom. after *ἦν* where gen. might have been used. See on **ὀργυιαί** i. 7. 14.

17. ἀντιπαρῆσαν: *went along opposite them, i. e.* across the river. Cf. *ἀντιπαραθέοντες* 8. 17.——**αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἱππέων**: *i. e.* those mentioned in § 3.——**κατὰ . . . τὰς ὄχθας**: *at the crossing and the* (opposite) *banks* (§ 11).——**στεφανωσάμενος**: *putting on a wreath,* acc. to Spartan custom before battle. Cf. *Resp. Lac.* 13. 8; Plut. *Lycurg.* 22.——**ἀποδύς**: see on *ἐκδύντες* § 12 and cf. V. 8. 23.——**παρήγγελλε**: *sc.* **ἀποδῦσι** (or **ἀποδύντας**) **λαμβάνειν τὰ ὅπλα.**——**λόχους ὀρθίους**: see on 2. 11.

18. ἐσφαγιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν: cf. *σφάξαντες . . . εἰς τὴν ἀσπίδα* ii. 2. 9. The sacrifice was an offering to the river god. Rehd. compares Arr. *Anab.* vi. 3. 1 *ἔσπενδεν ἐς τὸν ποταμόν,* Hdt. vii. 113 *ἐς τὸν Στρύμονα οἱ μάγοι ἐκαλλιερέοντο σφάζοντες ἵππους λευκούς.*——**ἐξικνοῦντο**: see on i. 8. 19.

19. καλὰ ἦν τὰ σφάγια: see on i. 8. 15.——**ἀνηλάλαζον**: *raised the battle-cry* (**ἀλαλή**). See on **ἐλελίζουσι** i. 8. 18.——**συνωλόλυζον**: *uttered shrill cries with them.* The **ὀλολυγή** (cf. Lat. *ulula,* Eng. *owl*) was esp. a loud cry or chant of women in religious exercises. The compound only here. Note the chiasmus and the effective juxtaposition of the similarly sounding verbs.——**πολλαί**: notwithstanding the precautions described 1. 14.

20. οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ: see on ii. 2. 8.——**ἀνὰ κράτος**: see on i. 8. 1.—— **ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον**: *i. e.* the regular ford. See § 5, 6.——**κατὰ**

Page 123. **τὴν ἔκβασιν**: *at the way out* (from the river). Cf. i. 20, 2. 1. ——**προσποιούμενος**: *pretending.* See on i. 3. 14, ii. 1. 7.

21. οἱ πολέμιοι: *i. e. αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἱππέων* § 17.——**ὁρῶντες μὲν . . . ὁρῶντες δέ**: for anaphora, cf. §§ 7 and 23.——**τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον**: cf. *τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα* i. 10. 3; *οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον* ii. 4. 2.——**εἰς τοὔμπαλιν**: see on

iii. 5. 13.——**ἀπολῃφθείησαν**: with this fuller form of opt., cf. **ἀποτμηθείησαν** iii. 4. 29.——**ὡς πρὸς . . . ἔκβασιν**: *as if for the outlet that led up from the river.* The verbal noun **ἔκβασιν** is modified by gen. and adv. Rehd. and Vollbrecht govern the gen. by **ἄνω.**——**ἔτεινον**: *hastened, contendebant.*

22. Δύκιος: cf. iii. 3. 20.——**τὴν τάξιν τῶν ἱππέων**: *the division of cavalry.*——**οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται**: *i. e.* the main body with Cheirisophus.——**ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι . . . ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος**: *shouted to them not to fall behind, but to go out right along with them to the mountain.* Cf. iv. 5. 16. For const., see on i. 8. 12.

23. κατὰ τὰς . . . ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν: *along the bluffs that extended down to the river.* Cf. § 11. For the pred. position of **ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν** (explanation added), see on 2. 18. G. 969; 667 a.——**ὁπλίτας**: *i. e.* **οἱ στρατιῶται** of Cheirisophus § 22.

24. ἐπεὶ τὰ πέραν ἑώρα καλῶς γιγνόμενα: *when he saw that matters on the other side were in good order.*——**ἀπεχώρει**: the same movement as in § 21 f.——**τὴν ταχίστην**: see on i. 3. 14.——**φανεροὶ ἦσαν καταβαίνοντες**: for const., cf. **στέργων φανερὸς ἦν** ii. 6. 23, and see on **δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος** i. 2. 11.

25. τῶν σκευοφόρων τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα: *what remained behind of the baggage train* (of the enemy). See on **τὰ σκευοφόρα** i. 3. 7.——**ἐσθῆτα**: collective, as iii. 1. 19.

26. ἀκμὴν διέβαινε: *were just crossing.* **ἀκμήν** (*at the point of*), adv. accus., as **τέλος** (*at last*) i. 9. 6; **ἀρχήν** (*from the first*) vii. 7. 28.

Page 124. ——**ἀντία . . . ἔθετο**: *formed his line facing them.* Cf. i. 5. 14.——**καὶ παρήγγειλε . . . ἐπὶ φάλαγγος**: *and he passed the word to the captains to form each his own company by enomoties, moving each enomoty* (which had been in column) *to the left* (**παρ' ἀσπίδα**), (so as to come) *into line of battle* (**ἐπὶ φάλαγγος**, which would be 24 men deep). The movement here was exactly the reverse of that explained at 2. 11, *i. e.* the companies in column halted facing the enemy, the first enomoty keeping its position, while the other three marched in order to the left and took position side by side in line.——**καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς . . . πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ**: *and that the captains and enomotarchs should face* (go against) *the Carduchians, while the rear-leaders stationed their men next the river.* The *rear-leaders* in the movement described become the company leaders. For **πρός** with gen., see on **πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ** ii. 2. 4. ——**οὐραγούς**: the omission of the art., which Greek usage would require, is noteworthy.

27. τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους: *stript of, left by, the crowd.* Cf. **ἐψιλοῦτο τῶν ἱππέων** i. 10. 13.——**θᾶττον δή**: for **δή** emphasizing adj., cf. **τάχα δή** i. 8. 8.——**ᾠδάς τινας**: *a kind of songs, i. e.* battle songs. For force of

τινας, see on *χαλκός τις* i. 8. 8; *αἰετόν τινα* i. 10. 12.——**ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε**: see on *εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχοιεν* i. 1. 5.

28. διαβαίνοντας: *on the point of crossing.*——**αὐτοῦ . . . ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ**: see on *αὐτοῦ . . . παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν* § 6.——**μὴ διαβάντας**: representing imv. hence *μή*.——**αὐτοί**: *i. e.* Xen. and his men.——**ἐναντίους . . . ἐμβαίνειν**: *to enter opposite on this side and that of themselves.* Xen. directed them to form in two columns, wide apart, that he and his men might pass between them. Cf. v. 2. 22 *ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῆς . . . ὁδοῦ*.——**διηγκυλομένους**: *with hand in the javelin-thong.* See on *ἐναγκυλῶντες* 2. 28.——**ἐπιβεβλημένους**: (mid.) *sc. τὰ τοξεύματα ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, with arrow on string.* Cf. v. 2. 12 *τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβεβλῆσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς*.——**μὴ πρόσω δὲ . . . προβαίνειν**: *but not to advance far into the river.* The gen. is part. with the adv. of place. Gl. 518 b; G. 1149; H. 757; B. 360.

29. ψοφῇ: *resound, i. e.* when hit by missiles. The meaning of the whole *ἐπειδάν* clause is, whenever they shall get within range.——**θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους**: see on *εἰς αὐτούς* iii. 2. 16.——**ὁ σαλπιγκτὴς σημήνῃ τὸ πολεμικόν**: the subj. expressed here and § 32, elsewhere omitted. See on i. 2. 17. Gl. 493 a; G. 897, 4; H. 602 c; B. 305. Cf. *bellicum canere, to give signal for battle.* The object here was to deceive the enemy.——**ἀναστρέψαντες ἐπὶ δόρυ**: *facing about to the right.* Cf. *Hellen.* vi. 5. 18 *ἀναστρέψαντες εἰς δόρυ*. Cf. *παρ' ἀσπίδα* § 26. With the subj. of the ptc. *τοὺς οὐραγούς* is in part. appos.——**ὅτι τάχιστα**: see on *ὅτι πλείστους* i. 1. 6, 11.——**ὡς μὴ ἐμποδίζειν**: cf. *impedire.* For *ὡς* = *ὥστε*. See on *ὡς μὴ ἅπτεσθαι* i. 5. 10.——**ὅτι . . . ἔσοιτο**: as if *εἶπε* had preceded, a change of const. (from inf. after *παρήγγειλεν*) hardly noticeable in the lively narration. Cf. reverse change (inf. after *ὅτι* clause) § 12.

30. ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοιπούς: *sc. ὄντας, i. e.* of *τοὺς ὀπι-*
Page 125. *σθοφύλακας* § 27.——**ἐνταῦθα δή**: of the decisive moment as *ἔνθα δή* i. 5. 8. Cf. *τότε δή* i. 10.

31. ὥρμησαν: for act., cf. iii. 4. 33.——**ὡς . . . ἱκανῶς**: *well enough for the mountains.* Cf. Soph. *O. C.* 20 *μακρὰν γὰρ ὡς γέροντι προὐστάλης ὁδόν, for thou didst undertake a long journey for an old man.* Cf. Lat. *ut temporibus illis.* Note the chiasmus (*ἱκανῶς . . . ἱκανῶς*).——**πρὸς δὲ τὸ . . . δέχεσθαι**: *but for receiving them hand to hand* (in close conflict). Cf. *εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν* 7. 15; *δέχεσθαι* alone 2. 7.

32. ἐν τούτῳ: *meanwhile.* Cf. i. 5. 15.——**σημαίνει**: *sc. τὸ πολεμικόν.* Cf. § 29.——**τἀναντία στρέψαντες**: *turning in the opposite direction* *τἀναντία* adv., originally cogn. accus. See on *εὐθύωρον* ii. 2. 16. Cf. *τἀναντία ἀποστρέψας ἐπορεύετο Hellen.* iv. 3. 12.

33. οἱ μέν τινες: *τις* emphasizing the indefiniteness, as iii. 3. 19. Cf. *τὰς δέ τινας* ii. 3. 15; *μιά τις* ii. 1. 19.——**καὶ πέραν . . . τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: *even when the Greeks were across.*——**φανεροὶ ἦσαν φεύγοντες**: see on § 24.

34. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες: *but those who had come to meet them* (*i. e.* the relief troops sent by Cheirisophus §§ 27, 28).——**ἀνδριζόμενοι**: *acting like men, bravely.*——**προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ**: *farther than was proper.* Cf. *Hellen.* vii. 5. 13 *ἐδίωξαν πορροτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ*, *Eques.* 10. 14 *πλείω τοῦ καιροῦ θεῖν*, Plato *Rep.* 562 d *πορροτέρω τοῦ δέοντος*.——**ὕστερον . . . πάλιν**: *crossed back after those with Xenophon.*——**καὶ τούτων**: *also of those,* **καί** referring to *ὀλίγους ἔτρωσαν* § 33.

CHAPTER IV

MARCH THROUGH ARMENIA. MEETING WITH TIRIBAZUS

1. συνταξάμενοι: in *battle array.*——**πεδίον ἅπαν**: with *ἐπορεύθησαν, marched over one long plain.* Cf. *ἥπερ ἤλθομεν* ii. 2. 10, and see on ii. 2. 12. G. 1057. Cf. i. 5. 1; Plato *Criti.* 118 a *τὸ περὶ τὴν πόλιν πᾶν πεδίον*.——**λείους**: *lēves*, as opp. to *τραχύς*. Cf. Hom. *Od.* v. 443 *χῶρος . . . λεῖος πετράων*.

2. εἰς ἣν . . . κώμην: for *ἡ κώμη εἰς ἣν*. For the attraction of (subj.) antec. into rel. clause, see Gl. 613 d; G. 1037 (end); H. 995 a; B. 485. Cf. v. 7. 28 *οὓς ἂν . . . ἕλησθε ἄρχοντας, ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ χώρᾳ ἔσονται*, Lys. xix. 47 *τὴν οὐσίαν ἣν κατέλιπεν οὐ πλείονος ἀξία ἐστίν*, Verg. *Aen.* i. 573 *urbem quam statuo vestra est*.——**τύρσεις**: similar towers and battlements are still sometimes found on the terraced roofs of houses of the Kurds. ——**ἐπιτήδεια**: without art. as § 17; vii. 3. 8.

3. ὑπερῆλθον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος: prob. those of an eastern tributary of the Tigris, as the main branch is far to the west; or *ὑπερῆλθον* may mean simply *got beyond* (not *crossed*). The mountain range here is the watershed between the Tigris and the Euphrates, the Teleboas (if the modern *Kara-su*) flowing into the latter.

Page 126.

——**καλὸς μέν, μέγας δ' οὔ**: as vi. 5. 3 *οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξῆσαν, Νέων δὲ οὔ*. Cf. the reverse 8. 2, vi. 4. 20.

4. τόπος: *region*, as i. 5. 1.——**ἐκαλεῖτο**: for impf., see on *ἐνόμιζον* i. 4. 9.——**Ἀρμενία ἡ πρὸς ἑσπέραν**: *western Armenia.*——**ὕπαρχος**: *lieutenant-governor* of western Armenia under the satrap of the province Armenia. See on i. 8. 5.——**ὁπότε παρείη . . . ἀνέβαλλεν**: gen. cond. Note transition from ptc. const. to independent sent. See on *καὶ στρατηγοὶ δέ* i. 1. 2.——**ἀνέβαλλεν**: *helped to mount*, the ancients having no stirrups. The verb is used as synonymous with *ἀναβιβάζειν Eques.* 6. 12. For the noun *ἀναβολεύς*, cf. App. *Pun.* 106. To perform this service for the king was regarded by the Persian nobles as a great honor.

5. εἰς ἐπήκοον: see on ii. 5. 38. Cf. *Cyrop.* i. 4. 23 *εἰς τόξευμα within bow-shot.*

6. ἐφ' ᾧ: see on 2. 19.——**μήτε . . . μήτε . . . τε**: cf. **οὔτε . . . τε** 3. 6, and see on **μήτε . . . τε** ii. 2. 8.——**αὐτός**: for nom., representing subj. of leading verb, cf. 1. 24, and see on i. 3. 8.——**ὅσων δέοιντο**: *as much as they wanted*, representing **ὅσων ἂν δέησθε** of dir. disc.——**ἐπὶ τούτοις**: *on these conditions.*

7. πολλὰς πολλῶν: paronomasia for emphasis. **πολλῶν** pred., *in abundance*, as **πολλούς** 3. 7.

8. στρατοπεδευομένων δ' αὐτῶν: *while they were in camp.* Cf. **ἐστρατοπεδεύετο** ii. 2. 15.——**γίγνεται . . . χιὼν πολλή**: see on 1. 15. The heavy snow was not strange, since they were at an elevation of 4,000 feet and it was about the first of December.——**ἕωθεν**: *at daybreak*, lit. (starting) 'from dawn.'——**διασκηνῆσαι**: *camp apart.* Cf. **διαδεχομένους** i. 5. 2.——**ἀσφαλές**: note the emphatic position.

9. ἀγαθά: as 6. 27, iii. 1. 20, 5. 1.——**ἱερεῖα**: *beeves.* The sing. **ἱερεῖον**, *animal for sacrifice*; plur. merely *cattle for slaughter*, part of every animal being offered to the gods.——**τῶν ἀποσκεδαννυμένων τινές**: *some of the stragglers.* Ptc. impf., as § 15.——**πυρὰ φαίνοντα**: *fires gleaming* (intr.). Cf. Mem. iv. 3. 4 **ἄστρα ἀνέφηναν.**

10. οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν: *to be unsafe to encamp apart*, but the antithesis, **ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν**, is as if **διασκηνοῦν** had been negatived.——**διαιθριάζειν**: *to be clearing away, fairing off.* Cf. Ar.

Page 127. *Aves* 1561 **ὁ Ζεὺς . . . ἀπαιθριάζει τὰς νεφέλας ἢ συννέφει.** Plin. *N. H.* xviii. 35 *si cacumina pura fient disserenabit.* The word occurs only here.

11. νυκτερευόντων: cf. *pernoctare.* The meaning here is *bivouac.*——**ἄπλετος**: poetic word, only here in Xen.——**ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε**: *so that it concealed.* The indic. of the result actually produced. See on i. 1. 8.——**συνεπόδιζεν**: cf. **ἐμποδίζειν** 3. 29.——**ὄκνος ἦν**: periphrasis for **ὤκνουν**, with the same const. (inf.).——**κατακειμένων**: gen. abs.——**ἀλεεινόν**: *a source of warmth.* The neut. pred. adj. as **φοβερώτατον** ii. 5. 9.——**ὅτῳ μὴ παραρρυείη**: *for whom it did not slip off* (**ὅτῳ = εἴ τῳ**, hence **μή**) iter. opt. Cf. **αὐτῷ περιρρυῆναι** 3. 8.

12. ἐτόλμησε: *took courage, endured*, Homeric sense. Cf. vii. 7. 46 **νῦν οὕτω με ἄτιμον ὄντα ἐν τοῖς στρατιώταις τολμᾷς περιορᾶν.**——**γυμνός**: *i. e.* without his **ἱμάτιον**, *in his shirt-sleeves.* See on **γυμνή** i. 10. 3.——**ἐκείνου ἀφελόμενος**: *sc.* **τὴν ἀξίνην** or **τὰ ξύλα.** Cf. **ἀφαιρεῖσθαι** with accus. of thing and person i. 3. 4.

13. σησάμινον: *of sesame* (**σήσαμον** i. 2. 22). Cf. Curtius vii. 17 (4). 23 *succo ex sesama expresso haud secus quam oleo artus perungebant.*——**ἀμυγδάλινον**: *sc.* **χρῖμα**, *almond-oil.*——**ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν**: *sc.* **ἀμυγδαλῶν.**——**ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων**: *from these same materials.*——**ηὑρίσκετο**: note the repetition and chiasmus, expressive of abundance.

14. διασκηνητέον εἶναι: for impers. verbal, see on *σκεπτέον* i. 3. 11.——**εἰς στέγας**: *under cover* (lit. 'into the houses').——**σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ ἡδονῇ**: *with much shouting for joy* (hendiadys). Cf. 5. 3.——**ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας**: *through wantonness.* The word is Homeric and Ionic. Cf. *Od.* x. 437 *ἀτασθαλίῃσιν ὄλοντο*, Hdt. ii. 111 *ἀτασθαλίῃ χρησάμενον.*——**κακῶς σκηνοῦντες**: *by camping poorly.*

15. Τημνίτην: *from Temnus* (in Aeolis), or possibly *from Temenion* (in Argolis).——**οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι καθορᾶν**: impf. ptc. and inf. See on § 9.——**πολλὰ ἀληθεῦσαι τοιαῦτα**: cogn. accus.——**τὰ ὄντα**: *the things that were, realities.*——**τὰ μὴ ὄντα**: *the things that were not*, equiv. to indef. rel. Gl. 582 c; G. 1613; H. 1025 a.

16. πορευθείς: *i. e.* when he had gone and returned.——**οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν**: *said that he had not seen.* See on i. 2. 26, 3. 1.——**σάγαριν**: *a battle-axe* (Persian word).——**οἵανπερ καί**: see on *οἵαπερ καί* i. 3. 18.——**Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν**: *i. e.* in pictures, statues, etc. Cf. Hor. *Od.* iv. 4. 20 *Amazonia securi.*

17. τὸ στράτευμα: proleptic accus. See on *ἤλεγχον τὴν*

Page 128. *χώραν* iii. 5. 14.——**ἐπὶ τίνι**: *for what purpose.* Cf. *ἐπὶ τούτῳ* i. 3. 1.

18. παρεσκευάσθαι: change of const., as in 3. 12.——**ὡς**: with *ἐπιθησόμενον.*——**ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ**: *at the pass.* Cf. *ὑπερέβαλλον* § 20.——**ᾗπερ μοναχῇ**: *where alone*, the adv. explaining the rel.——**ἐνταῦθα**: repeating *ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ.* See on the epanaleptic *τοῦτο* iii. 2. 20.

20. ὑπερέβαλλον: cf. i. 7, 5. 1, 6. 8.——**τὸ στρατόπεδον**: *i. e.* of Tiribazus.——**ἀνακραγόντες**: *raising a shout*, as 5. 18. Cf. *ἀνηλάλαζον* 3. 19.

21. οἱ ἀρτοκόποι . . . εἶναι: *those who claimed to be his bakers and his butlers* (*οἱ* belonging to the ptc.). Compare Herodotus' account (ix. 82) of the furniture found by Pausanias in the tent of Mardonius after the battle of Plataea.

22. τὴν ταχίστην: cf. 3. 24.——**ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον**: *i. e.* their own camp.——**μή τις . . . τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις**: *i. e.* an attack from Tiribazus. *ἐπίθεσις* also vii. 4. 23. The periphrasis with same const. here as the simple verb in ii. 4. 16.——**τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις**: cf. § 19.——**ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλπιγγι**: *recalling them with the trumpet, i. e.* sounding the retreat. Cf. *receptui canere.*

CHAPTER V

MARCH CONTINUED THROUGH ARMENIA. DREADFUL SNOWSTORM. WEEK OF REST

1. πορευτέον εἶναι: cf. impers. verbal 4. 14.——**ὅπῃ δύναιντο τάχιστα**: indir. for *ὅπῃ ἂν τάχιστα δυνώμεθα.* For the phrase, cf. *ᾗ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα*

i. 2. 4, and see on **ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο** i. 1. 6.——**πρὶν ἡ**: for the usual **πρίν**, also *Cyrop.* i. 4. 23; *Ages.* 2. 4.——**τὸ στράτευμα**: *sc.*
Page 129. **τῶν πολεμίων.**——**τὰ στενά**: cf. 4. 18.——**ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον . . . Τιρίβαζος**: cf. 4. 18.——**ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι**: *was to attack.* See on i. 9. 28.

2. Εὐφράτην: *i. e.* the eastern branch, the modern *Murad-su.*

3. διὰ χιόνος . . . καὶ πεδίου: hendiadys, *across a plain covered with deep snow.* Cf. **κραυγῇ καὶ ἡδονῇ** 4. 14.——**σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα**: the text is corrupt here. Most MSS. have **παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα**, while most editors, omitting **πεντεκαι-**, read simply **δέκα.** Fifteen parasangs seems a long three days' march through deep snow. One MS. has **πέντε.**——**ὁ δὲ τρίτος**: *sc.* **σταθμός.**——**ἐναντίος**: pred., *in their teeth.*——**ἀποκαίων**: *blasting* (lit. 'burning off'). Cf. vii. 4. 3 **καὶ ῥῖνες ἀπεκαίοντο καὶ ὦτα.** Lat. *urere* is also thus used of cold. Cf. Tac. *Ann.* xiii. 35 *ambusti multorum artus vi frigoris.*

4. ἔνθα δή: see on i. 5. 8.——**εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι**: *bade them sacrifice.* Cf. **εἶπε κελεύειν** ii. 3. 2 and see on **ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν** i. 3. 8.——**τῷ ἀνέμῳ**: to the Greeks the winds were deities and Boreas especially had several sanctuaries in Greece.——**σφαγιάζεται**: *sc.* **ὁ μάντις.**——**λῆξαι**: *to abate.*——**διεγένοντο . . . καίοντες**: *but they got through the night by burning a fire.* See on i. 10. 19. Or the sense might be, *they continued to burn a fire during the night*, as **ἐσθίοντες διεγίγνοντο** i. 5. 6; **πολεμῶν διεγένετο** ii. 6. 5.

5. εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν: prot. of gen. cond. See on 2. 4.——**πυρούς**: "the (rare) accus. with **μεταδιδόναι** (vii. 8. 11) emphasizes the giving and the part given; the part. gen. (§ 6; ii. 1. 7) the giving away and the whole from which one gives." Rehd.——**ἢ ἄλλο . . . βρωτόν**: *or any other eatable that they had.* For the ordinary form of this expression **εἴ τι ἄλλο**, cf. i. 5. 1, 6. 1.

6. ἔνθα δή: *thereupon*, as § 4.——**ἔνθα δέ**: *and where.*——**ὧν**: for **τούτων ἅ.** See on i. 3. 10.——**ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον**: *clear to the ground.* Cf. **μέχρι ἐπί** (v. 1. 1), **μέχρι εἰς** (vi. 4. 26), **ἄχρι εἰς** (v. 5. 4). **δάπεδον** is a Doric word.——**παρῆν**: *it was possible.*

7. ἐβουλιμίασαν: *were afflicted with bulimy*, lit. *became* 'ox-hungry' (ingressive aor.). Varro (de *Re Rust.* 2. 5) calls attention to the use of **βου-** in compounds to indicate magnitude. Cf. **βού-βρωστις**, *ravenous appetite*; **βου-γάϊος**, *a bully*; **βού-μασθος**, *bearing large grapes.* So **ἵππο-**, as **ἱππό-κρημνος**, *very steep*; **ἱππο-σέλινον**, *horse-parsley* and in
Page 130. English *horse-laugh, horse-chestnut.*——**καταλαμβάνων . . . τῶν ἀνθρώπων**: *those of the men who were fainting, i. e.* from hunger. The gen. (cf. **τῶν ἐμπείρων** § 8) gives stress to the *part* affected.

8. διεδίδου καὶ διέπεμπε . . . παρατρέχειν: prob. for **διεδίδου τοῖς δυνα-**

μένοις παρατρέχειν καὶ διέπεμπεν αὐτούς. For **διεδίδου**, see on i. 9. 22.——**διδόντας**: *as givers*, the pres. ptc., representing the act in operation, where the fut. (of purpose) might have been expected. Cf. *πέμπει . . . λέγοντας* vi. 1. 2; *πέμπουσι . . . ἐρωτῶντες* v. 4. 2; *ἦκε λέγων* iii. 1. 19; *προσῆσαν λέγοντες* v. 6. 31. Cf. i. 3. 13 for ptc. fut. and pres. coordinated.

9. πορευομένων: *sc. αὐτῶν*, as i. 6.——**Χειρίσοφος μέν**: the correl. **δέ** in § 11.——**κνέφας**: *dusk*, poetical word, also, as here, *Hellen.* vii. 1. 15 (*dawn*); *Cyrop.* iv. 2. 15.——**ὑδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς κώμης**: *i. e.* who came from the village to fetch water. For const. of the ptc. with *καταλαμβάνει*, cf. § 7, 2. 5.——**τῇ κρήνῃ, τοῦ ἑρύματος**: the art. as designating characteristics of every village.

10. περσιστί: cf. *ἑλληνιστί* vii. 6. 8; *John* xix. 20 *καὶ ἦν γεγραμμένον ἑβραϊστί, ῥωμαϊστί, ἑλληνιστί.*——**ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι . . . εἴη . . . ἀπέχει**: for reversion to indic., see on *οἴχονται* i. 10. 5, and *παρῇει* i. 10. 16.——**ὅσον**: *about.* See on i. 8. 6.

11. ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν τοῦ στρατεύματος: *as many of the army as* (still) *had strength.* Cf. *τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα* § 12.——**οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι**: see on *τὰ μὴ ὄντα* 4. 15.

12. οἵ τε διεφθαρμένοι . . . τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς: *those who had their eyes blinded by the snow.* For the const. accus. of part affected retained with pass., see on *ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλάς* ii. 6. 1. *τοὺς δακτύλους . . . ἀποσεσηπότες* is the same const., this ptc. being pass. in sense.

13. τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος: *a protection for the eyes against the snow* (obj. gen.). Cf. *Mem.* iv. 3. 7 *τὸ πῦρ ἐπίκουρον ψύχους.*——**εἰ . . . ἐπορεύετο**: indic. for opt. in gen. cond. G. 1395;

Page 131. H. 894 c.——**τῶν δὲ ποδῶν**: *sc. ἐπικούρημα, protection for the feet. τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς* above might have been gen. but for possible confusion. Cf. *Ages.* 2. 7 *ὠφελήμασι τῆς πατρίδος.*——**εἰς τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο**: *took off his sandals for the night*, opposite of *ὑποδεδεμένοι* § 14. *-λύω* and *-δέω* refer to the loosing and tying of the thongs (*ἱμαντες*) by which the sandals (*ὑποδήματα*) were bound to the foot.

14. ὅσοι δὲ κτέ: loose const. Strictly the antecedent is some general word (*e. g. πάντων*) depending on *πόδας*. For similar const., cf. *ὁπόσας εἶχε φυλακὰς κτέ* i. 1. 6.——**τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο**: for plur. verb with neut. plur., see on *ἦσαν* i. 4. 4.——**καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν . . . βοῶν**: *and in fact they* (the sandals) *were, after their old sandals failed, untanned brogues made of newly flayed ox-hides.*——**ἐπέλιπε**: as i. 5. 6.——**καρβάτιναι**: defined by Hesychius. *ἀγροικικὸν ὑπόδημα μονόδερμον.* Cf. Catullus 98, 4 *crepidas carpatinas.* Such foot-coverings were esp. common among peasants.——**βοῶν**: the animal for the part from which the sandals were made. Cf. 7. 22, v. 4. 12. Cf. *ἐλέφας, elephant* and *ivory.*

15. ἀνάγκας: *distresses.* Cf. *Mem.* i. 1. 11, 15, iii. 12. 2.——**διὰ . . . τὴν χιόνα**: *because the snow was wanting there.*——**ἔδει**: const. as in *Cyrop.* iv. 6. 12 **ἔφασαν διαδώσειν· καὶ διέδωκαν.**——**ἦν ἀτμίζουσα**: *was steaming.* Cf. **ἦν ἄγουσα** 3. 5.——**νάπη**: the form as v. 2. 31; *Hellen.* v. 4. 44. Cf. **νάπος** vi. 5. 12, 13.——**οὐκ ἔφασαν**: see on i. 3. 1.

16. ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας: *having some of the rear-guards.*——**πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ**: *by every art and device* (used in solemn appeal). Cf. vii. 2. 8.——**τελευτῶν**: *finally* (ptc. with adv. force). Cf. vi. 3. 8.——**οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι**: inf. in implied quotation.

17. ἦν μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δέ: see on 2. 1.——**οἱ δέ**: *οἱ πολέμιοι.*——**ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον διαφερόμενοι**: *quarrelling about what they had, i. e.* the booty (§ 12). The const. **ἀμφί** with gen. is poetical and Ionic, used by Xen. alone of Attic prose writers. Cf. **περὶ ὧν διαφέρομαι** vii. 6. 15.

18. ἄτε: see on 2. 13.——**ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους**: cf. 3. 29.——**ὅσον ἐδύναντο μέγιστον**: *as loud as they could.* For **ὅσον** (like **ὡς**) with sup., cf. vii. 1. 37. **μέγιστον** is cogn. accus. Gl. 536 b; G. 1054; H. 716 b; B. 334.——**τὰς ἀσπίδας . . . ἔκρουσαν**: cf. i. 8. 18.——**κατὰ τῆς χιόνος**: *down the snow.* Cf. i. 5. 8 **κατὰ πρανοῦς γηλόφου.**——**οὐδεὶς . . . οὐδαμοῦ ἐφθέγξατο**: *i. e.* they gave no more trouble. For negatives, see on i. 2. 26.

19. ἐπ' αὐτούς: *after them.* Cf. ii. 3. 8.——**ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις**: *wrapped up* (*i. e.* in their cloaks). These soldiers belonged to the
Page 132. rear-guard.——**φυλακὴ οὐδεμία καθειστήκει**: cf. § 21 **φυλακὰς . . . καταστησάμενοι.**——**ἀνίστασαν**: *tried to make them get up.* Cf. **ἐκώλυον** 2. 24.——**οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν**: *do not make way* for them.

20. παριών: as vi. 5. 23. Cf. **παρελαύνων** i. 2. 16.——**ὅλον**: pred. adj. emphasized by separation from its noun. The division of Xen. is meant, that of Cheirisophus being already in the village (§ 10).——**οὕτως**: *i. e.* as those in § 19.

21. ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι: cf. § 11.——**πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν**: *it was toward day.* Cf. **πρὸς ἡμέραν ἐγένετο** *Hellen.* ii. 4. 6.——**τοὺς νεωτάτους**: at once obj. of **πέμψας** and subj. of **ἀναγκάζειν.**——**ἀναστήσαντας . . . προϊέναι**: *told them* (*i. e.* **τοὺς νεωτάτους**) *to compel them* (*i. e.* **τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας**) *to rise and go forward.*

22. τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης: part. gen. depending on **τινας** implied in **σκεψομένους.** Cf. **τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως** i. 1. 5.——**σκεψομένους**: fut. ptc. of purpose after verb of motion, as in Lat.——**κομίζειν**: inf. of purpose. See on **ἐπέτρεψε διαρπάσαι** i. 2. 19. For like inf. after **ἔδωκε**, see on i. 2. 27, iii. 4. 42.

23. διαλαχόντες: *having allotted out* (divided up by lot).——**κώμας**: attracted into rel. clause, as **ἄνδρας** iii. 2. 20.——**τοὺς ἑαυτῶν**: *i. e.* each commander had his own division (**τάξις**).

24. πώλους εἰς δασμόν: *colts for tribute.* πῶλος = Lat. *pullus* = Eng. *foal.* εἰς as in εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα 1. 28. For δασμός, see on i. 1. 8.

Page 133. The satrap furnished annually 20,000 horses to the king for the festival of Mithras (the sun-god).——**ἑπτακαίδεκα**: prob. corrupt, as the editors generally assume, for acc. to § 35, Xen. gave one to each of the generals and captains, though those of Xen.'s own division only may be meant.——**ἐνάτην ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην**: *married eight days before.* G. 1063; H. 721. The art. is often wanting with ordinals, as 6. 1, 8. 21.

25. κατάγειοι: for the very similar subterranean abodes still to be found in that region, see Layard, *Nineveh and Babylon*, p. 14; Tozer, *Turkish Armenia*, p. 396; v. Moltke, *Briefe*, p. 222.——**τὸ μὲν στόμα ὥσπερ φρέατος**: *the entrance* (mouth) *like that of a well.* τὸ στόμα is either accus. of specification, or in part. appos. to οἰκίαι. If the latter explanation be preferred, a reversion to the original const. must be assumed in κάτω δ' εὐρεῖαι.——**ἐτρέφοντο**: with neut. plur. subj. Cf. § 14, 1. 13.

26. οἶνος κρίθινος: (*barley-wine*) *beer made of barley.* Cf. Hdt. ii. 77. 2 ἐκ κριθέων πεποιημένος, Tac. *Germ.* 23 *potui humor ex hordeo aut frumento in quandam similitudinem vini corruptus.* Cf. οἶνος ἀμπέλινος Hdt. ii. 37. 19.——**ἰσοχείλεις**: *level with the brim, i. e.* floating on top. ——**κάλαμοι γόνατα οὐκ ἔχοντες**: *straws without joints.* γόνυ (*genu*) *knee* of men, *joint* of grasses, etc. (Lat. *genicula*). Cf. Hdt. iii. 98.——**ἐνέκειντο**: pf., used as pass. of ἐντίθημι. Cf. ἔκειντο 2. 20.

27. ἄκρατος: lit. 'unmixed,' hence *strong.*——**συμμαθόντι**: *to one who had come to know it, got used to it* (= συνεθισθέντι, Suid.). Schenkl compares Ar. *Eq.* 427 συγγιγνώσκειν, *know thoroughly.* For const., see on συνελόντι iii. 1. 38.

28. σύνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο: as ii. 5. 27.——**οὔτε . . . τε**: see on 3. 6. ——**στερήσοιτο**: mid. with pass. meaning.——**ἀντεμπλήσαντες**: *filling in compensation* (*i. e.* for the information asked).——**ἀπίασιν**: note the change of mood (after opt.) as well as of subj. See on οἴχονται i. 10. 5. ——**ἢν . . . φαίνηται**: *if he should appear to have given the army good guidance.* ἀγαθόν neut. adj. for cogn. accus. with ἐξηγησάμενος, which is suppl. ptc. Cf. ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπιόντες 2. 4 and see on i. 2. 11.——**ἔστ' ἂν . . . γένωνται**: *until they should come to another tribe.* For ἐν . . . γένωνται, cf. 8. 15.

29. φιλοφρονούμενος: as ii. 5. 27.——**οἶνον**: proleptic accus. Cf. τὴν ὁδόν § 34.——**διασκηνήσαντες**: see on 4. 8.——**ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις**: see on iii. 2. 25. Cf. ἐν ἐπιτηδείοις δαψιλέσι 2. 22.——**ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες**: *keeping under guard.*——**ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς**: *in sight.* Cf. *Hiero* 6. 13 ἐξ ὀφθαλμῶν γενέσθαι. Note the chiasmus ἐν φυλακῇ . . . ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς.

30. **τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις**: *i. e.* the Greek soldiers quartered there. ——**ἀφίεσαν**: *i. e.* the soldiers.——**παραθεῖναι**: the regular word for serving with food.

Page 134. 31. **οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ**: *and everywhere*, lit. 'there was not anywhere where not' (Lat. *nusquam non*). See on **ἦν . . . ὁπότε** 2. 27.

32. **προπιεῖν**: *to drink his health.* Custom also of the Thracians vii. 2. 23. Cf. the German students' *vor-* and *nachkommen* in beer-drinking.——**ἔνθεν . . . ὥσπερ βοῦν**: *whence he had to drink stooping down, swilling like an ox.* **ὑποκύψαντα** (*sc.* **τὸν ἑλκόμενον**) refers to the position, **ῥοφοῦντα** to the manner of drinking. For relation of the ptcs., see on **παραδόνταὶ** ii. 1. 8. **ὥσπερ βοῦν** attracted into accus. where we should expect **βοῦς**.——**ἐδίδοσαν λαμβάνειν**: see on **ἔδωκε διαρπάζεσθαι** i. 2. 27.

33. **κἀκείνους**: *those too, i. e.* Cheirisophus and his party.——**σκηνοῦντας**: (= **εὐωχουμένους**) *feasting*, as v. 3. 9, vii. 3. 15.——**ἐστεφανωμένους**: the Greek custom at feasts.——**τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ**: the art. prob. with reference to the hay found in the cave-dwellings (§ 25).——**διακονοῦντας**: *waiting at table.* Technical term. Cf. **παραθεῖναι** § 30.——**σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς στολαῖς**: *with their foreign garments.* As to **σύν** (for **ἐν**), cf. Soph. *El.* 190 **οἰκονομῶ θαλάμους πατρὸς ὧδε μὲν ἀεικεῖ σὺν στολῇ.**

34. **δασμός**: *sc.* **τρέφοιντο**. Cf. § 24.——**Χάλυβας**: people for province. See on **Πισίδας** i. 1. 11.——**τὴν ὁδόν**: prolepsis. Cf. **οἶνον** § 29.

35. **αὐτόν**: *him, i. e.* the village chief, seemingly a clear case of **αὐτόν** merely as pers. pron. in emphatic position.——**ᾤχετο ἄγων**: see on **διώκοντα οἴχεσθαι** i. 10. 16.——**ἑαυτοῦ**: referring not, as usual, to the subj. of the sent., but to the obj. (**αὐτόν**). G. 994; H. 683 b.——**εἰλήφει**: referring prob. to iii. 3. 19; possibly to 4. 21.——**παλαίτερον**: *too old,*

Page 135. absol. compar.——**ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῦσαι**: *to fatten and sacrifice.*——**ἱερὸν τοῦ Ἡλίου**: with poss. gen. of the god, as v. 3. 13. See on § 24.——**τῶν πώλων**: part. gen. See on **στρατοῦ** i. 5. 7. ——**ἑκάστῳ**: perhaps to each only of his own division. See on § 24.

36. **πολύ**: placed after its adj. for emphasis. See on **ἰσχυρῶς** i. 2. 21. Cf. *Hellen.* i. 1. 17, vii. 4. 24; *Cyrop.* i. 6. 21.——**ὅταν . . . ἄγωσιν**: note the retention of original mood in indir. disc.

CHAPTER VI

THE GREEKS WIN A PASSAGE ACROSS THE MOUNTAINS

1. **ἡμέρα ὀγδόη**: note the omission of art. with ordinal, as in 5. 24. ——**τὸν μέν**: the village chief, **ἡγεμόνα** being pred.——**παραδίδωσι**: *sc.*

Ξενοφῶν.——**καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχῳ**: *leaves behind for the chief* (dat. of advantage).——**ὅπως . . . ἀπίοι**: expresses Xen.'s thought or order.——**ἡγήσοιτο**: *sc. ὁ κώμαρχος*. For fut. opt., see Gl. 651 (3); G. 1287.——**ὡς ἐδύναντο πλεῖστα**: see on *ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο* i. 1. 6.

2. **ἡγεῖτο αὐτοῖς**: see on ii. 2. 8.——**λελυμένος**: cf. *τὸν ἡγεμόνα δήσαντες* 2. 1.——**καὶ ἤδη ἦν**: see on i. 8. 1.——**οὐκ εἶεν**: *sc. κῶμαι*.——**ἔδησε δ' οὗ**: this order emphasizes both words. It shows Cheirisophus' carelessness (*ἀμέλεια* § 3) after striking the guide.

3. **τῆς νυκτός**: see on ii. 2. 1.——**ἀποδρὰς ᾤχετο**: see on ii. 4. 24.——**διάφορον**: (difference) *quarrel*. Cf. *διαφερόμενοι* 5. 17.——**ἡ . . . ἀμέλεια**: explanatory appos.——**ἠράσθη**: ingressive aor., *fell in love with*.——**ἐχρῆτο**: as ii. 5. 11.

4. **ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας**: *at the rate of*. Cf. iii. 4. 21.——**τῆς ἡμέρας**: see on ii. 2. 1.——**Φᾶσιν**: prob. the upper Araxes (still called *Pasinsu*), mistaken by the Greeks for the Colchian river of that name.——**εὖρος πλεθριαῖον**: cf. i. 5. 4.

5. **ἐπὶ τῇ . . . ὑπερβολῇ**: *on the pass leading over to the*
Page 136. *plain*. See on 4. 18. Cf. Plut. *Demetr.* 48 *αἱ εἰς Συρίαν ὑπερβολαί*.——**ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς**: as ii. 3. 17.

6. **κατὰ κέρας ἄγων**: *leading in column*.——**παράγειν**: *to lead along*, as 3. 26.——**ἐπὶ φάλαγγος**: *in line of battle*. For the movement, see on 3. 26.

7. **ὅπως . . . ἀγωνιούμεθα**: see on i. 1. 4.

9. **ἐμοὶ δέ γε**: see on *ἡμῖν δέ γε* iii. 1. 35.——**ἐπὰν τάχιστα**: *cum primum*. Cf. iii. 1. 9.——**εἰ γὰρ διατρίψομεν . . . ἔσονται**: monitory cond. Gl. 648 b; GMT. 447.——**προσγενέσθαι**: *join them*. For inf. without *ἄν* after *εἰκός*, see GMT. 136. Cf. *Cyrop.* vi. 1. 10 *εἰκὸς ἐστι πόρον προσγενέσθαι*.

10. **ἐγὼ δέ**: for *δέ* at the beginning of a speech in reply, cf. v. 5. 13. Note *ἀλλά* in same connection i. 7. 6.——**τοῦτο**: anticipating the following *ὅπως* clause.——**ὅπως . . . λάβωμεν**: the regular const. is the fut. indic., as *μαχούμεθα* just above; for the rarer subjv., see Gl. 638 c; G. 1374; H. 885 b; B. 593, 1. For similar change of mood, cf. *Mem.* ii. 2. 10 *ἐπιμελομένην ὅπως ὑγιαίνῃς τε καὶ ὅπως τῶν ἐπιτηδείων μηδενὸς ἐνδεὴς ἔσῃ*.——**σώματα ἀνδρῶν**: *human lives*. Note the anaphora (*ὡς ἐλάχιστα μὲν τραύματα, ὡς ἐλάχιστα δὲ σώματα*) in sound, which, doubtless, as Rehdantz suggests, explains the use of the periphrasis.

11. **τὸ ὁρώμενον**: *the part visible*, part. appos.——**ἐστὶ**
Page 137. **πλέον ἢ ἐφ' ἑξήκοντα στάδια**: *extends for more than sixty stadia*. Cf. vi. 2. 2 *τὸ βάθος πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ δύο στάδια*. See on *ἐπὶ πολύ* 2. 13.——**οὐδαμοῦ . . . ἀλλ' ἤ**: *nowhere else than, nusquam nisi* (*ἀλλ' ἤ* originally *ἄλλο ἤ*).——**τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους**: part. gen. with *τι*.

——**κλέψαι λαθόντας**: *to steal unobserved.*——**ἁρπάσαι φθάσαντας**: *to seize in advance.* GMT. 893. For the more common idioms, see Gl. 585 a; G. 1586; H. 984; B. 660 N.——**μᾶλλον ἤ**: emphatically renewing the idea of *κρεῖττον*. Cf. v. 8. 26, vii. 4. 12.

12. πολὺ γὰρ ῥᾷον . . . ὁμαλές: *for it is much easier to go up hill than over level ground* (explaining *ἁρπάσαι*). For *ὅρθιον ἰέναι ἢ ὁμαλές*, see on *εὐθύωρον* ii. 2. 16.——**ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν**: see on 3. 28.——**πολεμίων ὄντων**: conditional.——**τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν**: *what is just before one.*——**μεθ' ἡμέραν**: *by* (lit. 'after') *day* (as vii. 3. 37), with *μαχόμενος* balancing *νύκτωρ ἀμαχεί* just above.——**ἡ τραχεῖα, ἡ ὁμαλή**: *sc. ὁδός.*——**τοῖς ποσίν**: depends on *εὐμενεστέρα.*——**ἰοῦσιν, βαλλομένοις**: see on *πειρωμένοις* 3. 6 and *προιοῦσι* iii. 2. 22.——**τὰς κεφαλὰς βαλλομένοις**: *getting struck on the head* (pass. of *τὰς κεφαλὰς αὐτοῖς βάλλουσιν*). For accus. of part affected retained with pass., see on 5. 12 and ii. 6. 1.

13. καὶ κλέψαι δέ: *and even to steal.*——**ἐξόν**: see on ii. 5. 22.——**ὡς . . . ὁρᾶσθαι**: for *ὡς* = *ὥστε*, see on i. 5. 10. Gl. 566 b.——**τοσοῦτον**: see on *ὡς πλεῖστον* ii. 2. 12.——**αἴσθησιν παρέχειν**: *attract attention, make perceptible* (*i. e.* to eye or ear). Cf. *ὑποψίαν παρέχειν* ii. 4. 10.——**δοκοῦμεν δ' ἂν . . . χρῆσθαι**: *and it seems to me by pretending to attack on this road we should find the mountain more deserted.* *δοκοῦμεν* pers. const. *ἄν* belongs to *χρῆσθαι*, representing pot. opt. (see on *ἂν εἶναι* i. 3. 6), and is repeated with the emphatic word *ἐρημοτέρῳ*. For *προσποιούμενοι* (cond.) *making a feint*, see on ii. 1. 7.——**μένοιεν**: *ἄν* to be supplied from the preceding. See on *ποιήσειε* i. 6. 2. GMT. 226.——**αὐτοῦ**: *here*, as opposed to *τῷ* (*ἄλλῳ*) *ὄρει.*

14. ἀτάρ: (epic *αὐτάρ*) cf. vii. 7. 10. Freq. in Hom., and occurring in Hdt. and the tragedians, but avoided by prose writers except Xen. and Plato.——**συμβάλλομαι**: *sc. λόγον* or *γνώμην, give my opinion.* Cf. Plato *Sympos.* 485 *ταῦτά σοι περὶ ἔρωτος συμβάλλομαι.*——**ὑμᾶς τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους**: appos., as i. 7. 7 *ὑμῶν τῶν Ἑλλήνων.* See on *οἱ ἄλλοι* i. 5. 16.——**τῶν ὁμοίων**: (part. gen.) *equal citizens, peers, i. e.* the Spartiatae, who at Sparta had full civic rights, as opposed to all other inhabitants of Laconia. Cf. *Cyrop.* iii. 3. 41 *ὑμεῖς γὰρ τῶν ὁμοτίμων γεγόνατε.*——**εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων**: *usque a pueris, from childhood.*——**κλέπτειν μελετᾶν**: *practise stealing.* On the whole passage cf. *Resp. Lac.* 2. 6, 8 *ὡς δὲ μὴ ὑπὸ λιμοῦ ἄγαν αὖ πιέζοιντο, ἀπραγμόνως μὲν αὐτοῖς οὐκ ἔδωκε λαμβάνειν ὧν ἂν προσδέωνται, κλέπτειν δὲ ἐφῆκεν ἔστιν ἃ τῷ λιμῷ ἐπικουροῦντας . . . κἀκεῖνοι οὖν τοὺς ἁλισκομένους ὡς κακῶς κλέπτοντας τιμωροῦνται, that they might not be too much oppressed by hunger, he did not permit them to take without trouble whatever they wanted, but enjoined them to steal some things alleviating their hunger . . . and those detected they punish on the ground of stealing awkwardly.*——**ὅσα μὴ κωλύει**: conditional, hence *μή*.

15. μάλα σοι καιρός ἐστιν: *it is quite opportune.* Cf. *Hellen.* v. 4. 14 *μάλα χειμῶνος ὄντος, there being a violent storm.*——**τοῦ ὄρους**: part. gen. Cf. *τι τοῦ ὄρους* §§ 11, 17. See on *στρατοῦ* i. 5. 7.

16. ἀλλὰ μέντοι . . . ἀξιοῦνται: *but really said Cheirisophus, "I hear you Athenians are fearful fellows for stealing the public moneys, even though fearful is the danger for the thief, and indeed your best men are the very best thieves, if really your best men are thought worthy to rule."* Xen.'s playful jest, meant to bring about good-humor again, draws a sharp retort from Cheirisophus as to avarice and bribe-taking among Athenian public men—expressing, perhaps, Xen.'s own feeling, when later in exile, against the ruling faction at Athens.——**κἀγὼ ὑμᾶς**: note the juxtaposition of the pers. prons.——**δεινοὺς κλέπτειν**: see on *δεινὸς λέγειν* ii. 5. 15.——**τὰ δημόσια**: *sc. χρήματα.*——**καὶ μάλα**: cf. i. 23, and see on i. 5. 8.——**τοὺς κρατίστους**: a good foil for *ὁμοίων* in § 14.——**ὑμῖν**: dat. of advantage with *ἄρχειν* (see on *αὐτῷ* ii. 4. 3), or of agent with *ἀξιοῦνται* (i. 8. 12).

17. κλωπῶν: play on *κλέπτειν.*——**ἐνεδρεύσαντες**: the Lat. *insidiare* has the same idea underlying it.——**τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι**: *from these I learn also, i. e.* besides other things. For gen., see on *ἤκουσε*

Page 138. i. 2. 5.——**νέμεται . . . βουσίν**: *is pastured by goats and cattle.* Cf. *Cyrop.* iii. 2. 20 *τί . . . ἐπεὶ ὄρη ἀγαθὰ ἔχετε, ἐθέλοιτ' ἂν ἐᾶν νέμειν ταῦτα τοὺς Ἀθηναίους*: Verg. *Aen.* xi. 319 *exercent colles, atque horum asperrima pascunt.*——**βατὰ . . . ἔσται**: *it will be passable for the pack-animals.* See on iii. 4. 49.

18. ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ: *on a level with* them. There is doubtless a play on the word (*on a level, on a par*).——**εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν**: *to the same level with us.* Cf. *Cyrop.* i. 4. 5 *εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἀφίκετο τοῖς ἥλιξι.* For const. of dat., see on ii. 6. 22.

19. τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν: found only here.——**ἀλλά**: *rather.* Cf. v. 1. 7, 7. 31. The negation implied in the preceding question naturally induces ἀλλά here.——**ἂν μή τινες . . . φαίνωνται**: *unless some brave men offer as volunteers.*

20. Ἀριστέας ὁ Χῖος: note the article, as in the case of *Ἀγασίας* 7. 9. See on iii. 1. 4.——**σύνθημα ἐποιήσαντο**: periphrasis with dependent inf., just as simple verb 2. 1.

21. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι: note the asyndeton.——**ἐκ τοῦ ἀρίστου**: *right after their breakfast.* Cf. *ἐξ ἀρίστου Hellen.* iv. 8. 18, vi. 5. 17.——**ὅπως . . . προσάξειν**: *that as much as possible it might seem that he was going to attack there.*

22. οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες: *those appointed* to go.——**ἐγρηγόρεσαν**: *kept awake.*——**ἔκαιον πυρὰ πολλά**: as a sign to their friends that they still held their position. Cf. i. 11 for the same act on the part of the Carduchians.

24. τὸ πολύ: *the main body.* See on i. 4. 13.——**τοῖς κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα**: *i. e.* the Greeks.——**τοὺς πολλούς**: the main bodies of both armies.——**ἀλλήλων**: for gen. after *ὁμοῦ*, see Gl. 518 b; G. 1149; H. 757; B. 360. The dat. is usual.——**οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα**: *i. e.* the detachments of both Greeks and barbarians that were on the heights.

Page 139.

25. οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου: see on *τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως* i. 1. 5. *οἱ μὲν πελτασταί* and *Χειρίσοφος* are part. appos.——**βάδην ταχύ**: *at a quick pace*, opp. to *δρόμῳ*. Cf. *Hellen.* v. 4. 53 *θᾶττον ἢ βάδην*.

26. τὸ ἄνω: *sc. μέρος.* Cf. *τὸ πολύ* § 24.——**ἀπέθανον . . . ἐλήφθη**: hasty flight emphasized by chiasmus.——**ταῖς μαχαίραις**: *with their cutlasses.* Cf. **τοὺς δακτυλίους** 7. 27.——**κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐποίουν**: cf. 7. 26.

27. τρόπαιον στησάμενοι: *setting up for themselves* (*i. e.* for their glory) *a trophy.*——**πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν**: see on ii. 3. 18.——**γεμούσας**: *full of.* Cf. *gemere.*

CHAPTER VII

CAPTURE OF A FORTRESS OF THE TAOCHIANS. AFTER A MARCH THROUGH THE LAND OF THE CHALYBIANS AND SCYTHENIANS THE GREEKS GET THE FIRST GLIMPSE OF THE SEA

1. ἐκ τούτων: *after these things*, or possibly, *from this region.*——**εἰς Ταόχους**: still known as *Tao.*——**εἶχον ἀνακεκομισμένοι**: in this periphrasis the stress is on *εἶχον*, lit. *in which also they kept all their stores, having brought them up.* Gl. 456 d. See on *ἔχομεν ἀνηρπακότες* i. 3. 14.

2. συνεληλυθότες ἦσαν αὐτόσε: *these were collected.* For the practically periphrastic plpf., see on *ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες* ii. 3. 10, and cf. 3. 5, 5. 15.——**οὖν**: resumptive after parenthetical remark, as i. 5. 14.——**εὐθὺς ἦκων**: *as soon as he was come.* See on *εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες* i. 9. 4. For pf. force of *ἥκω*, see on i. 4. 13.——**οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι**: *sc. αὐτοῖς, for it was not possible to stand around in a crowd.* *ἀθρόοις* is pred.——**κύκλῳ**: see on i. 5. 4.

3. καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὁπλίταις: appos. to *ὀπισθοφύλαξι.* See on i. 26.——**εἰς καλὸν ἥκετε**: *you have come in the nick of time.* Cf. *Sympos.* i. 4 *εἰς καλόν γ' ὑμῖν συντετύχηκα*, *Cyrop.* iii. 1. 8 *εἰς καιρὸν ἥκεις.*

Page 140. **——εἰ μὴ λῃψόμεθα**: prot. of monitory condition (Gl. 648 b; GMT. 447), the apod. (*οὐκ ἔστι*) referring vividly to the future (GMT. 32).——**τὸ χωρίον**: note the chiastic arrangement of the sent., and see on *ἤγγελλον* i. 7. 13.

4. τί τὸ κωλῦον εἴη εἰσελθεῖν: *what was the hindrance to entering.* Neut. ptc. for abstract noun, as 5. 20. The periphrasis has, of course, the

same const. as the simple verb (κωλύω).——**μία αὕτη πάροδος . . . ὁρᾷς**: *the only passage is that which you see.* See on i. 20.——**ὑπὲρ . . . πέτρας**: cf. *Cyrop.* vi. 3. 4 τοξεύοντες ὑπὲρ τῶν πρόσθεν, *Sympos.* 2. 11 ἐξεκυβίστα ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν.——**ὃς δ' ἂν καταληφθῇ**: see on ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ i. 3. 5.——**οὕτω διατίθεται**: *is treated thus.*——**συντετριμμένους . . . πλεύρας**: *men with legs and ribs crushed.* Cf. 5. 12, and see on ii. 6. 1.

5. ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν κωλύει: *does anything prevent?* (lit. 'anything else than nothing'). See on ii. 5. 10.——**ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου**: *ex adverso.* Cf. ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου i. 8. 23.——**εἰ μή**: *nisi*, as i. 4. 18, 5. 6.——**ὀλίγους τούτους ἀνθρώπους**: *a few men there.* For force of τούτους, see on i. 20.

6. βαλλομένους: *under fire* (getting struck with stones). Cf. 6. 12.——**ὅσον**: *about*, as iii. 4. 3.——**δασὺ πίτυσι**: see on ii. 4. 14.——**διαλειπούσαις**: *at intervals.* Cf. 8. 12.——**ἀνθ' ὧν**: *behind which* (lit. 'before which,' as viewed from the position of the speaker).——**ὡς ἡμίπλεθρον**: see on ὡς πεντακοσίους i. 2. 3.

7. πολλοί: *in great numbers* (pred.), as 3. 7, 4. 7.——**αὐτὸ ἂν . . . εἴη**: *just what would be wanted.*——**ἔνθεν**: to a point *from which.* See on ὅπου iii. 2. 34.——**μικρόν τι**: *i. e.* τὸ λοιπὸν . . . ὡς ἡμίπλεθρον § 6.——**ἣν δυνώμεθα**: *sc.* παραδραμεῖν.——**ῥᾴδιον**: *sc.* ἔσται.

8. τούτου: pred. gen. of poss. See on Τισσαφέρνους i. 1. 6.——**ἡγεμονία**: *leadership* of the line, which changed among the λοχαγοί
Page 141. from day to day.——**ὀπισθοφυλάκων**: attributive. See on ὀπισθοφύλαξιν i. 6.——**καθ' ἕνα**: *one at a time.*——**ἕκαστος**: distrib. appos.——**ὡς ἐδύνατο**: as 2. 8.

9. καὶ οὗτοι: *these also*, as καὶ τούτους i. 1. 11.——**καὶ ἄλλοι δέ**: *and others too.* See on καὶ στρατηγὸν δέ i. 1. 2.——**οὐ γὰρ ἦν**: *for it was not possible.*——**ἀσφαλῶς**: with ἑστάναι.——**πλέον ἤ**: as 2. 28. See on i. 2. 11.

10. δύο ἢ τρία βήματα: oftener καί, as 8. 21. Accus. of extent (really cogn.).——**φέροιντο**: iter. opt. Cf. φερομένων § 6, ἠνέχθη § 12.——**ἀνέχαζεν**: see on i. 16.——**ἅμαξαι πετρῶν**: gen. of description. Cf. *Cyrop.* ii. 4. 18 ἁμάξας σίτου, *Cyrop.* iv. 3. 1 ἁρμαμάξας γυναικῶν.

11. δείσας μὴ οὐ: see on i. 7. 7.——**πρῶτος παραδράμῃ**: *get by first.* For pred. adj. = adv., see on πρότερα i. 2. 25.——**οὐδὲ τὸν Ἀριστώνυμον**: *not even A.*——**χωρεῖ αὐτός**: *goes himself, i. e.* alone.

12. ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἴτυος: *takes hold of the rim of his shield.* αὐτοῦ is poss. gen. For τῆς ἴτυος (poetical word), see Gl. 510 b; G. 1099; H. 739; B. 356.——**ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς**: *aspired to reputation for valor.* For const. of gen., see on ἀντιποιεῖται ii. 1. 11.

13. εἶτα ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατερρίπτουν: *then cast themselves down after.* εἶτα as i. 2. 25. The verb is found only here.——**ὡς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτόν**: *to cast himself down.*——**ὡς κωλύσων**: see on 3. 3.

14. ᾤχοντο . . . φερόμενοι: *were borne down from the rocks.* Cf. 6. 3, iii. 5. 1, and see on i. 10. 16.

15. ὧν: for *τούτων οὕς.* Cf. *ἀμφὶ ὧν* 5. 17 and see on *ὧν*
Page 142. i. 3. 10.——**εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν**: *came to close quarters.* Cf. *εἰς χεῖρας δέχεσθαι* 3. 31.

16. πτερύγων: *flaps* (of corselet).——**σπάρτα ἐστραμμένα**: *twisted cords* as a fringe for the corselet.——**ὅσον ξυήλην**: *as long as a Spartan dagger.* Attracted from nom. into case of *μαχαίριον.*——**ἔσφαττον . . . δύναιντο**: gen. cond.——**ἀποτέμνοντες ἂν . . . ἐπορεύοντο**: *they used to cut off the heads and carry them along on the march.* For iterative force, see on i. 9. 19. Gl. 461 a; G. 1296; H. 835; B. 568.——**ὄψεσθαι ἔμελλον**: as i. 9. 28.——**ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων**: gen. of measure.——**μίαν λόγχην ἔχον**: *having* only *one lance-point,* as opp. to the Greek spear, which had a spike at the butt to fix in the ground.

17. εἵποντο ἀεί: cf. the iterative *ἂν ἐπορεύοντο* just above.——**μαχούμενοι**: *ready to fight.*——**τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν**: *the provisions they had carried up and stored in these*—construction *ἐν* with dat. for *εἰς* with accus. where emphasis is to be laid on completed action. Kr. *Spr.* 68, 12, 2. Cf. *ἐν οἷς . . . ἀνακεκομισμένοι* § 1; *οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ διαβεβηκότες* Thuc. vii. 71. 7.——**διετράφησαν**: lit. *were fed through,* reversion to independent const.——**τοῖς κτήνεσιν**: dat. of instrument.

18. τὸν Ἅρπασον: the identity of this river is a matter of dispute, as are also the territory of the **Σκυθηνοί** and the site of **Γυμνιάς**. The width given by Xen. is too great for any river of the region.——**εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων**: for const., see on i. 2. 23.——**ἐπεσιτίσαντο**: cf. i. 7. 19.

19. διὰ . . . χώρας: *through the country hostile to themselves.* *ἑαυτῶν* gen. with *πολεμίας* regarded subst. Cf. § 20, and see on *ἐκείνου* iii. 2. 5. Cf. *Hellen.* v. 2. 39 *ἀφίκετο εἰς τὴν ἑαυτῶν συμμαχίδα.* It refers to the people of *ὁ ἄρχων.* Cf. iii. 4. 41.

20. ὄθεν: = *ἐξ οὗ.* See on i. 2. 8.——**εἰ δὲ μή**: *otherwise.* See on ii. 2. 1.——**τεθνάναι ἐπηγγείλατο**: *offered himself for death, i. e.*
Page 143. wished that he might be dead. For force of pf. inf., see on 2. 10. Cf. Hom. *Od.* xvi. 107 *βουλοίμην κε τεθνάναι, I would fain be dead*; Livy xl. 10 (*me*) *perisse expetunt, they wish me to be dead.*——**ἐνέβαλλεν**: abs. *invasit.*——**αἴθειν καὶ φθείρειν**: *igni et ferro vastare.* *αἴθειν* is a poetical word. Cf. vi. 3. 19 *αἴθεσθαι.*——**τῶν Ἑλλήνων**: obj. gen. Cf. *ἑαυτοῦ* ii. 6. 19.

21. Θήχης: unfortunately the mountain which was the scene of an event so vividly and picturesquely described can not be exactly determined.

22. αὐτῶν: part. gen. dependent on *τινας,* which is obj. of both *ἀπέκτειναν* and *ἐζώγρησαν.*——**γέρρα δασειῶν βοῶν ὠμοβόεια**: *wicker-shields covered with raw ox-hides of shaggy oxen.* For *βοῶν ὠμ.*, cf. Hom. *Od.*

xiv. 101 *συῶν συβόσεια*. Here, however, *βοῶν* is necessary with *δασειῶν* and so not pleonastic. For *βοῶν* (gen. of material), cf. v. 4. 12 *γέρρα λευκῶν βοῶν δασέα*, and see on 5. 14.——**ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν**: see on i. 7. 10.

23. ἡ βοὴ . . . ἐγγύτερον: *the cry was getting louder and nearer* (adj. and adv. correlated in pred.).——**οἱ ἀεὶ ἐπιόντες**: *those who successively came up*. Cf. *τοὺς ἀεὶ βοῶντας*.——**ἔθεον δρόμῳ**: cf. i. 8. 18. Note the polysyndeton of this and the following section, which increases the vividness of the description.——**μεῖζόν τι**: *something more important* (than usual).

24. Λύκιον: cf. iii. 3. 20.——**παρεβοήθει**: *went to the rescue*, thinking the enemy were attacking. Cf. § 22.——**τάχα δή**: see on i. 8. 8.——**Θάλαττα Θάλαττα**: Rehd. cites Verg. *Aen.* iii. 523 . . . *videmus*

Italiam. Italiam primus conclamat Achates,
Italiam laeto socii clamore salutant;

also Brachmann, *Columbus*

. . . *und Land;*
Land rief es und donnert' es Land.

v. Moltke states that when he and his attendants first saw, near Samsun, the gleaming sea, "the same that drew from the Greek soldiers their celebrated Θάλαττα," they, too, broke into shouts of joy.——**παρεγγυώντων**: *passing the cry along*. Cf. i. 17.——**πάντες καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες**: *all including the rear-guards*.——**περιέβαλλον**: *embraced*.

25. ὅτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος: attraction from *παρεγγυήσαντός τινος, ὅστις δὴ ἦν, some one* (whoever he was) *starting the word along*. Cf. v. 2. 24 *ὅτου δὴ ἐνάψαντος, some one or other setting it on fire*.

26. κατέτεμνε τὰ γέρρα: *i. e.* to render them useless to the enemy. Cf. 6. 26.——**διεκελεύετο**: *sc.* *κατατέμνειν*. Cf. *παρήγγελλε* 3. 17.

27. δῶρα δόντες: cf. Lat. *dona dare*.——**ἀπὸ κοινοῦ**: *from the common stock*, as v. 1. 12.——**δαρεικούς**: see on i. 1. 9.——**τοὺς**
Page 144. **δακτυλίους**: *their rings, i. e.* the seal-rings regularly worn by the Greeks. The barbarian wished them as ornaments.——**οὗ σκηνήσουσι, ἣν πορεύσονται**: rel. of purpose. Gl. 615; G. 1442; H. 911; B. 591.——**ᾤχετο ἀπιών**: cf. § 14, 6. 3.

CHAPTER VIII

ADVANCE THROUGH THE TERRITORY OF THE MACRONES AND COLCHIANS. ARRIVAL AND STAY AT TRAPEZUS

1. ὥριζε: impf., as *ἐνέβαλλεν* in § 2, representing time of narration. See on *ἦν* i. 2. 7. Cf. Caes. *B. G.* ii. 15 *eorum fines Nervii attingebant*.——**τὴν τῶν Μακρώνων**: *sc.* *χώραν*.

2. ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν: *on* (lit. 'above') *their right* (neut.). Cf. vi. 4. 1 **ἐπὶ δεξιά**.——**οἷον χαλεπώτατον**: = **ὡς** (or **ὅτι**) **χαλεπώτατον**. The full form would be **τοιοῦτον οἷον χαλεπώτατον ἐστιν**.——**ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς**: *on the left. Terminus ex quo*, where English uses *t. in quo*. But cf. **ἐν δεξιᾷ** i. 5. 1.——**ὁ ὁρίζων**: *sc.* **ποταμός**.——**δι' οὗ**: referring to **ὁ ὁρίζων**.——**ἦν δὲ . . . πυκνοῖς δέ**: note the play on the idea of *thickness* by means of the synonymous **δασύς, παχύς, πυκνός**, *and this was thickly fringed with trees, not of large bulk, but closely packed*.——**δένδρεσι**: 3d decl. plur., as *Oec.* 4. 14, more freq. than **δένδροις** (7. 9).——**ἔκοπτον**: the purpose is clear from § 8.

3. κατ' ἀντιπέρας: as i. 1. 9.——**λίθους εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ἔρριπτον**: sarcastic. They aimed at the Greeks of course, but fell short.

4. Ἀθήνησι: locative. Cf. *Hellen.* i. 6. 1 **ἐν Ἀθήναις**.——**γιγνώσκοι τὴν φωνήν**: *understood their language*.——**ἐμὴν ταύτην πατρίδα εἶναι**: cf. 7. 4, and see on i. 20.

5. ἐρωτήσαντος: *sc.* **τοῦ ἀνδρός**.——**ἀντιτετάχαται**: Gl. 344 c; G. 701; H. 464 a; B. 226 a. Ionic pf. rare in Attic prose—only here in Xen., four times in Thuc. **χρῄζουσιν**, too, is rare in prose outside of Xen. Cf. Thuc. iii. 109. 18.

6. λέγειν ἐκέλευον: asyndeton in dialogue. Cf. **ἀπεκρίναντο**

Page 145. i. 2. 22.——**ὅτι οὐ**: *sc.* **ἔρχονται** (or **ἐρχόμεθα**) from **ἀπερχόμεθα**.

7. εἰ δοῖεν ἄν: pot. opt. in indir. ques.——**τούτων**: obj. gen.——**τὰ πιστά**: *the* (usual) *pledges*. See on i. 6. 7.——**ἔφασαν**: *sc.* **οἱ Μάκρωνες**.——**ἐπεμαρτύραντο**: *called to witness on it*. Cf. iii. 2. 4 **ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὀμόσας**.

8. συνέκοπτον: *joined in cutting down*.——**τὴν ὁδὸν ὡδοποίουν**: *worked on the road*, pleonasm as v. 1. 13, 3. 1. See on 7. 22.——**ὡς διαβιβάσοντες**: *with a view to getting them across* (the river and so out of their territory).——**ἐν μέσοις τοῖς Ἕλλησι**: see on **μέσου τοῦ παραδείσου** i. 2. 7.——**κατέστησαν**: *placed them*, as i. 10. 10.

9. ἀντιπαρετάξαντο φάλαγγα: *arrayed themselves in phalanx against*. Cf. Thuc. iii. 78. 1 **κύκλον ταξάμενοι**. For the comp., cf. **ἀντιπαρῆσαν** 3. 17.——**ἄξοντες**: abs., as § 12.——**βουλεύσασθαι συλλεγεῖσιν**: *to come together and deliberate*.——**ὅπως . . . ἀγωνιοῦνται**: cf. 6. 7, and see on i. 1. 4.

10. παύσαντας . . . ποιῆσαι: *to abandon the phalanx and form companies in column*. Cf. 2. 11, 3. 17.——**ἡ μὲν γάρ**: transition to dir. disc.——**διασπασθήσεται**: *will be drawn apart*, as i. 5. 9, iii. 4. 20.——**τῇ μέν, τῇ δέ**: see on iii. 1. 12.

11. ἔπειτα: second ground for the proposal.——**ἐπὶ πολλοὺς τεταγμένοι**: *drawn up many deep*. Cf. **ἐπὶ λεπτὸν τετάχθαι** *Cyrop.* v. 4. 46; **ἐπ' ἀσπίδας . . . εἴκοσι ἐτάξαντο** Thuc. iv. 93. 4. More freq. is **ἐπί** with gen., as **ἐπ' ὀλίγων** just below; hence some editors emend to **πολλῶν**.——**περιτ-**

τεύσουσιν ἡμῶν: *they will outnumber (i. e. outflank) us.* Gen. after verb implying comparison.——τοῖς περιττοῖς . . . βούλωνται: *will make whatever use they please of the surplus.* See on i. 3. 18.——οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστόν: *it would be no wonder.* Opt. with ἄν attracted in form to second prot. For double prot., see GMT. 510.——ἅθρόων: *in a mass*, pred. with ἐμπεσόντων.——εἰ δὲ . . . ἔσται: monitory cond. See on 6. 9.

12. ὀρθίους . . . ποιησαμένους: *sc. ἡμᾶς.* Note the mid. as against ὀρθίους ποιῆσαι § 10.——τοσοῦτον . . . τοῖς λόχοις: *cover so*
Page 146. *much ground with the companies having intervals between them.*——ὅσον . . . κεράτων: *that the outer companies shall be beyond the enemy's wings.* For const. of ὅσον with inf., see on 4. 3. Note the emphatic position of ἔξω.——οἱ ἔσχατοι λόχοι: part. appos. to subj. of ἐσόμεθα.——οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν: *the strongest of us.* Possibly the λογαγοί, as most explain, though Vollbrecht's explanation, "the front men of a λόχος were the strongest," seems preferable.——ἄξει: absolute. Cf. ἄξοντες § 9.

13. τὸ διαλεῖπον: *the interval.* Cf. διαλιπόντας § 12, and τὸ διέχον iii. 4. 22.——ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν: see on 3. 28.——διακόψαι: note the chiasmus with εἰσελθεῖν.——ἄν τε . . ., ἤν τε . . .: anaphora.——οὐδεὶς μηκέτι μείνῃ: *not one will any longer stand his ground.* For const., see on οὐκέτι μὴ δύνηται ii. 2. 12. Gl. 489 a.

14. ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ: the position of Cheirisophus, where the conference had taken place.——ἐμποδὼν τὸ μὴ εἶναι: *in the way of our being.* Gl. 573; G. 1551; H. 961 a; B. 643. See on iii. 5. 11.——πάλαι σπεύδομεν: see on i. 4. 12.——ὠμοὺς καταφαγεῖν: *eat them up raw*, proverbial expression. Cf. Hom. *Il.* iv. 35 ὠμὸν βεβρώθοις Πρίαμον. For force of κατα-, cf. καθηδυπάθησα i. 3. 3; κατεδαπανήσαμεν ii. 2. 11.

15. ἐν ταῖς χώραις: *in their places.*——ἀμφὶ τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα: cf. 7. 22.——σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν: for the pleonastic σχεδόν, cf. σχεδὸν ἀμφὶ v. 3. 25; σχεδὸν περὶ *Hellen.* vi. 1. 2. For εἰς, *to the number of*, see on i. 2. 3. The full number of a company was 100, so that the total here (80 companies) would be about 8,000.——τριχῇ ἐποιήσαντο: *arranged in three divisions.*——τοῦ εὐωνύμου ἔξω: *i. e.* outside of the left of the Greek hoplites. ἔξω is understood also with τοῦ δεξιοῦ.

16. ἔξω γενόμενοι: *getting outside of, i. e.* for the purpose
Page 147. of outflanking them.

17. ἀντιπαραθέοντες: *i. e.* running along on either flank to confront the Greeks and prevent the outflanking. Cf. ἀντιπαρῆσαν 3. 17.——κενὸν ἐποίησαν: *left bare.*

18. οἱ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν πεltασταί: *sc.* ὁπλιτικόν, *at (i. e. belonging to) the Arcadian hoplite-corps* in the center.——ὧν: plur. because the antecedent is collective.——φεύγειν: *sc.* τοὺς πολεμίους.

19. ὡς ἤρξαντο θεῖν: *sc. οἱ πελτασταί.*——**ἄλλος ἄλλῃ**: cf. ἄλλοι ἄλλως i. 6. 11.——**ἐτράπετο**: agrees with subj. in appos. as ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει ii. 1. 15.——**ἐν πολλαῖς . . . πολλὰ ἐχούσαις**: cf. 4. 7. πολλά is pred., as πολλῶν there.

20. τὰ μὲν ἄλλα: *in other respects*, opposed to τὰ δὲ σμήνη.——**οὐδὲν ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν**: *there was nothing which really excited surprise.* The copula (ἦν) is generally omitted with οὐδὲν ὅ τι and οὐδείς (ὅς) ὅστις. For the καί (lit. 'even'), see on ἡνίκα καί iii. 5. 18, and cf. Thuc. iv. 48. 5 οὐ γὰρ ἔτι ἦν ὑπόλοιπον τῶν ἑτέρων ὅ τι καὶ ἀξιόλογον.——**τῶν κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον**: part. gen. Cf. τῶν πώλων λαμβάνει 5. 35.——**ἄφρονες ἐγίγνοντο**: cf. Plin. *N. H.* xxi. 13 *aliud genus in eodem Ponti situ, gente Sannorum mellis, quod ab insania, quam gignit, maenomenon vocant. Id existimatur contrahi flore rhododendri, quo scatent silvae.* As to the general effects here described, Tozer says: "This is now known to have been due to the moisture that distils from the flowers of the *Azalea Pontica*, which grows in profusion in the valleys at the back of Trebizond. This is poisonous and affects the honey of the bees that feed upon it." (*Hist. of Anc. Geog.*, p. 118.) For further discussion and the literature of the subject, see Vollbrecht *ad locum* (Appendix).——**κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς**: *they had diarrhoea* (the verb impers.).——**ἐώκεσαν**: belongs with all three dats.——**πολύ**: *sc.* ἐδηδοκότες.——**ἀποθνῄσκουσιν**: (were like to) *men in death-agony.*

21. ὥσπερ τροπῆς γεγενημένης: see on ὥσπερ i. 3. 16.——**ἀμφὶ τὴν αὐτήν που ὥραν**: *somewhere about the same hour.* Cf. vi. 2. 17 κατὰ μέσον που τῆς Θρᾴκης. See on pleonastic σχεδόν § 15.——**ἀνεφρόνουν**: *began to come to their senses.* Only here in classical authors. For **ἀνα-**, see on **ἀναπνεῦσαι** i. 2. 3.——**τρίτῃ καὶ τετάρτῃ**: cf. δύο ἢ τρία 7. 10.——**ἀνίσταντο**: opp. to ἔκειντο just above.——**ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας**: *i. e.* just as if they had been drugged.

22. Τραπεζοῦντα: now Trebizond (on the Black Sea).——**οἰκουμένην**: *situated.* Cf. i. 4. 1.——**ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ**: *on the Eux-*

Page 148. *ine Sea.* Cf. ἐν § 28, iii. 2, 2, v. 6. 15, 19.——**Σινωπέων**: *the people of Sinope*, a Milesian colony in Paphlagonia.

23. ἐντεῦθεν ὁρμώμενοι: *i. e.* with this as a basis of operations. See on i. 1. 9.——**ἐδέξαντο**: *i. e.* individually. Generally some such modifier as τῇ πόλει (ἄστει) or εἰς τὴν πόλιν is added. Cf. εἰς τὰς στέγας δέξασθαι v. 5. 20.——**ξένια**: as *guest-gifts.*

24. συνδιεπράττοντο . . . Κόλχων: *helped negotiate in behalf of the neighboring Colchians.*——**ἦλθον**: = ἐκομίσθησαν (of things). Cf. v. 5. 2 ξένια ἃ ἦκε παρὰ Τιβαρηνῶν, *Hellen.* vii. 2. 23 οἴκοθεν ἄλλα ἐλθόντα (*i. e.* ἐπιτήδεια).

25. ἦν ηὔξαντο: see on iii. 2. 9.——**ἱκανοὶ ἀποθῦσαι**: see on i. 3. 6, iii.

1. 23.——**τῷ Διὶ σωτήρια**: Cobet's emendation for *σωτῆρι* is generally adopted. Cf. iii. 2. 9. For const., see on *τὰ Λύκαια ἔθυσε* i. 2. 10.——**ἡγεμόσυνα**: *sc. ἱερά, i. e. thank-offerings for safe conduct* to *Ἡρακλῆς ἡγεμών* (vi. 2. 15, 5. 26), the especial patron of toilworn wanderers. The word is found only here.——**ἐποίησαν ἀγῶνα**: cf. *ἀγῶνα ἔθηκε* i. 2. 10. ——**ἔφυγε οἴκοθεν**: *had become an exile from home.* One guilty of homicide, even unintentional, had to leave his fatherland until he could effect a reconciliation with the relations of the slain man. See Class. Dict. *s. v. φόνος*.——**ἄκων**: *accidentally* (adj. as adv.).——**κατακανών**: see on i. 6. 2. ——**ξυλῇ πατάξας**: describing manner of *κατακανών*.——**ἐπιμεληθῆναι, προστατῆσαι**: infs. of purpose after *εἵλοντο*.

26. τὰ δέρματα: *the hides* of the victims, offered as prizes in athletic contests already in Hom. *Il.* xxii. 159.——**ἡγεῖσθαι**: *viam praeire.*——**τὸν δρόμον**: *the race-course.* Cf. *ἱππόδρομος* i. 8. 20.——**πεποιηκὼς εἴη**: see on *λελοιπὼς εἴη* i. 2. 21.——**οὗπερ**: *just where.* Cf. *ἔνθαπερ* § 25.——**κάλλιστος τρέχειν**: *fairest for running.* Cf. vii. 1. 24 *χωρίον οἷον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαι.* For const., cf. *ἱκανοὶ ἀποθῦσαι* § 25.——**ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ**: neut. adj. as subst.——**οὕτως**: placed after adj. for emphasis. Cf. v. 8. 13 *τί μέγα ἂν οὕτως ἔπαθον.*——**μᾶλλόν τι ἀνιάσεται**: *will hurt himself rather more*, and so will be more careful to keep from being thrown.

27. ἠγωνίζοντο στάδιον: *ran a furlong race, i. e.* a single length of the course. Cogn. accus., as also *δόλιχον, πάλην*, etc. *στάδιον, stade, furlong* (600 Greek feet), the length of the race-course at Olym-
Page 149. pia and elsewhere, and so here, *course.*——**τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλεῖστοι**: part. appos. with *παῖδες*.——**δόλιχον**: *long race*, varying from 6 to 24 stadia.——**πυγμήν**: *pugnus, boxing.*——**παγκράτιον**: *pancratium*, a combination of *πάλη* and *πυγμή*. See Class. Dict. *s. v.* The text is corrupt at this point, a word or words having fallen out.——**κατέβησαν**: cf. *descendere in certamen, in arenam.*——**ἅτε θεωμένων**: see on 2. 13.

28. αὐτούς: *i. e.* the horses, obj. of the ptcs.——**κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς**: *down the incline* as vi. 5. 31. Cf. *κατὰ πρανοῦς* i. 5. 8.——**ἐλάσαντας**: subord. to *ἀποστρέψαντας . . . ἄγειν*. See on *ὑπολαβών* i. 1. 7.——**ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ**: *at the sea.* See on *ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ* § 22.——**τὸν βωμόν**: *the altar* as starting-point, because the games were held in honor of the gods and on the mound of turf or earth the sacrifices were prob. offered.——**ἐκυλινδοῦντο**: *i. e.* the riders probably, not the horses, as the insertion of *οἱ ἵπποι* in the next clause would seem to indicate.——**πρὸς τὸ . . . ὄρθιον**: cf. 2. 3.

VOCABULARY

abs. . . . . absolute, absolutely.
acc. . . . . accusative.
act. . . . . active, actively.
adj. . . . adjective, adjectively.
adv. . . . adverb, adverbial, adverbially.
antec. . . . antecedent.
aor. . . . . aorist.
art. . . . . article.
artic. . . . articular.
attrib. . . . attributive.
cf. . . . . *confer*, compare.
cogn. . . . cognate.
comp. . . . comparative.
cond. . . . condition, conditional.
conj. . . . conjunction.
contr. . . . contracted, contraction.
dat. . . . dative.
def. . . . . definite.
dem. . . . demonstrative.
dep. . . . deponent.
dim. . . . diminutive.
dir. . . . . direct.
e. g. . . . for example.
encl. . . . enclitic.
Eng. . . . English.
esp. . . . . especially.
etc. . . . . and so forth.
f., ff. . . . following (after numbers).
fem. . . . feminine.
fut. . . . . future.
gen. . . . genitive.
i. e. . . . . that is.
impers. . . impersonal, impersonally.
impf. . . . imperfect.
imv. . . . imperative.
ind. . . . indirect.
indef. . . . indefinite.
indic. . . . indicative.
inf. . . . . infinitive.
interr. . . . interrogative.
intr., intrans. intransitive.
Lat. . . . Latin.
lit. . . . . literally.
masc. . . . masculine.
mid. . . . middle.
neg. . . . negative.
neut. . . . neuter.
nom. . . . nominative.
obj. . . . . object, objective.
opt. . . . optative.
orig. . . . originally.
p., pp. . . . page, pages.
part. gen. . partitive genitive.
part. . . . participle.
pass. . . . passive.
perf. . . . perfect.
pers. . . . person, personal.
pf. . . . . perfect.
pl. . . . . plural.
plpf., plupf. . pluperfect.
pos. . . . . position.
pot. . . . potential.
pred. . . . predicate.
prep. . . . preposition.
pron. . . . pronoun.
ptc. . . . . participle.
quest. . . . question.
q. v. . . . which see.
reflex. . . . reflexive.
rel. . . . . relative.
sc. . . . . *scilicet*, referring to something to be supplied.
sing., sg. . . singular.
subj. . . . subject, subjunctive.
subst. . . . substantive, substantively.
superl. . . . superlative.
s. v. . . . . *sub voce*, under the word.
trans. . . . transitive, transitively.
voc. . . . . vocative.
The radical sign ($\surd$) . . root.

PREFATORY NOTE TO VOCABULARY

In the preparation of the Vocabulary the existing dictionaries of the *Anabasis* have been freely used; but every passage cited has been inspected and passed upon separately, and independent collections have been made for all but the rarer words. Effort has been made to cite all passages of the first four books in which the less common words occur, and to illustrate by copious references the uses of those which recur most frequently. To some readers the citations may seem too numerous; but they have been multiplied as an aid to the teacher, who may often find it convenient to have the relative frequency of Xenophon's idioms thus indicated.

The etymological relations of Greek words are shown, as a rule, only in cases where those relations can be readily perceived by a student whose attainments in languages do not go beyond English and Latin. For the sake of simplicity, though perhaps at the cost of exactness, the relation of one Greek word to another has been indicated, in most instances, not by reference to a common root, but by giving the kindred form itself, especially when it is occurs in the *Anabasis*.

English words derived from the Greek have been quoted freely in the hope that they may help the student to remem-

ber his vocabulary—one of the beginner's most serious difficulties. Special notice has been given to Xenophon's poetic and un-Attic words and idioms.

I am glad to be able to call attention to the true distinction between ἱερά and σφάγια—a distinction laid down by Stengel years ago, and too long neglected by editors of the *Anabasis*—and to register a protest against the common interpretation of πέλτη in i. 10. 12.

In preparing the longer articles, especially those on the particles, prepositions, and conjunctions, I have found Joost's *Sprachgebrauch Xenophons in der Anabasis* very helpful, and I owe much also to Vollbrecht's *Wörterbuch*. No American vocabulary of the *Anabasis* could fail to be influenced for the better by the admirable dictionary of White and Morgan.

To give credit for the individual illustrations seems unnecessary, for the reason that almost all are drawn from the encyclopædic works familiar to students of Greek antiquities — Daremberg and Saglio, Baumeister, Smith, Roscher, Guhl and Koner, etc. Special acknowledgments, however, are due to Professor Charles Burton Gulick, who kindly permitted the use of several cuts originally prepared for his *Life of the Ancient Greeks*.

CAMPBELL BONNER.

NASHVILLE, TENNESSEE.

VOCABULARY

A

ἀ-, inseparable prefix, (1) *privative*, appears before vowels in the form **ἀν-**, and gives a negative meaning to the word to which it is prefixed, like Lat. *in-*, Eng. *un-*. (2) *copulative*, expresses accompaniment or union, cf. **ἀκόλουθος**. Its older form **ἀ-** appears in **ἅπας**, **ἀθρόος**.

ἄβατος, *ον* (**βατός**), *untrodden*, esp. of mountains or rough country, *impassable*, iii. 4. 49, iv. 1. 20, 6. 17.

Ἀβροκόμᾱς, *ā* (Doric gen.), *Abrocomas*, satrap of Phoenicia, in command of one of the four divisions of Artaxerxes' army, i. 7. 12. Mentioned as an enemy of Cyrus, i. 3. 20. His Greek mercenaries deserted to Cyrus, i. 4. 3. He failed to defend the Cilician Pass, i. 4. 5, but burned the boats on the Euphrates in order to check the advance of Cyrus, i. 4. 18. He joined the king too late for the battle of Cunaxa, i. 7. 12.

Ἄβῡδος, *ου, ἡ*, i. 1. 9. *Abȳdus*, a city of the Troad, on the Asiatic side of the Hellespont, where the strait is narrowest. Xerxes built his bridge at this point, and here Leander swam the Hellespont to visit Hero.

ἀγαθός, *ή, όν*, *good*, a general term for moral or physical excellence. Of soldiers, with reference to their profession, *brave*, *able*, i. 9. 14, ii. 5. 19, iii. 2. 11, iv. 1. 18, 2. 23. In the phrase **καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθός** (see **καλός**) it denotes noble qualities of any kind. Of things, *useful*, *advantageous*, ii. 1. 12, iii. 1. 38, iv. 4. 9; *fertile* (of land), ii. 4. 22; *favorable* (of a dream), iii. 1. 12. Neuter as subst., in the sing. *a good*, *an advantage*, ii. 5. 8, iii. 1. 45; in the plural, what is serviceable to a person, *benefits*, iv. 3. 13, *resources*, *property*, ii. 1. 12, esp. of the necessities of life, *provisions*, etc., iii. 1. 20, 5. 1, iv. 6. 27. Phrases, where the translation varies according to the meaning of the verb, **ἀγαθόν τι ποιεῖν τινα**, *do one a service*, i. 9. 11; **ἀγαθόν τι εὑρίσκεσθαι**, *obtain a favor* or *indulgence*, ii. 1. 8; **ἀγαθόν τι βουλεύεσθαι**, *take good counsel*, *determine upon a good plan*, iii. 1. 34; **ἀγαθόν τι ἐξηγεῖσθαι**, *give good guidance*, iv. 5. 28.

ἀγάλλομαι, only pres. and impf., *delight in*, *take pride in*, with causal dative, or **ἐπί** with dative, ii. 6. 26.

ἄγαμαι, aor. **ἠγάσθην**, *admire*, i. 1. 9, *think highly of*, **ἑαυτούς**, i. 9. 29.

Ἀγασίᾱς, *ου, ὁ*, *Agasias*, an Arcadian of Stymphālus, captain of hoplites, shows bravery as a member of a volunteer party, iv. 1. 27, and in the attack on a fortress of the Taochi, iv. 7. 9, 11. See also iii. 1. 31.

ἀγαστός, *ή, όν* (verbal from **ἄγαμαι**), *admirable*, *worthy of admiration* or *praise*, i. 9. 24.

ἀγγελῆ, *ᾶς, ἡ*, *message*, *news*, ii. 3. 19.

ἀγγέλλω, ἀγγελῶ, ἤγγειλα, ἤγγελκα, ἤγγελμαι, ἠγγέλθην, *report, announce, give news*, i. 3. 21, 7. 13; with predicate participle, ii. 3. 19.

ἄγγελος, ου, ὁ, *messenger*, i. 2. 21, ii. 1. 5; heralds (κήρυκες) are called ἄγγελοι, ii. 3. 3, cf. § 1. (Cf. *angel.*)

ἀγείρω, ἤγειρα, *assemble, collect*, ii. 3. 19.

ἀγένειος, ον (γένειον, *beard*, γένυς, *jaw*), *beardless*, ii. 6. 28.

Ἀγίας, ου, ὁ, *Agias*, an Arcadian, one of the five Greek generals treacherously seized and put to death by Tissaphernes, ii. 5. 31, 6. 30.

ἄγκος, ους, τό (properly *bend, hollow*, cf. ἀγκών, *elbow*), *valley, glen*, iv. 1. 7.

ἄγκῦρα, ᾱς, ἡ (cf. ἄγκος), *anchor*, iii. 5. 10.

ἀγνοέω, ἀγνοήσω, etc. (√γνο, cf. γιγνώσκω), Lat. *ignoro, not know, not understand, be ignorant*, with ind. quest., iv. 5. 7.

ἀγνωμοσύνη, ης, ἡ (cf. ἀγνοέω), *want of knowledge* or *sense*, plur. *misunderstandings*, ii. 5. 6.

ἀγορᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ (properly *assembly*, from ἀγείρω), *market-place, market*, i. 2. 18, 3. 14, ii. 5. 30. ἀμφὶ ἀγορὰν πλήθουσαν, *about the time when the market was crowded with buyers, the forenoon*, i. 8. 1, ii. 1. 7. ἀγορὰν παρέχειν, *provide a market, offer supplies for sale*, ii. 3. 24, 26 f., 4. 5, iii. 1. 2, 2. 20, iv. 8. 23.

ἀγοράζω, ἀγοράσω, etc. (ἀγορά), *be in market, go to market*, and hence *purchase*, so i. 5. 10; middle i. 3. 14.

ἄγριος, ᾱ, ον (ἀγρός, Lat. *ager*), *living in the fields, wild*, i. 2. 7, 5. 2.

ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον, ἦχα, ἦγμαι, ἤχθην, *set in motion, drive, lead*, of animals, iv. 5. 36; of men, ii. 4. 18, iv. 3. 13; esp. of a commander leading his troops, i. 3. 5, ii. 1. 11, iv. 3. 17; in this sense often with the object omitted, i. 3. 21, 5. 14, ii. 2. 16, iv. 1. 17; of burdens, *carry, convey*, i. 5. 5, 7. 20, 9. 27, iii. 2. 27. Intransitive: of troops, *march*, iv. 8. 9, 12; of a road, *lead, go*, iii. 5. 15, iv. 3. 5. Phrases: ἄγε δή, *come now! well*, —; φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν, *plunder*, the former verb having reference to articles carried, the latter to captive men and animals, ii. 6. 5; ἄγειν ἐπὶ γάμῳ, *take with one as wife*, ii. 4. 8; εἰρήνην ἄγειν, ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν, *be at peace, enjoy quiet*, ii. 6. 6, iii. 1. 14.

ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ (ἄγω), originally *gathering, assembly*, then *contest, games* held at an assembly, i. 2. 10, iii. 2. 15, iv. 8. 25.

ἀγωνίζομαι, ἀγωνιοῦμαι, etc. (ἀγών), *contend* in a game, iv. 8. 27 (with cogn. acc.), then in a general sense, *strive, contend, struggle*, iii. 1. 16, cf. iv. 8. 9; for an object, περί τινος, iii. 1. 43.

ἀγωνοθέτης, ου, ὁ (ἀγών, τίθημι), *manager of a contest, umpire*, iii. 1. 21.

ἄδειπνος, ον, without the δεῖπνον, *dinnerless*, i. 10. 19, iv. 5. 21.

ἀδελφός, οῦ ὁ (ἀ- copulative, δελφύς, *uterus*), *brother*, i. 1. 3, 7. 9, etc.

ἀδεῶς, adv. (adj. ἀδεής, cf. δείδω), *without fear, fearlessly*, i. 9. 13.

ἀδιάβατος, ον (διαβαίνω), *that can not be crossed* without boats, *not fordable*, ii. 1. 11, iii. 1. 2.

ἀδικέω, ἀδικήσω, etc. (ἄδικος), *be unjust*, hence *do injustice, do wrong*, ii. 6. 20, 21; with acc. of the person, ii. 5. 3, and cogn. acc. of the injury done, i. 9. 13. ii. 6. 27; both together, i. 6. 7; *harm, injure*, i. 4. 9, ii. 3. 23. Pass. *be wronged, suffer wrong* or *injury*, with cogn. acc. retained, i. 6. 7, 8, cf. i. 3. 10. Pres. with perfect meaning, *have done wrong, be in*

the wrong, i. 5. 11, so in pass. i. 3. 9, 6. 7.

ἀδικίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (δίκη), *injustice, wrong-doing*, ii. 6. 18.

ἄδικος, ον (δίκη), *unjust, unprincipled*, ii. 6. 25, περί τινα, i. 6. 8. As subst. ὁ ἄδικος, *wrong-doer*, i. 9. 13, τὸ ἄδικον, *injustice*, i. 9. 16.

ἀδόλως, adv. (δόλος, *deceit, guile*), *without deceit* or *treachery*, used esp. in the language of treaties and solemn agreements, ii. 2. 8, 3. 26, iii. 2. 24.

ἀδύνατος, ον (δύναμαι), *impossible, impracticable*, ii. 4. 6, iii. 5. 12, iv. 6. 13.

ᾄδω, ᾄσομαι, ᾖσα, ᾔσθην (Attic for ἀείδω), *sing*, iv. 7. 16, with cogn. acc. iv. 3. 27.

ἀεί (also αἰεί, the older spelling), *always*, of a regular custom, i. 9. 19; *continuously, incessantly*, iv. 7. 23, οἱ ἀεὶ βοῶντες; of an action that occurs or may occur at intervals of indefinite length, *from time to time, any time, every time*, iii. 2. 31, 38, iv. 1. 7, 5. 32, 7. 23, οἱ ἀεὶ ἐπιόντες.

ἀετός, οῦ, ὁ, *eagle*, i. 10. 12.

ἄθεος, ον (θεός), *godless, impious*, ii. 5. 39. (Cf. Eng. *atheist*.)

Ἀθῆναι, ῶν, αἱ (city of Athena, Ἀθηνᾶ), *Athens*, the capital of Attica, situated in the lower part of the plain of the Cephissus river, five miles from its seaport, Piraeus, with which it was connected by the "long walls." The ancient city grew up about the Acropolis, a precipitous rock rising some 250 feet above the plain. This was in the most prosperous period of the history of Athens the site of many splendid buildings. The most famous of them was the Parthenon, a temple of Athena. The population of Athens in its flourishing period is estimated at from 180,000 to 200,000. iii. 1. 5, 2. 11.

Ἀθηναῖος, ᾱ, ον (Ἀθῆναι), *of Athens, Athenian*; as subst. ὁ Ἀθηναῖος, *the Athenian*, i. 8. 15, ii. 1. 11, iii. 1. 4, iv. 6. 16.

Ἀθήνησι, adv. (locative of Ἀθῆναι), *at Athens*, iv. 8. 4.

ἆθλον, ου, τό (cf. ἆθλος, *contest*, Eng. *athlete*), *prize* of an athletic contest, i. 2. 10; *prize* in general, iii. 1. 21.

ἀθροίζω (also ἀθροΐζω), ἀθροίσω, etc. (ἄθροος), *collect, assemble*, i. 1. 6, 2. 1, 10. 5; in the middle, *muster*, i. 1. 2, 9. 7.

ἄθροος, ᾱ, ον (ἀ- copulative, θροος, *noise*, so orig. *making a noise together*), *together, all together, in a body*, i. 10. 13, iv. 6. 13, 7. 8.

ἀθῡμέω, ήσω, etc. (ἄθῡμος), *be disheartened, discouraged, despondent*, iii. 2. 18, 4. 12, 5. 3.

ἀθῡμητέον (verbal from ἀθῡμέω), οὐκ ἀθυμητέον, *one must not lose courage*, iii. 2. 23.

ἀθῡμίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (ἄθυμος), *dejection, despondency, discouragement*, iii. 2. 8, 3. 11, iv. 3. 7, 8. 10, 21.

ἄθῡμος, ον (θῡμός, *spirit, courage*), *spiritless, dispirited, disheartened*, iii. 1. 36, comp. i. 4. 9.

ἀθύμως, adv. (ἄθυμος), *in a spiritless manner, dejectedly*, iii. 1. 40; ἀθύμως ἔχειν = ἀθυμεῖν, iii. 1. 3.

Αἰγύπτιος, ᾱ, ον (Αἴγυπτος), *Egyptian*, ii. 1. 6; as subst., i. 4. 2, 8. 9, ii. 5. 13.

Αἴγυπτος, ου, ἡ, *Egypt*. By Egypt the Greeks understood the narrow valley of the Nile from Syene at the first cataract (the modern Assuan) to the mouth of the river. The country was conquered by Cambyses, son of the elder Cyrus, in 525 B. C., but revolted against the Persian rule in 414. ii. 1. 14.

αἰδέομαι, αἰδέσομαι, ᾐδεσμαι, ᾐδέσθην (αἰδώς), *feel shame before, regard with religious awe, reverence, respect the memory of*, iii. 2. 4, 5.

αἰδήμων, *ον*, gen. *ονος* (*αἰδέομαι*), *feeling shame* or *reverence, respectful*, superl. *αἰδημονέστατος*, i. 9. 5.

αἰδοῖον, *ου*, *τὸ* (*αἰδώς*), mostly in plural, *αἰδοῖα*, *parts of shame, private parts*, iv. 3. 12.

αἰδώς, *οῦς*, *ἡ*, *reverence, respect*, ii, 6. 19.

αἰεί, see *ἀεί*.

αἰετός, see *ἀετός*.

αἴθω, only pres. and imperf. (poetic word), *burn, set fire to*, iv. 7. 20.

αἰκίζω, rare in active; as dep. *αἰκίζομαι*, *αἰκιοῦμαι*, etc., *maltreat, outrage, torture, mutilate*, iii. 1. 18, 4. 5; passive, ii. 6. 29.

Αἰνείᾱς, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Aenēas*, a captain from Stymphālus in Arcadia, iv. 7. 13.

Αἰνιᾶνες, *οἱ*, *Aenianians*, a people inhabiting the northern slopes of Mt. Oeta and the upper, or southern, part of the valley of the Sperchēus river. Their territory was in later times considered a part of Thessaly, i. 2. 6.

αἴξ, *αἰγός*, *ἡ*, *goat*, iii. 5. 9, iv. 5. 25, 6. 17.

αἱρετέος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, verbal adj. (*αἱρέω*), *that must be taken*, iv. 7. 3.

αἱρετός, *ή*, *όν* (*αἱρέω*), *chosen*, *οἱ αἱρετοί*, *committee, representatives, deputies*, i. 3. 21.

αἱρέω, *αἱρήσω*, *εἷλον*, *ἧρηκα*, *ἧρημαι*, *ἡρέθην*, *take, catch, seize, capture*, of persons and things (esp. towns and fortified places), i. 4. 8, 6. 2, iii. 4. 5, iv. 2. 13, 7. 12. Middle, *take for oneself, choose, prefer*, of persons or things, i. 3. 5, 7. 3, 4, 9. 9, ii. 6. 6, 11, iii. 4. 42; with inf. expressing a course of action, ii. 6. 6, iii. 4. 42; hence *elect*, i. 3. 14, ii. 2. 5, iii. 1. 46, with inf. of purpose, iv. 8. 25. Passive in this sense, iii. 1. 46, 47, 2. 1.

αἴρω, *ἀρῶ*, *ἦρα*, *ἦρκα*, *ἦρμαι*, *ἤρθην*, *lift, raise*, i. 5. 3.

αἰσθάνομαι, *αἰσθήσομαι*, *ᾐσθόμην*, *ᾔσθημαι*, *perceive, become aware of, observe*, with obj. acc., i. 1. 8, ii. 6. 25; obj. to be supplied from the context, i. 8. 22, iv. 1. 7, 3. 33; with a participial clause, i. 4. 16, 9. 31, ii. 5. 4, iv. 6. 22; with a *ὅτι* clause or ind. quest., i. 2. 21, 10. 5, iii. 1. 40.

αἴσθησις, *εως*, *ἡ* (*αἰσθάνομαι*), *perception, observation*, phrase *αἴσθησιν παρέχειν*, *afford observation, attract attention*, iv. 6. 13.

Αἰσχίνης, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Aeschines*, an Acarnanian, leader of the Arcadian peltasts under Cheirisophus, iv. 3. 22, 8. 18.

αἰσχρός, *ά*, *όν* (*αἶσχος*, *shame, disgrace*), *shameful, disgraceful, base*, i. 9. 3, ii. 5. 20, iv. 6. 14.

αἰσχρῶς, adv. (*αἰσχρός*), *shamefully, ignominiously*, iii. 1. 43.

αἰσχύνη, *ης*, *ἡ* (*αἶσχος*), *shame*, ii. 3. 11; *disgrace, dishonor*, ii. 6. 6; with adnominal gen., *αἰσχύνη τινός*, *a feeling of shame before one*, iii. 1. 10.

αἰσχύνω, *αἰσχυνῶ*, *ᾔσχυνα*, *ᾐσχύνθην* (cf. *αἶσχος*), *shame, dishonor*, generally in middle, with passive aorist, *be* or *feel ashamed*, used absolutely or with acc. of the person before whom shame is felt, i. 3. 10, 7. 4, ii. 3. 22, 5. 39; *stand in awe of*, ii. 6. 19.

αἰτέω, *αἰτήσω*, etc., *ask, demand*, with accusative of thing, iii. 1. 28, with two accs., one of person, one of thing, i. 1. 10, 3. 14, iii. 4. 2; with acc. of thing and *παρά* with gen. of the person, i. 3. 16; middle, *ask for oneself, request as a favor, obtain by entreaty* (like Lat. *impetrare*), with accusatives, like the active, ii. 3. 19; in ii. 3. 18 with inf. and *παρά* with genitive.

αἰτιάομαι, *αἰτιάσομαι*, etc. (*αἰτία*, *charge, blame*), *blame, censure, find fault with*, iii. 3. 12; with acc. of person and causal clause

introduced by ὅτι, iii. 1. 7, 3. 11, iv. 1. 19; *accuse of, charge with,* with acc. of person and inf., i. 2. 20.

αἴτιος, ᾱ, ον (cf. αἰτέω), *causing* or *occasioning* anything, *responsible,* i. 4. 15, with gen. of thing caused, ii. 5. 28; as subst., τὸ αἴτιον, *the cause,* iv. 1. 17.

αἰχμάλωτος, ον (αἰχμή, *spear,* ἁλίσκομαι), literally, *taken by the spear,* then in general, *captured, captive,* of persons or things, iii. 3. 19, iv. 1. 12, 7. 26; as subst. οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι, *the captives, prisoners,* iv. 8. 27; τὰ αἰχμάλωτα, *booty* in general, persons and things, iv. 1. 13.

Ἀκαρνάν, ᾶνος, ὁ, *Acarnanian,* iv. 8. 18, an inhabitant of Acarnania, a district of western Greece bounded on the north by the gulf of Ambracia, on the east by Aetolia, and on the south and west by the Ionian sea.

ἄκαυστος, ον (ἀ- priv., καίω), *unburned, not burned,* iii. 5. 13.

ἀκήρυκτος, ον (ἀ- priv., κῆρυξ), *not proclaimed by a herald, without the intervention of heralds,* πόλεμος ἀκήρυκτος, a war in which no overtures of peace are received, *truceless, irreconcilable war, war to the bitter end,* iii. 3. 5.

Fig. 1.

ἀκινάκης, ου, ὁ (Persian word), *a short sword* or *dagger* peculiar to the Persians, Medes, and Scythians. It was worn at the belt and was often richly ornamented. Mentioned as a gift of honor at the Persian court, i. 2. 27, cf. 8. 29. See Fig. 1, which shows a Persian foot-soldier as represented in the sculptures at Persepolis.

ἀκινδύνως, adv. (ἀ- priv., κίνδυνος), *without danger, in safety,* ii. 6. 6.

ἀκμάζω, ἀκμάσω (ἀκμή, *point*), *be at the highest point, be at the height of one's strength,* with inf. *be of full age, be amply strong,* iii. 1. 25.

ἀκμήν, adv. (acc. of ἀκμή, *point*), *at the moment* (cf. Lat. *punctum temporis*), *just,* iv. 3. 26.

ἀκόλαστος, ον (κολάζω), *unchastised, undisciplined,* ii. 6. 10.

ἀκόλουθος, ον (ἀ- copulative, ἡ κέλευθος, *path, road*), *going the same way,* hence *coinciding, consistent,* ii. 4. 19.

ἀκοντίζω, ἀκοντιῶ, etc. (ἀκόντιον), *throw the javelin,* iii. 3. 7; with acc. of person, *throw a javelin at, strike with a javelin,* i. 8. 27, 10. 7.

ἀκόντιον, ου, τό (dim. of ἄκων, *dart,* cf. ἀκμή, ἄκρος), *javelin, dart,* shorter and lighter than the spear (δόρυ). In length it varied from three to five feet. Attached to its shaft at the centre of gravity was a leather thong (ἀγκύλη) with a loop into which the ἀκοντιστής inserted his finger. As this thong was wrapped several times around the shaft, the act of throwing gave the weapon a rotary motion like that of a rifle-ball,

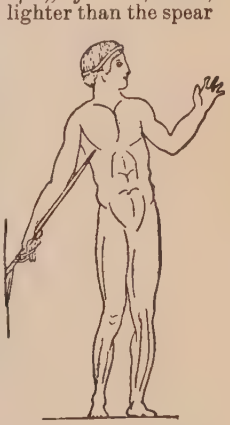


Fig. 2.

thus increasing its penetrating power, iv. 2. 28. The manner of holding the javelin is shown by Fig. 2, from a vase (cylix) in the Louvre.

ἀκόντισις, εως, ἡ (ἀκοντίζω), *javelin-throwing*, i. 9. 5. (See Fig. 2.)

ἀκοντιστής, οῦ, ὁ (ἀκοντίζω), *javelin-thrower*. The ἀκοντισταί together with the bowmen and slingers made up the light-armed troops (γυμνῆτες), iii. 3. 7, iv. 3. 28.

ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκήκοα, ἠκούσθην, *hear*. Abs., ii. 5. 26, iii. 1. 27, 4. 36; with acc. of thing heard, i. 3. 7, 21 (a), 9. 3, iv. 4. 21; with gen. of thing, i. 8. 16, iii. 2. 34 (a), iv. 2. 8, cf. iv. 7. 24, ἀκούουσι βοώντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν. *Hear of, learn*, with acc. of thing, i. 4. 9, 9. 4; with acc. of thing and gen. of person (source), i. 2. 5, ii. 5. 6. That which is heard about a person or thing may be put in the participle, i. 2. 21, 4. 5, in the acc. with inf., i. 3. 20, ii. 5. 13, iii. 1. 45, 2. 34 (b), 3. 16, iv. 5. 35, 6. 14, 16, or in a clause with ὅτι, i. 3. 21. A gen. of source is sometimes added to these constructions, i. 8. 13, 10. 5, [iv. 1. 3]. The participial construction appears to be used when the thing heard is regarded as an established fact, the infinitive in case of uncertain rumors. An indirect question follows ἀκούω, ii. 5. 15. The pres. is frequently used in a perfect sense, *I hear* = *I have heard, am informed, understand*, as in English, i. 3. 20, 9. 28, iv. 5. 35, and several other examples quoted among the inf. constructions above. In the sense of *give ear to, obey*, ii. 6. 11, iii. 5. 16.

ἄκρᾶτος, ον (κεράννυμι), *unmixed, pure*, esp. of wine. It was the custom of the Greeks to mix their wine, which was probably strong and fiery, with water, the proportion being three parts of water to one or two of wine. Hence in a transferred sense, ἄκρατος = *strong, heady*, iv. 5. 27.

ἀκροβολίζομαι, aor. ἠκροβολισάμην (ἄκρος, βάλλω), lit. *throw from a height*, hence applied to preliminary fighting with missiles as opposed to a regular hand-to-hand engagement, *skirmish*, iii. 4. 18, 33.

ἀκροβόλισις, εως, ἡ (ἀκροβολίζομαι), *skirmishing, skirmish*, iii. 4. 16, 18.

ἀκρόπολις, εως, ἡ (ἄκρος, πόλις), lit. *city on a height*, hence *citadel, fortress, upper city*, i. 2. 1, 8, 6. 6.

ἄκρος, ᾱ, ον (cf. ἀκή, ἀκμή, *point*, Lat. *acies, point, edge, acus, needle*), *at the point, topmost, highest*. As subst. τὸ ἄκρον, *top, summit, highest point*, iii. 4. 27, 44, iv. 2. 15, 5. 1, 7. 25. Plur., τὰ ἄκρα, *heights*, i. 2. 21, 3. 14, 16, iv. 6. 23, 24.

ἀκρωνυχία, ᾱς, ἡ (ἄκρος, ὄνυξ, *nail, claw*), *point of the nail*, then in a transferred sense, *ridge, crest* of a hill, iii. 4. 37, 38. (Apparently used only by Xenophon.)

ἄκων, ουσα, ον (contraction of ἀέκων, ἀ- priv., ἑκών), *unwilling, reluctant*, used like a participle, iii. 1. 10. In gen. abs., ἄκοντος Κύρου, *against the will of C.*, i. 3. 17, cf. ii. 1. 19.

ἀλαλάζω, ἀλαλάξομαι, ἠλάλαξα (cf. ἀλαλαγή, *shouting*, ἀλαλή, *war-cry*), *raise the battle-cry, shout* ἀλαλή, iv. 2. 7. (Poetic.)

ἀλεεινός, ή, όν, *giving heat, warming, warm*, iv. 4. 11.

ἀλέξω, *ward off*, only middle in Xen., ἀλέξομαι, fut. ἀλέξομαι, aor. ἠλεξάμην, *ward off from oneself, defend oneself*, abs. iii. 4. 33, with obj. i. 3. 6; *return like for like, repay, requite*, i. 9. 11.

ἀλέτης, ου, ὁ (ἀλέω, *grind*), *grinder*; used attributively, ὄνος ἀλέτης, *the upper millstone*, i. 5. 5.

ἄλευρον, ου, τό (ἀλέω, *grind*), always plural, ἄλευρα, *wheaten flour*, dis-

tinguished from **ἄλφιτα**, *barley-meal*, i. 5. 6, 10. 18, iii. 4. 31.

ἀλήθεια, ᾱς, ἡ (**ἀληθής**), *truth, truthfulness, veracity*, ii. 6. 25, 26.

ἀληθεύω, **ἀληθεύσω**, etc. (**ἀληθής**), *tell the truth, speak truthfully*, i. 7. 18; with cogn. acc., **πολλὰ τοιαῦτα**, *tell the truth about, report correctly*, iv. 4. 15.

ἀληθής, **ές** (**ἀ-** priv., **λῆθος**, *forgetfulness*, orig. *deceit*, cf. √**λαθ** in **λανθάνω**), *true, truthful*; **ἀληθῆ λέγειν**, *tell the truth*, ii. 5. 24, iii. 3. 13; **τὸ ἀληθές** as subst. = **ἀλήθεια**, *truthfulness, veracity*, ii. 6. 22.

ἀληθινός, ή, όν (cf. **ἀληθής**), *real, genuine, worthy of the name*, **στράτευμα**, i. 9. 17.

ἁλίζω, ἥλισα, ἡλίσθην, *collect, gather, assemble*, ii. 4. 3. (Ionic word.)

ἁλίσκομαι, **ἁλώσομαι**, **ἑάλων** and **ἥλων**, **ἑάλωκα** and **ἥλωκα**, *be caught, be captured, be taken*, of persons, i. 4. 7, iii. 3. 14, iv. 4. 19, 5. 24; of cities or strongholds, iii. 4. 8, 12, iv. 2. 13; of animals and things taken as booty, iii. 4. 17, iv. 4. 21; of animals taken in hunting, i. 5. 2, where the pres. partic. has a perfect meaning.

ἄλκιμος, **ον** (**ἀλκή**, *strength*, cf. **ἀλέξω**, stem **ἀλεκ-**), *sturdy, valiant*, "*doughty*," iv. 3. 4, 7. 15. (Poetic.)

ἀλλά, adversative conjunction (acc. pl. of **ἄλλος**, with changed accent, hence originally *otherwise*), *but*, used most frequently after a negative, introducing something that corrects, or is opposed to, the foregoing words, i. 1. 4, 5. 5, 10. 1, ii. 1. 12, iii. 2. 3, iv. 5. 10, etc.; so **οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί**, *not only . . . but also*, iii. 2. 19. Note also **ἀλλ' ἤ** after a negative, *except*, iv. 6. 11. At the beginning of a sentence, **ἀλλά** replies to the foregoing sentence, introducing an objection, or a statement or suggestion more or less directly opposed to something that has gone before, *but, well*, i. 7. 6, ii. 1. 10, 2. 2, iii. 3. 12, 5. 6, iv. 1. 22, 7. 7. Sometimes the opposition to the preceding sentence is not clearly brought out, and the conjunction is more transitional than adversative, *well, now*, ii. 5. 16, iii. 1. 35, 45, 2. 4, 33. Again **ἀλλά** expresses a somewhat reluctant acquiescence, hinting that the speaker is dissatisfied with what has been done or might dissent from what has been said, though he does not fully express his own views and feelings; in English *well* with the circumflex intonation is so used, i. 8. 17, ii. 1. 4, 20. **ἀλλά** = *however*, i. 4. 8, ii. 4. 24, iii. 5. 5, iv. 3. 18, so esp. in breaking off a discussion or taking up a new subject, *however, but, well*, i. 3. 17, ii. 1. 9, iii. 2. 6 (a), 33, 4. 40 (a), 41, iv. 7. 7 (b), 8. 12. In a series of rhetorical questions **ἀλλά** may be rendered *or, then*, ii. 5. 18, 22; cf. "But what went ye out for to see?" Matth. xi. 8, Luke vii. 25, where *but* translates **ἀλλά**. After an **εἰ** clause, **ἀλλά** = *still, yet, at any rate, at least*, ii. 5. 19, iii. 2. 3 (b), in both cases with **γε**. Substituting one plan for another, *rather*, iv. 6. 19, 8. 12. **ἀλλὰ γάρ**, *but the fact is, but really*, iii. 2. 25, 26; with an ellipsis, like **καὶ γάρ**, ii. 5. 12, iii. 1. 24. **ἀλλὰ μήν**, formula of transition, *besides, moreover*, i. 9. 18, ii. 5. 12, 14.

ἄλλῃ, adv. (dat. fem. of **ἄλλος**, **δδῷ** or **χώρᾳ** being understood), *by another way*, iv. 2. 4, 10; *in another place, elsewhere*, ii. 6. 4; *in another direction*, iv. 8. 19.

ἀλλήλων, reciprocal pronoun in gen., dat., and acc. (a doubling of **ἄλλος**), *one another, each other*, i. 2. 27, 5. 16, 10. 4, iii. 2. 5, etc.

ἄλλοθεν, adv. (**ἄλλος**), *from another place, from another side*, **ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν**, *some from one side, others from another*, i. 10. 13, where the English, with a changed point of

view, would have *some in one direction, others in another.*

ἅλλομαι, ἁλοῦμαι, ἡλάμην (√ἁλ, cf. Lat. *salio*), *leap, jump, spring*, iv. 2. 17.

ἄλλος, η, ο (cf. Lat. *alius*), *other, another*, i. 1. 9, 3. 16, 5. 12, ii. 5. 13, etc.; *the other of two, the second, the next* (like Lat. *alter*), **τῇ ἄλλῃ** (sc. **ἡμέρᾳ**), ii. 1. 3, iii. 4. 1; with the art., *the other, the others, the remaining, the rest of*, i. 3. 7, **τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα**, *the rest of the army*, i. 2. 25, 4. 17, iii. 3. 9, **τοὺς ἄλλους ἡμᾶς**, *the rest of us*, ii. 5. 39, **οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες**, *all the others*, ii. 1. 16; **τὰ ἄλλα**, adverbially, *in other respects, for the rest*, i. 3. 3, 7. 4, iv. 8. 20. Followed by one of its own cases or by an adverb from the same stem, **ἄλλος** is distributive, **ἄλλοι ἄλλως**, *some in one way, others in another* (Lat. *alii aliter*), i. 6. 11, **ἄλλος ἄλλα λέγει**, ii. 1. 15, *one says one thing, another says another*; cf. also **ἄλλος ἄλλῃ**, iv. 8. 19. In the sense of *else, besides*, i. 6. 1, 10. 16, etc. In a series where several objects are named **ἄλλος** is sometimes used to introduce not the class-name that includes all the objects (as **χρήματα** in ii. 4. 27), but a new item that is on a par with the rest; so **οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο οὐδὲν δένδρον**, i. 5. 5, *for there was no grass, nor any tree*; cf. i. 7. 11, 8. 9, iii. 4. 21, where the words that follow **ἄλλος** may be rendered as if in apposition with it, *others that were horsemen*, i. 7. 11, etc.; **ἄλλην τινὰ ἀτέλειαν**, *some other reward in the way of an exemption*, iii. 3. 18. In questions expecting the answer *yes*, **ἄλλο τι ἤ**, lit. *is it anything else than? is it not true that?* equivalent to Lat. *nonne*, ii. 5. 10, iv. 7. 5. Observe that in mentioning a thing especially remarkable among others of the same kind the Greek introduces the noteworthy fact after the general statement, while the English places the general statement second in order or relegates it to a subordinate part of the sentence; so i. 3. 3, **τά τε ἄλλα μ' ἐτίμησε καὶ μυρίους ἔδωκε δαρεικούς**, *he gave me ten thousand darics and honored me in other ways*, or *besides honoring me in other ways he gave me*, etc., cf. i. 9. 17, ii. 1. 14.

ἄλλοτε, adv. (**ἄλλος, ὅτε**), *at another time, at other times*, iv. 1. 17; **ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε**, *from time to time, now and then*, ii. 4. 26.

ἀλλότριος, α, ον (**ἄλλος**), *belonging to another*, Lat. *alienus*, so esp. *belonging to the enemy*, iii. 2. 28, *hostile*, iii. 5. 5.

ἀλλως, adv. (**ἄλλος**), *in another way, otherwise*, iii. 2. 37, 39; **ἄλλως πως**, *in some other way, in any other way*, iii. 1. 20, 26.

ἀλόγιστος, ον (λογίζομαι), *unreasonable, wrong-headed*, ii. 5. 21.

ἄλφιτον, ου, τό (√ἀλφ, *white*, hence orig. *the white grain*, cf. Lat. *albus*), generally plural, so always in Attic, *barley-meal*, i. 5. 6, iv. 8. 23.

ἅμα, adv. (cf. Lat. *simul*, German *samt, zusammen, together*, Eng. *same*), *at the same time, at the same time with, together with*; used alone, i. 2. 9, 8. 18, 10. 16, iii. 4. 31. With a dative: of person, ii. 4. 9, of words expressing time, in several phrases, **ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ**, *at dawn*, ii. 1. 2, iii. 1. 13, iv. 2. 1, 3. 3, cf. i. 7. 2; **ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνέχοντι**, ii. 1. 3, **ἅμα ἡλίῳ ἀνατέλλοντι**, ii. 3. 1, *at sunrise*; **ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι**, *at sunset*, ii. 2. 13. **ἅμα μὲν . . . ἅμα δέ** may be rendered *not only . . . but also*, or *now . . . now*, or else **ἅμα** may be translated with the second clause only, *and at the same time*, iii. 4. 19, iv. 1. 4. With the participle **ἅμα** emphasizes the coincidence in time of the ptc. and the leading verb, **ἅμα ταῦτα ποιούντων ἡμῶν**, *as soon*

as we do this, ii. 4. 5, so iii. 1. 47; cf. iii. 3. 10, iv. 1. 19.

Ἀμαζών, όνος, ἡ (origin uncertain), *Amazon*, pl. **Ἀμαζόνες**, iv. 4. 16. The Amazons were a mythical race of warlike women said to dwell along the river Thermōdon in Pontus, a district on the southern shore of the Black Sea. Their combats with the Greeks and other nations were the subject of many legends, and were often

Fig. 3.

represented in works of art. Their principal arms were the bow, battle-axe (**σάγαρις**), and lunate shield (**πέλτη**). Their costume consists of a richly embroidered tunic and close-fitting trousers (**ἀναξυρίδες**), as shown in Fig. 3, which is taken from a Greek vase-painting.

ἅμαξα, ης, ἡ (**ἅμα, ἄξων**, hence lit. *a combination of two axles*), *a wagon*, with four wheels, designed for heavy burdens such as provisions, arms, etc., i. 5. 5, 7. 20, iii. 2. 27, etc.; *a wagon-load*, **ἅμαξαι πετρῶν**, iv. 7. 10.

ἁμαξιαῖος, ᾱ, ον (**ἅμαξα**), *large* or *heavy enough to load a wagon*, iv. 2. 3.

ἁμαξιτός, όν (**ἅμαξα, εἶμι, ῑ**) *traveled by wagons*; **ὁδὸς ἁμαξιτός**, *a wagon-road*, i. 2. 21.

ἁμαρτάνω, ἁμαρτήσομαι, ἥμαρτον, ἡμάρτηκα, ἡμάρτημαι, ἡμαρτήθην, *miss one's aim, miss*, with gen., i. 5. 12, iii. 4. 15. Hence, *fail* in what is right, *err, do wrong to*, the wrong done being in the cognate acc., the person wronged in the acc. with **περί**, iii. 2. 20.

ἀμαχεί, adv. (**μάχη**), *without fighting, without resistance*, i. 7. 9, iii. 4. 46, iv. 6. 12.

ἀμαχητί, adv., same as **ἀμαχεί**, iv. 2. 15.

ἀμείνων, ον, gen. **ἀμείνονος**, comp. of **ἀγαθός**, *better, braver*, iii. 1. 21, 23, 2. 15; joined with **κρείττων**, i. 7. 3. Neuter as adv., *better*, ii. 1. 20.

ἀμέλεια, ᾱς, ἡ (**ἀμελέω**), *carelessness, inattention, neglect*, with objective gen., **ἀμέλεια τοῦ ἡγεμόνος**, *neglect in guarding the guide*, iv. 6. 3.

ἀμελέω, ἀμελήσω, etc. (**μέλει**), *not to care for, give no heed to, neglect*, with gen., **ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν αὐτῶν**, *to neglect our own interests*, i. 3. 11.

ἄμετρος, ον (**μέτρον**), *unmeasured, countless*, iii. 2. 16.

ἀμήχανος, ον (**μηχανή**), *without μηχανή*, of persons, *having no means of helping themselves, without resource, perplexed, at a loss*, ii. 5. 21; of things, *for which no μηχανή can be found, difficult, perplexing*; hence as subst. **πολλὰ καὶ ἀμήχανα**, *many embarrassments* or *difficulties*, ii. 3. 18; **ἀμήχανον εἰσελθεῖν στρατεύματι**, *it was impossible for an army to enter*, i. 2. 21.

ἀμιλλάομαι, ἀμιλλήσομαι, etc., pass. dep. (**ἅμιλλα**, *contest*, from **ἅμα**,

cf. Lat. *simultas*, *rivalry*, *dissension*, from *simul*), *strive*, *contend*, *struggle*, with ἐπί or πρός with acc., *towards* or *for anything*, iii. 4. 44, 46.

ἄμπελος, ου, ἡ, *vine*, *grape-vine*, i. 2. 22.

Ἀμπρακιώτης, ου, ὁ, *an Ambraciot*, a citizen of Ambracia, which was situated in southern Epirus some ten miles north of the Ambracian gulf. It is now Arta. i. 7. 18.

ἀμυγδάλινος, η, ον (ἀμυγδάλη, *almond*), *made from almonds*, iv. 4. 13.

ἀμύνω, ἀμυνῶ, ἤμῦνα (cf. Lat. *mūnio*), *ward off*; in middle, *ward off from oneself*, *defend oneself*, iii. 1. 14, 29; τινά, *against a person*, ii. 3. 23.

ἀμφί, prep. with gen. (in Xen. alone of Attic prose writers), dat. (only Ionic and poetic), and acc., orig. *on both sides*, cf. ἄμφω; hence, with gen. *about*, *concerning*, iv. 5. 17.

With acc. in a local sense, *about*, *around*, i. 2. 3, 8. 26, iv. 2. 5; so esp. οἱ ἀμφί τινα, *one's attendants* or *companions*, i. 8. 1, 21, 10. 3, cf. iv. 1. 6; often it means the person named and his attendants, οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον, *Ariaeus and his followers*, iii. 2. 2, 5. 1, iv. 3. 21. By a partial transition from the local sense, ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια εἶναι, *to be busied about* or *occupied with the provisions*, iii. 5. 14; similarly ἀμφὶ τὰ στρατεύματα δαπανᾶν, *to spend money on the armies*, i. 1. 8. τὰ ἀμφὶ τάξεις τε καὶ ὁπλομαχίαν, *tactics and drill-methods*, ii. 1. 7. In various expressions of time, *about*, Lat. *circiter*, ἀμφὶ δορπηστόν, *about supper-time*, i. 10. 17, ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας, iv. 4. 1, cf. ii. 1. 7, 2. 8, 14, iv. 1. 5, 5. 9, 8. 21; so also with numerals preceded by the article, ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους, *about two thousand*, i. 2. 10, cf. ii. 6. 15, 30, iii. 1. 33, iv. 7. 22, etc.

ἀμφιγνοέω, impf. ἠμφεγνόουν, aor. ἠμφεγνόησα (ἀμφί, γνο, cf. γιγνώσκω), *think on both sides of a question*, hence *be uncertain*, *be in doubt*, ii. 5. 33.

Ἀμφίδημος, ου, ὁ, *Amphidēmus*, father of Amphicrates (next word), iv. 2. 13.

Ἀμφικράτης, ους, ὁ, *Amphicrates*, son of Amphidemus, an Athenian captain who was slain by the Carduchians, iv. 2. 13, 17.

ἀμφιλέγω (λέγω), *speak on both sides*, hence *dispute*, *quarrel*, τι, *about something*, i. 5. 11.

Ἀμφιπολίτης, ου, ὁ, *an Amphipolitan*, a citizen of Amphipolis, i. 10. 7, iv. 6. 1. Amphipolis was a city of eastern Macedonia, situated on the river Strymon (now Struma), near its mouth. It was a colony of Athens, founded 437 B. C.

ἀμφότερος, ᾱ, ον (ἄμφω), *both*, rarely used in the sing., in the Anabasis only dual (i. 1. 1) and plural. With nouns, in pred. position, i. 1. 1, 4. 4, iii. 1. 31; as subst. ἀμφότεροι, *both parties*, *both sides*, i. 5. 17, ii. 5. 41.

ἀμφοτέρωθεν, adv. (ἀμφότερος), *from both sides*, often to be translated *on both sides*, i. 10. 9, iii. 5. 10; with gen., iii. 4. 29.

ἄμφω, gen. dat. ἀμφοῖν (cf. ἀμφί, Lat. *ambō*; the second syllable is related to German *beide*, Eng. *both*), *both*, ii. 6. 30, iv. 2. 21.

ἄν, contracted form of ἐάν.

ἄν, postpositive particle, modifies the force of the verb, indicating that the action is not certain, but contingent upon other circumstances, or else that the action is merely supposed. With past tenses of the indicative ἄν occurs in the apodosis of conditions contrary to fact, ii. 1. 4, iii. 2. 24; so also with a potential or hypothetical force, when no condi-

tion is expressed, i. 5. 8, iii. 2. 24, 5. 12, iv. 2. 10; denoting customary or repeated action, i. 9. 19, ii. 3. 11, iii. 4. 22, iv. 7. 16. With opt., in the apodosis of less vivid future (possible) conditions, i. 6. 8, ii. 5. 10, 14, etc.; also without expressed protasis in the potential or hypothetical optative, i. 3. 17, 5. 8, 9. 3, ii. 5. 13, 17, 20, iv. 6. 12, 7. 7, etc.; this opt. with ἄν appears in ind. questions, i. 7. 2, ii. 4. 15, iii. 1. 6, 7, iv. 3. 14, 8. 7, and after ὥστε, ii. 5. 15. ἄν is used with the participle representing a pot. opt., i. 1. 10; so very frequently with inf., i. 3. 6, 7. 5, 9. 8, 29, ii. 1. 12, 2. 1, 5. 13, 16, iii. 1. 17, 5. 12, iv. 2. 10, 6. 13, etc. It is sometimes used two or three times in one sentence, i. 3. 6, ii. 5. 20, iv. 6. 13. With the subjunctive ἄν is used in connection with εἰ and various temporal conjunctions; with εἰ, ὅτε, ἐπεί and others it combines making ἐάν, ὅταν, ἐπάν, etc., which see; with πρίν, ἕως, μέχρι, ἄχρι, ἕστε, i. 1. 10, 4. 8, 13, ii. 3. 2, 9, 24; with ὡς in a clause of purpose, ii. 5. 16. It is frequent in clauses referring to future time or time in general introduced by ὅς, ὅστις, and other relatives, i. 3. 6, 12, etc.

ἀνά, prep. with the accusative, *up*. Of place, *up, up among, throughout*, iii. 5. 16. With numerals, to indicate distribution, λόχοι ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, *companies of a hundred men each*, iii. 4. 21, ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ σταθμοὺς ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας, *they marched seven stages at the rate of seven parasangs a day*, iv. 6. 4. Phrase ἀνὰ κράτος, *at full speed* (up to the limit of one's power), i. 8. 1, 10. 15, iv. 3. 20 ff.

ἀναβαίνω (βαίνω), *go up, ascend*; of mountains, etc., with ἐπί and acc., i. 2. 22, iii. 4. 25, iv. 8. 18, or with the object only implied in the context, iv. 2. 8, 12, 8. 19; *to mount* a horse, with ἐπί and acc., i. 8. 3, iii. 4. 35; obj. not expressed, iii. 4. 49; *go up* from the seacoast to the higher country of the interior, i. 1. 2, 4. 12, ii. 5. 22.

ἀναβάλλω (βάλλω), *throw upward*; ἐπὶ ἵππον, *help to mount a horse*, iv. 4. 4.

ἀνάβασις, εως, ἡ (ἀναβαίνω), *a going up, ascent, upward march*, iv. 1. 10. In a special sense, the expedition of Cyrus from the coast to the interior (see definition of ἀναβαίνω), i. 4. 9, iii. 1. 1.

ἀναβιβάζω (βιβάζω, βιβάσω or βιβῶ, ἐβίβασα, √βα, causative of βαίνω), *cause to go up* or *ascend*; with στράτευμα understood, *lead up*, i. 10. 14.

ἀναγιγνώσκω (γιγνώσκω), *know again, recognize*; hence *read*, i. 6. 4, iii. 1. 5.

ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω, etc. (ἀνάγκη), *force, compel*, with acc. and inf., ii. 1. 6, iii. 4. 49; in passive with inf., *be obliged, have to*, iii. 3. 12, iv. 1. 16. Used absolutely, iii. 4. 19.

ἀναγκαῖος, ᾱ, ον (ἀνάγκη), *necessary, indispensable*, iv. 1. 12; *inevitable*, iii. 1. 43; with inf., iii. 5. 17, iv. 1. 15. ἀναγκαῖόν τι, *a necessity*, i. 5. 9. As subst. οἱ ἀναγκαῖοι = Lat. *necessarii, relatives*, ii. 4. 1.

ἀνάγκη, ης, ἡ, *necessity, compulsion, constraint*; personified in a common figure, ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἡ ἀνάγκη, iii. 4. 32; pl. *hardships, distress*, iv. 5. 15; ἐν ἀνάγκῃ ἔχεσθαι, ἀνάγκῃ κατέχεσθαι, *be constrained by necessity*, ii. 5. 21, 6. 13. Abs. or with inf. or acc. and inf., ἀνάγκη ἐστί, or ἀνάγκη ἦν, *one must, one is obliged*, iii. 4. 19, iv. 1. 9, 2. 10, 6. 10; ἐστί is more frequently omitted, i. 6. 8, ii. 1. 17, iii. 4. 20; with dat. i. 3. 5.

ἀναγνούς, see ἀναγιγνώσκω.

ἀνάγω (ἄγω), *lead up, bring up*, iii. 4. 28.

ἀναζεύγνῡμι (ζεύγνῡμι), *yoke up*, orig. said of beasts of burden; hence of an army, *start on the march, break camp*, Lat. *castra movere*, iii. 4. 37, iv. 6. 1 (cf. καταλύω).

ἀναθρέψαντι, see ἀνατρέφω.

ἀναιρέω (αἱρέω), *take up, lift up*; esp. in mid. *take up* the dead for burial, iv. 1. 19. In a transferred sense, of a god or an oracle, *tell* in reply to a question, *answer*, iii. 1. 6. (Perhaps from raising the voice to reply; the origin of this use is not certain.)

ἀνακαίω (καίω), *light up, kindle*, πῦρ, iii. 1. 3.

ἀνακαλέω (καλέω), *call back*; mid., *call back to oneself*, esp. τῇ σάλπιγγι ἀνακαλεῖσθαι, *sound retreat, sound the recall*, iv. 4. 42.

ἀνακοινόω, ἀνακοινώσω, etc. (κοινός), *communicate*; hence *consult* a god, iii. 1. 5; mid. *consult with* a person, iii. 1. 5; in both cases with dat. of person and περί with gen.

ἀνακομίζω (κομίζω), *carry up*; mid. *carry up for oneself, store away*, iv. 7. 1, 17.

ἀνακράζω (κράζω, κεκρᾰ́ξομαι, ἔκραγον, κέκρᾰγα, pres. not in Attic prose), aor. ἀνέκραγον, *shout aloud, raise a shout*, iv. 4. 20, 5. 18.

ἀναλαλάζω (ἀλαλάζω), *raise the war-cry*, iv. 3. 19.

ἀναλαμβάνω (λαμβάνω), *take up; pick up, take along*, of detachments of troops, etc., i. 10. 6, iv. 7. 24; *take back*, iii. 4. 49, where some read λαβόντα.

ἀναλέγω (λέγω), *pick up, collect*. Also *recount, relate, narrate*, ii. 1. 17. (A doubtful passage; other readings have been proposed instead of ἀναλεγόμενον.)

ἀνᾱλίσκω (ἁλίσκω), ἀνᾱλώσω, ἀνήλωσα, ἀνήλωκα, ἀνήλωμαι, ἀνηλώθην, *use up, exhaust, spend*, iv. 7. 5, 10.

ἀναμείγνυμι (μείγνυμι), *mix through*; pass., *mingle with, be dispersed among*, iv. 8. 8.

ἀναμένω (μένω), *wait for*, with acc. and inf., iii. 1. 14, 24.

ἀναμιμνῄσκω (μιμνῄσκω), *remind*, with two accs., iii. 2. 11; in passive, *remember*.

ἄνανδρος, ον (ἀνήρ), *unmanly, weak, cowardly*, ii. 6. 25.

ἀναξυρίδες, ων, αἱ (Persian word), *trousers*, worn by Persians, i. 5. 8. These garments were close-fitting, and were often dyed or embroidered with various colors. See cuts under ἀκινάκης and Ἀμαζών.

ἀναπαύω (παύω), *cause to cease*; middle, *rest oneself, rest*, either of a halt during the day or repose at night, i. 10. 6, ii. 2. 4, 4. 23, iii. 1. 3, 5. 18, iv. 1. 4, 5. 19, 20.

ἀναπείθω (πείθω), *persuade*, with acc. and inf., i. 4. 11. The force of ἀνά is like that of *up* in such phrases as *work up to a frenzy*, etc.

ἀναπνέω (πνέω), lit. *breathe up*; hence *catch one's breath, get a breathing-space, get a rest*, iv. 1. 22, 3. 1.

ἀναπτύσσω (πτύσσω, *fold*, πτύξω, ἔπτυξα, ἔπτυγμαι, ἐπτύχθην), *unfold, fold back*; in military language, *wheel round*, said of the wing of an army in the manœuvre described in i. 10. 9.

ἀναρίθμητος, ον (ἀ- priv., ἀριθμέω, *count*), *countless, innumerable*, iii. 2. 13.

ἄνᾰριστος, ον (ἀ- priv., ἄριστον), *without breakfast, having had no breakfast*, i. 10. 19, iv. 2. 4.

ἁρπάζω (ἁρπάζω), *snatch up, carry off*, i. 3. 14.

ἀναρχίᾱ, ας, η (ἀ- priv., ἀρχή), *lack of leaders, anarchy, lawlessness*, iii. 2. 29.

ἀναστᾶς, see ἀνίστημι.

ἀνασταυρόω, ἀνασταυρώσω, etc. (*σταυρός, pale, stake*), *fix upon a stake, impale*, iii. 1. 17.

ἀναστρέφω (*στρέφω*), *turn back, face about*; intrans., i. 4. 5, 10. 8, iv. 3. 29; pass., *be turned about, face about, rally*, i. 10. 12. Phrase, *ἐν τοῖς πέριξ οἰκοῦσι ὡς δεσπότης ἂν ἀναστρέφοιο, you could lord it over your neighbors*, ii. 5. 14.

ἀνασχέσθαι, see **ἀνέχω.**

ἀναταράττω (*ταράττω*), *stir up, confuse*; perf. pass. ptc., *without regular order, in confusion*, i. 7. 20.

ἀνατείνω (*τείνω*), *stretch up, raise, hold up*, esp. of the hand in voting, iii. 2. 9, 33, 38; *spread out, expand*; *ἀετὸς ἀνατεταμένος, an eagle with extended wings, a spread eagle*, i. 10. 12.

ἀνατέλλω, aor. *ἀνέτειλα, rise*, of the sun, ii. 3. 1.

ἀνατίθημι (*τίθημι*), *place upon, lay upon*, of baggage, iii. 1. 30, similarly mid., ii. 2. 4; of a votive offering (*ἀνάθημα*), *set up, dedicate*, iv. 7. 26.

ἀνατρέφω (*τρέφω*), *feed up, fatten*, of a horse in poor condition, iv. 5. 35.

ἀναφρονέω (*φρονέω*), *come back to one's right mind, recover one's senses*, iv. 8. 21.

ἀναχάζω (like the simple **χάζω** an epic word, almost always mid.; Xen. uses the active, but only forms of the pres. system occur), *retreat, withdraw*, iv. 1. 16, 7. 10.

ἀναχωρέω (*χωρέω*), *go back, retire, retreat*, iii. 3. 13.

ἀνδράποδον, *ου, τό* (*ἀνήρ, πούς*; perhaps because a conqueror set his foot upon the neck of his captive in token of the latter's subjection), *slave*, esp. a slave captured in war, *captive*, i. 2. 27, ii. 4. 27, iv. 1. 12.

ἀνέβην, see **ἀναβαίνω.**

ἀνεγείρω (*ἐγείρω*), *wake, rouse*; pass. *be aroused, wake up*, iii. 1. 12, 13.

ἀνεῖλον, see **ἀναιρέω.**

ἀνεῖπον (*εἶπον*), aor., *proclaim, announce*, followed by a *ὅτι* clause, ii. 2. 20.

ἄνεμος, *ου, ὁ* (cf. Lat. *anima, breath, animus, soul*), *wind*, iv. 5. 3, 4.

ἀνερωτάω (*ἐρωτάω*), *ask, inquire*, ii. 3. 4, iv. 5. 34.

ἀνέστην, see *ἀνίστημι.*

ἀνεστράφην, see *ἀναστρέφω.*

ἄνευ (related to **ἀ-** priv. and Germ. *ohne*), improper prep. with gen., *without*, i. 3. 11, ii. 2. 3, iii. 1. 29, etc.

ἀνέχω (*ἔχω*), double augment in impf. and aor. *ἠνειχόμην, ἠνεσχόμην, hold up*; intrans. *rise*, of the sun, ii. 1. 3; mid., *hold oneself up*, esp. under some difficulty, *hold out against, endure*; abs., *control oneself*, i. 8. 26; with acc., i. 7. 4, 8. 11; with gen. abs., *οὐκ ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος, would not tolerate his assuming the throne*, ii. 2. 1.

ἀνήγαγον, see *ἀνάγω.*

ἀνηγέρθη, see **ἀνεγείρω.**

ἀνήκεστος, *ον* (**ἀ-** priv., *ἀκέομαι, cure*), *incurable, irremediable*, ii. 5. 5.

ἀνήρ, *ἀνδρός, ὁ, man*, Lat. *vir*, as distinguished from *ἄνθρωπος*, Lat. *homo, human being*. Of men as opposed to women, iv. 7. 2; hence *husband*, iv. 5. 24; *a true man*, of strong character, brave or worthy, i. 7. 3, 4. Sometimes with no emphasis, *person*, i. 3. 18, iii. 2. 20; in military language the pl. is used like our *men* = *soldiers, troops*, i. 1. 6, 11, iii. 4. 42. With the art. *ἀνήρ* is used like *οὗτος* and *ἐκεῖνος* referring to some person about whose identity the hearer can not be in doubt, i. 3. 12, 8. 26; hence frequently of *the enemy*, iii. 1. 23, 4. 40, iv. 6. 9, cf. iii. 4. 15, *οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν ἀνδρός,*

nobody missed his man. As a term of address, **ὦ ἄνδρες** or **ἄνδρες** alone, *gentlemen, friends, my men*, i. 4. 16, iii. 1. 43, 4. 46; so with other nouns where **ἄνδρες** need not be translated, **ἄνδρες στρατιῶται**, *soldiers, fellow-soldiers*, i. 3. 3, etc., **ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες**, *Greeks*, i. 7. 3. **ἄνδρες φίλοι**, *my friends*, i. 6. 6; so also with **λοχαγοί** and **στρατηγοί**, iii. 1. 15, 34. **ἀνήρ** may also be omitted in translation when used in some other phrases, esp. with nouns of nationality; **τῶν πελταστῶν τις ἀνήρ**, *one of the peltasts*, iv. 8. 4; **Ὀρόντας Πέρσης ἀνήρ**, *Orontas, a Persian*, i. 6. 1, cf. i. 2. 20, 8. 1; it is also superfluous, i. 9. 1, ii. 3. 4.

ἀνθρώπινος, η, ον (**ἄνθρωπος**), *human, mortal*, neut. pl. as subst., *things human*, ii. 5. 8.

ἄνθρωπος, ου, ὁ, *man, a human being*, opp. to the gods, i. 6. 6, ii. 5. 20, 39, iii. 2. 13; in contrast with **ἀνήρ**, *a weak* or *cowardly man*, i. 7. 4; hence as a term of contempt, *fellow*, iii. 1. 27. In pl., *all mankind, everybody*, i. 3. 15. In several uses it differs little from **ἀνήρ**; so simply *man, person*, ii. 4. 15, iv. 8. 4; referring to soldiers, i. 5. 9, 8. 9, ii. 1. 11, iv. 7. 4; *the enemy*, like **ἀνήρ**, iv. 2. 7. (Cf. Eng. *anthropology*.)

ἀνιάω, ἀνιάσω, etc. (**ἀνίᾱ**, *distress, trouble*), *hurt, harass, annoy, trouble*, iii, 3. 19; pass., with fut. mid. as pass., *be hurt, vexed, troubled*, i. 2. 11, iv. 8. 26.

ἀνιμάω, impf. **ἀνίμων** (**ἀνά, ἱμάς**), *draw up by a strap*, then in general, without regard to the original meaning, *draw up, pull up*, iv. 2. 8.

ἀνίστημι (**ἵστημι**), *make stand up, rouse up*, of persons, iv. 5. 19, 21, of game, *start, scare up*, i. 5. 3. Intrans. (pres., impf., fut. mid., 2 aor., pf., plupf. act.) *rise, stand up, get up*, after sleep, iii. 1. 15, 4. 1, iv. 1. 5, or an illness, *recover*, iv. 5. 8, 8. 21; *rise* in order to speak, i. 3. 13, 16, iii. 2. 1; of an assembly, *rise* to adjourn, *break up*, iii. 3. 1.

ἄνοδος, ου, ἡ (**ἀνά, ὁδός**), *way upward, march into the interior*, same as **ἀνάβασις** [ii. 1. 1].

ἄνοδος, ον (**ἀ-** priv., **ὁδός**), *without roads, impassable*, iv. 8. 10.

ἀνόητος, ον (**ἀ-** priv., **νοέω**), *unintelligent, senseless, foolish*, ii. 1. 13.

ἀνταγοράζω (**ἀντί, ἀγοράζω**), *buy in exchange*, i. 5. 5.

ἀνταγωνίζομαι (**ἀγωνίζομαι**), *contend against*, with **πρός** and acc., iv. 7. 12. (Cf. *antagonist*.)

ἀντακούω (**ἀκούω**), *hear in turn, listen to an answer*, ii. 5. 16. (Poetic word.)

ἀντεμπίμπλημι (**ἐμπίμπλημι**), *fill in return, fill as reward*, iv. 5. 28.

ἀντεπιμελέομαι (**ἐπιμελέομαι**), *take counter precautions*, iii. 1. 16.

ἀντί, prep. with gen., *over against, facing, against*, in this local sense only iv. 7. 6, **(πίτυες) ἀνθ' ὧν ἑστηκότες ἄνδρες**, *standing with their faces to which*, i. e., *having which in front of them*, hence *standing behind which. Instead of, in place of, for*, i. 1. 4, 7. 16, iii. 1. 17, 47; so **αἱρεῖσθαί τι** (or **τινα**) **ἀντί τινος**, *choose in place of, prefer*, i. 7. 3, 9. 9; *in return for*, i. 3. 4.

ἀντιδίδωμι (**δίδωμι**), *give in exchange, give in place of*, iii. 3. 19.

ἀντικαθίστημι (**καθίστημι**), *appoint instead, create in place of*, iii. 1. 38.

ἀντιλέγω (**λέγω**), *speak against, say in opposition, object*, abs., iii. 2. 38; with a **ὡς** clause, ii. 3. 25; with dat. and an acc. and inf. clause, ii. 5. 29.

ἀντίος, ᾱ, ον (**ἀντί**), *over against, facing, opposite*, often used in pred. where the English idiom requires an adv., so i. 10. 10, iv.

3. 26; phrase **ἀντίος ἰέναι**, *go to meet, advance against*, i. 8. 17, cf. 24; **ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου**, *from the opposite side*, i. 8. 23. **οἱ ἀντίοι**, the *opposing party, the enemy*, iii. 1. 42. (The word is mostly poetic. Attic prose writers except Xen. prefer **ἐναντίος**.)

ἀντιπαραθέω (**θέω**), *run along* the line of one's own front *to meet* an enemy's attack, iv. 8. 17.

ἀντιπαρασκευάζομαι (**παρασκευάζω**), *prepare oneself in turn, make counter preparations*, i. 2. 5.

ἀντιπαρατάττω (**τάττω**), *draw up against, array against*; similarly in mid., iv. 8. 9.

ἀντιπάρειμι (**εἶμι**), *march along even with on the opposite side* of a stream, iv. 3. 17.

ἀντιπάσχω (**πάσχω**), *suffer in return*, ii. 5. 17.

ἀντιπέρᾱν (**πέραν**), *opposite, across from, over against*, with gen. and preceded by **κατά**, iv. 8. 3.

ἀντιπέρᾱς, same as preceding word, with **κατά**, i. 1. 9.

ἀντιποιέω (**ποιέω**), *do against, do in retaliation, retaliate*, iii. 3. 7, 12; mid., in a reciprocal sense, with gen. of cause, *be rivals in*, iv. 7. 12; with dat. of the pers. and gen. of the thing (cause), *contend for, dispute about*, ii. 1. 11, 3. 23.

ἀντίπορος, ον (**πόρος**, *strait*), orig. *across the strait, on the opposite shore*, hence in general, *opposite*, iv. 2. 18. (Poetic word.)

ἀντιστασιάζω (**στασιάζω**), *create a faction* (**στάσις**), *against*, hence *strive with, contend against*, iv. 1. 27.

ἀντιστασιώτης, ου, ὁ (**ἀντιστασιάζω**), *political opponent*, i. 1. 10.

ἀντιτάττω (**τάττω**), *array against, set against*, as an enemy, ii. 5. 19; mid. *array oneself against, oppose oneself to, withstand*, iii. 2. 14, iv. 8. 5; so also pass. i. 10. 3. (In iv. 8. 5 Xen., perhaps following the example of Thucydides, uses the Ionic form of 3 pers. pl. perf. mid., **ἀντιτετάχαται** instead of the ordinary compound form.)

ἀντιτοξεύω (**τοξεύω**), *shoot back*, iii. 3. 15.

ἀντιφυλάττω (**φυλάττω**), *guard in turn*; mid., *guard oneself in turn, keep on one's guard in turn*, ii. 5. 3.

ἄντρον, ου, τό (whence Lat. *antrum* is borrowed), *cave, grotto*, i. 2. 8.

ἀντρώδης, ες (**ἄντρον, εἶδος**), *cave-like, cavernous*, iv. 3. 11.

ἀνυστός, ή, όν (**ἀνύω**, *accomplish*), *that can be accomplished, feasible*; **σιγῇ ὡς ἀνυστόν**, *as silently as possible*, i. 8. 11.

ἄνω, adv. (cf. **ἀνά**), *above, up, upward; up into the air*, iii. 4. 17; *on* or *to higher ground*, i. 7. 15, iv. 1. 6, 2. 1. 8, 3. 5, 8. 28; often in attrib. pos., as **οἱ ἄνω πολέμιοι**, *the enemy above*, iv. 3. 23, cf. 25, 6. 26; *up* from the coast to the interior, i. 2. 1. Comp., **ἀνωτέρω** with gen., *above, higher than*, i. 4. 17, iv. 2. 25. As adv. of place followed by gen., *above*, iv. 3. 3; so following its case, **τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω ἔκβασιν**, *the pass above* (i. e. *beyond*) *the river*, iv. 3. 21.

ἄνωθεν, adv. (**ἄνω**), *from above*, iv. 7. 12.

ἀξίνη, ης, ἡ (akin to Lat. *ascia*—for *acsia*—Eng. *axe*), *axe*, i. 5. 12.

ἄξιος, ᾱ, ον (**ἄγω** in sense of *weigh*; hence, *weighing as much as, worth*), *worth, worthy of, deserving*, with gen. i. 7. 3; esp. in phrase **πολλοῦ ἄξιος**, *worth much, valuable, of use*, i. 3. 12, ii. 1. 14, iv. 1. 28, correspondingly **πλείστου ἄξιος**, ii. 4. 6; **τὰ πλείστου ἄξια**, *their most valuable possessions*, i. 4. 7. Without dependent gen., *valuable, worthy*, i. 9. 29. With inf., *worthy*, i. 9. 1, ii. 5. 24. **ἄξιόν**

ἐστι, with dat. and inf., *it is proper, seemly, fitting*, ii. 3. 25.

ἀξιοστράτηγος, *ον* (στρατηγός), *worthy to be general*, iii. 1. 24.

ἀξιόω, ἀξιώσω, etc. (ἄξιος), *think worthy*, with obj. acc. and gen. of value, iii. 2. 7; with inf. or acc. and inf., *think right* or *fitting, expect, demand* (as being proper), i. 1. 8, 3. 19, so also in pass., iv. 6. 16; hence *wish, ask, claim*, i. 7. 8, ii. 6. 27, iii. 1. 37.

ἀξίως, adv. (ἄξιος), *worthily, properly, as one deserves*, i. 9. 15.

ἄξων, *ονος*, ὁ (ἄγω), *axle*, i. 8. 10.

ἀπαγγέλλω (ἀγγέλλω), *bring back word, bring news, report, announce*, abs., ii. 3. 2; with that which is reported in the acc. (sometimes with the dat. of the person receiving the message, and the person from whom it comes in the gen. with παρά), i. 3. 19, 4. 12, ii. 1. 20, 21, 23, 3. 24, 5. 27, 36; with an ind. quest. i. 10. 14, cf. i. 6. 5; with a ὅτι or ὡς clause, i. 10. 15, ii. 1. 4, 22, 3. 9 (b), 4. 4, iv. 5. 20; with ὡς and gen. abs., ii. 1. 20 (b); *report* in the sense of *give an answer, give one's decision*, ii. 3. 9 (a).

ἀπαγορεύω (ἀγορεύω, *speak*, esp. before an assembly, ἀγορά). pres. and impf., the aor. and pf. being supplied by ἀπεῖπον, ἀπείρηκα, *forbid*; intrans., *renounce, give up* doing anything, hence *fail, become exhausted*, i. 5. 3; pf. ἀπείρηκα, *be in a state of exhaustion*, ii. 2. 16.

ἀπάγω (ἄγω), *lead away, lead back*, i. 3. 14, ii. 3. 26; intrans., *march back*, i. 10. 6.

ἀπαίδευτος, *ον* (παιδεύω), *uneducated, ignorant*, ii. 6. 26.

ἀπαιτέω (αἰτέω), *ask from, demand back*, iv. 2. 18; *demand* what is due, as pay, i. 2. 11, or from a vassal, ii. 5. 38 (two accs.).

ἀπαλλάττω (ἀλλάττω, ἀλλάξω, ἤλλαξα, -ήλλαχα, ἤλλαγμαι, ἠλλάχθην or ἠλλάγην, *change*), active, *get rid of, abandon, throw away*, iii. 2. 28; pass. *be freed from, be rid of*, with gen., iv. 3. 2; pass. used intransitively, *withdraw, come off*, i. 10. 8.

ἁπαλός, ἡ, ὁν, *tender, delicate*, i. 5. 2.

ἀπαμείβομαι (ἀμείβω, ἀμείψω, ἤμειψα, -ημείφθην, *change, exchange*), *reply, answer*, aor. ii. 5. 15. (Poetic word, apparently not used elsewhere in Attic prose.)

ἀπαντάω (ἀντάω, *meet*, the simple verb not in Attic prose), ἀπαντήσομαι, ἀπήντησα, ἀπήντηκα, *meet, go to meet*, with dat., ii. 3. 17; in a hostile sense, *encounter*, iv. 6. 5, 24.

ἅπαξ, numeral adv., *once*; after ἐπεί, ὡς, and ἐάν without notion of number; cf. Shylock's "*If* I can catch him *once* upon the hip"; i. 9. 10, ii. 2. 12, iii. 2. 25, iv. 6. 17, 7. 12.

ἀπαρασκεύαστος, *ον* (παρασκευάζω), same as following word, read in i. 5. 9, but the form is mainly confined to later writers.

ἀπαράσκευος, *ον* (παρασκευή), *unprepared*, i. 1. 6, ii. 3. 21.

ἅπᾱς, ἅπᾶσα, ἅπᾶν (ἀ- copulative, πᾶς), *all together, all, entire, whole*, in pred. pos. with the article; ἅπᾶν τὸ μέσον, *the entire space between*, i. 4. 4; ἅπᾶσα ἡ χώρα, *the whole country*, i. 5. 5; πεδίον ἅπᾶν, *an unbroken plain*, iv. 4. 1; with an adj., *entirely, quite*, ἅπᾶν ὁμαλές, i. 5. 1; in pl., *all*, i. 6. 10, 7. 8, ii. 3. 7, iii. 2. 9, iv. 3. 19.

ἀπεγνωκέναι, see ἀπογιγνώσκω.

ἀπέθανον, see ἀποθνῄσκω.

ἀπειθέω, ἀπειθήσω, etc. (πείθομαι), *disobey, be disobedient*, ii. 6. 4, iii. 2. 31.

ἄπειμι (εἶμι), *go away, depart*, the pres. often with fut. meaning, like εἶμι, i. 4. 7, 8, 10. 17, ii. 3. 29, 4. 34, 39, iii. 4. 34, iv. 6. 1, etc., *go back, return*, i. 3. 11, 7. 4, ii. 1. 21, 2. 1, 10, etc.; *go over, desert*, with πρός and acc., i. 9. 29, abs., iii. 3. 5.

ἄπειμι (εἰμί), *be away, be absent*, ii. 5. 37.

ἄπειρος, ον (πεῖρα), *inexperienced, without experience*, ii. 2. 5, with gen., iii. 2. 16.

ἀπελαύνω (ἐλαύνω), *drive off, drive away, expel*, iii. 1. 32, *dislodge*, with **ἀπό** and gen., iii. 4. 40; intrans., *ride off*, i. 8. 17, ii. 3. 6, 4. 24; *march away*, i. 4. 5.

ἀπέρχομαι (ἔρχομαι), fut. supplied by **ἄπειμι**, aor. **ἀπῆλθον**, *come* or *go away, depart*, i. 1. 4, 3. 17, ii. 2. 5, etc.; *return*, iv. 8. 6; *go over, desert*, with παρά or πρός and acc., i. 4. 7, 9. 29; *withdraw, retreat*, iii. 4. 18, iv. 7. 7, 8. 8.

ἀπεχθάνομαι, ἀπεχθήσομαι, ἀπηχθόμην, ἀπήχθημαι (ἔχθω, *hate*), *become hateful, be hated, incur one's hatred*, with dat., ii. 6. 19.

ἀπέχω (ἔχω), *hold off, keep away*, not so used in Anab.; intrans., *be away, be distant*, with acc. of the distance, i. 3. 20, ii. 2. 12, iii. 2. 34, and gen. of place from which, ii. 4. 10, 12, iii. 1. 2; **ἀπό** with gen., iv. 3. 5. Mid., *keep oneself away from, hold aloof from, abstain from, refrain from injuring*, ii. 6. 10, iii. 1. 22.

ἀπῄει, see **ἄπειμι** (εἶμι).

ἀπηλλάγη, see **ἀπαλλάττω.**

ἀπιστέω, ἀπιστήσω, etc. (cf. πίστις, πείθω), *distrust*, with dat., ii. 5. 6, 16; *disobey* (like **ἀπειθέω**), ii. 6. 19.

ἀπιστίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ, *distrust, suspicion*, ii. 5. 4; *untrustworthiness, faithlessness, treachery*, ii. 5. 21 (with πρός and acc. of person), iii. 2. 4, 8.

ἄπιστος, ον (πίστις), *without confidence, untrustworthy*, ii. 4. 7.

ἄπλετος, ον (ϝπλε? cf. πίμπλημι), *not to be measured, tremendous*, iv. 4. 11.

ἁπλοῦς, ῆ, οῦν (for **ἁπλόος**), *simple, straightforward, candid*; as subst., **τὸ ἁπλοῦν**, *sincerity, honesty*, ii. 6. 22.

ἀπό (akin to Lat. *ab*, Germ. *ab*, Eng. *of, off*), by elision **ἀπ'**, before rough breathing **ἀφ'**, prep. with gen., *from, away from, off*, i. 1. 2, 8. 28, 9. 6, iii. 4. 24; of distance, i. 8. 17, iv. 3. 5; of a starting-point in time, *from, after*, i. 7. 18, ii. 6. 30; **ἀπὸ τούτου**, from this time on, ii. 6. 5; **ἀφ' οὗ**, *from what time, since*, iii. 2. 14; hence, of a signal, *at*, ii. 5. 32, cf. iv. 1. 5; of descent, ii. 1. 3; of other relations of origin or source, i. 5. 10, ii. 2. 16, 3. 14, iii. 1. 12; of means, *with, by means of*, i. 1. 9 = ii. 6. 5, cf. ii. 5. 7, iv. 7. 27; of cause, **ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου**, *of their own accord*, i. 2. 17. In the phrase, **ἀπὸ ἵππου**, *on horseback*, i. 2. 7, **ἀπό** is used with reference to the starting-point of the action; cf. iii. 3. 10 and i. 8. 15.

ἀποβάλλω (βάλλω), *throw away, lose*, iv. 6. 10.

ἀποβιβάζω (βιβάζω, βιβάσω or βιβῶ, ἐβίβασα, causative of βαίνω), *cause to go off, disembark*, i. 4. 5.

ἀποβλέπω (βλέπω), *look away, look* towards something, **εἴς τινα**, i. 8. 14.

ἀπογιγνώσκω (γιγνώσκω), *give up the thought* or *intention of*, with gen., i. 7. 19.

ἀποδείκνῡμι (δείκνῡμι), *point out, show*; with inf. *direct*, ii. 3. 14; *appoint*, i. 1. 2, 9. 7; pass., **εἰ ἀποδειχθείη τίνας χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι**, *if it should be settled who are to lead*, iii. 2. 36.

ἀποδέρω (δέρω, δερῶ, ἔδειρα, δέδαρμαι, ἐδάρην, *flay*; the simple verb is

used chiefly in poetry), *take the skin off, flay, skin*, iii. 5. 9.

ἀποδιδρᾰ́σκω (διδρᾰ́σκω, δρᾰ́σομαι, ἔδρᾰν, δέδρᾰκα, *run*, only in composition), *run away, escape, desert*, esp. so that the fugitive's whereabouts are unknown, while **ἀποφεύγω** implies that he can not be overtaken by pursuers; i. 4. 8, ii. 2. 3, 5. 7, iv. 6. 3.

ἀποδίδωμι (δίδωμι), *give back*, iv. 2. 19, 23, esp. what is due, as wages, *pay*, i. 2. 11, 12, or gratitude, **χάριν ἀποδιδόναι**, like *gratiam referre, return a favor, recompense*, i. 4. 15; *give* what has been promised, i. 7. 5, 8.

ἀποδοκέω (δοκέω), only impers., **ἀποδοκεῖ**, opp. of **δοκεῖ**, *not seem good*; **ἀποδοκεῖ ἡμῖν τὰς σπονδὰς ποιήσασθαι**, *we decide not to make the truce*, ii. 3. 9.

ἀποδοῦναι, see **ἀποδίδωμι**.

ἀποδραίη, ἀποδρᾶναι, see **ἀποδιδρά́σκω**.

ἀποδύω (δύω), *strip*; mid. and 2 aor. act., *strip oneself, take off one's clothes*, iv. 3. 17.

ἀποθανεῖν, see **ἀποθνήσκω**.

ἀποθνήσκω (θνήσκω), *die*, iii. 2. 18; *be killed, fall in battle*, i. 9. 31, iv. 1. 8, ptc. **οἱ ἀποθανόντες**, *the dead, the slain*, iii. 4. 5, iv. 2. 23; *be put to death*, i. 6. 11, iii. 1. 13, with **ὑπό** and gen., ii. 6. 29.

ἀποθύω (θύω), *sacrifice* what has been vowed (cf. **ἀποδίδωμι**), iii. 2. 12, iv. 8. 25.

ἀποικίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (οἶκος), *settlement, colony*, iv. 8. 22.

ἀποκαίω (καίω), *burn off*; said also of extreme cold, *freeze off*, iv. 5. 3.

ἀποκάμνω (κάμνω), *grow tired, become weary*, iv. 7. 2.

ἀπόκειμαι (κεῖμαι), *lie away, be laid* or *stored up*, ii. 3. 15.

ἀποκλείω (κλείω, κλείσω, ἔκλεισα, κέκλεικα, κέκλειμαι, ἐκλείσθην, *shut, close*), *shut off, cut off, intercept*, said of soldiers, iv. 3. 20.

ἀποκλίνω (κλίνω, κλινῶ, ἔκλῑνα, κέκλιμαι, ἐκλίθην or ἐκλίνην, *bend, lean*, cf. Lat. *inclīno*), intrans., *turn aside*, ii. 2. 16.

ἀποκόπτω (κόπτω), *cut off*; of a hostile force, *beat off*, iii. 4. 39, iv. 2. 10, 17.

ἀποκρῑ́νομαι (κρῑ́νω), *answer, give an answer, reply*; abs., i. 4. 16, ii. 1. 15, 3. 20; with obj. in acc., i. 4. 14, ii. 5. 42, a rel. clause, ii. 1. 9; the answer is a direct quotation, ii. 1. 22, with **ὅτι**, i. 6. 8, 8. 16, iv. 8. 6; or an ind. quotation with **ὅτι**, i. 3. 20, ii. 1. 10, etc.; the person answered is in the dat., i. 4. 14, ii. 4. 5, the proposition answered in acc. with **πρός**, ii. 5. 39.

ἀποκρύπτω (κρύπτω), *hide away, conceal*, iv. 4. 11; mid. *hide, conceal* for oneself, i. 9. 19.

ἀποκτείνω (κτείνω), *kill, put to death*, i. 1. 3, 7, 2. 20, ii. 1. 8, 11, 3. 23, iii. 1. 18, iv. 7. 22.

ἀπολαμβάνω (λαμβάνω), *take from, take back, recover*, i. 2. 27, 4. 8; *cut off, intercept*, ii. 4. 17, iv. 3. 21.

ἀπολείπω (λείπω), *leave behind, abandon, desert*, of persons, i. 4. 8, ii. 6. 12, iv. 2. 20; of a place, iv. 2. 15; pass. *be left behind, fall behind*, iv. 3. 22, 5. 16.

ἀπόλεκτος, ον (ἀπολέγω, *select*), *selected, picked*, ii. 3. 15.

ἀπόλλῡμι (ὄλλῡμι, ὀλῶ, ὤλεσα, **ὀλόμην**, **-ολώλεκα** or **ὄλωλα**, *destroy*; the simple verb is poetic), *destroy, put to death*, ii. 4. 3, 5. 39, iii. 1. 38, 2. 4; *lose*, iii. 4. 11, with **ὑπό** and gen., *at the hands of, through the agency of*; intrans., *perish, die, be killed*, i. 2. 25, ii. 5. 41, iii. 1. 2, 38; with **ὑπό** and gen. of cause, *die of*, i. 5. 5, ii. 2. 11. (Cf. *Apollyon*, in Rev. ix. 11, and in *Pilgrim's Progress*.)

Ἀπόλλων, *ωνος*, acc. **Ἀπόλλωνα** and **Ἀπόλλω**, voc. **Ἄπολλον**, *ὁ*, *Apollo*, the god of music and poetry, of prophecy, and of healing, the son of Zeus and Leto, and the twin brother of Artemis. In the story of the flaying of Marsyas (i. 2. 8), Apollo appears as the champion of his favorite instrument, the cithara or the lyre, against the

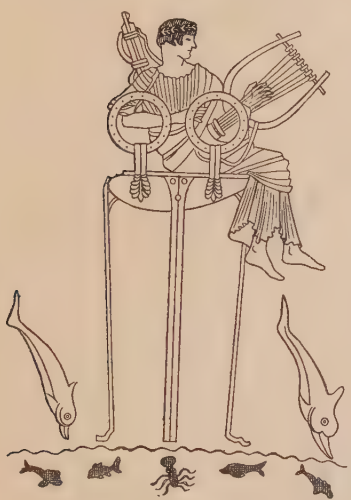


Fig. 4.

flute of Marsyas. He had a very famous temple and oracle at Delphi, iii. 1. 5, 6. Fig. 4, from a vase in the Vatican, shows Apollo with the cithara in his hands and his bow and quiver at his back, seated on a tripod and riding over the sea. The original shows a pair of huge wings attached to the tripod; they are omitted here for economy of space.

Ἀπολλωνίδης, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Apollonides*, a Lydian who had passed himself off as a Boeotian and held a captaincy. He displayed cowardice in a council of the Greek leaders, and his nationality being discovered, he was expelled, iii. 1. 26–32.

ἀπολωλέκατε, see *ἀπόλλυμι*.

ἀπόμαχος, *ον* (*μάχη*), lit., *away from the battle*, hence *disabled*, *unfit for service*, *non-combatant*, iii. 4. 32, iv. 1. 13.

ἀπονοστέω, **ἀπονοστήσω**, etc. (*νόστος*, *a return home*), *return home*, *go home*, iii. 5. 16. (Mostly poetic, but used by Thucydides.)

ἀποπέμπω (*πέμπω*), *send off*, *despatch*, i. 2. 1, *dismiss*, *send away*, i. 7. 8, iii. 1. 9, similarly in mid. i. 1. 5; *send back*, i. 1. 3, ii. 1. 20; *send* what is due, of tribute, i. 1. 8.

ἀποπηδάω (*πηδάω*, *πηδήσομαι*, *ἐπήδησα*, *πεπήδηκα*, *spring*, *jump*), *spring away*, *hasten away*, iii. 4. 27.

ἀποπλέω (*πλέω*), *sail away*, *sail back*, *sail home*, i. 3. 14, 4. 7.

ἀπορέω, **ἀπορήσω**, etc. (*ἄπορος*), *be without a way*, *be helpless*, *perplexed*, *in doubt*, *at a loss*, so also in mid., iii. 5. 8; with dat. of cause, i. 3. 8, 5. 13; *be in want of*, *lack*, with gen., i. 7. 3, ii. 2. 11.

ἀπορίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *ἡ* (*ἄπορος*), *lack of means*, *perplexity*, *embarrassment*, *difficulty*, iii. 1. 2, 11, 12, 26; with explanatory inf., i. 3. 13; with gen., *lack*, *want*, ii. 5. 9.

ἄπορος, *ον* (*πόρος*), *without a way*, *impassable*, of a road, mountains, a river, ii. 4. 4, 5. 18, iii. 2. 22; hence *impracticable*, *impossible*, iii. 3. 4; as subst., *τὸ ἄπορον*, *difficulty*, *obstacle*, iii. 2. 22; of persons, *without means* of helping oneself, *without resources*, *helpless*, ii. 5. 21.

ἀπόρρητος, *ον* (*√Fερ*, *Fρε*, *speak*), *not to be spoken*, *secret*, i. 6. 5.

ἀποσήπω (*σήπω*, *σήψω*, *σέσηπα*, *ἐσάπην*, *cause to rot*), *cause to rot off*;

pass. and 2 perf. act., *rot off, be rotted off*; οἱ ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσεσηπότες, *those whose toes had been frozen off*, iv. 5. 12.

ἀποσκάπτω (σκάπτω, σκάψω, ἔσκαψα, ἔσκαφα, ἔσκαμμαι, ἐσκάφην, *dig*), *dig off, ditch off, cut off by a ditch*, ii. 4. 4.

ἀποσκεδάννῡμι (σκεδάννῡμι), *scatter in different directions*: mid. and pass., οἱ ἀποσκεδαννῡμενοι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου, *the stragglers*, iv. 4. 9, 15.

ἀποσκηνόω (σκηνόω), *encamp away, apart from*, iii. 4. 35.

ἀποσπάω (σπάω), trans., *draw away, withdraw*, i. 8. 13; intrans., *withdraw from, get away from*, with gen., ii. 2. 12; πολὺ ἀπέσπᾱ φεύγουσα, *it far outstripped the pursuers*, "put a long interval between itself and its pursuers" (Dakyns), i. 5. 3.

ἀποστέλλω (στέλλω), *send away, send back*, ii. 1. 5.

ἀποστῆναι, see ἀφίστημι.

ἀποστρατοπεδεύομαι (στρατοπεδεύω), *encamp apart from, away from*, iii. 4. 34.

ἀποστρέφω (στρέφω), *turn back, make turn back*, ii. 6. 3, iv. 8. 28.

ἀποστροφή, ῆς, ἡ (ἀποστρέφω), *a turning aside*; esp. *a place of refuge, asylum*, ii. 4. 22.

ἀποσῦλάω (σῦλάω, σῦλήσω, etc., *strip, plunder*), *plunder*, i. 4. 8.

ἀποσχεῖν, ἀπόσχωμεν, see ἀπέχω.

ἀποσῴζω (σῴζω), lit. *save back; bring back safely*, ii. 3. 18.

ἀποτείνω (τείνω), *extend*, pass., i. 8. 10.

ἀποτειχίζω (τειχίζω, τειχιῶ, etc., *build a wall*), *wall off*, ii. 4. 4.

ἀποτέμνω (τέμνω, τεμῶ, ἔτεμον or ἔταμον, τέτμηκα, τέτμημαι, ἐτμήθην), *cut off*, i. 10. 1, iii. 1. 17, iv. 7. 16; with retained acc. in pass., ἀποτμηθέντες τὰς κεφαλάς, *being beheaded*, ii. 6. 1, 29; in military language, *cut off, intercept*, iii. 4. 29.

ἀποτίθημι (τίθημι), *put away, store up*, ii. 3. 15.

ἀποτίνω (τίνω, τείσω, ἔτεισα, τέτεικα, τέτεισμαι, ἐτείσθην, *pay, atone*), *pay* what is due (cf. ἀποδίδωμι), *atone for*; mid., *require atonement, exact a penalty, punish*, iii. 2. 6.

ἀπότομος, ον (ἀποτέμνω), *cut off, precipitous, steep* [iv. 1. 2], iv. 7. 2.

ἀποτρέπω (τρέπω), *turn aside, turn off*; in mid. intrans., iii. 5. 1.

ἀποφαίνω (φαίνω), *show forth*; mid. τὴν γνώμην ἀποφαίνεσθαι, *declare one's opinion*, i. 6. 9.

ἀποφεύγω (φεύγω), *flee away, escape, get beyond reach of pursuit*, i. 4. 8, ii. 2. 13, 5. 7, iii. 4. 9. (cf. ἀποδιδράσκω).

ἀπόφραξις, εως, ἡ (φράττω, *fence in*), *a fencing off, blockade*, iv. 2. 25, 26.

ἀποχωρέω (χωρέω), *go away* or *back, retreat, withdraw*, i. 10. 13, iv. 2. 21; with ἐκ and gen., i. 2. 9, ἔξω and gen., iii. 4. 15, πρός and acc., iv. 2. 24.

ἀποψηφίζομαι (ψηφίζω; ἀπό negative as in ἀποδοκέω), *vote not to do a thing, vote against, reject a proposal* (by vote), i. 4. 15.

ἀπροσδόκητος, ον (προσδοκάω), *unexpected*; ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου (cf. Lat. *ex improviso*), *unexpectedly, without warning*, iv. 1. 10.

ἀπροφασίστως, adv. (προφασίζομαι), *making no excuses, without evasion* or *shirking, willingly*, ii. 6. 10.

ἅπτω, ἅψω, ἧψα, ἧμμαι, ἥφθην, *fasten, kindle*; mid. *fasten oneself to, lay hold of, touch*, with gen., i. 5. 10.

ἄρα, inferential particle, postpositive, *accordingly, then, so*, i. 7. 18; sometimes to be rendered *as*

it turned out, as the result showed, ii. 2. 3, iv. 2. 15; after **εἰ**, *perhaps, possibly*, ii. 4. 6, iii. 2. 22.

ἆρα (strengthened form of **ἄρα**), interrogative particle, generally not to be translated; with **οὐ** it expects the answer *yes*, like Lat. *nōnne*, iii. 1. 18.

Ἀραβία, ας, ἡ, *Arabia*, the great peninsula between the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf, including the territory lying to the north and northeast of it, up to the Euphrates river. The name was also applied loosely to adjacent regions inhabited by nomadic tribes of Arabs; so of a part of Mesopotamia south of the Araxes, now El Jezireh (*the island*), i. 5. 1.

Ἀράξης, ου, ὁ, *Araxes*, a tributary of the Euphrates, flowing from the north. The river is called **Χαβώρας** by most writers, and is the modern Khabur, i. 4. 19.

Ἀρβάκης, ου, ὁ, *Arbaces*, one of the four commanders of Artaxerxes' army, i. 7. 12.

Ἀργεῖος, α, ον, *Argive, belonging to Argos* or *Argolis*, the territory of which Argos was the chief city; as subst., *an Argive*, iv. 2. 13, 17. In early times the Argives were one of the most powerful Greek peoples, but during the greater part of the historical period down to the Macedonian conquest the Spartans were the political leaders in the Peloponnesus, and the power of Argos declined. During certain periods of the Peloponnesian war the Argives were allied with Athens against Sparta. The city of Argos, one of the oldest in Greece, was situated in the lower valley of the Inachus, not far from the sea. Its citadel was on the high hill called Larisa.

ἀργός, ή, όν (for **ἀϝεργός**, *without work*; cf. **ἔργον**), *inactive, idle, lazy*, iii. 2. 25.

ἀργυρέος, ᾶ, ον (in Attic regularly contracted to **ἀργυροῦς, ᾶ, οῦν**; **ἄργυρος**, *silver*, **ἀργός**, *white*), *of silver, silver*, iv. 7. 27.

ἀργύριον, ου, τό (orig. dim. of **ἄργυρος**, *silver*), *silver*, esp. coined silver, then in general, *money*, i. 4. 13, ii. 6. 16, iii. 2. 21.

ἀργυρόπους, ὁ, ἡ (**πούς**), *with silver feet*, iv. 4. 21.

ἄρδω (in Attic prose only pres. and impf.), *water, irrigate*, ii. 3. 13.

ἀρέσκω, ἀρέσω, ἤρεσα, *please*, with dat., ii. 4. 2.

ἀρετή, ῆς, ἡ, *excellence* of any kind; esp. *bravery, valor* in war, ii. 1. 12, 13, iv. 7. 12; *magnanimity, generous spirit*, i. 4. 9; **ἀρετὴ περί τινα**, *good conduct, good service* to a person, i. 4. 8.

ἀρήγω, ἀρήξω, *help, bring aid* or *succor*, i. 10. 5. (Mostly poetic.)

Ἀριαῖος, ου, ὁ, *Ariaeus*, a Persian, in command of the non-Greek troops of Cyrus, led the left wing at the battle of Cunaxa, i. 8. 5, but fled at the news of Cyrus's death, i. 9. 31, 10. 1, ii. 1. 3. He refused the offer of the Greeks to place him on the throne, ii. 2. 1, and after making a treaty with the Greeks and discussing with them plans for the return, ii. 2. 8–12, went over to the king, who pardoned his defection, ii. 4. 1. He was afterwards implicated in the treacherous murder of the Greek generals, ii. 5. 35, 38–40.

ἀριθμός, οῦ, ὁ, *number*, i. 7. 10, *enumeration*, i. 2. 9; **ἀριθμὸς τῆς ὁδοῦ**, *the length of the march* [ii. 2. 6].

ἀριστάω, ἀριστήσω, etc. (**ἄριστον**), *breakfast, take breakfast*, iii. 3. 6, iv. 1. 14, 3. 10, 6. 9.

Ἀριστέας, ου, ὁ, *Aristeas*, a Chian, an efficient officer of light-armed troops, iv. 1. 28, 6. 20.

ἀριστερός, ά, όν, *left*, of the hand or foot, ii. 3. 11, iv. 2. 28; **ἡ ἀρι-**

στερά, with χείρ understood, *the left side*, so ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς, *on the left*, ii. 4. 28, iv. 3. 16, 8. 2.

Ἀρίστιππος, ου, ὁ, *Aristippus*, a Thessalian. He received from Cyrus enough money to support a large force of mercenaries, whom he afterwards despatched to join the expedition against Artaxerxes, i. 1. 10, 2. 1. According to Plato (Meno 1), he belonged to the noble family of the Aleuadae.

ἄριστον, ου, τό (ἦρι, *early*), *breakfast*. In early times this meal was eaten immediately after rising; so in the Odyssey. But at the time of the Anabasis the usual hour for breakfast was later in the forenoon, perhaps about eleven o'clock. i. 10. 19, ii. 3. 5, iv. 5. 30. ἐκ τοῦ ἀρίστου, *after breakfast*, iv. 6. 21.

ἀριστοποιέω, *prepare breakfast, prepare for breakfast*; generally mid. **ἀριστοποιέομαι,** *prepare breakfast for oneself, get breakfast*, iii. 3. 1, iv. 3. 9, 6. 8.

ἄριστος, η, ον (sup. of ἀγαθός), *best*, in any sense, *excellent*, ii. 2. 20, iv. 2. 28; τὰ πολέμια, *ablest in war, bravest*, i. 6. 1; so ἄριστος alone, iii. 1. 24; *noblest, of highest station*, i. 5. 7, 6. 4, 8. 27, 9. 3; *most advantageous*, i. 3. 12, ii. 1. 9, 17; as adv., neut. pl. ἄριστα, *in the best manner, most successfully*, i. 9. 5, iii. 1. 6. (Cf. *aristocrat*.)

Ἀριστώνυμος, ου, ὁ, *Aristonymus*, of Methydrium in Arcadia, a captain of hoplites who exhibited bravery on several occasions, iv. 1. 27, 6. 20, 7. 9 ff.

Ἀρκαδικός, ή, όν (Ἀρκάς), *Arcadian*; as subst. τὸ Ἀρκαδικόν, *the Arcadian contingent*, iv. 8. 18.

Ἀρκάς, άδος, ὁ, *Arcadian, inhabitant of Arcadia*, i. 2. 1, ii. 1. 10, etc. Arcadia was the high central district of the Peloponnesus, a plateau bordered by mountains and in many places broken and intersected by them. The Arcadians were a brave and hardy race, and, like the Swiss in modern times, were frequently employed as mercenary soldiers. They, with the Achaeans, formed more than half of the Greek force under Cyrus.

ἀρκέω, ἀρκέσω, ἤρκεσα, *suffice, be enough*; with πρός and acc., ii. 6. 20.

ἄρκτος, ου, ἡ, *bear, she-bear*, i. 9. 6; *the constellation of the Bear, Ursa Major*; hence πρὸς ἄρκτον, *towards the north*, i. 7. 6, iii. 5. 15.

ἅρμα, ατος, τό (√ἀρ, in ἁραρίσκω, *fit*), *chariot*, esp. *war-chariot*. In the Homeric age war-chariots were used by the Greeks, but in Xenophon's time the use of the chariot was confined to the race-course. The chariots mentioned in the Anabasis are all Persian war-chariots. These were sometimes armed with projecting blades (see δρεπανηφόρος). The shape and

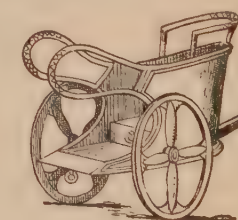


FIG. 5.

plan of the Greek chariot may be seen from the accompanying cut. The vehicle consisted of the box or bed (δίφρος), which was open behind and rested immediately upon the axle (ἄξων). The upper edge of the δίφρος was surmounted by a curved rim (ἄντυξ). The curved handles projecting behind may have served to assist in

mounting or in shifting the position of the chariot when the horses were not attached. The

FIG. 6.

low, broad-tired wheels often had only four spokes, but sometimes six or eight. Fig. 6 shows a charioteer gathering up the reins in the act of mounting a four-horse chariot. It is from a vase in Munich. See also cut under *ἡνίοχος*. i. 2. 16, 7. 10, 8. 3, etc.

ἁρμάμαξα, *ης*, *ἡ* (*ἅρμα*, *ἅμαξα*), *covered carriage*; the *ἁρμάμαξα* was a four-wheeled vehicle furnished with cushions and curtains, and was designed especially for the use of women. i. 2. 16, 18.

Ἀρμενίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *ἡ*, *Armenia*, Old Persian *Aramaniya*, the high country of Asia Minor, especially that lying along the upper courses of the Euphrates and the Tigris. The territory included under this name varied in extent at different times, and its limits are not stated with exactness. It is very mountainous, and the climate is hot in summer, but very severe in winter, snow lying on the ground for three or four months. Travellers report that the inhabitants still live in the primitive manner described in iv. 5. 25. iii. 5. 17, iv. 3. 1, 4. 1, 4, 5. 34.

Ἀρμένιος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *Armenian*, as adj. and subst., iv. 3. 4, 5. 33.

ἄρνειος, *ᾱ*, *ον* (*ἀρνός*, gen., no nom. in use, *of a lamb*), *of a lamb*, *κρέα*, iv. 5. 31.

ἁρπαγή, *ῆς*, *ἡ* (cf. *ἁρπάζω*), *robbing*, *plundering*; *καθ' ἁρπαγήν*, *after plunder* or *booty*, iii. 5. 2.

ἁρπάζω, *ἁρπάσω* or *ἁρπάσομαι*, *ἥρπασα*, *ἥρπακα*, *ἥρπασμαι*, *ἡρπάσθην*, *seize*, *carry off*, *plunder*, *capture*, of persons, animals, or things, i. 2. 25, 27, 10. 3, iv. 5. 12; of a strategic point, *occupy*, *capture*, iv. 6. 11; of a strong current, *sweep away*, iv. 3. 6.

Ἅρπασος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Harpasus*, a river flowing between the country of the Chalybes and that of the Scytheni. It is probably the modern Chorok or Choruk, which flows in a northeasterly direction and empties into the Black Sea at its eastern extremity. iv. 7. 18.

Ἀρταγέρσης, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Artagerses*, commander of the 6,000 cavalry that formed Artaxerxes' body-guard in the battle of Cunaxa; said to have been slain by Cyrus. i. 7. 11, 8. 24.

Ἀρταξέρξης, *ου*, *ὁ* (old Persian *Artakshatza* or *Artakshathra*), *Artaxerxes*, the name of three Persian kings. The Artaxerxes of the Anabasis is Artaxerxes II., called Mnēmon on account of his good memory. He was the eldest son of Darius II., and his reign extended from 405 to 361 or 359 B.C. i. 1. 1 ff., ii. 4. 25.

Ἀρτάοζος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Artaozus*, a trusted friend of Cyrus who went over to the king after the battle of Cunaxa, and was concerned in the murder of the Greek generals. ii. 4. 16, 5. 35.

Ἀρταπάτης, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Artapates*, the most faithful attendant of Cyrus, who was slain upon his master's body at Cunaxa, i. 6. 11, 8. 28.

ἀρτάω, *ἀρτήσω*, etc., *hang on to, fasten to*, iii. 5. 10.

Ἄρτεμις, *ιδος, ἡ*, *Artemis*, Lat. *Diāna*, the goddess of hunting, daughter of Zeus and Leto, and twin-sister of Apollo. Other characteristics, such as the power of bringing pestilence or sudden death, she had in common with Apollo. As goddess of hunting she was especially worshipped at Agrae in Attica, where the great annual sacrifice mentioned at iii. 2. 12 was performed. The Artemis to whom allusion is made in i. 6. 7 is probably the Ephesian Artemis, an Oriental divinity who had originally nothing to do with the Greek goddess.

ἄρτι, adv., *just, just now* or *just then*, iv. 6. 1.

ἀρτοκόπος, *ου, ὁ* (*ἄρτος*, *√qep, peq, cook*), *baker*, iv. 4. 21. Fig. 7,

Fig. 7.

from a figure in terra-cotta found at Tanagra, represents a baker at work.

ἄρτος, *ου, ὁ*, *loaf of bread*, i. 9. 26, ii. 4. 28, esp. of wheaten loaves (cf. Plato *Rep.* 372 B), but sometimes as a general term for bread, whether of wheat or barley, iv. 5. 31.

Ἀρτούχᾱς, *ᾱ* (Doric gen.), *ὁ*, *Artūchas*, a general in the king's army, iv. 3. 4.

Ἀρχαγόρᾱς, *ᾱ* or *ου, ὁ*, *Archagoras*, an Argive exile, captain in the Greek army, iv. 2. 13, 17.

ἀρχαῖος, *ᾱ, ον* (*ἀρχή*), *from the beginning*, hence *ancient, old*, iii. 1. 4, iv. 5. 14; adverbially, *τὸ ἀρχαῖον, formerly*, i. 1. 6; **Κῦρος ὁ ἀρχαῖος**, *Cyrus the Elder*, i. 9. 1.

ἀρχή, *ῆς, ἡ* (*ἄρχω*), *beginning*; hence *leadership, rule, sovereignty*, ii. 1. 11, 3. 23, iii. 4. 8; *realm, dominion, province*, i. 1. 2, 3, 5. 9, 9. 13, ii. 3. 29. (Cf. *monarchy*.)

ἀρχηγός, *οῦ, ὁ*, *one who begins, prime mover*; then *leader*, iii. 1. 26. (With this sense perhaps only here in Attic prose.)

ἀρχικός, *ή, όν* (*ἄρχω*), *efficient as a commander*, ii. 6. 8, 20.

ἄρχω, *ἄρξω, ἦρξα, ἦργμαι, ἤρχθην*, *begin*, esp. begin what is to be continued by others, with gen., i. 4. 15, 6. 5, iii. 1. 24, 2. 17; mid. *begin* what one continues oneself, generally without regard to the question whether others follow or not, abs., iii. 2. 9, with inf. i. 3. 1, 8. 18, ii. 6. 14, iii. 1. 26, 34, with gen. iii. 2. 7; *be foremost, rule, reign over*, abs. i. 9. 1, 4, ii. 1. 4, 6. 21, with gen. i. 1. 8, 4. 10, 9. 19; *command, lead*, of a military officer, abs., ii. 2. 6, or with gen. i. 7. 11, 8. 9, 10. 7, ii. 6. 19. Hence as subst., *ἄρχων, ruler*, ii. 1. 3, iv. 5. 28; *commander, leader*, i. 1. 2, 8. 22, ii. 1. 8, 2. 21, 6. 15, iii. 1. 38, 2. 30; *ὁ ἄρξας, the former ruler*, i. 4. 10. Pass. *be ruled, subject oneself to authority, obey*, i. 3. 15, 9. 4, ii. 6. 12, 15; as subst., *those under command, soldiers*, ii. 6. 19, iii. 2. 30.

ἄρωμα, *ατος, τό* (cf. Eng. *aroma*), *spice, sweet herb*, i. 5. 1.

ἀσέβεια, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*ἀσεβής*), *impiety, unrighteousness*, iii. 2. 4.

ἀσεβής, *ές* (*σέβομαι, venerate, worship*), *impious, ungodly, unrighteous*, ii. 5. 20.

ἀσθενέω, ἀσθενήσω, etc. (*ἀσθενής*), *be weak, sick, ill*, i. 1. 1, iv. 5. 19, 21, 22. (Cf. *neurasthenia*.)

ἀσθενής, *ές* (*σθένος, strength*), *not strong, weak*, i. 5. 9.

ἀσινῶς, adv. (*σίνομαι, injure*), *without harm, doing no injury*, ii. 3. 27; *ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα ἀσινέστατα, doing as little harm as possible*, iii. 3. 3.

ἄσιτος, *ον* (*σῖτος*), *without food*, ii. 2. 16, iv. 5. 11.

ἀσκέω, ἀσκήσω, etc., *practise, devote oneself to*, ii. 6. 25 (cf. Eng. *ascetic*).

ἀσκός, *οῦ*, *ὁ*, *bag made of skin, leather bag*, generally made of a goat's hide; the seams where the hide was sewed together were daubed with pitch to prevent leaking. The skin about the neck was drawn together to form the mouth of the bag, which was secured by a cord. Bags of this kind were used, and are still used in the Orient, for carrying wine and other liquids. Along the Euphrates inflated skins were fastened together so as to make a raft, see *σχεδία*. Cf. also iii. 5. 9.

ἄσμενος, η, ον (perhaps an old aor. mid. ptc. from *ἀνδάνω, please*, √*ἁδ*), *well pleased, glad*, always with a verb, hence to be translated as an adv., *gladly, with pleasure*; *ἄσμενός σε ἑώρακα, I am glad to see you*, ii. 1. 16, cf. iii. 4. 24, iv. 5. 22.

Ἀσπένδιος, *ᾱ*, *ον*, *inhabitant of Aspendus* (*Ἄσπενδος*), *Aspendian*, i. 2. 12. Aspendus was a large city of Pamphylia on the river Eurymedon, about seven miles from its mouth. Ruins of some extent exist near Balkiz.

ἀσπίς, *ίδος*, *ἡ*, *shield*, i. 5. 13, iv. 3. 29. The shield of the Greek hoplite in Xenophon's time was generally circular, and large enough to reach from the chin to the knee. Somewhat larger oval shields were also used. These were sometimes notched at the sides, a form that is called Boeotian, as the round form is called Argive. Wooden shields were carried by the Egyptian mercenaries, i. 8. 9, ii. 1. 6. Those of the Greeks were of wood covered with hide and strengthened with plates or studs of metal, or else they were entirely of metal. In either case they were quite heavy, cf. iii. 4. 47. A boss (*ὀμφαλός*) at the centre served to turn aside hostile blows. The shield was considerably dished, so that it could be used to hold a liquid, ii. 2. 9. Across the hollow of the shield ran a bar or band through which the arm was thrust, while the hand grasped a loop or handle at the edge, as shown in Fig. 8. The large oval shields were carried in a somewhat different manner, by means of a handle (*πόρπαξ*) and a baldric (*τελαμών*). When not in use, shields were covered with a casing of leather to protect them from dampness. The outside of the shield was often decorated with devices of a heraldic or fanciful nature. As the shield was carried on the left arm, *παρ' ἀσπίδα* in military language = *to the left*, iv. 3. 26. By a metonymy, the weapon for the warrior, *ἀσπίς* is used collectively as a term for heavy-armed troops, i. 7. 10, *ἀσπὶς μυρία καὶ τετρακοσία*, 10,400 hoplites.

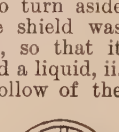


Fig. 8.

ἀσταφίς, *ίδος*, *ἡ*, collective noun, *dried grapes, raisins*, iv. 4. 9.

ἀστράπτω, aor. *ἤστραψα, flash, glitter*, i. 8. 8.

ἀσφαλής, *ές* (*σφάλλω, cause to fall*), *not falling, steadfast*, hence *safe, secure*, iii. 2. 19, 36, iv. 3. 12. *ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ, in a safe position*, iv.

7. 8; comp., ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ, *in greater security*, iii. 2. 36; superl., ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ, *in the safest place*, i. 8. 22.

ἄσφαλτος, ου, ἡ, *asphalt*, a kind of mineral pitch, used as mortar in Assyria and Babylonia, ii. 4. 12.

ἀσφαλῶς (ἀσφαλής), *in security, safely, without danger*, i. 3. 19, iii. 4. 6, iv. 7. 9, sup. ἀσφαλέστατα, i. 3. 11, iii. 2. 27. ἀσφαλῶς ἔχειν, *be safe*, iv. 3. 27.

ἄτακτος, ον (τάττω), *not arranged, not in military order, in disorder*, i. 8. 2, iii. 4. 19.

ἀταξίᾱ, ας, ἡ (τάττω), *disorder, lack of discipline, insubordination*, iii. 1. 38 (cf. Eng. *ataxia*).

ἀτάρ, adversative conj. (weakened form of αὐτάρ), *but, however*; used to introduce a rhetorical question, objecting to something that has gone before, and passing to a new suggestion, iv. 6. 14. (Most frequent in poetry.)

ἀτασθαλίᾱ, ας, ἡ, *presumptuous wickedness, wantonness*, iv. 4. 14. (Mostly poetic and late prose.)

ἅτε, adv. (really neut. pl. of ὅστε), *as*; generally used with the causal participle, emphasizing the cause as natural or easily understood under the circumstances, *inasmuch as, because*, iv. 2. 13, 5. 18, 8. 27.

ἀτέλεια, ας, ἡ (τέλος, *tax, duty*), *freedom from taxes*, hence in general *exemption from service* or *duty*, iii. 3. 18.

ἀτῑμάζω, ἀτῑμάσω, etc. (τιμή), *dishonor, disgrace*, i. 1. 4, 9. 4.

ἀτμίζω, ἀτμίσω (ἀτμός, *steam, vapor*), *steam*, iv. 5. 15.

ἀτριβής, ές (τρίβω, *rub*), *unworn*, of roads, *untrodden*, iv. 2. 8.

Ἀττικός, ή, όν (Ἀθῆναι), *of Athens, belonging to Athens, Attic*, i. 5. 6.

αὖ, adv., postpositive, *again*, i. 1. 7; adversatively, often preceded by δέ, *on the other hand, in turn, for my* (*his, their*, etc.) *part*, i. 10. 5, ii. 3. 27, 6. 5, iii. 1. 20, 4. 20; with slight opposition, *moreover, again*, i. 7. 11, 10. 11, ii. 6. 7, 18, iii. 1. 32, 2. 27, iv. 3. 1, 23.

αὐαίνω, αὐανῶ, -ηύνα, ηὐάνθην (αὖος, *dry*), *dry, dry up*; pass., *dry up, wither*, ii. 3. 16.

αὐθημερόν, adv. (αὐτός, ἡμέρα), *on the same day*, iv. 4. 22, 5. 1.

αὖθις, adv. (αὖ), *again, once more, a second time*, i. 10. 10, iv. 7. 2; αὖθις δέ, in correlation with πρῶτον μέν, *in the second place*, ii. 4. 5; cf. iv. 2. 12, where αὖθις = *next, afterwards*.

αὐλίζομαι, ηὐλισάμην and **ηὐλίσθην,** the latter being preferred by Xenophon (αὐλή, *open place, court*), *lodge in the open air, bivouac*, ii. 2. 17; then in general, *spend the night, have quarters*, iv. 1. 11, 3. 1.

αὐλών, ῶνος, ὁ, *a hollow*, esp. a channel for water, *canal, ditch*, ii. 3. 10.

αὔριον, adv., *to-morrow*, iv. 6. 8; αὔριον πρώ, *early to-morrow morning*, ii. 2. 1.

αὐτίκα, adv. (αὐτός), *at this very moment, immediately*, i. 8. 2, ii. 5. 34, iii. 2. 32; *presently, in a moment*, ii. 1. 9; strengthened by μάλα, *instantly*, iii. 5. 11.

αὐτόθεν, adv. (αὐτός), *from the very spot, from there, thence*, iv. 2. 6, 7. 17.

αὐτόθι, adv. (αὐτός), *in the very place, just there, there*, i. 4. 6, 11, iv. 5. 15, 8. 20.

αὐτοκέλευστος, ον (αὐτός, κελεύω), *self-bidden, of their own accord*, iii. 4. 5.

αὐτόματος, η, ον (αὐτός, ν μα, *strive*), *self-prompted, of their own accord, spontaneously*, iv. 3. 8; with like meaning, the phrase ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, *of their own accord, without command*, i. 2. 17.

αὐτομολέω, αὐτομολήσω, ηὐτομόλησα (*αὐτόμολος*), orig. *go unbidden*, hence, *go over* to the enemy, *desert*, i. 10. 6; with *παρά* or *ἐκ* and gen., i. 7. 13, ii. 1. 6; with *πρός* and acc., ii. 2. 7.

αὐτόμολος, ον (*αὐτός, √μολ*, in *βλώσκω, ἔμολον, move*), *one who moves at his own will*, hence *deserter*, i. 7. 2.

αὐτός, ή, ό, intensive pronoun (neut. preceded by art. often *ταὐτόν*), *self*, preceded by article, *same*. As an intensive pron. it is used to give emphasis to some person or thing mentioned, *myself, himself, itself*, etc.; so alone in the nominative case, or with another pronoun, or with a subst., when it takes the pred. position and omits the article only when the subst. is a proper name (but cf. i. 7. 11, and see *βασιλεύς*); cf. also the phrase *αὐταῖς τριήρεσι* below. i. 5. 13, 6. 7, 10. 17, iii. 1. 4, 44, 2. 4, iv. 3. 28, 4. 6, 7. 10; so in the sense of *very, exactly*, *αὐτὸ τοῦτο, this very thing*, i. 9. 21, cf. iii. 2. 4, iv. 7. 7. Sometimes it implies that the persons or things mentioned, and they only, are meant, hence translated *alone, by themselves*, ii. 3. 7, 4. 10, iv. 7. 11, so *αὐτοὶ ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν*, iii. 2. 11; sometimes to be rendered by an adverb, *right, quite, just*, *ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ στρατεύματος, right over the army*, iii. 4. 41, cf. iv. 3. 11; as a reflexive it appears alone, i. 1. 5, ii. 5. 28, or with personal pronouns, ii. 3. 22, iii. 1. 37, 2. 14. Note the phrase *αὐταῖς τριήρεσι*, i. 3. 17, where *αὐτός* emphasizes the idea of accompaniment expressed by the dat.; translate, *together with the ships*, or *ships and all*. Preceded by the article, *the same*, i. 1. 7, 10. 10, iv. 5. 31, often with dat. of resemblance, *the same as, identical with*, ii. 2. 10, 5. 31, 6. 22; the neut. *τὸ αὐτό* or *ταὐτόν* often means *the same place* or *the same condition* or *footing*, so with various prepositions, i. 8. 14, ii. 4. 11, iii. 1. 27. In other cases than the nom. it is used as a simple unemphatic pron. of the third person, *him, her, it*, etc., i. 1. 2, ii. 1. 5, iii. 1. 17, and so *passim*. (Cf. *autograph, autocrat, automobile*, and other derivatives.)

αὐτόσε, adv. (*αὐτός*), *to that place, thither*, iv. 7. 2.

αὐτοῦ, adv. (gen. of *αὐτός*), *in the very place, there, here*, i. 3. 11, 5. 13, 10. 17, ii. 1. 21, 2. 1, iii. 2. 24, iv. 2. 22, 3. 28, 5. 23.

ἀφ', for *ἀπό*, by elision and euphonic change.

ἀφαιρέω (*αἱρέω*), *take away*; mid., *take away for oneself, take away, deprive*, with accs. of the person and of the thing, either of which may be omitted when readily supplied from the context, i. 3. 4, 9. 19, iii. 1. 30, 4. 48, iv. 1. 14, or with acc. and gen. iv. 4. 12.

ἀφανής, ές (*φαίνω*), *invisible, unseen, out of sight*, i. 4. 7, iv. 2. 4; *uncertain, unknown*, ii. 6. 28.

ἀφανίζω, ἀφανιῶ, ἠφάνισα, ἠφάνικα (*φαίνω*), *cause to disappear, hide, obscure*, iii. 4. 8; fig., *annihilate. destroy utterly*, iii. 2. 11.

ἀφειδῶς, adv. (*ἀφειδής, unsparing*), *unsparingly, relentlessly*, sup. *ἀφειδέστατα*, i. 9. 13.

ἀφθονίᾱ, ας, ἡ (*ἄφθονος*), *abundance, plenty*, i. 9. 15.

ἄφθονος, ον (*φθόνος, envy, grudge*), *without grudging* or *stint, lavish, abundant, plentiful*, iii. 1. 19; pl. *τὰ ἄφθονα, abundance, plenty*, iii. 2. 25, iv. 5. 29.

ἀφίημι (*ἵημι*), *send off, send away*, in various senses; *send, let go, dismiss*, i. 3. 19, iv. 5. 24, 30; *let go free, allow to escape, free*, ii. 3. 25, iv. 1. 12; *let loose*, of an animal, ii. 2. 20; *let flow*, of water, ii. 3. 13; of an anchor, *let down*, iii. 5. 10.

ἀφικνέομαι, ἀφίξομαι, ἀφῖκόμην, ἀφῖγμαι (the simple verb is mostly poetic), *come to, arrive at, get to, reach*, of places and persons, with various prepositions, **εἰς, παρά, πρός, ἐπί**, i. 1. 5, 2. 3, 4. 19, ii. 2. 8, iii. 1. 43, iv. 1. 5, 7. 18, etc.; with **παρά** and gen. of person from whom, i. 1. 5; **εἰς γῆρας ἀφικνεῖσθαι**, *reach old age, live to be old*, iii. 1. 43.

ἀφιππεύω (**ἱππεύω, ἱππεύσω**, *ride*), *ride off, ride back*, i. 5. 12.

ἀφίστημι (**ἵστημι**), *set aside, remove*, then *cause to revolt*; intrans. (mid., 2 aor., perf., plupf. and fut. perf. act.), *be removed, go away, withdraw*, ii. 5. 7; *fall away, revolt, go over* to an enemy, abs. i. 4. 3, ii. 4. 5, iii. 2. 17; with **πρός** and acc. i. 1. 6; with gen. of person from whom, ii. 6. 27; the ideas of going away and revolting are blended in i. 6. 7, where **εἰς** with acc. is used.

ἄφοδος, ου, ἡ (**ὁδός**), *a way of withdrawing, retreat*, iv. 2. 11.

ἄφρων, ἄφρον, gen. **ἄφρονος** (**φρήν**, *diaphragm* as the seat of thought, hence *mind*), *without sense, out of one's head*, iv. 8. 20.

ἀφύλακτος, ον (**φυλάττω**), *unguarded, undefended*, ii. 6. 24.

Ἀχαιός, ᾱ, ον, *Achaean*, as subst. **ὁ Ἀχαιός**, *an Achaean*. Achaea lay along the north shore of the Peloponnesus, being bounded on the north by the Gulf of Corinth, on the east by Secyon, on the south by Arcadia and Elis, on the west by Elis and the Gulf of Cyllene. A large proportion of the Greeks in the army of Cyrus were Achaeans, i. 1. 11, etc.

ἀχάριστος, ον, or **ἀχάριτος, ον** (**χάρις**, *grace, favor*), *without grace, unpleasant*; **λέγεις οὐκ ἀχάριστα**, *you speak very prettily*, ii. 1. 13; *ungracious, thankless, ungrateful*, of persons; then of things, *unrewarded*, i. 9. 18.

ἀχαρίστως, adv., *ungratefully, without thanks*, ii. 3. 18.

ἄχθομαι, ἀχθέσομαι, ἠχθέσθην (**ἄχθος**, *burden, distress*), orig. *bear a burden*, hence *suffer an inconvenience, be troubled, displeased, annoyed, grieved*, abs. i. 1. 8; with cogn. acc., iii. 2. 30.

ἀχρεῖος, ον (**χρεία**, *use, service*), *useless, of no service*, iv. 6. 26.

ἄχρηστος, ον (**χρηστός**, *useful, good*), *useless*, iii. 4. 26.

ἄχρι, temporal conj., rare in Attic Greek, with **ἄν** and subjunctive, *until*, ii. 3. 2.

ἀψίνθιον, ου, τό (cf. Fr. and Eng. *absinthe*), *wormwood*, i. 5. 1.

B

Βαβυλών, ῶνος, ἡ (Bâb-îlu, *gate of God*), *Babylon*, situated on the lower Euphrates in the district where the distance between the Euphrates and the Tigris is least. It was one of the most ancient cities of Lower Mesopotamia, and one of the most famous of the ancient world. No records of its foundation are preserved, but it is known to have been the capital of Mesopotamia in 2300 B. C. It was first captured by the Assyrians about 1300 B. C. Sennacherib in 690 B. C. completely destroyed it, but it was restored by his successor Esarhaddon. Under Nabopolassar and Nebuchadnezzar (625–562) it attained its greatest splendor. It was built on both sides of the Euphrates in the form of a great square, each side of which, according to Herodotus (i. 178), was 120 stadia in length. Its most celebrated building was the temple of Merodach (Marduk), but its Hanging Gardens were counted among the wonders of the world. Babylon was captured by the Persians under Cyrus the Great in 538 B. C.,

and spoiled by Xerxes (486–465). Under Persian and Macedonian supremacy it gradually decayed, and in the first century A. D. it was deserted. Extensive ruins, which have been partly excavated, exist at Hillah. i. 4. 11, 5. 5, ii. 4. 12, iii. 5. 15.

Βαβυλωνία, ας, ἡ, *Babylonia*, the territory of Babylon, a fertile plain traversed by many canals for irrigation, extending from the Median Wall (see **Μηδίας τεῖχος**) on the north, to the Persian Gulf on the south, i. 7. 1.

Βαβυλώνιος, α, ον, *of Babylon, Babylonian*, **χώρα**, ii. 2. 13.

βάδην, adv. (**βαίνω**), *at a walk, in a walking gait*, iv. 8. 28; **βάδην ταχύ**, as a military term, *at a quick step*, without breaking ranks; while the phrase **δρόμῳ θεῖν** is applied to a rapid advance in which the ranks were more or less broken, iv. 6. 25.

βάθος, ους, **τό** (cf. Eng. *bathos*), *depth*, i. 7. 14, iii. 5. 7, iv. 5. 4.

βαθύς, εῖα, ύ, *deep*, i. 7. 14.

βαίνω, -**βήσομαι,** -**έβην, βέβηκα;** -**βέβαμαι,** -**εβάθην,** *step, walk*; perf. *have stepped, stand*, iii. 2. 19.

βακτηρία, ας, ἡ (cf. Lat. *baculum, staff*, Eng. *bacteria*), *staff, walking-stick, cudgel*, ii. 3. 11, iv. 7. 26.

βάλανος, ου, **ἡ,** *acorn*, and then any object having the general shape of an acorn; **βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων**, *dates*, ii. 3. 15, cf. i. 5. 10.

βάλλω, βαλῶ, **ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην,** *throw, throw at, pelt*; abs. iii. 4. 25, iv. 2. 12, **οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες** = **ἀκοντισταί**, iii. 3. 15; with dir. obj. i. 3. 1, iii. 4. 49. Pass., **βαλλόμενοι**, *under fire, exposed to the enemy's missiles*, iv. 7. 6, similarly, with retained acc., iv. 6. 12. (Cf. Eng. *ballistic*.)

βάπτω, βάψω, **ἔβαψα, βέβαμμαι, ἐβάφην,** *dip, dip in*, ii. 2. 9. (Cf. Eng. *baptize*.)

βαρβαρικός, ή, όν (**βάρβαρος**), *barbaric, not Greek, foreign*, iv. 5. 33, esp. with **στράτευμα**, i. 3. 14, 7. 14, 8. 14, ii. 4. 9; with **στράτευμα** omitted, **τὸ βαρβαρικόν**, *the Persian contingent* in Cyrus's army, i. 2. 1, 5. 6, 8. 5.

βαρβαρικῶς, adv., *in the foreign language*, i. e. *in Persian*, i. 8. 1.

βάρβαρος, ον (cf. Sanskrit *barbara*, Lat. *balbus, stammering*; hence the Greek word may be applied to foreigners with reference to their unintelligible speech), *non-Greek, foreign, barbarian*; as adj. i. 7. 3, ii. 5. 32; more frequently as subst., *foreigner, barbarian*, applied to persons of any nationality other than Greek, iii. 1. 5, iv. 2. 3, 5. 21, in the Anab. most frequently to Persians, i. 1. 5, 3. 5, 6, ii. 1. 3, 6. 28, etc.; the word is even put into the mouth of Cyrus and Tissaphernes, themselves Persians, i. 5. 6, 7. 3, ii. 3. 19, 4. 16.

βαρέως, adv. (**βαρύς**. *heavy*, cf. Eng. *barytone*), *heavily, grievously*; for the latter sense cf. Eng. "Why looks your grace so heavily today?" Phrase **βαρέως ἔφερον**, Lat. *graviter ferebant, were grieved, distressed*, ii. 1. 4; **βαρέως ἤκουσαν**, *they heard with displeasure*, ii. 1. 9.

Βασίας, ου, **ὁ,** *Basias*, an Arcadian killed by the Carduchi, iv. 1. 18.

βασιλεία, ας, ἡ (**βασιλεύς**), *kingdom, sovereignty, royal power*, i. 1. 3, iii. 2. 15.

βασίλειος, ον (**βασιλεύς**), *of a king, royal*, i. 2. 20, 10. 12, ii. 1. 4; neut. as subst., **βασίλειον**, *royal dwelling, palace* of a king or a lesser ruler, iii. 4. 24, iv. 4. 2, more frequent in pl. because a royal establishment might comprise many buildings, i. 2. 7, 23, 4. 10, etc. (Cf. Eng. *Basil*.)

βασιλεύς, έως, ὁ (cf. Eng. *basilisk*), *king*, i. 2. 12, iii. 4. 12; in the

Anab. generally referring to the king of Persia, when the word is practically a proper name and the article is omitted, i. 1. 5, ii. 3. 1, etc., but cf. i. 10. 6, ii. 4. 4; so with *μέγας*, i. 2. 8, 4. 11, 7. 2, 16, ii. 3. 17, 4. 3. As an epithet of Zeus, iii. 1. 12. *παρὰ βασιλεῖ*, *at court*, i. 2. 27.

βασιλεύω, *βασιλεύσω*, etc. (*βασιλεύς*), *be king*, *reign*, i. 1. 4, 4. 18, ii. 2. 1.

βασιλικός, *ή*, *όν* (*βασιλεύς*), *kingly*, i. 9. 1; *of a king*, *royal*, ii. 2. 12, 16, iii. 5. 16. (Cf. *basilica*.)

βάσιμος, *ον* (cf. *βαίνω*), *passable*; *ἕως βάσιμα ἦν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἤγεν*, *he led on horseback as long as he could ride*, iii. 4. 49; lit., *as long as there were passable* (*places*), *i. e.* for the horse.

βατός, *ή*, *όν* (*βαίνω*), *that can be traversed*, *passable*, iv. 6. 17.

βέβαιος, *ᾱ*, *ον* (*√βα*, cf. *βαίνω*), orig. *firm under foot*, hence in general *firm*, *steadfast*, *trustworthy*, i. 9. 30.

Βέλεσυς, *υος*, *ὁ*, *Belesys*, a satrap of Syria, i. 4. 10.

βέλος, *ους*, *τό* (*βάλλω*), *that which is thrown*, *missile*, used of javelins, arrows, sling-stones, etc., iii. 3. 16, iv. 3. 6; *ἔξω βελῶν*, *out of range*, iii. 4. 15.

βέλτιστος, *η*, *ον* (akin to *βούλομαι*, hence orig. *most desirable*), *best* in any sense; of military effectiveness, i. 1. 6; of expediency, ii. 5. 41. (Used as superl. of *ἀγαθός*.)

βελτίων, *ον* (cf. *βούλομαι*), used as comp. of *ἀγαθός*, *better*, *nobler*, *braver*, *more advantageous*, ii. 2. 1, iii. 2. 23, 32, 3. 5.

βῆμα, *ατος*, *τό* (*βαίνω*), *step*, iv. 7. 10.

βίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *ἡ*, *might*, *force*, *violence*; *βίᾳ*, *by force*, *by storm*, i. 4. 4, iii. 4. 12.

βιάζομαι, *βιάσομαι*, etc. (*βίᾱ*), *force*, *compel*, with inf. i. 3. 1; *overcome by force*, *overpower*, i. 4. 5.

βιαίως, adv. (*βίαιος*, *violent*), *with force*, *violently*, *severely*, i. 8. 27.

βῖκος, *ου*, *ὁ* (prob. a Semitic word), *jar*, a vessel used for transporting wine. Nothing is known about its size and shape. i. 9. 25.

βίος, *ου*, *ὁ* (related to Lat. *vīvus*, *alive*, Eng. *quick*; cf. *biology*, *biography*), *life*, i. 1. 1, 9. 30.

βιοτεύω, *βιοτεύσω*, etc. (*βίος*), *live*, *subsist*, iii. 2. 25.

βλάβη, *ης*, *ἡ* (cf. *βλάπτω*), *damage*, *hurt*, *disadvantage*, ii. 6. 6.

βλᾱκεύω (*βλάξ*, *slack*), *be negligent* or *lazy*, *shirk*, ii. 3. 11.

βλάπτω, *βλάψω*, *ἔβλαψα*, *βέβλαφα*, *βέβλαμμαι*, *ἐβλάφθην* or *ἐβλάβην*, *injure*, *harm*, *damage*, ii. 5. 17, iii. 3. 11, 14, iv. 8. 3.

βλέπω, *βλέψομαι*, *ἔβλεψα*, *look*, *πρός τι*, iv. 1. 20; *look* to one as an example, with *πρός* and acc., iii. 1. 36; of inanimate things, *point*, *be directed*, with *εἰς* and acc., i. 8. 10.

βοάω, *βοήσομαι*, *ἐβόησα*, *shout*, *call*, *cry aloud*, with dat. and the words shouted as dir. quotation, iv. 7. 24, dat. and *ὅτι* clause, i. 8. 1, or dat. and inf., like verbs of commanding, i. 8. 12, 19, cf. iv. 3. 22.

βοή, *ῆς*, *ἡ*, *shout*, *shouting*, *cry*, iv. 7. 23.

βοήθεια, *ᾱς*, *ἡ* (*βοηθέω*), *aid*, *succor*, *help*, esp. of aid in military operations, *reinforcements*, ii. 3. 19, iii. 5. 4.

βοηθέω, *βοηθήσω*, etc. (*βοή*, *θέω*), orig. *run at a cry for help*, *go to the rescue*, *bring aid*, abs. i. 9. 6, iv. 8. 13, with dat. ii. 4. 20, 25, iii. 4. 13; with *ἐπί* and acc. of the enemy, *ὑπέρ* and gen. of thing defended, iii. 5. 6.

βόθρος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *pit*, *depression*, *hole*, iv. 5. 6.

Βοιωτίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *ἡ*, *Boeotia*, a country of Greece, bounded on the north by

the Opuntian Locris, on the east by the Euboean Sea and Attica, on the south by Attica, Megaris, and the Gulf of Corinth, and on the west by Phocis. The country is mostly level, with large lakes and marshes. The climate was damp and moist, and the soil rank and fertile. Other Greeks, especially the Athenians, regarded the Boeotians as dull and boorish, and are said to have called them swine in derision. Yet the nation was a sturdy one, and produced men of great worth not only in military matters and public life, but also in art and letters. iii. 1. 31.

βοιωτιάζω (*Βοιώτιος*), *play the Boeotian*; *τῇ φώνῃ, speak in the Boeotian dialect*, that is, with a broad accent, iii. 1. 26.

Βοιώτιος, ᾱ, ον (*Βοιωτός, a Boeotian*), *of Boeotia, Boeotian*; as subst., *a Boeotian*, ii. 5. 31, 6. 16.

Βορέᾱς, *ου*, or **Βορρᾶς,** *ου*, *ὁ*, *Boreas*, the *North Wind*, with *ἄνεμος*, iv.

Fig. 9.

5. 3. The wind-god Boreas was said to dwell among the mythical Rhipaean mountains, in the far north, and thither he carried off the Attic maiden Oreithyia. This scene is depicted in Fig. 9, which represents Boreas as a powerful man of fierce aspect, with rough, bristly hair and beard, and great wings. (From a vase-painting.)

βόσκημα, *ατος, τό* (*βόσκω, feed*), *that which is fed* or *pastured*; pl., *cattle* on the pasture, iii. 5. 2.

βουλεύω, *βουλεύσω*, etc. (cf. *βούλομαι*), *plan, devise*, with acc. and dat., ii. 5. 16; much more frequent in mid., *advise with oneself, take counsel, consider, deliberate*, abs. i. 6. 6, ii. 3. 8, iii. 2. 36, 3. 3; with *πρός* and acc. i. 3. 19, 20, or *περί* and gen., ii. 3. 20; the plan considered may be an object in the acc., i. 1. 7, 10. 10, an indirect question, i. 3. 11, 10. 5, iv. 3. 14, 6. 8, or an object clause with *ὅπως*, i. 1. 4, iv. 6. 7, 8. 9; *decide upon, resolve upon*, with acc., iii. 1. 34, 3. 2.

βουλῑμιάω, *ἐβουλῑμίασα* (*βοῦς, λῑμός*), orig. *have ox-hunger* (cf. *horse-chestnut, horse-laugh*), that is, *inordinate hunger, be in a state of collapse from hunger*, iv. 5. 7, 8.

βούλομαι, *βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην* (cf. Lat. *volo*, Eng. *will*), *will, desire, wish*, abs. ii. 1. 5, iii. 4. 41, or with acc., ii. 3. 4; with simple inf., i. 1. 11, 5. 7, ii. 1. 10, iii. 1. 25, iv. 2. 11, 5. 32, etc.; with acc. and inf., i. 1. 11, ii. 1. 18, 5. 29, iii. 1. 45; *choose, prefer*, ii. 6. 6. Phrase *ὁ βουλόμενος, he that wishes, anybody that likes*, i. 3. 9, 7. 4.

βοῦς, *βοός, ὁ, ἡ* (cf. Lat. *bōs*), *ox, cow*, ii. 1. 6, iii. 5. 9, iv. 5. 25, 6. 17, 8. 23; by metonymy, *ox-hide*, iv. 5. 14, 7. 22.

βραδέως, adv. (*βραδύς, slow*), *slowly*, i. 8. 11.

βραχύς, εῖα, *ύ, short*, of space and time; *βραχύ* as adv., *a short distance*, i. 5. 3; so comp. *βραχύτερα, less far, not so far*, iii. 3. 7; *ἐπὶ*

βραχὺ ἐξικνεῖσθαι, have a short range, iii. 3. 17. (Eng. *brachylogy.*)

βρέχω, *ἔβρεξα, βέβρεγμαι, ἐβρέχθην, wet*, iii. 2. 22, iv. 3. 12; pass. *get wet*, i. 4. 17, iv. 5. 2.

βροντή, *ῆς, ἡ, thunder, clap of thunder*, iii. 1. 11, 4. 12.

βρωτός, *ή, όν* (*βιβρώσκω, eat*), *eatable*, iv. 5. 5, 8.

βωμός, *οῦ, ὁ* (akin to *βαίνω*), *a raised place*, esp. *an altar*, in early times rudely constructed of earth or unhewn stone, but later often built of fine stone or marble and richly ornamented. It had various shapes; a common one is shown in the cut under **θυσίᾱ,** which see. Solemn oaths and affirmations were made at an altar, i. 6. 7. In the race-course the start was made from an altar, iv. 8. 28.

Γ

γαμέω, *γαμῶ, ἔγημα, γεγάμηκα, γεγάμημαι, marry*, act. of the man, mid. and pass. of the woman, iv. 5. 24.

γάμος, *ου, ὁ, marriage, ἄγειν ἐπὶ γάμῳ, take home as wife*, ii. 4. 8. (Cf. Eng. *bigamy, polygamy.*)

γάρ, causal conjunction, postpositive (*γέ* + *ἄρα*), *for*, giving an explanation or confirmation of some statement which generally precedes the *γάρ* clause; so i. 2. 2, 3. 3, 11, and very frequently. When it gives an explanation that has been announced in the foregoing sentence, it is omitted in translating, i. 7. 4, ii. 5. 11, iii. 2. 29. Giving a specification, *for example*, i. 9. 25. The statement of which the clause with *γάρ* gives an explanation is sometimes only implied in what goes before, so i. 3. 17, *ἐγὼ γὰρ ὀκνοίην*, "the suggestion that we should ask for transports is not a good one, for," etc.; so in questions, i. 7. 9, and in answers, where there may be an ellipsis of *yes* or *no*, i. 6. 8, ii. 5. 40. Such ellipsis is especially common in the phrases *ἀλλὰ γάρ, καὶ γάρ, καὶ γὰρ οὖν*, for which see *ἀλλά* and *καί*.

γαστήρ, *γαστρός, ἡ, belly*, ii. 5. 33, iv. 5. 36.

Γαυλίτης, *ου, ὁ, Gaulītes*, a Samian exile, friend of Cyrus, i. 7. 5.

γέ, enclitic intensive particle, generally untranslatable. Its force can sometimes be given by emphasizing certain words either by stress of the voice or by giving them an emphatic position in the sentence. It is frequently associated with *εἰ* and with temporal conjunctions; with *εἰ* it appears to lay stress upon the certainty with which the statement contained in the apodosis follows from the truth of the protasis, hence *εἴ γε* may perhaps be rendered *as surely as*, i. 7. 9, 9. 18; with *ἐπεί* and *ἐπειδή* causal, *γέ* may be translated, *as you know, you see*, i. 3. 9, 9. 24; with semi-causal *ἕως*, i. 3. 11. It strongly emphasizes the word it follows, *εὖ γε*, i. 4. 8; so with pronouns, iii. 1. 27, iv. 6. 3, but with *ἐγώ* it may be rendered *I for my part*, i. 9. 28, see *ἔγωγε*; with *ὅς* it has a slight causal or explanatory force, i. 6. 5, *qui quidem.* With restrictive force, *at least, at any rate*, i. 3. 21, 10. 3, ii. 3. 23, 4. 4, 5. 19. The combinations *γε μήν, γε μέντοι* are used in passing to a new subject, i. 9. 16, 20; i. 9. 14, ii. 3. 9, iii. 1. 27.

γεγενῆσθαι, *γέγονα*, see *γίγνομαι.*

γείτων, *γείτονος, ὁ* (*γῆ*), *neighbor*, with gen. or dat., ii. 3. 18, iii. 2. 4.

γελάω, *γελάσομαι, ἐγέλασα, ἐγελάσθην, laugh*, ii. 1. 13.

γέλως, *ωτος, ὁ* (*γελάω*), *laughter*, i. 2. 18, iv. 8. 28.

γέμω, only pes. and impf., *be full*, with gen., iv. 6. 27.

γενεά, ᾶς, ἡ (*γένος*), *birth, time of birth*; **ἀπὸ γενεᾶς**, *from birth, of age*, ii. 6. 30. (Cf. Eng. *genealogy.*)

γενειάω (*γένειον, beard*), *have a beard, be bearded*, ii. 6. 28.

γένος, ους, τό (√**γεν**, cf. *γίγνομαι*), *birth, family*, i. 6. 1.

γέρρον, ου, τό, a *shield* made of wicker-work covered with rawhide, used by Persians, Chaldeans, and other eastern peoples, ii.

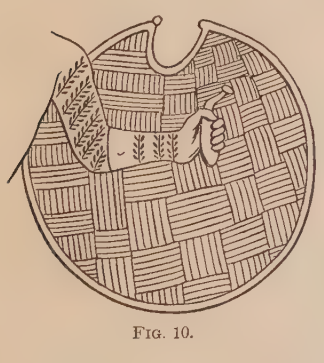


FIG. 10.

1. 6, iv. 3. 4, 6. 26, 7. 22. Fig. 10, taken from a vase of the Cimmerian Bosporus, shows a *γέρρον* on the arm of an Amazon.

γερροφόρος, ου, ὁ (*γέρρον*), *one who carries a shield of wicker-work*; pl., *troops with such shields*, i. 8. 9.

γέρων, οντος, ὁ, *old man*, iv. 3. 11.

γεύω, γεύσω, etc. (cf. Lat. *gusto, taste*), *cause to taste, give a taste of*; mid., *taste*, with gen., i. 9. 26, iii. 1. 3.

γέφῡρα, ας, ἡ, *bridge*, ii. 3. 10, 4. 17, iii. 4. 19; **γέφυρα ἐζευγμένη πλοίοις**, *a bridge of boats, pontoon-bridge*, i. 2. 5, ii. 4. 24; cf. ii. 4. 13, where *γέφυρα* is used of an ordinary bridge as distinguished from one of boats.

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ, *earth, land, country, ground*, i. 3. 4, 5. 1, 8. 10, iii. 2. 19, 5. 10; **κατὰ γῆν**, *by land, on the land*, i. 1. 7, iii. 2. 13. (Cf. *geography.*)

γήλοφος, ου, ὁ (**γῆ, λόφος**), *hill, elevation*, i. 5. 8, 10. 12, iii. 4. 24, iv. 4. 1.

γῆρας, *γήρως, τό* (akin to *γέρων*), *old age*, iii. 1. 43.

γίγνομαι, *γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, γέγονα* and *γεγένημαι* (√**γεν**), *come into being, become, be, be made*; the word is susceptible of a great variety of translations, which must be determined by the context. Of men, *be born*, with gen., i. 1. 1, iii. 2. 13; but note the phrases **τῶν μετὰ Κῦρον γενομένων**, *of those who lived after Cyrus*, i. 9. 1; **γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου**, *descended from D.*, ii. 1. 3; **οἱ εἰς τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες**, *those under thirty years old*, ii. 3. 12. Of events, *happen, take place, result, go on, be in progress*, i. 6. 5, 9. 30, ii. 4. 2, 5. 2, 33. Of the day, *dawn, break*, ii. 2. 13, 4. 24; of evening or darkness, *come on*, i. 8. 8, iv. 2. 4. Of a tumult, or a storm, *arise*, i. 5. 12, 8. 2, iii. 4. 35, iv. 1. 15, cf. iv. 2. 7; of snow, *fall*, iv. 4. 8; of oaths and solemn agreements, *be given, be made, be concluded*, ii. 2. 2, 3. 6, 5. 3, 6. 2; of troops, *be organized*, iii. 3. 20; of numbers, *amount to*, i. 2. 9, 7. 10; of taxes, *be paid, come in*, i. 1. 8; of sacrifices and the omens taken from them, *turn out right, be favorable*, ii. 2. 3. With pred. adj., *become*; also *prove oneself, show oneself to be*, i. 6. 8, 10. 7, iv. 1. 26. Sometimes *γίγνομαι* differs little from *εἰμί*, as ii. 1. 14; so with dat. of poss., i. 9. 18; and, like *εἰμί*, with an inf. may mean *be possible*, i. 9. 13. With adverbs of place (**εἴσω, ἔξω,**

ἐντός, ἐγγύς, ὄπισθεν), *get, make one's way, come*, i. 7. 16, 8. 8, 23, 24, 10. 3, iii. 3. 7, 4. 14, iv. 2. 15. Note the phrases **ἐν ἑαυτῷ γίγνεσθαι**, *come to himself, recover his self-control*, i. 5. 17; **δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις**, *the soldiers broke into a run*, i. 2. 17.

γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην, *know, recognize*, with acc. of person, ii. 5. 35, iii. 1. 45; with acc. of thing, *perceive, recognize, know, think, hold an opinion, understand*, i. 3. 13, 6. 7, ii. 3. 19, 5. 16, iv. 8. 4; abs., *understand, comprehend*, iii. 1. 27; *be of an opinion*, iv. 6. 10; *be convinced, know, have an opinion, observe, learn*, with a **ὅτι** clause, i. 3. 2, ii. 2. 15, 21, 4. 22, iii. 3. 4; with acc. and inf., i. 3. 12, 9. 17; with acc. and partic., i. 7. 4, 9. 20, ii. 5. 13.

Γλοῦς, οῦ, ὁ, Glūs, son of Tamos the Egyptian, an officer of Cyrus, i. 4. 16, 5. 7. He announced the death of Cyrus to the Greeks, ii. 1. 3, and afterwards went over to Artaxerxes, ii. 4. 24.

γνώμη, ης, ἡ (√**γνω** in **γιγνώσκω**), *knowledge, judgment*, hence **γνώμῃ κολάζειν**, *to punish deliberately, on principle*, ii. 6. 9; **ἄνευ γνώμης τινός**, *without the knowledge and consent of a person, against one's will*, i. 3. 13; *way of thinking*, hence **οὕτω τὴν γνώμην ἔχετε**, *be assured of this, make up your minds to this*, i. 3. 6; **πρός τινα τὴν γνώμην ἔχειν**, *be on one's side*, ii. 5. 29; *opinion, view*, i. 6. 9, ii. 2. 10, iii. 1. 41; *intention, purpose*, i. 8. 10; *expectation*, i. 7. 8.

γονεύς, έως, ὁ (√**γεν**, cf. **γίγνομαι**), *parent, progenitor, father*; pl., *parents*, iii. 1. 3.

γόνυ, γόνατος, τό (cf. Lat. *genū*, Eng. *knee*), *knee*, i. 5. 13, iii. 2. 22; of reeds, *joint, knot*, iv. 5. 26; cf. in English *cypress-knees*.

Γοργίᾱς, ου, ὁ, *Gorgias*, a celebrated rhetorician of Leontini in Sicily. In 427 B. C. he came to Athens on an embassy, and his accomplishments gained him so flattering a welcome that he remained in Greece, visiting many cities besides Athens, and giving instruction for large fees. Proxenus studied under him (ii. 6. 16), but his most famous pupil was the orator Isocrates. He reached a great age; the approximate dates of his birth and death are 485 and 389 B. C.

γοῦν, particle (**γέ** + **οὖν**), stronger than **γέ**, giving the reason for, or a confirmation of, a foregoing statement, *at least, at any rate, anyhow*, iii. 2. 17.

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφην (cf. Eng. *graphic, geography*, etc.), orig. *scratch*, hence *engrave, draw, paint; write*, ii. 3. 1, 6. 4; of a letter, with **παρά** and acc., i. 6. 3.

γυμνάζω, γυμνάσω, etc. (**γυμνός**, cf. Eng. *gymnasium, gymnastics*), orig. *train naked*, then in general *exercise*, i. 2. 7.

γυμνής, ῆτος, ὁ (**γυμνός**), *light-armed foot-soldier*, i. 2. 3, iii. 4. 26, iv. 1. 6, 6. 17, 20. The name is generally given to troops without defensive armor, as bowmen and slingers, but is also applied to peltasts, iv. 1. 28, cf. 26.

Γυμνιάς, άδος, ἡ, *Gymnias*, a city of the Scythēni in Armenia. Its site has not been identified with certainty, iv. 7. 19.

γυμνικός, ή, όν (**γυμνός**), *relating to physical exercise* (because practised without clothing), *athletic, gymnastic*, iv. 8. 25.

γυμνός, ή, όν, *naked*, iv. 3. 12; less strictly, *lightly clad*, without the outer garments, i. 10. 3, iv. 4. 12; of soldiers, *exposed*, with **πρός** and acc., that is, not defended by the shield, iv. 3. 6.

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ, *woman, wife*, i. 2. 12, 4. 8, iii. 1. 3, iv. 1. 14, 3. 11, 19, etc.; *chief wife, queen*, as distinguished from other women in the harem of a Persian king, ii. 3. 17, iii. 4. 11.

Γωβρύᾱς, ᾱ or **ου, ὁ,** *Gobryas*, one of the four generals of the king's army, i. 7. 12.

Δ

δάκνω, δήξομαι, ἔδακον, δέδηγμαι, ἐδήχθην, *bite*, iii. 2. 18, 35.

δακρύω, δακρύσω, ἐδάκρυσα, δεδάκρῡμαι (**δάκρυ,** *tear*), *weep*, i. 3. 2, iv. 7. 25.

δακτύλιος, ου, ὁ (**δάκτυλος**), *finger-ring, ring*, iv. 7. 27. This passage shows that even common soldiers wore rings, hence the custom must have been a general one. Seal-rings with engraved

Fig. 11.

Fig. 12.

settings were especially common. Others were purely for ornament. Two Greek rings are shown in Figs. 11 and 12. One has a movable setting, a gem engraved with a figure of Athena, the other is remarkable for its fanciful form.

δάκτυλος, ου, ὁ, *finger*; **τῶν ποδῶν,** *toe*, iv. 5. 12.

Δᾱμάρᾱτος, ου, ὁ, *Dēmarātus*, a king of Sparta who was deposed by his colleague Cleomenes I, and fled for protection to the court of Darius Hystaspis. By Darius he was presented with certain cities of Teuthrania. He accompanied Xerxes on his expedition to Greece. Descendants of Demaratus were still rulers of Teuthrania at the time of the Anabasis, ii. 1. 3.

Δάνα, τά, *Dana*, a city of southern Cappadocia north of the Taurus mountains, now Kilissa-Hissar, i. 2. 20.

δαπανάω, δαπανήσω, etc., *spend, spend money, incur expenses*, with **ἀμφί** or **εἰς** and acc., i. 1. 8, 3. 3, ii. 6. 6.

δάπεδον, ου, τό (Doric word), *earth, ground*, iv. 5. 6.

Δαρδανεύς, εως, ὁ, *Dardanian*, an inhabitant of Dardanus, a city of the Troad on the Hellespont, iii. 1. 47.

Δάρδας, ατος, ὁ, *Dardas*, a small river of Syria. It seems to have been west of Thapsacus, but its course has not been traced with certainty, i. 4. 10.

δᾱρεικός, οῦ, ὁ (**Δᾱρεῖος**), originally an adjective with **στατήρ** understood, *a stater of Darius, a daric*, i. 1. 9, 3. 3, 21, ii. 6. 4, iv. 7. 27. (Compare the Latin *Philippus*, French *Louis d'or*, *Napoléon*; but it has been suggested that the word is from the Babylonian *dariku, weight, measure*, and has no connection with **Δαρεῖος**.) The daric was equivalent to 20 silver drachmas, as appears from i. 7. 18, where 3,000 darics are mentioned as equal in value to 10 talents, or 60,000 drachmas. Hence (see *s. v.* **μνᾶ**), the gold of the daric would be worth about $3.60, though its actual purchasing power probably amounted to $5 or $5.50. Fig. 13 shows a daric with a figure of the king wearing his crown and holding bow and sceptre.

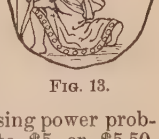


Fig. 13.

Δαρεῖος, ου, ὁ (Old Persian *Darayavush*), *Darius*, the name of several Persian kings. The Darius of the Anabasis is Darius II, whose real name was Ochus, an illegitimate son of Artaxerxes. Deposing his brother Sogdianus he became king about 425 B.C., and reigned until 405, i. 1. 1, 7. 9.

δασμός, οῦ, ὁ (δαίω, *divide*; chiefly Ionic and poetic), *division, distribution*; hence, *tribute, tax*, because fixed amounts were demanded of the different subjects of the king or the different provinces of his realm, i. 1. 8. Tribute was payable sometimes in money, sometimes in kind. Thus certain districts of Armenia furnished horses as a part of their tribute, iv. 5. 24, 34.

δασύς, εῖα, ύ (akin to Lat. *dēnsus, thick*), *dense, thick*, esp. with trees or shrubs, *thickly-wooded, bushy*, iv. 8. 26; with dat., πίτυσι, δένδρεσι, iv. 7. 6, 8. 2; perhaps with gen. of material, ii. 4. 14, see note; τὸ δασύ, *thicket, copse*, iv. 7. 7; *with thick hair, shaggy, rough*, said of hides, iv. 7. 22.

δαψιλής, ές, *plentiful, abundant*, iv. 2. 22, 4. 2. (Equivalent to ἄφθονος, which Attic writers prefer.)

δέ, postpositive adversative conjunction, *but*. The adversative relation is often very weak, and while to the Greek a clause with δέ introduced some matter opposed more or less directly to what had gone before, this opposition can often not be rendered in the English idiom, and hence it is sometimes permissible to translate δέ by *and, however, furthermore, yet*; so in i. 1. 5 and many other places. We even find δέ in a co-ordinated series when καί has been previously used to connect the members, iii. 2. 36. μέν in the preceding clause prepares the hearer for the δέ clause that is to follow. With regard to the translation of μέν . . . δέ, see under μέν. In clauses thus balanced, the second clause, while formally co-ordinate with the first, may sometimes be translated as if subordinate to it, δέ being rendered by *while*. μέν is sometimes omitted with the first clause, i. 7. 5, 9, iii. 1. 23, 4. 7. For the combinations καὶ . . . δέ, δ' οὖν, οὐδὲ . . . δέ, see καί, οὖν, οὐδέ.

δεδιώς, see δείδω.

δεδογμένα, see δοκέω.

δέδοικα, see δείδω.

δεδομέναι, see δίδωμι.

δέῃ, δεηθῆναι, δεῖ, see δέω, *lack*.

δείδω, δείσομαι (pres. and fut. Homeric, perf. with pres. meaning), ἔδεισα, δέδοικα and δέδια, *be afraid, fear*, abs. or with obj. acc., iii. 2. 5, iv. 5. 18; with μή clause, i. 8. 24, iii. 2. 25, 5. 18, iv. 2. 15; acc. obj. and μή clause combined, i. 7. 7.

δείκνῡμι, δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην (akin to Lat. *dīco, say*, Eng. *teach*), *show, point out, indicate by signs*, with dat. and ind. quest., iv. 5. 33.

δείλη, ης, ἡ, *afternoon; early afternoon*, i. 8. 8, *late afternoon, evening*, iii. 3. 11, 4. 34, 5. 2, iv. 2. 1; ἀμφὶ δείλην, *towards evening*, ii. 2. 14, cf. § 16, ἤδη ὀψὲ ἦν.

δειλός, ή, όν (akin to δείδω), *fearful, timorous, cowardly*, i. 4. 7, iii. 2. 35.

δεινός, ή, όν (δείδω), *fearful, terrible, awful, very great*, iii. 1. 13, iv. 6. 16, 7. 13; τὸ δεινόν, pl. τὰ δεινά, *difficulty, danger, dangerous situation*, ii. 3. 13, 22, 6. 7, 12, iii. 2. 11; *skilful, clever*, i. 9. 19; with inf., ii. 5. 15, iv. 6. 16.

δειπνέω, δειπνήσω, ἐδείπνησα, δεδείπνηκα (δεῖπνον), *take dinner, dine*, ii. 2. 4, iii. 5. 18, iv. 3. 10, 6. 17, 22.

δεῖπνον, ου, τό, the principal meal of the day, *dinner*, taken in the evening, ii. 4. 15, iv. 2. 4.

δείσας, see **δείδω.**

δεῖσθαι, see **δέω.**

δέκα, indecl. (cf. Lat. *decem*, Eng. *decalogue*), *ten*, i. 2. 10, etc.

Δελφοί, ῶν, οἱ, *Delphi*, a city of Phocis on the southern slope of the Parnassus range, six miles from the Gulf of Corinth. It lay at the foot of two steep cliffs called Phaedriades in ancient times, now Rodini and Phlembukos. These are divided by a narrow cleft from which issues the celebrated Castalian spring. The city extended in an amphitheatre-like form down to the river Pleistos. Delphi was especially noted for its temple and oracle of Apollo, the fame of which caused the place to be regarded as the centre of Greek civilization, just as an old legend made it the physical centre of the world. The temple was built over a chasm from which vapors rose. Over this chasm the Pythia, or priestess, sat on a tripod, and under the influence of the noxious exhalations she passed into a kind of ecstasy. Her frenzied and incoherent utterances, interpreted and reduced to writing by the priests, were regarded as the words of the divinity. The Pythian games, which were held at Delphi every four years, attracted contestants and visitors from all parts of Greece. The ruins of Delphi, at the modern village of Kastri, have been excavated by the French School of Archaeology. Work was begun in 1892, and remains of buildings of great importance have been discovered and identified. Among them are the foundations of the temple of Apollo, several treasure-houses erected by various Greek states, numerous votive monuments, besides a theatre and a race-course. Many sculptures of unusual interest have also been brought to light. iii. 1. 5.

δένδρον, ου, τό (cf. Eng. *rhododendron*, *liriodendron*), *tree*, i. 2. 22, ii. 4. 14, iv. 7. 8; dat. pl. **δένδροις** and **δένδρεσι**, iv. 7. 9, 8. 2.

δεξιός, ά, όν (akin to Lat. *dexter*; cf. Eng. *dexterous*), *right*, *on the right-hand side*, i. 7. 1, 8. 13, 10. 1, iii. 4. 28; **ἡ δεξιά** (sc. **χείρ**), *the right hand*, ii. 3. 11; **ἐν δεξιᾷ**, *on the right*, i. 5. 1, 5, ii. 2. 13, iv. 3. 17; **ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν**, *on the right above*, iv. 8. 2; **τὸ δεξιόν** (sc. **κέρας**), *the right wing*, *the right*, of an army, i. 2. 15, 8. 5, iv. 8. 14. From the custom of giving the right hand in promises and agreements several phrases arise; **δεξιὰν** (or **δεξιάς**, even of a single person) **δοῦναι**, *give the right hand*, *give a pledge* or *promise*, ii. 3. 28, 4. 7, 5. 3, iii. 2. 4; **δεξιὰς λαβεῖν καὶ δοῦναι**, *exchange pledges of friendship*, *shake hands* in token of peace and amity, i. 6. 6; **δεξιὰς φέρειν**, *bring assurances* of friendship, etc., ii. 4. 1.

δέοι, δέομαι, δέον, see **δέω**, *lack*.

δέρμα, ατος, τό (**δέρω**, *flay*), *skin*, *hide*, i. 2. 8, iv. 7. 26, 8. 26. (Cf. Eng. *epidermis*, *taxidermist*.)

δεσμός, οῦ, ὁ (**δέω**, *bind*), *band*, *strap*, iii. 5. 10.

δεσπότης, ου, ὁ (cf. Eng. *despot*), *lord*, *master*, ii. 3. 15, 5. 14, iii. 2. 13.

δεῦρο, adv., *hither*, *here*, i. 3. 19, ii. 2. 11, 5. 41.

δεύτερος, ᾱ, ον (akin to **δύο**, cf. Eng. *Deuteronomy*), *second*, *next*, iii. 4. 28, iv. 2. 13; neuter as adv., **δεύτερον** or **τὸ δεύτερον**, *a second time*, *again*, i. 8. 16, ii. 2. 4.

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, ἐδέχθην, *take*, *receive*, *accept*, iii. 4. 32, iv. 5. 32; *accept*, *approve*, i. 8. 17; *receive hospitably*, *entertain*, iv. 8. 23; of an enemy, *meet*

an attack, withstand a charge, abs. i. 10. 6, 11, iii. 4. 4, iv. 2. 7, or with obj. in acc., iii. 1. 42, 2. 16; **εἰς χεῖρας δέχεσθαι**, *meet a hand-to-hand attack*, iv. 3. 31.

δέω, δήσω, ἔδησα, δέδεκα, δέδεμαι, ἐδέθην, *bind, tie, fetter*, iii. 5. 10, iv. 2. 1, 3. 8, 6. 2; of horses, *tether*, iii. 4. 35. (Cf. *asyndeton*.)

δέω, δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, *lack, want, be in need of*; as a personal verb, in the phrase **ὀλίγου δέω** with inf., *lack little of*, as **ὀλίγου δέω καταλεῦσθηναι**, *I lack little of*, or *narrowly escape, being stoned to death, I am almost stoned to death*, i. 5. 14. Much more frequently impersonal, **δεῖ, δεήσει**, etc., *there is need, it is necessary, one must*, or *ought*. With the gen., *there is need of*, ii. 3. 5, iii. 2. 33, 3. 16; with a simple inf. the subject of which is not expressed, i. 6. 9, ii. 1. 20, iii. 1. 6, 37, iv. 1. 13; the subj. must often be supplied in translating, on account of a noun, adj., or partic. belonging to it in the pred., so iii. 2. 3, iv. 2. 3, 7. 6; the inf. is only implied in the context, i. 3. 5, iii. 1. 37; frequently with acc. and inf., i. 7. 7, ii. 1. 10, 4. 27, 6. 10, iii. 1. 44, 4. 1, iv. 6. 9; with dat. and inf., iii. 4. 35, but the dat. is also explained as dat. of adv., a subject (**τινά**) being supplied with the inf., see note. Note the following participial phrases: **τὰ δέοντα**, *the necessary measures*, iii. 1. 47; **αὐτὸ τὸ δέον**, *the very thing we want*, iv. 7. 7; **εἰς τὸ δέον καθίστασθαι**, *be settled satisfactorily, come out right*, i. 3. 8.

In the mid., **δέομαι, δεήσομαι, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην**, *lack, need, want*; abs., *be in want*, ii. 6. 13; with gen. of thing needed, i. 9. 21, ii. 6. 5, iii. 5. 10, iv. 4. 6; the gen. is to be supplied from the context in iii. 1. 46; *desire, wish, request* with gen. of thing, i. 4. 15, iii. 2. 32; with acc. of thing (pronoun), i. 3. 4, ii. 3. 29; with acc. and inf., i. 4. 14; with gen. of person and inf., i. 1. 10, 2. 14, 5. 14, 9. 25, iv. 5. 16.

δή, intensive postpositive particle, often immediately following the word to which it gives emphasis. In general **δή** is used to put the hearer into the mental attitude of the narrator; it assumes, and appeals to, a correct understanding on the hearer's part, of the situation or circumstances described. Hence its force can sometimes be rendered by such phrases as *you see, you know, as I have explained, as you will readily believe*; often, however, it is sufficiently translated by a mere stress of the voice, or an emphatic inflection; cf. i. 1. 4, 2. 3, ii. 3. 29. It occurs frequently after adverbs of time, esp. **ἐνταῦθα** and **ἔνθα**, but also after **τότε**, *just then, then, you see, then* with strong emphasis, i. 8. 1, 24, ii. 1. 10, 4. 22, iv. 3. 30, 5. 4, 6, 18, 24, 36, 7. 4, 10; so after a temporal clause, signifying the exactness of the time-definition, i. 10. 5, 10, 13, iv. 5. 34, 7. 25. Sometimes **δή** may be translated *so, accordingly, in consequence*, i. 4. 17, 18, 7. 16, ii. 2. 1, iv. 4. 10; so after causal clauses it emphasizes the naturalness or propriety of the result following from the cause stated, and may sometimes be rendered, *of course, naturally, you see*, i. 3. 5, iii. 1. 2, iv. 1. 2, 7. 23. Among other uses of the particle the following may be noticed: it refers back to something previously narrated, i. 2. 5, 7. 10, 10. 1, 29, ii. 3. 1, 6. 1; it sums up the foregoing matter, and may be rendered *so*, i. 4. 13, ii. 1. 20, iii. 1. 3, 10; it is used in passing from the general to the particular, introducing illustrations, *for example, in particular*, i. 3. 14, 5. 7, 8. 23. Note also **ἄγε δή**, Lat. *age vero, come, now*, ii. 2. 10, and

the use of δή to strengthen superlatives, i. 9. 12, 22.

δῆλος, η, ον, *clear, evident, manifest, plain*, i. 4. 13, 14, ii. 2. 17, 3. 1; so with a part of the verb εἰμί (which, however, is sometimes only understood) followed by a ὅτι clause, *it is evident, it is clear that*, etc., ii. 3. 6, iii. 2. 34, iv. 1. 17; but δῆλον ὅτι is often used parenthetically without affecting the structure of the clause in which it stands, hence it may often be rendered by an adverb, *clearly, manifestly, evidently*, i. 3. 9, iii. 1. 16, 35; δῆλον ποιεῖν, *show clearly, indicate*, iii. 5. 17; δῆλός εἰμι followed by a participle must in translation be turned either into an impersonal construction or an adverbial phrase; so δῆλος ἦν ἀνιώμενος, *it was evident that he was annoyed*, or *he was evidently annoyed*, i. 2. 11, cf. i. 10. 6, ii. 5. 27, 6. 21.

δηλόω, δηλώσω, etc. (δῆλος), *make evident* or *clear, make known, show plainly, explain*, with acc. or a relative clause, i. 9. 28, ii. 2. 18, 5. 26, iii. 3. 14.

Δημοκράτης, ους, *Democrates*, a scout, iv. 4. 15.

δημόσιος, α, ον (δῆμος, *people*), *belonging to the people or the state, public*; τὰ δημόσια, *public moneys*, iv. 6. 16.

δήπου, intensive particle (δή, που), *surely, I should think*, iii. 2. 15.

δηχθείς, see δάκνω.

διά, prep with gen. and acc. (akin to δύο), *through*. With gen., expressing motion through, *through*, esp. with words meaning a place, i. 2. 5, 23, 4. 6, 5. 12, 8. 26, iii. 5. 15, iv. 4. 1, 7; so διὰ σκότους, *through darkness, in the dark*, ii. 5. 9; διὰ Χαλύβων, *through (the country of) the Chalybes*, iv. 4. 1, cf. 7. 15; so figuratively, ii. 6. 22, where the notion of *through* passes into that of *by means of*. Of time, *during, throughout*, iv. 2. 4, 6. 22. Of means, *through, by means of*, esp. δι' ἑρμηνέως, *through an interpreter*, ii. 3. 17, iv. 2. 18, 5. 34; also of things, ii. 5. 21, 22; διὰ πίστεως, *in confidence*, iii. 2. 8; διὰ φιλίας ἰέναι τινί, *enter into terms of friendship with one*, iii. 2. 8; διὰ παντὸς πολέμου τινὶ ἰέναι, *be on terms of absolute hostility to one*, iii. 2. 8; διὰ ταχέων, *swiftly*, i. 5. 9. With acc., *through, because of, by means of*, for *the sake of*, i. 7. 3, 6, 9. 22, 27, iii. 1. 10, 5. 16, iv. 5. 15; with τό and an inf. clause, i. 7. 5, 9. 27, iv. 5. 15. In composition διά may have the meanings *through, across*, or may signify continuance or completion, or separation, like the Latin *dis-*.

διαβαίνω (βαίνω), *put the feet apart, step out, walk freely*, iv. 3. 8; *go over, cross*, with or without an acc., i. 2. 6, 4. 14, 16, 7. 19, ii. 4. 6, 5. 18, iii. 4. 1, iv. 2. 3, 3. 12, etc. The means of crossing may be expressed by the dat., or by ἐπί with the gen., i. 5. 10.

διαβάλλω (βάλλω), *throw through* or *across*; in a transferred sense, *slander, accuse falsely*, ii. 5. 27, 6. 26; διαβάλλειν τινὰ πρός τινα, *to accuse a person falsely before another*, i. 1. 3, where the substance of the false statement follows in a ὡς clause, which we render by *of* and a verbal.

διάβασις, εως, ἡ (διαβαίνω), *a going over, crossing; means of crossing*, iii. 5. 9, hence *bridge*, ii. 3. 10; *place to be crossed, crossing, ford*, iii. 4. 20, i. 5. 12, iv. 3. 16, 8. 3.

διαβατέος, ᾱ, ον (διαβαίνω), *that must be crossed*, ii. 4. 6.

διαβατός, ή, όν (διαβαίνω), *that can be crossed, fordable, passable*, i. 4. 18, ii. 5. 9, iii. 2. 22.

διαβιβάζω (βιβάζω, βιβάσω or βιβῶ, -εβίβασα, causative from √βα in βαίνω), *make go across*, hence *convey across, transport*, iii. 5. 2, 8, iv. 8. 8.

διαβολή, ῆς, ἡ (διαβάλλω), *slander, calumny, false accusation,* ii. 5. 5.

διαγγέλλω (ἀγγέλλω), *carry word, report,* i. 6. 2, ii. 3. 7; διά indicates that space intervenes between the sender and the receiver of the message; *pass an order* or *message along* from man to man, iii. 4. 36.

διαγελάω (γελάω), *laugh at, make ridiculous, cover with derision,* ii. 6. 26.

διαγίγνομαι (γίγνομαι), *get through, pass through,* of an interval of time, i. 10. 19; with partic., *continue, do a thing continually,* as διεγένοντο τὴν νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες, *they kept up a fire all night,* iv. 5. 5, *cf.* i. 5. 6, ii. 6. 5.

διαγκυλόομαι, διηγκύλωμαι (ἀγκύλη, *throwing-strap*), *hold a javelin by the thong,* with the finger inserted through the loop (see ἀκόντιον), only in perf. partic., iv. 3. 28.

διάγω (ἄγω) *carry through, bring across, transport* in boats, ii. 4. 28, iii. 5. 10; of time, *live through, live, pass, spend,* with acc. iv. 2. 7, abs. iii. 1. 43, 3. 2; with partic. (like διαγίγνομαι, διατελέω) *continue,* i. 2. 11.

διαδέχομαι (δέχομαι), *take up at intervals* (διά); θηρῶσιν διαδεχόμενοι, *relieved each other in hunting, hunted in relays,* i. 5. 2.

διαδίδωμι (δίδωμι), *give from hand to hand, distribute,* i. 9. 22, 10. 18, iv. 5. 8.

διαζεύγνῡμι (ζεύγνῡμι), Lat. *disiungere, disjoin, separate,* iv. 2. 10.

διαθεάομαι (θεάομαι), *view thoroughly, observe closely,* iii. 1. 19.

διαιθριάζει (αἰθρία, *clear sky, fair weather*), *it is clearing up,* said of the weather, iv. 4. 10. (διά is used with reference to the parting of the clouds.)

διαιρέω (αἱρέω), *take apart, cut asunder,* ii. 4. 22. (Cf. Eng. *diaeresis.*)

διάκειμαι (κεῖμαι), *be in any situation* or *condition, be disposed* towards a person, with dat. or πρός and acc., ii. 5. 27, 6. 12; οὕτω διακείμενοι, *in such a condition, in such a state of mind,* iii. 1. 3.

διακελεύομαι (κελεύω), *urge on, encourage, cheer on,* with dat., iii. 4. 45, iv. 7. 26, 8. 3.

διακινδῡνεύω (κινδῡνεύω), *go through danger, run a risk* [i. 8. 6], iii. 4. 14.

διᾱκονέω, διᾱκονήσω, δεδιᾱκόνημαι, ἐδιᾱκονήθην (διάκονος, *servant,* cf. Eng. *deacon*), *serve, wait upon,* iv. 5. 33.

διακόπτω (κόπτω), *cut to pieces,* i. 8. 10 (a); *cut apart, break through,* i. 8. 10 (b), iv. 8. 11, 13.

διᾱκόσιοι, αι, α (δύο, ἑκατόν), *two hundred,* i. 2. 9, etc.

διαλαγχάνω (λαγχάνω), *distribute by lot, cast lots for,* iv. 5. 23.

διαλαμβάνω (λαμβάνω), *take apart or separately;* ἤλεγχον διαλαβόντες, *they examined them separately, questioned them one at a time,* iv. 1. 23.

διαλέγομαι (λέγω), pass. dep., *talk with, converse with,* with dat., i. 7. 9, ii. 5. 42, 6. 23, iv. 2. 18, 4. 5, 8. 4; with acc., *discuss,* iv. 2. 19.

διαλείπω (λείπω), *leave a space between, be apart, be distant,* with acc. of the distance [i. 7. 15], 8. 10, abs. iv. 8. 12; δασὺ πίτυσι διαλειπούσαις, *thick with pines growing with spaces between,* iv. 7. 6; τὸ διαλεῖπον, *space between, interval,* iv. 8. 13.

διαμπερές, adv. (διά, ἀνά, πείρω, *pierce, transfix*), *through and through, clear through,* iv. 1. 18. (Epic word.)

διανοέομαι (νοέω), pass. dep., *think to a conclusion* (διά), *intend, purpose,* with inf. ii. 4. 17, iii. 2. 8.

διαπέμπω (πέμπω), *send in different directions, send around,* i. 9. 27, iv. 5. 8.

διαπολεμέω (πολεμέω), *fight through* "to a finish," *fight it out*, with dat. iii. 3. 3.

διαπορεύω (πορεύω), *cause to go across, convey across, transport*, ii. 5. 18; as pass. dep., *march through* or across, ii. 2. 11, *traverse*, with acc. ii. 5. 18, iii. 3. 3.

διαπράττω (πράττω), *bring about, accomplish, effect*; usually in mid. with similar meaning, also *get, obtain* by request (Lat. *impetrare*), *obtain* by agreement, *stipulate, accomplish one's purpose*, with object in acc., dat. of person for whom, and παρά with gen. of the person from whom something is obtained, ii. 3. 20, 29, iii. 5. 5; the object is implied in the context, *having obtained his wish*, ii. 6. 20; it may be an inf., ii. 6. 28, acc. and inf., ii. 5. 30, cf. ii. 3. 25, or a ὥστε clause, iv. 2. 23.

διαρπάζω (ἁρπάζω), *seize and carry in different directions, plunder, pillage, sack*, of places, i. 2. 19, 26, 27, ii. 4. 27; of persons and things, *take as booty, capture*, i. 10. 2, 18, ii. 2. 16.

διασημαίνω (σημαίνω), *show by a sign, indicate, give a hint*, with an ind. question, ii. 1. 23.

διασκηνέω (cf. σκηνάω), aor. διεσκήνησα, *encamp separately, take quarters apart from one another*, iv. 4. 8, 5. 29.

διασκηνητέον, verbal from διασκηνέω, *one must encamp separately*, iv. 4. 14.

διασκηνόω (σκηνόω), *take quarters apart*, iv. 4. 10.

διασπάω (σπάω), *draw apart, tear apart, separate*, in pass. of troops, *be separated, be dispersed*, iii. 4. 20, iv. 8. 10, 17; τὸ διεσπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις, *the dispersion of (military) resources*, i. 5. 9.

διασπείρω (σπείρω, σπερῶ, ἔσπειρα, ἔσπαρμαι, ἐσπάρην, *sow*), *scatter*, as seed; transferred, *disperse, scatter*, of soldiers, in pass., i. 8. 25, ii. 4. 3.

διασφενδονάω (σφενδονάω), *hurl in different directions as if from a sling*, iv. 2. 3.

διατάττω (τάττω), *arrange*, esp. for battle, *draw up in fighting order*, i. 7. 1, iii. 4. 15.

διατελέω (τελέω), *complete, finish*, τὴν ὁδόν, iv. 5. 11; so without ὁδόν, *complete the journey*, with πρός and acc., i. 5. 7; with partic., *continue, do a thing constantly*, iii. 4. 17, iv. 3. 2.

διατήκω (τήκω), *melt through*, pass. *melt*, iv. 5. 6.

διατίθημι (τίθημι), *place apart, arrange, set in order; put into a condition, treat*, i. 1. 5; pass., *be treated, be handled*, iv. 7. 4.

διατρέφω (τρέφω), *nourish, support*; pass., *be maintained, support oneself* through (διά) a period of scarcity, iv. 7. 17.

διατρῖβω (τρῖβω, τρίψω, ἔτρῑψα, τέτριφα, τέτρῑμμαι, ἐτρῑφθην, or ἐτρίβην, *rub*), *rub through, rub away*, of time, *consume, waste, spend*, iv. 6. 9; without any word expressing time, *delay, loiter, waste time*, i. 5. 9, ii. 3. 9.

διαφερόντως, adv. (διαφέρω), *differently*, and so by inference, *more than others, especially, particularly*, i. 9. 14.

διαφέρω (φέρω), *bear apart*; hence *differ, be different from*, with gen., ii. 3. 15; *excel, be better than*, with gen. of pers., iii. 1. 37; πολὺ διέφερεν ἀλέξασθαι . . . ἢ . . . μάχεσθαι, *to defend themselves . . . was a very different thing from, etc.*, iii. 4. 33; mid., with ἀμφί and gen., *differ with, dispute with*, about a thing, iv. 5. 17.

διαφθείρω (φθείρω), *destroy utterly, ruin*, pass. iv. 1. 11, *damage, injure*; οἱ διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, *those who were blinded by the snow*, iv. 5. 12; in

a moral sense, *lead astray, corrupt*, iii. 3. 5.

διάφορος, *ον* (διαφέρω), *different, at variance*; as subst., *τὸ διάφορον, cause of disagreement, difference of opinion*, iv. 6. 3.

διαχειρίζω (χείρ), *handle, manage, attend to*, i. 9. 17.

διαχωρέω (χωρέω), *go through*; impers., *κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς, they had diarrhœa*, iv. 8. 20.

διδάσκαλος, *ου, ὁ* (διδάσκω), *teacher*, ii. 6. 12.

διδάσκω, διδάξω, ἐδίδαξα, δεδίδαχα, δεδίδαγμαι, ἐδιδάχθην, *teach, instruct, show, inform, tell*, abs. or with acc. of the person, and in place of the acc. of the thing, an inf. or a *ὡς* clause, i. 7. 4, ii. 5. 6, iii. 2. 32, 3. 4, 4. 32, iv. 5. 36. (Cf. Eng. *didactic*.)

δίδωμι, *δώσω*, ἔδωκα, *δέδωκα, δέδομαι*, ἐδόθην (cf. Lat. *dō*), *give*, i. 1. 9, 2. 12, 3. 17, 6. 3, 7. 18, ii. 6. 4, iv. 5. 8; *grant*, of royal gifts or divine dispensations, i. 1. 6, 8, 4. 9, iii. 1. 23, 2. 7; *pay*, ii. 6. 16, iii. 3. 18; of a privilege, *give, concede, allow, permit*, with inf., i. 2. 27, ii. 3. 18, 25, iii. 4. 42, iv. 5. 32. The purpose for which the gift is made is indicated by *εἰς* with acc., i. 2. 27, 4. 9, or by an inf., iv. 5. 35, 6. 1. For the phrases δεξιὰν (δεξιὰς) δοῦναι, δίκην δοῦναι, πιστὰ δοῦναι, see δεξιός, δίκη, πιστός. (Cf. *dose, antidote*.)

διείργω (εἴργω), *separate, part, keep away from*, iii. 1. 2.

διελαύνω (ἐλαύνω), *drive through*; intrans., *ride* or *march through, break through* an opposing force, i. 5. 12, 10. 7, ii. 3. 19.

διέρχομαι (ἔρχομαι), *come* or *go through, march through, traverse*, with acc., iv. 1. 5, so also with the name of a people used for their country, iii. 5. 17, iv. 7. 15. Of a distance, *go, travel, cover*, ii. 4. 12, iii. 3. 11, 4. 37, iv. 5. 19, 22; of a report, *go about, be circulated, spread abroad*, followed by a *ὅτι* clause, i. 4. 7.

διεσπάρθαι, see διασπείρω.

διεσπάσθαι, see διασπάω.

διέχω (ἔχω), *hold apart*; intrans., *be apart, be separated, be distant*, with *ἀπό* and gen., i. 8. 17; in aor., *draw apart, separate*, abs. or with gen., i. 10. 4, iii. 4. 20, 22; *τὸ διέχον, the interval, space between*, iii. 4. 22.

διηγέομαι (ἡγέομαι), *set forth, narrate, tell*, iv. 3. 8, 13.

διΐημι (ἵημι), *send through, let go through, allow to pass*, iii. 2. 23, iv. 1. 8.

διίστημι (ἵστημι), *set apart*; in intrans. forms (see ἵστημι), *stand apart, stand at intervals, separate, open ranks*, i. 5. 2, 8. 20, 10. 7.

δίκαιος, *η, ον* (δίκη), *just, right, fair, proper*, i. 6. 6; *δίκαιον*, with or without *ἐστί*, followed by acc. and inf., *it is right, it is proper*, ii. 5. 41, iii. 1. 37; *τὸ δίκαιον, justice*; *δίκαια ποιεῖν, do justly, do right*, i. 3. 5; *ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου, σὺν τῷ δικαίῳ, in a just manner, justly, by fair means*, i. 9. 19, ii. 6. 18.

δικαιοσύνη, *ης, ἡ* (δίκαιος), *justice*, i. 9. 16.

δικαιότης, *ητος, ἡ* (δίκαιος), *justice*, ii. 6. 26.

δικαίως, adv. (δίκαιος), *justly, rightly, properly*, i. 9. 17, ii. 3. 19.

δίκη, *ης, ἡ* (akin to δείκνῡμι), originally, *usage, custom*, then *right, justice*; hence, of various proceedings connected with the administration of justice, *satisfaction* demanded by the aggrieved party, or *punishment* inflicted by him; or from the point of view of the person punished, *expiation, atonement, penalty*; *δίκην ἐπιτιθέναι, exact a penalty, inflict punishment*, with gen. of the crime, i. 3. 10, iii. 2. 8; *δίκην διδόναι, pay a penalty, be punished*, iv. 4. 14,

with gen. ii. 6. 21; **τὴν δίκην ἔχειν**, *to have one's deserts, to be justly punished*, ii. 5. 38, 41.

διό = **δι' ὅ**, *on account of which, for which reason, wherefore*, i. 2. 21.

διότι = **δι' ὅτι**, for **διὰ τοῦτο, ὅτι**, *for the reason that, because*, ii. 2. 14.

δίπηχυς, υ (**δύο, πῆχυς**), *of two cubits, two cubits long*, iv. 2. 28.

διπλάσιος, ᾱ, ον (**δύο**, √*plat*, *palt*, akin to Eng. *fold*), *twofold, double, twice as much*, iv. 1. 13; as adv., **διπλάσιον**, *twice as far*, iii. 3. 16.

δίπλεθρος, ον (**δύο, πλέθρον**), *of two plethra, two plethra wide*, iv. 3. 1.

δισχίλιοι, αι, α (**δίς, twice, χίλιοι**), *two thousand*, i. 1. 10, etc.

διφθέρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ, *skin, hide* of an animal, stripped off and prepared for use, i. 5. 10. See **σχεδίᾱ**. (Cf. Eng. *diphtheria*.)

διφθέρινος, η, ον (**διφθέρᾱ**), *made of hides*, ii. 4. 28.

δίφρος, ου, ὁ (for **δίφορος**, from **δύο** and **φέρω**, originally *that which carries two*, namely, a fighting man and a charioteer), *bed* or *box of a chariot*, i. 8. 10. See Figs. 5 and 6 *s. v.* **ἅρμα**.

διψάω, διψήσω, ἐδίψησα (**δίψα**, *thirst*), *to thirst, be thirsty*, iv. 5. 27. (Cf. Eng. *dipsomania*.)

διωκτέον, verbal of **διώκω**, *must pursue*, iii. 3. 8.

διώκω, διώξομαι (but in Anab. **διώξω**), **ἐδίωξα, δεδίωχα, δεδίωγμαι, ἐδιώχθην**, *pursue, follow after, chase*, with acc. i. 4. 7, 8, 5. 2, 10. 4, ii. 3. 19, iii. 2. 35, iv. 1. 8; abs. i. 5. 2, 3, 8. 19, iii. 3. 8, iv. 6. 24; **τὸ διώκειν**, *pursuit*, i. 8. 25.

δίωξις, εως, ἡ (**διώκω**), *pursuit*, iii. 4. 5.

διῶρυξ, υχος, ἡ (**διορύττω**, *dig through*), *canal, ditch* [i. 7. 15], ii. 4. 13, 17, 21, 22.

δόγμα, ατος, τό (**δοκέω**), *opinion, judgment*, hence *ordinance, decree*; **δόγμα ποιεῖσθαι**, *decree, pass a resolution*, with acc. and inf., iii. 3. 5. (Cf. Eng. *dogma*.)

δοθῆναι, see **δίδωμι**.

δοκέω, δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι, ἐδόχθην, *think, suppose*, with inf. or acc. and inf., i. 7. 1, 8. 2, ii. 2. 10, 14, iii. 2. 17. Much more frequently, *seem, appear*; in personal construction, with dat. and inf., either of which may be omitted, i. 4. 7, 15, ii. 5. 16, 24, iii. 1. 11, iv. 3. 8; **δοκῶ μοι** or **δοκοῦμέν μοι** with an inf. may be rendered *I think*, i. 3. 12, 7. 4, iv. 6. 13; in some cases **δοκέω** serves merely to give a less confident or emphatic tone to a statement which is nevertheless true; with an inf. it may be rendered *is thought to*, ii. 6. 29, iii. 1. 38. A change from the personal to the impersonal construction is seen in i. 4. 18; in i. 3. 11 the reverse is the case. Impersonally, *it seems good, it is thought best, it is resolved* or *decided*, with inf., i. 2. 1, iii. 5. 6, iv. 5. 1; with acc. and inf., i. 3. 18, iii. 1. 30, iv. 1. 12, 3. 15, 8. 12; with dat. and inf., ii. 1. 2, iii. 1. 34. Without an inf. the phrase **ἔδοξε ταῦτα** is frequent, sometimes with a dat., *this was decided* or *voted*, i. 3. 20, ii. 3. 28, iv. 4. 6, 8. 14. Sometimes a neuter pron. takes the place of the inf., ii. 1. 22. So in the acc. abs. **δόξαν ταῦτα**, *when they had decided upon this*, iv. 1. 13; **τὰ δεδογμένα**, *the decisions*, iii. 2. 39; but **τὰ δόξαντα**, i. 3. 20 must in view of the context be rendered *the questions resolved upon*.

δοκιμάζω, δοκιμάσω, δεδοκίμασμαι, ἐδοκιμάσθην (**δόκιμος**, *tried, approved*, from **δοκέω**), *test, try, approve, accept after examination, test and select*, iii. 3. 20.

δόλιχος, ου, ὁ (adj. **δολιχός**, *long*, a poetic word), *long race*, from twelve to twenty-four stadia, iv. 8. 27.

Δόλοψ, οπος, ὁ, pl. **Δόλοπες,** *a Dolopian.* The Dolopians were a hardy, warlike race that inhabited a mountainous district north of Aetolia and at the southern end of the Pindus range, along the upper course of the Achelōus river. They were probably of non-Greek (so-called Pelasgic) origin, i. 2. 6.

δόξα, ης, ἡ (**δοκέω**), *that which appears to one, opinion, expectation,* **παρὰ τὴν δόξαν,** *contrary to expectation,* ii. 1. 18. (Cf. Eng. *orthodox, paradox.*)

δορκάς, άδος, ἡ (**δέρκομαι, see**), *gazelle*; the name appears to have arisen from the large, beautiful eyes of the animal, i. 5. 2. (Cf. the proper name *Dorcas.*)

δορπηστός, οῦ, ὁ, *time of the evening meal, supper-time,* i. 10. 17.

δόρυ, ατος, **τό** (akin to **δένδρον** and Eng. *tree*), originally *wood, beam, shaft; spear, lance,* i. 8. 18, iii. 5. 7, iv. 2. 8, 5. 18. The shaft of the Greek spear was from six to seven and a half feet in length; the Chalybes, however, are said to have had spears of the extraordinary length of fifteen cubits (iv. 7. 16). The point or head (**λόγχη**) might be a sharpened, four-cornered spike, but was more commonly of a broad leaf-like shape, with two edges. The butt end of the spear was provided with an iron shoe (**στύραξ, σαυρωτήρ**) sharpened so that the weapon might be stuck into the ground. That this was the rule is shown by iv. 7. 16, where it is expressly stated that the spears of the Chalybes had **μίαν λόγχην,** that is the head only, not the shoe. As the spear was a regular part of the hoplite's equipment and was carried in the right hand, the phrase **ἐπὶ δόρυ** is used in military language to mean *to the right,* iv. 3. 29; cf. **παρ' ἀσπίδα,** *to the left,* under **ἀσπίς.** Fig. 14 shows several forms of spears and javelins; some of the specimens have the shoe.

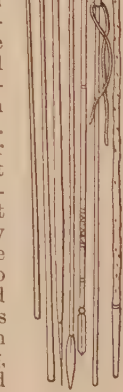


Fig. 14.

δουλεύω, δουλεύσω, etc. (**δοῦλος**), *be a slave, be in servitude,* iv. 8. 4.

δοῦλος, ου, ὁ, *slave,* i. 9. 15, ii. 3. 7, 5. 32, iii. 1. 17; *subject* of a despotic ruler, i. 9. 29, ii. 5. 38.

δοῦναι, see **δίδωμι.**

δουπέω, ἐδούπησα (**δοῦπος**), Epic word; *sound heavily, strike with a noise, clash, rattle,* with instrumental dat. and **πρός** with acc., i. 8. 18.

δοῦπος, ου, ὁ (poetic), *heavy noise, din, uproar,* ii. 2. 19.

Δρακόντιος, ου, ὁ, *Dracontius,* a Spartan, chosen to preside over the games at Trapezus, iv. 8. 25, 26.

δράμοι, see **τρέχω.**

δρεπανηφόρος, ον (**δρέπανον, φέρω**), *scythe-carrying, armed with scythes,* of the chariots described in i. 8. 10; cf. also i. 7. 10 ff. See Fig. 15.

Fig. 15.

δρέπανον, ου, τό (**δρέπω,** *pluck, cut*), *sickle, scythe, curved blade,* i. 8. 10.

δρόμος, ου, ὁ (√**δραμ,** in **ἔδραμον,** see **τρέχω**; cf. Eng. *dromedary*), *a*

running, a run, i. 5. 3, iv. 8. 25; also in the phrases **δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις**, i. 2. 17, for which see **γίγνομαι, δρόμῳ θεῖν**, *run fast, advance at a double-quick*, i. 8. 18, 19, iv. 6. 25, **ὁρμᾶν δρόμῳ**, *start in a run, charge*, iv. 3. 31; *place for running, race-course*, iv. 8. 26.

δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, δεδύνημαι, ἐδυνήθην, pass. dep., *be able, have power* or *strength, can*, with inf., which, however, may be omitted when the context makes the meaning clear, i. 1. 4, 2. 25, 3. 2, 6. 7, ii. 2. 3, iii. 1. 35, iv. 1. 19, 5. 16; frequently with relative words as **ὡς, ᾗ, ὅπῃ, ὅσον** and the superlative of adverbs, **ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος**, i. 1. 6, similarly, 2. 4, iii. 2. 6, 7, iv. 5. 1; also with sup. of adjectives, i. 6. 3, ii. 2. 12; abs., *have power*, **οἱ μέγιστα δυνάμενοι**, *the most powerful*, ii. 6. 21; *be strong, be able to get along*, **ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν**, iv. 5. 11, **τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν ὑποζυγίων**, iv. 5. 12; *be equivalent to, amount to*, i. 5. 6, ii. 2. 13.

δύναμις, εως, ἡ (δύναμαι), *power, might, ability*, in the phrases **εἰς δύναμιν, κατὰ δύναμιν**, *to the extent of one's power, to the best of one's ability*, ii. 3. 23, iii. 2. 9; *power*, as a result of position, wealth, etc., ii. 1. 13, 5. 11, 6. 17; esp. *military power, force*, troops, i. 1. 6, 3. 12, iii. 4. 3, iv. 4. 7. (Cf. Eng. *dynamic, dynamite*.)

δυνάστης, ου, ὁ (δύναμαι), *one who has power, ruler, nobleman, dignitary*, i. 2. 20. (Cf. Eng. *dynasty*.)

δυνατός, ή, όν (δύναμαι), *having power*; in a physical sense *strong*, iv. 1. 12, with inf. *able, capable*, ii. 6. 9; with reference to wealth and other resources, *powerful*, i. 9. 24; in a passive sense, *possible, practicable*, i. 3. 17, in phrases **ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα, ὅπῃ δυνατόν, ὡς δυνατόν**, *as far as possible, in whatever way one can, as well as one can*, i. 3. 15, ii. 1. 19, 6. 8; **ὁδὸς δυνατὴ ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι**, *a road that can be traveled by pack-animals*, iv. 1. 24; **ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν**, *according to one's power, as well as one can*, iv. 2. 23.

δύνω (see **δύω**), *set*, of the sun, ii. 2. 3, 13. (Epic word.)

δύο, δυοῖν (akin to Lat. *duo*, Eng. *two*), *two*, i. 1. 1, etc.; generally not declined, cf. **δύο ἡμερῶν**, ii. 2. 12. (Cf. Eng. *dyad*.)

δυσ-, inseparable prefix signifying *hard, bad, difficult, with difficulty*. Cf. Eng. *dys-* in *dyspepsia*, etc.

δυσπάριτος, ον (πάρειμι), *hard to pass*, of a strategic point commanding a road, iv. 1. 25.

δυσπόρευτος, ον (πορεύομαι), *hard to get through*, i. 5. 7.

δυσπορίᾱ, ᾱς (πόρος), *difficulty of crossing* a river, iv. 3. 7.

δύσπορος, ον (πόρος), *hard to cross*, ii. 5. 9.

δύσχρηστος, ον (χράομαι), *hard to use, unserviceable*, iii. 4. 19.

δυσχωρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (χῶρος, *place*), *roughness of country, rough country*, iii. 5. 16.

δύω, δύσω, ἔδῡσα, ἔδῡν, δέδῡκα and δέδυκα, δέδυμαι, ἐδύθην, *enter*; the simple verb is rare in the active. Middle, with 2 aor. act., *sink, go down, set*, of the sun, i. 10. 15, ii. 2. 16.

δῶ, see **δίδωμι**.

δώδεκα, indecl. (for **δυώδεκα**, cf. Lat. *duodecim*), *twelve*, i. 2. 10, etc.

δῶρον, ου, τό (√δο in **δίδωμι**; cf. Eng. *Theodore*), *gift, present*, i. 2. 27, 9. 22, ii. 1. 10, iv. 7. 27. The giving of presents by vassals to the king, or by the ruler to favored subjects, was an established custom at the Persian court, as it is to-day among Oriental peoples.

δώσω, see **δίδωμι**.

E

ἑάλω, see **ἁλίσκομαι.**

ἐᾶν, conditional conj. (**εἰ** + **ἄν**) contracted to **ἄν** and **ἤν**, *if*, used with the subjunctive, referring the supposition to future time, or to time in general, i. 1. 4, 7. 14, ii. 1. 22, iii. 1. 36, 4. 41, etc.; also to express the motive of the leading clause, *if haply, on the chance that, in hopes that*; cf. ii. 1. 8.

ἐάνπερ (**ἐάν**, intens. part. **περ**), *if indeed, if* with emphasis, iv. 6. 17.

ἑαυτοῦ, ῆς, οῦ, contr. **αὑτοῦ**, etc. (**ἕο**, older uncontracted form of **οὗ**, *q. v.*, + **αὐτοῦ**), gen. of **αὐτός**), reflexive pron. of third person, *of himself, of herself, of itself*, used either as direct or indirect reflexive, i. 1. 5, 2. 7, 9. 29, ii. 5. 28, 29, iv. 5. 18, 24, 7. 13; both uses are seen in one sentence, i. 9. 27. The gen. is used to supply the place of a possessive pronoun, Lat. *suus*, i. 5. 13, 9. 12, 27, iv. 4. 7; so without a noun, **οἱ ἑαυτοῦ, ἑαυτῶν**, *his own, their own men*, i. 2. 15, iii. 4. 45, iv. 5. 23; **τὰ ἑαυτῶν**, *their own affairs*, iii. 1. 16; **ἐν ἑαυτῷ γίγνεσθαι**, *come to one's senses, recover one's self-control*, i. 5. 17; **ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἐχώρουν**, *they marched by themselves*, ii. 4. 10.

ἐάω, ἐάσω, εἴāσα, εἴāκα, εἴāμαι, εἰάθην, *let, allow, permit*, with acc. and inf., i. 4. 7, 9. 13, ii. 3. 26, iii. 3. 3; **οὐκ ἐᾶν**, with inf., *not allow, forbid, prohibit*, i. 4. 9; *let remain, leave*, with acc., in the phrase **οὐκ ἀχάριστον εἴασεν**, *did not leave unrewarded*, i. 9. 18.

ἑβδομήκοντα, indecl. numeral, *seventy*, iv. 7. 8.

ἐγγύθεν, adv. (**ἐγγύς**), *from near by*, iv. 2. 27.

ἐγγύς, adv., comp. **ἐγγύτερον**, sup. **ἐγγύτατα** and **ἐγγυτάτω**, *near, close by, in the neighborhood, at hand*, i. 10. 10, ii. 2. 15, 5. 36, with gen., ii. 4. 14, iv. 4. 1; **ἐγγὺς (ἐγγύτερον) γίγνεσθαι**, *come near (nearer), get close*, i. 8. 8, iii. 3. 7, iv. 2. 15, 7. 23; **ἐγγὺς προσίεσθαι**, *let come near, face an enemy at close quarters*, iv. 2. 12; superl. used as adj., **αἱ ἐγγυτάτω κῶμαι**, *the nearest villages*, ii. 2. 16, cf. § 17; **σταθμοὶ οἱ ἐγγυτάτω**, *the nearest, i. e. last, stages*, ii. 2. 11; **ἐγγύς** has also the sense of *nearly, almost*, iv. 2. 28.

ἐγείρω, ἐγερῶ, ἤγειρα, ἠγρόμην, ἐγρήγορα, ἐγήγερμαι, ἠγέρθην, *waken, arouse*, perf. *be awake, keep watch*, iv. 6. 22.

ἐγκαλύπτω (**καλύπτω, καλύψω, ἐκάλυψα, κεκάλυμμαι, ἐκαλύφθην**, *cover*), *cover up*; mid. *wrap oneself up*, iv. 5. 19.

ἔγκειμαι (**κεῖμαι**), *lie in, be placed in, be in*, iv. 5. 26.

ἐγκέλευστος, **ον** (**κελεύω**), *bidden, prompted, instigated*, i. 3. 13.

ἐγκέφαλος, **ου, ὁ** (**κεφαλή**), properly an adj., *that which is in the head, brain*; of the palm-tree, *cabbage*, the large edible terminal bud, ii. 3. 16.

ἐγκρατής, **ές** (**κρατέω**), *having power*, with gen. *in control of, master of*, i. 7. 7.

ἐγχειρίδιον, **ου, τό** (**χείρ**), really neuter of **ἐγχειρίδιος, ον**, *held in the hand; a weapon easily held in the hand, dagger*, iv. 3. 12. An ancient dagger is shown in Fig. 16.

Fig. 16.

ἐγχειρίζω, ἐγχειριῶ, etc. (**χείρ**), *put into one's hands, entrust to*, with acc. and dat., iii. 2. 8.

ἐγχέω (**χέω, χέω, ἔχεα, κέχυκα, κέχυμαι, ἐχύθην**, *pour*), *pour in*, with **οἶνον** understood, *fill a cup*, with dat. of person, iv. 3. 13.

ἐγώ, gen. **ἐμοῦ, μοῦ** (for the nom. stem, cf. Lat. *ego*, German *ich*, Eng. *I*, for the gen., Lat. *mē*,

Eng. *me*), personal pron., *I*; the nom. is generally not expressed unless emphasis is desired, i. 3. 3, etc.

ἔγωγε (*ἐγώ*, *γέ*), personal pronoun, emphatic, used like Lat. *equidem*, *I, I for my part*, i. 4. 8, ii. 2. 12.

ἔδραμον, see *τρέχω*.

ἐθελοντής, *ου*, *ὁ* (*ἐθέλω*), *one who offers his services voluntarily, a volunteer*, i. 6. 9, iv. 1. 26, 27, 2. 14.

ἐθέλω, *ἐθελήσω*, *ἠθέλησα*, *ἠθέληκα*, *be willing, wish, desire*, with inf., which may be implied in the context, i. 2. 26, 9. 13, 14, ii. 3. 23, 6. 11, iii. 1. 25, 3. 18, 4. 41, iv. 1. 8, 26; *volunteer, be ready*, iv. 1. 27, 28; *οὐκ ἐθέλω, be unwilling, refuse*, i. 3. 8, 10; see *θέλω*.

ἔθετο, *ἔθηκε*, see *τίθημι*.

ἔθνος, *ους*, *τό* (cf. Eng. *ethnology*), *tribe, nation, people*, i. 8. 9, iii. 1. 2, iv. 5. 28; *κατὰ ἔθνη, by nations, according to nationality*, i. 8. 9.

εἰ, conditional conjunction, *if*; with ind., in pres., impf., aor., and perf., it "presents the supposition simply, without implying anything as to its reality or probability; the tenses have the same force as in simple sentences"; i. 3. 11, ii. 5. 41, iii. 2. 39, iv. 6. 10; with fut. ind., it may express intention, like *μέλλω* with inf., i. 5. 16, or may express a threat or warning, i. 5. 16, iii. 1. 13, 17, iv. 6. 9, 8. 11; with the impf. and aor. to express suppositions contrary to fact, ii. 1. 4, 5. 17, iv. 1. 11. With the opt., *εἰ* presents the supposition as a possibility (possible or less vivid future condition), i. 6. 8, ii. 5. 19, iii. 2. 35, 3. 2, 16, iv. 8. 11, or as one of a class of actions customary or repeated in past time (past general or past repeated cond.), i. 9. 11, 16, 19, 28, ii. 3. 11, iv. 2. 4, or "as the thought of another person or an earlier time" (cond. in ind. discourse), i. 2. 2, 9. 7. After verbs of doubt or inquiry, *εἰ* is generally rendered *whether*, i. 3. 5, 10. 5, ii. 1. 15, iii. 2. 22, iv. 1. 25; so followed by another clause with *ἤ*, *whether . . . or*, ii. 3. 7. *καὶ εἰ, even if*, iii. 2. 24. *εἰ μή, if not*, iv. 2. 4; *unless*, i. 5. 2, iii. 4. 39; but when no verb is expressed, *except*, i. 4. 18, 5. 6, ii. 1. 12; *οὐ γὰρ . . . ὁρῶμεν εἰ μὴ ὀλίγους, for we see only a few*, iv. 7. 5. *εἰ δὲ μή*, with ellipsis of the verb, *otherwise*, iii. 2. 3, 37, iv. 7. 20; so even when the omitted predicate is negative, iv. 3. 6. *εἰ δὲ μή* is even used when the omitted verb would be subjunctive, ii. 2. 2. *εἴ τι, εἴ τι ἄλλο, whatever, whatever else*, i. 5. 1, 6. 1, 10. 18.

εἴᾱ, εἴᾱσε, see *ἐάω*.

εἰδέναι, see *οἶδα*.

εἶδον, 2 aor. (*√ Fιδ*, cf. *οἶδα*), used as aorist of *ὁράω*, *see, look, observe, perceive*, with acc., i. 2. 18, 22, 3. 15, iii. 1. 11, 4. 24, iv. 2. 7; abs. i. 10. 15, iv. 3. 12; frequently with partic., i. 5. 12, 8. 28, 10. 10, ii. 1. 9, 3. 18, iii. 1. 13; *see* in the sense of *meet, find*, ii. 4. 15. With clause introduced by *ὅτι* or *ὡς*, iii. 2. 23, iv. 1. 20.

εἶδος, *ους*, *τό* (akin to *εἶδον*), *form, shape, appearance*, ii. 3. 16.

εἰδότες, see *οἶδα*.

εἰκάζω, *εἰκάσω*, *ἤκασα*, *ἤκασμαι*, *ἠκάσθην* (see *ἔοικα*), *make like, compare; draw an inference by comparison, conjecture, suppose, guess*, with inf. clause, i. 6. 1, 10. 16, iv. 5. 15; abs., *ἤκαζον ἄλλοι ἄλλως, different men made divers conjectures*, i. 6. 11.

εἰκός, *ότος*, *τό* (neuter partic. from *ἔοικα*), *likely, natural, reasonable*, with acc. and inf., ii. 2. 19, iii. 1. 13, 2. 10, iv. 6. 9; *ἐστί* may be expressed or omitted; similarly, *ὡς* (*τὸ*) *εἰκός, as is natural, reasonable*, iii. 1. 21, 4. 24; *εἰκότα λέγειν, speak reasonably*, ii. 3. 6; *εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον, proper and right*, iii. 2. 26.

εἴκοσι, indecl. numeral (akin to Lat. *vīgintī*), *twenty*, i. 2. 5, etc.

εἰκότως, adv. (cf. **εἰκός, ἔοικα**), *naturally, properly, with good reason*, ii. 2. 3.

εἵληφε, see **λαμβάνω.**

εἰλήχει, see **λαγχάνω.**

εἶλκον, see **ἕλκω.**

εἱλόμην, εἷλον, see **αἱρέω.**

εἰμί, fut. **ἔσομαι** (√ **ες**, cf. Lat. *sum, est*, Eng. *is*), *be, exist*, i. 1. 9, 2. 8, 10, 13, etc.; *occur, take place*, i. 10. 15; impersonally, **ἔστι** (**ἦν**), with inf., *be possible*, i. 3. 17, 4. 4, 5. 2, 9. 13, iii. 2. 13, iv. 1. 8, etc.; in a personal construction with inf. of purpose, ii. 1. 6, **πολλαὶ πελταὶ ἦσαν φέρεσθαι**, *many light shields could be taken*; cf. i. 5. 9, where there is a shift from the impersonal to the personal construction. The translation of **εἰμί** varies very greatly according to the context in which it occurs; with a predicate gen., *belong to*, i. 1. 6, 4. 9, ii. 1. 4, 11, 5. 38, iii. 2. 26; *be among, be one of*, i. 2. 3, ii. 1. 7, 6. 26; *be descended from*, iii. 2. 13; *be the part of, be characteristic of*, ii. 1. 9, 5. 21, iii. 2. 39; **ἦν ἐτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα**, *he was about thirty years old*, ii. 6. 20. The combination of **εἰμί** with the dat. of possession may be rendered *have*, as **Κύρῳ βασίλεια ἦν**, *Cyrus had a palace*, i. 2. 7, cf. i. 7. 8, ii. 1. 10; **ὄνομα αὐτῇ (ἦν) Κορσωτή**, *its name was Corsote*, i. 5. 4. The translation is influenced by prepositional phrases in the context, as **αἱ πηγαί εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων**, *the springs flow from the palace*, i. 2. 7, cf. § 8; **ὕδωρ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ**, *rain fell*, iv. 2. 2; **ἐπὶ πολὺ ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια**, *the baggage-train extended over a long distance*, iv. 2. 13, cf. 6. 11, and i. 7. 6; for other such phrases, see the respective prepositions. With participles **εἰμί** forms periphrastic expressions, for the impf., as **ἦν ἄγων** for **ἦγε**, ii. 6. 7, cf. ii. 2. 13, iv. 3. 5, 5. 15, for the present, iii. 3. 2, for the perf. opt., i. 2. 21, ii. 1. 3, iv. 8. 26. With various relative words, note the phrases **ἔστιν ὅστις**, *somebody*, i. 8. 20; **ἦν τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν οὗς πάνυ μακροὺς ἤλαυνεν**, *some of these marches were very long*, i. 5. 7, cf. ii. 5. 18; but **ἔστιν ὅ, τί σε ἠδίκησα**, *have I done you any wrong?* i. 6. 7; **ἔσθ' ὅτε = ἐνίοτε**, ii. 6. 9; **οὐκ ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα**, *there is no reason why*, ii. 3. 23; **οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν**, *it is not possible that he will not attack us, he will certainly attack us*, ii. 4. 3. The infinitive is absolute in the phrases **τὸ νῦν εἶναι**, *for the present*, iii. 2. 37; **τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι**, *so far as this man is concerned*, i. 6. 9. **τὰ ὄντα**, *facts*, iv. 4. 15.

εἶμι, impf. **ᾔα** (the older form) or **ᾖειν** (√ **ι**, cf. Lat. *īre, go, iter, journey*), *go, march, proceed*; the pres. ind. has future meaning, and the same is often true of the opt., the inf., i. 3. 1, 8, 4. 12, ii. 6. 10, and the participle i. 3. 6; of a sound, i. 8. 16; with various prepositions: **εἰς** and acc., in a hostile sense, *march against*, iii. 2. 16; similarly with **ἐπί** and acc., iii. 1. 42, iv. 2. 1; but **ἐπί** is simply *to, towards* in i. 2. 11, ii. 1. 8, iii. 1. 22, iv. 4. 14, cf. **παρά** with acc., ii. 5. 27. For phrases with **διά**, see **διά**. Note the phrases **ἰέναι τοῦ πρόσω**, *to go forward, advance*, i. 3. 1; **ἤρχοντο ἀντίοι ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις**, *they began to advance against the enemy*, i. 8. 17; with adverbial acc., **ὄρθιον ἰέναι, ὁμαλὲς ἰέναι**, *march up a slope, march over level ground*, iv. 6. 12; **εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν**, *they came to close quarters, fought hand to hand*, iv. 7. 15, but cf. i. 2. 26, where **Κύρῳ (εἰς χεῖρας) ἰέναι** is *to come into the power of Cyrus.*

εἶπας, εἴπατε, see **εἶπον.**

εἴπερ (εἰ, encl. περ), *if indeed, if really, if* with emphasis, ii. 4. 7, iv. 6. 16, strengthened by γέ, i. 7. 9.

εἴπετο, see ἕπομαι.

εἶπον, 2 aor. (√Fεπ, akin to Lat. *vocō, call*; there is also a 1 aor. εἶπα, to which belong εἶπας, ii. 5. 23, and imv. εἴπατε, ii. 1. 21), *say, speak, tell,* whether directly or through an interpreter; abs., ii. 3. 24, iii. 1. 38, iv. 3. 10, or what is said is represented by a neut. acc., i. 3. 7, 14 end, ii. 1. 4; the speech is quoted in direct discourse, i. 4. 8, 16, ii. 1. 21, 5. 24, iii. 1. 45, iv. 6. 10; in ind. discourse with a ὅτι clause, i. 8. 15, ii. 1. 21, iii. 1. 9, iv. 4. 5; a combination of a neut. acc. and a ὡς clause, i. 9. 13; an interrogative clause follows, ii. 1. 15, 21, 2. 10. The person addressed is in the dat., i. 6. 2, 9, ii. 1. 15, 2. 2, iv. 5. 8. With an inf., *bid, order, command,* ii. 3. 2, iv. 2. 16, 5. 4; *propose, suggest, move* (in the assembly), i. 3. 14.

εἴργω, εἴρξω, εἶρξα, εἴργμαι, εἴρχθην, *shut out, keep off, prevent, hinder*; with acc. obj. followed by ὥστε μή and inf., iii. 3. 16. *Shut in, hem in,* iii. 1. 12. (Acc. to a distinction observed by some authorities, the verb has the rough breathing in the latter sense.)

εἴρηκα, εἴρητο, see εἴρω.

εἰρήνη, ης, ἡ (εἴρω), originally *an agreement*; then *peace, cessation of hostilities,* ii. 6. 2, iii. 1. 37. (Cf. Eng. *Irene.*)

εἴρω, pres. only in epic (Odyssey); Attic forms, fut. ἐρῶ, perf. εἴρηκα, εἴρημαι, ἐρρήθην (√Fερ, cf. Lat. *verbum,* Eng. *word*), *say, tell, mention*; with acc., i. 2. 5, ii. 5. 12, iii. 2. 33; with ὅτι or ὡς clauses, i. 3. 5, ii. 5. 2; *bid, order,* with inf., τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν εἴρητο διώκειν, *the cavalry had been ordered to pursue,* iii. 4. 3, cf. § 4.

εἰς (also ἐς, a form written by some editors in i. 1. 11 and elsewhere), prep. with acc., *into, to, in,* with nouns of place after verbs of motion, i. 2. 6, 21, ii. 2. 14, 4. 4, iii. 1. 11; with the name of a people for their country, i. 1. 11, iii. 5. 15, iv. 7. 1; following a noun expressing motion, iv. 3. 20; denoting direction, *towards,* i. 8. 10, iv. 3. 21. It is also used with a number of verbs that do not themselves express motion, but imply motion preceding or following the time of their own action, as ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, *they (came and) took their stand within hearing distance,* ii. 5. 38; τὴν πόλιν ἐξέλιπον . . . εἰς χωρίον ὀχυρόν, *they abandoned the city (and went) to a stronghold,* i. 2. 24, so i. 1. 2, 2. 2, 3, 6. 7, iv. 3. 18; cf. τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, *wounded in the abdomen,* ii. 5. 33. In a hostile sense, *against,* stronger than ἐπί, iii. 2. 16, iv. 3. 29, 5. 18; expressing the direction of an emotion, τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον ἰδών, *seeing the fear with which the Greeks inspired the barbarians,* i. 2. 18. Expressing purpose, *for,* i. 1. 10, 3. 3, 4. 9, 8. 1, 23, ii. 2. 17, iii. 3. 19, 4. 17; or relation, *with regard to, relating to, for,* i. 9. 5, 14, 16, ii. 3. 13, 6. 30, iv. 1. 28. In expressions of time, *on, at,* i. 7. 1, ii. 3. 25, iii. 1. 3, iv. 1. 15; εἰς τὴν νύκτα, *for the night,* iv. 5. 13; εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον, *in the future,* ii. 1. 17; εἰς καλὸν ἥκετε, *you have come at a good time, in the nick of time,* iv. 7. 3. With numerals, *about,* like Lat. *ad,* ii. 3. 35, iii. 4. 5, iv. 8. 5, 15, etc.; of limit, οἱ <εἰς> τριάκοντα ἔτη γεγονότες, *those under thirty,* ii. 3. 12. Phrases: εἰς δύο, *two abreast,* ii. 4. 26; εἰς δύναμιν, *to the extent of one's power, to the best of one's ability,* ii. 3. 23.

εἷς, μία, ἕν, gen. ἑνός, μιᾶς, ἑνός, numeral adj. (akin to Lat. *semel, simplex*), *one,* i. 2. 6, ii. 1. 7, iii. 1.

10, etc.; *a certain one*, but stronger than τις, i. 3. 14; μία τις (ἐλπίς), *even one hope, any hope whatever*, ii. 1. 19; like μόνος, *alone*, τούτου ἑνὸς ἕνεκα, *for this alone, only on this account*, iv. 7. 20; used like Lat. *unus* to strengthen superlative expressions; πλεῖστοι δὴ αὐτῷ ἑνί γε ἀνδρὶ τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν ἐπεθύμησαν καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα προέσθαι, *more people were eager to entrust their property*, etc., *to him than to any other man of our times*, i. 9. 12, cf. § 22.

εἰσάγω (ἄγω), *lead into*, with εἰς and acc. i. 6. 11.

εἰσβάλλω (βάλλω), *throw into* or *in*; intr. *throw oneself into, invade, make an incursion into*, with εἰς and acc., i. 2. 21; of a river, *empty*, [i. 7. 15].

εἰσβολή, ῆς, ἡ (εἰσβάλλω), *place of entrance, pass*, i. 2. 21.

εἰσδύομαι (δύω), *sink into, cut into*, of leather thongs, iv. 5. 14.

εἴσειμι (εἶμι), *go in, enter*; with παρά and acc. of person, *go into the presence of*, i. 7. 8.

εἰσελαύνω (ἐλαύνω), *drive into* or *in*; *march into*, with εἰς and acc., i. 2. 26.

εἰσέρχομαι (ἔρχομαι), *come in, enter*, i. 2. 21, iv. 7. 4.

εἴσεσθε, see οἶδα.

εἴσοδος, ου, ἡ (ὁδός), *way in, entrance*, iv. 2. 3, 5. 25.

εἰσπηδάω (πηδάω, πεπήδηκα, ἐπήδησα, πεπήδηκα, *leap*), *leap into, jump in*, with εἰς and acc., i. 5. 8.

εἰσπίπτω (πίπτω), *fall into, fall upon* in a hostile sense, *break into*, with εἰς and acc., i. 10. 1.

εἰστήκει, see ἵστημι.

εἰσφορέω (φορέω), *carry in, bring in*, iv. 6. 1.

εἴσω, adv. (εἰς), *within, inside*, i. 6. 5; with gen., i. 2. 21, ii. 4. 12, iii. 3. 7, 4. 26.

εἶτα, adv. of time, *then, thereupon, afterward*, i. 2. 25, 5. 10, 12, 6. 10, ii. 4. 22, iv. 7. 13; πρῶτον μὲν . . . εἶτα δέ, i. 2. 16, 3. 2.

εἴτε, disjunctive conj. (εἰ, τέ), εἴτε . . . εἴτε, *if . . . or, whether . . . or*, ii. 1. 14, iii. 1. 40, 2. 7; in an ind. question, iv. 6. 8.

εἶχε, see ἔχω.

εἷων, see ἑάω.

ἐκ, before vowels ἐξ, prep. with gen. (Lat. *ex*), *out of, from* (a position within or among), *away from*, of place, with verbs of motion, i. 1. 9, iii. 3. 15, 4. 25, iv. 8. 2, etc.; with the name of a people instead of their country, iv. 7. 17; ἐκ is used sometimes where motion is only implied, like εἰς, i. 2. 3, iv. 2. 19, so in giving a starting-point, ἐκ πολλοῦ φεύγειν, *to turn to flight while still a long distance away*, comp. ἐκ πλέονος φεύγειν, i. 10. 11, iii. 3. 15. Other phrases in which the use of ἐκ is at variance with the English idiom; ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, *on the opposite side*, iv. 7. 5, ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς, *on the left-hand side*, iv. 8. 2, ἐξ ἴσου εἶναι, *to be on an equality*, iii. 4. 47. In expressions of choosing and selecting, ii. 5. 20, cf. iv. 1. 27; partitively, ii. 1. 6. Of source, origin, material, i. 2. 7, 5. 14, 8. 14, ii. 3. 10, 5. 2, iii. 1. 12, iv. 5. 14; so also where the idea of source approaches that of agency, ἐκ βασιλέως δεδομένα, *given by the king, a present from the king*, i. 1. 6, ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων, *as is admitted by everybody*, ii. 6. 1; of drawing conclusions, i. 9. 28, iii. 1. 13. Expressing cause, *because of, in consequence of*, ii. 5. 5, 27, 6. 4, iii. 1. 11; of means, *by means of, through*, ii. 6. 9, 17, 27, so ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου, *in any (every) way*, iii. 1. 43; in phrases expressing manner, ἐκ τοῦ δικαίου, *with justice, in an upright manner*, i. 9. 19, cf. ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου, i. 9. 16; ἐκ τοῦ αὐτομάτου, *of one's own ac-*

cord, i. 3. 13; **ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου**, *unexpectedly*, iv. 1. 10. In several phrases the object of **ἐκ** is an interfering or hindering circumstance of some kind; **ἀρχικὸς ἐλέγετο εἶναι ὡς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοιούτου τρόπου οἷον κἀκεῖνος εἶχεν**, *he was said to be a good commander as far as it was possible in view of his character*, "*as far as was compatible with the quality of his temper*" (Dakyns), ii. 6. 8; **ἐκ τῶν παρόντων**, *under the circumstances* (unfavorable), iii. 2. 3; **ἐκ τούτων**, *in this situation*, i. 3. 11; cf. **ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν**, *as well as possible*, iv. 2. 23. In expressions of time, **ἐκ τοῦ ἀρίστου**, *after breakfast*, iv. 6. 21; **ἐκ παίδων**, *from boyhood*, iv. 6. 14; **ἐκ τούτου**, *thereupon*, *after this*, i. 3. 13, ii. 5. 34, iii. 2. 7, 3. 8, iv. 1. 28; sometimes the temporal sense of **ἐκ τούτου** can hardly be distinguished from the causal. In composition **ἐκ** frequently has the local force of *out*, *from*; often, however, it signifies thoroughness or completion.

ἑκασταχόσε, adv. (**ἕκαστος**), *in every direction*, iii. 5. 17.

ἕκαστος, **η**, **ον** (akin to **ἑκάτερος**), *each*, *every*, *every one*; often without a subst., i. 5. 8, 7. 7, iii. 1. 3, iv. 3. 29; when used with a subst., in pred. pos., i. 1. 6, iv. 8. 12; in plural sometimes translated like singular, but cf. iv. 8. 15, **ἕκαστοι** = *each party*, *each detachment*; the singular is sometimes used in connection with or referring to plural substantives i. 2. 15, [7. 15], iv. 2. 12.

ἑκαστότε, adv. (**ἕκαστος**), *each time*, *every time*, ii. 4. 10.

ἑκάτερος, **ᾱ**, **ον** (akin to **ἕκαστος**), *each* of two, i. 8. 27; plural, *both*, iii. 2. 36.

ἑκατέρωθεν, adv. (**ἑκάτερος**), *from both sides*, *on both sides*, i. 8. 13, 22.

ἑκατέρωσε, adv. (**ἑκάτερος**), *to* or *towards both sides*, *to right and left*, i. 8. 14.

ἑκατόν, indecl. numeral (akin to Sanskrit *çatam*, Lat. *centum*), *hundred*, i. 2. 25, etc.

ἐκβαίνω (**βαίνω**), *step out*; *go out*, *go* from one position to another, esp. from a lower to a higher, or from a stream to the shore, iv. 2. 1, 3, 3. 3, 23.

ἐκβάλλω (**βάλλω**), *throw out*, ii. 1. 6; *expel*, said of persons, i. 2. 1, with **ἐκ** and gen.; *banish*, *send into exile*, i. 1. 7.

ἔκβασις, **εως**, **ἡ** (**ἐκβαίνω**), *a going out*, *exit*; *place of going out*, *exit*, *outlet*, *pass*, iv. 1. 20, 2. 1, 3. 20, 21.

Ἐκβάτανα, **ων**, **τά** (Ἀγβάτανα in Herodotus; old Persian *Hangmatâna*), *Ecbatana*, the capital of Media, situated near the Orontes range. It was said to have been founded by Semiramis, was captured by Cyrus the Elder in 550 B. C., and on account of its cool climate was made the summer residence of the Persian kings. Its ruins are to be seen near the important modern city of Hamadân. ii. 4. 25.

ἔκγονος, **ον** (**ἐκ**, √**γεν**, see **γίγνομαι**), *sprung from*, *descended from*; as subst., **οἱ ἔκγονοι**, *posterity*, *descendants*, iii. 2. 14; **τὰ ἔκγονα**, *offspring*, *young*, iv. 5. 25.

ἐκδέρω (**δέρω**, **δερῶ**, **ἔδειρα**, **δέδαρμαι**, **ἐδάρην**, *flay*; akin to Eng. *tear*), *take off the hide*, *skin*, *flay*, i. 2. 8.

ἐκδίδωμι (**δίδωμι**), *give out*, *give away*; esp. *give in marriage*; hence in pass., **παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη**, *married*, iv. 1. 24.

ἐκδύω (**δύω**), *strip off*; mid. and 2 aor. intrans., *strip off one's clothes*, *undress*, iv. 3. 12.

ἐκεῖ, adv., *there*, *in that place*, or *district*, i. 3. 20, 5. 12, 8. 12, iv. 1. 24; with a verb of motion, *to that place*, *thither*, iii. 1. 46.

ἐκεῖνος, **η**, **ο**, demonstrative pron. (**ἐκεῖ**), *that*, frequently without a subst., *that person* or *thing*, prop-

erly, but not always, used of things remote in distance or thought; with a subst. it has predicate position; it is often practically a distinct and emphatic personal pronoun, i. 1. 4, 5. 13, 7. 18, ii. 5. 38, etc.; sometimes it takes up the subject of the sentence again, as iii. 1. 29.

ἐκήρυξε, ἐκηρύχθη, see **κηρύττω**.

ἐκθλίβω (**θλίβω, θλίψω, ἔθλῑψα, ἐθλίφθην** and **ἐθλίβην**, *squeeze*), *squeeze out, press out*, said of soldiers crowded out of their proper position in the ranks, iii. 4. 19, 20. (Cf. Eng. *ecthlipsis*.)

ἐκκαλύπτω (**καλύπτω, καλύψω, ἐκάλυψα, κεκάλυμμαι, ἐκαλύφθην**, *cover*), *uncover*, said of shields, which were kept in a leather case (**σάγμα**), except when in actual use, or on parade, i. 2. 16.

ἐκκλησίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**ἐκ, καλέω**), *assembly* of citizens, so called because summoned by a crier; also applied to an assembly of soldiers, **ἐκκλησίαν συνάγειν** or **ποιεῖν**, *call an assembly*, i. 3. 2, 4. 12. (Cf. Eng. *ecclesiastic*.)

ἐκκλῑ́νω (**κλίνω, κλινῶ, ἔκλῑνα, κέκλιμαι, -εκλίνην**, *incline, bend*, cf. Lat. *inclino*), *bend out* of line, said of soldiers, *give way*, i. 8. 19.

ἐκκομίζω (**κομίζω**), *carry out, take out*, i. 5. 8.

ἐκκόπτω (**κόπτω**), *cut out* trees from a wood; this idiom is used in English by lumbermen, while the literary language uses *cut down*, i. 4. 10, ii. 3. 10.

ἐκκῡμαίνω (**κῡμαίνω, κῡμανῶ**, *swell like a wave*, **κῦμα**), *swell* or *bulge out, surge forward*, of a line of battle, i. 8. 18.

ἐκλέγω (**λέγω, -λέξω, -έλεξα, -είλοχα, -είλεγμαι**, rarely **-λέλεγμαι, -ελέγην, -ελέχθην**, *gather*), *pick out, select*, iii. 3. 19; mid. *select* (for oneself), ii. 3. 11. (Cf. Eng. *eclectic*.)

ἐκλείπω (**λείπω**), *leave, abandon*, of places, i. 2. 24 (see under **εἰς**), iv. 1. 8; the object is not expressed, iii. 4. 8; intrans., *give out, go away, melt*, of snow, iv. 5. 15. (Cf. Eng. *eclipse*.)

ἐκπέμπω (**πέμπω**), *send out, send away, dismiss*, iii. 2. 24.

ἐκπεπληγμένος, ἐκπεπλῆχθαι, see **ἐκπλήττω**.

ἐκπίμπλημι (**πίμπλημι**), *fill out, fill up*, iii. 4. 22.

ἐκπῑ́νω (**πῑ́νω**), *drink out*, that is, *finish, drink up*, i. 9. 25.

ἐκπῑ́πτω (**πῑ́πτω**), *fall out*; of trees, *fall down* (cf. **ἐκκόπτω**); ii. 3. 10; *be cast out*, hence *be banished, be in exile* (cf. **ἐκβάλλω**); **οἱ ἐκπεπτωκότες**, *the exiles*, i. 1. 7.

ἐκπλέω (**πλέω**), *sail out, sail off* or *away, put to sea*, ii. 6. 2, iii. 1. 8.

ἔκπλεως, ων (**√πλε**, cf. **πίμπλημι**), *filled out, full*, iii. 4. 22.

ἐκπλήττω (**πλήττω, -πλήξω, -έπληξα, πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, ἐπλήγην**, *strike*; but **ἐκπλήττω** has 2 aor. pass. **ἐξεπλάγην**), *strike out*; esp. *strike out* of one's senses, *astonish, amaze*; pass., *be astounded, astonished, amazed*, ii. 4. 26; *be terrified, frightened, greatly alarmed*, i. 5. 13, 8. 20, ii. 2. 18, 3. 1.

ἐκποδών, adv. (really **ἐκ ποδῶν**, *away from the feet*), *out of the way*, figuratively, ii. 5. 29; so **ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι**, *put out of the way*, i. 6. 9.

ἔκπωμα, ατος, τό (**ἐκ, πίνω**), *drinking-cup, goblet*, iv. 3. 25, 4. 21. One of the commonest forms of the Greek drinking-vessels was the cylix (**κύλιξ**), the shape of which is shown by Fig. 17. See also the cut under **φιάλη**.

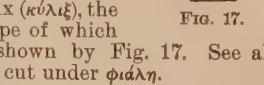


Fig. 17.

ἐκτός, adv. (**ἐκ**), *outside of*, with gen, ii. 3. 3.

ἐκτρέπω (*τρέπω*), *turn out*; pass. and 2 aor. mid., *turn aside* from the way, iv. 5. 15.

ἐκτῶντο, see *κτάομαι*.

ἐκφαίνω (*φαίνω*), *show forth, manifest*; *πόλεμον ἐκφαίνειν, begin war openly, declare war*, iii. 1. 16.

ἐκφέρω (*φέρω*), *carry out, bring out*; *πόλεμον ἐκφέρειν, declare war, begin hostilities*, iii. 2. 29; *make known, relate*, i. 9. 11.

ἐκφεύγω (*φεύγω*), *flee from, escape*, i. 10. 3; with inf. and *μή*, *μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ καταπετρωθῆναι, he narrowly escaped being stoned to death*, i. 3. 2.

ἑκών, οὖσα, όν, *voluntarily, willingly, of one's own accord*, i. 1. 9, 9. 9, ii. 4. 4, iii. 2. 26.

ἔλαιον, ου, τό (*ἐλᾶᾶ, ἐλαιᾶ, olive-tree*), *olive oil*, iv. 4. 13. Oil was used by the Greeks for anointing the body, especially after the bath.

ἐλάττων, ον, gen. *ονος*, used as comp. of *μικρός* (positive *ἐλαχύς*, quoted by grammarians; fem. *ἐλάχεια* in epic; cf. *ἐλάχιστος*. Probably akin to Lat. *levis*, Eng. *light*), *smaller, less* in size or number, *fewer*, ii. 4. 13, iv. 2. 3, 5. 26.

ἐλαύνω, ἐλῶ, ἤλασα, ἐλήλακα, ἐλήλαμαι, ἠλάθην, drive, of animals, iv. 7. 24; the object *ἵππον* is omitted and the verb translated *ride*, i. 5. 15, 8. 1, 24, 10. 15, ii. 5. 32, iii. 4. 4; when *ἅρμα* is to be understood, *drive*, iv. 8. 28; the verb is used of the chariot itself, i. 8. 10; *στράτευμα* omitted, *march*, said of a commander, i. 2. 23, 5. 7, 13, 7. 12. (Cf. Eng. *elastic*.)

ἐλάφειος, ον (*ἔλαφος, stag*), *of deer*. *κρέᾶ ἐλάφεια, venison*, i. 5. 2.

ἐλαφρός, ά, όν (perhaps akin to *ἐλάττων*), *light, active, agile, nimble*, iii. 3. 6, iv. 2. 27.

ἐλάχιστος, η, ον (see *ἐλάττων*), used as sup. of *μικρός, least, fewest*, iii. 2. 28, iv. 6. 10.

ἐλέγχω, ἐλέγξω, ἤλεγξα, ἐλήλεγμαι, ἠλέγχθην, test, prove, examine, question; with an interrogative clause, iii. 5. 14, iv. 1. 23; *convict, convict of*, pass., *be proved* to be doing something, with partic., ii. 5. 27.

ἑλεῖν, see *αἱρέω*.

ἐλελίζω, ἠλέλιξα (*ἐλελεῦ*, a war-cry), *shout ἐλελεῦ, give the war-cry*, i. 8. 18. (Perhaps in Xen. alone of prose authors.)

ἐλευθερίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (*ἐλευθερός*), *freedom, liberty*, i. 7. 3, iii. 2. 13.

ἐλευθερός, ά, όν, *free*, not a slave, ii. 5. 32; of a people, *independent, liberty-loving*, iv. 3. 4.

ἐλέχθησαν, see *λέγω*.

ἐλήφθην, see *λαμβάνω*.

ἐλθεῖν, see *ἔρχομαι*.

ἕλκω, ἕλξω, εἵλκυσα, εἵλκυκα, εἵλκυσμαι, εἱλκύσθην, impf. *εἷλκον, draw, drag*, iv. 5. 32; of a bow, iv. 2. 28.

Ἑλλάς, άδος, ἡ, *Hellas*. The name is applied in Homer to a city of Phthiōtis in Thessaly, with its surrounding territory. Later it was used for northern Greece, as distinguished from the Peloponnesus. In the historical period it denotes the whole of Greece, even including the islands and Ionia, i. 2. 9, ii. 1. 17, 3. 18, iii. 1. 2, iv. 8. 6.

Ἕλλην, ηνος, ὁ, *a Hellene, a Greek*; in the Anab. used esp. of the soldiers in the employ of Cyrus. The Greeks were said to be descended from Hellen, a son of Deucalion; but this ancestor was invented only to explain the name of the people. i. 1. 2, etc.

Ἑλληνικός, ή, όν (*Ἕλλην*), *Hellenic, Greek, pertaining to Greece or the Greeks*, i. 1. 6, 8. 5, iii. 4. 45, iv. 8. 7; as subst. *τὸ Ἑλληνικόν*, with *στράτευμα* understood, *the Greek army, the Greek contingent*, i. 2. 1, 4. 13, 7. 14, 8. 4, iii. 4. 34, iv. 1. 10, etc.

ἑλληνικῶς, adv. (Ἑλληνικός), *in Greek, in the Greek language*, i. 8. 1.

Ἕλληνίς, ίδος, fem. adj., *Greek*, πόλις, iv. 8. 22.

Ἑλλησποντιακός, ή, όν (Ἑλλήσποντος), *of the Hellespont, Hellespontine, on the Hellespont*, of cities, i. 1. 9.

Ἑλλήσποντος, ου, ὁ (Ἕλλης πόντος, *sea of Helle*), *Hellespont*, the modern Dardanelles, the strait connecting the Propontis with the Aegean sea. It takes its name from Helle, daughter of Athamas and Nephele, who fled with her brother Phrixus on the ram with the golden fleece, in order to escape the cruelty of their stepmother Ino. As they were crossing the strait, Helle fell off and was drowned. Phrixus continued his journey to Colchis. i. 1. 9, ii. 6. 3.

ἐλπίζω, ἤλπισα, ἠλπίσθην (ἐλπίς), *hope, expect*, with fut. infin., iv. 6. 18.

ἐλπίς, ίδος, ή (√Fελπ, akin to Lat. *voluptas, pleasure*), *hope, expectation*, ii. 5. 10; with gen. of thing hoped for, ii. 1. 19, iii. 2. 8, 10; with aor. inf., ii. 1. 19; fut. inf. after ἐλπίδας ἔχω, *I have hopes*, ii. 5. 12, iv. 3. 8; ἐρῶ ταῦτα ἐξ ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας, *I will tell the reasons why I hope*, ii. 5. 12; ἐν μεγάλαις ἐλπίσιν εἶναι, *to be in great hopes, to be very confident*, i. 4. 17; ἐλπίδας λέγων διῆγε, *he kept putting them off with hopes*, i. 2. 11.

ἔμαθεν, see μανθάνω.

ἑαυτοῦ, ῆς, reflex pron. in gen., dat., and acc. (stem of pron. of 1 pers. + αὐτός), *of myself*, etc., i. 3. 10, ii. 5. 10, etc.

ἐμβαίνω (βαίνω), *step in* or *into, go into*, abs., iv. 3. 20, 28, or with εἰς and acc., ii. 3. 11; εἰς πλοῖον, *embark*, i. 3. 17, 4. 7.

ἐμβάλλω (βάλλω), *throw in, into*; of fodder, *throw before, feed to*, with dat., i. 9. 27; phrase πληγὰς ἐμβάλλειν, *inflict corporal punishment, give one a flogging*, i. 5. 11; intrans., with εἰς and acc., *make an invasion, an inroad*, iii. 5. 16, 17, iv. 7. 20; abs., *make an attack*, i. 8. 24, iii. 4. 14; of rivers, *flow into, empty*, with εἰς and acc., i. 2. 8, iv. 8. 2.

ἐμβολή, ῆς, ἡ (ἐμβάλλω), *invasion, inroad*, [iv. 1. 4].

ἐμέω, ἐμοῦμαι, ἤμεσα (√Fεμ, akin to Lat. *vomo*; cf. Eng. *emetic*), *vomit*, iv. 8. 20.

ἐμμένω (μένω), *stay in*, with ἐν and dat., iv. 7. 17.

ἐμός, ή, όν (cf. ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, under ἐγώ), *my, mine*, with or without the article, i. 6. 6, ii. 5. 22, iv. 8. 4; ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, *a brother of mine*, i. 7. 9.

ἔμπαλιν (πάλιν), adv., *back, back again*, always with article and crasis, τοὔμπαλιν, with verbs of motion, i. 4. 15; so εἰς τοὔμπαλιν, iii. 5. 13, iv. 3. 21.

ἐμπεδόω, ἠμπέδουν (akin to πεδίον), orig. *fix in the earth*, hence, *hold firm*; of oaths, *observe, keep inviolate*, iii. 2. 10.

ἔμπειρος, ον (πεῖρα), *experienced, acquainted with* a thing, iv. 5. 8. (Cf. Eng. *empiric.*)

ἐμπείρως, adv. (ἔμπειρος), *by experience*; ἐμπείρως τινὸς ἔχειν, *to know by experience, be personally acquainted with*, ii. 6. 1.

ἐμπίμπλημι (πίμπλημι), *fill, fill completely*, i. 10. 12; γνώμην ἁπάντων ἐμπιμπλάναι, *to satisfy the expectation of all*, i. 7. 8.

ἐμπίμπρημι (πίμπρημι, πρήσω, ἔπρησα, πέπρημαι, ἐπρήσθην, *burn*; the simple forms are mostly poetic), *set on fire, burn*, iv. 4. 14.

ἐμπίπτω (πίπτω), *fall into*, or *upon, attack*, of missiles or an enemy, iv. 8. 11; of an emotion, *fall upon, seize*, with dat., ii. 2. 19; of a thought or idea, *occur to*, with dat., iii. 1. 13.

ἐμποδίζω, **ἐμποδιῶ** (**πούς**), *bind the feet, shackle*; then *impede, hinder*, iv. 3. 29.

ἐμποδών, adv. (probably formed after analogy of **ἐκποδών**), *in the way, hindering*, with **τὸ μή** and inf., iv. 8. 14; **μὴ οὐ** and inf., iii. 1. 13.

ἐμποιέω (**ποιέω**), *make in, cause in*; **φόβον τινὶ ἐμποιεῖν**, *inspire one with fear*, ii. 6. 19; with dat. of pers. and a **ὡς** clause, *impress one with the fact, bring it home to one*, ii. 6. 8.

ἐμπόριον, **ου, τό** (**ἔμπορος**, *trader, merchant*), *trading-place, mart* for wares brought by sea, i. 4. 6. (Eng. *emporium*.)

ἔμπροσθεν, adv. (**πρόσθεν**), *before, in front of*, with gen., iv. 5. 9; following the gen., i. 8. 23; abs., iv. 2. 12; **οἱ ἔμπροσθεν**, *the van*, iii. 4. 48, iv. 5. 19; but in iv. 3. 14. this phrase refers to the enemy.

ἐμφάγοιεν, ἐμφαγόντας, see **ἐνέφαγον**.

ἐμφανής, **ές** (**φαίνω**), *visible, evident, manifest*; phrase **ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ**, *openly, plainly*, ii. 5. 25.

ἐν, prep. with dat. (akin to Lat. *in*, Eng. *in*), *in*, of place, i. 2. 21, 5. 6, ii. 2. 15, iv. 7. 17, etc.; used like Eng. *on* in describing situations on the sea, iv. 8. 22; of armor, etc., i. 7. 10, iii. 2. 7, iv. 3. 7; of arrangement, **ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει**, *in a solid square*, i. 7. 20, **ἐν τάξει**, *in regular order*, i. 8. 19, etc.; sometimes like Lat. *inter, among*, i. 6. 1, 10. 3, ii. 5. 14, iii. 4. 26, iv. 8. 8; **ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησι**, *among the Greeks, in Greece*, ii. 3. 15. **ἐν** is used in some cases where motion is implied, so esp. with **γίγνομαι**, iv. 3. 29, 5. 28, 8. 15; cf. also iv. 7. 17, where the pluperf. implies rest following motion. **ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ**, *in the same place*, i. 8. 4, iii. 1. 27, cf. **ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ**, iv. 6. 18; **ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς**, *under surveillance*, iv. 5. 29; **ἐν δεξιᾷ, ἀριστερᾷ**, see the words. The notion of place shades into that of means in ii. 5. 17, **ἐν ᾗ** (sc. **ὁπλίσει**), *in which, by means of which*; phrases of manner, **ἐν τῷ φανερῷ, ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ**, see the respective words; the object of **ἐν** denotes a condition of circumstances, **ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ**, *in safety*, iv. 7. 8, cf. i. 8. 22, iii. 2. 36, **ἐν δεινῷ**, *in danger*, ii. 3. 22, cf. 6. 7, **ἐν ἀφθόνοις**, *in abundance*, iii. 2. 25, cf. iv. 5. 29; denoting that with regard to which, ii. 5. 19, **εἰ δ' ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἡττώμεθα**, "and if at all these points we were worsted" (Dakyns). In expressions of time, *in, within, during*, esp. with words that themselves denote time, as **ἡμέρᾳ, καιρύς, χρόνος**, i. 7. 9, 18, ii. 3. 22, etc., frequently also **ἐν ᾧ**, *while*, ii. 2. 15, iv. 2. 19, etc., **ἐν τούτῳ**, *meanwhile*, i. 5. 15, 8. 12, iv. 3. 32, etc.; also with words that do not express time, i. 2. 25, 7. 12, iii. 2. 18, 4. 5, iv. 6. 3. In composition, **ἐν** has the force of *in, upon, among*; before **κ, γ, χ** it becomes **ἐγ-**, before **π, β, φ** and **μ, ἐμ-**.

ἐναγκυλάω (**ἀγκύλη**, *throwing-strap*), *provide with a throwing-strap*, said of arrows that were to be used as javelins, iv. 2. 28.

ἐναντίος, **ᾱ, ον** (**ἀντίος**), *against, opposite, opposed to, to meet*, iv. 3. 28, with dat., *hostile*, iii. 2. 10; **ἄνεμος ἐναντίος ἔπνει**, *the wind was blowing in their faces*, iv. 5. 3; **τἀναντία στρέφειν**, *turn in the opposite direction*, iv. 3. 32; **ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου**, *on the opposite side*, iv. 7. 5.

ἔνατος, **η, ον** (**ἐννέα**), *ninth*, iv. 5. 24.

ἔνδεια, **ᾱς, ἡ** (**δέω**), *want, scarcity, need*, i. 10. 18.

ἑνδέκατος, **η, ον** (**ἕνδεκα**, *eleven*), *eleventh*, i. 7. 18.

ἔνδηλος, **ον** (**δῆλος**), *evident, manifest, plain*; like **δῆλος** with ptc. and **εἰμί**, ii. 4. 2, or ptc. and **γίγνομαι**, ii. 6. 23; **ἔνδηλον τοῦτο εἶχεν, ὅτι,**

he showed plainly that, etc., ii. 6. 18.

ἔνδον, adv. (**ἐν**), *within, inside, indoors*, ii. 5. 32, iv. 5. 24. (Cf. Eng. *endogen.*)

ἐνδύω (**δύω**), *put on*, of clothes, armor, etc.; mid. *put on oneself*, **τὸν θώρᾱκα ἐνεδύετο**, *he put on his cuirass*, i. 8. 3.

ἐνέδρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (√**ἑδ**, *sit*, cf. Lat. *insidiæ*), *ambush, ambuscade*, iv. 7. 22.

ἐνεδρεύω, ἐνήδρευσα, ἐνηδρεύθην, fut. mid. as pass. **ἐνεδρεύσομαι** (**ἐνέδρᾱ**), *make an ambuscade, lie in wait, lie in ambush*, i. 6. 2, iv. 1. 22, 6. 17.

ἔνειμι (**εἰμί**), *be in*, the place being expressed by **ἐν** with dat., or only indicated by the context, *be there*, i. 5. 1, 2, 6. 3, ii. 3. 14, 4. 22, iv. 5. 26.

ἕνεκα and **ἕνεκεν** (generally before vowels), adv. and improper prep. with gen., usually following the noun, *because of, on account of, for the sake of*, i. 9. 17, 21, ii. 3. 13, iii. 3. 4, 4. 31; between the noun and a modifying word, i. 4. 5, 8; **ἕνεκεν**, before vowels, ii. 3. 20, iii. 2. 28; but **ἕνεκα** also occurs before vowels, i. 5. 9, iii. 4. 35, iv. 1. 22, 7. 20.

ἐνενήκοντα, indecl. numeral (**ἐννέα**), *ninety*, i. 5. 5, 7. 12, [ii. 2. 6].

ἐνεός, ᾱ́, όν, *dumb, deaf-mute*, iv. 5. 33.

ἐνέφαγον, 2 aor., pres. **ἐνεσθίω** not in use, *eat hurriedly*, iv. 2. 1, 5. 9.

ἐνεχείρισαν, see **ἐγχειρίζω**.

ἔνθα, adv. of place and time; rel., *where*, ii. 2. 11, iv. 2. 20, 3. 6, 5. 6, 22; also with verbs of motion, *whither*, iv. 8. 14; referring to a subst., equivalent to *at which, in which*, etc., i. 8. 1, iii. 4. 41; as dem., *there*, i. 9. 5; of time, dem. *then, thereupon*, esp. in the combination **ἔνθα δή** (see **δή**), i. 5. 8, 8. 2, 24, ii. 1. 8, iv. 5. 6, 18, 24.

ἐνθάδε, adv. of place, *here*, iii. 3. 2; with verbs of motion, *to this place, hither*, ii. 1. 4, 3. 21, iii. 2. 26.

ἔνθαπερ, adv. of place, *just where, in the very place where*, iv. 8. 25.

ἔνθεν, adv. of place, as dem., *from this side, on this side*; repeated, **ἔνθεν . . . ἔνθεν**, *on this side . . . on that, on the one side . . . on the other*, ii. 4. 22, iii. 5. 7; **ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν**, *on both sides*, iv. 6. 12, 8. 13; with gen., iv. 3. 28. Rel., *from which place, whence*, i. 10. 1, ii. 3. 6.

ἐνθῡμέομαι, ἐνθῡμήσομαι, ἐντεθῡμημαι, ἐνεθῡμήθην (**θῡμός**, *spirit*), *bear in mind, take into consideration, reflect upon*, ii. 4. 5, 5. 15; with **ὅτι** clause, iii. 1. 20, 2. 18; perf. **ἐντεθῡμημαι**, *I have observed*, with acc. and **ὅτι** clause, iii. 1. 43.

ἐνθύμημα, *ατος, τό* (**ἐνθῡμέομαι**), *thought, idea*, iii. 5. 12. (Cf. Eng. *enthymeme.*)

ἑνί, ἑνός, see **εἷς**.

ἐνιαυτός, ου, ὁ, *year*, ii. 6. 29; **κατ' ἐνιαυτόν**, *every year, annually*, iii. 2. 12.

ἔνιοι, αι, α (**ἔνι**, for **ἔνεστι, οἵ**), *some*, i. 7. 5, ii. 4. 1.

ἐνίοτε, adv. (cf. **ἔνιοι**), *sometimes*, i. 5. 2, ii. 4. 11, 6. 9, iii. 1. 20.

ἐννέα, indecl. numeral, *nine*, i. 4. 19.

ἐννοέω (**νοέω**), *have in mind, think, reflect*, abs., ii. 4. 19, with **ὅτι** clause, ii. 4. 5; with acc. *think of, consider, hit upon*, ii. 2. 10; so also in mid., iii. 1. 3, 41; *be anxious, fear*, with **μή** clause, iv. 2. 13; so also in mid., iii. 5. 3.

ἔννοια, ᾱς, ἡ (**ἐννοέω**), *thought, idea*, iii. 1. 13.

ἐνοικέω (**οἰκέω**), *dwell in, inhabit*, i. 3. 4; **οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες**, *the inhabitants*, i. 2. 24, 5. 5, iii. 4. 12.

ἑνοράω (**δράω**), *see in* anything, *discern, perceive, observe*; **πολλὰ ἑνορῶ δι' ἅ**, *I see many reasons why*, i. 3. 15.

ἐνοχλέω, *ἐνοχλήσω, ἠνώχλησα, ἠνώχληκα, ἠνώχλημαι, ἠνωχλήθην* (ὄχλος), *crowd upon, get in one's way, annoy*, with dat., ii. 5. 13, iii. 4. 21.

ἐνταῦθα, adv. of place and time; of place, *there*, i. 2. 8, 4. 19, iv. 4. 18, etc.; with verbs of motion, *to that place, thither*, i. 2. 1, 10. 13, 17, iii. 4. 11, 5. 5; of time, *then, thereupon*, i. 3. 21, 10. 1, 4, iii. 4. 45, 5. 7, iv. 1. 17; strengthened by δή, iv. 3. 7, 7. 25, see δή.

ἐντείνω (τείνω), *stretch upon*; hence *πληγὰς ἐντείνειν*, with dat., *inflict blows upon* (with extended arm), ii. 4. 11.

ἐντελής, *ές* (τέλος), *complete, entire, full*, i. 4. 13.

ἔντερον, *ου, τό* (ἐν), *intestine*, pl. *inwards, entrails, intestines*, ii. 5. 33. (Cf. Eng. *enteric.*)

ἐντεῦθεν, adv. of place and time; of place, *from there, thence*, i. 2. 7, iii. 4. 13, iv. 7. 15, etc.; of time, *after that, then, thereupon*, iii. 1. 31.

ἐντίθημι (τίθημι), *place in* or *upon*, of a ship, *put on board*; so in mid., *put on board* what is one's own, i. 4. 7.

ἐντίμως, adv. (*ἔντιμος, in honor*), *ἐντίμως ἔχειν, to be honored, be held in high esteem*, ii. 1. 7.

ἐντός, adv. (ἐν), *within, inside of*, with gen., i. 10. 3, ii. 1. 11.

ἐντυγχάνω (τυγχάνω), *happen on, light upon, meet by chance, find*, with dat. which is sometimes only implied in the context, i. 2. 27, 8. 1, ii. 3. 10, 5. 32, iii. 2. 31, iv. 5. 19.

Ἐνυάλιος, *ου, ὁ* (adj. from Ἐνυώ, the goddess of bloody conflict, companion of Ares), *Enyalius*, epithet of Ares (Mars) as god of battle, to whom the war-cry was raised, i. 8. 18.

ἐνωμόταρχος, *ου, ὁ* (*ἐνωμοτίᾱ, ἄρχω*), *enomotarch, commander of an enomoty*, iii. 4. 21, iv. 3. 26.

ἐνωμοτίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (ἐν, ὄμνῡμι), *enomoty*, orig., as the name implies, *a band of sworn companions*; it was one-fourth of the λόχος, and consisted ordinarily of twenty-five men, iii. 4. 22, iv. 3. 26.

ἐξ, see ἐκ.

ἕξ, indecl. numeral (akin to Lat. *sex*, Eng. *six*), *six*, i. 1. 10, etc.

ἐξαγγέλλω (ἀγγέλλω), *report, announce, make known, inform*, with acc. and dat. i. 7. 8, with ὡς clause, ii. 4. 24.

ἐξάγω (ἄγω), *lead out, lead away*, i. 6. 10; fig. *lead on, induce*, with inf. i. 8. 21.

ἐξαιρέω (αἱρέω), *take out, remove*, ii. 1. 9, 3. 16; of a suspicion, *remove, dispel*, with acc. and gen., ii. 5. 4; mid., *choose, select, pick out*, with acc. and ἐκ with gen., ii. 5. 20.

ἐξαιτέω (αἰτέω), *demand from, beg from*; mid., *beg off, secure one's release by intercession*, i. 1. 3.

ἑξακισχίλιοι, *αι, α* (*ἑξάκις, six times*, χίλιοι), *six thousand*, i. 7. 11, 8. 24.

ἑξακόσιοι, *αι, α* (ἕξ), *six hundred*, i. 8. 6.

ἐξανίστημι (ἵστημι), *make stand up* from one's place, 2 aor., *stand up, rise up*, iv. 5. 18.

ἐξαπατάω, *ἐξαπατήσω*, etc., fut. pass. *ἐξαπατηθήσομαι*, also fut. mid. as pass. *ἐξαπατήσομαι* (*ἀπάτη, ἐξαπάτη, deceit*), *deceive, practice trickery* or *treachery*, abs. or with acc., ii. 6. 22, iii. 1. 10, 2. 4, 22.

ἐξαπίνης, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly*, iii. 3. 7, 5. 2, iv. 7. 25. (Rare in Attic; the more common word *ἐξαίφνης* is used in the later books of the Anab.)

ἔξειμι (εἶμι), *go out, march out from*, iii. 5. 13.

ἔξειμι (εἰμί), only impers., *be permitted, be allowed, be possible, one may*, with inf., ii. 6. 28, iii. 1. 13, 4. 39, with acc. and inf., ii. 6. 12, iv. 3. 10; with dat. of pers.

and inf., ii. 3. 26, 5. 23, iv. 1. 20; a pred. ptc. is in the acc., iii. 2. 26, or dat., ii. 5. 18.

ἐξελαύνω (ἐλαύνω), *drive out, expel*, i. 3. 4; intrans., *march out, march on, proceed, advance*, i. 2. 5, 4. 9, 7. 1, etc.

ἐξέρχομαι (ἔρχομαι), *come out, go out, get out*, abs. or with **ἐκ** and gen., i. 3. 17, 6. 5, ii. 5. 37, iii. 1. 12.

ἐξέτασις, εως, ἡ (ἐξετάζω, *examine*), *examination, inspection*, i. 7. 2; **ἐξέτασιν ποιεῖν, ποιεῖσθαι,** *hold a review*, i. 2. 9, 14, 7. 1.

ἐξηγέομαι (ἡγέομαι), *lead out, act as guide*; **ἀγαθόν τι τῷ στρατεύματι ἐξηγεῖσθαι,** *do good service to the army as guide*, iv. 5. 28. (Cf. Eng. *exegesis*.)

ἑξήκοντα, indecl. numeral (**ἕξ**), *sixty*, iii. 4. 34, etc.

ἐξικνέομαι (ἱκνέομαι, ἵξομαι, ἱκόμην, ἶγμαι, *come*; simple verb rare in prose), *arrive at, reach*; esp. of missiles, *reach the mark*, i. 8. 19, iii. 4. 4, iv. 8. 3; said also of the thrower, iv. 3. 18; with gen., *strike*, iii. 3. 7; of the weapon, *carry*, **αἱ σφενδοναὶ ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνοῦνται,** *the slings carry* (only) *a short distance*, iii. 3. 17.

ἐξίστημι (ἵστημι), *set aside*; mid. intrans., *step out, go aside, get out of the way*, i. 5. 14.

ἔξομεν, see **ἔχω.**

ἐξοπλίζω (ὁπλίζω), *arm completely*; mid., *put on full armor*, i. 8. 3, ii. 1. 2, iii. 1. 28, iv. 6. 9; pf. pass. ptc. **ἐξωπλισμένος,** *in full armor, armed at all points*, iv. 3. 3.

ἐξοπλισίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (ἐξοπλίζω), *state of being fully armed, complete equipment*; **ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ,** *in battle array, under arms*, i. 7. 10.

ἐξορμάω (ὁρμάω), *urge on, impel, incite, encourage*, iii. 1. 24; also intrans., *start, set out*, with **ἐπί** and acc., iii. 1. 25.

ἔξω, adv. (**ἐξ**), *outside, without*, ii. 5. 32, *on the outer* or *exposed side*, ii. 2. 4; **τὸ ἔξω τεῖχος,** *the outer wall*, i. 4. 4; *out of the country, beyond the frontiers*, ii. 6. 3; with gen., *outside of*, i. 4. 5, iv. 7. 9; *beyond, outflanking*, said of bodies of soldiers, i. 8. 13, 23, 10. 6, iv. 8. 15, 16; **ἔξω βελῶν,** *out of range*, iii. 4. 15; **ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ,** *out of danger*, ii. 6. 12. (Cf. Eng. *exotic*.)

ἔξωθεν, adv. (**ἔξω**), *from without*; with gen. = **ἔξω,** *outside of*, iii. 4. 21.

ἔοικα, perf. with pres. meaning, plupf. **ἐώκη, -ειν,** fut. **ἐοίξω** rare; pres. **εἴκω** not found; *be like, resemble*, with dat., ii. 1. 13, iv. 8. 20; **ὡς ἔοικε,** parenthetically, *as it seems, as is likely*, ii. 2. 18.

ἐπαγγέλλω (ἀγγέλλω), *notify, announce*; mid., *offer oneself, declare oneself ready*, with inf., iv. 7. 20; *promise*, with dat. and inf., ii. 1. 4.

ἔπαθον, see **πάσχω.**

ἐπαινέω, ἐπαινέσω and in same sense **ἐπαινέσομαι** (more frequent in Attic), **ἐπῄνεσα, ἐπῄνεκα, ἐπῄνημαι, ἐπῃνέθην** (**αἰνέω,** *praise*, rare in prose), *praise, commend, approve, show one's approbation*, abs. i. 3. 7, with acc. i. 4. 16, ii. 6. 20; with acc. and **ἐπί** with dat., iii. 1. 45.

ἐπακολουθέω (ἀκολουθέω, ἀκολουθήσω, *follow*), *follow after, pursue, dog one's steps*, iii. 2. 35, [iv. 1. 1].

ἐπάν and **ἐπήν,** temporal conj. (**ἐπεί, ἄν**) with subj., *when, whenever*, i. 4. 13, ii. 4. 3; **ἐπὰν τάχιστα,** like Lat. *cum primum, as soon as*, iv. 6. 9.

ἐπαναχωρέω (χωρέω), *withdraw, retire, retreat*, iii. 3. 10, 5. 13.

ἐπεγγελάω (γελάω), *laugh at, mock, insult*, partic., *in derision*, with dat., ii. 4. 27.

ἐπεγείρω (ἐγείρω), *wake up*, with acc., iv. 3. 10.

ἐπεί, temporal and causal conj.; of time, with past tenses of indic., *when, after*, i. 1. 1, 2. 26, 5. 8, 9. 7, ii. 2. 7, iv. 7. 2; with opt. of repeated action, i. 3. 1, 5. 2, 8. 20, ii. 6. 14; of cause, *since, because, as, for*, i. 3. 5, 6, 8. 23, ii. 1. 4, iii. 1. 31; **ἐπεί γε,** *because, you see* —, i. 3. 9.

ἐπειδάν, temporal conj. (**ἐπειδή, ἄν**) with subj., *when, whenever, after*, i. 4. 8, ii. 2. 4, 3. 29; **ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα,** *as soon as*, iii. 1. 9.

ἐπειδή, temporal and causal conj. (**ἐπεί, δή**), of time, *when, after, as soon as*, freq. with ind., i. 3. 4, 8. 28, 9. 29, ii. 5. 38, iii. 1. 13, iv. 5. 8, etc.; with opt., in ind. disc., iii. 5. 18, of repeated action, iv. 5. 9, 7. 10; of cause, *since, because*; **ἐπειδή γε καί, ἐπειδὴ καί,** *since, besides other reasons* ——, i. 9. 24, iii. 2. 37.

ἐπείδον, see **ἐφοράω.**

ἔπειμι (**εἰμί**), *be upon, over, across*, of towers and bridges, i. 2. 5, ii. 4. 25, iv. 4. 2.

ἔπειμι (**εἶμι**), *come on, come up*, i. 5. 15, iv. 7. 23; in military language, *advance, attack*, i. 2. 7, 6. 2, 7. 4, 10. 10, iii. 4. 33, iv. 6. 23; with dat., *advance upon, attack*, iv. 3. 23, 5. 17; of time, *succeed, follow*, in the phrase **ἡ ἐπιοῦσα ἡμέρᾳ,** *the next day*, [i. 7. 2], iii. 4. 18, iv. 5. 7, 30.

ἐπείπερ, causal conj. (**ἐπεί**), *since, in view of the fact that*, used in giving a cause that must be obvious to the hearer, ii. 2. 10, 5. 38, 41.

ἔπεισα, ἐπείσθησαν, see **πείθω.**

ἔπειτα, adv. (**εἶτα**), of time, *afterwards, thereupon, then, next*, iii. 1. 46, iv. 1. 7, 3. 11; in narrative or argument, *in the second place, furthermore, then*, i. 3. 10, 9. 5, ii. 4. 5, 13; in ii. 5. 20 it may be considered as adversative, *nevertheless, in spite of this*; **εἰς τὸν ἔπειτα χρόνον,** *in time to come, in the future*, ii. 1. 17.

ἐπέπᾱτο, see **πάομαι.**

ἐπέπρᾱκτο, see **πράττω.**

ἐπέρομαι (**ἔρομαι**, rare and doubtful pres., **ἐρήσομαι, ἠρόμην,** *ask*; the fut. and aor. are used as equivalents for the corresponding tenses of **ἐρωτάω**), *ask besides, ask again*; in general *inquire, ask*, with acc. of person and interr. clause, iii. 1. 6.

ἔπεσον, see **πίπτω.**

ἐπέχω (**ἔχω**), *hold back, restrain*; intrans., *hold back from, desist from, defer*, with gen., iii. 4. 36.

ἐπήκοος, ον (**ἀκούω**), *hearing, giving ear*; applied to a place from which one can hear or be heard, **εἰς ἐπήκοον,** *within hearing distance, within earshot*, ii. 5. 38, iii. 3. 1, iv. 4. 5.

ἐπήν, see **ἐπάν.**

ἐπήρετο, see **ἐπέρομαι.**

ἐπί, prep. with gen., dat., and acc., before vowels **ἐπ'** and **ἐφ'**; with gen., of place, *on, upon*, iv. 2. 20, 3. 6, 5. 19, 25, 7. 21, frequently with means of locomotion, horses, vehicles, ships, etc., i. 2. 16, 4. 3, 5. 10, 7. 20, ii. 2. 14, iii. 2. 19, 4. 49; **ἐπὶ γεφύρᾱς,** ii. 4. 13; *on* a river, ii. 5. 18, iv. 3. 28; **ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου,** *on the left wing*, i. 8. 9, cf. iii. 2. 36; with a verb of motion, *to, towards*, ii. 1. 3; of arrangement, **ἐπὶ τεττάρων,** *four deep*, i. 2. 15, cf. **ἐπὶ πολλῶν, ἐπ' ὀλίγων,** iv. 8. 11; **ἐπὶ φάλαγγος,** *in line of battle*, iv. 3. 26, 6. 6; **ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν,** *by themselves*, ii. 4. 10. Of time, *at, on*, iv. 7. 10; so **ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου (ἱερείου),** *with the first victim*, iv. 3. 9; **ἐφ' ἡμῶν,** *in our times*, i. 9. 12.

With dat.: of place, *on, upon*, i. 4. 4, 8. 27, 10. 12, ii. 4. 38, iv. 4. 2; *at, by, on*, i. 2. 8, 13, 3. 20, 4. 5, 9. 3, iv. 1. 20; **ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ,** *on the left wing*, i. 8. 20, 9. 31; **ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γίγνομαι,** *reach the summit, get to the top*, iii. 4. 49; **μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι,** *remain with*

the army, iii. 4. 41. The notions of time and place are almost blended in iv. 4. 18; of time, ἐπὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, *at the third* (signal), ii. 2. 4; ἐπὶ τούτῳ, *after him*, iii. 2. 4; signifying dependence, *in the power of*, i. 1. 4; so esp. with γίγνομαι, *fall into one's hands*, iii. 1. 13, 17, 18, 35; but also in the sense of *over*, *in command of*, i. 4. 2. Of cause, *because of*, *for*, *on account of*, ii. 6. 26, iii. 1. 27; of purpose, *for*, i. 3. 1, 5. 8, 6. 10, ii. 4. 5, 8, iv. 4. 17; to express stipulations, ἐφ' ᾧ or ἐφ' ᾧτε, *on condition that*, iv. 2. 19, 4. 6; ἐπὶ τούτοις ὀμνύναι, *to take the oath on these terms*, *with this understanding*, iii. 2. 4, cf. iv. 4. 6; *with a view to this*, iii. 5. 18.

With acc.: of place, *to*, *towards*, *up to*, *upon*, i. 1. 3, 4. 10, ii. 4. 13, iii. 1. 22, 4. 27, 5. 7, iv. 3. 11, 8. 8; of mounting a horse, i. 8. 3, iii. 4. 35; ἐπὶ δόρυ, *to the right*, iv. 3. 29; in a hostile sense, *against*, i. 2. 1, 4, 3. 1, 21, ii. 4. 3, 5. 34, 39, iii. 1. 5, iv. 4. 20, almost always used in this sense with nouns denoting persons; not so, however, in iii. 1. 24. Of distance and extent, *over*, i. 7. 15, ii. 4. 13, iv. 6. 11; ἐπὶ πολύ, *over a long distance*, i. 8. 8, iv. 2. 13, ἐπὶ βραχύ, iii. 3. 17; denoting a limit, *to*, *as far as*, with ἔστε, iv. 5. 6. Of purpose or object, i. 2. 2, 4. 12, 6. 10, ii. 6. 22, iii. 2. 7, iv. 3. 11; the idea of the object is mingled with that of simple motion in some cases; cf. i. 5. 13, ii. 3. 8, 5. 34, iii. 5. 14, iv. 4. 14. Note a similar use of ἐπί with a word denoting persons, ἥξουσι ἐπ' αὐτούς, *they will come after them*, *i. e.* to bring them along, iv. 5. 19. Of time, in the phrase ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ, *as a rule*, *in general*, iii. 1. 42, 43, 4. 35. In composition ἐπί signifies *to*, *against*, *besides*.

ἐπιβάλλω (βάλλω), *throw upon*, *place upon*, iii. 5. 10; mid., of an archer, *lay the arrow upon the string*, *nock the arrow*, iv. 3. 28.

ἐπιβουλεύω (βουλεύω), *plan* or *plot against*, *intrigue against*, *meditate treachery*, with dat., i. 1. 3, 2. 20, 6. 8, ii. 5. 15, 6. 23, iii. 1. 35.

ἐπιβουλή, ῆς, ἡ (cf. ἐπιβουλεύω), *plot*, *intrigue*, *treason*, *treachery*, ii. 5. 1, 38; with πρός and acc., i. 1. 8.

ἐπιγίγνομαι (γίγνομαι), *come upon*, *attack*, iii. 4. 25.

ἐπιδείκνῡμι (δείκνῡμι), *show*, *display*, *exhibit*, with acc., i. 2. 14; of immaterial things, *show*, *make clear*, *prove*, with acc., i. 3. 16; with a ὅτι clause or interr. clause, i. 3. 13, 16, 9. 7; with dat. and ὅτι clause, iii. 2. 26; similarly in mid., with acc. or a ὅτι clause, i. 9. 10, ii. 6. 27, iv. 6. 15, 16; *distinguish oneself*, with εἰς and acc., i. 9. 16.

ἐπιδιώκω (διώκω), *follow after*, *pursue*, *give chase*, abs., i. 10. 11, iv. 1. 16, 3. 25.

ἐπιδόντας, see ἐπείδον.

ἐπιέζετο, see πιέζω.

ἐπίθεσις, εως, ἡ (ἐπιτίθημι), *onset*, *attack*, iv. 4. 22.

ἐπιθῡμέω, ἐπιθῡμήσω, etc. (θῡμός, *spirit*), *desire*, *wish for*, *covet*, with gen., ii. 6. 18, iii. 2. 39, iv. 1. 14; with inf., i. 9. 12, ii. 6. 16, 21, iii. 2. 39; with acc. and inf., ii. 5. 11.

ἐπιθῡμίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (ἐπιθῡμέω), *desire*, *wish*, ii. 6. 16.

ἐπικάμπτω (κάμπτω, κάμψω, ἔκαμψα, κέκαμμαι, ἐκάμφθην, *bend*), *bend to*, *bend around*, in military language, *wheel*, i. 8. 23.

ἐπικαταρρῑπτέω (ῥῑπτέω, see ῥίπτω), *throw down after*, iv. 7. 13.

ἐπίκειμαι (κεῖμαι), *lie upon*; used as equivalent of mid. of ἐπιτίθημι, *place oneself upon*, *press upon*, *attack*, abs. or with dat., iv. 1. 16, 3. 7.

ἐπικίνδῡνος, ον (κίνδῡνος), *involving risk*, *dangerous*, *perilous*, abs. or with dat. of pers., i. 3. 19, ii. 5. 20.

ἐπικούρημα, ατος, τό (ἐπικουρέω, *assist*), *an aid, help, protection*, with gen. of thing and dat. of pers., iv. 5. 13.

ἐπικρύπτω (κρύπτω), *conceal, keep secret*; mid., *conceal one's acts, act secretly*; **ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο ἐπικρυπτόμενος**, *as secretly as possible*, i. 1. 6.

ἐπικύπτω (**κύπτω, κύψομαι, κύψω** late except in comp., **ἔκῡψα, κέκῡφα**, *stoop*), *stoop towards, bend over*, iv. 5. 32.

ἐπικῡρόω (κῡρόω, κῡρώσω, etc., *ratify*), *ratify, confirm*, iii. 2. 32.

ἐπικωλύω (κωλύω), *hinder, prevent, keep from*, with acc. of pers. and gen. of thing, iii. 3. 3.

ἐπιλαμβάνω (λαμβάνω), *take to oneself*; mid., *lay hold of, catch*, abs. or with gen., iv. 7. 12, 13. (Cf. Eng. *epileptic*.)

ἐπιλανθάνομαι (λανθάνω), *forget*, with gen., iii. 2. 25.

ἐπιλέγω (λέγω), *say in addition, give an accompanying message*, i. 9. 26. (Cf. Eng. *epilogue*.)

ἐπιλείπω (λείπω), *leave, leave behind*; of supplies, etc., *fail, give out*, like Lat. *deficere*, intrans., iv. 5. 14, 7. 1; also trans., **ὁ σῖτος τὸ στράτευμα ἐπέλιπε**, i. 5. 6.

ἐπίλεκτος, ον (λέγω), *selected, picked*, of soldiers, iii. 4. 43.

ἐπιμαρτύρομαι (μαρτύρομαι, **ἐμαρτῡράμην**, *call witnesses*), *invoke as witness, appeal to*, **θεούς**, iv. 8. 7.

ἐπιμείγνῡμι (μείγνῡμι, μείξω, **ἔμειξα, μέμειγμαι, ἐμείχθην, ἐμίγην**, *mix*; less correctly **μίγνῡμι**, etc.), *mingle with*; intr., *associate with, have dealings with*, with **πρός** and acc., iii. 5. 16.

ἐπιμέλεια, ας, ἡ (ἐπιμελέομαι), *care, solicitude, attention*, i. 9. 24, 27.

ἐπιμελέομαι and **ἐπιμέλομαι** (iv. 2. 26, 3. 30), **ἐπιμελήσομαι, ἐπιμεμέλημαι** (rare), **ἐπεμελήθην** (**μέλει, it concerns**), *care for, pay attention to, superintend, take charge of*, with gen., i. 1. 5, iii. 2. 37, iv. 2. 26, 3. 30, 8. 25; *give heed, observe*, with interr. clause or **ὅπως** clause, i. 8. 21, iii. 1. 14, 38.

ἐπιμελής, ές (cf. ἐπιμελέομαι), *careful, solicitous, watchful*, iii. 2. 30.

ἐπινοέω (νοέω), *have in mind, contemplate, intend*, with acc., ii. 5. 4, iii. 1. 6, or inf., ii. 2. 11.

ἐπιορκέω, ἐπιορκήσω, ἐπιώρκησα, ἐπιώρκηκα (**ἐπίορκος**), *swear falsely, perjure oneself*, ii. 5. 38, 41, iii. 2. 10; **διὰ τοῦ ἐπιορκεῖν**, *through perjury*, ii. 6. 22; with acc., *swear falsely by*, **θεούς**, ii. 4. 7, iii. 1. 22.

ἐπιορκῖᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**ἐπίορκος**), *false swearing, perjury*, ii. 5. 21, iii. 2. 4, 8.

ἐπίορκος, ον (ὅρκος), *swearing falsely, perjured*, as subst., *a perjurer*, ii. 6. 25.

ἐπιπάρειμι (εἶμι), *go along beside*, iii. 4. 30; *come up besides* or *in addition*, iii. 4. 23.

ἐπιπίπτω (πίπτω), *fall upon*, iv. 4. 11; with dat., *fall upon, attack*, i. 8. 2, iv. 1. 10.

ἐπίπονος, ον (πόνος), *involving toil* or *hardship, laborious, difficult*, i. 3. 19.

ἐπίρρυτος, ον (ῥέω), lit. *flowed over, irrigated, well-watered*, i. 2. 22.

ἐπισάττω (σάττω, **ἔσαξα, σέσαγμαι**, *pack on, load on*), *put the housings on* a horse, iii. 4. 35. The Greeks used no saddles, only a covering or blanket (**σάγμα**).

Ἐπισθένης, ους, ὁ, *Episthenes*, a citizen of Amphipolis in Thrace, leader of the peltasts in the battle of Cunaxa, i. 10. 7.

ἐπισῑτίζομαι (σῑτίζομαι, σῖτιοῦμαι, **-εσῖτισάμην**, *eat*), *take provisions, obtain supplies, forage*, i. 4. 19, 5. 4, ii. 4. 5, 5. 37, iii. 4. 18, iv. 7. 18.

ἐπισῑτισμός, οῦ, ὁ, *a procuring supplies, foraging*, i. 5. 4.

ἐπισκέπτομαι (*σκέπτομαι*), *see to, inquire, ascertain*, with ind. quest., iii. 3. 18.

ἐπισκοπέω (*σκοπέω*), *look at, inspect*, ii. 3. 2. (Cf. *episcopal.*)

ἐπισπάω (*σπάω*), *draw* or *drag to* or *after*; mid. *drag along after oneself*, iv. 7. 14.

ἐπίσποιτο, see *ἐφέπομαι.*

ἐπίσταμαι, *ἐπιστήσομαι, ἠπιστήθην*, impf. *ἠπιστάμην, know, understand*, abs., iii. 3. 2; with *ὅτι* clause, i. 4. 8, iii. 1. 35, 36, proleptic acc. and *ὅτι* clause, iii. 2. 23; with acc., *know, be aware of, be acquainted with*, i. 3. 12, ii. 5. 9, iii. 2. 8; with inf., *know how*, i. 3. 15, iii. 3. 16, 17, inf. understood, i. 4. 15.

ἐπίστασις, εως, ἡ (*ἐφίστημι*), *a stopping, halt*, ii. 4. 26.

ἐπιστατέω (*ἐπιστάτης, one who stands by, director, overseer*), *act as director, direct, superintend*, ii. 3. 11.

ἐπιστήμων, ον, gen. *ονος* (*ἐπίσταμαι*), *having knowledge, acquainted with, skilled in*, with gen., ii. 1. 7. (Cf. Eng. *epistemology.*)

ἐπιστολή, ῆς, ἡ (*ἐπιστέλλω, send to*), *letter, epistle*, i. 6. 3, iii. 1. 5.

ἐπιστρατεῖα, ας, ἡ (*ἐπιστρατεύω*), *expedition against, campaign*, ii. 4. 1.

ἐπιστρατεύω (*στρατεύω*), *march against, take the field against*, with dat., ii. 3. 19.

ἐπισφάττω (*σφάττειν*), *slaughter upon, slay upon*, properly used of a sacrifice upon a grave; hence of slaying a man upon the body of a friend, with dat., i. 8. 29; mid., *slay oneself upon*, with *ἑαυτόν* for clearness, i. 8. 29.

ἐπιτάττω (*τάττω*), *lay a command upon, enjoin upon, order*, with dat. and inf., ii. 3. 6.

ἐπιτελέω (*τελέω*), *complete, consummate, bring to fulfilment*, iv. 3. 13.

ἐπιτήδειος, α, ον, *suitable, proper, convenient, well adapted*, abs., i. 3. 18, with inf., ii. 5. 18; *τὸν ἐπιτήδειον ἔπαισεν ἄν, he would strike the man that deserved it*, ii. 3. 11; as subst., *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*, often with crasis, *ταἐπ-, necessaries, provisions, supplies*, i. 3. 11, 5. 10, ii. 3. 26, iv. 7. 1, etc.

ἐπιτίθημι (*τίθημι*), *put upon, set upon*; *δίκην ἐπιτιθέναι, inflict punishment on, exact the penalty from, make pay for*, with dat. of pers. and gen. of crime, i. 3. 10, 20, iii. 2. 8; mid., *throw oneself upon, fall upon, attack*, with dat., ii. 4. 3, 16, 5. 18, iii. 4. 1, 29, iv. 1. 10, 4. 18, etc.

ἐπιτρέπω (*τρέπω*), *turn to* or *towards*; *turn over, grant, entrust*, with dat. of pers. and inf. of purpose, i. 2. 19, ii. 4. 27; hence, *allow, suffer, permit*, with dat. and inf., iii. 2. 31, 5. 12; mid., *give oneself up* to another's protection, i. 9. 8.

ἐπιτρέχω (*τρέχω*), *run up, run towards*, esp. to attack, *charge, make an assault*, iv. 3. 31.

ἐπιτυγχάνω (*τυγχάνω*), *chance upon, light upon, find*, with dat., i. 9. 25, iii. 4. 18, iv. 1. 9.

ἐπιφαίνομαι (*φαίνω*), *show oneself, come into view, appear*, ii. 4. 24, iii. 3. 6, 4. 13, 39, 5. 2. (Cf. Eng. *epiphany.*)

ἐπιφέρω (*φέρω*), *carry upon*; mid. *rush upon, attack*, i. 9. 6.

ἐπιφθέγγομαι (*φθέγγομαι*), *sound against*; of a trumpet, *sound the charge*, iv. 2. 7, but perhaps the simple verb should be read.

ἐπιφορέω (*φορέω*), *put upon*, iii. 5. 10.

ἐπίχαρις, ι, gen. *ιτος* (*χάρις*), *graceful, gracious, amiable, pleasing*; *τὸ ἐπίχαρι, pleasantness of manner, affability*, ii. 6. 12.

ἐπιχειρέω, ἐπιχειρήσω, etc. (*χείρ*), *put the hand to, attempt, try*, with inf., ii. 5. 10, 6. 26, iii. 4. 27, 33, 5. 3, iv. 3. 25; the inf. is not expressed, i. 9. 29.

ἐπιχέω (χέω, fut. χέω, ἔχεα, κέχυκα, κέχυμαι, ἐχύθην, *pour*; the simple verb is mostly poetic), *pour upon, pour in, add* water to another beverage, iv. 5. 27.

ἐπιχωρέω (χωρέω), *move towards, advance*, of an army, i. 2. 17.

ἔπλευσαν, see πλέω.

ἐπλήγη, see πλήττω.

ἐποικοδομέω (οἰκοδομέω), *build upon* or *over*, with ἐπί and dat., iii. 4. 11.

ἕπομαι, ἕψομαι, ἐσπόμην, impf. εἱπόμην (√σεπ, akin to Lat. *sequor*), *follow* a guide or commander, abs. or with dat., i. 3. 17, 4. 11, 5. 14, ii. 2. 4, 6. 13, iii. 1. 25, iv. 1. 6; also with σύν and dat., *accompany*, i. 3. 6; *follow after, pursue, give chase*, i. 8. 19, iii. 4. 19.

ἑπτά, indecl. numeral (akin to Lat. *septem*, Eng. *seven*), *seven*, i. 2. 6, etc.

ἑπτακαίδεκα, indecl. numeral (ἑπτά, δέκα), *seventeen*, ii. 2. 11, etc.

ἑπτακόσιοι, αι, α (ἑπτά), *seven hundred*, i. 4. 3.

Ἐπύαξα, ης, ἡ, *Epyaxa*, wife of Syennesis, king of Cilicia, i. 2. 12, 25.

ἐπύθετο, see πυνθάνομαι.

ἔραμαι, ἐρασθήσομαι, ἠράσθην, *love, desire*, esp. of sexual passion; inceptive aor., *fell in love with, took a fancy to*, with gen., iv. 6. 3. (Poetic, except aorist.)

ἐράω, only pres. and impf. in Attic (cf. ἔραμαι), *love, desire earnestly, long for*, with gen., iii. 1. 29.

ἐργάζομαι, ἐργάσομαι, ἠργασάμην, εἴργασμαι, ἠργάσθην, imperf. ἠργαζόμην (cf. ἔργον; akin to Eng. *work*), *work, labor*; of the soil, *cultivate, till*, with χώρᾱν *understood*, ii. 4. 22.

ἔργον, ου, τό (akin to Eng. *work*), *work, act, deed, undertaking; accomplishment, execution, result*; i. 9. 18, ii. 6. 6, iii. 1. 24; iii. 3. 12, 5. 12; τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργα, *military pursuits*, i. 9. 5; ἔργῳ, *by deed, in fact*, as opposed to mere plans or promises, i. 9. 10, iii. 2. 32.

ἐρεῖ, see εἴρω.

ἐρημίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (ἔρημος), *solitude, loneliness*, ii. 5. 9.

ἔρημος, η, ον, and **ος, ον** (cf. Eng. *eremite, hermit*), *solitary, lonely, uninhabited, desert*, i. 5. 4, ii. 1. 6, iii. 4. 10; in military language, *undefended, exposed, unprotected*, iii. 4. 40, iv. 2. 13, 6. 11, 13; σταθμοὶ ἔρημοι, *marches through desert country*, i. 5. 1, 5, ii. 4. 27, 28, iv. 5. 2; ἔρημος ὑμῶν, *without you*, i. 3. 6.

ἐρίζω, ἤρισα (ἔρις, *strife, discord*), *strive, contend, vie with, match oneself against*, with dat. or abs., i. 2. 8, iv. 7. 12.

ἐρίφειος, ον (ἔριφος, *kid*), *of a kid*, κρέᾱ, iv. 5. 32.

ἑρμηνεύς, έως, ὁ (perhaps akin to Ἑρμῆς, *Hermes*, the messenger of the gods), *interpreter*, i. 2. 17, 8. 12, ii. 3. 17, iv. 4. 5. (Cf. Eng. *hermeneutic*.)

ἔρομαι, ἐρήσομαι, ἠρόμην (present rare and not Attic), *ask, inquire, put a question*, abs. or with acc. of person, i. 7. 9, iii. 1. 7; the question is in direct discourse, i. 7. 9, indirect, i. 8. 15, ii. 3. 20, iii. 1. 7.

ἐροῦντα, see εἴρω.

ἐρρωμένος, η, ον, really perf. pass. ptc. of ῥώννῡμι, *strengthen*; as adj., *strong, powerful*, comp. ἐρρωμενέστεροι, iii. 1. 42; neut. as subst. τὸ ἐρρωμένον, *sturdy courage, hardihood*, ii. 6. 11.

ἐρύκω (poetic word; Xen. uses pres., and in composition aor. ἤρῡξα), *check, hold back, ward off*, with acc. and ἀπό with gen. of pers., iii. 1. 25.

ἔρυμα, ατος, τό (ἐρύομαι, *defend*), *defence, fortification*, i. 7. 16, ii. 4. 22, iv. 5. 9.

ἐρυμνός, ή, όν (cf. ἔρυμα), *fortified*, i. 2. 8; as subst., τὰ ἐρυμνά, *fortifications*, strongholds, iii. 2. 23.

ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον, ἐλήλυθα; the fut. is rare and doubtful in Attic prose, and the pres. ind. is the only form of the pres. stem in general use, the other moods and the imperf. being usually supplied by forms of εἶμι; *come, go*; the verb is used with various adverbs and prepositions, which see under the respective words. Worthy of note are the uses of ἔρχομαι with the cognate acc., ii. 2. 10, iii. 1. 6; with dat. of pers., ii. 5. 25, iii. 1. 14; with πρός and acc. of pers. in a friendly sense, i. 3. 18, iv. 5. 33; with πρός or ἐπί and acc. of pers. in a hostile sense, *go against, advance to attack*, i. 3. 20, ii. 5. 39, iv. 8. 6. Phrases: ἐπὶ πᾶν ἐλθεῖν, *to use every means, resort to every expedient*, iii. 1. 18; ἐπὶ τοῦτο ἐλθεῖν, *take steps to this end*, ii. 5. 22; εἰς λόγους τινὶ ἐλθεῖν, *to have a conference with*, ii. 5. 4, iii. 1. 29; εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν, see χείρ.

Ἐρχομένιος, ᾱ, ον, *Erchomenian, of Erchomenos*, a town in Arcadia, near the modern Kalpaki, ii. 5. 37, 39, iii. 1. 47. (The later spelling Ὀρχομένιος, Ὀρχομενός, the town, appears in most editions.)

ἐρῶ, see εἴρω.

ἐρῶντες, see ἐράω.

ἔρως, ωτος, ὁ (ἔραμαι), *love, longing, desire*, ii. 5. 22. (Cf. Eng. *erotic*.)

ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα, etc., *ask* a question, *inquire*; with two accs., i. 3. 20; with acc. of person and ind. quest., i. 3. 18, ii. 4. 15, iii. 1. 7; with dir. quest., i. 6. 7, iii. 4. 39; in pass. with ind. quest., iv. 4. 17.

ἐσθής, ῆτος, ἡ (akin to Lat. *vestis, garment*), collective, *clothing, garments, dress*, iii. 1. 19, iv. 3. 25.

ἐσθίω, ἔδομαι, 2 aor. ἔφαγον, ἐδήδοκα, -εδήδεσμαι, ἠδέσθην (√ εδ, cf. Lat. *edo*, and √ φαγ), *eat, live on*, with acc. i. 5. 6, ii. 1. 6, 3. 16, iv. 5. 8, 8. 20; with part. gen., iv. 8. 20.

ἑσπέρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (akin to Lat. *vesper*, whence Eng. *vespers*), *evening*, iii. 1. 3, iv. 7. 27; the direction of sunset, *west*, esp. πρὸς ἑσπέρᾱν, *to the west, westward*, iii. 5. 15, iv. 4. 4.

ἕστε, adv. and conj.; as adv., *as far as, to*, ἕστε ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον, *clear down to the ground*, iv. 5. 6; as conj. of time, *until*, with past ind., ii. 5. 30, iii. 1. 28, 4. 49; with ἄν and subj., ii. 3. 9, iv. 5. 29; with opt., i. 9. 11; *as long as, while*, with ind., iii. 1. 19; with opt., iii. 3. 5. (In classical prose ἕστε hardly occurs except in Xen.)

ἑστηκώς, ἕστησαν, see ἵστημι.

ἐστραμμένα, see στρέφω.

ἑστώς, see ἵστημι.

ἔσχατος, η, ον, *farthest, outermost, extreme, last*, i. 2. 10, iv. 8. 12; the combination πόλις ἐσχάτη may sometimes be rendered *frontier city*, i. 2. 19, 4. 1; τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν, *suffer the extreme penalty*, ii. 5. 24; τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκίζεσθαι, *subject to the most cruel tortures*, iii. 1. 18. (Cf. Eng. *eschatology*.)

ἐσχάτως, adv. (ἔσχατος), *extremely, in the highest degree, exceedingly*, ii. 6. 1.

ἔσχε, see ἔχω.

ἔσωθεν, adv. (ἔσω, older form of εἴσω), *from within*; less exactly *within, on the inner side*, i. 4. 4.

ἑταίρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (cf. ἑταῖρος), *female companion, courtesan, prostitute*, iv. 3. 19, 30.

ἑταῖρος, ου, ὁ, *companion, comrade*, iv. 7. 11, 8. 27.

ἕτερος, ᾱ, ον, *the other* of two, *one* of two, like Lat. *alter*, with art., iii. 4. 25, iv. 1. 23; *another*, as opposed to more than one, hence like ἄλλος and Lat *alius*, i. 2. 20, ii. 5. 23; pl. ἕτεραι νῆες, *other ships, more ships*, i. 4. 2. (Cf. Eng. *heterodox, heterogeneous*.)

ἐτέτρωτο, see τιτρώσκω.

ἔτι, adv., of time, *still, yet*, i. 5. 12, 6. 8, ii. 2. 14, 6. 28, iv. 3. 33; after

negatives, *longer, any more, ever, again*, i. 1. 4, 7. 18, 10. 13, iii. 1. 3; in argument, introducing a new thought, *besides, furthermore*, iii. 1. 23, 2. 28; so πρὸς δ' ἔτι, *and in addition, and besides*, iii. 2. 2; of degree, with comparatives, *still, even*, i. 9. 10, iii. 2. 17, iv. 3. 32.

ἕτοιμος, η, ον, and ος, ον, *ready, prepared*, with dat. of pers., i. 6. 3; with inf., iv. 6. 17.

ἑτοίμως, adv. (ἕτοιμος), *readily, willingly*, ii. 5. 2.

ἔτος, ους, τό (akin to Lat. *vetus, old*), *year*, ii. 3. 12, 6. 15, etc.

εὖ, adv. (epic adj. ἐύς, ἠύς, *good, noble*), *well*, i. 4. 8, 7. 5, ii. 3. 21, iii. 1. 36. For the combinations εὖ ποιεῖν, εὖ πάσχειν, see the verbs.

εὐδαιμονίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (εὐδαίμων), *prosperity, welfare*, ii. 5. 13.

εὐδαιμονίζω, εὐδαιμονιῶ, ηὐδαιμόνισα (εὐδαίμων), *consider prosperous, count happy*, ii. 5. 7; with gen. of cause, i. 7. 3, where the phrase may be rendered *on which I congratulate you*, or *which I envy you*.

εὐδαιμόνως, adv. (εὐδαίμων), *happily, prosperously*, comp. iii. 1. 43.

εὐδαίμων, ον, gen. ονος (εὖ, δαίμων, *divinity*), lit. *having a propitious divinity*, hence *favored of fortune, prosperous, flourishing, wealthy*, of cities and countries, i. 2. 6, 7, 4. 11, 5. 10, iii. 5. 17; of persons, i. 5. 7, 9. 15.

εὔδηλος, ον (δῆλος), *very plain, manifest*, iii. 1. 2.

εὐειδής, ές (εἶδος), *well-formed, handsome, good-looking*, superl. ii. 3. 3.

εὔελπις, ι, gen. ιδος (ἐλπίς), *having good hopes, hopeful, confident*, ii. 1. 18.

εὐεπίθετος, ον (ἐπιτίθημι), *easy to attack*; εὐεπίθετον ἦν τοῖς πολεμίοις, *the enemy found it easy to make an attack*, iii. 4. 20.

εὐεργεσίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (ἔργον), *doing good, a good deed, favor, kindness*, ii. 5. 22, 6. 27.

εὐεργετέω, εὐεργετήσω, εὐεργέτησα, εὐεργέτηκα, εὐεργέτημαι, εὐεργετήθην (ἔργον), *do a favor, confer a benefit*, ii. 6. 17.

εὐεργέτης, ου, ὁ, *benefactor*, ii. 5. 10, 41.

εὔζωνος, ον (ζώνη), *well-girded*; as an epithet of men it refers to the custom of drawing up the lower part of the tunic and securing it with the belt so as to leave the legs free for running or other active exercise; hence the adj. may be rendered *active, agile, nimble*. Though applied in iii. 3. 6, iv. 2. 7 to light-armed barbarians, it implies nothing as to equipment, and may be used of hoplites; see iv. 3. 20, 5. 24.

εὐήθεια, ᾱς, ἡ (εὐήθης), *simplicity, folly*, i. 3. 16.

εὐήθης, ες (ἦθος, *custom, disposition, character*), *good-natured, simple-minded*; thence, *foolish, silly*, i. 3. 16.

εὐθῡμέομαι (εὔθῡμος), *be in good spirits, enjoy oneself*, "*have a good time*," iv. 5. 30.

εὔθῡμος, ον (θῡμός, *spirit*), *in good spirits, cheerful*, iii. 1. 41.

εὐθύς, adv., *immediately, straightway, forthwith, at once*, i. 3. 8, 8. 26, ii. 4. 11, iii. 1. 12; εὐθὺς ἐπειδή, ἐπειδάν, *as soon as*, iii. 1. 13, iv. 7. 7; εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων, *from very boyhood*, iv. 6. 14; εὐθὺς παῖδες ὄντες, *even from childhood*, i. 9. 4, cf. ii. 6. 16; εὐθὺς ἦκων, *as soon as he arrived*, iv. 7. 2.

εὐθύωρος, ον (εὐθύς), *in a direct line*, neut. as adv., *straight ahead*, ii. 2. 16.

εὐμενής, ές, *well-disposed, favorable, friendly*; properly of persons, but applied to a road by personification, iv. 6. 12.

εὐμεταχείριστος, *ον* (μεταχειρίζω, *handle*, from χείρ), *easily handled, easy to manage*, ii. 6. 20.

εὔνοια, ᾱς, ἡ (εὔνους), *good will, friendly feeling*, with obj. gen., iv. 7. 20; *liking, devotion*, i. 8. 29, ii. 6. 13.

εὐνοϊκῶς, adv. (εὐνοϊκός, *well-disposed*), *in a friendly manner, with good will, kindly*; εὐνοϊκῶς ἔχειν τινί, *be favorably disposed to one*, i. 1. 5.

εὔνους, *ουν* (for εὔνοος, see νοῦς), *well-disposed, friendly, devoted*, i. 9. 20, 30, ii. 4. 16, 6. 20.

εὔξεινος, *ον* (ξένος, Ionic ξεῖνος), *good to strangers, hospitable*; ὁ Εὔξεινος Πόντος, the Euxine or Black Sea, iv. 8. 22; the name Εὔξεινος appears to be a euphemism for the former name Ἄξεινος, given to the sea on account of the savage tribes that inhabited its coasts.

εὔοδος, *ον* (ὁδός), *having good roads, easy to travel, easy of access*, iv. 2. 9, 8. 10, 12.

εὔοπλος, *ον* (ὅπλον), *well armed, well equipped*, ii. 3. 3.

εὐπετῶς, adv. (εὖ, √πετ, cf. πίπτω; lit. *falling out, turning out well*), *easily, without difficulty*, ii. 5. 23, iii. 2. 10, iv. 3. 21, 7. 10.

εὔπορος, *ον* (πόρος), *easily travelled, easy to go*, ii. 5. 9, iii. 5. 17.

εὔπρᾱκτος, *ον* (πρᾱ́ττω), *easily accomplished* or *effected*, ii. 3. 20.

εὐπρεπής, *ές* (πρέπω), *comely, good-looking*, iv. 1. 14.

εὕρημα, *ατος, τό* (εὑρίσκω), *that which is found*, esp. *a lucky find*; εὕρημα ποιεῖσθαί τι, *consider it a piece of good luck*, ii. 3. 18.

εὑρίσκω, εὑρήσω, ηὗρον, ηὕρηκα, ηὕρημαι, ηὑρέθην, *find, discover, invent*, i. 2. 25, ii. 3. 10, 21, iii. 2. 12, iv. 4. 13; *find, procure, devise*, iii. 3. 18; *find to be* so and so, with dir. obj. and pred. adj., i. 9. 29, iv. 8. 10; mid., *find or obtain for oneself*, ii. 1. 8.

εὖρος, *ους, τό* (εὐρύς), *breadth, width*, i. 2. 5, 4. 10; frequent as acc. of respect, (τὸ) εὖρος, *in breadth*, (*so many feet*, etc.) *wide*, i. 2. 23, 5. 4, iii. 4. 9, iv. 3. 1, etc.

Εὐρύλοχος, *ου, ὁ*, *Eurylochus*, a hoplite from Lusi, a town of Arcadia; his bravery is mentioned in iv. 2. 21, 7. 11, 12.

εὐρύς, εῖα, ύ, *broad, wide, roomy*, iv. 5. 25.

εὔτακτος, *ον* (τάττω), *well-arranged, orderly, well-disciplined*, ii. 6. 14, iii. 2. 30.

εὐταξίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (τάττω), *good order, discipline, training*, i. 5. 8, iii. 1. 38.

εὐτυχέω, εὐτυχήσω, ηὐτύχησα, ηὐτύχηκα, ηὐτύχημαι (τύχη, τυγχάνω), *be fortunate, successful, have good luck*, i. 4. 17.

Εὐφρᾱ́της, *ου, ὁ* (Assyrian *Purattu*, Old Pers. *Ufrates*), *Euphrātes*, the great river of Mesopotamia, now called Frat. It is formed by the union of the Murad-su, or Eastern Euphrates (iv. 5. 2), and the Kara-su or western branch, both of which rise in the Armenian mountains, in the district to the north and northwest of Lake Van. After the junction of the two streams the river flows southwest for a considerable distance, then turning southeast flows through Mesopotamia and Babylonia, joins the Tigris at the modern Kurna, and empties into the Persian Gulf. In ancient times, even as late as the seventh century B. C., it appears that the Euphrates and the Tigris did not unite, but flowed separately into the Persian Gulf, which then extended as far as Kurna. The total length of the river is about 1,600 miles, and it is navigable for light crafts three-fourths of that distance. In summer the river is shallow, and the low stage of the water mentioned in i. 4. 18 was

probably not so uncommon as the natives would have had Cyrus believe. i. 3. 20, 4. 11, etc.

εὐχή, ῆς, ἡ (εὔχομαι), *prayer, wish*, i. 9. 11.

εὔχομαι, εὔξομαι, ηὐξάμην, ηὖγμαι, *pray*, abs., iii. 2. 9, iv. 8. 16, with dat. of the god addressed, iii. 1. 6; with dat. and inf. of that which the god is besought to do, iv. 3. 13; *pray, wish*, with inf., i. 9. 11; with acc. and inf., i. 4. 7, 17; *promise in prayer, vow*, with acc., iv. 8. 25; with dat. and inf., iii. 2. 9, 12.

εὐώδης, ες (ὄζω, *smell*, cf. Lat. *odor*), *pleasant to the smell, aromatic, fragrant*, i. 5. 1; of wines, *with a bouquet*, iv. 4. 9.

εὐώνυμος, ον (ὄνομα), *of good name*, hence, *of good omen*; applied by euphemism to the left side instead of ἀριστερός, a word of ill omen because unfavorable signs came from the left side; esp. in military language, τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας, *the left wing*, i. 7. 1, 8. 4, 23, 10. 6; also without κέρας, i. 2. 15, 8. 9, iv. 8. 14.

εὐωχέω, εὐωχήσομαι, ηὐώχημαι, ηὐωχήθην (εὖ, ἔχω), *entertain, banquet, feast*, pass. iv. 5. 30.

ἔφαγον, see ἐσθίω.

ἐφάνη, see φαίνω.

ἔφασαν, see φημί.

ἔφεδρος, ου, ὁ (ἕδρᾱ, *seat*), *one who sits by* awaiting the result of a contest; *a fresh opponent*, ii. 5. 10. The name ἔφεδρος was given to the athlete who drew a bye, that is, was not matched against an opponent when an uneven number of contestants presented themselves and paired off for the first bout. Having fewer bouts to fight he would be fresher and thus have a considerable advantage. It is not likely, however, that the ἔφεδρος was idle until the last round, fighting only the man who had come victor in all the other rounds. Probably new lots were cast for the second round, and the ἔφεδρος of the first round would have to draw with the victors of that bout. When the number of victors after the first round was odd, the ἔφεδρος would pair off with one of them for the second. As it was an advantage to be ἔφεδρος, it was the greater honor to be victorious without drawing a bye.

ἐφέπομαι (ἕπομαι), *follow after, pursue*, ii. 2. 12, iii. 4. 3, iv. 1. 6, 7.

Ἔφεσος, ου, ἡ, *Ephesus*, a large Ionian city in Lydia near the mouth of the Cayster river. It was especially famous for its magnificent temple of Artemis ("Diana of the Ephesians," Acts xix. 24 ff.), founded in the sixth century and rebuilt in the fourth. Ruins of one of the suburbs of Ephesus exist near Ayasluk. i. 4. 2, [ii. 2. 6].

ἔφη, see φημί.

ἐφίστημι (ἵστημι), *set upon* or *by*; causatively, *make stop by*, then in general, *make halt, stop*, ii. 4. 25, 26; so also i. 8. 15, where ἵππον is understood; *set over, put in command*, iii. 4. 21, pass. iii. 3. 20; intrans., mid., 2 aor., perf. and plup. act., *halt, stop, take a stand*, i. 5. 7, ii. 4. 26, iv. 7. 9; *be placed upon, be upon*, i. 4. 4.

ἔφοδος, ου, ἡ (ὁδός), *way towards, approach*, with ἐπί and acc., iii. 4. 41, iv. 2. 6; also of the act of approaching, *forward movement, advance*, ii. 2. 18, 3. 1.

ἐφοράω (ὁράω), *look on, behold*; esp. of unpleasant sights, τὰ χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδεῖν, "*face the most horrible of sights*," iii. 1. 13.

ἔφορος, ου, ὁ (ἐφοράω), *overseer; ephor*, title of certain Spartan magistrates. The ephors were five in number and were annually elected

by vote of the people. Their functions were originally judicial, but later they acted as a check to the royal power, and usurping many of the prerogatives of the kings, became the most influential officers of the state. They had power to send and receive embassies and call the kings to account for misdeeds, besides exercising a general supervision over public affairs. Two of them regularly accompanied the kings on military expeditions. ii. 6. 2, 3.

ἔχθρᾱ, *ās*, ἡ (ἔχθω, poetic verb, *hate*, cf. ἀπεχθάνομαι), *enmity, ill-feeling, hostility*, ii. 4. 12.

ἐχθρός, *ά, όν* (cf. ἔχθρᾱ), *hateful, hating, hated, hostile*, i. 3. 20; as subst., ὁ ἐχθρός, *enemy, foe*, i. 3. 6, 12, ii. 5. 39, iii. 2. 3; οἱ ἐκείνου ἔχθιστοι, *his bitterest enemies*, iii. 2. 5.

ἐχυρός, *ά, όν* (ἔχω; cf. ὀχυρός), *capable of being held, defensible*; ἐχυρὸν χωρίον, *stronghold*, ii. 5. 7.

ἔχω, ἕξω and σχήσω, ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα, -έσχημαι, impf. εἶχον, *have, hold*, of material objects or mental qualities, i. 1. 6, 3. 12, 8. 29, ii. 6. 12, 18, etc.; *keep, retain, hold fast*, i. 4. 7, iv. 3. 6; *carry, wear*, of clothes, weapons, etc., i. 5. 8, 8. 7, 9. 6, ii. 3. 11, iv. 4. 16; *get, obtain*, i. 3. 11, ii. 4. 22; *have under one*, as a general, *command*, i. 8. 4, 21; of a strategic position, *hold, occupy*, iii. 5. 1, iv. 6. 22; with two accs., ii. 5. 14, 6. 28; similar is ἔχειν in the sense of *have as wife, be married to*, iii. 4, 13, where γυναῖκα is understood; the participle ἔχων is often to be translated *with*, i. 7. 20, 8. 6, 21, iv. 5. 13, so esp. in speaking of bodies of troops, i. 1. 2, 9. 31, ii. 2. 7, 16. Note ἔχω in the sense of *have an opportunity, be able*, with inf., ii. 2. 11, iii. 2. 12; also its use with the deliberative subjunctive, i. 7. 7, ii. 4. 19, 20, where ἔχω is sometimes rendered *know*. (Unnecessarily: cf. "hath not where to lay his head," where the construction of the original is like that of the quoted passages of the Anab.) ἔχω = *keep from*, with acc. and gen., iii. 5. 11. Phrases, μεῖον ἔχειν, *get the worst, be worsted*, i. 10. 8; εἰρήνην ἔχειν, *be at peace*, ii. 6. 6; ἡσυχίᾱν ἄγειν, *keep still*, iv. 5. 13; with the pf. ptc. it denotes possession or marks the permanency of the condition brought about by the ptc., ἔχομεν ἀνηρτακότες, *we have carried off and still have*, i. 3. 14, cf. iv. 7. 1.

Intransitively, ἔχειν is frequently used in the sense of *be*, esp. with adverbs, the combination of ἔχειν with an adv. being generally translated like εἶναι with the corresponding adj.; καλῶς ἔχειν, *be well, turn out right*, i. 8. 13; κακῶς ἔχειν, *be in a bad condition, go wrong*, i. 5. 16; also with other adverbs, which see under the respective words; *be related*, οὕτως ἔχει . . . ὥσπερ, *are in the same relation . . . as*, i. 3. 9.

Mid., *hold to*, hence *come next*; part. ἐχόμενος, *next in order*, i. 8. 4, 9.

ἑψητός, *ή, όν* (ἕψω), *boiled*, ii. 3. 14.

ἕψω, ἑψήσω, ἥψησα, *boil*, ii. 1. 6.

ἕωθεν, adv. (ἕως), *from dawn on, early in the morning*, iv. 4. 8.

ἑώκεσαν, see ἔοικα.

ἑώρᾱ, ἑώρᾱκα, ἑώρων, see ὁράω.

ἕως, ἕω, ἡ (Aeolic form αὔως, akin to Lat. *aurora*, Eng. *east*), *morning glow, dawn, early morning*, i. 7. 1, ii. 4. 24, iv. 3, 9; *the east*, πρὸς ἕω, *toward the east*, iii. 5. 15.

ἕως, conj., *while, as long as*, with ind., ii. 6. 2, iii. 4. 49; with pres. ind. there is an admixture of causal force, *as long as* passing into *since*, i. 3. 11; with ἄν and subj., i. 4. 8, iii. 1. 43; *until*, with ind., iv. 8. 8; with opt., ii. 1. 2.

Z

Ζαπάτᾱς, *ου, ὁ, the Zapatas* river, a tributary of the Tigris, flowing into it from the east about twenty-five miles south of Mosul and the site of the ancient Nineveh. It is now the Great Zab, or Zab-ala, ii. 5. 1, iii. 3. 6.

ζάω, *ζήσω, live, be alive,* i. 6. 2, 11, 9. 11, ii. 6. 29, iii. 1. 43, 2. 25, 39; *make a living,* with partic. to express the means, i. 5. 5.

ζεύγνῡμι, *ζεύξω, ἔζευξα, ἔζευγμαι, ἐζεύχθην* (*ζεῦγος* and *ζυγόν, yoke*; akin to Lat. *jugum, yoke, jungere, join*), *yoke together, join, fasten together,* with *πρός* and acc., iii. 5. 10; of a bridge, *build, construct,* with dat. of means, i. 2. 5, ii. 4. 24; of a canal, *bridge*; *διῶρυξ ἐζευγμένη πλοίοις, a canal bridged with boats, with a pontoon bridge,* ii. 4. 13. (Cf. Eng. *zeugma.*)

ζεῦγος, *ους, τό* (*ζεύγνῡμι*), *a yoke, span, pair,* of oxen or other draught-animals; hence, *pack-animals, baggage-train,* iii. 2. 27.

Ζεύς, gen. *Διός* (related to Lat. *Juppiter*), *Zeus,* son of Cronus and Rhea, the supreme god of the Greeks, corresponding to the Roman Jupiter. As absolute ruler of the universe he was regarded as the arbiter of human destinies and lord of the powers of nature, especially thunder, lightning, and rain. Artists represented him in the form of a man of mature years and grave and majestic appearance, holding a sceptre or the thunderbolt. Especially famous was the great statue in ivory and gold made by Phidias for the temple at Olympia, the principal seat of the worship of Zeus. Various epithets were applied to Zeus in different capacities; as king of gods and men he was *Ζεὺς βασιλεύς,* iii. 1. 12; as the *savior* and *deliverer* in times of danger, *Ζεὺς σωτήρ,* iii. 2. 9, and hence this is a watchword in battle, i. 8. 16; as patron of strangers and guardian of the laws of hospitality, he was called *Ζεὺς ξένιος,* iii. 2. 4. His name occurs in the oath *νὴ Δία,* i. 7. 9.

ζηλωτός, *ή, όν* (*ζηλόω, envy*), *envied, considered fortunate, ζηλωτὸν ποιεῖν τινα, make one an object of envy,* i. 7. 4.

ζῆν, see *ζάω.*

ζητέω, *ζητήσω,* etc., *seek, inquire for,* ii. 3. 2, 4. 15, 16.

ζωγρέω, *ζωγρήσω,* etc. (*ζωός, ἀγρέω, catch*), *capture alive, take alive,* iv. 7. 22.

ζώνη, *ης, ἡ* (cf. Eng. *zone*), *girdle, belt,* worn by both men and women to gather in the tunic (*χιτών*) at the waist and regulate its length. It was often richly ornamented, as shown by Fig. 18. The dagger

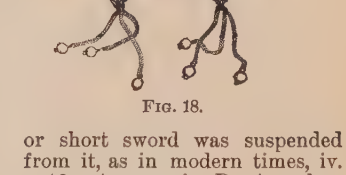


Fig. 18.

or short sword was suspended from it, as in modern times, iv. 7. 16. Among the Persians, laying the hand upon the girdle of an accused person was a sign of condemnation to death, i. 6. 10. It was a custom at the Persian court to assign to the queen or favored friends of the king's the revenues of certain districts for personal expenses. Hence the mention of villages granted to Parysatis *εἰς ζώνην,* i. 4. 9. (Cf. Eng. *pin-money.*)

ζωός, *ή, όν* (*ζάω*), *living, alive,* iii. 4. 5. (Cf. Eng. *zoölogy, protozoa.*)

H

ἤ, disjunctive conj., used to connect single words or sentences or parts of sentences, both when the two ideas are mutually exclusive (Lat. *aut*) and when one may be substituted for the other (Lat. *vel*), i. 4. 16, 8. 12, 9. 23, ii. 2. 13, iv. 7. 5, 10; repeated **ἤ . . . ἤ,** *either . . . or*, i. 3. 5, 5. 7, iii. 4. 19; three times, ii. 6. 10, 13. In double questions, **πότερον** (**πότερα**) **. . . ἤ,** like Lat. *utrum . . . an, whether . . . or*, i. 4. 13, ii. 1. 10, 21; but in direct questions **πότερον** is not translated, ii. 5. 17, iii. 2. 21. Sometimes **ἤ** is used to introduce a single question when the first member is present only in thought, as in ii. 4. 3.

ἤ, comparative conj., *than*, after comparative adjs. and advs., i. 1. 4, 3. 7, ii. 1. 20, 6. 10, iii. 1. 2, iv. 7. 9, etc.; after other words of comparative meaning, as **ἄλλος, ἄλλως**, ii. 2. 13, iii. 1. 20, etc., for **ἄλλο τι ἤ,** see **ἄλλος.**

ἦ, intensive particle *truly, indeed, certainly*, i. 6. 8; **ἦ μήν,** a common phrase in oaths and solemn asseverations, *in very truth*, ii. 3. 26, 27.

ᾗ, rel. adv., properly dat. fem. of **ὅς, ὁδῷ** being understood, *by what way, by the way by which, in what direction, where*, i. 10. 6, iii. 4. 37, iv. 2. 8, 8. 12, 5. 34; of manner, *in what way, how, as*; **ᾗ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα,** lit. *in what way he could most quickly, i. e., as quickly as possible*, i. 2. 4; **ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα,** *to the best of one's power*, i. 3. 15.

ᾖ, see **εἰμί.**

ἡβάσκω (**ἥβη, *youth, early manhood***), *be in the prime of youth, come to man's estate*, iv. 6. 1.

ἤγαγον, see **ἄγω.**

ἡγεμονίᾱ, **ᾱς, ἡ** (**ἡγεμών**), *leadership, command*, iv. 7. 8. (Cf. Eng. *hegemony.*)

ἡγεμόσυνα, **ων, τά** (**ἡγεμών**), really an adj., **ἱερά** understood, *thank-offerings for safe guidance*, to **Ἡρακλῆς ἡγεμών,** iv. 8. 25.

ἡγεμών, **όνος, ὁ** (**ἡγέομαι**), *leader, guide*, i. 3. 14, ii. 3. 6, 4. 10, iii. 2. 23, iv. 2. 1; with gen., **τῆς ὁδοῦ**, iii. 1. 2; of generals, etc., *leader, commander*, i. 6. 2 [7. 12].

ἡγέομαι, **ἡγήσομαι, ἠγησάμην. ἧγημαι** (rare), **-ηγήθην**, only in comp. (akin to **ἄγω**?), *lead, guide, lead the way, go before, act as guide*, abs., ii. 3. 10, 4. 5, iv. 3. 16, 6. 1, 2; with dat., i. 4. 2, iii. 2. 20; said also of a general in the capacity of guide and director of the army's movements, abs., ii. 4. 26, iv. 3. 15, with dat., ii. 2. 8; the verb has a cogn. acc., iv. 1. 24; with **πρός** or **εἰς** and acc., ii. 3. 9, iv. 2. 2; *lead, command, be in command*, abs., iii. 1. 25, iv. 1. 27; with gen., i. 7. 1, 8. 22, 9. 31, iii. 2. 36. **τὸ ἡγούμενον,** *the front* of a marching column, *the van*, ii. 2. 4, 4. 26. *Think, believe, consider, judge*, like Lat. *duco*, with inf. clause, i. 2. 4, ii. 1. 11, 6. 10.

ἴδει(ν), ἴδεσαν, see **οἶδα.**

ἡδέως, adv. (**ἡδύς**), *gladly, with pleasure*, i. 2. 2, 9. 19, iv. 3. 2; comp. **ἥδῑον**, i. 4. 9, sup. **ἥδιστα**, ii. 5. 15.

ἴδῃ, see **οἶδα.**

ἤδη, adv. of time (**ἤ, δή**), *already, by this time*, i. 2. 21, 3. 1, 8. 1, 21, 10. 4, ii. 1. 3, 7, 5. 5, iv. 3. 24; of time present or in the immediate future, *at once, immediately, straightway, now*, i. 2. 1, 3. 11, 4. 16, ii. 2. 1, 6. 14, iii. 1. 46.

ἥδομαι, **ἡσθήσομαι, ἥσθην** (see **ἡδύς**), *be pleased, be glad, take pleasure*, i. 4. 16, 8. 21, iv. 3. 9; the cause is expressed by the dat., i. 9. 26, ii. 6. 28, or the participle, i. 2. 18, ii. 5. 16.

ἡδονή, **ῆς, ἡ** (**ἡδύς**), *pleasure* of the senses, *delight*, ii. 6. 6, iv. 4. 14; *good flavor, sweetness*, ii. 3. 16. (Cf. Eng. *hedonism.*)

ἡδύς, εῖα, ύ (√ἡδ, orig. √σϜηδ, related to Lat. *suavis*, Eng. *sweet*), *sweet, agreeable to the taste, of good flavor, savory*, i. 5. 3, 9. 25, ii. 3. 15, iv. 5. 27.

ἤθελε, see **ἐθέλω.**

ηκαν, see **ἵημι.**

ἥκιστα, see **ἧττον.**

ἥκω, ἥξω, *come*, in pres. ind. with perfect meaning, *be come, have arrived*; so even in opt., iii. 5. 15, and impf. with plupf. meaning, i. 5. 12; generally, however, the impf. and other moods than the ind. have aoristic force; the verb is abs. or used like other verbs of motion with various prepositions, **εἰς, ἐπί, παρά,** with acc., **παρά** with gen., etc., i. 2. 1, 6, 4. 13, 7. 1, 2, ii. 3. 17, 5. 34, iii. 1. 13, 5. 15, iv. 2. 18, 3. 12, 5. 5; *return, come back*, ii. 3. 24, 25, so with **πάλιν,** iv. 3. 12; with participle, pres., i. 5. 15, perf., ii. 5. 29.

Ἠλεῖος, ᾱ, ον, *Elēan, pertaining* to Elis (**Ἦλις**), a district in the western part of the Peloponnesus, bounded on the north by Achaea, on the east by Arcadia, on the south by Messene, on the west by the Ionian sea. Along the coast the country is low, but there are mountains in the east and southeast. The Alphēus, which flows through central Elis, is the most important river of the Peloponnesus. On its banks was situated Olympia, the chief seat of the worship of Zeus, famous for its games, which were celebrated every four years. ii. 2. 20, iii. 1. 34.

ἤλεκτρον, ου, τό, originally *lustre*, cf. **ἠλέκτωρ,** *the beaming sun*; the name was applied to *amber*, and also to a mixture of gold and silver in the proportion of four to one, *pale gold, electrum*; this metal was used for coins, esp. in Lydia. It is not certain which is meant in ii. 3. 15. In favor of the later is cited Galen's use of the word **χρῦσοβάλανοι** for such dates. Yet this only shows that the dates had a distinct yellow color. Amber was a familiar material for ornaments from the earliest times. Numerous specimens have been found in graves of the Mycenaean period. (Hence Eng. *electric*, because the phenomenon of electric attraction was observed in connection with the friction of amber.)

ἦλθον, see **ἔρχομαι.**

ἠλίβατος, ον, *steep, lofty, precipitous*, i. 4. 4. (Epic word, used also by several late writers.)

ἠλίθιος, ᾱ, ον, *foolish, silly*, ii. 5. 2; as subst., **τὸ ἠλίθιον,** *folly*, ii. 6. 22.

ἡλικίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**ἥλιξ,** *of the same age*, **ἡλίκος,** *as old as*), *age*, esp. *the age of manhood, maturity*, i. 9. 6, iii. 1. 14; but also of any period of life defined by the context, *youth*, iii. 1. 25.

ἡλικιώτης, ου, ὁ (see **ἡλικίᾱ**), *one of the same age, contemporary, comrade*, i. 9. 5.

ἥλιος, ου, ὁ (cf. Eng. *heliograph, perihelion*), *the sun*, usually without the article, i. 10. 15, ii. 1. 3, 2. 3, 13, 16, 3. 1, iii. 4. 8; *the sun-god, Helius*, son of the Titans Hyperīon and Theia (or Euryphaëssa). He was represented as a man of great beauty, with beaming eyes and long flowing hair. Each day he made the journey across the heavens in his flaming chariot, rising from the ocean in the morning and sinking into it at night. He was worshipped in many Greek cities, especially in Peloponnesus, but the chief seat of his cult was the island of Rhodes. The Persians and Armenians sacrificed horses to him, iv. 5. 35.

ἡμεῖς, see **ἐγώ.**

ἡλωκότα, see **ἁλίσκομαι.**

ἠμελημένως, adv. (from pf. ptc. pass. of ἀμελέω), *carelessly, unguardedly*, i. 7. 19.

ἦμεν, see εἰμί.

ἡμέρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (cf. Eng. *ephemeral*), *day*, either as opposed to night or meaning 24 hours, from sunset to sunset, i. 2. 6, 7. 18, ii. 3. 1, iii. 4. 31, etc.; it is used in various special phrases: ἡμέρᾳ γίγνεται, *day dawns*, ii. 2. 13, iv. 6. 23; ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, *at daybreak*, ii. 1. 2, iv. 1. 5, 3. 3, similarly ἅμα τῇ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ, i. 7. 2; dat. of time when, τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ, *on the same day*, i. 5. 12, cf. i. 7. 18; gen. of time, with different meanings, ἡμέρᾱς καὶ νυκτός, *(by) day and night*, ii. 6. 7; τῆς ἡμέρᾱς, *during the day*, iii. 3. 11; τῆς ἡμέρᾱς, *daily, by the day, a day*, iv. 6. 4; δέκα ἡμερῶν, *within ten days*, i. 7. 18, cf. iv. 7. 20. μέσον ἡμέρᾱς, *noon*, i. 8. 8; πρὸς ἡμέρᾱν, *toward daybreak*, iv. 5. 21; μεθ' ἡμέρᾱν, *by day*, iv. 6. 12.

ἡμέτερος, ᾱ, ον (ἡμεῖς), *our, ours*, ii. 5. 41, iii. 5. 6, iv. 8. 6; τὰ ἡμέτερα, *our affairs, our relations*, i. 3. 9, 5. 16.

ἡμι-, inseparable prefix, akin to Lat. *semi-*, half; see ἥμισυς, and note the numerous derivatives in Eng. with the prefix *hemi-*.

ἡμίβρωτος, ον (βιβρώσκω, *eat*), *half-eaten*, i. 9. 26.

ἡμιδᾱρεικόν, οῦ, τό (δᾱρεικός), *half a daric*, i. 3. 21.

ἡμιδεής, ές (δέω, *lack*), *lacking half*, of vessels, *half full*, i. 9. 25.

ἡμιόλιος, ᾱ, ον (ὅλος), *containing the whole and half again, half as much again*, with gen. of comparison, i. 3. 21.

ἡμίπλεθρον, ου, τό (πλέθρον), *half a plethron*, 50 Greek feet, iv. 7. 6.

ἥμισυς, εια, υ, *half*, ἡμίσει χρόνῳ, *in half the time*, i. 8. 22; as subst., τὸ ἥμισυ, *half*, with gen., iv. 3. 15, ἡμίσεα, *halves*, i. 9. 26; the word is also used in agreement with the substantive of which it expresses division, as τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμίσεις, instead of τὸ ἥμισυ, *half of the rear-guard*, iv. 2. 9.

ἡμιωβέλιον, ου, τό (from ὀβολός; also written ἡμιωβόλιον, ἡμιοβόλιον), *half an obol*, i. 5. 6.

ἦμουν, see ἐμέω.

ἡμφεγνόουν, see ἀμφιγνοέω.

ἤν, contr. for ἐάν, which see.

ἦν, see εἰμί.

ἠνέσχετο, see ἀνέχω.

ἠνέχθη, see φέρω.

ἡνίκα, temporal conj., *when, at what time*, with ind., i. 8. 8, iii. 4. 24, 34, 5. 4, iv. 1. 5; so introducing what is logically the main clause, like the Lat. construction of *cum inversum*, i. 8. 1, 17; with ἄν and subj., iii. 5. 18; with opt. after secondary tense, iii. 5. 18; ἡνίκα τῆς ὥρᾱς, *at whatever time*, iii. 5. 18.

ἡνίοχος, ου, ὁ (ἡνία, *reins*, ἔχω), *driver of a chariot, charioteer*, i. 8. 20. In Fig. 19, taken from a Greek

Fig. 19.

vase, the ἡνίοχος stands in the chariot bareheaded and without armor beside an armed warrior.

ἥξειν, see ἥκω.

ἧπερ, adv. (dat. fem. of ὅσπερ, cf. ἥ), *in just the manner in which*, ἧπερ εἶχον, *just as they were*, ii. 2. 21; *in just the place where, by just the road by which*, iv. 2. 9, 4. 18.

Ἡρακλῆς, *έους, ὁ, Heracles*, Lat. *Hercules*, son of Zeus and Alcmēne, the greatest of the Greek heroes and demigods. His exploits were the theme of many popular legends and were celebrated by numerous poets. Especially famous were the twelve tasks that he performed at the command of Eurystheus, king of Argos. He was worshipped as the protector of travellers, hence the Greeks offer sacrifice to him in return for safe guidance through the enemy's country, iv. 8. 25.

ἡράσθη, see *ἔραμαι*.

ἠρέθησαν, see *αἱρέω*.

ἠρόμην, see *ἔρομαι*.

ἥσθη, see *ἥδομαι*.

ἦστην, see *εἰμί*.

ἡσυχῇ, adv. (*ἥσυχος, ον, quiet*), *quietly, in silence*, i. 8. 11.

ἡσυχίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*ἥσυχος, quiet*), *quiet, calm, repose, peace*, referring either to physical rest and abstinence from exercise, or to freedom from molestation by an enemy; phrases *ἡσυχίᾱν ἄγειν, be at ease, live in peace*, iii. 1. 14; *ἡσυχίᾱν ἔχειν, keep still, be quiet*, iv. 5. 13; *καθ' ἡσυχίαν, in peace, undisturbed*, ii. 3. 8.

ἦτε, see *εἰμί*.

ἦτρον, *ου, τό, the part below the navel, lower abdomen, belly*, iv. 7. 15.

ἡττάομαι, *ἡττήσομαι, ἥττημαι, ἡττήθην* (the fut. mid. has passive meaning, ii. 3. 23), *be weaker than, be inferior to, be outdone*, with part. expressing the manner, ii. 6. 17; similarly with gen. of comparison, ii. 3. 23; *be worsted, defeated, beaten*, ii. 4. 6, 19, 5. 19, iii. 1. 2, 39, iv. 6. 26; with dat., i. 2. 9. (Cf. *ἥττων*.)

ἧττον, adv. (stem *ἡκ-*; from adj. *ἥττων, ἧττον, weaker, inferior*, used as comp. of *κακός*), *less*, ii. 4. 2; sup. *ἥκιστα, least of all, not at all*, i. 9. 19.

Θ

θάλαττα, *ης, ἡ, the sea*, i. 2. 24, 4. 1, iv. 7. 24, etc., *καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν, by land and sea*, Lat. *terra marique*, i. 1. 7.

θάλπος, *ους, τό, warmth, heat*; pl., *seasons of heat*, iii. 1. 23.

θαμινά, adv. (properly neut. pl. of adj. *θαμινός, frequent*, from adv. *θαμά, often*), *frequently, often*, iv. 1. 16.

θάνατος, *ου, ὁ* (√*θαν*, cf. *θνῄσκω*), *death*, i. 6. 10, ii. 6. 29 (*a*); *manner of death*, ii. 6. 29 (*b*); *ἐπὶ θάνατον ἄγεσθαι, be led to execution*, i. 6. 10. (Cf. *Thanatopsis*.)

θανατόω, *θανατώσω, ἐθανάτωσα, ἐθανατώθην* (*θάνατος*), *sentence to death*, ii. 6. 4.

θάπτω, *θάψω, ἔθαψα, τέθαμμαι, ἐτάφην* (cf. *τάφρος*), *bury, inter*, iv. 1. 19; the word is also used meaning to perform funeral rites in other ways, as by burning, which was the method used by the Homeric warriors.

θαρραλέος, *ᾱ, ον* (*θαρρέω*), *courageous, bold, daring*; comp., iv. 6. 9; with *πρός* and acc., iii. 2. 16.

θαρραλέως, adv. (*θαρραλέος*), *courageously, boldly, bravely*; *θαρραλέως ἔχειν πρός τινα, to present a bold front to*, ii. 6. 14; *without fear, with good courage*, i. 9. 19.

θαρρέω, *θαρρήσω, ἐθάρρησα, τεθάρρηκα* (older form *θαρσέω*, akin to Eng. *dare, durst*), *be of good courage, be easy in mind, be without fear, cheer up*, i. 3. 8, iv. 5. 28, 6. 9; part. as adv., *boldly, confidently*, iii. 4. 3; with acc. of respect, iii. 2. 20.

θαρρύνω, *θαρρυνῶ, ἐθάρρῡνα* (cf. *θαρρέω*), *encourage, cheer*, i. 7. 2.

Θαρύπας, *ου, ὁ, Tharypas*, favorite of Menon, ii. 6. 28.

θᾶττον, see *ταχύς*.

θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, τεθαύμακα, ἐθαυμάσθην (θαῦμα, *wonder*, related to **θεάομαι**), *wonder, marvel, be astonished*, i. 2. 18, 3, 2; with acc., *wonder at, admire*, ii. 3. 16, 5. 33, iv. 8. 20; with ὅτι clause, i. 3. 3, 10. 16, ii. 1. 2; with ind. quest., i. 8. 16, ii. 1. 10, iii. 2. 35, 5. 13.

θαυμάσιος, ᾱ, ον (cf. θαυμάζω), *wonderful, extraordinary, remarkable*, with gen. of cause, ii. 3. 15; sup. used ironically, like the ironical use of *my dear sir, my excellent friend*, in English, iii. 1. 27.

θαυμαστός, ή, όν (θαυμάζω), *wonderful, remarkable, strange, causing wonder*, i. 9. 24, ii. 5. 15, iv. 2. 15, 8. 11.

Θαψακηνοί, ῶν, οἱ, *inhabitants of Thapsacus, Thapsacenes*, i. 4. 18.

Θάψακος, ου, ή, *Thapsacus*, an important city of Syria on the west bank of the Euphrates, the usual fording-place for this part of the river, i. 4. 11. Thapsacus is mentioned in the Bible as Tiphsah (1 Kings iv. 24), one of the border cities of Solomon's kingdom. Ruins at El Hammam, opposite Rakka.

θέᾱ, ᾱς, ή, *sight, spectacle*, iv. 8. 27.

θέᾱμα, ατος, τό (θεάομαι), *sight, spectacle*, iv. 7. 13.

θεάομαι, θεάσομαι, ἐθεᾱσάμην, τεθέᾱμαι (θέᾱ), *look on, watch, behold*, abs. iii. 5. 13, iv. 7. 11, 8. 27, with acc. i. 5. 8, 9. 4.

θεῖος, ᾱ, ον (θεός), *divine, superhuman*; as subst., τὸ θεῖον, *a divine intervention, a miracle*, i. 4. 18.

θέλω, shorter form of ἐθέλω, used chiefly in the present tense. In Attic prose ἐθέλω is more common; θέλω, however, occurs several times in the Anab., usually after a vowel, i. 3. 6, ii. 1. 14, 6. 18, iii. 2. 16, 17, iv. 4. 5.

θέμενος, see τίθημι.

Θεόπομπος, ου, ὁ, *Theopompus*, an Athenian, ii. 1. 12. He is not mentioned elsewhere, and the name may be a pseudonym for Xenophon himself.

θεός, οῦ, ὁ, ή, *god, goddess, divinity*, i. 4. 8, 9, ii. 5. 7, 21, iii. 1. 21, iv. 3. 13, 8. 25; the art. is used in the sing. when some particular deity is meant, as Apollo in iii. 1. 5, Artemis iii. 2. 12; πρὸς θεῶν, *in sight of the gods, before the gods*, i. 6. 6, ii. 5. 20; as a formula of adjuration, *by the gods, in the name of the gods*, ii. 1. 17, iii. 1. 24; σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς, *by the help of the gods*, "*God willing*," ii. 3. 23, iii. 1. 23, 42. (Cf. Eng. *theology, theistic*.)

θεοσέβεια, ᾱς, ή (θεός, σέβομαι, *revere, worship*), *reverence, piety*, ii. 6. 26.

θεραπεύω, θεραπεύσω, etc. (θεράπων), *do a service to, assist, wait upon, show attention to*, i. 9. 20, ii. 6. 27. (Cf. Eng. *therapeutics*.)

θεράπων, οντος, ὁ, *servant, attendant*, esp. a free-born servant as opposed to a slave, i. 8. 28.

θερίζω, ἐθέρισα, τεθέρισμαι, ἐθερίσθην (θέρος, *summer*), *pass the summer*, iii. 5. 15.

θέσθαι, see τίθημι.

Θετταλίᾱ, ᾱς, ή, *Thessaly*, a district of northern Greece, bounded on the north by Mt. Olympus and the Cambunian range, on the west by Mt. Pindus, on the south by the Othrys range, and on the east by Magnesia and the gulf of Pagasae. The name Thessaly appears to have been applied originally to the country comprised in the valley of the Pēnēus river, the western district being called Thessaliōtis, the eastern Pelasgiōtis. At a later period Hestiaeōtis on the north and Phthiōtis on the south were added to the Thessalian territory. The cities of Thessaly were under oligarchical governments, and were united

into a league for mutual defence. The confederacy was presided over by a magistrate called the Tāgus (*τᾰ́γός*), and each of the four districts mentioned above had a provincial council. The broad plains along the rivers of Thessaly were very fertile, producing large crops of grain and affording pasturage for the horses for which the country was famous. i. 1. 10.

Θετταλός, *οῦ, ὁ, Thessalian*, an inhabitant of Thessaly, i. 1. 10, 2. 6, ii. 1. 5, 5. 31.

θέω, *θεύσομαι*, in Anab. only pres. and impf., *run, charge*, abs. or with *εἰς* or *ἐπί* and acc., ii. 2. 14, 5. 34, iii. 4. 4, iv. 3. 20, 21, 29, 7. 13, 24; *δρόμῳ θεῖν, run at full speed, at double quick*, i. 8. 18, iv. 6. 25, 7. 23; *race*, iv. 8. 28.

θεωρέω, *θεωρήσω, ἐθεώρησα, τεθεώρηκα* (*θέᾱ*), *watch, view, be a spectator*, abs. or with acc., i. 2. 10, ii. 4. 25, 26; of troops, *review*, i. 2. 16.

Θηβαῖος, *ᾱ, ον* (*Θῆβαι, αἱ, Thebes*), *of Thebes, Theban*; as subst., *ὁ Θηβαῖος, Theban*, ii. 1. 10. Thebes was the chief city of Boeotia, situated in a fertile plain somewhat south of the centre of the country. It was one of the oldest cities of Greece, its acropolis having been built by Cadmus, according to the legend, and hence called Cadmēa (*Καδμεία*). Some of the most widely known stories of Greek mythology are connected with Thebes, especially those which deal with the fortunes of Oedipus and his family, and certain legends about the birth of Dionysus and of Heracles. During the historical period Thebes was the inveterate enemy of Athens, taking sides with Sparta against Athens in the Peloponnesian War. The period of the city's greatest political importance was 379–362 B. C., when under the leadership of Epaminondas and Pelopidas it became the chief power in Greece. Thebes was destroyed by Alexander in 335 B. C., and is now a town of little importance (Thiva).

θηράω, *θηρᾰ́σω, ἐθήρᾱσα, τεθήρᾱκα, ἐθηρᾰ́θην* (*θήρᾱ, hunting, chase*), *hunt, catch, give chase*, i. 5. 2, iv. 5. 24.

θηρεύω, *θηρεύσω*, etc. (*θήρ, wild beast*), *hunt, catch*, i. 2. 7, 13.

θηρίον, *ου, τό* (dim. of *θήρ, wild beast*), *animal*, esp. *wild animal*, i. 2. 7, 5. 2, 9. 6. (Cf. Eng. *megatherium*.)

Θήχης, *ου, ὁ, Thēches*, a mountain on the confines of Armenia and Pontus, from which the Greeks first beheld the sea on their return from the interior of Asia. Its identity has not been established with certainty. iv. 7. 21.

θνήσκω, *θανοῦμαι, ἔθανον, τέθνηκα* (the simple verb does not occur in good Attic except in the perf. and the fut. perf. *τεθνήξω*), *die, be killed, lose one's life*, ii. 1. 3, 3. 23, 5. 38, iv. 1. 19, 2. 17; perf. part. *τεθνηκώς, dead*, i. 6. 11, 10. 16, iii. 1. 17.

θνητός, *ή, όν* (*θνήσκω*), *mortal, liable to death*, iii. 1. 23.

θόρυβος, *ου, ὁ, noise, uproar, tumult, confusion*, i. 8. 16, ii. 2. 19, iii. 4. 35, iv. 2. 20, 4. 21, 5. 17.

Θρᾷξ, *κός, ὁ, a Thracian, native of Thrace*, i. 1. 9, ii. 2. 7. Thrace (*Θρᾴκη*) comprised the eastern part of what is now Turkey in Europe, with Eastern Rumelia and Bulgaria, extending north to the Danube. The name was also applied to a part of Bithynia lying along the Black Sea from the Bosporus to Heraclēa.

θρασέως adv. (*θρασύς, bold*), *boldly, courageously, confidently*, iv. 3. 30.

θρόνος, *ου, ὁ, seat, chair*, esp. *a chair of state, throne*, ii. 1. 4. The *θρόνος* had a high back and arms, and a footstool was usually placed before it. It might be richly dec-

orated with carving or inlaid work, and provided with cushions. Fig. 20 shows a Persian

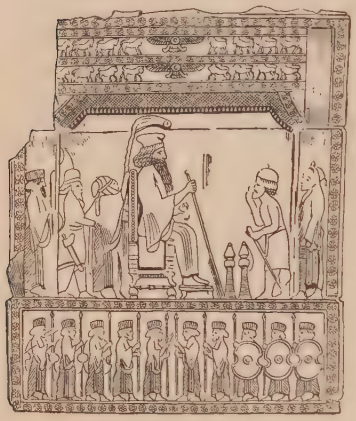


Fig. 20.

king seated on his throne and holding court, as represented on a relief at Persepolis.

θυγάτηρ, *τρός, ἡ* (akin to Eng. *daughter*), *daughter*, ii. 4. 8, iv. 1. 24.

Θύμβριον, *ου, τό*, *Thymbrium*, a city in southern Phrygia. Its site has not been positively identified, but is probably in the neighborhood of Akshehr. i. 2. 13.

θῡμοειδής, *ές* (*θῡμός*, *spirit*, *εἶδος*), *spirited*, *high-spirited*, of horses, comp. iv. 5. 36.

θῡμόομαι, *θῡμώσομαι*, etc. (*θῡμός*, *spirit*), *be angry*, *be incensed*, *take umbrage*, with dat., ii. 5. 13.

θύρᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (akin to Lat. *foris*, *door*, Eng. *door*), *door*, *gate*; hence by metonymy (part for whole), *house*, *residence*, *court* (of a king), i. 9. 3, ii. 1. 8; so also of the *tent* or *headquarters* of a general, i. 2. 11, ii. 5. 31; sometimes used in phrases denoting close proximity, *ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ*, *at his very gates*, ii. 4. 4, cf. iii. 1. 2.

θυσίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*θύω*), *sacrifice*, *offering to a god*, iv. 8. 25, 26. Fig. 21 shows a priest and his attendants offering sacrificial flesh upon an altar. The priest is in the act of taking from the basket held by an attendant some utensil needed about the altar, or else, perhaps, a handful of barley meal to be strewn upon the fire. The youth beside the altar holds a piece of flesh upon a spit, ready to roast it. The playing of flute music

Fig. 21.

and the wearing of wreaths were regular parts of the ceremonies of the sacrifice.

θύω, θύσω, ἔθῡσα, τέθυκα, τεθυμαι, ἐτύθην, *sacrifice, offer sacrifice*, abs., iv. 6. 27; with cogn. acc., **τὰ Λύκαια ἔθῡσε,** *he offered the sacrifices customary at the Lycaean festival, celebrated the Lycaea with sacrifice*, i. 2. 10; **θύειν σωτήρια,** *offer sacrifices for deliverance*, iii. 2. 9; with dat. of the god, iii. 1. 6. The middle also occurs frequently, this distinction being observed: "**θύειν,** to sacrifice for the divinity's sake, *i. e.* to honor him; **θύεσθαι,** to sacrifice for the worshipper's sake, *i. e.* when he seeks information through omens or has a special request to make to the god"; so i. 7. 18, ii. 1. 9, 2. 3, iii. 1. 8, 5. 18, iv. 3. 9.

θωρᾱκίζω, ἐθωράκισα, τεθωράκισμαι, ἐθωρᾱκίσθην (**θώρᾱξ**), *to put on the θώρᾱξ, arm oneself with the breast-plate*, ii. 2. 14, 5. 35, iii. 4. 35.

θώρᾱξ, ᾱκος, ὁ (cf. Eng. *thorax*), *armor for the chest and back, breast-plate, corselet, cuirass*, i. 8. 3, 6, 26, iii. 3. 20, iv. 2. 28. The **θώρᾱξ** most commonly used in Xenophon's time was made of leather or heavy linen to which plates of metal were fastened. It surrounded the chest like a jacket, and was fastened by clasps in front, and gathered in at the waist by a belt. The lower part of the cuirass consisted of a series of flaps (**πτέρυγες**) of leather or felt which allowed the hips to move freely, yet afforded protection to the abdomen and groin. Sometimes the cuirass was covered with closely overlapping scales of metal. This form, however, does not appear to have been a common one. In earlier times the **θώρᾱξ** was made almost entirely of metal, a breast-plate and back-piece being fastened together by laces at the sides and straps across the shoulders. The metal cuirass came into favor again after Xenophon's time, but it seems to have been made lighter and fitted closely to the form of the wearer. The cavalry cuirass (**θώρᾱξ ἱππικός**) protected the body more completely than that of the foot-soldiers, and was heavier, iii. 4. 48. Cuirasses of linen were worn by the Chalybes, iv. 7. 15; cf. also **λευκοθώρᾱξ**. Fig. 22, from a celebrated Greek

FIG. 22.

vase in Naples, gives a back view of a corselet worn by a young warrior. See also the cuts under **ὁπλίτης** and **τρόπαιον**.

I

ἰάομαι, ἰάσομαι, ἰᾱσάμην, ἴᾱθην, *heal, cure*, i. 8. 26.

ἰᾱτρός, οῦ, ὁ (**ἰάομαι**), *physician, surgeon*, i. 8. 26, iii. 4. 30.

ἰδέ, ἰδεῖν, see **εἶδον**.

ἴδιος, ᾱ, ον, also **ος, ον** (orig. *σFίδιος* from stem *σFε*, see *οὗ*; cf. Eng. *idiom, idiosyncrasy*), *one's own, private, personal*; **εἰς τὸ ἴδιον,** *for private use, for one's own advantage*, i. 3. 3.

ἰδιότης, ητος, ἡ (*ἴδιος*), *peculiarity, unique character*, ii. 3. 16.

ἰδιώτης, ου, ὁ (*ἴδιος*), a person in a private capacity as distinguished from an official or from one who belongs to a profession requiring special qualifications; *a private soldier*, in contrast to a general, i. 3. 11, iii. 2. 32.

ἰδοῦσα, see *εἶδον*.

ἱδρόω, ἵδρωσα (*ἱδρώς, sweat*, akin to Lat. *sudor*, Eng. *sweat*), *perspire, sweat*, i. 8. 1. (Used in Attic only by Xen.)

ἰδών, see *εἶδον*.

ἵεντο, see *ἵημι*.

ἱερεῖον, ου, τό (*ἱερός*), *a victim for the sacrifice*; then in general, *an animal intended for the slaughter*, pl. *cattle*, because parts of all butchered cattle were offered to the gods, iv. 4. 9.

ἱερός, ά, όν (cf. Eng. *hierarchy, hieroglyphic*), *consecrated to a god, sacred, holy*, with gen., iv. 5. 35; as subst., **τὰ ἱερά,** *sacred things, sacred rites, sacrifice*, iv. 3. 9 (*ὁ*); esp. *the vitals* of the sacrificed victim, ii. 1. 9; also the *omens* observed in connection with a sacrifice; **τὰ ἱερὰ καλά ἐστι,** *the omens are favorable*, i. 8. 15, ii. 2. 3, iv. 3. 9; **οὐκ ἐγίγνετο τὰ ἱερά,** *the omens were unfavorable*, ii. 2. 3. Omens were taken especially from the appearance of the vitals of the victim, but also from its motions and behavior before the sacrifice. This is true of both the *ἱερά* and the *σφάγια* (*q. v.*). There is no authority for the common statement that *ἱερά* refers to omens taken from the appearance of the vitals, *σφάγια* to those based on the behavior of the victim. For the real distinction between *ἱερά* and *σφάγια*, see the latter word.

Ἱερώνυμος, ου, ὁ (hence indirectly Eng. *Jerome*), *Hieronymus*, an Elean, a captain in Proxenus's division of the Greek army, iii. 1. 34.

ἵημι, ἥσω, ἧκα, -εἷκα, -εἷμαι, -εἵθην (for *σίσημι, ν σε*, later *ἑ*), *send, throw, cast, hurl*, with dat. of instrument, i. 5. 12; of archers, **ἄνω ἱέντες,** *shooting upward*, iii. 4. 17; **ἧκαν αὑτοὺς εἰς τὴν νάπην,** *they threw themselves into the valley*, iv. 5. 18; mid., *throw oneself, rush, charge*, i. 5. 8, iv. 2. 8, 20; with *ἐπί* and acc., i. 8. 26, iii. 4. 41, iv. 2. 7.

ἱκανός, ή, όν (akin to *ἀφικνέομαι*), *sufficient* in number, power, or size; of number, *enough, sufficient, adequate*, abs. or with inf., i. 2. 1, iii. 2. 12, 4. 3, iv. 1. 15, 8. 25; with relative clause, i. 7. 7; of power or character, *able, capable, competent, fit*, abs. or with inf., i. 1. 5, 3. 6, 9. 20, ii. 3. 4, 5. 11, 17, 6. 8, 16, 17, iii. 1. 23, 2. 10, 3. 18.

ἱκανῶς, adv. (*ἱκανός*), *sufficiently, well enough*, iv. 3. 31.

Ἰκόνιον, ου, τό, *Iconium*, a frontier city of southern Phrygia, later included in the territory of Lycaonia. It is now Konieh. i. 2. 19.

ἴλη, ης, ἡ (*εἴλω, roll up, press together*), *crowd, band*; esp. in military language a body of cavalry, sometimes rendered *squadron*, but more properly *troop*, as its number was 64 or 70, sometimes more. i. 2. 16.

ἱμάς, άντος, ὁ, *thong, strap* of leather, esp. the straps used in fastening shoes, iv. 5. 14. (See Fig. 26.)

ἱμάτιον, ου, ὁ (*ἕννῡμι, clothe*), *himation, outer garment*, corresponding to the toga of the Romans;

pl. *clothes, garments*, iv. 3. 11. The himation was an oblong piece of cloth about as wide as the distance from the neck to the calf of the leg. In putting the garment on, one end was passed over the left shoulder, drawn across the back and under the right arm, then thrown over the left shoulder again, and the end was allowed to hang down the back. This arrangement left the right arm and shoulder free for use. When there was no occasion to use the right arm, the himation could be drawn over instead of under the right shoulder. The arrangement of the himation is seen in Fig. 23. See also Fig. 21. The material of the garment was usually wool, the color most commonly white, though other colors were not infrequently employed. Ornamental borders were sometimes used.

FIG. 23.

ἵνα, conj. of purpose, *in order that, that*, with subj., i. 3. 15, 4. 18, ii. 2. 12, 5. 36, iii. 2. 27; with opt., i. 3. 4, 10. 18, ii. 3. 13, 21, 4. 8, 6. 21.

ἵππαρχος, *ου, ὁ* (*ἵππος, ἄρχω*), *cavalry commander, hipparch*, iii. 3. 20.

ἱππασίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*ἱππάζομαι, ride horseback*), *riding*, ii. 5. 33.

ἱππεύς, *ἑως, ὁ* (*ἵππος*), *rider, horseman, cavalryman*, pl. *cavalry*, i. 2. 4, 5. 2, 8. 5, ii. 4. 6, 5. 17, iii. 2. 18, 3. 20, iv. 3. 3, 20, etc. Cavalrymen in the Greek army wore helmets and heavy cuirasses (iii. 4. 48), which often had projecting collars to protect the neck, corresponding to the gorget or hausse-col in modern armor. Their thighs were protected by cuisses, the lower part of the legs and the feet by high boots. The offensive arms were the spear and sword. In the last chapter of his Art of Horsemanship Xenophon describes what he considers the best equipment for the cavalryman. The helmet, he says, should be of the Boeotian form, which he characterizes as affording sufficient protection without interfering with the vision. As no shield was carried, he advises the use of the *χείρ*, a peculiar kind of a sleeve of armor so arranged as to be extensible, and designed to protect the left arm and the bridle-hand. Instead of the straight sword (*ξίφος*) he recommends the curved sabre (*μάχαιρα*).

ἱππικός, *ή, όν* (*ἵππος*), *pertaining to horses* or *cavalry*, i. 3. 12, iii. 4. 48; as subst., *τὸ ἱππικόν, the cavalry, mounted contingent*, i. 9. 31.

ἱππόδρομος, *ου, ὁ* (*ἵππος, δρόμος*), *race-course, hippodrome*, i. 8. 20. The hippodrome was used both for races with chariots and with single horses. The arrangement of the race-course at Olympia, the most famous of the Greek world, is shown in Fig. 24, a diagram made according to the explanation of Pollack, in Guhl and Koner's *Leben der Griechen und Römer*. B C A is the space for spectators, which was provided with seats arranged in tiers, one above another. E T is an entrance, Y the judges' stand, M1 and M2 the goal-posts, connected by a low wall, which thus divided the two sides of the course. Success in the chariot-race depended largely upon the charioteer's obtaining a good position, and making a short but safe turn around the goal. It was desirable, therefore, that the chariots should be brought into a position where all

would be equidistant from M2 as soon as possible after the start. To bring this about a rather complicated device was employed. The chariots were stationed in small separate cells along the curves S R and R D. At a given signal, cords were drawn away from the front of the cells nearest S and D, then from the next two, and so from the others in quick

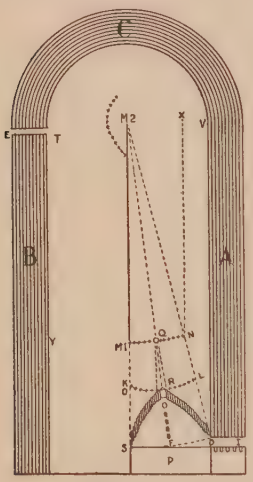


FIG. 24.

succession until all the chariots were started. Thus the advantage that the chariots nearest R would gain from their position nearer to M2 would be compensated by giving those nearer to S and D a flying start. By the time when the chariots at R were in motion the others would occupy positions along the curve K R L, and when opposite M1, the position would be M1 Q N, with all still about the same distance from M2. From there on the chariots would probably be considerably strung out, all trying to get the inside track, and there would be a convergence of the paths of the chariots, which is not greatly exaggerated in the diagram. The left side of the course was left open so that the horses could pass out after the finish at Y M1. The length of the course varied in different places, and the length of the race varied according to the number of laps run.

ἵππος, ου, ὁ (akin to Lat. *equus*), *horse*, i. 2. 27, 6. 1, 9. 6, iii. 4. 35, iv. 8. 28; **ἀπὸ ἵππου, ἐφ' ἵππου**, *on horseback*, i. 2. 7, iii. 4. 47. (Cf. Eng. *hippopotamus*.)

ἴσθι, see **οἶδα**.

ἰσθμός, οῦ, ὁ, *isthmus*; esp. *the Isthmus of Corinth*, connecting Peloponnesus with northern Greece, ii. 6. 3.

ἴσμεν, see **οἶδα**.

ἰσόπλευρος, ον (**ἴσος, πλευρά**), *having equal sides, equilateral*, **πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον**, *a square*, iii. 4. 19.

ἴσος, η, ον (cf. Eng. *isomorphic, isosceles, isotherm*), *equal*, in number, power, size, or quality; in the phrases **καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν**, *descend to the same level with us*, iv. 6. 18; **οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου ἐσμέν**, *we are not on the same footing, not on an equality*, iii. 4. 47; **ἐν ἴσῳ**, *uniformly, in regular order*, "*in step*," i. 8. 11; as adv. **ἴσον**, *equally, alike*, ii. 5. 7.

ἰσοχειλής, ές (**ἴσος, χεῖλος**, *lip*), *even with the lip* or *rim*, said of grains of barley floating in a full vessel, iv. 5. 26.

Ἰσσοί, ῶν (also **Ἰσσός**), *Issus*, a large city of Cilicia near its southeastern frontier, on the Pinarus river, i. 2. 24, 4. 1. It is famous as the scene of the battle between Alexander and Darius Codomannus in 333 B. C.

ἴστε, see **οἶδα**.

ἵστημι, στήσω, ἔστησα, ἕστην, ἕστηκα, ἐστάθην (akin to Lat. *stare*, Eng. *stand*), *cause to stand, stop, place, station*, i. 2. 17, 10. 14; of a trophy, *set up, erect*, iv. 6. 27; intrans. in mid. (except 1 aor.), also in 2 aor., 1 and 2 perf. and 1 and 2 plupf. act., *stand, stand still, take a position, be stationed*, i. 2. 15, 3. 2, 5. 2, 8, 13, iv. 7. 7; *hold one's ground*, i. 10. 1, iv. 8. 19; **ὀρθὸς ἵστασθαι**, *stand up, stand erect*, iv. 8. 21; note use with **εἰς, ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον**, *they got within hearing distance*, ii. 5. 38.

ἱστίον, ου, τό (dim. of **ἱστός**, *the upright beam of a loom*, from **ἵστημι**), originally *a web* or *cloth* of any kind, then *sail*, i. 5. 3.

ἰσχῠρός, ά, όν (**ἰσχύς**), *strong, powerful, resourceful*, of persons, ii. 5. 22, iv. 5. 20; of places, i. 5. 9, iv. 6. 11.

ἰσχῡρῶς, adv. (**ἰσχῡρός**), *strongly, with force, violently, severely, exceedingly*, i. 2. 21, 5. 11, ii. 6. 9, 21, iii. 2. 19, iv. 1. 16, 2. 26; **ἰσχῡρῶς κατατείνειν**, *insist vigorously*, ii. 5. 30.

ἰσχύς, ύος, ἡ, *strength, might, force*, personal, iii. 1. 42; military, i. 8. 22.

ἴσως, adv. (**ἴσος**), *equally, in like manner; perhaps, probably*, ii. 2. 12, 4. 4, iii. 1. 24; also used to avoid abruptness even when there is no doubt in the speaker's mind, *possibly, I should think, I suppose*, ii. 5. 23, iii. 1. 37.

ἰτέον, verbal from **εἶμι**, *one must go*, iii. 1. 7.

ἴτυς, υος, ἡ, *rim, edge*, of circular objects, as a chariot-wheel or a shield, iv. 7. 12.

ἰχθύς, ύος, ὁ (cf. Eng. *ichthyology, ichthyosaurus*), *fish*, i. 4. 9.

ἴχνιον, ου, τό (dim. of **ἴχνος**), *track, trace, hoof-print* of a horse, i. 6. 1.

ἴχνος, ους, τό (cf. Eng. *ichneumon*, a kind of ferret, lit. "tracker"), *track, trace*, i. 7. 17.

Ἰωνίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ, *Ionia*, a district of Asia Minor including the coast and islands between Aeolis and Caria, extending from Phocaea on the north beyond Miletus and almost to Halicarnassus, i. 2. 21, 4. 13, ii. 1. 3, iii. 5. 15.

Ἰωνικός, ή, όν (**Ἰωνίᾱ**), *of Ionia, Ionian*, i. 1. 6.

K

κἄγαθά, for **καὶ ἀγαθά.**

κἀγώ, for **καὶ ἐγώ.**

καθ', see **κατά.**

καθέζομαι, καθεδοῦμαι, impf. **ἐκαθεζόμην** (**ἕζομαι, *sit***, poetic verb), *sit down, seat oneself, take a seat*, iii. 1. 33; of a general, *halt, encamp*, like Lat. *consīdo*, i. 5. 9.

καθεύδω, καθευδήσω, impf. **ἐκάθευδον** and **καθηῦδον** (**εὕδω, *sleep***), *sleep, be asleep*, iii. 1. 3, 15, iv. 3. 11; fig., *lie idle, be indifferent*, i. 3. 11.

καθηδυπαθέω, aor. **καθηδυπάθησα** (**κατά, ἡδύς, πάθος**), *spend in pleasure, squander in luxury*, i. 3. 3.

καθήκω (**ἥκω**), *come down, extend downward, reach*, with **ἀπό** and gen. or **εἰς** or **ἐπί** with acc., i. 4. 4, iii. 4. 24, iv. 3. 11; impers., *fall to one, be incumbent on one, be one's duty*, with dat. and inf., i. 9. 7.

κάθημαι, impf. **ἐκαθήμην** and **καθήμην** (**ἧμαι, *sit***, used in epic and tragedy), *sit down, sit, be seated*, i. 7. 20, iv. 2. 5; *be stationed, be encamped*, i. 3. 12, iv. 2. 6.

καθίζω, καθιῶ, ἐκάθισα (**ἵζω, *seat***, mostly poetic, so always in trans. sense), *set down, cause to sit, seat*, ii. 1. 5; **χωρὶς καθίζειν**, *cause to sit separately, seat apart*, iii. 5. 17.

καθίστημι (**ἵστημι**), *set down, place, station, arrange in order*, i. 10. 10, ii. 3. 3, iii. 2. 1, 4. 14; *place in, bring to*, with **εἰς** or **ἐπί** and acc., i. 4. 13, iv. 8. 8; *appoint, create*,

establish, iii. 2. 5, 4. 30; the aor. mid. is also transitive, *appoint*, iii. 1. 39, *station*, iv. 5. 21. Intrans. in pres. and impf. mid., also fut. mid. (i. 3. 8), 2 aor., pf., and plupf. act.; *take one's post*, i. 8. 3, 4, 6; *be stationed*, iv. 5, 19; **κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν**, *he was established in the kingdom, began his reign*, i. 1. 3; **ὡς καταστησομένων τούτων εἰς τὸ δέον**, *since these matters will be settled properly, will turn out right*, i. 3. 8.

καθοράω (**ὁράω**), *look down at, observe from above*, i. 10. 14, iv. 2. 15; *discern, perceive*, i. 8. 26, iv. 3. 11, 4. 9, 15, 6. 6.

καί, copulative conj., *and*. **Καί** is used to connect sentences and clauses as well as single words, and the words or phrases connected are not necessarily in the same construction, cf. i. 7. 4, 10. 6, ii. 4. 22. Conjunctions are used much more freely in Greek than in English; hence they are often found at the beginning of sentences and paragraphs where they would be omitted in English, as i. 3. 4, 5, 8. 1, 8, 12, 14, etc. Furthermore, the Greek often connects sentences and clauses with **καί**, thus making them co-ordinate, where an English translator, either for the sake of rhetorical variety or because he recognizes a subordinate relation in one of the clauses, may use a subordinating conjunction, as *when*, *while*, etc.; cf. iii. 3. 11, **αὐτός τε ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο βλάπτειν**, *he himself incurred danger while he could not do the enemy a whit more injury*; so also in the next section, **ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς αἰτιῷντο καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς μαρτυροίη**, *he said that they were right in blaming him, as the result itself proved*. So also after a clause expressing time **καί** is used in a construction resembling that of the so-called *cum inversum* in Latin, where English, like Latin, uses *when*; so esp. after **ἤδη**, ii. 1. 7, iv. 6. 2; cf. i. 8. 8. **καί** may sometimes be rendered *so, and so*, i. 4. 9, ii. 3. 10, 5. 2, iv. 3. 11, 7. 14, 8. 17; similarly with **δή**, i. 5. 7. **καί** = *so for example, so in this instance*, illustrating a foregoing general statement, i. 8. 23, 9. 6, 14; *and in fact, and really*, iii. 3. 5, iv. 5. 15. Between numerals **καί** is used where English requires *or*, iv. 8. 21; after **αὐτός** = *as*, ii. 2. 10. After a question **καί** may be equivalent to *yes, and . . .*, ii. 5. 25. With forms of **οὗτος**, **καί** heightens the force of a statement, *and that, too*, i. 4. 12, ii. 4. 15, 5. 21. Placed before a word or phrase **καί** = *also*, i. 3. 15, ii. 2. 9, 3. 15, 6. 9, iii. 4. 44; *even, actually*, i. 6. 1, 10, 7. 4, ii. 2. 17, 4. 5, 6. 10, iii. 1. 17, 2. 5, iv. 2. 27, 8. 20; so occasionally when *even* rather overtranslates **καί**, as **καὶ διπλάσιον**, iii. 3. 16; emphasizing a concessive ptc., *even though*, iii. 1. 29. Emphasizing a superlative, **καί** is used where it can sometimes be rendered in English only by a special stress of the voice; **καὶ ἥδιστα**, *with the very greatest pleasure*, ii. 5. 15; cf. iii. 2. 22. Peculiar is the use of **καί** in clauses introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb, i. 3. 18, ii. 6. 8, iii. 1. 34, iv. 8. 20. In such cases **καί** must, as a rule, be left untranslated, or else "also" may be inserted in the main clause; so **ὡς ἐμοῦ ἰόντος ὅπῃ ἂν καὶ ὑμεῖς**, *that I also shall go wherever you go*, i. 3. 6, cf. ii. 1. 22, also, i. 10. 15. A similar use occurs after **ὡς**, as **ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος**, i. 3. 15, and in conditions, **εἴ τις καὶ ἄλλος**, i. 4. 15, ii. 4. 6. **ἡνίκα καί**, *whenever*, iii. 5. 18. In Greek a series of words or ideas is connected by a **καί** between each pair, while in English *and* is commonly placed between the last pair only; thus **καί** is repeated three

or more times (polysyndeton), i. 2. 22, 27, 3. 12. When the adj. of quantity **πολύς** is joined with another adj., Greek connects the two by **καί**, while English usually omits *and*; **πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ μεγάλαι**, *many large cities*, ii. 4. 21; so also ii. 3. 18, iii. 2. 8, iv. 6. 27. **καὶ . . . καί**, *both . . . and*, *not only . . . but also*, like Lat. *et . . . et*, i. 3. 19, 7. 19, 10. 3, ii. 3. 22; three times, i. 10. 6. The combination **καὶ . . . δέ** occurs so often (esp. in connection with **πάντες**), as to be a mannerism of Xenophon; it may be rendered *and besides*, *and moreover*, *and really*, *and in fact*, i. 1. 2, 5, 8. 2, 18, 22, 29, ii. 6. 8, 9, iii. 1. 25. In the case of **καὶ . . . γάρ**, like Lat. *etenim*, there is usually an ellipsis which may be supplied in such a manner that both words retain their usual force; *and* (this was natural) *for*, *and* (with good reason) *for*, etc.; but the combination can often be translated only by a simple *for*; cf. i. 1. 6, 8, 3. 12, 8. 21, 9. 17, 20, ii. 1. 5, 7, ii. 5. 5, 6. 2, 9, iii. 3. 4, etc. But **καὶ γὰρ οὖν** generally introduces a consequence of, rather than a cause for, the preceding statement, *and therefore*, i. 9. 8, 12, 17, ii. 6. 13. For **καὶ μήν**, see **μήν**.

Καιναί, **ῶν**, **αἱ**, *Caenae*, a city of Mesopotamia on the Tigris river below the mouth of the Zapatas, ii. 4. 28. The ruins called Kala'at Scherkat are perhaps the site of the ancient city.

καίνω, **κανῶ**, **ἔκανον**, **κέκονα**, *kill*, *slay*, iii. 2. 39. (Poetic word; in prose only in Xenophon.)

καίπερ (**καί**) concessive conj., *although*, with partic., i. 6. 10, ii. 3. 25.

καιρός, **οῦ**, **ὁ**, *the right measure* or *limit*; of time, *right* or *favorable* time, ii. 3. 9, *opportunity*, iii. 1. 36, so with inf. iv. 6. 15; hence **πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ**, *quite opportunely*, iii. 1. 39: *decisive* or *critical time*, *crisis*, iii. 1. 44. Also, of a definite point of time, with no stress laid upon the idea of fitness, *moment*, *juncture*, i. 7. 9, 8. 4. Of space, **προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ**, *farther than proper* or *necessary*, iv. 3. 34.

καίτοι (**καί**, **τοί**), conj., *and yet*, *still*, i. 4. 8.

καίω (also **κάω**), **καύσω**, **ἔκαυσα**, **-κέκαυκα**, **κέκαυμαι**, **ἐκαύθην**, *burn*, *set fire to*, of supplies, houses, etc., i. 6. 1, 2, iii. 5. 3, iv. 2. 19; of land, *lay waste with fire*, iii. 5. 5, iv. 7. 22; of fire itself, *kindle*, *keep burning*, iv. 1. 11, 4. 12, 5. 6, 6. 22; pass., *be on fire*, *burn*, iv. 5. 6, 7. 22.

κἀκεῖνος, for **καὶ ἐκεῖνος**.

κακόνους, **ουν** (**κακός**, **νοῦς**), *having evil intentions*, *hostile*, *inimical*, *ill-disposed*, ii. 5. 16, 27.

κακός, **ή**, **όν**, *bad*, in the widest sense, of all moral and physical qualities that are not good and desirable; of men, *morally bad*, *wicked*, *base*, ii. 5. 39, comp., i. 4. 8, **κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους**, *their conduct toward us is less just than ours toward them; lacking in courage* or *capability*, *slight*, *inefficient*, *weak*, *cowardly*, i. 9. 15, ii. 6. 30, iii. 1. 36, 2. 17; comp., *inferior*, i. 3. 18. Of things, *harmful*, *injurious*, iv. 8. 11. As subst., **τὸ κακόν**, *injury*, *hurt*, *harm*, ii. 5. 16, iii. 1. 25; **κακὸν ποιεῖν**, *injure*, *hurt*, i. 9. 11, ii. 5. 5, 10; **κακὸν πάσχειν**, *suffer injury*, *be hurt*, iv. 3. 14. (Cf. Eng. *cacophony*.)

κακοῦργος, **ου**, **ὁ** (**κακός**, **ἔργον**), *wrongdoer*, *malefactor*, *criminal*, i. 9. 13.

κακόω, **κακώσω**, **ἐκάκωσα**, **κεκάκωμαι**, **ἐκακώθην** (**κακός**), *injure*, *hurt*, iv. 5. 35.

κακῶς, adv. (**κακός**), *badly*, *ill*, *unfortunately*, *miserably*, *poorly*, iii. 1. 43, iv. 4. 14; **κακῶς ποιεῖν**, abs., *do harm*, iv. 8. 6; with obj., *do*

harm to, injure, hurt, i. 4. 8, 6. 7, 9. 11, ii. 4. 22, 5. 4, iii. 2. 5, 3. 13; **κακῶς πάσχειν**, *be injured, be damaged*, iii. 3. 7, 12; **κάκιον πράττειν**, *fare worse, be worse off*, i. 9. 10; **κακῶς ἔχειν**, *be in a bad condition*, i. 5. 16.

κάκωσις, εως, ἡ (**κακόω**), *maltreatment, rough usage*, iv. 6. 3.

κάλαμος, ου, ὁ, *reed*, also *stalk* of grain, etc., iv. 5. 26; *plant, herb*, i. 5. 1. (Hence Lat. and Eng. *calamus*.)

καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην, *call, summon* by the voice, ii. 1. 9, 2. 17, iv. 1. 9; *call, name*, pass. i. 2. 8, iv. 4. 4; pres. pass. ptc., **καλούμενος**, *so-called*, i. 2. 13, 8. 10, 25, ii. 4. 12; *summon*, by messenger, etc., abs. or with acc., i. 2. 2, 3. 4, 4. 12, ii. 1. 8, iii. 4. 38; mid. *call to oneself*, iii. 3. 1.

Καλλίμαχος, ου, ὁ, *Callimachus* of Parrhasia, an Arcadian captain of hoplites, mentioned for his conspicuous bravery in several places, iv. 1. 27, 7. 8 ff.

κάλλιστος, superl. of **καλός**.

κάλλος, ους, τό, (**καλός**), *beauty, fine appearance*, ii. 3. 15. (Cf. Eng. *calligraphy*.)

καλλωπισμός, οῦ, ὁ (**κάλλος** + old word **ὤπα**, an accusative, *face*, cf. **πρόσωπον**), *adornment, ornamentation*, i. 9. 23.

καλός, ή, όν, *beautiful, handsome*, of persons, i. 10. 2, ii. 6. 28, iii. 2. 25; of things, places, etc., *beautiful, fine*, i. 2. 22, 4. 10, ii. 4. 14, iii. 2. 7, 34; of actions, ideas, plans, etc., *good, fair, noble, honorable*, ii. 1. 9, 17, iii. 1. 24, 2. 7, 8, iv. 6. 14; **τὸ καλόν**, *honor*, ii. 6. 18; of omens, *favorable, propitious*, i. 8. 15, ii. 2. 3, iv. 3. 9; with inf., ii. 3. 4. Phrases: **καλὸς καὶ ἀγαθός**, with or without **ἀνήρ**, *honorable and worthy man, gentleman*, ii. 6. 19, 20, iv. 1. 19; **κάλλιστος τρέχειν**, *excellent for running*, iv. 8. 26; **εἰς καλὸν ἥκετε**, *you have come in the nick of time*, iv. 7. 3. (Cf. Eng. *calisthenics, kaleidoscope*.)

καλῶς, adv. (**καλός**), comp. **κάλλιον**, superl. **κάλλιστα**; *beautifully, finely*, i. 9. 23, iii. 2. 7; *well, successfully, efficiently*, i. 2. 2, 9. 17, 18, ii. 2. 13, iii. 1. 6, 16, iv. 3. 14, 6. 1; *nobly*, iii. 1. 43; **καλῶς ἔχειν**, *be well, be all right*, i. 8. 13, iii. 2. 19; **ὡς καλῶς ἔχειν ὁρᾶσθαι πάντῃ φάλαγγα πυκνήν**, *so as from every side to present a fine appearance in compact phalanx*, ii. 3. 3; **καλῶς εἶναι, γίγνεσθαι**, *go on well, turn out all right*, iv. 3. 8, 24; **καλῶς πράττειν**, *be successful*, iii. 1. 6; **καλῶς ποιῶν**, *well-conducted, worthy*, ii. 6. 20.

κάμνω, καμοῦμαι, ἔκαμον, κέκμηκα, *work, labor; be weary*, with participle, iii. 4. 47; also *be afflicted, ill, exhausted*, like Lat. *morbo laborare*, iv. 5. 17, 18.

κἄμοί, for **καὶ ἐμοί**.

κἄν, for **καὶ ἐάν**.

κάνδυς, υος, ὁ, a Median and Persian mantle, corresponding to the *caftan* of the modern Persians and the Turks. It reached to the ankles, had long, full sleeves, and was often dyed purple or some other rich color, and embroidered. Fig. 25 shows a Persian archer wearing the **κάνδυς**, as represented on a frieze of enameled tiles at Susa. i. 5. 8.

FIG. 25.

καπεῖτα, for **καὶ ἔπειτα**.

καπηλεῖον, ου, τό (**κάπηλος**, *petty tradesman*), *shop* of a **κάπηλος**, esp. *a public house, tavern*, i. 2. 24.

καπίθη, ης, ἡ, *capithe*, a Persian dry measure equivalent to a little over two choinixes, or about two quarts, i. 5. 6.

καπνός, οῦ, ὁ, *smoke*, ii. 2. 15, 18.

Καππαδοκία, ας, ἡ (old Persian *Katpatuka*, *Cappadocia*, a mountainous district in the interior of Asia Minor, lying to the west of the Euphrates, north of Cilicia, and east and north of Lycaonia and Phrygia, i. 2. 20, 9. 7. The country to the north, lying along the Black Sea, formerly reckoned a part of Cappadocia, was later organized into a separate satrapy (Paphlagonia and Pontus).

κάπρος, ου, ὁ (akin to Lat. *caper*, *goat*), *male hog*, *boar*, ii. 2. 9.

καρβάτιναι, ῶν, αἱ, *brogues*, *rough shoes of undressed hide*, the cheapest and commonest footgear, used by the peasants in Greece and Asia Minor, and said to have been invented by the Carians (**Κᾶρες**), whence the name. They were made from a piece of rawhide, which formed the sole of the shoe and was turned up slightly to protect the foot; this was then secured by straps passing across the instep and around

FIG. 26.

the ankle. Such shoes were improvised by the Greeks during their march through Armenia, iv. 5. 14. See Fig. 26.

καρδίᾱ, ας, ἡ (akin to Lat. *cor*, stem *cord-*, Eng. *heart*), *heart*, as the seat of the emotions, ii. 5. 23. (Cf. Eng. *cardiac*.)

Καρδούχειος, ᾱ, ον (**Καρδοῦχοι**), *of the Carduchi*, *Carduchian* [iv. 1. 2, 3].

Καρδοῦχοι, ων, οἱ, *Cardūchi*, *Cardūchians*, a rude and warlike tribe inhabiting the mountainous country east of the Tigris and between the Zapatas and the Centrites rivers. Their fierce and determined opposition was a serious obstacle to the Greeks in their passage through that region. The Carduchians were also on bad terms with Persia and owned no allegiance to the king, iii. 5. 16. They are the ancestors of the modern Kurds. iii. 5. 15, 17, iv. 1. 8, 9, 3. 1 ff., 4. 1.

καρπόομαι, καρπώσομαι, ἐκαρπωσάμην, κεκάρπωμαι (**καρπός**), *reap a crop from*, *enjoy the fruit of*, said of land; also *plunder*, *devastate*, iii. 2. 23.

καρπός, οῦ, ὁ (akin to Lat. *carpo*, *pluck*, Eng. *harvest*), *fruit*, whether of trees or lesser plants, as grain; *crop*, ii. 5. 19.

Κάρσος, ου, ὁ, *Carsus*, a small river forming the boundary between Cilicia and Syria, and flowing into the Gulf of Issus. It is now the Merkes. i. 4. 4.

κάρφη, ης, ἡ, *light*, *dry material* of various kinds, esp. *straw*, *dry hay*, i. 5. 10.

Καστωλός, οῦ, ἡ, *Castōlus*, a place in Lydia, probably near Sardis; whence **Καστωλοῦ πεδίον**, the mustering-ground for the troops of Cyrus's satrapy, which comprised Lydia, Great Phrygia, and Cappadocia. i. 1. 2, 9. 7.

κατά, also elided **κατ'**, before a rough breathing **καθ'**, preposition with accusative and genitive.

With gen.: *down*, said of a hill, a precipice, and the like, i. 5. 8, iv. 2. 17, 5. 18, 7. 14, 8. 28.

With acc.: in relations of space, *down*, *down along*, said of motion or extent; hence, of roads, paths, etc., *along*, *by*, *over*, iii. 4. 30, iv. 2. 16, 3. 23, 6. 11, 23; more frequently, indicating a vague proximity which may be more clearly defined by the context, *in the neighborhood of*, *at*, *about*, i. 5. 10, 17, 7. 14, 10. 7, 9, iv. 3. 12; so after a verb of motion, i. 8. 12; *opposite*, *facing*, i. 8. 21, 10. 4, iv. 3. 20, 21; with an idea of hostility, *against*, ii. 3. 19; κατὰ τὸ στέρνον, *on the breast*, i. 8. 26; κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν, *by land and by sea*, i. 1. 7, iii. 2. 13; οἱ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν πελτασταί, *the peltasts in the Arcadian force*, iv. 8. 18; κατά τινα αὐτομολεῖν, *go over to one's side*, i. 10. 6. κατά with acc. sometimes expresses the object for which, καθ' ἁρπαγήν, *for plunder*, *after plunder*, iii. 5. 2. Distributively, κατὰ ἔθνη, *by nations*, i. 8. 9, cf. i. 2. 16, iii. 4. 22, 5. 8; καθ' ἕνα, *one by one*, iv. 7. 8; of time, κατὰ μῆνα, *monthly*, i. 9. 17, so κατ' ἐνιαυτόν, *annually*, iii. 2. 12. *According to*, ii. 2. 8. Phrases, τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἶναι, *so far as this man is concerned*, i. 6. 9; κατὰ κράτος, *with might and main*, i. 8. 19; καθ' ἡσυχίαν, *undisturbed*, *in peace*, ii. 3. 8.

In composition κατά signifies *down* or *against*, also *utterly*, *completely*, esp. with verbs denoting destruction or consumption, as κατάγνῡμι, καταδαπανάω, etc.

καταβαίνω (βαίνω), *go down*, *come down*, *descend*, from higher ground to lower, i. 2. 22, iii. 4. 25, iv. 1. 10, 2. 20, 5. 25; from a wagon, ii. 2. 14; from the interior to the coast (cf. ἀναβαίνω), ii. 5. 22; *go down* into the arena, *enter* a contest (cf. Lat. *in harenam descendere*), iv. 8. 27.

κατάβασις, εως, ἡ (καταβαίνω), *a going down*, *descent*, iv. 1. 10; *place of descent*, *descent*, iii. 4. 37, 39.

καταγγέλλω (ἀγγέλλω), *give information against*, *report*, *denounce*, ii. 5. 38.

κατάγειος, ον (κατά, γῆ), *under the earth*, *subterranean*, iv. 5. 25.

καταγελάω (γελάω), *laugh at*, *make fun of*, *ridicule*, with gen., ii. 6. 23, 30; no obj. expressed, i. 9. 13, ii. 4. 4.

κατάγνῡμι (ἄγνῡμι, also in composition ἀγνύω, ἄξω, ἔαξα, ἔᾱγα, ἐάγην; the simple verb is chiefly poetical), *shatter*, *break*, of a limb, iv. 2. 20.

κατάγω (ἄγω), *lead down*; also *bring back*, esp. of exiles, *restore to one's country*, i. 1. 8, with οἴκαδε, i. 2. 2; mid., *come to*, *arrive at*, iii. 4. 36.

καταδαπανάω (δαπανάω), *spend entirely*, *use up*, ii. 2. 11.

καταδιώκω (διώκω), *pursue downward*, *chase down*, iv. 2. 5.

καταδύω (δύω), *cause to sink down*, *submerge*, *sink* (trans.), said of ships, i. 3. 17; mid. and 2 aor. act., intrans. *sink down*, *sink*, iii. 5. 11, iv. 5. 36.

καταθεάομαι (θεάομαι), *look down upon*; also *look down* or *along* a horizontal line, as a rank of soldiers, the idiom being the same as in English, *survey*, i. 8. 14.

καταθύω (θύω), *sacrifice*, *offer up*, of victims, iii. 2. 12, iv. 5. 35. κατά indicates the downward stroke by which the victim was felled.

καταισχύνω (αἰσχύνω), *put to shame*, *disgrace*, iii. 1. 30, 2. 14.

κατακαίνω (καίνω, κανῶ, ἔκανον, κέκονα, *kill*, poetic except two instances in Xen.), *kill*, *slay*, *cut down*, i. 6. 2, 9. 6, 10. 7, iii. 1. 2, 2. 12, iv. 2. 5, 8. 25.

κατακαίω (καίω), *burn down*, *burn to the ground*, of houses and villages, i. 4. 10, iii. 5. 13; of other objects,

burn up, burn completely, i. 4. 18, ii. 5. 19, iii. 2. 27, 3. 1.

κατάκειμαι (κεῖμαι), *lie down, lie*, iii. 1. 15, iv. 4. 11; esp. *lie idle*, iii. 1. 13, 14.

κατακλείω (κλείω, -κλείσω, ἔκλεισα, κέκλειμαι, ἐκλείσθην, *shut, close*), *shut up, shut in*, iii. 3. 7, 4. 26, in both cases with εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων.

κατακόπτω (κόπτω), *cut down, kill, slaughter, massacre*, i. 2. 25, 5. 16, 8. 24, 10. 9, ii. 5. 32, iii. 5. 2; in i. 5. 16 the fut. perf. (with pass. meaning) indicates the certainty of the event foretold.

κατακτείνω (κτείνω), *kill, put to death*, ii. 5. 10.

καταλαμβάνω (λαμβάνω), *seize, surprise, capture*, of persons and animals, iii. 5. 2, iv. 2. 5, 14, 5. 24; esp. of strategic positions, etc., *occupy, capture*, i. 3. 14, 10. 16, iv. 1. 21, 2. 10, 5. 1, 6. 17; *overtake*, ii. 2. 12, iii. 3. 8, 4. 4; *catch, run down* (said of a chariot), i. 8. 20; *strike*, of a rolling stone, iv. 7. 4; *come up with, find, meet*, i. 10. 18, iii. 1. 8, iv. 5. 7, 9, 30.

καταλέγω (λέγω), *recount, enumerate; count as, reckon as*, εὐεργεσίᾱν κατέλεγεν ὅτι, ii. 6. 27. (Cf. Eng. *catalogue*.)

καταλείπω (λείπω), *leave, leave behind, abandon*, i. 2. 18, iii. 3. 19, 4. 49, iv. 6. 3; *leave behind*, of a garrison, etc., iv. 2. 13, 4. 19, 22; *leave over, leave free, leave remaining*, i. 8. 25, iii. 5. 5, iv. 2. 11; *leave* in any condition, with adjs., as μόνος, ἔρημος, iii. 1. 2, 4. 40, iv. 2. 13.

καταλεύω, καταλεύσω, κατέλευσα, κατελεύσθην (λεύω, only pres. and aor. pass., *stone*, from λᾶας, *a stone*), *stone to death*, i. 5. 14. (κατά with destructive force).

καταλλάττω (ἀλλάττω, ἀλλάξω, ἤλλαξα, -ήλλαχα, ἤλλαγμαι, -ηλλάχθην and ἠλλάγην, *change*, cf. ἄλλος), *change*, esp. from enmity to friendship, *reconcile*; pass., *be reconciled, come to terms*, with dat., i. 6. 2.

καταλύω (λύω), *loose, untie, release*, of horses, *unyoke, unharness*; hence, with ἵππους omitted, *halt, stop*, i. 8. 1, 10. 19; with πόλεμον understood, *give up war, cease hostilities, make peace*; with πρός and acc. of person, i. 1. 10.

καταμανθάνω (μανθάνω), *learn thoroughly, observe, understand*, i. 9. 3, iii. 1. 44; with ind. quest. and anticipated object, ii. 3. 11.

κατανοέω (νοέω), *note carefully, observe, perceive*, i. 2. 4.

καταπέμπω (πέμπω), *send down*, from the interior of Persia to a coast province, i. 9. 7.

καταπετρόω (πετρόω, *stone*, poetical, from πέτρος, *a stone*), *stone to death*, aor. pass., i. 3. 2. (Cf. καταλεύω.)

καταπηδάω (πηδάω, πηδήσομαι, ἐπήδησα, -πεπήδηκα, *leap*), *leap down, jump down*, from a horse or chariot, with ἀπό and gen., i. 8. 3, 28, iii. 4. 48.

καταπῑ́πτω (πῑ́πτω), *fall down, fall off*, iii. 2. 19.

καταπλήττω (πλήττω, πλήξω, ἔπληξα, πέπληγα, πέπληγμαι, ἐπλήγην, and in comp. with ἐκ and κατά, ἐπλάγην; the pres., fut., and aor. act. are rare, poetical, or late in the simple verb, their places being supplied by certain forms of τύπτω, παίω, and πατάσσω, *strike*), *strike down*, esp. with terror, *terrify*, with βρόντῃ, iii. 4. 12.

καταπράττω (πράττω), *do thoroughly, complete, accomplish*, i. 2. 2.

κατασκέπτομαι (σκέπτομαι), *look at carefully, inspect*, i. 5. 12.

κατασκευάζω (σκευάζω, σκευάσω, ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, -εσκευάσθην, *prepare*, from σκευή), *fit out, equip*, of horses, iii. 3. 19; *furnish*, of a house, iv. 1. 8; of a province, *manage well, improve*,

i. 9. 19; mid., *make arrangements, prepare*, with dependent inf., iii. 2. 24.

κατασκηνάω, only aor. in Anab. (*σκηνάω*), *pitch one's tent, encamp, quarter oneself*, iii. 4. 32, 33.

κατασκηνόω (*σκηνόω*), *encamp, take quarters*, ii. 2. 16.

κατασπάω (*σπάω*), *draw down, drag down*, with *ἀπό* and gen., i. 9. 16.

καταστρατοπεδεύομαι (*στρατοπεδεύομαι*), *encamp*, iii. 4. 18, iv. 5. 1.

καταστρέφω (*στρέφω*), *turn down, overturn*; mid., *overthrow* for oneself, *subject to oneself, subdue*, i. 9. 14.

κατασφάττω (*σφάττω*), *cut down, slaughter, kill*, iv. 1. 23.

κατασχεῖν, see *κατέχω*.

κατατείνω (*τείνω*), *stretch tight*; intr., *strive earnestly, exert oneself* for an object, *insist*, ii. 5. 30.

κατατέμνω (*τέμνω*), *cut up, cut to pieces*, iv. 7. 26; *make by cutting down into the earth, cut* or *dig* (a ditch), with *ἐπί* and acc., ii. 4. 13.

κατατίθημι (*τίθημι*), *put down, lay down*; mid., *put down* for oneself, *store away*, iv. 3. 11; *εἰς τὸ ἴδιον καταθέσθαι, lay aside for personal use*, i. 3. 3; of a compact of friendship, *deposit*, ii. 5. 8, where allusion is made to the custom of intrusting valuables or important documents, such as contracts, to the care of a friend, or leaving them in a temple under the protection of a god.

κατατιτρώσκω (*τιτρώσκω*), *wound severely*, iv. 1. 10.

καταφαγεῖν, see *κατεσθίω*.

καταφανής, *ές* (*φαίνω*; for force of *κατά*, cf. *κατανοέω*), *visible, in sight*, i. 8. 8, ii. 3. 3, 4. 14.

καταφεύγω (*φεύγω*), *flee down; flee for protection, take refuge*, i. 5. 13, iii. 4. 11.

καταφρονέω (*φρονέω*), *look down upon* (lit. *think down upon*), *despise*, with gen. understood, iii. 4. 2.

κατέαξαν, see *κατάγνῡμι*.

κατεθέμην, *κατεθέμεθα*, see *κατατίθημι*.

κατεῖδον, see *καθοράω*.

κατειλήφει, etc., see *καταλαμβάνω*.

κατεργάζομαι (*ἐργάζομαι*), *accomplish, effect, bring to pass*, i. 9. 20, ii. 6. 22.

κατεσθίω (*ἐσθίω*), *eat up, devour*, iv. 8. 14, for the force of *κατά*, cf. *gulp down* in English.

κατετέτμηντο, from *κατατέμνω*.

κατέτρωσαν, from *κατατιτρώσκω*.

κατέχω (*ἔχω*), *hold down, keep under restraint*; figuratively, of oaths, *restrain, hold in check, bind, hinder*, iii. 1. 20; *ἀνάγκῃ κατεχόμενοι*, compelled by necessity, ii. 6. 13; of strategic points, *hold, occupy*, iv. 2. 1, 5, 3. 25; of extended space, *cover*, iv. 8. 12.

κατίδοιεν, *κατιδόντας*, from *κατεῖδον*, see *καθοράω*.

κατορύττω (*ὀρύττω*), *dig down, bury, hide underground*, iv. 5. 29.

κάτω, adv. (*κατά*), *below*, iv. 5. 25; *τὸ κάτω, the lower part*, iv. 2. 28; with verbs of motion, *downwards, down*, iv. 8. 28; *κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς, they had diarrhœa*, iv. 8. 20.

καῦμα, *ατος, τό* (*καίω*), *burning, heat* (of tropical regions), i. 7. 6.

Καΰστρου πεδίον, *τό*, *Caÿster Plain* (so called from the *Κάϋστρος*, a river of Phrygia and Lydia), a city of Phrygia in the neighborhood of the modern Bulwudum, at the junction of the highways leading from Sardis and Byzantium to Syria, i. 2. 11. Cf. such English place names as Springfield, White Plains, etc.

κἀω, see *καίω*.

κέγχρος, *ου, ὁ*, *panic-grass*, a plant related to millet; its small seeds are ground for bread in the East, i. 2. 22.

κεῖμαι, κείσομαι, *be laid, lie*; of persons, *lie, lie sick* or *lie dead*, i. 8. 27, iv. 8. 21; frequently used as passive of **τίθημι**, *be placed, be laid, be set*, of bricks, ii. 4. 12; of prizes, iii. 1. 21; of a wall or building, *be situated*, iii. 4. 10, where the ptc. **κείμενον** is perhaps best omitted in translation; **ἔνθα τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειντο**, *where the troops had halted under arms*, iv. 2. 20, cf. § 16 and the phrase **τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα**, under **τίθημι**.

Κελαιναί, ῶν, *Celaenae*, a large and important city of southern Phrygia, at the sources of the Maeander and Marsyas rivers. It had a citadel and palace of the king, as well as a palace and park belonging to Cyrus. (Ruins at Dinêr.) i. 2. 7.

κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα, κεκέλευσμαι, ἐκελεύσθην, *bid, order, command, direct*, often of military or royal commands, but used also of suggestions made by an equal to an equal, or by an inferior to his superior, where *command* would be harsh; with acc. of person and dependent inf., i. 1. 11, 2. 2, 15, 8. 29, ii. 1. 8, 4. 17, iii. 1. 27, 4. 38, iv. 2. 1, 5. 28; with inf., but no acc. of person, i. 3. 16, 4. 14, ii. 3, 1, iii. 1. 26, iv. 3. 13; with acc. of thing, without inf., iii. 1. 7; abs., **κελεύοντος Κύρου**, *at the command of Cyrus*, i. 6. 10; *bid, suggest, request*, i. 3. 16, 6. 3, 9. 27, ii. 4. 17, iii. 1. 29, iv. 5. 16, 24.

κενός, ή, όν, *empty, vacant, void*, iii. 4. 20; **πολὺ τῆς φάλαγγος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ κενὸν ἐποίησαν**, *they left a large part of the middle of their phalanx undefended*, or, *they made a great gap in the middle of their phalanx*, iv. 8. 17; with gen. of want, *void of, without*, **κενὰ ἡνιόχων**, i. 8. 20; figuratively, *empty, vain, groundless*, ii. 2. 21. (Cf. Eng. *cenotaph*.)

κεντέω, κεντήσω (cf. **κέντρον**, *goad*, whence Eng. *centre*), *prick, goad, torture*, iii. 1. 29.

Κεντρῖτης, ου, ὁ, *Centrites*, a tributary of the Tigris, flowing from east to west and forming the boundary between Armenia and the country of the Carduchi; it is now called Buhtan Tchai. The place where the Greeks crossed the river seems to have been near the modern town of Sert, where there is a ford. iv. 3. 1.

κεραμεοῦς, ᾶ, οῦν (**κέραμος**, *potter's clay*), *of clay* or *earth*, **πλίνθοι κεραμεαῖ**, *bricks*, iii. 4. 7. (Cf. Eng. *ceramic*.)

Κεράμων ἀγορά, ᾶς, ἡ (*Potmarket ?*), *Ceramôn agora*, a city of western Phrygia near the Mysian frontier, i. 2. 10. Its location is doubtful, perhaps near the modern Ushak.

κεράννῡμι, ἐκέρασα, κέκρᾶμαι, ἐκεράσθην and **ἐκράθην**, *mix, mingle*, of wine and water, with acc. and dat., **οἴνῳ κεράσας αὐτήν** (*i. e.* **τὴν κρήνην**), i. 2. 13, where the Greek idiom is the reverse of the English, in which the lesser element is said to be mixed with the greater.

κέρας, κέρᾱτος or **κέρως, τό** (akin to Lat. *cornu*, Eng. *horn*; cf. *rhinoceros*), *horn*; hence, because of the resemblance in shape, and because the horns of cattle were made into such instruments at an early date, *signal-horn, bugle*, ii. 2. 4.

Fig. 27.

Fig. 27 shows a barbarian blowing a horn. Of an army, with a comparison taken from a bull fronting an enemy, *wing* (note that the

English term refers to the expanded pinions of a bird, cf. Lat. *ala*), i. 7. 1, 8. 4, 13, 23, 10. 9, iv. 8. 12; **τὰ δεξιὰ τοῦ κέρατος**, *the right of the wing*, i. 8. 4; **κατὰ κέρας ἄγειν**, *lead in a narrow column* fronted by one wing, generally the right, with companies and their constituent enomoties one behind another, iv. 6. 6.

κερδαίνω, κερδανῶ, ἐκέρδᾱνα, -κεκέρδηκα (**κέρδος**), *gain, win, acquire*, ii. 6. 21.

κερδαλέος, ᾱ, ον (**κέρδος**), *bringing gain, profitable, advantageous*, comp., i. 9. 17.

κέρδος, ους, τό, *gain, profit, earning*, of wages, i. 9. 17.

κεφαλαλγής, ές (**κεφαλή, ἄλγος, pain**), *causing headache, apt to cause headache*, of wine and food, ii. 3. 15, 16. (For the latter part of the word, cf. Eng. *neuralgia*.)

κεφαλή, ῆς, ἡ, *head*, i. 8. 6, 10. 1, ii. 5. 23, 6. 1, iii. 1. 17, iv. 1. 18. (Cf. Eng. *cephalic, cephalopod*.)

κηδεμών, όνος, ὁ, *one who cares for others, protector*, iii. 1. 17.

κηρίον, ου, τό (akin to Lat. *cēra, wax*), *honeycomb*, iv. 8. 20.

κῆρυξ, ῡκος, ὁ, *herald, crier*. In all Greek states the office of herald was an important and respected one. Both in peace and in war messages from one city or country to another were carried by heralds. Thus they bring proposals from Artaxerxes to the Greek army, ii. 1. 7, 3. 1. When not engaged in missions to foreign powers, their functions were concerned with public assemblies of all kinds, where they called for order, offered the opening prayer, made proclamations, etc. So Tolmides acts as crier in the assembly of the Greek soldiers, ii. 2. 20, iii. 1. 46. The person of a herald engaged in the discharge of his duty was inviolable, and his character was shown by the **κηρύκειον**, a staff of a peculiar form, such as that held by the herald in Fig. 28. This illustration shows the herald lightly clad, as befits a messenger, in the chlamys and high-girt tunic, armed only with the sword, and wearing the *petasus*, or traveller's hat, and high walking-boots.

Fig. 28.

κηρύττω, κηρύξω, ἐκήρῡξα, -κεκηρῡχα, κεκήρῡγμαι, ἐκηρύχθην (**κῆρυξ**), *proclaim* as herald, *announce*, ii. 2. 21, often with an idea of commanding, *give an order by proclamation, command through a herald*, with inf., iv. 1. 13, with dat. and inf., **ἐκήρῡξε** (supply **ὁ κῆρυξ**) **τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι**, *the order was given to the Greeks to pack up*, iii. 4. 36; with simple acc., *command*, ii. 2. 20.

Κηφισόδωρος, ου, ὁ, *Cephisodōrus*, an Athenian lochagos, slain by the Carduchi, iv. 2. 13, 17.

Κηφισοφῶν, ῶντος, *Cephisophon*, father of Cephisodōrus, iv. 2. 13.

Κιλικίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**Κίλιξ**), *Cilicia*, a district of southeastern Asia Minor, lying along the coast of the Mediterranean, opposite the island of Cyprus, and bounded on the north by Lycaonia and Cappadocia, on the east by Syria, on the south by the sea, and on the west by Pamphylia. The western part of the country is mountainous, but the eastern is a fertile plain enclosed by the Taurus and Amanus ranges. The chief city was Tarsus. The country was ruled by a king, who was a trib-

utary satrap of the Persian empire. In the later Macedonian age, Cilicia became a stronghold of numerous pirates. i. 2. 20 ff., 4. 1, iii. 1. 10.

Κίλιξ, *ικος, ὁ, Cilician, native of Cilicia*, i. 2. 12, 22, 3. 14.

Κίλισσα, *ης, ἡ* (Κίλιξ), *a Cilician woman*, i. 2. 12, 18, 20.

κινδῡνεύω, κινδῡνεύσω, etc. (*κίνδῡνος*), *be in danger, incur danger, run a risk*, abs., i. 1. 4, 4. 14, 9. 14, iii. 3. 11; since the word *κίνδῡνος* means not only actual danger, but also cause for fear or apprehension, *κινδῡνεύω* is used sometimes of the possibility or danger of some untoward event taking place; so with inf. *ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι, would have been in danger of destruction, might have been destroyed*, iv. 1. 11.

κίνδῡνος, *ου, ὁ, danger, hazard, risk*, i. 7. 5, iii. 1. 12, iv. 6. 16; *danger, reason for fear*, with inf., ii. 5. 17, with *μή* and opt., iv. 1. 6.

κῑνέω, κῑνήσω, etc. (akin to Lat. *cieo, move, citus, swift*; cf. Eng. *kinetic, kinetoscope*), *move, set in motion*, of soldiers, iii. 4. 28; pass., *be moved, move about, stir*, iv. 5. 13.

Κλεάνωρ, *ορος, ὁ, Cleānor*, an Arcadian general from Erchomenos (also written Orchomenos). He was a faithful friend of Xenophon, who frequently mentions his wisdom and ability, ii. 1. 10, 5. 37, 39, iii. 2. 4, iv. 6. 9, 8. 18. He succeeded Agias in the command of the Arcadian hoplites, iii. 1. 47.

Κλέαρχος, *ου, ὁ, Clearchus*, a Lacedemonian general, served in the Peloponnesian war and was for a time harmost of Byzantium. Afterward, however, the Spartan government condemned him to death for insubordination (ii. 6. 2–4), and he entered the service of the younger Cyrus, for whom he collected an army (i. 1. 9, 2. 2), and by whom he was especially admired and trusted (i. 6. 5, iii. 1. 10). He commanded the right wing of the Greek army at the battle of Cunaxa (i. 7. 1), but disobeyed a command of Cyrus and thus indirectly brought about the death of the prince and the failure of the expedition (i. 8. 12, 13). After this catastrophe Clearchus was tacitly recognized as commander of the Greek army (ii. 2. 5), in which capacity he showed himself a harsh disciplinarian, but an able commander (ii. 3. 11). He was, however, completely hoodwinked by Tissaphernes in the conference recorded in ii. 5. 2–30, and was treacherously captured and put to death by Tissaphernes' orders (ii. 5. 31, 6. 1). A sketch of his character is given in ii. 6. 1–15. See also i. 2. 9, 3. 1, 5. 12, 10. 5, ii. 1. 4, 4. 15 ff. The plural **Κλέαρχοι** occurs in the sense of *men like Clearchus*, iii. 2. 31.

κλέπτω, κλέψω, ἔκλεψα, κέκλοφα, κέκλεμμαι, ἐκλάπην and, in Ionic and poetry, **ἐκλέφθην** (akin to Lat. *clepo, steal*, Eng. *lift* in *shoplifter*; the word *lift* is also used in the Scotch dialect in the sense of *steal*), *steal*, iv. 6. 14, 15; *embezzle*, of public property, iv. 6. 16; in a transferred sense, *occupy secretly*, of a strong military position, iv. 6. 11, 13, 15; *smuggle through*, iv. 1. 14. (Cf. Eng. *kleptomaniac*.)

κλῖμαξ, *ακος, ἡ* (*κλίνω, cause to lean*, because the ladder is inclined against the object to be mounted; cf. *κλίνη*), *ladder*, iv. 5. 25. (Cf. Eng. *climax*.)

κλίνη, *ης, ἡ* (*κλίνω, cause to lean, incline*), *bed, couch*, used both for sleeping and at the table, where the guests reclined, resting on the left elbow while the right hand was used in taking food and drink. The *κλίνη* consisted

of a wooden or bronze framework with four posts and sometimes a low headboard. The woodwork, especially in the case of handsome couches intended for use in the dining-room, was often richly carved or inlaid with ivory and gold or silver. Couches with silver feet were found by the Greeks in the camp of the Persian Tiribazus, iv. 4. 21. Besides the customary mattress, which was supported by cords or straps, the couch was plentifully provided with cushions and rugs or other coverings, which were often richly embroidered. (Cf. Eng. *clinic*.)

κλοπή, ῆς, ἡ (κλέπτω), *theft, thieving, stealing*, iv. 6. 14.

κλώψ, κλωπός, ὁ (κλέπτω), *thief*, esp. *camp-thief, marauder*, iv. 6. 17.

κνέφας, κνέφους, dat. κνέφᾳ, τό (poetic), *darkness, dusk, twilight*, iv. 5. 9.

κνημίς, ῖδος, ἡ (κνήμη, *the part of the leg between knee and ankle*), *a piece of armor for the shin, greave*, i. 2. 16, iv. 7. 16. In classic times the κνημίς was a rather thin plate of metal, carefully fitted to the leg, padded within to prevent chafing, and secured by bands and straps behind. The metal was sometimes decorated with incised lines or embossed work. See Fig. 29 and the cuts under ὁπλῖτης.

Fig. 29.

κογχυλιᾶτης, ου, ὁ (κογχύλη, κόγχη, *mussel*), λίθος κογχυλιάτης, *shell-limestone*, iii. 4. 10. A stone of this sort was used in building the great temple of Zeus at Olympia.

κοιμάω, κοιμήσω, ἐκοίμησα, *put to sleep*, poetical in active; mid. and pass., κοιμάομαι, aor. ἐκοιμήθην (akin to κεῖμαι), *lie asleep, go to sleep*, iv. 3. 2, 5. 14, 29. (Cf. Eng. *cemetery*.)

κοινῇ, adv. (κοινός), *in common, together*, abs. or with σύν and dat., iii. 3. 2, iv. 5. 34, 7. 4.

κοινός, ή, όν, *common, belonging to all, general*, iii. 1. 43, 45, 2. 32; τὸ κοινόν, *the common property, public money*, hence ἀπὸ κοινοῦ, *from the common store, at public expense*, iv. 7. 27. (Cf. Eng. *cenobite, epicene*.)

κολάζω, κολάσω, ἐκόλασα, κεκόλασμαι, ἐκολάσθην, *chastise, punish, inflict punishment*, ii. 5. 13, 6. 9, iii. 2. 31.

Κολοσσαί, ῶν, αἱ, *Colossae*, in Xenophon's time an important city of southwestern Phrygia, on the Lycus river, not far from the confines of Lydia and Caria, i. 2. 6. The Epistle of St. Paul to the Colossians was addressed to the inhabitants of this place. Ruins near Khonas.

Κολχίς, ίδος, ἡ (Κόλχοι), *Colchis*. As used by most ancient writers the name Colchis was applied to a district along the east end of the Black Sea, south of the Caucasus mountains, and drained by the Phasis river (the modern Rion). It corresponds roughly to the governments of Kutais and Batum in Russian Transcaucasia. The fabled Golden Fleece was brought from Colchis by Jason, with the help of Medēa, the daughter of Aeētes, the king of the country.—Xenophon (iv. 8. 23) uses the name Colchis less strictly, referring to territory in the neighborhood of Trapezus occupied by Colchian tribes.

Κόλχοι, ων, οἱ, *Colchians, people of Colchis*. Certain tribes in the country about Trapezus are called Colchians by Xenophon, iv. 8. 8, 22.

κολωνός, οῦ, ὁ (akin to Lat. *collis*, Eng. *hill*), *hill, mound*, esp. a *mound* or *cairn* (stone-heap) made to commemorate some event, iv. 7. 25.

κομίζω, κομιῶ, ἐκόμισα, κεκόμικα, κεκόμισμαι, ἐκομίσθην, orig. *take care of, provide for*; then *take away* so as to care for, *carry, conduct, bring*, with **ἐπί** and acc. or with **οἴκαδε**, iv. 5. 22, 6. 3; mid., *convey* for oneself, *bring* that which is one's own, or in which one is interested, iii. 2. 26.

κονιᾶτός, ή, όν (verbal from **κονιάω**, *plaster*, from **κονίᾱ**, orig. *dust, ashes*, then of various alkaline powders, *powdered lime*, and also *plaster made of lime, stucco*; cf. **κόνις**, *dust*, Lat. *cinis*), *plastered, cemented*, of cisterns, iv. 2. 22.

κονιορτός, οῦ, ὁ (**κόνις**, *dust*, **ὄρνῡμι**, *stir up*, mid. *rise*), *cloud of dust*, i. 8. 8.

κόπρος, ου, ἡ, *dung, manure*, i. 6. 1.

κόπτω, κόψω, ἔκοψα, -κέκοφα, κέκομμαι, ἐκόπην, *strike, cut*; of shields, *cut to pieces*, iv. 6. 26, of trees, *cut down*, iv. 8. 2; of animals, *slaughter*, ii. 1. 6.

κόρη, ης, ἡ, *girl, maiden*, iv. 5. 9. (Cf. Eng. *Cora*.)

Κορσωτή, ῆς, ἡ, *Corsōte*, a large city in the Mesopotamian desert, on the Euphrates river, i. 5. 4. It was surrounded by the Maskas river, which seems to have been only a large canal forming the island Werdi.

κορυφή, ῆς, ἡ, *highest point, top, summit*, iii. 4. 41, iv. 2. 20. (Cf. Eng. *corypheus*.)

κοσμέω, κοσμήσω, etc. (**κόσμος**; cf. Eng. *cosmetic*), *arrange, marshal*, of soldiers, iii. 2. 36; *bedeck, adorn*, i. 9. 23.

κόσμος, ου, ὁ (cf. Eng. *cosmos, cosmic, cosmogony*, all with the idea of *world, universe*, a meaning of **κόσμος** not occurring in Anab.), *order, arrangement*, hence *ornament, adornment, fine dress*, iii. 2. 7; in figurative sense, *ornament, honor*, i. 9. 23, like Cornelia's "These are my jewels"—said of her children.

κοῦφος, η, ον, *light*, **χόρτος κοῦφος**, *hay*, i. 5. 10.

κράνος, ους, τό (probably akin to German *Hirn*, Scotch *harns, brain*, cf. *cranium*), *armor for the head, helmet*, i. 2. 16, 8. 6, iv. 7. 16. All forms of the helmet were developed from a simple cap of rough, undressed skin or tanned leather. Even when bronze had superseded the earlier material, cheap helmets were still made of leather strengthened with plates and ridges of metal. The first improvements on the simple cap-form consisted in enlarging the helmet so as to make it cover not merely the top of the head, but also the temples and ears, and adding a neck-guard behind and a nose-piece and cheek-pieces for the face. Thus little of the wearer's head could be seen except his eyes and mouth, and in some examples the helmet has the appearance of a solid pot with eyeholes cut in it. Examples of the helmet covering the whole head, with fixed nose-piece and cheek-pieces (the so-called Corinthian type) are seen in the cuts under **ἠνίοχος** and **προμετωπίδιον**. A more advanced form is seen in the so-called Attic helmet (Fig. 30). In this the fixed nose-piece was sometimes retained, but oftener it was omitted, or a movable visor was substituted for it; the cheek-pieces were hinged, so that they might be turned up, as in the cut. The helmet was usually provided with a crest or plume of horsehair, which was either fastened upon a ridge of metal run-

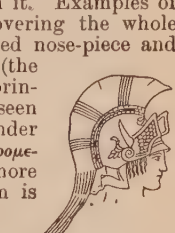


FIG. 30.

ning from front to back, or was attached directly to the helmet by means of a spike, without the intervention of the ridge (so in the helmet shown in the cut under *ἡνίοχος*). See the cut under *ὁπλίτης*.

κρατέω, *κρατήσω*, etc. (*κράτος*, akin to *κρείττων*), *be strong, have power, rule*, with gen., ii. 5. 7; *conquer, be victorious*, i. 7. 8, ii. 1. 10, iii. 2. 21, 28, 39; *οἱ κρατοῦντες*, iii. 2. 26; *conquer, vanquish*, with gen., iii. 4. 26, iv. 7. 16; pass., *οἱ κρατούμενοι, the vanquished*, iii. 2. 28. (Cf. Eng. *democracy, aristocracy*.)

κρᾶτήρ, *ῆρος*, *ὁ* (*√κρᾶ, κερα*, cf. *κεράννῡμι*), *mixing-bowl*, used at banquets for mixing wine with the requisite amount of water (see under *ἄκρᾶτος*), iv. 5. 26, 32. The *κρᾶτήρ* was a rather broad vessel with a flaring rim and two handles which were usually set low on the sides. It rested on a broad, firm base. The shapes varied somewhat, but Fig. 31 is a common type. These bowls, when made of clay, were usually beautifully painted, and when of metal, marble, or alabaster, were often richly ornamented with designs in relief. (Cf. Eng. *crater*.)

Fig. 31.

κράτιστος, *η, ον* (*κράτος*), superl. from old adj. *κρατύς*, used in Attic as superl. of *ἀγαθός*; orig. *strongest, bravest*, iv. 8. 12; then *best* in various senses, *ablest, most efficient, most capable, most excellent*, i. 9. 2, 18, 21, so with inf., i. 9. 20; *most prominent, noblest, of highest rank*, i. 5. 8, ii. 2. 8, iv. 6. 16; *κράτιστον*, with *ἐστί, it is best, it is most advisable*, iii. 2. 38, with inf., iii. 4. 41, iv. 5. 17. As adv., *κράτιστα*, in phrases *ὡς κράτιστα, ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα*, with *μάχεσθαι, διαπολεμεῖν, in the bravest manner, as bravely as possible*, iii. 2. 6, 3. 3, iv. 6. 10.

κράτος, *ους, τό*, *strength, might, power*, a word used in prose almost exclusively in certain phrases, see *ἀνὰ κράτος* and *κατὰ κράτος* under *ἀνά, κατά*.

κραυγή, *ῆς, ἡ* (akin to *κράζω, shout*, perhaps to Eng. *croak*), *shouting, uproar, tumult*, i. 2. 17, 5. 12, ii. 2. 17, iii. 4. 45, iv. 4. 14, 7. 21, etc.

κρέας, *ως, τό* (cf. Eng. *creosote*), *flesh*, pl., *meat*, i. 5. 2, 6, ii. 1. 6, iv. 5. 31.

κρείττων, *ον*, gen. *ονος* (comp. of old adj. *κρατύς*, cf. *κράτιστος*), *stronger, mightier, more powerful*, i. 2. 26, 7. 3, ii. 5. 19; *superior* in other respects, *better, more desirable, more valuable*, ii. 2. 10, iii. 1. 4, 2. 22; *κρεῖττον*, with or without *ἐστί*, and inf., *it is better, it is preferable*, iii. 2. 17, 21, iv. 6. 11.

κρέμαμαι, *κρεμήσομαι, be suspended, hang*, with *ἐπί* or *ὑπέρ* with gen., iii. 2. 19, iv. 1. 2.

κρεμάννῡμι, *κρεμῶ, ἐκρέμασα, ἐκρεμάσθην* (akin to *κρέμαμαι*), *hang, hang up, suspend*, i. 2. 8.

κρήνη, *ης, ἡ, spring, fountain*, i. 2. 13, iv. 5. 9, 15.

κρηπῖς, *κρηπῖδος, ἡ, a kind of half-shoe*; also, *foundation*, iii. 4. 7, 10.

Κρής, *Κρητός, ὁ, a Cretan, inhabitant of the island of Crete*, or Candia, a large island lying in the Mediterranean some sixty miles south of the southernmost point of the Peloponnesus. Though of little political importance in the historical period, recent archæological discoveries, especially the excavations at Knōssos and Phaestos, have shown

that the island was the seat of a remarkable prehistoric civilization even more highly developed than the Mycenaean. These discoveries indicate that there may be a substratum of truth in the stories told about the wealth and power of Minos, the mythical Cretan king. Throughout ancient times the Cretans were famed for skill in archery and speed in running. Cretans were employed as archers in the army of Cyrus, i. 2. 9, iii. 3. 7, 4. 17, iv. 2. 28, 8. 27.

κρῑθή, ῆς, ἡ, in Xen. always pl., *κρῖθαί, grains of barley, barley,* i. 2. 22, iii. 4. 31, iv. 5. 26.

κρίθινος, η, ον (*κρῑθή*), *made of barley, οἶνος κρίθινος, beer,* iv. 5. 26, a beverage said to be still much used by the Armenians; *ἄρτοι κρῑθινοί, barley loaves,* iv. 5. 31.

κρῑ́νω, *κρινῶ, ἔκρῑνα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην* (akin to Lat. *cerno, separate, crīmen, decision,* cf. Eng. *critic*), *set apart, pick out, choose,* i. 9. 30; hence, of choosing between alternatives, *decide, determine, judge, conclude,* with acc. and inf., i. 9. 5, 20, 28, iii. 1. 7; with acc. obj. and pred. adj., iii. 1. 12; of judicial questions, *render judgment, decide,* with acc. and inf., i. 5. 11.

κρῑτός, οῦ, ὁ, *ram,* ii. 2. 9.

κρίσις, εως, ἡ (*κρίνω*), *decision, judgment*; in judicial language, *trial,* i. 6. 5. (Cf. *crisis.*)

κρούω, *κρούσω, ἔκρουσα, -κέκρουκα, -κέκρουμαι* and *-κέκρουσμαι, -εκρούσθην, beat, knock, clash,* iv. 5. 18. (Cf. *anacrusis.*)

κρύπτω, *κρύψω, ἔκρυψα, κέκρυμμαι, ἐκρύφθην* (cf. Eng. *crypt, cryptogam*), *hide, conceal,* with two accs., i. 9. 19; obj. supplied, i. 4. 12.

κτάομαι, *κτήσομαι, ἐκτησάμην, κέκτημαι, ἐκτήθην* (with pass. meaning), *acquire, obtain, win, get,* abs. or with acc., i. 9. 19, ii. 6. 17, 18; of an object, *accomplish, bring about,* ii. 6. 26; perf. *κέκτημαι, have acquired,* hence *possess,* i. 7. 3.

κτείνω, *κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα* and *ἔκτανον, -έκτονα, kill, slay,* ii. 5. 32. The verb is chiefly poetical, though frequent in Thucydides. Only here in Xen.

κτῆμα, ατος, τό (*κτάομαι*), *possession,* pl. *property, goods,* ii. 6. 24.

κτῆνος, ους, τό (*κτάομαι*), *anything possessed, piece of property*; then, because the property of primitive peoples consists chiefly of cattle, *cattle, stock, domestic animals,* iii. 1. 19, iv. 5. 25, 7. 2, 17.

Κτησίᾱς, ου, ὁ, *Ctesias,* a physician of Cnidus, who was captured by the Persians in 415 B.C., and taken to the court of Darius II., who treated him with great consideration and made him his court physician. After the death of Darius, Ctesias occupied the same position under Artaxerxes, and healed the wound that the king received at Cunaxa (i. 8. 26, 27). In 398 he was sent by the king on a mission to the Athenian Conon and the Cyprian king Evagoras, and did not return to Persia. He wrote a history of Persia in 23 books and an account of India in one book; these narratives are known to us only through the epitomes of Photius and certain fragments. Though Ctesias claimed to have used the Persian chronicles in preparing his work, and criticizes the inaccuracy of Herodotus, his own veracity has been impeached by both ancient and modern critics.

Κύδνος, ου, ὁ, *Cydnus,* a river of Cilicia flowing through the city of Tarsus, i. 2. 23. Its modern name is variously given as Karasu, Mesarlyk-tchai, and Tersustchai. The Cydnus river was the meeting-place of Antony and Cleopatra; see the famous de-

scription in *Antony and Cleopatra*, Act II, scene 2.

κύκλος, ου, ὁ (cf. Eng. *cycle, cycloid*, etc.), *circle, ring; encircling wall*, iii. 4. 7, 11; dat. **κύκλῳ**, *in a circle, around, round about*, i. 5. 4, iii. 1. 2, 12, iv. 1. 11, 2. 5, 7. 2; so in attrib. pos., like an adj., **τὴν κύκλῳ πᾶσαν χώρᾱν**, *all the country round, all the surrounding country*, iii. 5. 14.

κυκλόω, κυκλώσω, ἐκύκλωσα, κεκύκλωμαι, ἐκυκλώθην (**κύκλος**), *surround, encircle*, i. 8. 13, iv. 2. 15.

κύκλωσις, εως, ἡ (**κυκλόω**), *a surrounding, encircling, flank movement*, i. 8. 23.

κυλινδέω, impf. **ἐκυλίνδουν** (the active is used by Xen. alone among classical prose writers, acc. to Veitch), *roll, roll down*, iv. 2. 3, 20, 7. 4; mid. and pass., with **κάτω**, *roll down* (intr.), iv. 8. 28. (Cf. Eng. *cylinder*.)

Κύρειος, ᾱ, ον (**Κῦρος**), *Cyrēan, of* or *belonging to Cyrus*, i. 10. 1. The use of the adj. instead of the gen. **Κύρου** is poetical.

Κῦρος, ου, ὁ (old Persian *Kurush*), *Cyrus*, a Persian proper name. (1) *Cyrus the Great*, the founder of the Persian empire, also called *Cyrus the Elder* (**ὁ παλαιός**, i. 9. 1), to distinguish him from the Cyrus of the Anabasis. Herodotus (i. 107 ff.) and Xen. (Cyr. i. 2. 1) say that Cyrus was the son of Cambyses and Mandane, daughter of Astyages, the king of Persia. Cambyses, acc. to Hdt., was a Persian noble; Xen. makes him king of the Persians. The cuneiform inscriptions indicate that Cyrus was of royal birth, but disprove the alleged kinship with Astyages. Cyrus, with his Persians, overthrew Astyages and established the Persian empire about 559 B. C. In 546 Cyrus defeated and captured Croesus, thus adding the Lydian territory to his realm. The conquest of Babylon followed in 538, and at his death in 529, Cyrus was the most powerful potentate of Asia. He was succeeded by his son Cambyses.—Xenophon's *Cyropaedīa*, or *Education of Cyrus*, is ostensibly an account of the life, character, and death of the elder Cyrus, but is, in fact, a historical romance, giving a portrait of the author's ideal king, and has no claim to historical accuracy. (2) *Cyrus the Younger* was the second son of Darius Nothus and Parysatis, and considered himself the rightful heir to the throne because he was the first child born after his father's accession (424 B. C.). In this claim he seems to have had the support of his mother (cf. i. 1. 4). Showing military and executive ability at an early age, he was made satrap of Lydia, Greater Phrygia, and Cappadocia, and was commissioned by Darius to aid Sparta against Athens in the Peloponnesian war (i. 1. 2, 9. 7, iii. 1. 5). After the death of Darius, Cyrus made, or was accused of making, an attempt against his brother, and came near losing his life in consequence (i. 1. 3). Returning to his province after he had been released through the intercession of Parysatis, he secretly collected a large army at Sardis, with a view to an expedition against Artaxerxes. An account of this armament is given in the first and second chapters of the Anabasis, and the course of the expedition is described in chapters ii.–vii. The battle of Cunaxa and the death of Cyrus in a rash attack upon the king form the subject of chapter viii. Xenophon's estimate of the character of Cyrus is given in chapter ix.

κύων, κυνός, ὁ, ἡ (akin to Lat. *canis*, *dog*, Eng. *hound*), *dog*, iii. 2. 35. (Cf. Eng. *cynic, cynosure*.)

κωλύω, *κωλύσω, ἐκώλῡσα, κεκώλῡκα, κεκώλῡμαι, ἐκωλύθην, hinder, prevent, be a hindrance, oppose,* abs. or with acc. of person or thing, i. 2. 21, 22, ii. 4. 6, iii. 5. 2, iv. 2. 24, 25; with acc. and inf., i. 3. 16, 7. 19, ii. 5. 7; with inf. alone (acc. of person understood), iv. 3. 3; with gen. of inf., *κωλύειν τοῦ καίειν, keep from burning,* i. 6. 2; as subst., *τὸ κωλῦον, hindrance, obstacle, difficulty,* iv. 5. 20, with inf., iv. 7. 4.

κώμαρχος, *ου, ὁ* (*κώμη, ἄρχω*), *ruler of a village, village chief, headman,* iv. 5. 10, 24, 32, 34–36, 6. 2. (The best MS. has *κωμάρχης* in these places, which Gemoll has corrected on the analogy of other compounds ending in *-αρχος* in the Attic inscriptions.)

κώμη, *ης, ἡ, village, hamlet,* as distinguished from a walled town, i. 4. 9, 10. 12, ii. 2. 13, iii. 2. 34, 5. 1, iv. 4. 7, 6. 27.

κωμήτης, *ου, ὁ* (*κώμη*), *dweller in a village, villager,* iv. 5. 24.

Λ

λαβεῖν, see *λαμβάνω.*

λαγχάνω, *λήξομαι, ἔλαχον, εἴληχα, εἴλημαι* (*εἰλημμένος*), *ἐλήχθην, obtain by lot, have allotted to oneself,* with acc., iv. 5. 24; also less exactly, *get, obtain,* with gen., iii. 1. 11.

λαγῶς or **λαγώς,** gen. *λαγῶ, ὁ, hare,* iv. 5. 24.

λαθεῖν, *λάθοιεν,* see *λανθάνω.*

λάθρᾳ, adv. (*√λαθ,* cf. *λανθάνω*), *secretly, privately, covertly,* ii. 5. 28; with gen., *λάθρᾳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, without the knowledge of the soldiers,* i. 3. 8.

Λακεδαιμόνιος, *ᾱ, ον* (*Λακεδαίμων*), *Lacedaemonian, inhabitant of Lacedaemon* or *Laconia,* of which Sparta was the chief city, i. 2. 9, 4. 2, ii. 6. 2, iii. 1. 5, 2. 37, iv. 6. 14. (See *Σπάρτη.*)

λάκκος, *ου, ὁ* (akin to Lat. *lacus,* Eng. *lake,* Scotch and Irish *loch*), *pond, tank, cistern,* iv. 2. 22.

λακτίζω, *λακτιῶ, ἐλάκτισα, λελάκτικα, ἐλακτίσθην* (adv. *λάξ, with the foot*), *kick,* of a horse, iii. 2. 18.

Λάκων, *ωνος, ὁ, Laconian, inhabitant of Laconia,* same as *Lacedaemonian,* ii. 1. 5, 5. 31.

Λακωνικός, *ή, όν* (*Λάκων*), *Laconian, of Laconia,* iv. 1. 18. (Cf. Eng. *laconic.*)

λαμβάνω, *λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην, take,* with as many shades of meaning as the English word; *take* into the hand, etc., *bring along,* i. 2. 2, 8. 3, iv. 5. 26; note here the use with gen. of part. touched, *ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόντᾱν, they laid hold of Orontas's girdle, they took hold of Orontas by the girdle,* i. 6. 10; *seize, take prisoner, capture, take possession of,* of persons and things, i. 3. 10, 4. 7, 5. 2, 7. 9 [10. 2], ii. 1. 10, 3. 26, 6. 1, iii. 2. 21, 39, 4. 41, iv. 3. 25, 6. 17, 7. 22; so with an idea of surprising, *catch, surprise,* i. 1. 6, ii. 3. 21, iv. 6. 15 (with ptc.); with an inanimate subject, *ἔνδεια, come upon, befall, visit,* i. 10. 18. Without the idea of violence, *take, receive, accept,* i. 1. 9, 6. 3, 9. 22, ii. 2. 20, iii. 4. 2, iv. 2. 23, 7. 27; *obtain, procure, acquire, gain,* i. 5. 10, ii. 6. 21; of soldiers, *enlist, enroll,* i. 1. 6, 11, 2. 3. The part. gen. is used with *λαμβάνω,* i. 5. 7, iv. 5. 35; *ἀπό* with gen., iii. 4. 43. The ptc. *λαβών, having taken, taking,* may often be translated *with* (cf. *ἔχων*), i. 1. 2, 2. 1, iii. 4. 38. Phrase, *τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς αὑτὸν λαβών, getting the army on his side,* ii. 5. 28; for the phrases *πίστεις* or *πιστὰ λαβεῖν, δεξιὰν λαβεῖν,* see the respective nouns. (Cf. Eng. *epileptic, prolepsis.*)

λαμπρότης, ητος, ἡ (λαμπρός, *shining, brilliant*, cf. λάμπομαι), *splendor, brilliancy*, i. 2. 18.

λάμπω, λάμψω, ἔλαμψα, λέλαμπα, mid. λάμπομαι (confined to pres. and impf. act. and pres. mid. in Attic prose), *shine, be bright*; mid., *blaze, be lighted up*, iii. 1. 11, 12.

λανθάνω, λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα, λέλησμαι, *lie hid, be concealed, escape notice*, with supplementary participle which usually contains the leading idea of the clause and is rendered by a finite verb, while the form of λανθάνω is translated *secretly, without attracting attention*, i. 1. 9, 10, iv. 2. 7; abs., or the ptc. supplied from the context, iv. 1. 4, 2. 2, 6. 15; with acc. of person, λαθεῖν αὐτὸν ἀπελθών, *to escape his notice in going away, to go away without attracting his notice*, i. 3. 17; ptc. λαθών as adv., *secretly*, iv. 6. 11.

Λάρισα, also written Λάρισσα, ης, ἡ, *Larisa*, the name applied by Xenophon to a ruined city on the east bank of the Tigris river above the mouth of the Zab and some eighteen miles south of Nineveh. Its ruins are now called Nimrud, and it may be identified with the ancient Kalhu, the Calah of Genesis. The site has been excavated by Layard and others, and the remains of several large palaces and temples have been found. The name Λάρισα (probably meaning *fortress*) was given to several places in the Greek world, notably the acropolis of Argos and an important town in Thessaly, and Xenophon may have used it as the Greek equivalent of some native name. See iii. 4. 7, and note.

λαχών, see λαγχάνω.

λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην (perf. supplied by εἴρηκα, for which see εἴρω, and 2 aor. εἶπον often used instead of ἔλεξα), orig. *count, reckon, tell* (cf. earlier use of *tell* = *count*, and the modern word *teller*), λεγόμενος ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις, *reckoned among the bravest*, i. 6. 1; *say, speak, tell*, abs. or with acc. of thing, i. 3. 2 ff. 4. 13, 5. 11, ii. 2. 3, 5. 3, iii. 1. 45, iv. 1. 23; with acc. of person, *name, tell, mention*, ii. 5. 25; *speak of, tell about, relate, mention*, i. 2. 11, 5. 14, ii. 1. 17, 5. 10, iii. 1. 26, 2. 8, with acc. of pers. and ptc. with ὡς, i. 3. 15; *be spokesman*, ii. 5. 39; *think, have an opinion*, ii. 1. 15, 20. λέγειν is used with dat. of pers., i. 4. 11, ii. 3. 5, or with πρός and acc. of pers., ii. 5. 25, iii. 3. 2; *say in reply*, with πρός and acc. of thing, i. 3. 19. A direct quotation may follow, ii. 1. 22, 4. 2, 5. 39, iii. 1. 15, 3. 2, or a statement in direct form, yet introduced by ὅτι, iv. 5. 34; it is followed by ὅτι and ὡς clauses in ind. discourse, i. 2. 1, 4. 11, 9. 25, ii. 1. 3, 2. 1, 5. 25, iii. 2. 4, iv. 8. 4; by acc. and inf., iii. 1. 26; by ind. quest., i. 6. 11, 8. 27, ii. 1. 10; in the sense of *bid, charge*, with simple inf., i. 3. 8. In the passive λέγω has more frequently the personal construction, the person or thing about which a statement is made being the subject of the passive form of λέγω, from which an inf. depends; so i. 2. 8, 9, 2. 2, 7. 11, 9. 18, ii. 6. 29, iii. 4. 11, iv. 3. 11, etc.; the impersonal construction, with acc. and inf., also occurs, i. 2. 12, 8. 6, iv. 1. 3. Note the phrases ὡς ἐλέγετο, ὡς ἐλέγοντο, *it was said*, i. 4. 5, 10. 18.

λεῖος, ᾱ, ον (akin to Lat. *lēvis, smooth*), *smooth*; of a hill, without trees or projecting rocks, *bare, evenly sloping*, iv. 4. 1.

λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην (akin to Lat. *linquo, leave*; cf. Eng. *ellipse, eclipse*), *leave*, of a position, *abandon, relinquish, evacuate, quit*, i. 2. 21, 10. 13, iv. 2. 7, 12, 15, 6. 9; pass.,

be left, remain, survive, ii. 4. 5, iii. 1. 2, iv. 1. 5; *be left behind*, iv. 5. 12.

λελείψεται, see **λείπω.**

λεξάτω, see **λέγω.**

Λεοντῖνος, ὁ, *a Leontine, citizen of Leontini*, a city situated in the eastern part of Sicily a few miles from the seacoast, between Catania and Syracuse. It is now called Lentini. ii. 6. 16.

λευκοθώρᾱξ, ᾱκος, ὁ, adj. (**λευκός, θώρᾱξ**), *with white corselet*, i. 8. 9. The piece of armor described by this epithet was probably the same as the **θώρᾱξ λινοῦς** of iv. 7. 15. This linen corselet seems to have been made of several thicknesses of linen artificially stiffened.

λευκός, ή, όν (akin to Lat. *lux, light, luceo, shine*, Eng. *light*), *light in color, white, bright*, i. 8. 8.

Λεώνυμος, ου, ὁ, *Leōnymus*, a brave Laconian killed by the Carduchi, iv. 1. 18.

λήγω, λήξω, ἔληξα, *leave off, cease, abate*, iii. 1. 9, iv. 5. 4.

λῄζομαι, ἐλησάμην (**λῄζω**, active, is rare; from **λεῖα**, *booty*), *plunder, pillage, sack*, with acc. of thing, iv. 8. 23.

λήψομαι, etc., see **λαμβάνω.**

λίθινος, η, ον (**λίθος**), *of stone, built of stone*, iii. 4. 7, 9.

λίθος, ου, ὁ (cf. Eng. *lithograph, monolith, aerolite*), *stone, loose stone*, iii. 5. 10, iv. 7. 25, whether small enough to be hurled from the hand or a sling, as in i. 5. 12, iii. 3. 17, iv. 1. 10, or a large boulder, iv. 2. 4, 7. 4 ff; as building material, iii. 4. 10.

λῖμός, οῦ, ὁ, *hunger, famine*, i. 5. 5, ii. 2. 11, 5. 19.

λινοῦς, ῆ, οῦν (contr. for **λίνεος**; from **λίνον**, *linen*, cf. Lat. *līnum, flax*), *made of linen, linen.* **θώρᾱξ λινοῦς,** iv. 7. 15, see **λευκοθώρᾱξ.**

λογίζομαι, λογιοῦμαι, ἐλογισάμην, λελόγισμαι, ἐλογίσθην (√**λεγ**, *put together, collect*, cf. **λέγω** and **συλλέγω**), *count, reckon, calculate*; with inf., *count on, reason, suppose*, ii. 2. 13 (cf. the colloquial Southern use of *reckon*); *consider*, iii. 1. 20.

λόγος, ου, ὁ (**λέγω**), *word, speech, saying*, ii. 5. 26; of a set speech, iii. 2. 7; *debate, discussion*, i. 6. 6, so pl., ii. 5. 27; phrase **εἰς λόγους ἐλθεῖν τινι,** *to have a conference with anybody*, ii. 5. 4, iii. 1. 29; *argument*, ii. 6. 4; *rumor, report*, i. 4. 7; *narrative*, of the books of the Anabasis, ii. 1. 1, iii. 1. 1, etc.

λόγχη, ης, ἡ, *tip* or *point* of a spear, i. 8. 8, iv. 7. 16; the latter passage shows that the word might also be used for the metal shoe or butt of a spear (see **δόρυ**); also, by a metonymy, of the whole weapon, *spear, lance*, ii. 2. 9, iv. 8. 3, 7. The **λόγχη** was the chief weapon of the barbarians.

λοιδορέω, λοιδορήσω (**λοίδορος**, *railing, abusive*), *rail at, abuse, revile, vituperate*, iii. 4. 49.

λοιπός, ή, όν (**λείπω**), *left, left over, remaining, other*, iv. 2. 14, 3. 13; so without nouns, **ὁ λοιπός,** *the other, the survivor*, iv. 1. 24, **οἱ λοιποί,** *those who were left, the rest*, iv. 3. 30, **ἡ λοιπή** (*sc.* **ὁδός**), *the rest of the way*, iii. 4. 46; as subst., **τὸ λοιπόν,** of space, *the remaining distance*, iv. 7. 6; with gen., *the rest, the remainder* of anything, iii. 4. 6, 16; as adv. **τὸ λοιπόν,** *for the rest of the time, afterward, hereafter, in the future*, ii. 2. 5, iii. 2. 8, 38. Phrase, **λοιπόν μοι εἰπεῖν,** *it remains for me to say, I have yet to say*, iii. 2. 29.

Λουσιεύς, έως, ὁ, *Lusian, citizen of Lusi*, now *Sudhena*, a town of northern Arcadia, iv. 2. 21, 7. 11.

λόφος, ου, ὁ, *ridge, crest* in various senses, perhaps orig. *neck* of an

animal; *hill, elevation*, i. 10. 12, 13, iii. 4. 24, 39, iv. 2. 10, 8. 26.

λοχᾱγία, ας, ἡ (λοχᾱγός), *office of captain, captaincy*, i. 4. 15, iii. 1. 30.

λοχᾱγός, οῦ, ὁ (λόχος, ἄγω), *leader of a λόχος, commander of a company, captain*, i. 7. 2, 9. 7, ii. 2. 3, 5. 30, iii. 1. 15, 32, 4. 21, iv. 1. 26, 7. 8.

λόχος, ου, ὁ (akin to λέγω in early sense of *lay*, mid. *lie*), perhaps originally *a band of men that camp together* (the word also has the meaning of *ambush, lying in wait*); in military language, *a division of foot-soldiers, company*, normally comprising 100 men, iii. 4. 21, iv. 8. 15; the number, however, might be much smaller, even 50 being counted a company, acc. to i. 2. 25 (but see the note). The λόχος was divided into two πεντηκοστύες and four ἐνωμοτίαι. Phrase κατὰ λόχους, *by companies*, a technical expression for an arrangement of troops in which companies stood side by side, with the enomoties composing each company one behind another, iii. 4. 21. For the expressions τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους ἄγειν, ποιήσασθαι, iv. 3. 17, 8. 15, and παράγειν τοὺς λόχους, iv. 6. 6, see ὄρθιος and παράγω.

Λῡδία, ας, ἡ (Λῡδός), *Lydia*, an important country of western Asia Minor, part of the satrapy of Cyrus the Younger, i. 2. 5, 9. 7, iii. 5. 5. Lydia was bounded on the north by Mysia, on the east by Phrygia, on the south by Caria, and on the west by Ionia. It corresponds roughly to the northern half of the modern Turkish vilayet of Aidin. The chief river is the Hermus and the capital was Sardis. The country was renowned for its wealth and the luxurious character of its population, and was at the height of its glory under Croesus, who was conquered by Cyrus the Elder in 546 B. C.

Λύδιος, ᾱ, ον (Λῡδός), *of Lydia, Lydian*, i. 5. 6.

Λῡδός, οῦ, ὁ, *a Lydian, native of Lydia*, iii. 1. 31.

Λύκαια, ων, τά, *the Lycaea, i. e.* the Lycaean festival, in honor of Ζεὺς Λυκαῖος, who was worshipped on Mt. Lycaeus in southwestern Arcadia. The festival was of very great antiquity, and in the earliest times human sacrifice seems to have been one of its features. In Xenophon's time athletic contests were held in connection with the festival. These included among other things a race between men in armor. i. 2. 10.

Λυκάονες, ων, οἱ, *Lycaonians, inhabitants of Lycaonia*, iii. 2. 23.

Λυκαονία, ας, ἡ, *Lycaonia*, a country of Asia Minor north of the Taurus range, and lying between the southern parts of Phrygia and Cappadocia, i. 2. 19. It corresponds to the Turkish vilayet of Konieh. The inhabitants refused allegiance to Persia.

Λύκιος, ου, ὁ, *Lycius*, an Athenian, son of Polystratus, made commander of the cavalry organized by the Greeks, in which capacity he proved himself an active and capable officer, iii. 3. 20, iv. 3. 22, 25, 7. 24.

Λύκιος, ου, ὁ, *Lycius*, a Syracusan, i. 10. 14, 15.

λῡμαίνομαι, λῡμανοῦμαι, ἐλῡμηνάμην, λελῦμασμαι, ἐλῡμάνθην (λῦμα, *defilement*, λύμη, *outrage*), *outrage, injure, ruin, spoil, τὴν πρᾶξίν τινι*, i. 3. 16.

λῡπέω, λῡπήσω, etc. (λύπη), *trouble, vex, annoy, molest, grieve*, ii. 3. 23, 5. 14; pass., *be grieved, distressed, sad*, abs. or with dat. of cause, i. 3. 8, iii. 1. 11.

λύπη, ης, ἡ, *pain, distress, sorrow,* iii. 1. 3.

λῡπηρός, ά, όν (λύπη), *causing pain* or *trouble, troublesome, annoying,* ii. 5. 13.

λύω, λύσω, ἔλῡσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην (akin to Lat. *luo, loose,* Eng. *lose, loose*; cf. *analysis, electrolysis*), *loose, release, set free,* iii. 4. 35, iv. 3. 8, 6. 2; hence, by loosing ties of strength, *separate, break down, destroy,* of a bridge, ii. 4. 17, 19; of an obstacle, *remove,* iv. 2. 25, 26; also of non-material objects, *remove, do away with, put an end to,* iii. 1. 21; esp. of oaths or truces, *break, violate, disregard,* ii. 5. 38, 41, iii. 1. 21, 2. 10. By a peculiar poetical use **λύειν** = **τέλη λύειν** or **λῡσιτελεῖν**, *i. e. pay expenses, pay, profit,* **οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λύειν αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι,** *for they did not think it paid for them to march at night,* iii. 4. 36.

λωτοφάγοι, ων, οἱ (λωτός, *lotus,* √**φαγ** in **ἔφαγον**, see **ἐσθίω**), *lotus-eaters,* iii. 2. 25. According to the story told in the Odyssey, ix. 82 ff., Odysseus and his companions in the course of their wanderings visited a country whose inhabitants lived upon the lotus, a delicious fruit that caused all who ate it to forget their homes and kindred. The nucleus of truth in the legend consists in the fact that the lotus fruit grows in profusion on certain parts of the coast of northern Africa, esp. Tripoli, and both in its natural state and when dried forms an important part of the food-supply of the natives. The plant which produces it, *Zizyphus Lotus,* or jujube, is a prickly shrub some three feet in height. The fruit, which is about the size of an olive, is blood-red or saffron-colored, and has a sweet and nutritious pulp.

λωφάω, λωφήσω, ἐλώφησα, λελώφηκα, *slacken, abate, cease,* iv. 7. 6.

λῴων, λῷον, gen. **ονος,** used as comp. of **ἀγαθός**, *preferable, more desirable, more advisable, better*; **λῷόν ἐστι,** with inf., *it is better,* iii. 1. 7.

M

μά, particle of swearing, prob. akin to **μέν** and **μήν**, hence orig. *indeed, truly*; used with acc. of the god sworn by (the acc. really depends on **ὄμνῡμι** understood), and negative in force unless **ναί**, *yes,* precedes; **μὰ τοὺς θεούς**, *no, by the gods,* i. 4. 8. This negative force, however, does not lie in **μά** itself but in the context.

μάθης, **μάθοι,** see **μανθάνω**.

Μαίανδρος, ου, ὁ, *Maeander,* a large river of Asia Minor, rising in the interior of Phrygia, near Celaenae (i. 2. 7). It flows through Phrygia, Caria, and Ionia, and empties into the Latmian gulf. The lower course of the river is extremely tortuous, and its windings have become proverbial. The modern name is Menderé. i. 2. 5 ff.

μαίνομαι, **μανοῦμαι** (rare), **ἐμάνην, μέμηνα** (√**μαν** in **μανίᾱ**, *madness,* whence Eng. *mania*), *be mad, be insane,* ii. 5. 12, iv. 8. 20; inceptive aor., *go mad,* ii. 5. 10.

μακαρίζω, ἐμακάρισα, ἐμακαρίσθην (**μάκαρ**, *happy*), *consider happy, think fortunate,* with acc., iii. 1. 19.

μακαριστός, ή, όν (**μακαρίζω**), *regarded as fortunate, enviable* (**αὐτὸν**) **πολλοῖς μακαριστὸν ἐποίησεν,** *he made him enviable in the eyes of many* (Dakyns), i. 9. 6.

μακρός, ά, όν (cf. Eng. *macron, macrocosm*), *long,* of objects or distances, i. 5. 7, ii. 2. 12, iv. 3. 4; **μακρὰν** (*sc.* **ὁδόν**), acc. of extent, *a long distance,* iii. 4. 17; similarly the comp., **μακροτέρᾱν,** ii. 2. 11.

Neuter as adv. *μακρόν*, *a long way*, *μακρὸν ἦν λαβεῖν*, *it was too far to take*, etc., iii. 4. 42; *μακρότερον*, *farther*, iii. 4. 16.

Μάκρωνες, *ωνος*, *οἱ*, *Macrōnes*, a powerful tribe of the Euxine coast district, encountered by the Greeks among the hills south of Trapezus, iv. 7. 27, 8. 1 ff. Their country corresponds in part to the modern district of Janik.

μάλα, adv. sometimes elided *μάλ'* (perhaps akin to Lat. *melior*, *better*, *multus*, *much*), *very*, *quite*, *much*, *in a high degree*, freq. with adjs. and advs., iii. 3. 6, 4. 15, iv. 1. 23, sometimes separated from the word it modifies, i. 5. 8, iii. 1. 29, iv. 6. 16; with a subst., *νῦν οὖν μάλα σοι καιρός ἐστιν*, *so now you have just the opportunity*, iv. 6. 15; *αὐτίκα μάλα*, *immediately*, *at once*, iii. 5. 11; *οὐ μάλα*, *not much*, used by litotes for *not at all*, ii. 6. 15. Comp. *μᾶλλον*, *in a greater degree*, *more*, *rather*, *better*, i. 1. 4, 5, 7. 19, 9. 5, ii. 1. 18, 3. 13, 5. 13, 6. 10, iii. 1. 23; *rather than*, followed by inf. clause, i. 1. 8; so even after a foregoing comp., iv. 6. 11; *rather*, abs., iii. 1. 35; *μᾶλλόν τι*, *rather more*, *a little more*, iv. 8. 26; *οὐδὲν μᾶλλον*, *not a bit more* (than before), iii. 3. 11, 13. Superl. *μάλιστα*, *in the highest degree*, *most*, *especially*, i. 9. 23, 29, ii. 2. 2, 5. 13, iii. 2. 5; with gen., i. 6. 5, 9. 22; *best*, *most easily*, ii. 5. 6; *for the most part*, *mainly*, iv. 8. 24. In various phrases, *ὡς μάλιστα*, *ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο*, *ᾗ δυνατὸν μάλιστα*, *ὡς οἷόν τε μάλιστα*, all with the sense of *as much* (*well*, etc.) *as possible*, i. 1. 6, 3. 15, ii. 4. 24, iv. 2. 2; *ἄρχεσθαι ἐπίσταμαι ὥς τις καὶ ἄλλος μάλιστα ἀνθρώπων*, *I know how to submit to authority as well as anybody*, i. 3. 15.

μανέντες, see *μαίνομαι*.

μανθάνω, *μαθήσομαι*, *ἔμαθον*, *μεμάθηκα*, *learn*, *find out*, *ascertain*, with acc., ii. 5. 37; with *ὅτι* clause, ii. 5. 16; with ind. quest., iv. 8. 5; with inf., i. 9. 14, iii. 2. 25. (Cf. *mathematics*, *polymath*.)

μαντεῖᾱ, *ᾱς*, *ἡ* (*μάντις*), *prophecy*, *response from an oracle*, iii. 1. 7. (Cf. *necromancy*, *chiromancy*.)

μάντις, *εως*, *ὁ* (prob. from *√μαν*, cf. *μαίνομαι*), orig. *one possessed by a divine frenzy*, *one inspired*, hence *one who reveals the will of the gods*, *a prophet*, *seer*, esp. a *soothsayer* or interpreter of omens, i. 7. 18, iv. 3. 17, 5. 4. Omens were taken from various chance happenings, such as the changes of the weather, the flight of birds (see *οἰωνός*), etc., but also from the behavior of the animals sacrificed and the appearance of their vitals. Observations made from the vitals were of special importance to the army in the field, because by this method the attitude of the gods to the worshipper could be ascertained at will without waiting for some special portent. (See under *ἱερός* and *σφάγια*.) Hence it became customary for skilled soothsayers to accompany every important military expedition in order to keep the commanders advised as to favorable and unfavorable signs and to offer special sacrifices in times of danger. (Hence the name of the insect *mantis*, so called because of the praying position of its forelegs.)

Μάρδοι, *ων*, *οἱ*, *Mardi*, a tribe inhabiting southern Armenia, iv. 3. 4. The word is thought by some to be an adj., *manly* (Pers. *mard*, *man*), rather than a noun.

μάρσιπος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *bag*, *sack*, *pouch*, iv. 3. 11. (Hence Lat. *marsupium*, Eng. *marsupial*.)

Μαρσύᾱς, *ου*, *ὁ*, (1) *Marsyas*, regarded as a divinity by the Phrygians, was called a silenus or satyr by the Greeks and was said to be the son of Hyagnis or Olympus.

The legend relates that Athena invented the flute, but threw it away because the use of it distorted her face. Marsyas picked up the rejected instrument and attained such skill in playing it that he ventured to challenge Apollo, the inventor of the cithara, to a musical contest. The Muses, who acted as judges, declared Apollo the victor, and he flayed the conquered Marsyas and hung his skin in a cavern at Celaenae whence flows the Marsyas river (i. 2. 8). According to another legend, Midas was judge in the trial of musical skill, and upon his declaring in favor of Marsyas, Apollo punished him for his stupidity by fastening asses' ears upon his head. (See **Mídās.**) Fig. 32 shows Marsyas bound to a tree to be flayed, as represented in a statue at Florence. (2) *Marsyas*, a small river of Phrygia, rising in Celaenae and emptying into the Maeander near that city, i. 2. 8.

Fig. 32.

μαρτυρέω, *μαρτυρήσω*, etc. (*μάρτυς*, *witness*, whence Eng. *martyr*), *bear witness, testify, give evidence*, with dat. of person for whom, iii. 3. 12.

μαρτύριον, *ου, τό* (*μάρτυς*, *witness*), *testimony, evidence, proof*, iii. 2. 13.

Μάσκᾱς, *ā* (Doric gen.), *Mascas*, a river of Mesopotamia flowing around the city of Corsote, i. 5. 4. The Mascas was in reality only a large canal which forms the island of Werdi.

μαστεύω, poetic word, *seek, search for*; with inf., *seek, strive* to do anything, iii. 1. 43.

μαστῑγόω, *μαστῑγώσω*, *ἐμαστῑ́γωσα*, *ἐμαστῑγώθην* (*μάστιξ*), *strike with a whip, whip, flog, chastise*, iv. 6. 15.

μάστιξ, *ῑγος, ἡ*, *whip*; *ὑπὸ μαστῑ́γων*, *under the lash*, iii. 4. 25.

μαστός, *οῦ, ὁ*, *breast, nipple*, pl., i. 4. 17, iv. 3. 6; *a breast-shaped hill, mamelon, hillock*, iv. 2. 6, 14. (Cf. Eng. *mastodon, mastoid.*)

μάχαιρα, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*μάχομαι*), *short sword, sabre, cutlass*, used for a cutting, not a thrusting stroke, distinguished from the *ξίφος* (*q. v.*) by having only one edge, which was slightly curved, i. 8. 7, iv. 6. 26. Fig. 33 shows a *μάχαιρα* with its scabbard as represented on a Greek vase. See also Fig. 22 under *θώρᾱξ*.

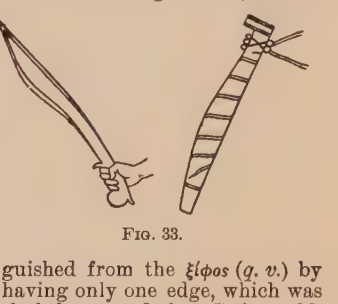


Fig. 33.

μαχαίριον, *ου, τό* (dimin. of *μάχαιρα*), a *knife* with the general shape of the *μάχαιρα*, *hunting-knife*, perhaps somewhat like the Western *bowie-knife*, iv. 7. 16.

μάχη, *ης, ἡ* (*μάχομαι*), *fight, battle, engagement, strife*, i. 2. 9, 15, 5. 16, 7. 12, ii. 2. 21, 3. 5, 6. 5, iii. 2. 20; *place of battle, battle-field*, ii. 2. 6. (Cf. *logomachy.*)

μάχομαι, *μαχοῦμαι*, *ἐμαχεσάμην*, *μεμάχημαι*, *fight, strive, give battle, go*

into battle, abs. or with dat., very freq., i. 5. 9, 7. 1, 9, 17, 10. 10, ii. 1. 4, 4. 6, iii. 2. 27, 4. 33, iv. 1. 19, 3. 2; with *πρός* and accs. of person and thing, iv. 5. 12; with *περί* and gen., *strive for, fight for*, ii. 1. 12; *quarrel, wrangle, contend*, with dat. and *περί* with gen., iv. 6. 11.

μέ, μοί, μοῦ, see *ἐγώ*.

μεγαλοπρεπῶς, adv. (*μέγας, πρέπω*), *splendidly, lavishly, magnificently, in princely style*, i. 4. 17.

μεγάλως, adv. (*μέγας*), *greatly, much*; *μεγάλως ἐξαπατηθῆναι, to be grossly deceived, be fooled to the top of one's bent*, iii. 2. 22.

Μεγαρεύς, *έως, ὁ, Megarian, inhabitant of Megara*, i. 2. 3, 4. 7. Megara was the chief city of Megaris, a small state about 140 square miles in extent, lying between Attica on the east and the territory of Corinth on the west, and between the Corinthian gulf and a part of Boeotia on the north and the Saronic gulf on the south. As the country was mountainous and ill-suited for agriculture, the chief wealth of the state was derived from the commerce which Megara and its port, Nisaea, carried on with other marts of the Greek world. The island of Salamis was for a long time held by the Megarians, who were finally dislodged by the Athenians early in the sixth century B. C. The power of Megara declined after this, but it was able to give important assistance to Sparta against Athens in the Peloponnesian war.

μέγας, *μεγάλη, μέγα*, comp. *μείζων* (for *μεγίων*), superl. *μέγιστος* (related to Lat. *magnus, magis*, Eng. *much*, Scotch *muckle* or *mickle*), *large, great* in the broadest sense; in a physical sense, *large, great, tall* (of stature), *deep* (of a pit), *long, extensive*, i. 2. 6, 7, 4. 9, 5. 2, 10, 9. 7, ii. 4. 13, iii. 2. 25, 4. 17, iv. 5. 6; of a shout, *loud*, iv. 7. 23; *powerful*, of persons, ii. 5. 10, 14; *μέγας βασιλεύς, the great king*, epithet of the king of Persia, i. 2. 8, 7. 13, ii. 3. 17, 4. 3; of non-material things, *great, high, significant, important, serious, weighty*, i. 2. 4, 3. 19, 4. 17, 9. 30, ii. 5. 8, 38, iii. 2. 29, iv. 7. 24; of adornment, *fine*, i. 9. 23; *ὄνομα μέγα, a great name, fame*, ii. 6. 17; *τὰ μεγάλα, affairs of state*, ii. 6. 16; *τὸ μέγιστον, the most important thing, the chief thing*, ii. 5. 23. Neuter as adv., *μέγα* = *μεγάλως, greatly, very much*, iii. 1. 38; *οἱ μέγιστον δυνάμενοι, the most powerful*, ii. 6. 21. Other phrases, *πρῶτον καὶ μέγιστον, first and foremost*, ii. 5. 7; *μεγάλα βλάψαι* (cogn. acc.), *do great damage*, iii. 3. 14; *μεγάλα ἦν τὰ χρησίμους ποιοῦντα, weighty were the causes that made them effective*, ii. 6. 14; *τὰ μεγάλα νικᾶν τοὺς φίλους εὖ ποιοῦντα, to surpass his friends in the greatness of his benefits*, i. 9. 24; *μέγα φρονεῖν*, see *φρονέω*.

Μεγαφέρνης, *ους, ὁ, Megaphernes*, a Persian noble put to death by Cyrus on a charge of treachery, i. 2. 20.

μέγεθος, *ους, τό* (*μέγας*), *greatness, size*, ii. 3. 15; of a river, *width* [iv. 1. 2].

μέγιστος, see *μέγας*.

μεθ', by elision and euphonic change for *μετά*.

μεθίστημι (*ἵστημι*), *place elsewhere, remove, set aside*; 2 aor. intr., *go apart, withdraw, retire*, ii. 3. 21; mid., *remove from oneself, cause to withdraw*, ii. 3. 8.

Μεθυδριεύς, *έως, ὁ, Methydrian, a native of Methydrium*, a small town in the heart of Arcadia, some twenty miles north of Megalopolis, iv. 1. 27, 6. 20, 7. 9, 12. The inhabitants of Methydrium were transferred to Megalopolis

when the latter city was founded in 370 B. C.

μεθύω (related to Eng. *mead*, cf. *amethyst*), *be drunken, be intoxicated*, iv. 8. 20.

μείζων, see *μέγας*.

μεῖναι, μείναντες, etc., see *μένω*.

μειράκιον, *ου, τό* (dim. of *μεῖραξ*, *young girl*), *youth, half-grown boy, lad*, esp. from about 14 to 20 years old, *mere stripling*, ii. 6. 16, 28.

μείων, μεῖον, gen. *μείονος* (akin to Lat. *minuo, lessen*), used as comp. of *μῑκρός* and *ὀλίγος*, *less* in size, extent, power, or number, *smaller, fewer, weaker*, i. 9. 10, ii. 6. 6, iv. 5. 36; frequent in stating distances, *less than*, with gen. or with *ἤ*, iii. 1. 2, 4. 34, iv. 4. 1; *μεῖον ἔχειν, have the worst of it, be discomfited*, i. 10. 8, iii. 2. 17, 4. 18.

μελανίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*μέλᾱς*), *blackness*, i. 8. 8.

μέλᾱς, μέλαινα, μέλαν (cf. Eng. *Melanesia, melancholy, calomel*), *black, dark* in color, iv. 5. 13, 15.

μέλει, μελήσει, ἐμέλησε, μεμέληκε (chiefly poetic in personal forms *μέλω*, etc.), *it is a care to, it concerns*, with dat. and obj. clause with fut. ind. or with opt., i. 4. 16, 8. 13. Such passages are often best translated by personal constructions, as *I will see to it that*, etc.

μελετάω, μελετήσω, ἐμελέτησα, μεμελέτηκα, μεμελέτημαι (*μέλει*), *practise, exercise oneself in*, with inf., iii. 4. 17, iv. 6. 14.

μελετηρός, ά, όν (*μελετάω*), *assiduous in practising, diligent in, well-trained in*, with gen., i. 9. 5.

μελίνη, ης, ἡ, *millet*, a kind of grass used chiefly for hay in America; but the seeds of certain larger species are ground for bread in the Orient, i. 2. 22, 5. 10. It is probable, however, that the millet mentioned by Xenophon is really the durra or Turkish millet, a variety of sorghum. The plural is used by metonymy for millet-fields, ii. 4. 13.

μέλλω, μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα, *be about* to do anything, *be on the point of*, hence *expect*, and with an idea of purpose, *intend*; also often to be rendered *be going to*, or by the phrase *is to* (*are to, were to*, etc.), with inf. With this verb the pres., fut., and rarely the aor. (not in Anab.) infinitives are used, and in the Anab. Xen. prefers the present in cases where we translate *be on the point of, expect, intend*, while in cases where we render *it may be expected that, is to* with inf., the fut. is used. This distinction, however, is not thoroughgoing; cf. i. 8. 1, 9. 28, ii. 1. 3, 4. 24, 6. 10, iii. 1. 2, 8, 3. 16, 4. 37, 5. 17, iv. 5. 1, 7. 16. With acc. (probably obj. of an inf. to be supplied), *intend, purpose*, ii. 5. 5. From the idea of a continued but ineffective intention is derived the meaning *delay*, iii. 1. 46; so in pass. § 47.

μεμνῆο, μεμνήσεσθαι, etc., see *μιμνήσκω*.

μέμφομαι, μέμψομαι, ἐμεμψάμην and (rare in Attic prose) *ἐμέμφθην*, *blame, find fault with*, with acc., ii. 6. 30.

μέν, postpositive particle, orig. intensive, a weaker form of *μήν*, the meaning of which it closely approaches in some passages, *really, indeed, in fact*, i. 7. 6, esp. frequent with pers. pronouns, and often in conjunction with *γέ* or *οὖν*, i. 9. 28, ii. 4. 7, 5. 15, 25, iii. 1. 19. *οὐ μὲν δή, but in fact not, yet really not*, i. 9. 13, ii. 2. 3, 4. 6, iii. 2. 14. *μέν*, often in connection with *δή* or *οὖν*, is used to sum up what has gone before, i. 9. 1, 10. 18, 19, ii. 1. 20, iii. 1. 3, 8, 35, 2. 8, 13, iv. 3. 8; in these cases *μέν*, or the combinations *μὲν οὖν*, *μὲν δή* are perhaps best rendered by *so* with a stress of the voice

upon the word preceding μέν. The intensive force of μέν is felt as concessive when an adversative clause follows, hence the very frequent combination μὲν . . . δέ may sometimes be rendered *indeed . . . but, it is true that . . . but*; much more frequently, however, μέν serves only to indicate that a clause containing something slightly opposed to what has gone before, or merely continuing the narrative, is to follow, and then it should be left untranslated, a slight emphasis on the word preceding it being a sufficient rendering of its force. A real opposition between μέν and δέ clauses is felt in cases like i. 3. 1, 9. 6, ii. 1. 9, iii. 2. 2, iv. 4. 3, in some of which places ὅμως is used with δέ to strengthen the adversative relation; the opposition is also strengthened by αὖ, *q. v.* Cases where the clauses introduced by μέν and δέ are not in an adversative relation (cf. i. 1. 1, and see δέ) are esp. frequent in the phrase ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ, *the one . . . the other*, and others like it, i. 1. 7, 8. 20, etc. Note the use of μέν and δέ (sometimes repeated) in anaphora, when the same word is used several times, i. 3. 16, 9. 10, ii. 6. 8, iii. 1. 3, iv. 3. 8, 21, 23. Instead of δέ, μέν may be followed by μέντοι, ἀλλά, ἔπειτα (see these words). In some instances the opposing δέ clause indicated by μέν is omitted, as being sufficiently indicated by the context, or it may be forgotten by the writer; examples of this are especially common after πρῶτον μέν; cf. i. 2. 1, 4. 7, 9. 7, 14, ii. 2. 17, 5. 7, iii. 1. 13, 5. 13, iv. 5. 9, 8. 10. Conversely μέν itself is sometimes omitted when a following δέ clause might seem to require it, as i. 5. 9, 7. 5.

μέντοι, adv. and conj. (μέν, τοί), sometimes intensive, *really, in fact, moreover*, i. 9. 6, 14, 29, ii. 4. 23, iv. 6. 16; more frequently adversative, *however, still, nevertheless, but*, i. 4. 8, 8. 20, 9. 14, ii. 3. 22, iii. 1. 7, 5. 16, iv. 1. 9, 2. 4; so frequently instead of δέ, answering to μέν, i. 3. 9, ii. 1. 13, 2. 16, 4. 24, iii. 1. 10, 2. 8.

μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα (akin to Lat. *maneo, remain*), *remain, stay, wait*, abs., with acc. of time, or adverbial phrases, i. 2. 9, 3. 11, 5. 4, 13, 8. 14, ii. 1. 21 ff., 4. 3, 5. 27, iii. 1. 7, iv. 2. 5, 3. 28; *remain inactive*, iii. 3. 12; of an agreement, *remain in force, hold good, last*, ii. 3. 24. Trans., with acc., *wait for*, iv. 4. 20.

Μένων, ωνος, ὁ, *Menon*, a Thessalian adventurer, a *protégé* of Aristippus (ii. 6. 28), by whom he was put in command of the mercenary force collected for Cyrus in Thessaly. He joined Cyrus at Colossae with these troops (i. 2. 6), accompanied Epyaxa on her return to Cilicia (i. 2. 20), and gained the favor of Cyrus by leading his troops across the Euphrates before the other Greeks (i. 4. 13–17). He was engaged in a serious quarrel with Clearchus (i. 5. 11 ff.). At Cunaxa he commanded the left wing of the Greek army (i. 7. 1, 8. 4). On account of his friendly relations with Ariaeus (ii. 1. 5, 2. 1), he was suspected of harboring treacherous designs against the Greeks (ii. 5. 28). He was, however, captured by Tissaphernes, along with the other generals, and put to death by torture (ii. 5. 31, 6. 29). His character is severely criticized by Xenophon (ii. 6. 21–29). Menon figures in the dialogue of Plato called by his name.

μέρος, ους, τό, *part, share, portion*, of military forces, *detachment*, i. 6. 2, iv. 6. 24; μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας, *a specimen of their dis-*

cipline, something of their discipline, i. 5. 8; *ἐν τῷ μέρει, in regular order*, iii. 4. 23. (Cf. Eng. *isomeric*.)

μεσημβρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (*μέσος, ἡμέρᾱ*), *midday, noon*; hence, *south*, because the sun is in the south at noon, i. 7. 6, iii. 5. 15.

μέσος, η, ον (related to Lat. *medius*, Eng. *middle*; cf. Eng. *mesozoic*), *between other things, in the middle, middle, τὸ μέσον στῖφος, the throng at the centre*, i. 8. 13; more frequently in pred. pos., of the middle part of anything, *διὰ μέσου τοῦ παραδείσου, through the middle of the park*, i. 2. 7, and similarly, i. 2. 17, 7. 14, ii. 1. 11; in pl. *ἐν μέσοις τοῖς Ἕλλησι, among the Greeks*, iv. 8. 8. Often as subst., *τὸ μέσον, the middle*, with gen. of the whole, also sometimes without the art., i. 2. 23, 5. 15, iii. 1. 2, 46, 2. 1, 4. 43; esp. frequent of *the centre* of an army, i. 2. 15, 8. 12, 13, 21 ff., iv. 8. 17; *μέσον ἡμέρᾱς = μεσημβρίᾱ, noon*, i. 8. 8, iv. 4. 1. *μέσον*, or *τὸ μέσον, the space between, the intervening space*, with gen., i. 4. 4, 5. 14, 7. 6, ii. 2. 3, 4. 17, 21, iii. 4. 20, cf. ii. 4. 22. Phrases *μέσαι νύκτες, midnight* (see *νύξ*), i. 7. 1, ii. 2. 8, iii. 1. 33; *ἐν μέσῳ κεῖται ἆθλα, are offered as prizes*, iii. 1. 21, *i. e.* are exposed to the view of the contestants.

Μέσπιλα, ᾱς, ἡ (prob. from *mashpil, desolate*), *Mespila*, a name applied by Xen. (iii. 4. 10) to the ruins of Nineveh, or, more strictly speaking, to those parts of the ancient city which lay on the mounds of Kuyunjik and Nebi-Yunus, along the Tigris river, opposite the modern city of Mosul. Excavations by Layard and others revealed magnificent architectural remains, including palaces of Sennacherib, Esar-haddon, and Assur-bani-pal, with extensive libraries of tablets with cuneiform inscriptions. The city reached the height of its glory under Sennacherib (705–681 B. C.). It was captured by the Medes and Babylonians shortly before 600 B. C., and again by Cyrus when he overthrew the Median empire in 549 B. C. It is the latter event to which Xen. alludes in iii. 4. 12.

μεστός, ή, όν, *full, filled with*, with gen., i. 4. 9, 10. 18, iii. 5. 1, iv. 4. 7; also transferred to things not material, *full of, abounding in*, with gen., ii. 5. 9.

μετά, also by elision and euphonic change *μετ', μεθ'*, prep. with gen. and acc. With gen., *with, along with, together with, in company with*, of persons and things, i. 2. 20, 24, 3. 4, 5, ii. 1. 3, 4. 24, 5. 28, iv. 3. 25; in military language, *in command of*, i. 4. 12, 7. 10, 10. 1, ii. 2. 7, iv. 3. 34; denoting manner, *μετὰ ἀδικίᾱς, through injustice*, ii. 6. 18. (Xen., contrary to the usage of Attic prose writers, uses *σύν* with dat. far more frequently than *μετά* with gen.)

With acc., *after, next, following*, of place, i. 8. 4; of time, i. 3. 15, 16, 7. 2, 13, 9. 1, ii. 1. 11, 4. 15, 6. 29, iv. 8. 12; so with *τοῦτο, after this*, iv. 6. 4, 7. 8, and *ταῦτα*, i. 3. 9, 4. 9, 6. 7, ii. 2. 3, 3. 29, etc. *μεθ' ἡμέρᾱν, after daybreak, i. e. by day*, iv. 6. 12. In composition *μετά* sometimes denotes participation or sharing, but more often it indicates a change resulting from the action of the verb.

μεταγιγνώσκω (*γιγνώσκω*), *change one's mind*, ii. 6. 3.

μεταδίδωμι (*δίδωμι*), *give part of, share with*, with dat. of pers. and acc. of thing given, or gen. of the whole from which the thing given is taken, iii. 3. 1, iv. 5. 5, 6.

μεταμέλει (*μέλει*), lit., *it is a care afterward*, hence *it causes one regret*, impers. with dat., but trans-

lated by personal expressions such as *I regret, repent, am sorry*, i. 6. 7, ii. 6. 9.

μεταξύ (*μετά*), adv. *in between, in the midst*, **μεταξὺ ὑπολαβών**, *interrupting*, iii. 1. 27; as prep., *between*, with gen., iii. 1. 27, 4. 37.

μετάπεμπτος, ον (verbal of **μεταπέμπω**), *summoned, sent for*, with **ὑπό** and gen., i. 4. 3.

μεταπέμπω (**πέμπω**), *send for*; mid., *send for* in one's interest, or to come to oneself, *summon*, of persons, i. 1. 2, 26, 3. 8, 10, 4. 11, iii. 1. 4; of ships, i. 4. 5.

μέτειμι (**εἰμί**), only impersonal in prose, with dat. of pers. and gen. of thing, **οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετείη**, *we had no share*, iii. 1. 20.

μετέωρος, ον (**ἀείρω**, *lift*, whence **αἴρω**, *q. v.*), *lifted on high, elevated*, in prolepsis **μετεώρους ἐξεκόμισαν**, *they lifted them up and brought them out*, i. 5. 8. (Cf. Eng. *meteor*.)

μετρέω, ἐμέτρησα, ἐμετρήθην (**μέτρον**), *measure*, iv. 5. 6.

μετρίως, adv. (**μέτριος**, *moderate*, from **μέτρον**), *moderately, in measured terms*, ii. 3. 20.

μέτρον, ου, τό (akin to Lat. *metior, measure*; cf. Eng. *metre, perimeter, symmetry*), *measure*, iii. 2. 21.

μέχρι, adv., *up to, as far as*; as prep. with gen., *up to, as far as, to*, of place, i. 7. 15, 10. 11, [ii. 2. 6], iv. 5. 36, 7. 15; **μέχρι οὗ**, *up to the point where, to where*, i. 7. 6. As conj., *until*, with **ἄν** and subj., i. 4. 13, ii. 3. 7, 24; with ind., ii. 6. 5, iii. 4. 8, iv. 2. 4, 4. 3.

μή, negative adverb, *not*; not, like **οὐ**, simply denying, but "presenting the negation as *willed* (*desired, aimed at*, etc.), or as part of an *imagined* or *assumed case*." Hence its use in commands, conditions, etc., as described below. In independent sentences, expressing prohibitions with pres. imperative or aor. subj., i. 3. 3, ii. 1. 12, iii. 2. 17; with hortatory subj., iii. 1. 46; coupled with **οὐ**, or a compound of **οὐ**, in strong denial of a future action, ii. 2. 12, iv. 8. 13. In dependent sentences, as neg. of purpose or obj. clause, i. 4. 18, iii. 1. 18, 47, and often introducing a purpose clause; **μή** = **ἵνα μή**, *that not, lest*, iv. 4. 22; in clauses of fearing, *that, lest*, i. 3. 10, 17, iii. 2. 25, iv. 2. 13; **μὴ οὐ**, *that not*, i. 7. 7, ii. 3. 11, iii. 5. 3. In conditions both of the ordinary and the relative type, i. 5. 9, ii. 1. 4, iv. 2. 17; so with a ptc. expressing cond., iv. 4. 15, ii. 3. 5, in the latter of which cases **μή** may be translated *without*; for **εἰ μή, εἰ δὲ μή**, see **εἰ**. **μή** is the regular negative of the inf. except in ind. disc., i. 1. 10, 5. 14, ii. 6. 18, etc.; it is used in indirect quotation, ii. 3. 13, but there it is the ind. form of a question in which **μή** was used (see note on the passage, and Goodell's Grammar, 488 a). It is used pleonastically with verbs containing negative ideas, as of *hindering*, etc., i. 3. 2, iii. 5. 11; **μὴ οὐ** appears when such a verb is itself negatived or is in a question implying a negative, ii. 3. 11, iii. 1. 13. The compounds of **μή** are used in the same manner as the simple **μή**.

μηδαμῶς, adv. (cf. **μηδέ**), *not at all, by no means, on no account*, i. 9. 7.

μηδέ, adv. and conj. (**μή, δέ**), *and not, but not, nor*, ii. 4. 1, 5. 29, iii. 2. 17; *not even*, i. 3. 14, iii. 2. 21, 5. 7.

Μῆδεια, ᾱς, ἡ, *Medēa*, wife of Astyages, the last king of the Medes; said to have taken refuge in Mespila when the Persians overthrew the Median kingdom, iii. 4. 11.

μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν (**μηδέ, εἷς**), *not one, nobody*, i. 3. 15, ii. 3. 3; neut., *μηδέν, nothing*, i. 9. 8, 13, ii. 4. 1.

μηδέποτε, adv. (**μηδέ, ποτέ**), *never*, iii. 2. 3, iv. 5. 13.

Μηδίᾱ, *ᾱs, ἡ* (old Persian *Mada*), *Media*, a name applied by Xenophon (ii. 4. 27, iii. 5. 15) to what is properly called Assyria, the country lying along the Tigris above Babylonia. The confusion is probably due to the conquest of Assyria by the Medes. Media proper is bounded on the north by Armenia and the Caspian Sea, on the east by Hyrcania and Parthia, on the south by Persis and Susiana, and on the west by Assyria. Its most important city is Ecbatana (Hamadân). Media corresponds to the modern Persian provinces of Azerbijan, Gilan and Mazandaran (along the Caspian), Irak-Adjemi, and some parts of Kurdistan. It includes the important cities of Teheran and Tabriz. The climate is damp and hot in the lowlands along the Caspian Sea, and arid in most of the rest of the country, which is composed mainly of mountains and table-lands. The Median empire came to the highest pitch of its power under Cyaxares (625–585 B. C.), and was overthrown by Cyrus the Great in 550.

Μηδίᾱs τεῖχος, *τό, the Median wall*, i. 7. 15, ii. 4. 12. The exact position of this fortification is uncertain, as no existing ruins have been identified with it. Beginning at a large canal leading off from the Euphrates river at a point below the city of Pylae, it appears to have extended northeast to the Tigris at a point above Opis. It thus protected the lower part of Mesopotamia against the incursions of the Medes from the north, hence its name.

Μῆδοι, *ων, οἱ, Medes, inhabitants of Media*, iii. 2. 25, 4. 7 ff.

μηκέτι, adv. (*μή, ἔτι, κ* inserted by false analogy with *οὐκέτι*), *no longer, no more, not again*, i. 2. 27, 4. 16, 6. 9.

μῆκος, *ους, τό* (*√μακ* in *μακρός*), *length*, ii. 4. 12; pl., i. 5. 9.

μήν, intensive postpositive particle (see *μέν*), *truly, indeed, really*, so in the formula *ἦ μήν*, for which see *ἦ*; it also assumes an adversative force, *however*, as in *οὐ μὴν ἔφυγόν γε, they did not, however, flee*, i. 10. 3; *καὶ μήν, yes, but—, and yet*, i. 7. 5, iii. 1. 17; *ἀλλὰ μήν*, sometimes with *γε* following, formula of transition and affirmation, *but now, but really*, i. 9. 18, ii. 5. 12, 14, iii. 2. 16, 4. 40; *οὐδὲ μήν, and certainly not*, ii. 4. 20; *γε μήν*, calling attention to a new subject *εἴς γε μὴν δικαιοσύνην, now with regard to justice* (with emphasis on the last word), i. 9. 16, cf. § 20.

μήν, *μηνός, ὁ* (akin to Lat. *mensis, month*, Eng. *moon*), *month*, i. 1. 10, 2. 12, 3. 21, 9. 17. The Greek months began with the new moon and were alternately of 29 and 30 days. In order to correct the discrepancy with the solar year, an intercalary month was added at stated times.

μηνύω, *μηνύσω*, etc., *reveal, make known, inform against*, ii. 2. 20.

μήποτε, adv. (*μή, ποτέ*), *never*, i. 1. 4, 6. 2, iii. 1. 35.

μήπω, adv. (*μή, πώ*), *not yet*, iii. 2. 24.

μήτε, neg. conj. (*μή, τέ*), *and not*, corresponding to *μή* as *οὔτε* to *οὐ*; *μήτε . . . μήτε, neither . . . nor*, i. 3. 4, iv. 4. 6; *μήτε . . . τε, not only not . . . but also*, where the *τε* clause generally contains the more important fact, ii. 2. 8, iii. 1. 30, 2. 23.

μήτηρ, *μητρός, ἡ* (akin to Lat. *mater*, Eng. *mother*), *mother*, i. 1. 3, 4, ii. 4. 27.

μηχανάομαι, *μηχανήσομαι, ἐμηχανησάμην, μεμηχάνημαι* (*μηχανή*), *devise, contrive, find means to accomplish*, esp. by cunning; *μηχανᾶταί τι, hits upon a clever plan*, iv. 7. 10; with articular inf., ii. 6. 27.

μηχανή, ῆς, ἡ (old poetic word *μῆχος*, *expedient*, *remedy*, akin to Eng. *may*, *might*; from *μηχανή* is derived Eng. *mechanic*; from the Doric form *μᾱχανά*, Lat. *māchina*, whence Eng. *machine*), *device*, *contrivance*, *means*, hence *machine*; *πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ*, *by all manner of means*, iv. 5. 16.

μία, see **εἷς**.

Μίδας, ου, ὁ, *Midas*, a mythical king of Phrygia, son of Gordias and the goddess Cybele. He captured Silenus (the satyr mentioned in i. 2. 13) by putting wine into the spring from which he drank, and learned from him all manner of wisdom. His kind treatment of Silenus won from Dionysus the promise to grant any wish he might ask. He requested that all he touched might be changed into gold, and in consequence came near starving to death; Dionysus, however, relieved him of the fatal gift. Another story about Midas relates that he acted as judge in a musical contest between Apollo and Pan or Marsyas, and, deciding against Apollo, was given the ears of an ass by the offended deity.

Μιθραδάτης, ου, ὁ, *Mithradātes*, satrap of Lycaonia and Cappadocia, formerly a trusted friend of Cyrus (ii. 5. 35, iii. 3. 2), afterward joined interests with Tissaphernes (iii. 3. 4), and annoyed the Greeks on their homeward march (iii. 4. 2 ff.).

μῑκρός, ά, όν (cf. Eng. *microscope*, *microcosm*), *small*, *little*, opp. to *μέγας*; of size or quantity, ii. 4. 13, iii. 2. 21; of power and importance, *small*, *weak*, iii. 2. 10; as subst., *μῑκρόν*, *a little*, iii. 1. 11; also of distance, *a little way*, ii. 1. 6, iv. 7. 7; *μῑκρὸν ἐξέφυγε*, *he narrowly escaped*, i. 3. 2.

Μῑλήσιος, ᾱ, ον (*Μίλητος*), *of Miletus*, *Milesian*; as subst., *οἱ* **Μῑλήσιοι**, *the Milesians*, i. 1. 11, 9. 9; *ἡ* **Μῑλησίᾱ**, *the Milesian woman*, i. 10. 3.

Μίλητος, ου, ἡ, *Milētus*, a very ancient city of Asia Minor, situated on the Latmian Gulf some miles south of the mouth of the Maeander, i. 1. 6, 2. 2, 4. 2. It seems to have been founded by the Carians, but appears in the historical period as a colony of the Ionians, under whom it became a wealthy and prosperous trading city, sending out many colonies, esp. to the shores of the Euxine. It was captured by the Persians in 494 B. C., and by Alexander in 334. It was visited by the Apostle Paul (Acts xx. 15).

Μιλτοκύθης, ου, ὁ, *Miltocythes*, a Thracian in command of cavalry, deserts to the king, ii. 2. 7.

μῑμέομαι, μῑμήσομαι, ἐμῑμησάμην, μεμῖμημαι, ἐμῑμήθην (pass.), *imitate*, *take as example*, iii. 1. 36. (Cf. Eng. *mimic*, *mimetic*, *pantomime*.)

μιμνῄσκω, μνήσω, ἔμνησα, the simple verb not used by prose writers in the act., *remind*; pass., *μιμνῄσκομαι*, *remind oneself*, rare in simple verb; pf. with pres. sense, *μέμνημαι*, *call to mind*, *remember*, fut. perf. *μεμνήσομαι*, aor. *ἐμνήσθην*, i. 7. 5, iii. 1. 27; with inf., iii. 2. 39. (Cf. Eng. *mnemonic*.)

μισθοδοσίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (*μισθός*, *δίδωμι*), *the giving of pay*, ii. 5. 22.

μισθοδότης, ου, ὁ (*μισθός*, *δίδωμι*), *one who pays wages*, *paymaster*, *employer*, i. 3. 9.

μισθός, οῦ, ὁ (akin to Eng. *meed*), *reward*, *pay*, *wages*, esp. of soldiers, i. 1. 10, 3. 21, 4. 13, ii. 2. 20, 5. 14, iii. 5. 8.

μισθοφόρος, ον (*μισθός*, *φέρω*), *receiving wages*, *paid*; as subst., *οἱ μισθοφόροι*, *mercenaries*, i. 4. 3, iv. 3. 4.

μισθόω, μισθώσω, etc. (*μισθός*), *hire out*; mid., *cause to hire out*, *hire*,

employ; pass., *be hired, employed*, i. 3. 1.

μνᾶ, μνᾶς, ἡ (prob. from a Phoenician word akin to Hebrew *maneh*, Assyr. *manah*, *weight*, cf. Lat. *mina*), *mina*, name of a Greek weight, the sixtieth part of a talent (see **τάλαντον**); also, the name of a certain sum (a weight, not a coin) of silver money, the sixtieth part of a talent, i. 4. 13; its value would be about $18. The mina contained one hundred drachmas (**δραχμαί**), and each drachma six obols (**ὀβολοί**). The Attic coined money was of silver, and there were pieces of one, two, four, and ten drachmas, besides half-obols, obols, two-obol and three-obol pieces.

μνημονεύω, μνημονεύσω, ἐμνημόνευσα, -εμνημόνευκα, -εμνημόνευμαι, ἐμνημονεύθην (**√ μνα, μνη**, cf. **μιμνήσκω**), *recall, call to mind, recollect*, iv. 3. 2.

μνησικακέω, μνησιήκακσω, ἐμνησικάκησα (**√ μνα** in **μιμνήσκω, κακός**), *remember a wrong* or *evil, bear a grudge, feel malice*, with dat., ii. 4. 1.

μόγις, adv., *with difficulty, hardly*, iv. 8. 28.

μόλις, adv., *with difficulty*, iii. 4. 48.

μολυβδίς, ίδος, ἡ (**μόλυβδος**), *ball of lead, bullet* for a sling, iii. 3. 17.

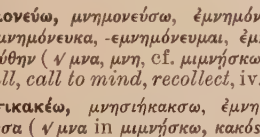


FIG. 34.

Fig. 34 shows a leaden sling-missile with the inscription **δέξαι**, "take this."

μόλυβδος, ου, ὁ, *lead*, iii. 4. 17. (Cf. Eng. *molybdenum*.)

μοναχῇ, adv. (**μόνος**), *only, alone*, iv. 4. 18.

μόνος, η, ον (cf. Eng. *monist, monad, monastery, monk, monotone*), *alone, only, sole, left alone*, i. 4. 15, ii. 1. 12, 2. 5, 3. 19, 5. 20, iii. 1. 2, 41, iv. 6. 3; in ii. 6. 24, like Lat. *unus omnium maxime, more than anybody else*; neut. as adv., *only*, **οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί**, *not only . . . but also*, iii. 2. 19.

μόσχειος, ον (**μόσχος, calf**), *of a calf*; **κρέᾶ μόσχεια**, *veal*, iv. 5. 31.

μύζω, *suck*, abs., iv. 5. 27.

Μυρίανδος, ου, ὁ, *Myriandus*, a city of Syria, on the gulf of Issus, near the frontiers of Cilicia, i. 4. 6. Its site was near that of the later Alexandria (now Alexandretta or Iskanderûn).

μῦριάς, άδος, ἡ (**μῦριος**; hence Eng. *myriad*), *the number ten thousand, myriad*, i. 4. 5, 7. 10 ff.

μῦρίος, ᾱ, ον, *countless*; pl. with changed accent, **μύριοι**, *ten thousand*, i. 1. 9, 2. 10, ii. 6. 4, iii. 2. 18, 31; in sing. with collective noun, i. 7. 10.

μύρον, ου, τό, *perfume, fragrant oil* or *salve*, iv. 4. 13.

Μύσιος, ᾱ, ον (**Μῦσός**), *of Mysia, Mysian*; **ἡ Μῡσίᾱ χώρᾱ**, *Mysia*, i. 2. 10. Mysia was a province of northwestern Asia Minor, lying between Bithynia, Phrygia, and Lydia on the east and south, and the sea on the north and west. It corresponds roughly to the Turkish vilayet of Brusa.

Μῦσός, οῦ, ὁ, *Mysian, native of Mysia*; pl., **Μῦσοί**, *Mysians*, a warlike people of northwestern Asia Minor, hostile to the Persians, i. 6. 7, 9. 14, ii. 5. 13, iii. 2. 23.

μυχός, οῦ, ὁ (chiefly poetical), *recess, nook*; of mountains, *ravine, glen*, iv. 1. 7.

μῶρος, ᾱ, ον (cf. Eng. *sophomore*), *foolish, stupid*; **τοῦτο μωρότατον πεποιήκᾶσιν**, *in this they have acted very foolishly*, iii. 2. 22.

N

νάπη, ης, ἡ (chiefly poetical), *wooded valley, glen, dell*, iv. 5. 15, 18.

ναύαρχος, ου, ὁ (ναῦς, ἄρχω), *ship-commander, admiral*, title of the Spartan officer in charge of a fleet, i. 4. 2.

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ (cf. Lat. *navis, ship*), *ship*, whether a *trading-vessel* or a *war-ship*, i. 4. 2, 3, 5. The best Greek ships seem rather frail craft from the modern point of view, being ill-fitted for encountering high seas, on account of their low-built hulls. The earliest Greek vessels had from twenty to fifty rowers, all seated on one level, *i. e.* with one bank of oars; the fifty-oared ship soon became the predominant type and was designated by a special name (πεντηκόντορος). Later two types of vessels were developed, as illustrated by Figs. 35 and 36. The first (Fig. 35) is the merchant-

Fig. 35.

ship (πλοῖον, ὁλκάς), which relied mainly upon its sails and had a tolerably high hull with the bow well elevated above water. Such vessels also had, as a rule, considerable breadth of beam. The war-ship (Fig. 36) was long and narrow (hence sometimes called ναῦς μακρά), with a low gunwale and the projecting prow shaped into a ram on or slightly below the water-line. Both kinds of vessels were guided by a pair of steering-paddles, one on each side of the stern-post. All Greek ships were built with light draught in order to sail close in to the shore.

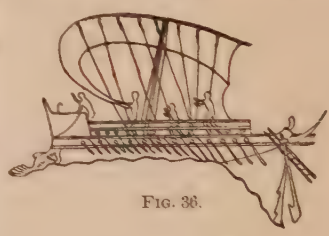


Fig. 36.

Ships of war in Xenophon's time were generally made with three banks of oars, one above another; for their arrangement, see τριήρης.

ναυσίπορος, ον (ναῦς, πόρος), *affording passage for ships, navigable*, ii. 2. 3.

ναυτικός, ή, όν (ναῦς), *relating to ships, naval, nautical*, i. 3. 12.

νεᾱνίσκος, ου, ὁ (dim. of νεᾱνίας, *young man*, from νέος), *young man, youth*, ii. 4. 19, iv. 3. 10, 13; with a tone of patronizing contempt, ὦ νεανίσκε, *my dear young man*, ii. 1. 13.

νεκρός, ὁ (related to Lat. *nex, death, neco, kill*; cf. Eng. *necrology, necropolis*), *dead body, corpse*, iv. 2. 18, 23.

νέμω, νεμῶ, ἔνειμα, -νενέμηκα, νενέμημαι, ἐνεμήθην, *distribute, divide*; of herdsmen, *drive to pasture*; mid., of cattle, *go to pasture, feed, graze*, ii. 2. 15; pass., *be fed upon, be pastured*, iv. 6. 17.

νεόδαρτος, ον (νέος, δέρω, *flay*), *newly flayed, freshly stripped*, iv. 5. 14.

νέος, ᾱ, ον (related to Lat. *novus, new*, Eng. *new*; cf. Eng. *neology, neophyte, Neo-Platonism*), *young*, i. 1. 1, iii. 2. 37, iv. 1. 27, 2. 16.

νευρά, ᾶς, ἡ (νεῦρον), *sinew*, hence *cord*, esp. *bow-string*, iv. 2. 28.

νεῦρον, *ου, τό* (akin to Lat. *nervus, muscle, sinew,* whence Eng. *nerve*; cf. Eng. *neuralgia, neurotic*), *sinew,* iii. 4. 17.

νεφέλη, *ης, ἡ* (cf. Lat. *nebula, mist*), *cloud,* i. 8. 8.

νέω, *νεύσομαι, -ένευσα, -νένευκα, swim,* iv. 3. 12.

νεωστί, adv. (*νέος*), *lately, recently,* iv. 1. 12.

νή, intensive particle, *indeed, surely*; used in affirmative oaths, with acc., *νὴ Δία, yes, by Zeus,* i. 7. 9.

νῆσος, *ου, ἡ* (from *νέω*, hence orig. *floating land*), *island*; of land lying between a canal and a river, ii. 4. 22. (Cf. Eng. *Polynesia.*)

Νίκαρχος, *ου, ὁ, Nicarchus,* an Arcadian, wounded when the Greek generals were treacherously seized, ii. 5. 33; a captain of the same name and nationality, probably a different person, deserted to the Persians, iii. 3. 5.

νῑκάω, *νῑκήσω,* etc. (*νίκη*), *surpass, outdo, get the better of, conquer,* the pres. often with perf. meaning, *have conquered, be victorious,* the inceptive aor. *gain a victory*; abs., sometimes with *μάχῃ*, i. 7. 7, 8. 21, ii. 1. 4, 8, 4. 19, 6. 5, iii. 1. 2, iv. 6. 24; with acc. of person, i. 8. 24, 10. 5, ii. 4. 4, 6. 14, iii. 2. 11, iv. 3. 14; with cognate obj., *μάχην νῑκᾶν, gain a victory in battle,* ii. 1. 4; note also *πάντα νῑκᾶν, be completely victorious,* i. 10. 4 [ii. 1. 1]; *τὰ μεγάλα νῑκᾶν,* see under *μέγας*; the verb is used of a musical contest, i. 2. 8; of friendly rivalry, i. 9. 11, 24.

νῖκη, *ης, ἡ, victory,* i. 5. 8, 8. 16, iii. 1. 23, 42, 2. 7. (Cf. Eng. *Nicholas, Eunice.*)

Νικόμαχος, *ου, ὁ, Nicomachus,* a commander of light-armed troops, from Oeta in Thessaly, iv. 6. 20.

νοέω, *νοήσω,* etc. (*νοῦς*), *perceive, observe,* iii. 4. 44. (Cf. Eng. *noetic.*)

νόθος, *η, ον, illegitimate, bastard,* ii. 4. 25.

νομή, *ῆς, ἡ* (*νέμω*), *a herd at pasture, herd, flock,* iii. 5. 2.

νομίζω, νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα, νενόμικα, νενόμισμαι, ἐνομίσθην (*νόμος*), *regard as a custom, keep as a recognized institution,* so *ὥσπερ νομίζεται, as is customary,* iv. 2. 23; cf. *δῶρα ἃ νομίζεται τίμια, the gifts which* (according to custom) *are considered honorable,* i. 2. 27; *think, consider, regard, believe,* with two accs., i. 4. 9, ii. 5. 39, iii. 2. 38; here note *μηκέτι με Κῦρον νομίζετε, no longer call me Cyrus,* i. 4. 16; with inf. clause, i. 1. 8, 3. 6, 9, 7. 3, 8. 22, 9. 23, ii. 1. 1, 5. 6, 13, 34, 6. 17, iii. 2. 7, 29; imperative *νομίζετε* with inf., *know, be assured,* i. 5. 16.

νόμιμος, *η, ον* (*νόμος*), *customary, lawful,* iv. 6. 15.

νόμος, *ου, ὁ* (*νέμω*; cf. Lat. *numerus, number*), *custom, practice,* i. 2. 15; *law,* iv. 6. 14. (Hence the second part of Eng. *Deuteronomy, antinomian.*)

νοῦς, *νοῦ, ὁ* (contr. for *νόος*, cf. *νοέω*), *thought, mind, understanding*; *προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, pay attention, heed,* ii. 4. 2, iv. 2. 2; *τῷ προσέχοντι τὸν νοῦν, to the attentive observer,* i. 5. 9; *τί ἐν νῷ ἔχετε, what is your purpose, what do you intend,* iii. 3. 2, cf. 5. 13.

νυκτερεύω, ἐνυκτέρευσα (*νύκτερος, nocturnal,* from *νύξ*), *pass the night, bivouac,* iv. 4. 11, 5. 11.

νύκτωρ, adv. (*νύξ*), *by night, in the night,* iii. 4. 35, iv. 4. 9, 6. 12.

νῦν, adv. (akin to Lat. *nunc, now,* Eng. *now*), *now, at this time, at present,* i. 4. 14, 7. 5, ii. 1. 12, 3. 26, 5. 11, 13, iii. 1. 20, 2. 33, 39, iv. 1. 19; strengthened by *δή*, ii. 3. 29; *ἔτι νῦν, even now, to this day,* iii. 2. 12; *τὸ νῦν εἶναι, for the present,* iii. 2. 37.

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ (akin to Lat. *nox*, Eng. *night*), *night*, i. 10. 19, ii. 2. 19, iii. 1. 19, iv. 2. 1; gen. of time, **νυκτός**, *by night, at night*, equivalent to **νύκτωρ**, ii. 6. 7, iii. 1. 40, 4. 35, iv. 4. 15, 6. 13; **τῆς νυκτός**, *during the night*, indicating that a particular night is meant, ii. 2. 1, 4. 16, iii. 4. 34, iv. 4. 8, 6. 3, cf. iii. 3. 20; **διὰ νυκτός**, *throughout the night*, iv. 6. 22, cf. 2. 4; **μέσαι νύκτες**, *midnight*, plural because of the division of the night into watches, i. 7. 1, ii. 2. 8, iii. 1. 34.

Ξ

Ξανθικλῆς, έους, ὁ, *Xanthicles*, an Achaean, chosen as general to succeed Socrates, iii. 1. 47.

Ξενίας, ου, ὁ, *Xenias*, of Parrhasia in Arcadia, accompanied Cyrus to Babylon at the time of Darius's last illness (i. 1. 2), commanded Cyrus's Greek mercenaries in the cities of his satrapy (i. 2. 1), and joined the expedition at Sardis with these forces (i. 2. 3). He celebrated the Lycaea at Peltae (i. 2. 10), and deserted the expedition at Myriandus (i. 4. 7).

ξενικός, ή, όν (**ξένος**), *relating to foreigners*; **τὸ ξενικόν** (sc. **στράτευμα**), *the foreign contingent, mercenary force*, i. 2. 1, ii. 5. 22.

ξένιος, ᾱ, ον (**ξένος**), *of a guest-friend, pertaining to guests* or *strangers*; **Ζεὺς ξένιος**, *Zeus the protector of guests*, iii. 2. 4; as subst., **τὰ ξένια** (*sc.* **δῶρα**), *gifts in token of guest-friendship*, iv. 8. 23.

ξένος, ου, ὁ, *guest, stranger*; as most frequently used, the word **ξένος** denotes a relation not adequately described by any one English word. Generally speaking, a **ξένος** is a foreigner to whom one is bound by ties of hospitality. On account of the numerous dangers of traveling and the suspicious attitude maintained toward strangers by most Greek states, it was very desirable that a traveler in a foreign country should have a friend to whom he could turn in case of need for protection, assistance, and shelter. Such a relation, once formed, was consecrated under the protection of **Ζεὺς ξένιος** (*q. v.*), and was regarded as a permanent bond between families, its privileges and duties being handed down from father to son. The word **ξένος**, often translated *guest-friend*, is more commonly applied to the recipient of hospitality, yet sometimes (as i. 3. 3) to the giver, and may be rendered *host*. See i. 1. 11, iii. 1. 4; the word shows its original adjectival quality by the use of the dat., i. 1. 10; but the gen. also occurs, ii. 1. 15, 4. 15.——In a special sense, *foreign soldiers, mercenaries*, i. 1. 10, 3. 18, ii. 6. 28.

Ξενοφῶν, ῶντος, ὁ, *Xenophon*, the historian, an Athenian of the deme Erchia, was the son of Gryllus and Diodora. The family was of equestrian rank. The date of his birth, which is not known with certainty, was formerly placed about 444 B.C., on account of an apocryphal story to the effect that Socrates saved his life at the battle of Delium in 424. In view of Xenophon's own statements about his youth at the time of the Anabasis (iii. 1. 14, 25), it is more reasonable to put the date about 430. Xenophon became a pupil of Socrates in early youth, and was a most devoted follower (iii. 1. 5, 7); but his strong practical turn of mind probably prevented him from appreciating the full philosophical bearing of Socrates' teaching. In 401, at the solicitation of his friend Proxenus, he joined the expedition of Cyrus, not, however, in any military capacity; and in

fact he assumed no prominence until after the battle of Cunaxa and the murder of the Greek generals. (Casual mention in i. 8. 15, ii. 4. 15, cf. 5. 37, 41.) After this event Xenophon aroused the Greeks from their terrified inactivity (iii. 1. 11 ff.), was chosen general (iii. 1. 47), and, in conjunction with Cheirisophus, led the army on its arduous march through Kurdistan and Armenia to the sea, as described in the third and fourth books of the Anabasis. Under Xenophon's guidance the Greeks reached Byzantium, whence, after a brief campaign in the service of the Thracian prince Seuthes, they went to Pergamus, and the remainder of the Ten Thousand enlisted under the Spartan general Thibron, who was then waging war against Tissaphernes, their old enemy. After this Xenophon attached himself to Agesilāus, the Spartan king, returned with him to Greece, and was with him a few years later at the battle of Coronēa, in 394 B. C. On account of his intimacy with Agesilāus and his pro-Spartan tendencies, he was banished from Athens, and took up his residence at Scillus in Elis, near Olympia, where the Spartans gave him an estate. Here he lived quietly with his family, devoting himself to literary work and rural pursuits until after the battle of Leuctra, when the Eleans drove him from Scillus (about 370). He then moved to Corinth, but as his sentence of banishment was recalled soon afterward, he probably returned to Athens. His death occurred after 355, but the exact date is unknown. Xenophon's literary works were composed mainly at Scillus. Besides the Anabasis in seven books, he wrote the *Hellenica*, a continuation of the history of Thucydides, the *Cyropaedīa*, a work purporting to give an account of the Life of Cyrus the Elder, but really a historical romance portraying an ideal ruler; *Memorabilia*, or Recollections of Socrates, *Oeconomicus*, an essay on domestic economy, and others of less note.

Ξέρξης, ου, ὁ (Old Persian *Khshyarsha*), *Xerxes*, son of Darius Hystaspis and Atossa, reigned 485 to 465 B. C. His disastrous expedition against Greece and defeat at Salamis (480) are famous, i. 2. 9, iii. 2. 13.

ξεστός, ή, όν (verbal of **ξέω**, *polish*), *polished*, iii. 4. 10.

ξηραίνω, ξηρανῶ, ἐξήρᾱνα, ἐξήρασμαι, ἐξηράνθην (**ξηρός**), *dry*, of fruits, ii. 3. 15.

ξηρός, ά, όν, *dry*, iv. 5. 33. (Cf. Eng. *phylloxera*.)

ξίφος, ους, τό, *sword*, ii. 2. 9. The Greek sword was a straight two-edged blade, seldom more than twenty inches in length, and adapted for stabbing rather than for a slashing stroke. It had a rather small guard, and the hilt was sometimes ornamented with inlaid work in ivory or metal. It was carried in a scabbard and hung at the left side, being supported by a belt passing over the right shoulder and below the left arm. See Fig. 37 and Fig. 40 under **ὁπλίτης**.

Fig. 37.

ξυήλη, ης, ἡ (**ξύω**, *scrape*), *curved knife* or *dagger*, used esp. by the Lacedaemonians, iv. 7. 16, 8. 25.

ξυλίζομαι, only pres. classical (**ξύλον**), *gather wood*, ii. 4. 11.

ξύλινος, η, ον (**ξύλον**), *of wood, wooden*, i. 8. 9, ii. 1. 6.

ξύλον, *ου*, *τό* (cf. Eng. *xylography*, *xylophone*), *wood*; *a bar* or *pole of wood*, i. 10. 12, but prob. an interpolation in that passage; pl., *fire-wood*, *fuel*, i. 5. 12, ii. 1. 6, iv. 4. 12, 5. 5; *timbers*, *woodwork*, ii. 2. 16.

O

ὁ, **ἡ**, *τό*, def. art., *the*, orig. a demonstrative pron., *this*, *that*, *he*, etc.; this demonstrative force is still felt in the expressions **ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ**, *the one . . . the other*, **οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ**, *these . . . those*, *some . . . others*, i. 1. 7, 2. 25, 4. 7, ii. 2. 5, iii. 4. 16, iv. 3. 33; so without preceding **ὁ μέν** or **οἱ μέν**, **ὁ δέ**, *and he*, *but he*, **οἱ δέ**, *but they*, i. 1. 3, 4, 3. 21, 5. 13, ii. 3. 1, 4, etc.; these expressions generally refer to persons different from the subject of the preceding sentence, but this is not the case in iv. 2. 6; **οἱ δέ**, *but others*, *others*, i. 5. 13, 10. 3, ii. 3. 10, 15. (Observe that in these expressions, where the art. has demonstrative force, it has the accent; some editors, however, write **ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ**, etc.). **τὰ μὲν ἔπαθε**, *he received* some injuries, i. 9. 6. Adv., **τὰ μέν τι . . . τὰ δέ τι**, *partly . . . partly*, *now . . . now*, iv. 1. 14.

As an art. proper, the usage agrees in many respects with English. The following points may be noted: it is used in referring to well-known persons or incidents that need no description in detail, i. 2. 9, iii. 1. 5, 2. 13; with nouns of kinship, names of parts of the body, clothing, etc., where a possessive is used in English, as **ὁ ἀδελφός**, *his brother*, **αἱ χεῖρες**, *his hands*, i. 1. 3, 8. 3, iii. 1. 17, iv. 5. 12, etc.; with proper names, indicating them as before mentioned or well known, i. 1. 2, 6. 10, ii. 4. 1, etc.; with numerals giving an approximate number, i. 2. 10, 7. 10, ii. 6. 15, 30, iii. 1. 33, iv. 8. 15; with distributive force, **τρία ἡμιδαρεικὰ τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ**, *a daric and a half a month to each soldier*, i. 3. 21; with inf. used as noun, i. 1. 7, 5, 9, ii. 6. 14, iii. 4. 35, etc.; with ptc. as subst., i. 3. 9, ii. 3. 5. The article is used without a noun in many expressions where the context makes the meaning clear; **οἱ ἐκείνου**, **οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ**, *his men*, i. 2. 15, cf. i. 5. 13; **οἱ ἀμφὶ** (**περὶ**) **τινα**, see the prepositions; **οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς**, *the market-people*, i. 2. 18, **οἱ ἐκ τῆς κώμης**, *the villagers*, iv. 5. 22; **οἱ οἴκοι**, *friends at home*, "*home-folks*," i. 7. 4, but *enemies at home*, i. 2. 1; **τὰ οἴκοι**, "*what you left at home*," i. 7. 4; **οἱ τότε**, *the men of that time*, ii. 2. 20, 5. 11; **τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως**, *the king's message*, ii. 3. 4, cf. §§ 7, 24, 5. 36, **τὰ Κύρου**, *Cyrus's affairs*, i. 3. 9, **τὰ τῶν θεῶν**, *res divinae*, *religious matters*, iii. 2. 9; **τὰ πρὸς μεσημβρίαν**, *the country southward*, iii. 5. 15, **τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ λόφου**, *the situation beyond the hill*, i. 10. 14; **τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ**, *matters with him*, *affairs on his side*, iv. 3. 27; **τὰ περὶ Προξένου**, *the fate of Proxenus*, ii. 5. 37.

ὅ, see **ὅς**.

ὀβολός, *οῦ*, *ὁ*, *obol*, an Attic coin, one-sixth of a drachma, worth about three cents, i. 5. 6. See under *μνᾶ*.

ὀγδοήκοντα, indecl. numeral (**ὀκτώ**), *eighty*, iv. 8. 15.

ὄγδοος, *η*, *ον* (**ὀκτώ**), *eighth*, iv. 6. 1.

ὅδε, **ἥδε**, **τόδε**, dem. pron. (**ὁ**, enclitic particle **δε**), *this*, referring to what is close at hand in place, time, or thought; of place, **οἵδε**, *these present*, perhaps with a gesture, ii. 3. 19; referring to what follows, i. 1. 9, 9. 29; so **λέγει τάδε**, *he spoke as follows*, i. 5. 15, ii. 5. 40; referring to an imaginary quotation, ii. 1.

17; so **ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ**, *on that day*, of an imaginary occasion, perhaps used for greater vividness instead of **ἐκείνῃ**, i. 5. 16; adverbially, **τῷδε**, *by this, from this, thus*, ii. 3. 1.

ὁδοποιέω, ὡδοποίησα, ὡδοποίημαι, perhaps also **ὡδοπεποίημαι** (**ὁδός, ποιέω**), *make* or *prepare a road*, with acc. (**ὁδόν**) or with dat. of adv., iii. 2. 24, iv. 8. 8.

ὁδός, οῦ, ἡ, *road, way, path, route*, i. 2. 13, 21, 9. 13, ii. 4. 4, iii. 1. 2, 4. 11, 5. 1, iv. 6. 11; *journey, march, way, distance*, i. 5. 9, 10. 1, ii. 2. 12, iii. 1. 6, 2. 25, iv. 3. 16; *expedition*, i. 4. 11; *way, means*, ii. 6. 22. (Cf. Eng. *cathode, electrode, exodus.*)

ὅθεν, adv. (**ὅς**), *whence, from which*, often referring back to a noun of place, and equivalent to **ἐξ οὗ, ἐξ ὧν**, i. 2. 8, ii. 1. 3, 3. 14, 16, 4. 5, iv. 7. 20; so even referring to persons, *from whom*, ii. 5. 26; with antecedent (**ἐκεῖσε**) omitted, i. 3. 17.

ὅθενπερ, adv., more definite than **ὅθεν**, *just whence, from just which place*, ii. 1. 3.

οἱ, οἱ, see **οὗ**.

οἶδα, 2 perf. from **√Fιδ** (cf. **εἶδον**, Lat. *video, see*, Eng. *wit*), plupf. **ᾔδη** and **ᾔδειν**, fut. **εἴσομαι** (Ionic form **ἴδαμεν** for **ἴσμεν** in ii. 4. 6), with pres. meaning, *know, be sure, understand, be acquainted with*, abs. or with acc., i. 4. 12, 7. 4, iv. 1. 22, 23; with proleptic acc. and **ὅτι** clause, i. 8. 21, ii. 4. 6; with **ὅτι** clause, i. 3. 9, 15, 4. 8, 6. 10, 7. 3, ii. 1. 17, iii. 1. 36, iv. 3. 10; with **εἰ** clause, i. 3. 5, ii. 4. 6; with other forms of ind. quest., i. 4. 8, 5. 16, 7. 4, 8, ii. 4. 7, iii. 1. 40; with acc. and ptc., i. 10. 16, ii. 2. 16, 5. 3, 13, 6. 24, iii. 1. 20; with nom. and ptc., ii. 1. 13; in the fut. with meaning *find out, see, learn*, iii. 2. 20, 5. 11; **οἶδα ὅτι** is almost parenthetical, like *certainly*, in i. 4. 15, iii. 2. 24; **χάριν εἰδέναι**, *feel gratitude, be grateful*, i. 4. 15; **ἑκασταχόσε εἰδέναι**, *know the way in all directions*, iii. 5. 17.

οἴει, see **οἴομαι**.

οἴκαδε, adv. (**οἶκος**), *homeward, to one's home* or *country*, i. 2. 2, 7. 4, ii. 3. 23, iv. 6. 3; **ἡ οἴκαδε ὁδός**, the journey *homeward*, iii. 1. 2, 2. 25.

οἰκεῖος, ᾱ, ον (**οἶκος**), *of one's house, domestic, familiar, intimate*, superl. ii. 6. 28; as subst., **οἱ οἰκεῖοι**, *friends and kindred, members of one's family*, iii. 2. 26, 39, 3. 4.

οἰκέτης, ου, ὁ (**οἶκος**), *member of one's household*; pl., *household*, iv. 5. 35, 6. 1; as distinguished from the master, *servants, slaves*, ii. 3. 15.

οἰκέω, οἰκήσω, etc. (**οἶκος**), *have one's abode, dwell, live*, intr., with various advs. and prep. phrases, i. 1. 9, 2. 24, 7. 6, ii. 5. 14, iii. 2. 24, iv. 7. 17; **γείτων οἰκῶ τῇ Ἑλλάδι**, *I am a neighbor to Greece*, ii. 3. 18; with acc., *inhabit, live in*, iii. 2. 23, 4. 7, iv. 7. 1; pass., *be inhabited*, i. 4. 6; ptc. **οἰκούμενος**, *inhabited, populous*, i. 2. 6 ff., iv. 7. 19; *be situated*, i. 4. 1, 11, ii. 4. 25, 28, iv. 8. 22.

οἰκίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**οἶκος**), *house, dwelling*, ii. 2. 16, iii. 1. 11, iv. 1. 8, 5. 25.

οἰκοδομέω, οἰκοδομήσω, etc. (**οἶκος, √δεμ**, *build*, in **δόμος**, *house*, cf. Lat. *domus*), *build a house, build*, cf. Lat. *aedifico*; said of a palace, i. 2. 9; also of a wall, ii. 4. 12, iii. 4. 7.

οἴκοθεν, adv. (**οἶκος**), *from home*, iii. 1. 4, iv. 8. 25.

οἴκοι, adv., orig. locative of **οἶκος**, *at one's house, at home*, i. 1. 10; phrases **οἱ οἴκοι, τὰ οἴκοι**, see under **ὁ**.

οἰκονόμος, ου, ὁ (**οἶκος, νέμω**, *arrange, manage*), *manager of a house, housekeeper, steward*, then *manager* in general, i. 9. 19. (Hence Eng. *economy, economics.*)

οἶκος, *ου, ὁ* (akin to Lat. *vicus, village*; cf. Eng. *dioecious*), *house, home*, ii. 4. 8.

οἰκτίρω, later spelling *οἰκτείρω*, aor. *ᾤκτῑρα*, no other forms classical (*οἶκτος, pity*), *pity, feel sorry for*, with acc., i. 4. 7, iii. 1. 19.

οἶμαι, see *οἴομαι*.

οἶνος, *ου, ὁ* (akin to Lat. *vinum, wine*), *wine*, i. 2. 13, 4. 19, 9. 25, 10. 18, ii. 4. 8, iii. 4. 31, iv. 2. 22, 4. 9; *οἶνος φοινίκων, palm wine*, ii. 3. 14, cf. i. 3. 10; *οἶνος κρίθινος, beer*, iv. 5. 26. The manner of carrying wine in a leather sack (*ἀσκός, q. v.*) is illustrated by Fig. 38.

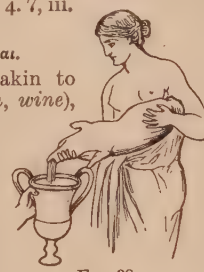


Fig. 38.

οἰνοχόος, *ου, ὁ* (*οἶνος, χέω, pour*), *wine-pourer, cup-bearer*, iv. 4. 21. It was the cup-bearer's duty to mix the wine with the proper proportion of water in the large mixing-bowl (see *κρᾱτήρ*), and then, dipping it out with ladles and pitchers, to fill the goblets of the guests as they reclined around the table. See Fig. 39.

Fig. 39.

οἴομαι and *οἶμαι, οἰήσομαι, ᾠήθην, think, believe, suppose, imagine*, abs., i. 5. 8, 6. 3; parenthetical, i. 9. 22, ii. 1. 16, iii. 1. 15, 29; with inf. clause, often with *ἄν*, i. 3. 6, 9. 21, ii. 1. 20, 2. 2, 6. 18, iii. 1. 38, iv. 2. 4, 7. 22; with fut. inf., i. 4. 5, 7. 4, 9, ii. 1. 12, 3. 9, iii. 1. 17.

οἷος, *ᾱ, ον*, rel. pron., *of which kind* or *nature*, Lat. *quālis*; in English generally translatable only in connection with its correlative *such* (*τοιοῦτος*), which the Greek often omits; so *of such kind as, such as*, ii. 2. 5, 19, 3. 15, 6. 8; hence passing into the idea of *suitable, proper*, *οὐ γὰρ ἦν ὥρᾱ οἵᾱ τὸ πεδίον ἄρδειν, for it was not the proper season for irrigating the plain*, ii. 3. 13; in ind. questions, *of what sort, of what kind*, also *how great*, i. 3. 13, 7. 4, ii. 5. 10, iii. 1. 19; so *ὁρῶν ἐν οἵοις ἐσμέν, seeing in what straits we are*, iii. 1. 15; *οἷόν τέ ἐστι* (or *οἷόν τε* alone) with inf., *it is possible*, ii. 2. 3, 4. 6, iii. 3. 9, 15, iv. 2. 3; *ὡς οἷόν τε πεφυλαγμένως, as guardedly as possible, with all possible precautions*, ii. 4. 24; with superl., *οἷον χαλεπώτατον, as strong as possible, extremely strong*, iv. 8. 2; neuter *οἷον* as adv., *as, for example*, i. 8. 18, iv. 1. 14.

οἱόσπερ, οἵᾱπερ, οἷόνπερ, rel. pron. (*οἷος*), stronger than *οἷος* in that it emphasizes the exactness of the description, *of just which kind, just such as*, i. 3. 18, iv. 4. 16.

οἷς, οἰός, ἡ (related to Lat. *ovis, sheep*, Eng. *ewe*), *sheep*, iv. 5. 25.

οἴσει, see *φέρω*.

οἶσθα, see *οἶδα*.

οἰστός, *οῦ, ὁ, arrow*, rare in Attic prose, ii. 1. 6.

Οἰταῖος, *ὁ* (*Οἴτη, Oeta*), *an Oetaean*, a native of the country about Mt. Oeta in Thessaly, iv. 6. 20.

οἴχομαι, *οἰχήσομαι*, pres. with perf. meaning, *have gone, be gone, be away*, i. 4. 8, ii. 1. 6, 2. 1; esp.

frequent with the participle, which contains the leading idea, indicating the manner of the departure or the cause for the absence, i. 10. 5, 16, ii. 4. 24, 6. 3, iii. 5. 1, iv. 3. 30, 5. 35, 7. 14; so even when the ptc. itself is a verb of going away, **ᾤχετο ἀπιών**, *he went away*. iii. 3. 5, iv. 7. 27; **ᾤχετο ἀποδρᾶς**, *he stole away*, iv. 6. 3; with fut. ptc., iv. 5. 24. In the sense of *be missing, be dead*, iii. 1. 32.

οἰωνός, οῦ, ὁ (akin to Lat. *avis, bird*), *bird of prey*, from the flight of which omens were taken; hence the *omen* itself, *sign, portent*, iii. 2. 9.

ὀκνέω, ὀκνήσω, ὤκνησα (**ὄκνος**), *hesitate*, with inf., i. 3. 17; *fear, dread, be afraid*, with subj. or opt., ii. 3. 9, 4. 22.

ὄκνος, ου, ὁ, *hesitation, reluctance*, with inf., iv. 4. 11.

ὀκτακόσιοι, αι, α (**ὀκτώ**), *eight hundred*, i. 2. 9.

ὀκτώ, indecl. num. (akin to Lat. *octo*, Germ. *acht*, Eng. *eight*), *eight*, i. 2. 6, ii. 4. 13, etc.

ὀκτωκαίδεκα, indecl. num. (**ὀκτώ, δέκα**), *eighteen*, iii. 4. 5.

ὄλεθρος, ου, ὁ (**ὄλλῡμι**, *destroy*, see **ἀπόλλῡμι**), *destruction, death*, i. 2. 26.

ὀλίγος, η, ον, of number, *few*, iv. 3. 30, 7. 5; often in pl. without subst., **ὀλίγοι**, *a few, few*, i. 5. 12, 7. 20, 8. 25, iii. 1. 3, 3. 14, iv. 1. 10, 2. 7; of size or space, *small, little, short*, ii. 2. 12, iii. 3. 9, 15; phrase **ἐπ' ὀλίγων**, of a line of battle, *a few men deep*, iv. 8. 11; **ὀλίγου δεῖν**, see **δέω**, *lack*; neut. as adv., **ὀλίγον**, *a little*, iii. 4. 46, iv. 8. 20. (Cf. Eng. *oligarchy*.)

ὀλισθάνω, 2 aor. **ὤλισθον** (perhaps akin to Eng. *slide*), *slip*, iii. 5. 11.

ὀλισθηρός, ά, όν (**ὀλισθάνω**), *slippery*, iv. 3. 6.

ὁλκάς, άδος, ἡ (**ἕλκω**), originally a *ship towed* (**ἕλκω**) *by another*, then, less strictly, *freight-ship, trading-vessel, merchantman*, i. 4. 6. Cf. **ναῦς**.

ὁλοίτροχος, ου, ὁ (*ϝ Fελ, roll*, cf. Lat. *volvo*, and **τρέχω**, *run*), *rolling stone, boulder*, iv. 3. 2.

ὅλος, η, ον (akin to Lat. *salvus, safe, solidus, solid*), *whole, entire, all*, usually in pred. pos., i. 2. 17, ii. 3. 16, 4. 26, iv. 2. 4. (Cf. Eng. *holograph, holocaust*.)

Ὀλύνθιος, ᾱ, ον, *Olynthian, of Olynthus* (**Ὄλυνθος**), a city of the Chalcidian peninsula at the head of the Toronaic gulf; as subst. **ὁ Ὀλύνθιος**, an *Olynthian*, i. 2. 6.

ὁμαλής, ές (cf. **ὁμοῦ**), *level, even*, i. 5. 1; **ἰέναι ὁμαλές**, *march on level ground*, iv. 6. 12.

ὁμαλός, ή, όν, *level, even*, iv. 6. 12; **ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ**, *on level ground*, in *the plain*, iv. 2. 16.

ὁμαλῶς, adv. (**ὁμαλής**), *uniformly, evenly, in step*, i. 8. 14.

ὅμηρος, ου, ὁ, *hostage*, with gen., iii. 2. 24.

ὁμῑλέω, ὁμῑλήσω, ὡμίλησα, ὡμίληκα (**ὁμός**, cf. **ὁμοῦ, ἴλη**), *associate with*, with dat., iii. 2. 25. (Cf. Eng. *homily, homiletic*.)

ὁμίχλη, ης, ἡ (akin to Eng. *mist*), *mist, fog*, iv. 2. 7.

ὄμνῡμι and **ὀμνύω, ὀμοῦμαι, ὤμοσα, ὀμώμοκα, ὀμώμο(σ)μαι, ὠμό(σ)θην**, *swear, confirm by an oath, take oath*, abs., ii. 3. 28, 4. 7, with acc., ii. 2. 9; with fut. inf., ii. 2. 8, 3. 27, 5. 39; with dat. of pers., ii. 3. 27, 5. 39; with dat. of pers. and **ἐπὶ τούτοις**, iii. 2. 4.

ὅμοιος, ᾱ, ον (cf. **ὁμοῦ**), *like, resembling, similar*, with dat., iv. 1. 17; so **ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θαυμάζουσιν**, *were like men wondering, seemed to wonder*, iii. 5. 13. Phrases: **ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ**, *at an equal height, on the same level*, iv. 6. 18; **οἱ ὅμοιοι**, *the equals* or *peers*, a name applied to Spar-

tans (Σπαρτιᾶται) with full civic rights, iv. 6. 14. (Cf. Eng. *homoeopathy*.)

ὁμοίως, adv. (ὅμοιος), *in like manner, alike*, i. 3. 12.

ὁμολογέω, ὁμολογήσω, etc. (ὁμός, *like*, λέγω, *say*), originally, *say the same*, hence *agree, admit, confess, acknowledge*, abs., i. 6. 7, ii. 6. 7; so impersonally in pass., i. 9. 1; with inf. clause, i. 6. 8; so in pass., i. 9. 14, 20. (Cf. Eng. *homologous*.)

ὁμολογουμένως (ὁμολογέω), *admittedly, as is acknowledged, by common consent*, with ἐκ πάντων, ii. 6. 1.

ὁμομήτριος, ᾱ, ον (ὁμός, *like, same*, μήτηρ), *having the same mother, by the same mother*, iii. 1. 17.

ὁμόσε, adv. (stem ὁμο-, cf. ὁμοῦ), *to the same place*; in military language, *to the same place with the enemy, i. e. to close quarters*, iii. 4. 4.

ὁμοτράπεζος, ον (τράπεζα), *sitting* or *eating at the same table*, as subst., *table-companion*, i. 8. 25, with dat., iii. 2. 4. At the court of the Persian king and satraps, the ὁμοτράπεζοι were a band of men who dined in the presence of their overlord and were considered his most trusted retainers.

ὁμοῦ, adv. (properly gen. of epic adj. ὁμός, *common, the same*), *together, at the same place* or *time*, i. 10. 8, iv. 2. 22, 5. 29; ὁμοῦ εἶναι, with gen., *meet*, iv. 6. 24.

ὀμφαλός, οῦ, ὁ (akin to Lat. *umbo, knob, boss, umbilīcus, navel*), *navel*, iv. 5. 2.

ὅμως, adv. (ὁμός, *same*), *all the same, nevertheless, in spite of that*, often used in connection with adversative words, as ἀλλά, δέ, μέντοι, i. 3. 21, ii. 1. 9, 2. 17, 4. 23, iii. 2. 3, iv. 4. 21; frequently after concessive ptc., *still, however, yet*, i. 8. 13, 23, iii. 1. 10, 2. 16.

ὄν, see εἰμί.

ὄν, see ὅς.

ὄναρ, τό (only nom. and acc.), *dream, vision*, iii. 1. 11 ff., iv. 3. 8.

ὀνείρατα, τά, irreg. pl. referred to nom. ὁ ὄνειρος or τὸ ὄνειρον, *dream; dreams, visions*, iv. 3. 13. (Cf. Eng. *oneiromancy*.)

ὄνομα, ατος, τό (prob. akin to Lat. *nōmen*, Eng. *name*), *name*, i. 5. 4, 10, ii. 4. 13, 5. 15, iv. 7. 21; as acc. of specification, ὄνομα, *by name, named*, i. 2. 23, 4. 4, 11, ii. 4. 28; ὄνομα μέγα, *a great name, fame*, ii. 6. 17. (Cf. Eng. *onomatopoeïc*.)

ὄνος, ου, ὁ, *ass, donkey*, ii. 1. 6, 2. 20, iii. 5. 9; ὄνος ἄγριος, *wild ass, onager*, i. 5. 2; ὄνος ἀλέτης, see ἀλέτης.

ὄντα, see εἰμί.

ὄξος, ους, τό (ὀξύς, *sharp, sour*; cf. Lat. *acus, needle, acies, point, edge, acētum, vinegar*), *sour wine*, ii. 3. 14.

ὅπερ, see ὅσπερ.

ὅπῃ, adv. (πῆ), of place, *where, wherever*, iv. 2. 12, 24; of direction, *whither, whithersoever*, i. 3. 6, 9. 13, so in ind. quest. i. 4. 8; *in whatever way, how*, ii. 1. 19, iv. 5. 1.

ὄπισθεν, adv., *behind, in the rear*, i. 10. 6, iii. 4. 14, iv. 2. 25, 3. 7, 7. 22; ὄπισθεν γενόμενος, *getting in the rear*, i. 8. 24; ποιήσασθαι ὄπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν, *put the river in their rear*, i. 10. 9; οἱ ὄπισθεν, *the rear-guard*, iv. 2. 26, but *the enemy behind*, iv. 3. 14; τὰ ὄπισθεν, *the rear*, iii. 4. 40; εἰς τοὔπισθεν, *behind, to the rear*, iii. 3. 10; ἐκ τοῦ ὄπισθεν, *from behind*, iv. 1. 6. As prep. with gen., *behind*, i. 7. 9, iv. 2. 9.

ὀπισθοφυλακέω, ὠπισθοφυλάκησα (ὄπισθεν, φυλάττω), *guard the rear, form the rear-guard*, or, of a general, *command the rear-guard*, ii. 3. 10, iii. 2. 36, 37, 3. 8, iv. 1. 15, 2. 4.

ὀπισθοφυλακίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (ὀπισθοφυλακέω), *office of commanding the rear-guard, command of the rear-guard*, iv. 6. 19. (Only in this passage.)

ὀπισθοφύλαξ, ακος, ὁ (ὄπισθεν, φυλάττω), *one who guards the rear*, pl. *rear-guard*, iii. 3. 7, iv. 1. 6, 17, 2. 2, 6. 7, 7. 3, etc.

ὁπλίζω, ὥπλισα, ὥπλισμαι, ὡπλίσθην (ὅπλον), *arm, equip*; mid., *arm oneself, put on one's armor*, ii. 2. 15; pass., *be armed*, i. 8. 6, ii. 6. 25, iv. 3. 31.

ὅπλισις, εως, ἡ (ὁπλίζω), *armament, equipment*, ii. 5. 17.

ὁπλίτης, ου, ὁ (ὅπλον), *one who bears arms, a heavy-armed soldier, hoplite*, i. 1. 2, 5. 13, iii. 3. 8, iv. 1. 26, etc. For the distinction between the heavy-armed and light-armed troops, see *γυμνής, πελταστής*. The hoplite carried as defensive armor the helmet (*κράνος*), cuirass (*θώρᾱξ*), shield (*ἀσπίς*), and greaves (*κνημῖδες*). As offensive weapons he carried two spears (*δόρυ*) and a sword (*ξίφος*). See Figs. 40 and 41. On account of the heavy weight of this armor, most of the pieces were not worn except in actual battle, being carried in wagons and on beasts of burden during the march (cf. i. 7. 21). Even when in action officers sometimes employed a shield-bearer (*ὑπασπιστής*); cf. iv. 2. 20.

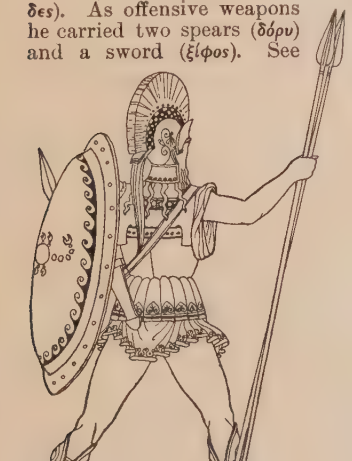


Fig. 40.

Fig. 41.

ὁπλῑτικός, ή, όν (ὁπλίτης), *relating to hoplites, of hoplites*; *τὸ ὁπλῑτικόν, the heavy-armed force*, iv. 8. 18.

ὁπλομαχίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (ὅπλον, μάχομαι), *fighting in heavy arms, hoplite drill-methods, tactics*, ii. 1. 7.

ὅπλον, ου, τό, *tool, implement*; usually pl., and esp. of the implements of warfare, *arms, armor, weapons*, i. 2. 2, 3. 7, 7. 20, ii. 1. 12, iii. 1. 29, iv. 3. 4, 6. By metonymy ὅπλα is used for *ὁπλῖται* (cf. *ἀσπίς*), ii. 2. 4, 3. 3, iii. 2. 36, 3. 7, 4. 26; also for *the place where arms were kept*, ii. 2. 20, 4. 15, iii. 1. 33. *εἰς τὰ ὅπλα, to arms!* i. 5. 13. *ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα θεῖν, τρέχειν* (*ἔρχεσθαι*), *run (go) to arms*, i. 5. 13, ii. 5. 34, iii. 1. 40. *ὅπλα ἔχοντες, ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, in arms, armed*, i. 10. 3, iv. 3. 7;

for παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα, προβάλλεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, see the verbs. (Cf. Eng. *panoply*.)

ὁπόθεν, relative adv., *from what place, whence, from whatever place*, iii. 1. 32, 5. 3.

ὅποι, relative adv., *to what place, whither, where*, ii. 4. 19, iii. 5. 13.

ὁποῖος, ᾱ, ον, rel. pron. (cf. ποῖος), *of what kind, what sort of, of whatever kind*; as rel., ὁποῖόν τι, hardly different from ὅ τι, *whatever*, ii. 2. 2; in ind. quest., ii. 6. 4, iii. 1. 13.

ὁπόσος, η, ον, relative pron. (cf. πόσος), *of what size* or *number, as many as, as large as*, with ind., i. 1. 6, 2. 1, 10. 3; with ἄν and subj., ii. 5. 18, iii. 2. 21; in ind. questions, with ind. or opt., i. 8. 27, iv. 4. 17. Neuter as adv., ὁπόσον, *as far as*, with τοσοῦτον following, iii. 3. 10.

ὁπόταν, relative adv. (ὁπότε, ἄν), *whenever, when*, with subj., ii. 3. 27.

ὁπότε, relative adv., *when, at the time when, whenever*, i. 6. 7, iv. 7. 6; for the use with ἄν and subj., see ὁπόταν; with opt. in general cond. (iterative opt.), i. 2. 7, 5. 7, ii. 6. 27, iii. 4. 28, iv. 2. 26, 28, 5. 22; with opt. in ind. disc. or by attraction, iii. 2. 36, iv. 6. 20. The temporal sense passes into the causal, *when, now that*, becoming *since*, iii. 2. 2, 15.

ὁπότερος, ᾱ, ον, relative pron. (cf. πότερος), *which* of two, *whichever* (Lat. *uter*), iii. 4. 42; pl., *whichever side*, iii. 1. 42.

ὅπου, relative adv., *where, wherever*, with ind., i. 5. 8, iii. 1. 3, 2. 34; ὅπου μή, *except where*, i. 5. 9; οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐκ, *and everywhere*, iv. 5. 31; with subj., i. 3. 6, ii. 3. 26, iv. 8. 26; with opt. (iterative), i. 9. 15, 27, iii. 1. 32; iv. 5. 30; opt. in ind. disc., iv. 8. 26.

ὀπτός, ή, όν, *baked*, of bricks, ii. 4. 12.

ὅπως, relative adv. and conj. As adv., *in what way, as, how*, ii. 1. 6, and in the phrase οὐκ ἔστιν ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται, *it is not possible that he will not attack, he will certainly attack*, ii. 4. 3. In ind. questions, with indic., i. 6. 11; with ἄν and opt., ii. 5. 7, iii. 1. 7, iv. 3. 14. From the use of ὅπως in ind. questions, there is an easy transition to its use in so-called object clauses, which are used after verbs of planning and effort, to set forth the object aimed at; the mood is fut. ind., i. 1. 4, 3. 11, 4. 16, iii. 1. 14, 16, 18, iv. 6. 7, 10, 8. 9; but the subj. is also found, iii. 1. 38, 2. 3, iv. 6. 10, and the opt. after a past tense, i. 8. 13, ii. 6. 8; ὅπως with fut. ind. is used in exhortations without a verb of effort, ὅπως ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες, *see that you be men*, i. 7. 3. In ordinary clauses of purpose after verbs of various meanings ὅπως appears in the Anab. more frequently than either ἵνα or ὡς; with subj., i. 3. 14, 7. 4, iv. 6. 15, so even after a secondary tense, i. 6. 6, ii. 5. 28; with opt. i. 1. 6, 4. 5, ii. 1. 9, 18, 6. 21, iii. 1. 34, 5. 18, iv. 1. 22, 2. 2, etc.

ὁράω, ὄψομαι, 2 aor. εἶδον (see the word), ἑόρᾱκα, ἑώρᾱκα, ἑώρᾱμαι, ὤφθην (roots ὁρα-, ὀπ-, *Fιδ*; cf. Eng. *optic*, from ✓ὀπ), *see, look, view*, both in the physical sense and in the wider sense of *perceive, observe, consider*, abs., i. 3. 2, 9. 28, so parenthetically, ii. 1. 4, 12; with obj., i. 3. 12, 8. 13, 26, 10. 12, ii. 1. 16, 5. 33, iii. 2. 4, 37, iv. 7. 20; with acc. and participle, i. 8. 21, 9. 14, ii. 3. 12, 22, 5. 3, 18, iii. 1. 43, iv. 3. 21, 23; with ὅτι clause, ii. 2. 5; with acc. and rel. or interrog. clause, iii. 2. 4, 29, iv. 7. 11; with ind. question, ii. 5. 13, iii. 1. 15. The infs. ὁρᾶν, ὁρᾶσθαι, sometimes depend upon an adj. or adv. (cf. the Lat. supine in -ū), φοβερώτατον ὁρᾶν, *most dreadful to see*, iii. 4. 5, cf. ii. 3. 3, 6. 9.

ὀργή, ῆς, ἡ, *temper, character*; esp. *anger*; ὀργῇ, *in anger, in a passion*, i. 5. 8, ii. 6. 9.

ὀργίζομαι, ὀργιοῦμαι, ὠργισμαι, ὠργίσθην (cf. ὀργή), *be angry, incensed, enraged*, with διά and acc. of thing, or with dat. of person, i. 2. 26, 5. 11.

ὀργυιά, ᾶς, ἡ, also written ὀργυιά (ὀρέγω, *reach*), the *reach* of the arms, *a fathom*—that is, six Greek feet, or in English measure, five feet ten inches; i. 7. 14, iv. 5. 4.

ὄρθιος, ᾱ, ον (ὀρθός), *steep*, of a road or hill, i. 2. 21, iv. 1. 20, 2. 14. τὸ ὄρθιον, *steep ascent, incline*, so πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον, with verbs of motion, *up hill*, iv. 2. 3, 28, similarly in adv. acc., ὄρθιον ἰέναι, *march up hill*, iv. 6. 12. The word is used often in describing a certain military formation that Xen. considered very effective in storming heights, ὄρθιοι λόχοι, *companies in deep column, storming columns*, iv. 2. 11, 3. 17, 8. 10, 13–15. A company formed thus had its front very narrow in proportion to its depth. The advantages of this formation are discussed in iv. 8. 10–13. The manner in which a company was brought into this formation is illustrated in the commentary on iv. 2. 11.

ὀρθός, ή, όν, *upright, erect*, ii. 5. 23, iv. 8. 20. (Cf. Eng. *orthodox, orthography.*)

ὄρθρος, ου, ὁ, *the time just before sunrise, dawn, daybreak*, ii. 2. 21, iv. 3. 8.

ὀρθῶς, adv. (ὀρθός; cf. Lat. *recte, rightly*, from *rectus, straight, right*), *rightly, correctly, justly*, i. 9. 30, ii. 5. 6, iii. 3. 12; ὀρθῶς ἔχειν, *be right, be proper*, iii. 2. 7.

ὅρια, ων, τά (ὁρίζω), *limits, boundary, frontier*, iv. 8. 8.

ὁρίζω, -οριῶ, ὥρισα, ὥρικα, ὥρισμαι, ὡρίσθην (ὅρος, *boundary*), *limit, be the boundary of, bound*, with acc., iv. 3. 1, 8. 1. (Cf. Eng. *horizon.*)

ὅρκος, ου, ὁ, *oath*, ii. 5. 3, 41, iii. 1. 20; θεῶν ὅρκοι, *oaths by the gods*, ii. 5. 17, iii. 1. 22, 2. 10.

ὁρμάω, ὁρμήσω, etc. (ὁρμή), *start, hasten on*, iii. 4. 33, with δρόμῳ, *start in a run, start at full speed*, iv. 3. 31, with inf., iii. 4. 4; εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὁρμᾶν, *start in pursuit*, i. 8. 25; ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν, *start on the march into the interior*, iii. 1. 8. Mid., with aor. pass., *start, set out*, abs. or with various preps., i. 1. 9, 2. 5, 10. 1, ii. 1. 3, iii. 2. 24.

ὁρμέω (ὅρμος, *roadstead*), *be anchored, lie at anchor, be moored*, i. 4. 3, 6.

ὁρμή, ῆς, ἡ, *start, motion, impulse*; ἤδη ἐν ὁρμῇ ὄντων, *when they were already on the point of starting*, ii. 1. 3; of a military movement, *expedition*, iii. 1. 10; μιᾷ ὁρμῇ, *with one accord*, iii. 2. 9.

ὁρμίζω, ὁρμιοῦμαι, ὥρμισμαι, ὡρμίσθην (less frequent than aor. mid. ὡρμισάμην), *bring to anchor, anchor, moor*, iii. 5. 10.

ὀρνίθειος, ᾱ, ον (ὄρνις), *of birds*; κρέᾱ ὀρνίθεια, *fowl, chicken*, iv. 5. 31.

ὄρνις, ὄρνῑθος, ὁ, ἡ, *bird*, esp. *domestic fowl, chicken*, iv. 5. 25. (Cf. Eng. *ornithology, dinornis.*)

Ὀρόντᾱς, ᾱ, ὁ (Doric gen.), *Orontas*, a Persian noble, related to Artaxerxes, put to death by Cyrus for treachery, i. 6. 1 ff., 9. 29.

Ὀρόντᾱς, ᾱ, ὁ (Doric gen.), *Orontas*, a Persian nobleman, son-in-law of Artaxerxes and satrap of Armenia, ii. 4. 8, 9, 5. 40, iii. 4. 13, 5. 17, iv. 3. 4.

ὄρος, ους, τό, *mountain*, i. 2. 21, ii. 5. 18, iii. 4. 24, iv. 1. 5, 3. 31, etc.

ὀρυκτός, ή, όν (ὀρύττω), *dug, excavated*, of a ditch, i. 7. 14; εἴσοδος ὀρυκτή, *an entrance through a tunnel* or a *sunken passage*, iv. 5. 25.

ὀρύττω, -ορύξω, ὤρυξα, -ορώρυχα, ὀρώρυγμαι, ὠρύχθην, *dig*, of stone, *quarry*, i. 5. 5.

'Ορχομένιος, see **'Ερχομένιος.**

ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, rel. pron., *who, which, what,* i. 2. 1, 2. 20, ii. 1. 17, etc.; with **ἄν** and subj. in gen. cond., i. 3. 12, 15, 16, ii. 2. 20, iv. 3. 29; less often with opt., i. 3. 17. The antec. of the relative is frequently omitted, i. 2. 5, 3. 12, 6. 10, ii. 5. 27, iii. 1. 45; the relative is often attracted to the case of the omitted antec., i. 3. 4, 10, ii. 1. 16, 2. 18; this attraction sometimes takes place even when the antec. is expressed, as i. 7. 3. The antec. is attracted to the case of the rel., iii. 1. 6. In some cases the antec. is incorporated into the relative clause, i. 2. 1, 9. 14, iv. 4. 2. The rel. clause is occasionally placed before the antec., i. 8. 11, ii. 5. 22. **ὅς** is used in ind. questions, i. 9. 28, ii. 4. 18, iii. 3. 14, 4. 3, iv. 7. 11.——The old demonstrative use of **ὅς** appears in Attic writers chiefly in connection with **καί, καὶ ὅς,** *and he,* i. 8. 16, iii. 4. 48. Phrases: **ἀφ' οὗ,** *since,* iii. 2. 14; **μέχρι οὗ,** *to the point where,* i. 7. 6; **ἐν ᾧ,** *during which time, meanwhile, while,* i. 2. 20, ii. 2. 15.

ὅσιος, ᾱ, ον, *right* in the sight of the gods; hence of persons, *pious, righteous,* ii. 6. 25.

ὅσος, η, ον, relative pron., *as great as, as large as, as much as,* pl. *as many as,* i. 2. 1, 7. 5, 9. 20, 23, ii. 1. 11, iv. 7. 16; often (esp. after **πᾶς**) where Eng. would employ the simple relative *who,* i. 1. 2, 4. 10, ii. 5. 39. It is correlated with **τοσοῦτος,** ii. 1. 16, 4. 26, iii. 1. 36, 45, in which cases *as* or *that* is an adequate translation; in some cases the **ὅσον** following **τοσοῦτον,** or even **ὅσον** alone is followed by the inf., like **ὥστε,** and translated *that,* or else the phrase *enough . . . for* is used, iv. 1. 5, 8. 12. **ὅσος** is also used in ind. questions, *how great, how large, how many,* ii. 5. 10, iii. 1. 19; neut. acc. as adv., **ὅσον,** *as far as,* iii. 3. 15; of a sound, *as loud as,* iv. 5. 18; with numerals, *about,* i. 8. 6, iii. 4. 3, 37, iv. 5. 10, 7. 6; dat. **ὅσῳ** with comparatives to denote degree of difference, **ὅσῳ θᾶττον,** *the quicker,* i. 5. 9, **ὅσῳ πλείους ἐγίγνοντο,** *as the numbers increased,* iv. 7. 23.

ὁσοσπερ, ὁσηπερ, ὁσονπερ, relative pron. (**ὅσος**), *just as large as,* pl. *just as many as,* but (cf. **ὅσος**) after **πᾶς** and expressions of number to be translated by *who, which,* i. 7. 9, iv. 3. 2.

ὅσπερ, ἥπερ, ὅπερ, relative pron. (**ὅς**), *just who, just which, exactly the thing that,* yet often to be translated like simple **ὅς,** i. 4. 5, 6. 10, 9. 21, ii. 3. 19, 6. 29, iii. 1. 34, 2. 10; **ταὐτὰ ἅπερ,** *the same that, the same as,* ii. 1. 22.

ὄσπριον, ου, τό, *leguminous vegetable, pulse*; pl. *peas* or *beans,* iv. 4. 9, 5. 26.

ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ,τι, or written with spacing, **ὅ τι,** gen. **οὑτινος** or **ὅτου** (more common in Anab.), **ἧστινος,** general relative pron. (**ὅς,** indef. **τις**), *whoever, whichever, whatever,* i. 1. 5, 3. 12, iii. 1. 26, 2. 9; esp. common in gen. conditions with **ἄν** and subj. or with opt., i. 3. 5, 6, 4. 15, 8. 10, 9. 13, etc.; in sing. referring to a plural antecedent, i. 1. 5; **ὅστις** is often to be translated just like **ὅς,** *who, which, what,* i. 3. 18, ii. 6. 6, so in passages where **ὅστις** with a future indic. has an idea of purpose, i. 3. 14, ii. 3. 4, and where it has an idea of cause, *since he, in that he,* ii. 6. 6, iii. 2. 4, cf. ii. 5. 39; following **οὕτω, ὅστις** has the notion of result, like **ὥστε,** ii. 5. 12, cf. § 21 and the note. Forms of **ὅστις** are common in ind. questions, i. 3. 11, 5. 16, 8. 21, ii. 1. 2, 23, 2. 2; so **ὅ,τι** in sense of *why,* ii. 4. 7. Note the phrases **ὅστις δή,** *somebody or other,* iv. 7. 25; **ἔστιν**

τί σε ἠδίκησα; *Have I done you any wrong?* i. 6. 7; *οὐκ ἔστιν ὅτου ἕνεκα*, *there is no reason why*, ii. 2. 23; *ἔστιν ὅστις*, *somebody*, i. 8. 20.

ὅταν, relative adv. (*ὅτε*, *ἄν*), *when*, *whenever*, with subj., iii. 2. 10, 3. 15, 4. 20, iv. 3. 28, 5. 36.

ὅτε, relative adv., *at the time when*, *when*, *while*, freq. with impf. ind., i. 2. 9, 4. 2, 8. 8, ii. 2. 21, 6. 20, iii. 1. 27, 4. 8, etc.; less often with aor., ii. 6. 9; with iterative opt., *whenever*, *as often as*, ii. 6. 12, iv. 1. 16; *ἔστ' ὅτε*, *at times*, *now and then*, ii. 6. 9.

ὅτι, conj. (really neut. of *ὅστις*), *that*, used in introducing indirect quotations, with ind. or (after a secondary tense) opt., i. 2. 21, 3. 9, 6. 10, ii. 1. 8, 17, iii. 1. 2, 10, iv. 1. 7; with impf. indic. after past tense, i. 2. 21, ii. 2. 5, 15, 3. 6, iii. 1. 2; *ὅτι* is sometimes used with direct quotations, i. 6. 7, 8, ii. 4. 16. Introducing causal sentences, *because*, i. 2. 21, 3. 3, 5. 14, ii. 1. 2, 3. 19, iii. 1. 5, iv. 1. 19, 6. 2; *ὅτι* is used to strengthen superlatives, *ὅτι ἀπαρασκευότατον*, *as unprepared as possible*, i. 1. 6, cf. § 11, iii. 1. 45, 4. 5, iv. 3. 29.

οὐ, before vowels *οὐκ*, before rough breathing *οὐχ*, negative adv., used in denying a fact, *not*, i. 1. 8, ii. 3. 9, iii. 3. 6, etc.; standing alone in answers, *no*, i. 6. 7. It is accented at the end of sentences or clauses, i. 4. 13, 6. 7, iv. 6. 2, 8. 3. In questions it expects the answer *yes*, like Lat. *nonne*, iii. 1. 29. In the figure called litotes, an emphatic statement is made by denying the contrary, i. 8. 14, ii. 1. 13, 6. 15. For the use of *οὐ μή*, see *μή*; for *οὔ φημι*, see *φημί*.

οὗ, relative adv. (really gen. of *ὅς*), *where*, *in which place*, sometimes with an idea of preceding motion, *to the place where*, i. 2. 22, 7. 6, ii. 1. 6, iii. 4. 32, iv. 5. 6, 7. 27; for *μέχρι οὗ*, see *ὅς*.

οὗ, dat. *οἷ* (the only sing. form found in the Anab.), personal and reflexive pronoun (stem *σϝε*, cf. Lat. *sē* and *suus*), used in Anab. only as a reflexive, and almost always as an indirect reflexive; *him*, *himself*, pl. *themselves*, so *οἷ*, i. 1. 8, 9. 29, iii. 4. 42, *σφῶν*, iii. 5. 16, iv. 3. 28, *σφίσι*, i. 7. 8, 8. 2, iv. 3. 12, 23.

οὐδαμόθεν, adv. (*οὐδαμός*, *not one*, cf. *οὐδέ*), *from no place* or *direction*, ii. 4. 23, iv. 5. 30.

οὐδαμοῦ, adv. (cf. *οὐδαμόθεν*), *nowhere*, *in no place*, i. 10. 16, ii. 2. 18, iii. 1. 38, iv. 5. 18, 6. 11.

οὐδέ, neg. conj. and adv. (*οὐ*, *δέ*), *and not*, *nor*, *but not*, following a neg. clause, i. 2. 25, 3. 3, 6. 11, iii. 1. 11, iv. 1. 8, 7. 2; *not even*, i. 3. 21, 6. 8, ii. 1. 11, 2. 11, iii. 4. 15, iv. 3. 12; *not at all*, *by no means*, i. 3. 12, cf. ii. 5. 18; *οὐδὲ ὑμεῖς*, *nor you*, *either* (any more than I), iii. 1. 15, cf. ii. 5. 16; with ptc. *οὐδέ* may be rendered *without*, iii. 1. 2, 2. 22; *οὐδὲ ἄλλος δέ*, *nor even any other*, i. 8. 20.

οὐδείς, *οὐδεμία*, *οὐδέν*, gen. *οὐδενός*, *οὐδεμιᾶς* (*οὐδέ*, *εἷς*), *not even one*, *not any*, *none*, *no*, i. 3. 11, 5. 2, ii. 2. 18, 5. 1, iv. 1. 9; as subst., *οὐδείς*, *nobody*, i. 2. 22, 8. 20, 9. 18, iii. 1. 16; *οὐδέν*, *nothing*, i. 8. 20, ii. 2. 11; neuter adverbially, *in no respect*, *by no means*, *not at all*, i. 1. 8, 6. 7, ii. 3. 15, iv. 2. 4; with comparatives *οὐδὲν μᾶλλον*, *not a bit more*, iii. 1. 11, 13.

οὐδέποτε, adv. (*οὐδέ*, *ποτέ*), *never*, ii. 6. 13.

οὔθ', see *οὔτε*.

οὐκ, see *οὐ*.

οὐκέτι, adv. (*οὐκ*, *ἔτι*), *no longer*, *no more*, i. 8. 17, 10. 1, 12, ii. 6. 3, 11, iii. 4. 16; *οὐκέτι μή*, with subj., like *οὐ μή*, see *μή*.

οὔκουν, inferential particle (*οὐκ*, *οὖν*), *therefore not*, *not then*, iii. 5. 6.

οὐκοῦν, interrogative and inferential particle (*οὐκ, οὖν*); in questions, expecting the answer *yes, not therefore ?* cf. Lat. *nonne igitur*, i. 6. 7, ii. 5. 24; in statements, *then, therefore*, iii. 2. 19.

οὖν, postpositive inferential particle, *therefore, so, accordingly, then*, i. 1. 2, 2. 14, 15, 5. 6, ii. 1. 17, 2. 17, iii. 2. 30, iv. 3. 8; *sometimes* to be translated *now*, esp. when it introduces a fuller discussion of a topic previously touched upon, i. 1. 6, ii. 1. 12, 4. 19, iii. 3. 19; after an interruption *οὖν* is used in resuming the thread of the discourse, much as the words *I say* are used in English, i. 5. 14, iii. 1. 20; *δ'οὖν* is used in returning from a doubtful statement or a mere rumor to undisputed facts, *however that may be, at any rate, but the fact remains that . . .*, i. 2. 12, 22, 25, 3. 5, 10. 8, ii. 4. 6; *καὶ γὰρ οὖν*, lit. *and so for*, introduces a consequence that confirms and illustrates a preceding statement, *and this is proved by the result, for . . ., and so of course*, i. 9. 8, 12, 17, ii. 6. 13.

οὗπερ, relative adv. (*οὗ*, cf. *ὅσπερ*), *just where, the very place where*, iv. 8. 26.

οὔποτε, negative adv. (*οὐ, ποτέ*), *never*, i. 3. 5, ii. 5. 7, iii. 1. 3, 19.

οὔπω, negative adv. (*οὐ, πώ*), *not yet*, i. 5. 12, 8. 8, iv. 3. 19; sometimes, apparently, merely equivalent to a strong *οὐ*, as i. 9. 25.

οὐπώποτε, negative adv. (*οὐ, πώποτε*), *never yet, never before*, i. 4. 18.

οὐρᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ (cf. Eng. *cynosure, squirrel*, from *σκίουρος, shade-tail*, Lat. *sciūrus*), *tail* of an animal; of an army, *rear*, iii. 4. 38, 42.

οὐρᾱγός, οῦ, ὁ (*οὐρᾶ, ἄγω*), *rear-leader, file-closer*, the last man in a file, who became leader of the file after a face about, iii. 4. 38, 42.

οὐρανός, οῦ, ὁ, the *heavens, sky*, iv. 2. 2. (Cf. Eng. *uranography.*)

οὖς, *ὠτός, τό* (akin to Lat. *auris, ear, ausculto, listen*, Eng. *ear*), *ear*, iii. 1. 31. (Cf. Eng. *otology.*)

οὔτε, neg. conj. (*οὐ, τέ*), *and not*; repeated, *οὔτε . . . οὔτε, neither . . . nor*, i. 2. 26, 3. 6, 9. 3, ii. 2. 18, 5. 7, iii. 1. 15; with ptc., *without*, i. 4. 14; *οὔτε . . . τε, not . . . and, not only not . . . but*, ii. 5. 4, iv. 3. 6, 5. 28.

οὗτος, *αὕτη, τοῦτο*, demonstrative pron., *this*, generally referring to what precedes, in pred. position when used with a noun, but very frequently alone, *οὗτος, this man, τοῦτο, this (thing, fact*, etc.), i. 1. 7, 2. 3, 9. 9, ii. 5. 36, iii. 1. 27, 4. 29, iv. 2. 6, 6. 3, 8. 26; occasionally it refers to something that is to follow, iii. 1. 7, 2. 17; the art. is omitted in iv. 2. 6, but an intervening relative clause makes it unnecessary. Noteworthy is the use of *καὶ οὗτος, he too, even he, καὶ οὗτοι, these also, i. e.* as well as others mentioned, i. 1. 11, ii. 6. 30, iii. 2. 5, iv. 7. 9; cf. *καὶ τούτων πονηρῶν*, "*and bad men at that*," "*villains to boot*," ii. 5. 21; *καὶ ταῦτα*, with concessive force, *although*, exactly like the Eng. colloquial phrase "*and that*," i. 4. 12, ii. 4. 15. For *ἐκ τούτου, ἐν τούτῳ*, see the respective prepositions.

οὑτοσί, *αὑτηί, τουτί*, dem. pron., stronger than *οὗτος*, applied to things present and indicating a gesture (deictic use), i. 6. 6.

οὕτως, or *οὕτω*, the latter form generally before consonants (not always, cf. i. 1. 10), adv. (*οὗτος*), *in this way, thus, so, to such a degree, under such circumstances*, usually referring to something that precedes, i. 1. 9, 10. 19, ii. 2. 5, iii. 4. 8, 12; used as antec. of *ὥστε, ὥσπερ, ὅστις*, i. 1. 5, 3. 9, ii. 5. 12; referring to what follows, ii. 2. 2, iv. 6. 10; following its adj. iv. 8. 26; accompanied by a gesture, iv. 7. 4.

οὐχί, negative adv., stronger form of **οὐ**, *not*, iii. 1. 13.

ὀφείλω, ὀφειλήσω, ὠφείλησα and 2 aor. ὤφελον, ὠφείληκα, ὠφειλήθην (**ὄφελος**), *owe*, pass., *be owing, be due*, i. 2. 11; with inf., *be bound, be obliged, ought*; so **ὤφελον** with inf. expresses an unattainable wish, **ὤφελε Κῦρος ζῆν**, *would that Cyrus were alive!* lit., *Cyrus ought to be alive*, ii. 1. 4.

ὄφελος, τό, only nom. and acc., *help, benefit, advantage, use*; **οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε ἰδιώτου ὄφελος οὐδέν**, *neither general nor private is of any use*, i. 3. 11, cf. ii. 6. 10.

ὀφθαλμός, οῦ, ὁ, *eye*, i. 8. 27, 9. 13, iv. 5. 12, 13; **ἔχειν τινὰ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς**, *keep anybody in sight*, iv. 5. 29. (Cf. Eng. *ophthalmia*.)

ὀχετός, οῦ, ὁ (**ὀχέω**), *ditch, channel* for irrigation, ii. 4. 13.

ὀχέω, fut. **ὀχήσω**, apparently only pres. and impf. in Attic (akin to Lat. *veho, carry*), *carry*; mid., *be carried, ride*, **ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχεῖσθαι**, *ride horseback*, iii. 4. 47.

ὄχημα, ατος, τό (**ὀχέω**), *that which carries, vehicle, carriage*, applied to the earth, iii. 2. 19.

ὄχθη, ης, ἡ, *height, hill*, esp. the *high bank* of a stream, *cliff, bluff*, iv. 3. 3, 5, 17, 23. (Poetic word.)

ὄχλος, ου, ὁ, *crowd, multitude, throng*, ii. 5. 9, iv. 1. 20; esp. the crowd of *non-combatants* that accompany an army, *camp-followers*, iii. 2. 36, 3. 6, 4. 26, iv. 3. 15, 26; hence, as resulting from a crowd and turmoil, *annoyance, bother*, **ὄχλον παρέχειν**, *give trouble, be a bother*, iii. 2. 27.

ὀχυρός, ά, όν (**ἔχω**), *tenable, easily defensible, strong, secure*, i. 2. 22, 24; as subst. **τὰ ὀχυρά**, *strongholds*, iv. 7. 17.

ὀψέ, adv., *late*, ii. 2. 16, iii. 4. 36, iv. 5. 5, 10.

ὄψεσθαι, see **ὁράω**.

ὀψίζω, ὤψισθην (**ὀψέ**), *be late, come late*, iv. 5. 5.

ὄψις, εως, ἡ (√**οπ**, see **ὁράω**), *sight, appearance, aspect, look*, ii. 3. 15. (Cf. Eng. *optic, Thanatopsis*.)

Π

παγκράτιον, ου, τό (**πᾶς, κράτος**), *pancratium*, an athletic contest which, as the name implies, demanded the exercise of all the contestant's powers. It consisted of a combination of boxing and wrestling, with certain variations from the rules that governed these contests when carried on singly. Thus no thongs (**ἱμάντες**, Lat. *caestus*) were used to guard the hand, because these would have interfered with the hold in wrestling, and blows were given with the back of the half-open hand, not with the clenched fist. The wrestling in the **παγκράτιον** differed from ordinary wrestling (**πάλη**) in that the result was not determined by a fixed number of falls, but the struggle continued on the ground until one of the contestants acknowledged himself defeated or was completely disabled. The contest was a severe and sometimes brutal one, even throttling an antagonist being within its rules. A fatal outcome was therefore not infrequent. iv. 8. 27. See Fig. 42.

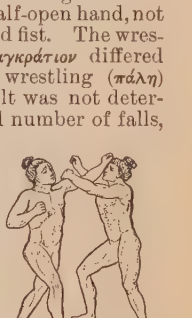


FIG. 42.

παγχαλέπως, adv. (**πᾶν, χαλεπῶς**), *with the greatest difficulty*, iii. 3. 13.

παθεῖν, see **πάσχω**.

πάθος, ους, τό (√**παθ**, see **πάσχω**), *suffering, misfortune, unpleasant experience, trouble, matter*, i. 5. 14,

iv. 2. 7. (Cf. Eng. *pathos, sympathy, pathology.*)

παιᾱνίζω, ἐπαιάνισα (**παιάν**), *sing a paean*, i. 8. 17, 10. 10, iii. 2. 9, iv. 3. 19, 29, 31, iv. 8. 16. The paean was originally a hymn addressed to Apollo or Artemis, but the name was extended to hymns sung at banquets, and also very frequently to war-songs, which are meant in the Anab. in most of the places where the verb occurs. The use of the paean in solemn thanksgiving for a favorable omen is illustrated in iii. 2. 9.

παιδείᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (**παιδεύω**), *early training, education*, iv. 6. 15, 16. (Cf. Eng. *encyclopaedia.*)

παιδεύω, παιδεύσω, etc. (**παῖς**), *bring up a child, educate*, i. 9. 2, 3.

παιδικά, ῶν, τά (**παῖς**), *favorite*, ii. 6. 6, 28.

παιδίον, ου, τό (**παῖς**), *little child, infant*, iv. 7. 13.

παιδίσκη, ης, ἡ (**παῖς**), *young girl, maiden*, iv. 3. 11.

παῖς, παιδός, ὁ, ἡ, *child, boy, girl, son, daughter*, also sometimes *slave, servant* (the sing. as fem. not in Anab.), i. 1. 1, 7. 9, 9. 2, 3, ii. 6. 12, iii. 1. 3, iv. 1. 8, 5. 33, 6. 3; **ἐκ παίδων**, *from boyhood*, iv. 6. 14. (Cf. Eng. *pedagogue.*)

παίω, παίσω and **παιήσω, ἔπαισα, -πέπαικα, ἐπαίσθην** (the fut. and aor. of this verb are chiefly poetical, prose writers, except Xen., using the corresponding forms of the verbs **τύπτω** and **πατάσσω**, *beat, strike*; the aor. pass. is poetical), *strike, hit, beat*, abs. or with acc., i. 8. 26, 27, 10. 7, ii. 3. 11, iii. 1. 29, 2. 19, 4. 49, iv. 6. 2; intrans., of a rolling stone, *dash, strike*, with **πρός** and acc., iv. 2. 3. (Cf. Eng. *anapaest.*)

πάλαι, adv., *formerly, long ago, long since, for a long time*, i. 4. 12, iv. 8. 14; **οἱ πάλαι ἥκοντες**, *the first arrivals, early comers*, iv. 5. 5.

παλαιός, ά, όν (**πάλαι**), *ancient, old*, iv. 4. 9; comp. *oldish, rather old*, iv. 5. 35; neut. as adv., **τὸ παλαιόν**, *in ancient times, formerly*, iii. 4. 7. (Cf. Eng. *palaeontology, palaeography.*)

παλαίω, ἐπάλαισα, ἐπαλαίσθην (**πάλη**), *wrestle*, iv. 8. 26. (Cf. Eng. *palaestra.*)

πάλη, πάλης, ἡ (cf. **πάλλω**, *shake, swing*; acc. to others, connected with **παλάμη**, *hand*), *wrestling*, iv. 8. 27. Two kinds of wrestling were recognized by the Greeks. In the first, **πάλη ὀρθή**, or upright wrestling, the contestants stood nearly upright facing each other and watching for an opening. Much depended on the hold gained at the beginning of the bout, and various tricks were employed in order to induce one's opponent to expose himself to a sudden attack. Fig. 43 shows

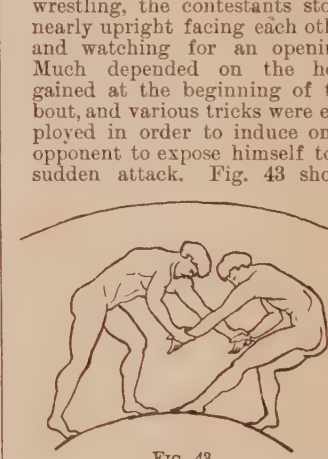


Fig. 43.

the opening of a wrestling match. The usual tricks of tripping and lifting the opponent from the ground were freely used. Three falls decided the contest. In the second kind of wrestling (**ἀλίνδησις**, lit. *rolling*), the contest continued on the ground until one of the wrestlers acknowledged himself beaten. The second form was employed in the **παγκράτιον**, *q. v.*

πάλιν, adv., *back, backward*, i. 1. 3, 3. 16, 4. 7, 10. 8, ii. 3. 24, iii. 1. 7,

iv. 3. 12, 20, 8. 28; *again, a second time*, i. 5. 2, 6. 7, 8, 10. 6, ii. 1. 23, 4. 3, iii. 1. 29, 2. 9, iv. 2. 13. (Cf. Eng. *palinode, palingenesis, palimpsest.*)

παλλακίς, ίδος, ἡ, *mistress, concubine*, i. 10. 2.

παλτόν, οῦ, τό (πάλλω, *shake, poise*), *javelin, lance, spear*, i. 5. 15, 8. 3, 27. The name is applied in the Anab. only to the javelins of the Persians.

παμπληθής, ές (πᾶς, πλῆθος), *in full numbers, vast, very numerous*, iii. 3. 11.

πάμπολυς, πόλλη, πολυ (πᾶς, πολύς), *very great, very large, enormous;* pl., *very many*; ii. 4. 26, iii. 4. 13, iv. 1. 8, 6. 26.

πανοῦργος, ον (πᾶς, ν Fεργ in ἔργον), *that will do anything, capable of any crime, unscrupulous, villainous, wicked*, ii. 5. 39, 6. 26.

παντάπᾶσι, before vowels -σιν, adv. (πᾶς), *entirely, absolutely, altogether*, i. 2. 1, ii. 5. 21, iii. 4. 26, iv. 5. 3; with a neg., *absolutely not, not at all*, ii. 5. 18, iii. 1. 31, 38, iv. 2. 3.

πανταχοῦ, adv. (πᾶς), *everywhere*, ii. 6. 7, iv. 5. 30.

παντελῶς, adv. (πᾶς, τέλος), *completely, utterly*, ii. 2. 11.

πάντῃ, adv. (πᾶς), *on every side, in every direction, everywhere*, i. 2. 22, ii. 3. 3, 5. 7, iii. 1. 2.

παντοδαπός, ή, όν (πᾶς), *of every sort, of all kinds*, i. 2. 22, iv. 4. 9.

πάντοθεν, adv. (πᾶς), *from all sides* or *directions*, also, *on all sides*, iii. 1. 12.

παντοῖος, ᾱ, ον (πᾶς), *of all sorts, of every variety*, i. 5. 2, ii. 4. 14.

πάνυ, adv. (πᾶς), *altogether, very, quite, very much* (with verbs), i. 4. 10, 5. 7, 8. 25, ii. 2. 3, 5. 19, 27, iii. 4. 15, iv. 5. 27, 7. 14; for **οὐ πάνυ** in litotes, cf. **οὐ** at end; **πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ**, *very opportunely*, iii. 1. 39.

πάομαι (pres. not in use), **πᾱσομαι, ἐπᾱσάμην, πέπᾱμαι**, *acquire*, perf. *possess, have*, i. 9. 19, iii. 3. 18. The verb is poetic, occurring in Xenophon alone of prose authors.

παρά, elided **παρ'**, prep. with gen., dat., and acc.; used most frequently with persons. With gen., *from beside, from*, with expressions of motion, as *come, go, send*, etc., i. 3. 7, 7. 2, 9. 29, ii. 1. 6, 7, 17, iv. 5. 10; also with verbs of *asking, receiving, obtaining, reporting*, etc., i. 3. 16, 6. 7, ii. 1. 20, 3. 18, 26, 28, 6. 2, 28, iii. 4. 8, iv. 7. 27; with substantive expressions implying source or motion, **οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως**, *people coming from the king, courtiers*, i. 1. 5; cf. 4. 3, ii. 4. 24, **ἡ παρ' ἐκείνου τῑμωρίᾱ**, *punishment at his hands*, ii. 6. 14; for the phrase **τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως** and the like, see the article **δ. παρά** with a pass. expresses agency, *by*, a use rare in Attic prose, i. 9. 1; in ii. 1. 7 the ideas of agency and motion are blended.

With dat., almost always with persons, *beside, in the presence of, with*, i. 1. 5, 3. 7, 4. 3, 8. 27, ii. 2. 1, 20, 6. 26, iv. 1. 24, 3. 29; **παρὰ βασιλεῖ**, *with the king, at court*, i. 2. 27, 9. 29; **τὰ παρ' ἐμοί**, *my service, what I can offer you*, i. 7. 4; **τὰ παρ' ἑαυτῷ**, *his side*, iv. 3. 27.

With acc., *to a position beside, to the side of, to, toward*, of persons, i. 2. 12, 17, 3. 7, ii. 2. 3, 8, 4. 18, iv. 3. 13, 27; so with **γράφει ἐπιστολήν**, i. 6. 3; rarely in sense of *to* with the name of a thing, a usage occurring elsewhere only in poetry, ii. 4. 17; on the other hand, **παρά** implying extent beside, in the sense of *along, along by, beside*, is frequent with acc. of thing, i. 2. 13, 24, 4. 3, 5. 5, 7. 15, 10. 7, ii. 4. 14, iii. 5. 1, iv. 3. 6. For **παρ' ἀσπίδα**, see **ἀσπίς**. In the sense of *against, contrary to, in contravention of*, i. 9. 8, ii. 1. 18, 4. 5, 5. 41, iii. 2. 10. Of time, *at*,

during, ii. 3. 15. In composition παρά signifies *to, toward, along, beside, against.*

παραβαίνω (βαίνω), *step beyond, transgress, violate*, of a treaty [iv. 1. 1].

παραβοηθέω (βοηθέω), *come up to aid, go to help*, iv. 7. 24.

παραγγέλλω (ἀγγέλλω), *send* or *pass a message along*, esp. *pass an order along*, a technical term used of the action of a commander in issuing to his subordinate officers orders that they, in turn, are to pass along the ranks to the men; it is also used of orders sent to a distance by messengers; hence, in general, *send word, give orders, command.* The verb is abs., i. 8. 16, iii. 5. 18; has an object acc., i. 8. 15, iv. 3. 27; occurs with simple inf., iii. 4. 14, iv. 1. 16; with dat. and inf., i. 1. 6, 2. 1, 8. 3, iv. 3. 9, 29, 6. 8; with dat. alone (inf. understood), iv. 3. 17; with acc. and inf., ii. 2. 21, iii. 5. 18. Pass., παρήγγελτο, *orders had been given*, with relative clause, iii. 4. 3; κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα, *according to orders*, ii. 2. 8. Phrase παραγγέλλει εἰς τὰ ὅπλα, *he gives the order "To arms!"* i. 5. 3.

παράγγελσις, εως, ἡ (παραγγέλλω), *order, command*; ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως, *at the word of command*, iv. 1. 5.

παραγίγνομαι (γίγνομαι), *be present, present oneself, arrive at, come to*, abs. or with εἰς and acc. or ἐν and dat., i. 1. 11, 2. 3, 7. 12, iii. 4. 38.

παράγω (ἄγω), *lead along, lead on, conduct*, iii. 4. 21, iv. 8. 8; *lead to one side*, εἰς τὰ πλάγια παράγειν, *lead into position on the flanks*, iii. 4. 14; παρ' ἀσπίδα παράγειν τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, *re-form* (a company) *in line of battle by leading the enomoty to the left*, that is, change from a formation in which one enomoty marches behind another to the regular line of battle by halting the first enomoty, then moving the second to the left to a position beside the first, and so until the whole company has a depth of only one enomoty; see note on iv. 3. 26. A similar movement is meant by the phrase παράγειν τοὺς λόχους, iv. 6. 6, except that in this case the whole army had been marching in a deep, narrow column (κατὰ κέρας), company behind company, and the writer is thinking of the companies as a whole, not the individual enomoties, as the factors in the maneuver.

παράδεισος, ου, ὁ (Persian word; Avestan *pairidaeza*, *enclosure*), *park, game-preserve*, i. 2. 7, 9, 4. 10, ii. 4. 14, 16.

παραδίδωμι (δίδωμι), *give over, turn over, surrender, entrust*, usually with obj. acc. and dat. of person, ii. 1. 8, 9, 12, 3. 1, iii. 1. 27, 4. 2, iv. 2. 1, 6. 1, 8. 26; with inf. of purpose, iv. 5. 22.

παραδραμεῖν, see παρατρέχω.

παραθαρρύνω (θαρρύνω), *encourage, cheer up*, ii. 4. 1, iii. 1. 39.

παραθέω (θέω), *run by, run past*, iv. 7. 12.

παραινέω, παραινέσω, παρήνεσα, παρήνεκα, παρήνημαι, παρηνέθην (αἰνέω, *praise*, rare in prose), *advise, exhort*, i. 7. 2.

παρακαλέω (καλέω), *call to* or *toward, summon, invite*, i. 6. 5, 6, ii. 5. 31, iii. 1. 32, iv. 7. 11; *exhort, encourage*, iii. 1. 36, 44; with ἐπί and acc., iii. 1. 24.

παρακελεύομαι (κελεύω), *urge, exhort, encourage*, abs., or with dat. or inf. or both, i. 7. 9, 8. 11, iii. 4. 46, 48, iv. 2. 11, 7. 20.

παρακέλευσις, εως, ἡ (παρακελεύομαι), *encouraging, cheering on*, iv. 8. 28.

παρακολουθέω (ἀκολουθέω, ἀκολουθήσω, etc., *accompany, follow*), *follow along, accompany*, iii. 3. 4, iv. 4. 7.

παραλῡπέω (λῡπέω), *offend, annoy, give trouble, be refractory*, ii. 5. 29.

παραμείβομαι (ἀμείβω, ἀμείψω, ἤμειψα, -ημείφθην, *change*), *change one's position, pass, pass by*, i. 10. 10.

παραμελέω (ἀμελέω), *disregard, set at naught, neglect*, ii. 5. 7.

παραμένω (μένω), *stay beside, remain in, remain loyal*, ii. 6. 2.

παραμηρίδιον, ου, τό (μηρός, *thigh*); pl., *armor for the thighs, thigh-pieces, cuisses*, i. 8. 6.

παραπέμπω (πέμπω), *send along, despatch*, of troops, iv. 5. 20.

παραπλήσιος, α, ον, and **ος, ον** (πλήσιος), *close to*, hence *resembling, similar, like*, with dat., i. 3. 18, 5. 2.

παραρρέω (ῥέω), *flow beside*, hence *slip off, drop off*, of melting snow, iv. 4. 11.

παρασάγγης, ου, ὁ (Persian word, cf. modern Persian *farsang*), *parasang*, a Persian measure of distance, i. 2. 5, 5. 1, ii. 4. 10, iii. 4. 10, iv. 4. 1, etc. The parasang is usually reckoned as equivalent to 30 stadia, or nearly three and one-third miles; so in ii. 2. 6, which passage, however, is probably an interpolation by a later hand. It is likely that the Persians, and perhaps Xenophon also, used the term *parasang* like the modern *farsang*, that is, not of a fixed distance, but loosely, with reference to the time required for a journey (cf. the German *Stunde, hour*); so that the parasang might be longer in level country than where the road was steep and rough.

παρασκευάζω (σκευάζω, σκευάσω, ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, -εσκευάσθην, *prepare*), *prepare, make ready, provide*, ii. 6. 8; mid., *prepare oneself, make oneself ready;* in tenses of past or completed action, *be ready*; with εἰς or ἐπί and acc., i. 8. 1, iii. 1. 36; with fut. ptc., with or without ὡς, i. 10. 6, iv. 4. 18; with ὅπως clause, or acc. and ὅπως clause, iii. 1. 14, iv. 6. 10; *prepare for oneself, procure, provide*, i. 9. 27, 10. 18, iii. 1. 16, iv. 8. 25.

παρασκευή, ῆς, ἡ (cf. παρασκευάζω), *preparation*, esp. military preparation, *armament*, i. 2. 4.

παρασκηνάω (or -έω ?), represented by aor. παρεσκηνήσαμεν, *encamped beside*, with dat., iii. 1. 28.

παρατάττω (τάττω), *arrange beside, draw up side by side*; pf. ptc. pass., *drawn up in battle array, in line of battle*, i. 10. 10, iv. 3. 3, 6. 25, 8. 3, 9.

παρατείνω (τείνω), *stretch along, extend, prolong*, said of a ditch, i. 7. 15.

παρατίθημι (τίθημι), *set beside, place by;* of food, *put on the table, set before, serve*, iv. 5. 30, 31.

παρατρέχω (τρέχω), *run along, run toward*, iv. 5. 8; *run past, run across*, with acc., iv. 7. 6, 7; with εἰς and acc., iv. 7. 11.

παρεγγυάω (ἐγγυάω, ἠγγύησα, ἠγγύηκα, ἠγγύημαι, -ηγγυήθην, *pledge*), *entrust*; hence in military language, *pass a command along* from man to man (cf. παραγγέλλω), *give orders*, with inf., iv. 8. 16; also without the notion of command, *pass the word along, suggest*, iv. 7. 24, 25; pass., ὅτε παρεγγυῷτο, *whenever the word was passed*, iv. 1. 17.

πάρειμι (εἰμί), *be beside, be present, be at hand, be there, have come, have arrived*, i. 1. 1, 2, 4. 8, 7. 5, ii. 5. 13, 23, iv. 3. 9; with dat., *be present with, join, present oneself to, report to*, i. 4. 2, iii. 1. 46; or the dat. may be possessive and the combination be rendered *have*, ii. 3. 9, iii. 2. 18, cf. ii. 6. 14, iii. 1. 17; with εἰς and acc., *come to, present oneself at*, i. 2. 2. Part. as subst., οἱ παρόντες, *those present, the bystanders, spectators*, i. 5. 15, 6. 9, ii. 3. 19, 4. 19, 6. 7, 8; ἐν τῷ παρόντι, *in the present situation*, ii. 5. 8, τὰ παρόντα, *the present*

state of affairs, present circumstances, iii. 1. 34, 2. 2, 3, iv. 1. 26. **πάρεστι**, with inf., like **ἔστι**, *it is possible*, iv. 5. 6.

πάρειμι (**εἶμι**), *go to* or *toward, come up, come along*, i. 10. 16, iii. 4. 48, iv. 5. 20; *pass by, go by*, iii. 4. 37, iv. 2. 13, iv. 7. 4, 5, 12; with acc., iv. 5. 30. **οἱ παριόντες**, *passers-by*, iii. 2. 35.

παρελαύνω (**ἐλαύνω**), *drive past, ride by*, with **ἐπί** and gen., also with direct obj., i. 2. 16, 17, 8. 12, 14, iii. 4. 46, 5. 4; of soldiers, *march by*, i. 2. 16.

παρέρχομαι (**ἔρχομαι**), *go past, pass by, pass along, go through*, abs. or with acc., i. 4. 4, 7. 16, 8. 10, 10. 6, ii. 4. 12, 25, iii. 4. 39, iv. 1. 17, 25, 2. 12, 7. 11; of time, *pass, elapse*, i. 7. 18, cf. **πόνοι παρεληλυθότες**, *past hardships*, iv. 3. 2.

παρετέτατο, see **παρατείνω**.

παρέχω (**ἔχω**), *hold ready, provide, supply, furnish, afford*, with acc., ii. 3. 24, 27, 4. 5, 9, iii. 1. 2, 5. 9, iv. 6. 13; *offer, give over*, with inf. of purpose, ii. 1. 11, 3. 22; *cause, occasion, give rise to*, with obj. acc. and sometimes dat. of person, ii. 4. 10, 12, iii. 1. 18, 2. 27; so esp. in the phrase **πράγματα παρέχειν**, *give trouble, annoy, injure*, with dat., i. 1. 11, iv. 1. 22, 2. 27; with pred. adj., *make, render*, ii. 3. 26, 5. 13, 18. Mid., with pred. ptc., *render* (for oneself), *make* (what is one's own), ii. 6. 27.

παρθένος, **ου**, **ἡ**, *maiden, virgin*, iii. 2. 25. (Cf. *Parthenon.*)

πάροδος, **ου**, **ἡ** (**ὁδός**), *way by, passage, pass*, i. 4. 4, 5, 7. 15, 16, iv. 2. 24, 7. 4.

παροίχομαι (**οἴχομαι**), *be gone by, be past*; **τὰ παροιχόμενα**, *bygones, the past*, ii. 4. 1.

Παρράσιος, **ου**, **ὁ**, *Parrhasian, native of Parrhasia*, a town and district of southwestern Arcadia, i. 1. 2, iv. 1. 27.

Παρύσατις, **ιδος**, **ἡ**, *Parysatis*, daughter of Artaxerxes I., half-sister and wife of Darius Nothus, and mother of Artaxerxes II. and Cyrus the Younger, i. 1. 1, 4. 9, 7. 9, ii. 4. 27. She espoused the cause of Cyrus in the quarrel between the two brothers, and saved his life by her intercession, i. 1. 3, 4.

πᾶς, **πᾶσα**, **πᾶν**, gen. **παντός**, **πάσης**, **παντός**, *all*, usually in pred. pos., i. 1. 6, 5. 9, ii. 6. 1, iii. 1. 13, iv. 2. 19; in sing., *the whole, all the*, i. 5. 9, iii. 1. 30, iv. 1. 27, 2. 22; occasionally in plural without art., iii. 1. 18, 2. 22; in sing. without art., *every, each*, i. 9. 8, ii. 5. 9, iii. 5. 11; the art. is omitted when a relative clause intervenes, i. 5. 16; **πᾶς** rarely has attrib. pos., ii. 3. 18, iii. 5. 14. The sense sometimes approaches that of **παντοῖος**, *every kind of*, iii. 2. 8, iv. 5. 29. Without a noun, **πάντες**, *all, everybody*, i. 1. 2, 8. 18, 9. 2, **πᾶν**, **πάντα**, *everything*, i. 4. 10, ii. 5. 7, iii. 2. 28, iv. 2. 23. Phrases, **περὶ παντὸς ποιεῖσθαι**, *consider of the highest importance*, i. 9. 16, ii. 4. 3; **ἐπὶ πᾶν ἐλθεῖν**, *resort to every expedient, make every effort*, iii. 1. 18.

Πᾶσίων, **ωνος**, **ὁ**, *Pasion*, a Megarian general who brought 600 men to Cyrus's rendezvous at Sardis and deserted the expedition at Myriandus, i. 2. 3, 3. 7, 4. 7.

πάσχω, **πείσομαι**, **ἔπαθον**, **πέπονθα**, *experience, undergo, suffer, be treated, be hurt, be wounded*, abs. or with acc., i. 3. 5, 6, 8. 20, 9. 6, 8, ii. 5. 5, iii. 1. 13, 17, 41, 2. 3, 6, 4. 2, 20, 28, iv. 3. 2; **εὖ πάσχειν**, *receive benefits, be well treated*, with **ὑπό** and gen., i. 3. 4; **κακῶς πάσχειν**, see **κακῶς**; **τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν**, see **ἔσχατος**.

πατάσσω, **πατάξω**, **ἐπάταξα** (pres. epic; Attic uses **παίω**, **τύπτω** instead), *strike*, iv. 8. 25.

Πατηγύας, ᾱ, ὁ, *Pategyas*, a Persian, one of Cyrus's suite, i. 8. 1.

πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ (akin to Lat. *pater*, Eng. *father*), *father*, i. 4. 12, 6. 6, 9. 7. (Cf. Eng. *patriarch*, *patronymic*.)

πάτριος, ᾱ, ον (πατήρ), *belonging to* or *derived from one's father* or *ancestors*, *hereditary*, *ancestral*, iii. 2. 16.

πατρίς, ίδος, ἡ (πατήρ), *fatherland*, *native land*, *one's own country*, i. 3. 3, 6, iii. 1. 4, iv. 8. 4; pl., iii. 1. 4.

πατρῷος, ᾱ, ον (πατήρ), *of one's father* or *ancestors*, *paternal*, *ancestral*, i. 7. 6, iii. 1. 11.

παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, πέπαυκα, πέπαυμαι, ἐπαύθην (akin to Lat. *paucus*, *few*, Eng. *few*; hence, through Lat., Eng. *pause*), *cause to cease*, *stop*, *put an end to*, with acc., ii. 5. 2; with ptc., ii. 5. 13; *give up*, with acc., iv. 8. 10; pass., *be stopped*, *be ended*, ii. 5. 6. Mid., intrans., *cease*, *stop*, *leave off*, *desist*, *rest*, abs., i. 3. 12, 5. 3, 17, iii. 1. 44, 5. 6; with πρίν clause, i. 2. 2; with ptc., iii. 1. 19, iv. 2. 4; with gen., i. 6. 6.

Παφλαγών, όνος, ὁ, *Paphlagonian*, *native of Paphlagonia*, i. 8. 5. Paphlagonia was a district of Asia Minor lying along the southern shore of the Black Sea, bounded on the east by Pontus, on the south by Galatia, on the west by Bithynia.

παχύς, εῖα, ύ, *thick*, *large*, of trees, iv. 8. 2. (Cf. Eng. *pachyderm*.)

πέδη, ης, ἡ (cf. πούς), *fetter*, for the feet, *shackle*, pl., iv. 3. 8.

πεδίον, ου, τό (dim. of poetical πέδον, *ground*, *soil*, akin to πούς), *level ground*, *open country*, *plain*, i. 1. 2, 2. 14, 7. 1, ii. 3. 13, 5. 32, iii. 2. 23, 4. 25, iv. 3. 1; for Καΰστρου πεδίον, see Κάϋστρος.

πεζῇ, adv. (really dat. fem. of πεζός, ὁδῷ understood), *on foot*, *afoot*, as opposed to riding on horseback or going by boat, i. 4. 18, iii. 4. 49.

πεζός, ή, όν (cf. πούς), *on foot*, *walking*; δύναμις πεζή, *infantry force*, i. 3. 12; πεζός, *foot-soldier*, pl., *infantry*, i. 10. 12, ii. 2. 7, 5. 17, iii. 3. 9, 15, iv. 3. 3.

πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πέπεικα and πέποιθα, πέπεισμαι, ἐπείσθην (akin to Lat. *fido*, *trust*), *persuade*, *convince*, *prevail upon*, *induce*, also *win over*, *conciliate*, abs. or with acc., i. 2. 26, 3. 19, 6. 7, ii. 1. 10, 5. 15, 6. 4, iii. 1. 26; with acc. and ὡς clause, ii. 6. 2. Pass. and mid., *be persuaded*, *be prevailed upon*, *be talked over*, i. 1. 3, 3. 19, 4. 13; hence *obey*, *yield*, abs. or with dat., i. 2. 2, 3. 6, 15, 4. 14, 16, 9. 5, ii. 2. 5, 6. 3; ptc., πειθόμενος, *obedient*, ii. 6. 13, 27, iii. 2. 30.

πεινάω, πεινήσω, ἐπείνησα, πεπείνηκα, *be hungry*, *suffer from hunger*, *famish*, *fast*, i. 9. 27.

πεῖρα, ᾶς, ἡ (akin to Lat. *experior*, *make trial of*), *trial*, *test*, *experience*; Κύρου ἐν πείρᾳ γενέσθαι, *to have been intimate with Cyrus*, i. 9. 1; πεῖραν ἔχετε αὐτῶν, *you have had experience of them*, *made trial of them*, iii. 2. 16.

πειράομαι, πειράσομαι, ἐπειρᾱσάμην, πεπείρᾱμαι, ἐπειρᾱ́θην, deponent verb; act. πειράω not common (πεῖρα), *try*, *attempt*, *endeavor*, with inf. (occasionally to be supplied from the context), i. 1. 7, 2. 21, 9. 11, 19, ii. 3. 23, 5. 4, 24, 41, 6. 3, iii. 2. 39, iv. 3. 5, 6. 15; with ὅπως and subj., iii. 2. 3; *make trial of*, *test*, with gen., iii. 2. 38, 5. 7.

πείσας, πεισθῆτε, see **πείθω.**

πείσομαι, πείσεσθαι, see **πάσχω.**

πειστέον, verbal of **πείθω**, *one must obey*, *obedience must be rendered*, with dat., ii. 6. 8.

πελάζω, πελάσω and πελῶ, ἐπέλασα, ἐπελάσθην (πέλας, adv. *near*, cf. πλησίος), *approach*, *come near*,

abs. or with dat., i. 8. 15, iv. 2. 3. (Poetic word.)

Πελοποννήσιος, ᾱ, ον (Πελοπόννησος), *Peloponnesian, of Peloponnesus*, i. 1. 6.

Πελοπόννησος, ου, ἡ (Πέλοψ, *Pelops*, νῆσος), *Peloponnēsus*, the great peninsula that forms the southern part of Greece, now called Morea, i. 4. 2. The name means *Isle of Pelops*, so called from the mythical hero Pelops, son of Tantalus.

Πέλται, ῶν, αἱ, *Peltae*, a city of Phrygia on the Maeander river, near the modern town of Ishakli, i. 2. 10.

πελταστής, οῦ, ὁ (πέλτη), *one who carries a* πέλτη, *peltast*, i. 2. 3, 6, 10. 7, iv. 1. 26, 7. 3. As the πέλτη was of Thracian origin, so infantry composed of peltasts seems to have been first developed among the Thracians, and Thracian peltasts are mentioned in the Anabasis (i. 2. 9). Besides the πέλτη, their characteristic arm, the peltasts carried light spears or javelins (ἀκόντια), and probably a sword; a light helmet was also sometimes worn. On account of their superior agility, peltasts were frequently employed in scouting, in pursuing a vanquished enemy, and in other work where rapidity of action was essential; cf. iv. 3. 22, 4. 20, 6. 25, 8. 18. The importance of the peltasts among the light-armed

Fig. 44.

troops led to the use of the name πελτασταί as a general term for all troops other than hoplites, thus including archers and slingers, cf. i. 2. 10. 7. 10, iii. 3. 8, 4. 3, iv. 1. 26, 28; in the last two passages πελτασταί and γυμνῆτες are used as interchangeable terms. On the other hand, peltasts proper are distinguished from archers and slingers in i. 2. 9, iv. 3. 27, 8. 15. See Fig. 44.

πελταστικός, ή, όν (πελταστής), *of peltasts, belonging to peltasts;* τὸ πελταστικόν (sc. στράτευμα), *the force of peltasts, the light-armed soldiers* (cf. the less exact use of πελταστής), i. 8. 5.

πέλτη, ης, ἡ, *light shield, target*, commonly crescent-shaped, said to be of Thracian origin, and frequently carried by Amazons as represented in works of art. It was the characteristic arm of the πελταστής. A somewhat similar shield appears to have been used by some of the Persian soldiers, ii. 1. 6. According to most editors the word πέλτη in i. 10. 12 must mean *spear-shaft* or *pole*. But it is very improbable that any military historian would use the same word of two entirely different weapons, and the authority for the use of πέλτη = δόρυ is not satisfactory. No passage in any Greek author has been found in which πέλτη must have this meaning, and the glosses in the lexicographers upon which this interpretation rests have probably risen from a misunderstanding of i. 10. 12. For an explanation of the royal standard there described, see σημεῖον.

πέμπτος, η, ον (πέντε), *fifth*, iii. 4. 24, iv. 7. 21.

πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, πέπομφα, πέπεμμαι, ἐπέμφθην, *send, despatch;* with acc., i. 3. 14, 20, ii. 3. 1, 5. 2, 41, iv. 3. 28, 6. 19, pass., ii. 1. 17; without expressed obj., *send word*, i. 1. 8, ii. 3. 1, iii. 1. 27; with obj. acc. and dat. of person, i. 3. 8, 4. 16, 17, 9. 25, iv. 7. 19; with obj.

acc. and *παρά* or *πρός* with acc. of person, i. 2. 17, iv. 3. 27, 5. 21; with *ἐπί* or *παρά* and acc. of thing, i. 10. 14, ii. 4. 17, 23. The purpose in sending is expressed by a fut. ptc., i. 3. 14, ii. 1. 17, 5. 2, iv. 5. 22; by a clause with *ὅπως*, iv. 7. 19.

πένομαι, only pres. in Attic (akin to *πόνος*), *be poor, endure poverty*, iii. 2. 26.

πεντακόσιοι, αι, α (*πέντε*), *five hundred*, i. 2. 3, iii. 2. 12.

πέντε, indecl. (akin to Lat. *quinque*, Eng. *five*; cf. Eng. *pentagon, Pentateuch*), i. 2. 8, 5. 1, iii. 4. 7.

πεντεκαίδεκα, indecl. (*πέντε, δέκα*), *fifteen*, i. 4. 11, ii. 4. 13, iv. 4. 3, 7. 16.

πεντήκοντα, indecl. (*πέντε*; cf. Eng. *Pentecost*), *fifty*, i. 4. 19, ii. 6. 15, iii. 3. 20, 4. 10.

πεντηκοντήρ, ῆρος, ὁ (*πεντήκοντα*), *commander of fifty, i. e. half a company*, iii. 4. 21.

πεντηκοστύς, ύος, ἡ (*πεντήκοντα*), *the number fifty, a division of fifty men, i. e. half a company*, iii. 4. 22.

πέπανται, see *πάομαι*.

πεπόνθᾶσιν, see *πάσχω*.

πεπτωκότα, see *πίπτω*.

πέρ, postpositive and enclitic particle, with intensive force, *just, even, very*; it is used in Attic only in composition with particles and relatives; see *εἴπερ, καίπερ, ὅσπερ*, etc.

περαίνω, *περανῶ, ἐπέρᾶνα, πεπέρασμαι, ἐπεράνθην* (cf. *πέρᾶν*), *carry through, carry out, execute, accomplish*, iii. 1. 47, 2. 32.

πέρᾶν, adv., *on the other side, on the farther side*, ii. 4. 20, iii. 5. 12, iv. 3. 33. *τὸ πέρᾶν, the farther side, the other side*, iii. 5. 2, iv. 3. 11, 29; *τὰ πέρᾶν, affairs on the farther shore*, iv. 3. 24; *πέρᾶν* with gen., *across*, i. 5. 10, ii. 4. 28, iv. 3. 3.

περάω, *περᾰ́σω, ἐπέρᾶσα, πεπέρᾶκα* (cf. *πέρᾶν*), *cross, go across*, with acc., iv. 3. 21. (In Attic prose used only by Xenophon.)

πέρδιξ, ῑκος, ὁ, ἡ, *partridge, quail*, i. 5. 3. (Hence, through Lat. and French, Eng. *partridge*.)

περί, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. With gen., *around, about*, but in prose only in a transferred sense of the object about which a thought, feeling, or action centers, *about, with regard to, concerning*, i. 2. 8, 6. 6, ii. 1. 16, 21, 3. 1, 20, 5. 8, iii. 1. 5, 2. 9, iv. 2. 18, 6. 14; sometimes, after expressions of striving, contending, etc., *for*, ii. 1. 12, iii. 2. 15, iv. 5. 12; *περὶ παντὸς ποιεῖσθαι, consider all-important*, i. 9. 16, ii. 4. 3; *περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι, consider most important, of supreme importance*, i. 9. 7, iii. 2. 4.

With dat., *around*, rare in Attic, and usually of parts of the body, so i. 5. 8.

With acc., of position, *around, about*, i. 6. 4, iii. 5. 10, iv. 3. 4, 5. 36; esp. frequent with acc. of person, *attending, about*, i. 2. 12; *οἱ περί τινα, those around one, one's attendants*, i. 5. 7, 6. 4, 8. 27, 9. 31; the phrase sometimes includes the principal personage as well as his attendants, *οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον, Ariaeus and his followers*, ii. 4. 2, cf. iv. 5. 21. *περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν, they were busy about the supplies*, iii. 5. 7.

Of time, *about*, i. 7. 1; of personal relation, *with respect to, toward, against*, i. 4. 8, 6. 8, iii. 2. 20. In composition *περί* signifies *around*, and also frequently conveys the idea of superiority, as in *περιγίγνομαι*.

περιβάλλω (*βάλλω*), *throw around*; of persons, *embrace*, with *ἀλλήλους*, iv. 7. 25.

περιγίγνομαι (*γίγνομαι*), *be superior to, get the better of, conquer*, abs.

or with gen., i. 1. 10, ii. 1. 13, iii. 2. 29.

περιειλέω (εἰλέω, *roll*, chiefly in epic), *roll around, wrap around*, with dir. obj. and περί with acc., iv. 5. 36.

περίειμι (εἰμί), *be superior, excel, surpass*, abs. or with gen. of pers. and dat. of manner, i. 8. 13, 9. 24, iii. 4. 33.

περίειμι (εἶμι), *go round, make a circuit* or *detour*, abs. or with acc., iv. 1. 3, 2. 2.

περιέχω (ἔχω), *surround, encompass*, i. 2. 22.

περιΐστημι (ἵστημι), *set around*; 2 aor., intrans., *stand around, surround*, of besiegers, iv. 7. 2.

περιμένω (μένω), *wait for, remain*, abs., ii. 1. 6, with ἄχρι clause, ii. 3. 2; with acc., *wait for*, ii. 1. 3, 4. 1.

Πέρινθος, ου, ἡ, *Perinthus*, a city of Thrace, on the European shore of the Propontis (Sea of Marmora), later called Heraclēa, whence the modern name Eregli, ii. 6. 2.

πέριξ, adv. (περί), *round about*, in the *vicinity*, ii. 5. 14, iv. 4. 7.

περίοδος, ου, ἡ (περί, ὁδός), *way around, circuit, circumference*, iii. 4. 7, 11. (Cf. Eng. *period*.)

περίπατος, ου, ὁ (Homeric πάτος, *path*, akin to Eng. *path*), *a walking round*. ἐν περιπάτῳ εἶναι, *be walking*, ii. 4. 15. (Cf. Eng. *peripatetic*.)

περιπήγνῡμι (πήγνῡμι), *fix around, cause to freeze around*; pass., *freeze around, be frozen around*, iv. 5. 14.

περιπῑ́πτω (πίπτω), *fall around*; of persons, *throw oneself upon, fall embracing*, with dat., i. 8. 28.

περιπλέω (πλέω), *sail around, coast around*, i. 2. 21.

περιπτύσσω (πτύσσω, -πτύξω, ἔπτυξα, ἔπτυγμαι, -επτύχθην, *fold*; the simple forms are late or poetical), *fold around, outflank*, i. 10. 9.

περιρρέω (ῥέω), *flow around, encircle*, pass., i. 5. 4; *flow around* and off, *drop off*, iv. 3. 8.

περιστερᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ, *dove*, i. 4. 9.

περιττεύω, περιττεύσω, ἐπερίττευσα (περιττός), *be over*, of number, *be superior in number, outnumber*, hence, when two armies are in battle array, *outflank, overlap*, with gen., iv. 8. 11.

περιττός, ή, όν (περί), *over and above* a stated or necessary number, *superfluous*; τὰ περιττά, *superfluous* or *unnecessary articles*, iii. 2. 28, 3. 1; of soldiers, οἱ περιττοί, *superfluous troops, outflanking troops*, iv. 8. 11.

περιφανῶς, adv. (φαίνω), *manifestly, clearly*, iv. 5. 4.

περίφοβος, ου (περί, φόβος), *in great alarm, terrified*, iii. 1. 12.

Πέρσης, ου, ὁ (old Persian *Parsa*), *a Persian, native of Persia*, often with ἀνήρ, i. 2. 20, 5. 8, 6. 1, 4, ii. 2. 1, 4. 26, iii. 2. 25, 4. 35, iv. 4. 17. The name Persia (Περσίς, *Parsa*) was originally applied to a comparatively small district lying along the northern shore of the Persian Gulf, between Susiana and Carmania, and extending back in a northerly direction to the Parthian desert. This district contained the cities of Persepolis and Pasargadae, and corresponds to the modern province of Farsistan. When the Persian empire was extended over the whole of western Asia, the name Πέρσης was applied to any subject of the king, whatever his race might be.

περσίζω (Πέρσης), *behave like a Persian, speak Persian*, iv. 5. 34.

Περσικός, ή, όν (Πέρσης), *of Persia, Persian*, i. 2. 27. 8. 21, iii. 3. 16, 4. 35, iv. 4. 16, 5. 36.

περσιστί, adv. (Πέρσης), *in the Persian language*, iv. 5. 10.

πέτομαι, πετήσομαι and **-πτήσομαι, -επτόμην** (akin to πίπτω, Lat. *pen-*

να, feather, Eng. *feather*), *fly*, i. 5. 3.

πέτρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ, *rock, living rock, cliff*, i. 4. 4, iv. 2. 3, 3. 11; also *large stone, boulder*, iv. 7. 10.

πέτρος, ου, ὁ, *large stone, boulder*, iv. 2. 20, 7. 12. (Cf. Eng. *petrify, petroleum.*)

πεφυλαγμένως, adv. (φυλάττω), *in a guarded manner, cautiously*, ii. 4. 24.

πῇ, indefinite adv., enclitic, *in any way, anyhow*, iv. 8. 13.

πηγή, ῆς, ἡ, *spring, source, headwaters*, always pl. in Anab., i. 2. 7, 8, 4. 10, iii. 2. 22, iv. 4. 3, 5. 2.

πήγνῡμι, πήξω, ἔπηξα, πέπηγα, ἐπάγην (√παγ, akin to Lat. *pango, fasten*), *fix, stiffen, freeze*, iv. 5. 3.

πηλός, οῦ, ὁ (cf. Lat. *palus, marsh*), *mud, mire*, i. 5. 7, 8, ii. 3. 11.

πῆχυς, εως, ὁ, *forearm*, as a measure of length, *cubit*, the distance from the elbow to the tip of the middle finger. The πῆχυς was one and one-half Greek feet, or almost one foot five and one-half inches in English measure, iv. 7. 16.

Πίγρης, ητος, ὁ, *Pigres*, Cyrus's interpreter, i. 2. 17, 5. 7, 8. 12.

πιέζω, πιέσω, ἐπίεσα, ἐπιέσθην, *press, squeeze*; in Anab. always pass., *press together, crowd*, of soldiers, iii. 4. 19; *weigh down, overburden*, iii. 4. 48; figuratively, *press hard*, pass., *be hard pressed, be in a tight place*, i. 1. 10, iii. 4. 27, iv. 8. 13.

πικρός, ά, όν, *bitter*, iv. 4. 13. (Cf. Eng. *picric.*)

πίμπλημι, πλήσω, ἔπλησα, -πέπληκα, -πέπλησμαι, ἐπλήσθην (√πλα; akin to Lat. *impleo, fill, plenus, full*, Eng. *fill, full*), *fill*, with obj. acc. and gen., i. 5. 10.

πίνω, πίομαι, ἔπιον, πέπωκα, -πέπομαι, -επόθεν (akin to Lat. *potus, draught*), *drink*, iv. 5. 32.

πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι, ἔπεσον, πέπτωκα (akin to πέτομαι), *fall*, abs., iv. 5. 7, with εἰς and acc., iii. 1. 11; esp. *fall* in battle, i. 8. 28, 9. 31; figuratively, of difficulties, *fall into, be involved in*, with εἰς and acc., ii. 3. 18.

Πισίδαι, ῶν, οἱ, *Pisidians*, a hardy, war-like people inhabiting the mountainous country lying between Phrygia and Pamphylia. They were never completely subdued by the Persians, and frequently gave trouble by their incursions into peaceful territory, i. 1. 11, ii. 1. 1, 4, 5. 13, iii. 2. 23.

πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, ἐπίστευσα, πεπίστευμαι, ἐπιστεύθην (cf. πιστός), *have faith* or *confidence in, rely on, trust*, with dat. of person, i. 2. 2, 3. 16, 9. 8, ii. 5. 22, 29; also with dat. of thing, σπονδαῖς, iii. 1. 29; with inf., *confidently believe*, i. 9. 8.

πίστις, εως, ἡ (√πιθ in πείθω), *trust, faith, confidence*, διὰ πίστεως, *in good faith, trustingly*, iii. 2. 8; *fidelity*, i. 6. 3, so πίστεως ἕνεκα, *to make sure of his fidelity*, iii. 3. 4; in a concrete sense, *that which elicits confidence, i. e. pledges, guarantees of good faith*, i. 2. 26.

πιστός, ή, όν (√πιθ in πείθω), *faithful, trustworthy, true*, abs. or with dat., i. 4. 15, 6. 3, 8. 28, ii. 1. 14, 4. 16, iii. 3. 2, iv. 6. 3; esp. of a chosen number of Persian nobles, friends and attendants of the ruler, οἱ πιστοί, i. 5. 15; τὰ πιστά, *pledges, guarantees, assurances of good faith*, i. 6. 7, ii. 3. 26, 4. 7, iii. 2. 5, iv. 8. 7, 8; ἐπεὶ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο, *after the treaty was made*, ii. 2. 10.

πιστότης, ητος, ἡ (πιστός), *fidelity*, i. 8. 29.

πίτυς, υος, ἡ, *pine-tree*, iv. 7. 6.

πλάγιος, ᾱ, ον, *sideways, slanting*; τὰ πλάγια, *the flanks*, of an army, iii. 4. 14; εἰς πλάγιον, *in a slanting direction, sideways*, i. 8. 10.

πλαίσιον, ου, τό, *rectangular figure, rectangle, square*, esp. as a military formation, *hollow square*, iii. 2. 36, 4. 19, 22, 28, 43; more definitely, **πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον**, iii. 4. 19. The front of the square was called **στόμα**, the rear **οὐρά**, the sides **πλευραί** or **κέρατα**. A modification of this formation is described in iii. 4. 19 ff. A solid square, **πλαίσιον πλῆρες**, was used by the king's troops at Cunaxa, i. 8. 9.

πλανάομαι, πλανήσομαι, πεπλάνημαι, ἐπλανήθην (**πλάνη**, *wandering*; cf. Eng. *planet*), *wander, lose one's way, go astray*, i. 2. 25.

πλάττω, ἔπλασα, πέπλασμαι, ἐπλάσθην (cf. Eng. *plastic, protoplasm*), *shape, form, mould*; mid., *invent, fabricate, hatch up*, **ψεύδη**, ii. 6. 26.

πλατύς, εῖα, ύ, *broad, wide*, iii. 4. 22. (Hence, through Lat. and French, Eng. *place, plateau, plate*; cf. also *platypus*.)

πλεθριαῖος, ᾱ, ον (**πλέθρον**), *of a plethron*, **ποταμὸς τὸ εὖρος πλεθριαῖος**, *a river a plethron wide*, i. 5. 4, iv. 6. 4.

πλέθρον, ου, τό, *plethron*, a Greek measure of distance, i. 2. 5, 23, ii. 4. 25, iii. 4. 9, iv. 7. 18. The plethron was the sixth part of a **στάδιον**, and was equivalent to 100 Greek feet, or 97 feet 1 inch in English measure.

Πλεισθένης, ους, ὁ, *Pleisthenes*, a soldier from Amphipolis in Thrace, iv. 6. 1, 3.

πλείων, πλεῖστος, see **πολύς**.

πλέκω, ἔπλεξα, -πέπλοχα, πέπλεγμαι, ἐπλέχθην and -επλάκην (akin to Lat. *plecto, plait*, Eng. *flax*), *plait*, of slings, iii. 3. 18.

πλέον, see **πολύς**.

πλεονεκτέω, πλεονεκτήσω, ἐπλεονέκτησα (**πλέον**, from **πολύς**, **ἔχω**), *have more, have a larger share, have the advantage of*, with gen. of person and dat. of manner, iii. 1. 37.

πλευρᾱ́, ᾶς, ἡ, *side, flank, rib*, iv. 1. 18, 7. 4; of an army, *flank*, iii. 2. 36, 4. 22, 28. (Cf. Eng. *pleurisy*.)

πλέω, πλεύσομαι and πλευσοῦμαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι (akin to Lat. *pluo, rain*, Eng. *float, flood*), *sail, go by sea*, with **πρός** and acc. of person, or **εἰς** and acc. of place, i. 9. 17, ii. 6. 3: of boats, *sail*, with **ἐν** and dat. [i. 7. 15].

πληγή, ῆς, ἡ (**πλήττω**, *strike*), *stroke, blow*; pl., *lashes, a flogging*, i. 5. 11, ii. 4. 11, iv. 6. 15. (Cf. Eng. *hemiplegia, apoplexy*.)

πλῆθος, ους, τό (√πλα in **πίμπλημι, πλήρης**), *great number, crowd, multitude*, i. 7. 4, ii. 1. 11, 5. 17, iv. 2. 2, 20, 7. 26; dat. of respect, **πλήθει**, *in number, in extent*, i. 5. 9, 8. 13; **τὸ πλῆθος**, *the common soldiery*, iii. 1. 37.

πλήθω, in poetry **πέπληθα** (cf. **πλῆθος**), *be full*, in Attic prose only in pres. ptc. with **ἀγορά**, i. 8. 1, ii. 1. 7. (Cf. Eng. *plethora*.)

πλήν, adv. and prep. with gen.; as adv., *except that, except, only that, save that*, i. 2. 24, 8. 20, 25, 9. 29, iii. 1. 26; as prep. with gen., i. 1. 6, 9. 9, 31, ii. 4. 27, iii. 1. 10, iv. 6. 1; the gen. is understood in i. 2. 1, iii. 2. 28.

πλήρης, ες (√πλα in **πίμπλημι**), *full, full of, well supplied with*, with gen., i. 2. 7, 4. 9, 5. 1, 8. 9, ii. 3. 10, 13, iii. 5. 1.

πλησιάζω, πλησιάσω, etc. (**πλησίος**), *come near, approach*, abs. or with dat., i. 5. 2, iv. 6. 6.

πλησίος, ᾱ, ον (akin to **πελάζω**), *near*, adj.; the positive is not used in prose; superl. **πλησιαίτατος**, *nearest*, i. 10. 5; as adv., **πλησίον**, *near, close by, at hand*, i. 8. 1, ii. 2. 18, iv. 5. 15; in attrib. pos., **ὁ πλησίον παράδεισος**, *the neighboring park*, ii. 4. 16, cf. iii. 4. 9.

πλίνθινος, η, ον (πλίνθος), *of brick*, iii. 4. 11.

πλίνθος, ου, ἡ (akin to Eng. *flint*; hence *plinth*), *brick*, ii. 4. 7, iii. 4. 7.

πλοῖον, ου, τό (πλέω), *boat, vessel*, a general term, including small river boats, i. 4. 18, 7. 15, ii. 2. 3, *transports*, i. 3. 14, 16, boats for use in constructing a pontoon bridge, i. 2. 5, ii. 4. 13, 24; in i. 3. 17, 4. 8 the context shows that transports, as distinguished from ships of war, are meant. See ναῦς and the cuts under that word.

πλούσιος, ᾱ, ον (cf. πλουτέω), *rich, wealthy*, iii. 2. 26.

πλουσίως, adv. (πλούσιος), *in opulent style, in affluent circumstances*; comp., i. 9. 16.

πλουτέω, πλουτήσω, ἐπλούτησα, πεπλούτηκα (πλοῦτος, *wealth*; cf. Eng. *plutocracy*), *be rich, wealthy*, i. 9. 19, ii. 6. 21.

πνεῦμα, ατος, τό (πνέω), *breath, blast, wind*, iv. 5. 4. (Cf. Eng. *pneumatic, pneumonia*.)

πνέω, πνευσοῦμαι and -πνεύσομαι, ἔπνευσα, πέπνευκα, *blow*, of the wind, iv. 5. 3.

ποδαπός, ή, όν, *of what country? from what place?* iv. 4. 17.

ποδήρης, ες (πούς), *reaching to the feet*, of shields, i. 8. 9.

ποδίζω, not used in active except in comp., πεπόδισμαι, ἐποδίσθην (πούς), *bind the feet, hobble*, iii. 4. 35.

πόθος, ου, ὁ, *desire, longing*, with gen., iii. 1. 3.

ποιέω, ποιήσω, etc., *make*, in the widest sense; of things made by hand, *make, manufacture, construct, fashion*, i. 5. 5, 10, iv. 5. 14, 7. 25, 8. 26; of non-material things, as noises, emotions, etc., *make, cause, produce, give rise to*, i. 8. 18, ii. 2. 17, iii. 1. 42, iv. 8. 10; of an assembly, *call, convene*, i. 4. 12; of public games, *hold*, iv. 8. 25; *do, accomplish, execute*, usually with neuter obj., i. 3. 11, 4. 14, ii. 1. 16, 6. 29, iii. 1. 28, 2. 39. With two accs., *create, appoint, make*, i. 1. 2, 9. 14, iii. 1. 17; so frequently when one of the accs. is an adj., *make, render*, i. 7. 7, 9. 6, ii. 4. 7, 5. 24, 6. 6, 14, iii. 1. 4, iv. 6. 26; *do* a thing to a person, with two accs., so esp. κακὸν ποιεῖν, i. 9. 11, ii. 5. 5, 10, cf. iii. 2. 3. Note here the phrases κακῶς ποιεῖν, *treat ill, injure*, abs. or with acc., i. 4. 8, 6. 7, 9. 11, ii. 3. 23, 4. 22, 5. 4, iv. 8. 6; εὖ ποιεῖν, *treat well, do a favor, confer benefits*, abs. or with acc., i. 6. 9, 9. 11, ii. 3. 22, 23, 5. 11. With acc. and inf., *make, cause*, i. 7. 4, 9. 16, ii. 6. 14, iv. 1. 22. The middle is often to be translated like the active, but expresses action upon that which is one's own, or for oneself or in one's own interest, i. 2. 1, 14, 5. 9, 9. 20, ii. 3. 8, 10, 5. 27, iii. 2. 36, 5. 18, iv. 8. 15; with advs., as ἐκποδών, ὄπισθεν, *put*, i. 6. 9, 10. 9; with pred. acc., *consider*, ii. 3. 18; so esp. in the phrases περὶ παντὸς ποιεῖσθαι, περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι, which see under περί. (Cf. Eng. *poet, onomatopoeia*.)

ποιητέος, ᾱ, ον, verbal from ποιέω, *that must be done*, with dat. of agent, i. 3. 15; also impersonally (act.), *one must do*, with obj. acc., iii. 1. 18.

ποικίλος, η, ον, *variegated, motley, of many colors*, i. 5. 8.

ποῖος, ᾱ, ον, interrog. pron., *of what sort? of what kind?* also, simply *what?* used in both direct and ind. questions, ii. 5. 7, 13, iii. 1. 14.

πολεμέω, πολεμήσω, etc. (πόλεμος), *be at war, make war*, in inceptive aor., *begin war, go to war*; abs. or with dat., i. 1. 5, 8, 6. 6, 9. 9, ii. 1. 19, 20, 3. 21, 5. 20, 6. 2, 5, 6, iv. 8. 6; with πρός and acc., i. 3. 4, ii. 5. 10; pass., ὅσα ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, *what hostile acts were committed against the Greeks* [iv. 1. 1].

πολεμικός, ή, όν (πόλεμος), *relating to war; warlike, martial,* iii. 5. 16; *efficient* or *skilled in war,* distinguished from φιλοπόλεμος (*fond of war*), ii. 6. 1, 7; as subst., τὸ πολεμικόν, *signal for battle, the attack,* iv. 3. 29; τὰ πολεμικά, *military affairs,* iii. 1. 38. (Cf. Eng. *polemic.*)

πολέμιος, ᾱ, ον (πόλεμος), *pertaining to war,* hence as subst., τὰ πολέμια, *military affairs,* i. 6. 1; *belonging to the enemy, hostile,* of persons and things, i. 2. 19, 3. 12, 6. 8, 9. 8, 29, ii. 2. 14, 4. 5, 5. 11, iii. 1. 2, iv. 3. 12, 8. 5; as subst., ἡ πολεμία (*sc.* χώρᾱ), *hostile territory, the enemy's country,* iii. 3. 5, iv. 7. 20; οἱ πολέμιοι, *the enemy,* i. 4. 5, 7. 11, 8. 9, ii. 4. 6, 5. 3, iii. 4. 6, iv. 3. 29, 8. 16.

πόλεμος, ου, ὁ, *war, warfare,* i. 5. 9, 9. 5, ii. 1. 21, 23, 4. 5, 5. 2, iii. 1. 43, 3. 5, iv. 3. 10; with πρός and acc., i. 6. 6, ii. 6. 2, iv. 4. 1; with gen., ὁ θεῶν πόλεμος, *war waged by the gods,* ii. 5. 7; τὰ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον ἔργα, *warlike exercises, practice of arms,* i. 9. 5; διὰ παντὸς πολέμου εἶναι, see διά.

πολιορκέω, πολιορκήσω, ἐπολιόρκησα, -πεπολιόρκημαι, ἐπολιορκήθην (πόλις, εἴργω), orig. *shut up in a city,* hence *besiege, beleaguer,* i. 1. 7, 2. 2, 4. 2, iii. 4. 8, 12; of an attack not upon fortifications but upon a natural stronghold, pass., *be hemmed in, be invested,* iv. 2. 15.

πόλις, εως, ἡ, *city, town,* i. 1. 6, 2. 6, 9. 8, ii. 4. 13, iii. 4. 7, 10, iv. 7. 19, 8. 22; also, the city considered as a political organization, *state, body of citizens,* ii. 6. 2, iii. 1. 5. (Cf. Eng. *metropolis, necropolis.*)

πόλισμα, ατος, τό (cf. πόλις), *town,* iv. 7. 17.

πολῑτεύω, πολῑτεύσω, ἐπολίτευσα, πεπολίτευμαι, ἐπολῑτεύθην (πολίτης, *citizen,* cf. Eng. *polity, politics*), *be a citizen, live as a citizen; σκληρῶς πολῑτεύειν, be a poverty-pinched citizen,* iii. 2. 26.

πολλάκις, adv. (πολύς), *often, frequently,* i. 2. 11, 9. 13, 25.

πολλαπλάσιος, ᾱ, ον (πολύς, √πλα, akin to Eng. *fold*), *manifold, many times as much* or *many,* i. 7. 3; with gen., iii. 2. 14.

πολλαχοῦ, adv. (πολύς), *in many places*; also *many times, often,* iv. 1. 28.

πολυάνθρωπος, ον (πολύς, ἄνθρωπος), *with many inhabitants, populous,* ii. 4. 13.

Πολυκράτης, ους, ὁ, *Polycrates,* an Athenian captain, iv. 5. 24.

πολύς, πολλή, πολύ (akin to Eng. *full*; note the numerous derivatives beginning *poly-,* as *polygon, polytheism,* etc.), *much,* pl. *many.* In sing. of quantity and size, *much, large, extensive,* i. 4. 5, ii. 4. 16, 21, 27, iii. 5. 17, iv. 2. 22; with a collective noun, *numerous,* ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος, iii. 2. 36; of time, *long,* i. 3. 2, 9. 25; of a storm, *violent,* iv. 1. 15; of various immaterial things, to express force or intensity, *great, extreme,* i. 2. 18, 9. 15, ii. 5. 9, iii. 2. 11, iv. 2. 20; note the phrase πολλοῦ ἄξιος, *worth much, valuable,* i. 3. 12, ii. 1. 14, iv. 1. 28. Pl., *many, numerous, in great numbers,* i. 3. 14, 5. 2, 7. 20, iii. 1. 22, iv. 2. 27, 4. 7, 7. 7; when πολλοί is used with another adj., the two are usually connected by a καί, which is omitted in translating; see under καί. As subst., πολύ, *a large part, much,* with gen., iv. 1. 11, 8. 17; τὸ πολύ, *the greater part, the better part,* i. 4. 13, 7. 20, iv. 6. 24; ἐπὶ πολύ, *over a long distance, over a large extent of ground,* i. 8. 8, iv. 2. 13; ὡς ἐπὶ (τὸ) πολύ, *for the most part, in general, as a rule,* iii. 1. 42, 4. 35. Pl., οἱ πολλοί, *the majority, the greater number, most,* ii. 3. 16, 4. 2, iii. 1. 10, 3. 16, iv. 3. 33. Neuter as adv., πολύ, *far, a long*

distance, i. 5. 3, ii. 4. 12, iii. 3. 6, 9, 15; with comparatives, *much, far*, i. 5. 2, 16, 7. 8, 10. 10, ii. 3. 13, iii. 1. 22, 2. 15, iv. 5. 36; with superl., *far, by far*, iv. 2. 14. Comparative **πλείων**, *more*, with same variety of uses as in positive; *larger*, i. 5. 9; **βοὴ πλείων ἐγίγνετο**, *the shouting grew louder*, iv. 7. 23; **πλείονος ἄξιοι**, *worth more, more useful* or *valuable*, ii. 1. 20; pl., *more, in greater numbers*, i. 9. 19, ii. 6. 21, iv. 1. 11, 6. 9; so with **ἤ**, i. 3. 7, ii. 4. 1; neuter as adv., *farther*, i. 10. 11, ii. 4. 10; *more, in a greater degree*, with gen., i. 4. 14, iii. 2. 34, 3. 11, with **ἤ**, i. 2. 11, iv. 2. 28, 6. 11, 7. 9, 10. Superl. **πλεῖστος**, *most*, also *very many*, i. 5. 2, 9. 28; **οἱ πλεῖστοι, πλεῖστοι**, *most people, the majority, most of them*, i. 4. 7, 5. 13, 10. 19, ii. 4. 6; for **πλείστου ἄξιος**, see **ἄξιος**; **ὅτι πλεῖστοι, ὡς πλεῖστοι**, *as many as possible*, i. 1. 6, 11, 6. 3, iv. 6. 1; adverbially, **πλεῖστον**, *for the most part*, iii. 2. 31; **ὡς πλεῖστον**, *as far as possible*, ii. 2. 12; **πλεῖστα**, *in very many ways*, ii. 6. 27; for **περὶ πλείστου ποιεῖσθαι**, see **περί**.

Πολύστρατος, **ου**, **ὁ**, *Polystratus*, an Athenian, father of Lycius, iii. 3. 20.

πολυτελής, **ές** (**πολύς**, **τέλος**, *tax, cost*), *costly, expensive*, i. 5. 8.

πονέω, **πονήσω**, etc., but aor. pass. only in comp. (**πόνος**), *work hard, labor, take trouble, undergo hardship*, i. 4. 14, 9. 19, ii. 6. 6, iii. 4. 46.

πονηρός, **ά**, **όν** (**πόνος**), *causing trouble, troublesome, bad, poor*, iii. 4. 19; as subst., **πονηρόν**, *a wretched thing*, iii. 4. 35; of persons, *bad, wicked, base*, ii. 5. 21; as subst., **ὁ πονηρός**, *criminal*, ii. 6. 29.

πονήρως, adv. (**πονηρός**), *with difficulty*, iii. 4. 19.

πόνος, **ου**, **ὁ** (**πένομαι**), *labor, toil, difficulty, hardship*, ii. 5. 18, iii. 1. 12, iv. 3. 2.

πόντος, **ου**, **ὁ**, *sea*; in prose used only of special bodies of water, as **Εὔξεινος Πόντος**, *the Euxine* or *Black Sea*, iv. 8. 22, see **εὔξεινος**.

πορεῖα, **ᾶς**, **ἡ** (**πορεύομαι**), *march, journey, route*, i. 7. 20, ii. 2. 10, 3. 13, iii. 1. 5, 5. 18, iv. 1. 7, 5. 35.

πορευτέος, **ᾱ**, **ον**, verbal from **πορεύω**, *that must be traversed, to be crossed*, **ὅρη**, ii. 5. 18; impersonally **πορευτέον ἐστί**, *one must march, one must traverse*, abs. or with acc., ii. 2. 12, iv. 1. 2, 5. 1.

πορεύω, **πορεύσω**, **ἐπόρευσα**; the active forms are rare and chiefly poetical; commonly pass. dep., **πορεύομαι**, **πορεύσομαι**, **πεπόρευμαι**, **ἐπορεύθην** (akin to **πόρος**), *go, go forward, advance, march*, used both of individuals and of armies, abs. or with any of the preps. used with verbs of motion, i. 2. 1, 4, 3. 7, 5. 4, ii. 1. 4, 4. 27, iii. 3. 6, 4. 1, iv. 3. 12, 4. 16, 5. 10; *make a journey, travel* by carriage, **ἐφ' ἁμάξης**, ii. 2. 14; with cognate acc., ii. 2. 11, iii. 4. 46, iv. 4. 1; with acc. of distance very frequent, i. 2. 5, 13, 4. 1, ii. 4. 25, iii. 4. 23, iv. 4. 7, etc.

πορίζω, **ποριῶ**, **ἐπόρισα**, **πεπόρικα**, **πεπόρισμαι**, **ἐπορίσθην** (**πόρος**), *find a way for*, hence *provide, supply, furnish*, ii. 3. 5, iii. 3. 20, 5. 8, iv. 1. 13; middle, *provide for oneself, procure, obtain*, ii. 1. 6, iii. 1. 20.

πόρος, **ου**, **ὁ** (akin to **περαίνω**, **πέρᾱν**), *passage*, of a river, *ford*, iv. 3. 13, 20; *way, means*, with **πρός** and acc., ii. 5. 20. (Cf. Eng. *pore*.)

πόρρω, adv. (**πρό**), *far, far away*; with gen., *far from*, i. 3. 12, iii. 4. 35.

πορφυροῦς, **ᾶ**, **οῦν**, contr. for **πορφύρεος**, etc. (**πορφύρᾱ**, *purple-shell*), *purple* or *dark red*, i. 5. 8. (Cf. Eng. *porphyry*.)

ποσί, see **πούς**.

πόσος, **η**, **ον**, interrog. pron., *how great? how large?* ii. 4. 21.

ποταμός, οῦ, ὁ, *river*; the name is usually in attrib. pos., i. 2. 5, 4. 11, ii. 4. 13, 5. 9, 18, iii. 1. 2, 3. 6, iv. 3. 1, 8. 1.

ποτέ, enclitic adv., *once, once upon a time*, i. 5. 7, 9. 6, ii. 1. 17, iii. 4. 10; after εἰ or a negative, *ever*, i. 9. 10, 28, ii. 4. 4; strengthening an interrogative, ὅποι ποτὲ τρέψονται, *where in the world they would turn*, iii. 5. 13.

πότερος, ᾱ, ον, interrog. pron., *which of two?* used like Lat. *uter;* neuter as adv., πότερον and πότερα, used as interrogative particles, usually with following ἤ; so πότερον . . . ἤ, in ind. questions, *whether . . . or*, i. 4. 13, ii. 2. 10; in a direct question with πότερον . . . ἤ, πότερον is not translated, iii. 2. 21; with the same uses πότερα . . . ἤ, indirect, ii. 1. 10, 21; direct, ii. 5. 17.

ποτόν, οῦ, τό (√πο, cf. πίνω), *anything to drink, drink*, i. 10. 18; σῖτα καὶ ποτά, *food and drink*, ii. 3. 27, iii. 2. 28.

πότος, ου, ὁ (√πο, cf. πίνω), *a drinking, banquet, symposium*, ii. 3. 15.

ποῦ, interrog. adv., *where?* with indirect quest., ii. 4. 15.

πού, indefinite enclitic adv., *somewhere, anywhere*, i. 2. 27, ii. 2. 15, 3. 6, 4. 4, iii. 4. 23, 5. 5, iv. 5. 8.

πούς, ποδός, ὁ (akin to Lat. *pēs, foot*, Eng. *foot*; cf. Eng. *polypus, gasteropod*), *foot*, of men or animals, i. 5. 3, 9. 13, iv. 2. 28, 5. 14; as a measure of length, *foot*, i. 2. 8, 7. 15, ii. 4. 12, iii. 4. 7, 10. The Attic foot was about 11.65 inches. English measure. Phrase, τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν, *what lies before one's feet, the ground before one*, iv. 6. 12.

πρᾶγμα, ατος, τό (πράττω), *deed, transaction, affair, matter*, i. 5. 13, 15; esp. of difficult or troublesome affairs, *difficulty, troublesome situation*, i. 3. 3, ii. 1. 16, iv. 1. 17; πράγματα παρέχειν, see παρέχω. (Cf. Eng. *pragmatic.*)

πρᾱνής, ές (πρό; akin to Lat. *prōnus*, with the same meanings), *inclined forward*; of a hill, *sloping downward, steep*, i. 5. 8; εἰς τὸ πρᾱνές, *down the hill*, iii. 4. 25; κατὰ τοῦ πρᾱνοῦς, *down along the incline*, iv. 8. 28.

πρᾶξις, εως, ἡ (πράττω), *a doing*, hence *enterprise, undertaking, plan, scheme*, i. 3. 16, 18, 19, ii. 6. 17.

πρᾶος, πρᾶεῖα, πρᾶον, *mild, gentle*, of fish, *tame*, i. 4. 9.

πρᾶττω, πρᾰ́ξω, ἔπρᾰξα, πέπρᾰγα and πέπρᾶχα, πέπρᾶγμαι, ἐπρᾰ́χθην (cf. Eng. *practice, practical*), *transact, manage, attend to, do, accomplish, effect*, i. 6. 6, ii. 2. 2, 18, 3. 6, 5. 21, 6. 16, iii. 1. 14; intrans., *be in a state* or *condition, fare*, with advs., καλῶς, κάκιον, οὕτω, i. 9. 10, iii. 1. 6, 4. 6.

πρᾴως, adv., *mildly, lightly*, i. 5. 14.

πρέπει, πρέψει, ἔπρεψε (poetic except in third pers.), *it is proper, is suitable, befits*, with dat., iii. 2. 7, with inf., iii. 2. 16; ἐπεὶ τῇ ἡλικίᾳ ἔπρεπε, *when he was of suitable age, when his age permitted*, i. 9. 6.

πρεσβεύω, πρεσβεύσω, ἐπρέσβευσα, πεπρέσβευκα, πεπρέσβευμαι (πρέσβυς), *be an envoy, come as ambassador*, with παρά and gen., ii. 1. 18.

πρέσβυς, εως, ὁ, *old, aged*, used in poetry; as adj., only comp. and superl. in prose, πρεσβύτερος, *older, elder*, i. 1. 1, 9. 5, ii. 3. 12, iii. 1. 14; πρεσβύτατος, *oldest, eldest*, ii. 1. 10, iii. 2. 37; as subst., only plural in prose, *elders*, esp. *ambassadors, envoys*, because older men usually served in this capacity, iii. 1. 28. (Cf. Eng. *priest, Presbyterian, Prester John.*)

πρίασθαι, inf. from indicative ἐπριάμην, a defective aorist (other tenses supplied by ὠνέομαι), *buy, purchase*, ii. 3. 26, iii. 1. 20; with gen. of price, i. 5. 6.

πρίν, conj. (akin to πρό), *before, until*; after affirmative sentences, with inf., i. 4. 13, 14, 16, 8. 19, 10. 19, ii. 5. 2, 5, iv. 1. 7, 21, 3. 12, 5. 19, 22, 6. 24; πρὶν ἤ with inf., iv. 5. 1; πρίν occurs with inf. once after a negative, iv. 5. 30. In some of the passages cited πρίν with inf. may be freely rendered by *without* and the verbal in *-ing*. After sentences that contain or imply a negative, with ind., i. 2. 26, ii. 5. 33, iii. 4. 28; so with οὐ πρότερον, οὐ πρόσθεν, where πρότερον and πρόσθεν may be omitted in translating, iii. 1. 16, 2. 29; with subj., i. 1. 10, with opt., i. 2. 2, in both cases with foregoing πρόσθεν.

πρό, prep. with gen.; of place, *before, in front of*, i. 2. 17, 4. 4, 7. 11, 20, 8. 24, ii. 4. 15, iv. 2. 21, 6. 12; of time, *before*, i. 7. 13.

προαγορεύω (ἀγορεύω, ἀγορεύσω, etc.; the simple forms are rare in prose, and even the compound forms are chiefly confined to the pres. and impf.), *announce in public, proclaim*, with ὅτι clause, ii. 2. 20.

προάγω (ἄγω), *lead forward*, iv. 6. 21.

προαισθάνομαι (αἰσθάνομαι), *perceive in advance, observe beforehand*, i. 1. 7.

προβαίνω (βαίνω), *step forward, go forward, advance*, iv. 3. 28; of time, ἡ νὺξ προβαίνει, *the night is wearing on*, iii. 1. 13.

προβάλλω (βάλλω), *throw forward*; mid., *hold before oneself*, προβάλλεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, *advance one's arms* into the position for attack, with the shield held in position for defence on the left arm and the spear thrust forward, i. 2. 17. The expression is analogous to the modern *charge bayonets*. The verb is used with special reference to the shield in the phrase, πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβεβλημένος (*sc.* ἀσπίδα), *holding his shield in front of both*, iv. 2. 21.

πρόβατον, ου, τό (προβαίνω), usually in pl., *cattle*, ii. 4. 27; the word is used chiefly of small cattle, as sheep and goats, iv. 7. 14; and *sheep* alone are meant in iii. 5. 9.

προβουλεύω (βουλεύω), *plan for, take counsel for*, iii. 1. 37.

πρόγονος, ου, ὁ (πρό, √γεν in γίγνομαι), *forefather, ancestor*, iii. 2. 11.

προδίδωμι (δίδωμι), *give up, give over, betray, be faithless to*, with acc., i. 3. 5, ii. 2. 8, 3. 22, 5. 39, iii. 1. 2, 2. 5; with acc. and dat., iii. 1. 14.

προδότης, ου, ὁ (προδίδωμι), *betrayer, traitor*, ii. 5. 27.

προδρομή, ῆς, ἡ (πρό, √δραμ, τρέχω, δρόμος), *running forward, sally*, iv. 7. 10.

προεῖδον (εἶδον), used as aor. of προοράω, *see before oneself, see coming*, i. 8. 20.

πρόειμι (εἶμι), *go forward, proceed, advance*, i. 2. 17, 3. 1, 6. 1, 8. 14, ii. 1. 21, 22, iv. 3. 34, 5. 21; with εἰς and acc., ii. 1. 2; with ἀπό and gen., ii. 1. 6; of time, ii. 2. 19, cf. προβαίνω; *go ahead, go in advance, lead the way*, i. 4. 18, iv. 4. 20.

προεῖπον (εἶπον), used for aor. of προαγορεύω, *announce, give orders*, i. 2. 17.

προελαύνω (ἐλαύνω), *ride forward, march forward*, i. 10. 16.

προέρχομαι (ἔρχομαι), *go forward, go in advance, march on*, ii. 3. 3, iii. 3. 6, 4. 37, iv. 2. 16.

προέχω (ἔχω), *have the advantage of*, with acc., iii. 2. 19. The verb usually has the gen. if an object is expressed.

προθῡμέομαι, προθῡμήσομαι and (fut. pass. as mid.) προθῡμηθήσομαι, προθῡμήθην (πρόθῡμος), *be eager, be ready, desire earnestly*, with inf. expressed or understood, i. 9. 24, ii. 4. 27, iii. 1. 9, 4. 15, iv. 1. 22.

προθῡμίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (πρόθῡμος), *readiness, zeal, energy*, i. 9. 18.

πρόθῡμος, *ον* (*πρό, θῡμός, mind, heart*); lit., *with a forward disposition*, hence, *ready, eager, zealous, willing*, i. 3. 19, 4. 15, 7. 8, iii. 2. 15.

προθῡμως, adv. (*πρόθῡμος*), *readily, eagerly, with a good will*, i. 4. 9, 10. 10, iii. 1. 5.

προΐημι (*ἵημι*), *throw forward, send forth*; mid., *give oneself over, entrust oneself*, i. 9. 12; also *send forth* from oneself, *give over* to another, *surrender*, i. 9. 9, 10.

προΐστημι (*ἵστημι*), *set in front of, place at the head of*; mid., with 2 aor., perf. and plupf. act., intrans., *be placed at the head, be in command*, with gen., i. 2. 1.

προκαλύπτω (*καλύπτω, καλύψω, ἐκάλυψα, κεκάλυμμαι, ἐκαλύφθην*), *conceal* by coming before, *hide*, of an eclipse, iii. 4. 8.

προκατακαίω (*καίω*), *burn down before one*, i. 6. 2.

προκαταλαμβάνω (*λαμβάνω*), *take in advance, occupy before another*, i. 3. 14, 16, ii. 5. 18, iii. 4. 38, 5. 18, iv. 1. 25, 2. 9, 24.

Προκλῆς, *έους*, *ὁ*, *Procles*, ruler of Teuthrania, a descendant of Demarātus the Spartan; he brought the Greeks the news of the death of Cyrus, ii. 1. 3, 2. 1.

Fig. 45.

προμετωπίδιον, *ου, τό* (*πρό, μέτωπον, forehead*), *frontlet*, a piece of armor for the forehead of a horse. Such frontlets were used by the Persian cavalry in Cyrus's army (i. 8. 7), but they were also known to the Greeks. Fig. 45 shows a frontlet of Greek workmanship.

Πρόξενος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Proxenus*, a Boeotian of Thebes, studied in his youth under the sophist Gorgias (ii. 6. 16), raised troops for Cyrus (i. 1. 10) and joined him at Sardis (i. 2. 3). During the expedition he attempted to act as peacemaker between Clearchus and Menon (i. 5. 14). At Cunaxa he commanded the centre of the Greek army (i. 8. 4, 10. 5). After the death of Cyrus, he was treacherously seized by Tissaphernes and afterwards put to death (ii. 5. 31, 6. 1). Proxenus was a friend of Xenophon (iii. 1. 4, 8, 15), who gives an account of his character in ii. 6. 16–20. See also ii. 1. 10, 4. 15, iii. 1. 47.

προπέμπω (*πέμπω*), *send forward, despatch*, ii. 2. 15, iv. 4. 5.

προπίνω (*πίνω*), *drink a health, pledge* with wine, with dat., iv. 5. 32.

προπονέω (*πονέω*), *work before, work for* a person, with gen., iii. 1. 37.

πρός, prep. with gen., dat., and acc.

With gen.: *from the direction of, from*; then, with a shift in the point of view, *in the direction of, towards*, i. 10. 3 (but see note), ii. 2. 4, iv. 3. 26 (twice); with a pass. verb, denoting the agent, *by*, a use rare in Attic prose, i. 9. 20; *on the part of, from*, ii. 3. 18, iii. 1. 5; *in the sight of, before*, i. 6. 6, ii. 5. 20, so esp. in the formula of adjuration, *πρὸς θεῶν, by* or *before the gods*, ii. 1. 17, iii. 1. 24.

With dat.: of place, *beside, near, by, at*, i. 2. 10, 8. 4, ii. 3. 4, 4. 13, iv. 5. 9, 22; *in addition to, besides*, iii. 2. 33, 4. 13.

With acc.: of motion, *to, towards* a person or a thing, i. 1. 5, 3. 18, 5. 7, 9. 29, ii. 2. 7, 3. 2, 9, 4. 1, 12, iii. 3. 2, 4. 28, iv. 2. 25; sometimes of position, *against*, i. 5. 13, iv. 2. 28; *up to, as far as*, iv. 5. 2; of direction, *towards*, i. 7. 6, iii. 5. 15, iv. 4. 4; *at*, where dat. would be expected, ii. 4. 25; of hostile motion towards a person or thing, *against*, i. 3. 20, 4. 11, 10. 9, ii. 6.

10, iv. 2. 11, 3. 26, 6. 25; with various verbal expressions of hostility, as **πολεμεῖν**, *μάχεσθαι*, **πόλεμός ἐστιν**, etc., also with some nouns of kindred meaning, *against*, i. 1. 8, 3. 4, 6. 6, 9. 14, ii. 5. 10, 21, 6. 2, iii. 1. 16, 2. 29, iv. 4. 2, 6. 11, 7. 12; without the idea of motion, *to, towards*, **βλέπειν πρός τινα**, iii. 1. 36, **γυμνὸς πρός τι**, iv. 3. 6; with verbs of communication, **ἀγγέλλω**, **λέγω** (originally *tell in the presence of, before*), *to*, i. 7. 13, ii. 5. 25, iii. 1. 34, 3. 2; so with **διαβάλλω**, i. 1. 3; with **ψεύδομαι**, i. 3. 5. **πρός** appears in various figurative meanings more or less directly derived from the literal; **σκοπεῖν πρός τι**, *have regard to*, i. 9. 23; **ἀποστῆναι πρός**, *revolt to, go over to the side of*, i. 1. 6, 7; with verbs denoting friendly relations, as reconciliation, etc., i. 1. 10, 2. 1, iii. 5. 16; denoting relation, or the object of a feeling, *towards, to*, i. 3. 9, ii. 5. 29, 6. 11, 12, 14, iii. 2. 16; also of things, *with regard to, with reference to, relating to*, esp. frequent in the phrase **πρὸς ταῦτα**, which may sometimes be translated *in answer* (when used with a verb of saying), i. 3. 19, 4. 9, 6. 9, 9. 6, ii. 1. 11, 20, 3. 21, 5. 39, iv. 3. 10. Of purpose, *for*, i. 10. 19, ii. 3. 11, 12, 5. 20, 6. 20, iv. 3. 31. Of time, **πρὸς ἡμέραν**, *towards day*, iv. 5. 21. Phrase, **πρὸς φιλίαν**, *in a friendly manner*, i. 3. 19. In composition **πρός** signifies *to, against, in addition.*

προσάγω (**ἄγω**), *lead against*, iv. 6. 21; figuratively, **πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων**, *though many terrors were applied*, iv. 1. 23; intrans., *march against, advance against*, iv. 8. 11; with **πρός** and acc., i. 10. 9.

προσαιτέω (**αἰτέω**), *ask in addition, ask for more*, with acc., i. 3. 21.

προσβαίνω (**βαίνω**), *walk to; step against, put the foot against*, in bracing a bow, with **πρός** and acc., iv. 2. 28.

προσβάλλω (**βάλλω**), *throw against*; intr., *throw (oneself) against, make an attack, charge*, iv. 6. 13; with **πρός** and acc., iv. 2. 11, 7. 2.

προσβατός, **ή**, **όν**, verbal from **προσβαίνω**, *accessible*, iv. 3. 12.

προσβολή, **ῆς**, **ἡ** (**προσβάλλω**), *attack, onset, assault*, iii. 4. 2.

προσγίγνομαι (**γίγνομαι**), *come in addition, join*, iv. 6. 9.

προσδίδωμι (**δίδωμι**), *give in addition, give besides*, i. 9. 19.

προσδοκάω, aor. **προσεδόκησα** (the simple **δοκάω** is not found), *expect, look for*, with acc. and inf., iii. 1. 14.

προσδοκέω (**δοκέω**), *seem besides, seem good besides*, iii. 2. 34.

πρόσειμι (**εἶμι**), *come towards, approach, advance, come up*, abs., i. 5. 14, 7. 5, 8. 11, 14, 10. 6, ii. 2. 17, iii. 3. 5, iv. 1. 16, 5. 5, 7. 7, 8. 12; with dat., ii. 4. 2; with **πρός** and acc., iii. 2. 2, 3. 7, 4. 33.

προσελαύνω (**ἐλαύνω**), *drive towards*; intrans., *ride towards, ride up*, iii. 4. 39, iv. 4. 5; *march towards, march up, be on the march*, i. 5. 12, 7. 16, iii. 5. 13.

προσέρχομαι (**ἔρχομαι**), *come to* or *towards, advance, come up, approach*, i. 8. 1, ii. 1. 8, 4. 15, 5. 36, iv. 2. 7; with **εἰς** and acc., iv. 4. 5; with dat. of person, iii. 5. 8, iv. 3. 10; so of soldiers, *go over to*, with dat. of person, i. 3. 9.

προσέχω (**ἔχω**), *hold to*; in Anab. only in the phrase **προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν**, *apply the mind to*, that is, *pay attention to, give heed to, confine one's attention to*, with dat., i. 5. 9, ii. 4. 2, iv. 2. 2.

προσήκω (**ἥκω**), *come to; reach, extend*, with **ἐπί** and acc., iv. 3. 23; of persons, *belong to, be related to*, with dat., i. 6. 9; so **τούτῳ τῆς Βοιωτίας προσήκει οὐδέν**, *this fellow*

has nothing to do with Boeotia, more literally, *has no share in Boeotia*, iii. 1. 31; with dat. and inf., or acc. and inf., *it belongs to, it is one's part, it befits, is proper*, iii. 2. 11, 15, 16.

πρόσθεν, adv., *before, in front*; of space, in various phrases: **τὰ πρόσθεν**, *the van*, iii. 2. 36; **εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν**, *forward, to the front*, i. 10. 3, ii. 1. 2, iii. 4. 38; **εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν τῶν ὅπλων**, *to the space before the arms*, iii. 1. 33. Of time, *before, formerly, previously*, i. 3. 18, 6. 10, 10. 10, ii. 4. 5, 5. 40; often used in attributive pos. like an adj., *former, previous, preceding*, i. 4. 8, 6. 3, ii. 3. 1, 22, iii. 4. 2, iv. 3. 7. Phrase, **τὸ πρόσθεν**, *formerly, before*, i. 10. 11, iii. 1. 23. For **πρόσθεν . . . πρίν**, see **πρίν**. **πρόσθεν . . . ἤ**, *sooner than*, ii. 1. 10.

προσΐημι (**ἵημι**), *let come to, allow to approach*, with **πρός** and acc., iv. 5. 5; mid., *let come to oneself*, **ἐγγὺς οὐ προσΐεντο**, *they did not receive them at close quarters*, iv. 2. 12; **προσΐεσθαι εἰς ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς**, *admit to the same standing with ourselves*, iii. 1. 30.

προσκαλέω (**καλέω**), *call to, summon*, i. 9. 28.

προσκυνέω, προσκυνήσω, προσεκύνησα (**κυνέω**, *kiss*, poetic), *bow down to, worship*, of a god, iii. 2. 9, 13; also of the salute made by orientals in the presence of a superior, kneeling and kissing the earth, *make an obeisance* or *salaam, do homage*, i. 6. 10, so in pass., i. 8. 21.

προσλαμβάνω (**λαμβάνω**), *take in addition* to others, *take along besides, take to help*, i. 7. 3, iv. 1. 27; *lay hold on, lend a hand, join in the work*, ii. 3. 11, 12.

προσμείγνῡμι (**μείγνῡμι, μείξω, ἔμειξα, μέμειγμαι, ἐμείχθην** and **ἐμίγην**, *mix*), *mingle with*; intrans., of persons, *join, unite with*, iv. 2. 16.

πρόσοδος, **ου**, **ἡ** (**ὁδός**), *approach*; also, *income, revenue, profit*, i. 9. 19.

προσόμνῡμι (**ὄμνῡμι**), *swear further, take an additional oath, swear besides*, with inf., ii. 2. 8.

προσποιέομαι (**ποιέω**), *claim, profess*, with inf., ii. 1. 7; *pretend, feign*, with inf., i. 3. 14, iv. 6. 13; with fut. inf., iv. 3. 20.

προσπολεμέω (**πολεμέω**), *make war against, fight against*, i. 6. 6.

προστατέω, προεστάτησα (**προστάτης**, *ruler, president*, from **προΐστημι**), *be in charge of, manage*, with gen., iv. 8. 25.

προστάττω (**τάττω**), *assign to* a duty, *command, give orders*, i. 6. 10, 9. 18.

προστερνίδιον, **ου**, **τό** (**πρό, στέρνον**), *armor for the chest, breastplate* for horses, i. 8. 7.

προστίθημι (**τίθημι**), *add to*; mid., *join oneself to* a person or a cause, **ταύτῃ τῇ γνώμῃ προσθέσθαι**, *accede to* or *concur in this opinion*, i. 6. 10.

προστρέχω (**τρέχω**), *run to* or *towards*, with dat., iv. 2. 21, 3. 10.

πρόσω, adv., *forward, in advance*; with gen. of place, **τοῦ πρόσω ἰέναι**, *go forward*, i. 3. 1, **πρόσω τοῦ ποταμοῦ**, *far into the river*, iv. 3. 28. Comp., **προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ**, *farther than the right point, i. e. farther than was proper*, iv. 3. 34. *Far, far away, at a long distance*, ii. 2. 15, iv. 5. 2; with gen., *far from*, iii. 2. 22.

πρόσωπον, **ου**. **τό** (old acc. **ὤπα**, *face*), *face, countenance*, ii. 6. 11.

προτεραῖος, **ᾱ**, **ον** (**πρότερος**), *on the day before*; **τῇ προτεραίᾳ** (supply **ἡμέρᾳ**), *the day before*, ii. 1. 3.

πρότερος, **ᾱ**, **ον** (comp. from **πρό**), *former, preceding, previous*; often used where English would employ an adv., **προτέρᾱ Κύρου ἀφίκετο**, *she arrived before Cyrus*, i. 2. 25, cf. 4. 12; neut. as adv., **πρότερον**, *before, formerly, previously*, i. 2. 26, 3. 21, 7. 18, iv. 4. 14, 15; for **πρότερον . . . πρίν**, see **πρίν**.

προτῑμάω (τῑμάω), *honor before* or *more than* another, with gen., i. 4, 14 (fut. mid. as pass.), i. 6. 5.

προτρέχω (τρέχω), *run forward*, i. 5. 2, iv. 7. 10.

προφαίνω (φαίνω), *show forth, exhibit*; pass., *appear, present oneself, come into view*, of persons and things, i. 8. 1, ii. 3. 13.

προφασίζομαι, προφασιοῦμαι, προυφασισάμην (πρόφασις), *make a pretext of, give as an excuse*, iii. 1. 25.

πρόφασις, εως, ἡ (√φα in φημί), *that which is alleged as a reason, pretext, excuse*, with gen. and inf., i. 1. 7; with ὡς and partic., i. 2. 1; with ἵνα clause, ii. 3. 21.

προφυλακή, ῆς, ἡ (προφύλαξ), *a guard in front*, pl., *outposts, pickets*, iii. 2. 1.

προφύλαξ, ακος, ὁ (φυλάττω), *sentinel, picket*, ii. 3. 2, 4. 15. (Cf. Eng. *prophylactic*.)

προχωρέω (χωρέω), *go forward*, hence *go on well, prosper*, and impers., *be of advantage, be convenient*, i. 9. 13.

πρῴ, adv. (πρό), *early in the morning, betimes*, ii. 2. 1; comp., πρῳαίτερον, *earlier*, iii. 4. 1.

πρωτεύω, πρωτεύσω, ἐπρώτευσα (πρῶτος), *be first, have the first place*, ii. 6. 26.

πρῶτος, η, ον (πρό), *first*, in all senses of the word, of place, order, time, and relative importance, i. 10. 7, ii. 2. 8, 12, 4. 13, iii. 4. 25, iv. 8. 1; of social standing, οἱ πρῶτοι, *those of highest rank, those occupying the highest position*, ii. 6. 17, cf. § 26; in military language, *the van*, ii. 2. 16, 17, iii. 5. 12, iv. 2. 25. πρῶτος is very often used with a noun where English would use *first* as an adverb in connection with the verb; so i. 3. 1, 6. 9, ii. 3. 17, 19, iii. 2. 1, 4. 20, iv. 2. 9, 8. 12, 18. Neuter as adv., πρῶτον, *first, at first, first of all, in the first place, for the first time*, i. 2. 16, 3. 2, 4, 6. 6, 9. 2, ii. 3. 5, 16, 4. 5, iii. 1. 13, 15, 38, 2. 27, 4. 32; τὸ πρῶτον, *at first*, i. 10. 10, iv. 8. 9; πρῶτον καὶ μέγιστον, *first and foremost*, ii. 5. 7. (Cf. Eng. *prototype, protozoa, prot(h)onotary, protocol*.)

πτάρνυμαι, ἔπταρον (akin to Lat. *sternuo, sneeze*), *sneeze*, iii. 2. 9.

πτέρυξ, υγος, ἡ (akin to πέτομαι), *wing*, i. 5. 3; *flaps* of leather or felt attached to the lower edge of the corselet (θώρᾱξ) to protect the lower part of the abdomen and the groin, iv. 7. 15. See θώρᾱξ and the cut under that word.

πυγμή, ῆς, ἡ (akin to Lat. *pugnus, fist*, cf. Eng. *pygmy*), *fist; fighting with the fists, boxing*, iv. 8. 27. Boxing was one of the regular contests at the Greek public games, but on account of its brutality it seems to have been practised almost exclusively by professional athletes, at least in Xenophon's time. Boxers guarded their fists and forearms with thongs of leather (cf. Lat. *caestus*),

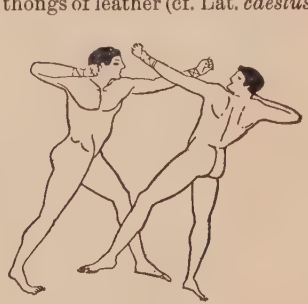


Fig. 46.

which were either soft or hard. The soft straps are worn by the boxers in Fig. 46. The hard straps were often formidable weapons, especially when, as was sometimes the case, the thongs were further strengthened by bits of metal. The match was not

conducted by rounds, but went on without rests, except when both the pugilists were forced to stop for breath, until one acknowledged himself defeated or was disabled.

Πυθαγόρᾱς, *ου, ὁ, Pythagoras*, Spartan admiral, brings a fleet to cooperate with Cyrus, i. 4. 2.

πυκνός, *ή, όν, thick, close, thick-set, close together*, ii. 3. 3, iv. 7. 15, 8. 2.

Πύλαι, *ῶν, αἱ, Pylae*, lit. "*The Gates*," a fortress on the Euphrates river, on the frontiers of Mesopotamia and Babylonia, i. 5. 5.

πύλη, *ης, ἡ, gate*, i. 4. 4; also *pass* through mountains, so *πύλαι τῆς Κιλικίᾱς καὶ τῆς Συρίᾱς, the Syro-Cilician pass*, i. 4. 4. This was a narrow passage between Mount Amānus and the sea (Gulf of Issus), fortified with strong walls as described in the paragraph cited above.

πυνθάνομαι, *πεύσομαι, ἐπυθόμην, πέπυσμαι, ask, inquire*, with acc. and *ὅπως* with ind. quest., iii. 1. 7; *learn* by inquiry, *ascertain, find out*, abs. or with acc., i. 5. 15, ii. 1. 4, 2. 3, iv. 4. 22; with acc. and partic., iv. 6. 17; with gen. of source and *ὅτι* clause, iv. 6. 17.

πῦρ, *πῡρός, τό* (akin to Eng. *fire*), *fire*, ii. 5. 19, iii. 1. 3, iv. 2. 5, 5. 5, 11, 21; pl., *τὰ πῡρά, camp-fires, watch-fires*, iv. 4. 9; *signal-fires, beacons*, iv. 1. 11, 6. 20. (Cf. *pyre, pyrotechnic, pyrites, empyrean.*)

πῡραμίς, *ίδος, ἡ, pyramid*, iii. 4. 9.

Πύραμος, *ου, ὁ, Pyramus*, a large river of Asia Minor, rising in southern Cappadocia and flowing southwest through Cilicia into the Gulf of Issus, i. 4. 1. It is now the Jihân.

πύρινος, *η, ον* (*πῡρός*), *of wheat, wheaten*, iv. 5. 31.

πῡρός, *οῦ, ὁ, wheat*, in Anab. pl., *πῡροί*, i. 2. 22, iv. 5. 5, 26.

πώ, indefinite adv., only in negative sentences, *ever, at any time*, i. 2. 26.

πωλέω, πωλήσω, ἐπωλήθην, *sell*, i. 5. 5. (Cf. Eng. *monopoly, bibliopole.*)

πῶλος, *ου, ὁ* (akin to Lat. *pullus, young animal*, Eng. *foal, filly*), *foal, colt*, iv. 5. 24, 35.

πῶμα, *ατος, τό* (√*πο*, cf. *πίνω*), *drink, beverage*, iv. 5. 27.

πώποτε, indef. adv. (*πώ, ποτέ*), in neg. clauses, *ever, ever yet, at any time*, i. 6. 1, 9. 18, 19.

πῶς, interrogative adv., *in what way? how?* used in both dir. and indir. questions, i. 7. 2, ii. 5. 20, iii. 4. 40, iv. 5. 22.

πώς, indef. adv., *in any way, by any means, somehow*, ii. 3. 18, 5. 2; *ἄλλως πως, in any other way*, iii. 1. 20, 26; *for some reason or other, somehow* (*I don't know why*), ii. 6. 3, iii. 1. 43; *about, somewhat*, i. 7. 9, iv. 8. 21.

P

ῥᾴδιος, *ᾱ, ον, easy*, with inf., iv. 7. 7, with dat. and inf., iv. 8. 13, with inf. understood, iii. 4. 15; comp. *ῥᾷον*, with inf., iv. 6. 12; superl., *ῥᾷστον*, with inf., ii. 6. 24.

ῥᾳδίως, adv. (*ῥᾴδιος*), *easily, without difficulty*, iii. 5. 9; superl., *ὡς ῥᾷστα, with the greatest ease, as easily as possible*, iv. 6. 10.

ῥᾳθῡμέω (*ῥᾳθῡμος, light-hearted, easy-going, ῥᾳ* in *ῥᾴδιος, θῡμός*), *be easy-going, be free from care, live at ease* or *in idleness*, ii. 6. 6.

ῥᾳθῡμίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (cf. *ῥᾳθῡμέω*), *ease, idleness*, ii. 6. 5.

ῥέω, *ῥεύσομαι* and *ῥυήσομαι, ἐρρύηκα, ἐρρύην, flow, run*, of rivers, i. 2. 7, 8, 23, 4. 4.

ῥῖπτω and *ῥῑπτέω* (only pres. and impf.), *ῥίψω, ἔρρῑψα, ἔρρῖφα, ἔρρῖμμαι, ἐρρίφθην* and *ἐρρίφην, throw, cast, hurl*, with dir. obj. and *εἰς*

with acc., iii. 3. 1, iv. 8. 3; *throw aside, throw down, cast down*, i. 5. 8, iv. 7. 13.

Ῥόδιος, ᾱ, ον (**Ῥόδος,** *Rhodes*), *of Rhodes, Rhodian*; as subst., ὁ **Ῥόδιος,** *Rhodian*, iii. 5. 8; the Rhodians were famous as slingers, iii. 3. 16, 4. 15. Rhodes is an island in the Aegean Sea, off the southern coast of Caria. It was colonized by Dorians.

ῥοφέω, *ῥοφήσομαι* and perhaps *ῥοφήσω*, *ἐρόφησα*, *sup up, suck in*, like an animal drinking, iv. 5. 32.

ῥῦμα, ατος, τό (*ἐρύω, draw*), *a drawing, that which is drawn*; **ἐκ τόξου ῥύματος,** *at the distance of a bow-shot, with a bow-shot's start*, iii. 3. 15.

ῥώμη, ης, ἡ (*ῥώννῡμι, strengthen*), *strength, might*; military *force*, iii. 3. 14.

Σ

σάγαρις, εως, ἡ, *battle-axe*, used by the Scythians and other non-Greek peoples, iv. 4. 17; it was often carried by the Amazons represented in sculptures and paintings. It was usually double-edged, but a sharp spike or pick sometimes occupied one side of the weapon.

σακίον, ου, τό (dim. of ὁ *σάκος, bag*), *little bag* or *sack*, iv. 5. 36.

σάλπιγξ, ιγγος, ἡ, *trumpet*, used in giving military signals, iii. 4. 4, iv. 2. 1, 7, 4. 22. The *σάλπιγξ* was a straight, bronze instrument with a mouth-piece, from which it gradually increased in size towards the opening, which often flared outwards like a bell. See the cut under *σαλπικτής*.

σαλπίζω, *ἐσάλπιγξα* (*σάλπιγξ*), *sound a trumpet*; *ἐσάλπιγξε* (*σαλπικτής* understood as subj.), *the trumpet sounded* (the charge), i. 2. 17.

σαλπικτής, οῦ, ὁ (*σάλπιγξ, trumpeter*), iv. 3. 29, 32. See Fig. 47.

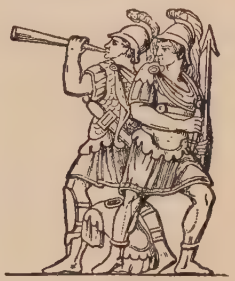


Fig. 47.

Σάμιος, ᾱ, ον (**Σάμος,** *Samos*), *of Samos, Samian*, i. 7. 5. Samos is an island in the Aegean, lying off the Ionian coast of Asia Minor.

Σάρδεις, εων, αἱ, *Sardis*, the chief city of Lydia, situated on the Pactōlus river, near its confluence with the Hermus. It lies on the northern slope of Mount Tmōlus, and is almost in the centre of the country. Sardis was the capital of the Lydian monarchy, and after the overthrow of its king, Croesus, it was the residence of Persian satraps. The name survives in the modern village of Sart. Cyrus mustered his forces at Sardis, and from there the expedition of the Ten Thousand began. i. 2. 2 ff., 6. 6, iii. 1. 8.

σατραπεύω (*σατράπης*), *be a satrap, govern as satrap*, with acc., i. 7. 6, with gen., iii. 4. 31.

σατράπης, ου, ὁ (Old Persian *kshatrapavan, protector of the realm*), *satrap*, governor of a Persian province. Satraps were appointed by the king and were responsible only to him. Within their provinces they were clothed with viceregal powers, administering all civil affairs of the territory under their jurisdiction, and leading the

troops levied from their provinces in time of war. i. 1. 2, 9. 7, iv. 4. 2, 5. 10.

Σάτυρος, ου, ὁ, *satyr*; but in i. 2. 13 Xen. alludes to Silēnus, the good-humored, drunken old attendant of Dionȳsus, the wine-god. To the Greek imagination, the satyrs were types of the rude, joyous, savage life of the woods and mountains. In the numberless representations of satyrs in ancient art, a grotesque, animal jollity is their most prominent characteristic. They are young and old, and have coarse, bristly hair, low foreheads, snub noses, pointed ears, and tails like horses. They are often represented in the train of Dionȳsus, drinking, dancing, and sporting with the nymphs.

σαυτοῦ, ῆς, contr. form (preferred by Xen.) of **σεαυτοῦ, ῆς,** reflex. pron. (stem **σε**, cf. **σύ, αὐτός**), *of yourself, to yourself*, etc., ii. 5. 16; the gen. in attrib. pos. is used like an emphatic possessive pron., *your own*, i. 6. 7, ii. 5. 11.

σαφής, ές, *clear, plain, manifest, evident*, iii. 1. 10.

σαφῶς, adv. (**σαφής**), *clearly, evidently, manifestly*, i. 4. 18, iii. 4. 37, iv. 5. 8; *certainly, with certainty*, ii. 5. 4.

σεαυτοῦ, see **σαυτοῦ**.

Σεκυώνιος, ᾱ, ον (**Σεκυών**, *Secyon*), *of Secyon, Secyonian*; as subst., **ὁ Σεκυώνιος**, *Secyonian*, iii. 4. 47. Secyon is the name of a city and state of northern Peloponnesus. The territory of Secyon lay along the southern shore of the Gulf of Corinth between the districts of Corinth and Achaia. The ruins of the town are near the modern Vasilika. The name of the city is sometimes less correctly written **Σικυών**, *Sicyon*, adj. **Σικυώνιος**.

σημαίνω, σημανῶ, ἐσήμηνα, σεσήμασμαι, ἐσημάνθην (**σῆμα**, *sign*, cf. Eng. *semaphore, semasiology*), *make a sign*, in military language *give a signal*, often with no subject expressed (cf. **σαλπίζω**), ii. 2. 4, iii. 4. 4, iv. 2. 1, 3. 32; with obj., **τὸ πολεμικόν**, iv. 3. 29; *show by signs, indicate, inform, instruct*, ii. 1. 2.

σημεῖον, ου, τό (**σῆμα**, *sign*), *sign, signal*, ii. 5. 32; *ensign, standard*, i. 10. 12. The Persian royal standard, as described in the passage cited, may have been similar to Fig. 48, a golden eagle with extended wings on a background in the shape of the **πέλτη**, or lunate shield. The words **ἐπὶ ξύλου** in i. 10. 12, if they are not an interpolation, refer to the pole supporting the shield.

Fig. 48.

σησάμινος, η, ον (**σήσαμον**), *of sesame, made from sesame*, iv. 4. 13.

σήσαμον, ου, τό, *sesame*, name of an important Oriental food-plant and its seed, i. 2. 22. Sesame (*sesamum indicum*) is an herb about two feet in height, producing bean-like pods with numerous small, sweet, oily seeds. These seeds are used for food, and from them a valuable oil is expressed, the gingil-oil of commerce.

σῑγή, ῆς, ἡ, *silence*, ii. 2. 20; dat. as adv., *silently, in silence*, i. 8. 11, iv. 2. 7.

σίγλος, ου, ὁ (Semitic word, cf. Hebrew *sheqel, shekel*), *siglus, shekel*, a coin of Semitic origin current in Persia, and worth, according to Xenophon, seven and one-half Attic obols, i. 5. 6. See **ὀβολός**.

Σιλᾱνός, οῦ, ὁ, *Silānus*, a soothsayer from Ambracia in Epirus, i. 7. 18.

σίνομαι, *σῑνήσομαι* (?), *ἐσῑνάμην*, *injure, do harm*, iii. 4. 16. (Ionic word, used in Attic prose only by Xen. and Plato.)

Σινωπεύς, *έως*, *Sinopean, native of Sinope*, iv. 8. 22. *Sinope* was a city of Paphlagonia founded by Milesian colonists on the coast of the Euxine. It is now Sinub.

σῑταγωγός, *όν* (*σῖτος*, *ἄγω*), *grain-carrying*; *πλοῖα σῑταγωγά*, *grain transports* [i. 7. 15].

σῖτίον, *ου*, *τό* (*σῖτος*), *food*, i. 10. 18.

σῖτος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *grain*, i. 4. 19, ii. 3. 14, 4. 27, iii. 4. 18; *bread*, *σῖτος μελίνης*, *millet-bread*, i. 5. 10; *food, provisions*, i. 5. 5, 6, ii. 1. 6, iii. 1. 3; so in pl., *σῖτα*, *food*, ii. 3. 27, iii. 2. 28. (Cf. Eng. *parasite*.)

Σιττάκη, *ης*, *ἡ*, *Sittace*, a large city of Babylonia near the west bank of the Tigris river, not far from the modern Baghdad, ii. 4. 13.

σιωπάω, *σιωπήσομαι*, *ἐσιώπησα*, *σεσιώπηκα*, *-εσιωπήθην*, *be silent*, i. 3. 2.

σκεδάννῡμι, *σκεδῶ*, *ἐσκέδασα* (these forms occur in Attic chiefly in compounds), *ἐσκέδασμαι*, *ἐσκεδάσθην*, *scatter*; mid., *be scattered, disperse*, iii. 5. 2.

σκέλος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *leg*, iv. 2. 20, 7. 4. (Cf. Eng. *isosceles*.)

σκεπτέον, verbal of *σκέπτομαι*, *one must consider*, with *ὅπως* clause, i. 3. 11, iv. 6. 10.

σκέπτομαι (pres. not used by Xen. and rare in Attic, which uses *σκοπέω* instead), *σκέψομαι*, *ἐσκεψάμην*, *ἔσκεμμαι*, *view, search, observe, find out, see*, with interr. clause, iv. 5. 20, 22; *consider, reflect*, with interr. clause, iii. 2. 20, 22. (Cf. Eng. *skeptic*.)

σκευή, *ῆς*, *ἡ*, *equipment, attire, robe*, iv. 7. 27.

σκεῦος, *ους*, *τό*, *utensil, tool*; pl., *τὰ σκεύη*, *baggage*, including camp utensils and equipage of all kinds and the property of the soldiers, but not their arms, iii. 1. 30, 2. 28, iv. 3. 30.

σκευοφορέω, *σκευοφορήσω* (*σκεῦος*, *φορέω*), *carry baggage*, said both of men and horses, iii. 2. 28, 3. 19.

σκευοφόρος, *ον* (*σκεῦος*, *φέρω*), *carrying baggage*; as subst., *σκευοφόρος*, *porter, carrier*, iii. 2. 28; *τὰ σκευοφόρα*, *beasts of burden, pack animals*, iii. 3. 19; also *baggage-train*, i. 3. 7, 10. 3, 5, 17, iii. 2. 36, iv. 3. 25, 26.

σκηνάω, *σκηνήσω*, *ἐσκήνησα*, *ἐσκήνημαι* (*σκηνή*), *be in a tent, be encamped*, aor., *pitch tents, encamp*, ii. 4. 14; also, less strictly, *be quartered, quarter oneself*, iv. 2. 22, 7. 27. (The fut., aor., and perf. pass. of this verb might belong to a present *σκηνέω*, but for this form there is no certain authority.)

σκηνή, *ῆς*, *ἡ*, *booth*, of soldiers, *tent*, i. 2. 17, 18, 22, 4. 3, 5. 12, 6. 4, 11, iv. 4. 1. The *σκηνή* consisted of a light wooden frame-work covered with hides or thatched roughly with straw or reeds when such materials were at hand. The word is also used loosely of any resting-place for the night, *camp, bivouac, quarters*, iii. 5. 7. That tents in the ordinary sense are not meant here is shown by the fact that the Greeks had previously burned their tents, iii. 2. 27, 3. 1.

σκηνόω (*σκηνή*), *pitch tents, encamp*, i. 4, 9, iv. 8. 25; *be quartered*, iv. 4. 14, 5. 23, 33.

σκήνωμα, *ατος*, *τό* (*σκηνόω*), *tent*, pl., *quarters*, ii. 2. 17.

σκηπτός, *οῦ*, *ὁ*, *sudden storm, thunderbolt*, iii. 1. 11.

σκηπτοῦχος, *ου*, *ὁ* (*σκῆπτρον*, *staff, sceptre*, *ἔχω*), *staff-bearer, sceptre-bearer*, i. 6. 11, 8. 28. *σκηπτοῦχος* was the title of a high officer in the Persian court, a kind of chamberlain with a mace.

σκληρός, ά, όν, originally *dry*, hence *hard, rough; ἐν σκληρῷ, on rough ground*, iv. 8. 26. (Cf. Eng. *sclerotic.*)

σκληρῶς, adv. (*σκληρός*), *roughly, harshly, in hardship*, iii. 2. 26.

σκοπέω, only pres. and imperf. in Attic, other forms from *σκέπτομαι* (*σκοπός*), *watch, look at, keep watch upon*, ii. 5. 4, with *εἰ* clause, ii. 4. 24; *observe, see*, with interr. clause, iii. 1. 13; *have regard to, have an eye to*, with *πρός* and acc., i. 9. 23.

σκοπός, οῦ, ὁ (*σκέπτομαι*; cf. Eng. *scope, telescope*), *watcher, scout, spy*, ii. 2. 15.

σκοταῖος, ᾱ, ον (*σκότος*), *in the dark, after nightfall, late*, ii. 2. 17.

σκότος, ους, τό (akin to Eng. *shade, shadow*), *darkness, the dark*, ii. 2. 7, 5. 7, 9, iv. 2. 4, 5. 17.

Σκύθης, ου, ὁ, *Scythian* [iii. 4. 15]. The Scythians were a wandering, warlike people inhabiting the country north of the Danube and the Black and Caspian seas. They were famous for their skill with the bow, a fact which explains the interpolation of the word *Σκύθαι* before *τοξόται* in the passage quoted above.

Σκυθηνοί, ῶν, οἱ, Scythēni, a people inhabiting the territory lying along the Harpasus river, north of the Chalybes and not far from the coast of the Black Sea, iv. 7. 18, 8. 1.

σμῆνος, ους, τό, *swarm of bees, hive of bees*, iv. 8. 20.

Σόλοι, ων, οἱ, *Soli*, a city on the coast of Cilicia, west of the mouth of the Psarus river, near the modern Mezetlu, i. 2. 24. (Hence Eng. *solecism.*)

Σοῦσα, ων, τά (Semitic *Shushan*, modern Persian *Sūs*), *Susa*, capital of the Persian province of Susiana (Khuzistan or Arabistan), and winter residence of the Persian kings, ii. 4. 25, iii. 5. 15. Extensive ruins of the ancient city have been discovered at Sūs.

Σοφαίνετος, ου, ὁ, *Sophaenetus*, a general from Stymphalus in Arcadia, friend of Cyrus (i. 1. 11), whose expedition he joined at Sardis with a thousand men (i. 2. 3; the mention of his arrival at Celaenae at i. 2. 9 is probably due to a copyist's error). He is also mentioned in ii. 5. 37 and iv. 4. 19. Sophaenetus wrote a history of the expedition of Cyrus, which has been lost.

σοφίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ, *knowledge, skill, wisdom*, esp. *musical skill*, i. 2. 8. (Cf. Eng. *Sophia.*)

σοφός, ή, όν, *skilled, accomplished, wise*, i. 10. 2. (Cf. Eng. *philosophy, sophist, sophomore.*)

σπανίζω, σπανιῶ, ἐσπάνισα, ἐσπάνισμαι (cf. *σπάνιος*), *lack, be in want, need*, with gen., ii. 2. 12.

σπάνιος, ᾱ, ον, *scanty, lacking, rare*, i. 9. 27.

Σπάρτη, ης, ἡ, *Sparta*, also called Lacedaemon, the capital of Lacedaemon or Laconia, ii. 6. 4. It was situated on the Eurōtas river in a plain surrounded by mountains. The city was not fortified, and its buildings were insignificant. A modern city called Sparta exists upon the site of the ancient one. The Laconian territory occupied the southern and southeastern part of the Peloponnesus, and was bounded on the north by Arcadia and Argolis, on the east and south by the sea, and on the west by Messenia and the Gulf of Messenia. The best land was in the valley of the Eurōtas, enclosed by the Taÿgetus range on the west, the Scirītis on the north, and Parnon on the east.

Σπαρτιάτης, ου, ὁ (*Σπάρτη*), *Spartan*, a name used only of the citizens of the ruling class, as distinguished from the Perioeci (*περίοικοι*), the subject population of the

Lacedaemonian state, and the Helots (εἵλωτες) or state serfs. Among the Σπαρτιᾶται themselves a distinction was made between the ὅμοιοι (*q. v.*), or citizens with full rights, and the ὑπομείονες, whose political privileges were limited.

σπάρτον, *ου, τό, rope, cord,* iv. 7. 15.

σπάω, *-σπάσω, ἔσπασα, -ἔσπακα, -ἔσπασμαι, -εσπάσθην, draw*; of a sword, mid., i. 8. 29. (Cf. Eng. *spasm.*)

σπένδω, *-σπείσω, ἔσπεισα, ἔσπεισμαι* (akin to Lat. *spondeo, promise solemnly*), *pour out*, esp. *pour a drink-offering, offer a libation*, iv. 3. 13, 14; hence, because libations were made in the ceremonies of concluding a treaty or a solemn compact, *make a treaty, alliance*, or *truce*, abs. i. 9. 8, ii. 3. 9, iii. 5. 5; with dat. of the person with whom the treaty is made, i. 9. 7; with dat. of the person in whose behalf it is made, ii. 3. 7; with πρός and acc., iii. 5. 16; with ἐφ' ᾧ and inf., iv. 4. 6.

σπεύδω, *σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα, hasten, make haste, hurry*, i. 5. 9, ii. 3. 13, iii. 4. 20, 49, iv. 1. 21, 8. 14; with inf., i. 5. 9.

σπολάς, *άδος, ἡ, leather corselet* or *jerkin*, iii. 3. 20, iv. 1. 18.

σπονδή, *ῆς, ἡ* (σπένδω), *libation, drink-offering*, iv. 3. 14; in plural, *an agreement solemnized by libations, covenant, treaty of peace, truce*, i. 9. 8, ii. 1. 21, 23, 3. 1, 4 ff., 4. 5, 5. 38, 41, iii. 1. 19, 28, 2. 10, iv. 2. 17. (Cf. Eng. *spondee.*)

σπουδάζω, *σπουδάσομαι, ἐσπούδασα, ἐσπούδακα, ἐσπούδασμαι, ἐσπουδάσθην* (σπουδή), *make haste, be eager, show zeal*, ii. 3. 12.

σπουδαιολογέω (an unattested form), *ἐσπουδαιολόγησα, ἐσπουδαιολογήθην* (σπουδαῖος, *serious*, from σπουδή, λέγω), *talk earnestly*; mid., σπουδαιολογέομαι, *converse seriously, enter into an earnest conversation*, i. 9. 28.

σπουδή, *ῆς, ἡ* (σπεύδω), *haste, speed, alacrity*, i. 8. 4, iv. 1. 17.

στάδιον, *ου, τό*, pl. τὰ στάδια and οἱ στάδιοι, used indifferently by Xenophon, *stadium*, a Greek measure of distance, 600 Greek feet, or in English measure, 582 feet 6 inches, i. 4. 1, 4, 11, 8. 17, 10. 4, ii. 4. 13, iii. 1. 2, 4. 3, iv. 3. 1, 16; *race-course* a stadium in length, *stadium race*, iv. 8. 27. The term is used of foot-races only.

σταθμός, *οῦ, ὁ* (√στα in ἵστημι), *halting-place, station* on the march, i. 8. 1, 10. 1, ii. 1. 3, 2. 8, iv. 1. 19; also of the distance between two stopping-places, *stage, day's march*, i. 2. 5, 5. 1, ii. 2. 11, 12, 4. 12, iii. 4. 10, 23, iv. 4. 3, 7, 6. 4, etc. The length of the day's march varied considerably according to the character of the ground and other circumstances. When no retarding circumstances are mentioned the length of the day's march was from five to ten parasangs (i. 2. 10, 11, 13, 14), but when the road was difficult or it was necessary for any reason to proceed with caution the distance traversed might be only three or four parasangs, cf. i. 7. 1, 14, iii. 4. 13, iv. 4. 3. It should be borne in mind that the parasang itself was probably not an absolutely fixed measure of distance (see παρασάγγης).

στᾶς, see ἵστημι.

στασιάζω, *στασιάσω, ἐστασίασα* (στάσις, *party, faction*), *form* or *belong to a faction*; with dat., *oppose, be at variance with, be at outs with*, ii. 5. 28.

στέγασμα, *ατος, τό* (στεγάζω, *cover*, from στέγη), *cover, covering*, of tents, i. 5. 10.

στέγη, *ης, ἡ* (akin to Lat. *tego, cover*, *tectum, roof*, and Eng. *thatch*), *roof*; also *house*, iv. 4. 14.

στείβω, *-ἔστειψα, ἐστίβημαι* (cf. στῖφος), *tread, stamp*; pass., of roads, *trodden, travelled, frequented*, i. 9. 13.

στέλλω, στελῶ, ἔστειλα, -έσταλκα, ἔσταλμαι, ἐστάλην, *set in order, arrange*, hence *equip, adorn*, of persons, *dress*, iii. 2. 7.

στενός, ή, όν (comp. στενότερος instead of στενώτερος, because the orig. form was στεινός), *narrow*, i. 4. 4, 7. 15, iii. 4. 19, 22, iv. 1. 10, 16, 2. 24; as subst., τὸ στενόν, τὰ στενά, *narrow passage, defile, pass*, iv. 1. 14, 4. 18, 5. 1; cf. the use of *narrows* as a local designation in English. (Cf. Eng. *stenography*.)

στενοχωρῖᾶ, ᾶς, ἡ (στενός, χώρᾱ), *narrow place, narrow pass*, i. 5. 7.

στέργω, στέρξω, ἔστερξα, *love, feel an affection for*, ii. 6. 23.

στερέω, στερήσω, ἐστέρησα, -εστέρηκα, ἐστέρημαι, ἐστερήθην (fut. mid. as pass., στερήσομαι), *deprive*, with acc. of person and gen. of thing, or in pass. with gen. only, i. 4. 8, ii. 1. 12, 5. 10, iv. 5. 28; pres. pass. στέρομαι with perfect meaning, *be deprived of, be without, have lost*, i. 9. 13, iii. 2. 2.

στέρνον, ου, τό, *breast, chest*, i. 8. 26.

στέρομαι, see στερέω.

στερρῶς, adv. (στερρός or στερεός, *hard, stiff, solid*; cf. Eng. *stereotype, stereoscope*), *strictly, firmly, steadfastly*, iii. 1. 22.

στέφανος, ου, ὁ (στέφω, *put round, encircle, crown*; cf. Eng. *Stephen*), *crown, garland, wreath*. Garlands were worn by the Greeks on various occasions of importance, both in public and in private life. At banquets the guests adorned their heads with wreaths of flowers, and so popular was this custom that the Greek soldiers at their feasts in Armenia made wreaths of hay rather than dispense with them entirely (iv. 5. 33). The Spartans put on wreaths before going into battle (cf. iv. 3. 17). Because garlands were worn at the great festivals and other occasions of public interest, it became customary to bestow golden στέφανοι upon citizens who had shown zeal in the service of the state. These were often made in the shape of wreaths of natural leaves, and some specimens that are still preserved exhibit very skilful workmanship. It is as a reward for meritorious military service that Cyrus promises golden crowns to the Greek soldiers, i. 7. 7.

στεφανόω, στεφανώσω, ἐστεφάνωσα, ἐστεφάνωμαι, ἐστεφανώθην (στέφανος), *adorn with a garland, wreathe, crown*; mid., *put on a garland*, iv. 3. 17; pass., *wear a wreath, be crowned*, iv. 5. 33.

στῆναι, see ἵστημι.

στίβος, ους, τό (cf. στείβω), *track, trail*, i. 6. 1.

στῖφος, ους, τό (cf. στείβω), *a close-pressed, compact body*; of troops, *mass, throng, press, crowd*, i. 8. 13, 26.

στλεγγίς, ίδος, ἡ, *flesh-scraper*. Latin *strigilis*, used by athletes to remove from their bodies the oil with which they anointed themselves, and the dust of the wrestling-ground, before the bath. Flesh-scrapers of gold were given as prizes to the successful contestants at the Lycaea, i. 2. 10. Fig. 49 represents a στλεγγίς, which, to judge from its form, may have been intended more for ornament than for use, like the golden scrapers just mentioned.

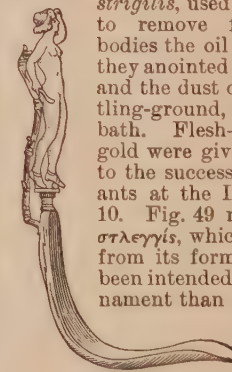


FIG. 49.

στολή, ῆς, ἡ (στέλλω), *equipment, outfit*; hence, *dress, garment, robe*, iv. 5. 33, 7. 13; by στολὴ Περσική in i. 2. 27 the κάνδυς (*q. v.*) is probably meant.

στόλος, ου, ὁ (στέλλω), *equipment*, hence *journey, expedition*, i. 3. 16,

ii. 2. 10, iii. 1. 9, 10, 3. 2; *armament, force, army*, i. 2. 5, ii. 2. 12, iii. 2. 11.

στόμα, ατος, τό, *mouth*, iv. 5. 27; hence, *opening, entrance*, iv. 5. 25; of an army, *front, van*, iii. 4. 42. (Cf. Eng. *stomach.*)

στρατεία, ας, ἡ (στρατεύω), *expedition, campaign*, iii. 1. 9.

στράτευμα, ατος, τό (στρατεύω), *army, force*, i. 1. 7, 8, 7. 1, 9. 17, ii. 1. 6, 4. 16, iii. 3. 19, 4. 35, iv. 1. 11, 7. 11; of a part of an army under a subordinate commander, *division, force*, i. 5. 11, 12, 13, 8. 14.

στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστράτευσα, ἐστράτευκα, ἐστράτευμαι (στρατός), *make an expedition, make war*, usually of generals and officers, with ἐπί and acc., ii. 1. 14, 3. 20, 4. 3, 6. 29, iii. 1. 17, 18; mid., *take the field, march, serve*, of generals and soldiers, with εἰς, ἐπί, or ἀμφί with acc., i. 1. 11, 2. 2, 3, 9. 14, ii. 3. 25; of a single person, *join an expedition*, iii. 1. 10.

στρατηγέω, στρατηγήσω, ἐστρατήγησα, ἐστρατήγηκα (στρατηγός), *be a general, act as general, command*, with gen., i. 4. 3, ii. 6. 28, iii. 2. 27; with cogn. acc., στρατηγίαν στρατηγεῖν, *undertake a command*, see i. 3. 15; ἡ τύχη ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον, *fortune showed better generalship*, ii. 2. 13.

στρατηγία, ας, ἡ (στρατηγός), *office of general, command*, i. 3. 15; *method of conducting a campaign, tactics*, ii. 2. 13. (Cf. Eng. *strategy.*)

στρατηγός, οῦ, ὁ (στρατός, ἄγω), *leader of a host, commander, general*, i. 2. 15, 4. 8, 9. 17, ii. 1. 2, 5. 30, iii. 1. 2, 32, 4. 21, iv. 1. 12, 7. 25, etc. Xenophon uses the word not of the commander-in-chief only, but of the commanders of the different divisions of the army. These officers were elected by the soldiers; see iii. 1. 47. The name στρατηγός is also given by Xenophon to a Persian officer otherwise known as κάρανος, the commander of all the troops in a province or even in several provinces, i. 1. 2, 9. 7.

στρατιά, ᾶς, ἡ (cf. στρατός), *army, host*, i. 2. 12, 27, 3. 1. 7. 2, ii. 2. 18, 4. 3, 5. 25, iii. 1. 4, iv. 1. 12, 3. 9, 7. 3.

στρατιώτης, ου, ὁ (στρατιά), *soldier, common soldier, private*, i. 1. 9, 2. 17, 3. 1, ii. 1. 10, 6. 10, iii. 1. 2, 2. 9, 5. 14, iv. 4. 14, 5. 15, 7. 24; ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, *soldiers, fellow soldiers*, i. 3. 3, 9.

Στρατοκλῆς, έους, ὁ, *Stratocles*, a Cretan, commander of the Cretan archers in the Greek army, iv. 2. 28.

στρατοπεδεύω, rare in active, usually mid., στρατοπεδεύομαι, ἐστρατοπεδευσάμην, ἐστρατοπέδευμαι (στρατόπεδον), *encamp, pitch a camp, be encamped*, abs. or with various adverbs and prepositional phrases, i. 3. 7, ii. 2. 15, 17, 4. 1, 10, iii. 5. 1, iv. 3. 6, 4. 8, 8. 19.

στρατόπεδον, ου, τό (στρατός, πέδον, *ground*, a poetic word, cf. πεδίον, δάπεδον), *camp ground, camp, encampment*, i. 10. 1, 5, 8, ii. 2. 18, 3. 19, 5. 27, iii. 1. 46, iv. 4. 17, 21; *encamped army, army*, iv. 4. 9, 8. 23.

στρατός, οῦ, ὁ (√*ster, στρα, spread*, cf. Eng. *strew*), *encamped army, army, host*, i. 5. 7.

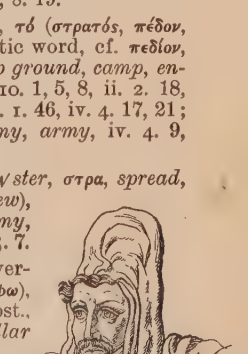


Fig. 50.

στρεπτός, ή, όν (verbal of στρέφω), *twisted*; as subst., ὁ στρεπτός, *collar* of twisted gold or other metal, Lat. *torquis*, i. 2. 27, 5. 8, 8. 29. An ornament of this kind is shown in Fig. 50, a head of Darius Codomannus as represented on the celebrated

Pompeian mosaic of the battle of Issus.

στρέφω, -στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστραμμαι, ἐστράφην and ἐστρέφθην (στρεφθῶ, στρεφθείς), *turn, twist,* of cords, iv. 7. 15; intr., *turn, turn about, face about,* iv. 3. 26, 32; so in pass., i. 10. 6, iii. 5. 1. (Cf. Eng. *strophe, apostrophe.*)

στρουθός, οῦ, ἡ, *small bird, sparrow*; with μέγας, *ostrich,* i. 5. 7. (Hence indirectly, Eng. *ostrich.*)

στυγνός, ή, όν (στυγέω, *loathe, hate*), *hateful*; of features, *gloomy, repulsive, ugly,* ii. 6. 9; τὸ στυγνὸν αὐτοῦ, *his sternness, his harsh appearance,* ii. 6. 11.

Στυμφάλιος, ᾱ, ον, *Stymphalian, citizen of Stymphālus* (Στύμφᾱλος), a town of northeastern Arcadia on a lake of the same name (now Lake Zaraka), i. 1. 11, ii. 5. 37, iii. 1. 31, iv. 1. 27, 4. 19, 7. 9, 13.

σύ, σοῦ, pl. ὑμεῖς, ὑμῶν, personal pron. (σύ, orig. τύ, akin to Lat. *tu,* Eng. *thou*; ὑμεῖς akin to Eng. *you*), *thou, you,* i. 3. 3, 6. 9, ii. 1. 12, 17, iii. 1. 45, iv. 6. 16; strengthened by γε, σύγε, iii. 1. 27, cf. i. 6. 8.

συγγενής, ές (σύν, γένος), *of the same family, akin*; as subst., οἱ συγγενεῖς, *kinsmen, relations,* i. 6. 10, iv. 5. 32.

συγγίγνομαι (γίγνομαι), *be with, come together, meet, have an interview with, unite, join forces,* with dat., i. 1. 9, 2. 27, ii. 5. 2, 28, iv. 5. 23; of a pupil, *study under,* ii. 6. 17; *be intimate with* (of sexual intercourse), i. 2. 12.

συγκαλέω (καλέω), *call together, assemble, call a council,* i. 4. 8, 6. 4, 7. 2, ii. 2. 3, iii. 1. 46.

συγκατακαίω (καίω), *burn up along with* something else, iii. 2. 27.

συγκαταστρέφομαι (στρέφω), *help in subduing,* with dat. of person, ii. 1. 14.

συγκύπτω (κύπτω, -κύψω, ἔκῡψα, κέκῡφα, *stoop*), *draw together, converge,* iii. 4. 19, 21.

σύειος, ᾱ, ον (σῦς, *hog*; cf. ὗς, *hog,* Lat. *sūs,* Eng. *sow, swine*), *of swine*; χρῖμα σύειον, *ointment made of lard,* iv. 4. 13.

Συέννεσις, ωος, ὁ, *Syennesis,* hereditary title (cf. Pharaoh) of the kings of Cilicia, who were vassals of the Great King of Persia. The name is perhaps of Semitic origin (*shu'a nasi, noble prince*). Xenophon uses it as a proper name, i. 2. 12, 21, 23 ff.

συλλαμβάνω (λαμβάνω), *seize, arrest,* i. 4. 8, 6. 4, ii. 5. 32, iii. 1. 2, 35; *capture,* iv. 4. 16.

συλλέγω (λέγω, λέξω, ἔλεξα, εἴλοχα, εἴλεγμαι, ἐλέγην, *gather*), rare and poetical in simple form), *gather, collect,* of things, ii. 4. 11, iv. 3. 11; of persons, *get together, assemble, collect, levy* (of an army), i. 1. 7, 9, 4. 13, ii. 6. 5, iii. 1. 39, iv. 4. 17; pass., intrans., *get together, assemble,* iv. 1. 10, 3. 7, 5. 1, 8. 9.

συλλογή, ῆς, ἡ (συλλέγω), *gathering, assembly,* of troops, *levying, levy,* i. 1. 6.

συμβαίνω (βαίνω), *come together*; impers., of events, *happen, take place,* τὰ συμβάντα, *events, occurrences,* iii. 1. 13.

συμβάλλω (βάλλω), *throw together, collect, heap up,* iii. 4. 31; mid., *bring together, contribute* from one's own, with acc. obj., and dat. of person, i. 1. 9; figuratively, *add* one's opinion to that of others, *make suggestions, talk,* with περί and gen., iv. 6. 4.

συμβοηθέω (βοηθέω), *aid along with others, join in helping,* iv. 2. 1.

συμβουλεύω (βουλεύω), *advise, give counsel* or *advice, recommend,* with acc. of the thing, acc. and dat. of person, dat. and inf. or inf. alone, i. 6. 9, ii. 1. 17, 18, 19, 20, 3. 20, 5. 41, iii. 1. 5; mid., *con-*

sult with, confer with, ask advice of a person, *deliberate*, abs., with dat. of person or an interrogative clause, or with both, i. 1. 10, 7. 2, ii. 1. 16, 17.

σύμβουλος, *ου*, *ὁ* (*βουλή, council*), *counsellor, adviser*, i. 6. 5.

συμμανθάνω (*μανθάνω*), *learn with*; also *become familiar with, get accustomed to*, iv. 5. 27.

σύμμαχος, *ον* (*μάχομαι*), *fighting on the same side with, on one's side, allied, friendly*, ii. 4. 6, 5. 11, 13; as subst., *ὁ σύμμαχος, ally*, i. 3. 6, 7. 3, ii. 2. 8, iii. 1. 2; *τὰ σύμμαχα, helps, resources*, ii. 4. 7.

συμμείγνῡμι (*μείγνῡμι, μείξω, ἔμειξα, μέμειγμαι, ἐμείχθην* and *ἐμίγην, mix*), *mix with*; intrans., of persons, *unite with, join, join forces with*, with dat., ii. 1. 2, 3. 19, iv. 2. 9; in hostile sense, *join battle, engage*, iv. 6. 24.

σύμπᾶς, *ᾶσα, αν* (*πᾶς*), *all together*; *οἱ σύμπαντες ὁπλῖται, all the hoplites together, the whole number of hoplites*, i. 2. 9, *ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα, more than all put together*, iv. 3. 2; as adv., *τὸ σύμπαν, on the whole, in general*, i. 5. 9.

συμπέμπω (*πέμπω*), *send with, send with as escort, despatch along with*, with obj. acc., sometimes with dat. of person in addition, i. 2. 20, iii. 4. 42, 43.

συμπίπτω (*πίπτω*), *fall together with*; in a hostile sense, *come to close quarters with*, i. 9. 6.

σύμπλεως, *ων* (cf. *ἔκπλεως, πλήρης*), *full, quite full*, with gen., i. 2. 22. (Used only here and once in Hippocrates.)

συμποδίζω (*ποδίζω*), *bind the feet together, impede*, of snow, iv. 4. 11.

συμπολεμέω (*πολεμέω*), *make war in company with, fight on same side with, help in war*, with dat. and *πρός* or *ἐπί* with acc., i. 4. 2, iii. 1. 5.

συμπορεύομαι (*πορεύομαι*), *make a journey with, march with*, i. 3. 5, 4. 9.

συμπράττω (*πράττω*), *do with, help in doing, aid in accomplishing, co-operate*, with dat. of person and acc. of thing, i. 1. 8.

συμπροθυμέομαι (*προθῡμέομαι*), *be equally zealous* or *desirous, join in desiring, share the wish*, with acc. and inf., iii. 1. 9.

συμφέρω (*φέρω*), *bring together, collect*, with dat. of pers., iii. 4. 31; *contribute, be of advantage, benefit*, or impers., *συμφέρει, is of advantage, is expedient*, ii. 2. 2, iii. 2. 27.

σύν (*ξύν*, the older Attic form appears often in the manuscripts of Xen., not, however, in this edition), prep. with dat., *with, together with, in company with, along with*; of persons, i. 2. 2, 3. 5, 7. 1, ii. 1. 5, 6. 5, iii. 1. 11, 3. 8, iv. 3. 25, 5. 10; with *ἕπομαι* instead of the simple dative, i. 3. 6; esp. common in the phrase *οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, his men, his forces*, and other similar expressions, i. 2. 15, 10. 6, ii. 2. 1, 5. 3, iii. 5. 3, iv. 3. 20, 5. 19; *on the side of*, i. 1. 11, iii. 2. 17; *with the help of*, ii. 5. 9, 13, most commonly in the phrase *σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς*, ii. 3. 23, iii. 1. 23, 42, 2. 11, 8. 14; *equipped with, furnished with*, of arms or attire, i. 5. 8, 8. 9, iv. 5. 33; *by means of*, ii. 1. 12, iii. 2. 8; of manner, *with*, i. 2. 17, 18, 8. 4, ii. 5. 18, 6. 18, iii. 1. 22, 2. 16, 3. 2, iv. 4. 14. Xen. very often uses *σύν* where other writers of Attic prose have *μετά* with gen.; in the Anab. *σύν* occurs more than six times as often as *μετά* with gen. In composition *σύν* denotes accompaniment or assistance. It is assimilated to *συγ-* before *κ-* mutes, *συμ-* before *π-* mutes, and *μ*, *συλ-* before *λ* and *συρ-* before *ρ*.

συναγείρω (*ἀγείρω*), *gather together, collect*, i. 5. 9.

συνάγω (ἄγω), *lead together, bring together, collect, assemble, call an assembly*, i. 3. 2, 9, iii. 5. 14, iv. 4. 10; *draw together, fasten together*, i. 5. 10.

συναδικέω (ἀδικέω), *do wrong with* another person, *join in wrong-doing*, ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς, *by making himself their accomplice in evil-doing*, ii. 6. 27.

συναιρέω (αἱρέω), *grasp together, bring together in small compass*, esp. in speaking; ὡς συνελόντι εἰπεῖν, *to put it briefly*, iii. 1. 38.

συνακολουθέω (ἀκολουθέω), *follow along with, accompany*, ii. 5. 30, 35, iii. 1. 4, 10.

συναλλάττω (ἀλλάττω, ἀλλάξω, ἤλλαξα, -ήλλαχα, ἤλλαγμαι, ἠλλάχθην or ἠλλάγην, *change*), *change so as to bring together*; pass., *be brought together, be reconciled, come to terms*, with πρός and acc., i. 2. 1.

συναναβαίνω (βαίνω), *go up along with* some one, *go inland with* (cf. ἀναβαίνω), with dat., i. 3. 18.

συναντάω, συνήντησε (cf. ἀπαντάω), *meet*, abs., i. 8. 15.

συνάπειμι (εἶμι), *go away with, depart in company with*, ii. 2. 1.

συνάπτω (ἅπτω), *fasten together, join together*; with μάχην and dat. of person, *join battle with, engage in battle* or *strife with*, i. 5. 16.

σύνδειπνος, ου, ὁ (δεῖπνον), *companion at dinner, guest at dinner*, ii. 5. 27, iv. 5. 28.

συνδιαπράττω (πράττω), *accomplish with, join in negotiations*; ὑπέρ τινος, *help negotiate in behalf of*, iv. 8. 24.

συνεῖδον, see συνοράω.

συνειλεγμένοι, see συλλέγω.

συνειλημμένοι, συνειλήφασι, see συλλαμβάνω.

σύνειμι (εἰμί), *be with, associate with*; οἱ συνόντες, *associates, acquaintances*, ii. 6. 20.

σύνειμι (εἶμι), *go together, meet, assemble*, iii. 5. 7; μαχούμενος συνῄειν, *he advanced to the encounter*, i. 10. 10.

συνείποντο, see συνέπομαι.

συνεισέρχομαι (ἔρχομαι), *come in with, enter in company with*, iv. 5. 10.

συνεκβαίνω (βαίνω), *go out together, make an ascent together*, with ἐπί and acc., iv. 3. 22.

συνεκβιβάζω (βιβάζω, -βιβάσω or βιβῶ, -εβίβασα, *cause to go*, causative from βαίνω), *help bring out, aid in extricating*, i. 5. 7.

συνεκκόπτω (κόπτω), *help cut down*, iv. 8. 8.

συνεληλυθότες, see συνέρχομαι.

συνελόντι, see συναιρέω.

συνεπεύχομαι (εὔχομαι), *vow at the same time in addition*, iii. 2. 9.

συνεπισπεύδω (σπεύδω), *help hurry forward*, i. 5. 8.

συνέπομαι (ἕπομαι), *follow along with, accompany*, with dat., i. 3. 9, 4. 17.

συνεργός, όν (ἔργον), *working with*; as subst., ὁ συνεργός, *helper, assistant, coadjutor*, i. 9. 20, 21.

συνερρύησαν, see συρρέω.

συνέρχομαι (ἔρχομαι), *come together, gather together, meet, assemble*, ii. 1. 2, 3. 21, 5. 3, iii. 1. 15, iv. 1. 12, 7. 2; with παρά and acc., ii. 2. 8.

συνέσπων, see συσπάω.

συνεφέπομαι (ἕπομαι), *follow along with*, abs. or with dat., iii. 1. 2, iv. 8. 18.

σύνθημα, ατος, τό (συντίθημι), *that which is agreed upon, agreement*, iv. 6. 20; *signal*, esp. *watchword, countersign*, generally a word or phrase of good omen, given out at night or before a battle. It was passed from man to man across the line of battle, and then, to avoid errors, it was passed back to the starting point.

Hence, *σύνθημα παρέρχεται δεύτερον*, i. 8. 16.

συνθοῖτο, see *συντίθημι*.

συνιδεῖν, see *συνοράω*.

συνίστημι (*ἵστημι*), *place together, bring together*, of persons, *present to, introduce*, pass., with dat., iii. 1. 8.

σύνοδος, *ου*, *ἡ* (*ὁδός*), *meeting*; in military language, *encounter, engagement*, i. 10. 7. (Cf. Eng. *synod*.)

σύνοιδα (*οἶδα*), *know with, share in knowledge*; with dat. of reflexive pron. and nom. of ptc., *be aware of, be conscious of*, i. 3. 10, ii. 5. 7.

συνοίσειν, see *συμφέρω*.

συνολολύζω (*ὀλολύζω, ὀλολύξομαι, ὠλόλῡξα, cry aloud*, cf. Lat. *ululo, howl, ulula, owl*), *cry aloud together, raise a loud cry together*, of women, iv. 3. 19.

συνομολογέω (*ὁμολογέω, agree*), *agree with*, with acc., *agree to, consent to*, iv. 2. 19.

συνοράω (*ὁράω*), *see together, see at the same time*; *συνεώρων ἀλλήλους, they kept one another in view*, iv. 1. 11; *see at a glance, observe*, i. 5. 9.

συνουσίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *ἡ* (*σύνειμι*), *being together, association, meeting, conference*, ii. 5. 6.

συντάττω (*τάττω*), *arrange together*; of soldiers, *draw up line of battle, marshal, form in line*, i. 2. 15, and in pass., i. 7. 14; mid., *form one's troops*, i. 10. 5; mid. intrans., *form in line of battle*, i. 3. 14, 8. 14, 10. 8, iv. 2. 7.

συντίθημι (*τίθημι*), *place together*; mid., *establish* or *settle jointly* with some one else, *make a compact* or *agreement, agree*, with dat. of person, i. 9. 7; with inf., iv. 2. 1; with acc. of thing, *agree on*, iv. 2. 2, 6. 21; so *τὴν φιλίᾱν συνθέμενοι, having made a compact of friendship*, ii. 5. 8.

σύντομος, *ον* (*τέμνω*), *cut short, abridged, short*, ii. 6. 22.

συντράπεζος (*τράπεζα, table*), *table companion*, i. 9. 31. Cf. *ὁμοτράπεζος*.

συντρῑ́βω (*τρῑ́βω, τρῑ́ψω, ἔτρῑψα, -τέτριφα, τέτρῑμμαι, ἐτρῑ́φθην* or *ἐτρῑ́βην, rub*), *rub together, crush, shatter*; *συντετρῑμμένοι ἄνθρωποι σκέλη, men with their legs shattered*, iv. 7. 4.

συντυγχάνω (*τυγχάνω*), *happen upon, meet, fall in with*, with dat., i. 10. 8.

συνωφελέω (*ὠφελέω*), *join in aiding, contribute to one's help*, iii. 2. 27.

Συρᾱκόσιος, *ᾱ, ον* (*Συράκουσαι, Syracuse*), *belonging to Syracuse, Syracusan*; as subst., *ὁ Συρᾱκόσιος, Syracusan, citizen of Syracuse*, i. 2. 9, 10. 14. Syracuse was a large and important city on the southeastern coast of Sicily. Founded by Corinthians in the latter part of the eighth century B. C., it was of comparatively little importance until the beginning of the fifth century, during which, under the rule of Gelo and Hiero, it attained great political power, and became a literary and artistic centre. The military operations about Syracuse during the siege by the Athenians (415–413 B. C.) have been made famous by the account in the history of Thucydides. The city reached its greatest size and its greatest splendor under the rule of Dionysius I. (405–367). It was taken by the Romans in 212. The original settlement of Syracuse was upon the island of Ortygia, which is separated from the mainland by a very narrow strait. Thence it spread over the adjacent peninsula. The modern city (*Siracusa*) is confined to the island.

Συρίᾱ, *ᾱς*, *ἡ* (*Σύριος*), *Syria*, an extensive region of Asia, the limits of which were not exactly defined

by the ancients. Roughly speaking, it extended from the confines of Cappadocia on the north along the Euphrates river in a southeasterly direction to the point where Arabian territory touched the Euphrates. On the south it was bounded by Arabia and on the west by Palestine, Phoenicia, and the Mediterranean. Xenophon, however, uses the name also in referring to a part of the territory east of the Euphrates, which was later called Mesopotamia (i. 4. 19). See i. 4. 4, 6, 10.

Σύριος, ᾱ, ον (**Σύρος**), *pertaining to Syria, Syrian*, i. 4. 5.

Σύρος, ου, ὁ, *a Syrian, native of Syria*, i. 4. 9.

συρρέω (ῥέω), *flow together*; of a crowd, *stream together, gather together*, iv. 2. 19.

συσκευάζω (σκευάζω, σκευάσω, ἐσκεύασα, ἐσκεύασμαι, -εσκευάσθην, *prepare*), *pack together*; mid., *pack up, pack up one's baggage*, abs. or with acc., i. 3. 14, ii. 1. 2, 2. 4, 3. 29, iii. 4. 36, 5. 18, iv. 5. 1.

συσπάω (σπάω), *draw together*; of hides, *sew together*, i. 5. 10.

συσπειράομαι, συνεσπείρᾱμαι, συνεσπειράθην (**σπειράομαι**, *be coiled*), *be rolled together*; of soldiers, *be crowded together, be in close formation*, i. 8. 21.

συσπουδάζω (σπουδάζω), *help make haste, join in one's zeal, show equal alacrity*, ii. 3. 11.

συστρατεύομαι (στρατεύω), *make a campaign with, join* or *take part in an expedition*, with ἐπί and acc., i. 4. 3.

συστράτηγος, ου, ὁ (στρατηγός), *fellow-general*, ii. 6. 29.

συστρατιώτης, ου, ὁ (στρατιώτης), *fellow-soldier*, i. 2. 26.

συστρατοπεδεύομαι (στρατοπεδεύω), *encamp with*, with σύν and dat., ii. 4. 9.

συχνός, ή, όν, *much, considerable*, i. 8. 8; of space, ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων, *chariots some distance apart*, i. 8. 10.

σφαγιάζειν, rare in act., usually **σφαγιάζομαι,** ἐσφαγιασάμην (**σφάγιον**), *sacrifice a victim*, esp. *offer a propitiatory sacrifice* (see definition of σφάγια, under **σφάγιον**), with dat., or with εἰς and acc., iv. 3. 18, 5. 4.

σφάγιον, ου, τό (cf. σφάττω), *a victim for the sacrifice*; pl., σφάγια, *sacrifice*, esp. *a propitiatory sacrifice* offered in order to appease the wrath or remove the opposition of a god, or to ascertain in times of danger whether the divinity was favorable or unfavorable to the enterprise in hand. The soothsayers (μάντεις) who accompanied military expeditions offered sacrifices of this kind, and from omens observed in connection with them they drew inferences regarding the attitude of the gods to the undertaking. The omens were supposed to be revealed especially by the manner in which the vitals of the sacrificed animal burned in the fire, and also by the behavior of the victim before the slaughter—it being an omen of good fortune if the victim went unresisting to the sacrifice, and the reverse if it resisted or attempted to break away. It is probable, however, that similar indications were also observed in connection with the ordinary sacrifices of the army (ἱερά). There is no authority for the statement of most editors that ἱερά are omens from inspecting the vitals, while σφάγια are omens from the movements of the victims (external omens). The true distinction consists primarily in the purpose of the sacrifice. The name ἱερά was given to the ordinary offering (daily in the army), which was accompanied by prayers

or thanksgivings; also, naturally, to the omens observed in connection with such a sacrifice. The σφάγια were special sacrifices designed to propitiate a supposedly hostile divinity or to learn his attitude to the sacrificer's cause; and as in the case of ἱερά, the name σφάγια was extended to the omens taken from the sacrifice. Furthermore, while only a small part of an animal chosen for an ordinary sacrifice was burned, the rest being roasted and eaten by the worshippers, the flesh of the victim used in the σφάγια was regarded as accursed and unfit for use, and after being cut to pieces it was entirely consumed by the fire. There were probably various differences in the ceremonial forms employed with the two kinds of sacrifice, but about them we have no definite information. See Stengel in *Hermes* xxi, p. 307 ff., xxv, p. 321 ff., xxxi, p. 478 ff.

σφάττω, σφάξω, ἔσφαξα, ἔσφαγμαι, ἐσφάγην (mostly poetical as simple verb), *slay, slaughter*, of victims for the sacrifice, ii. 2. 9; of men, *kill, slay*, iv. 5. 16, 7. 16.

σφενδονάω, ἐσφενδόνησα (σφενδόνη), *use a sling, throw missiles with a sling*, iii. 3. 7, 15 ff., 4. 15, 16, iv. 1. 16, 3. 30.

σφενδόνη, ης, ἡ, *sling*, iii. 3. 18, 4. 17, iv. 2. 27. If we may judge from

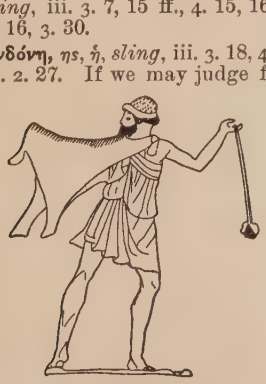


Fig. 51.

the first of these passages, the sling was not commonly made of a single strap of leather, but rather of a broad piece to hold the missile, with a long cord of plaited strings or thongs fastened to either end. For the manner of holding the weapon, see Fig. 51. By a metonymy, the whole weapon for the missile, *sling-stone, sling-bullet*, iii. 3. 16, 4. 4, iv. 3. 29.

σφενδονήτης, ου, ὁ (σφενδόνη), *slinger*, iii. 3. 6, 16, 20, 4. 2, 26, iv. 3. 27. Slingers ordinarily carried, besides the sling, a sort of leather cape thrown over the left arm and shoulder. The hollow of this served as a receptacle for the stones or bullets used. The cape might also, in case of necessity, be used as a light shield. Slingers formed a considerable part of barbarian armies, but in the Greek army of Cyrus they were a relatively unimportant part of the light-armed force. During their retreat, however, the Greeks found it necessary to increase the strength and efficiency of the σφενδονῆται. The Rhodians were regarded as the best slingers among the Greek troops; see iii. 3. 16, 17.

σφίσι, see **οἷ.**

σφόδρα, adv. (σφοδρός, *violent, excessive*), *very, exceedingly, extremely*, with adjs. or advs., ii. 3. 16, 6. 13, 18, iv. 8. 20; with verbs, *very much, readily*, i. 10. 18, ii. 4. 18, 6. 11.

σφῶν, see **οἷ.**

σχεδίᾱ, ᾱς ἡ, *raft, float*, i. 5. 10, ii. 4. 28. In the first of these two passages, the word σχεδίᾱ is used to describe a float made simply of a hide stuffed out and sewed together. The buoyancy of the enclosed air was sufficient to support a man swimming. Fig. 52, from Layard's "Monuments of Nineveh," represents an Assyrian soldier crossing a river in this

manner. A large number of such floats was sometimes fastened together and covered with timbers

FIG. 52.

so as to make a raft of considerable strength; see Fig. 53, also from Layard's "Monuments." Such rafts may be meant in ii. 4. 28. The use of these σχεδίαι has continued into modern times. An early English traveller (1583) says: "They bring . . . divers sorts of merchandise upon rafts borne upon goats' skins blown up full of wind, in the manner of bladders; and when they have discharged their goods, they sell the rafts for firewood, let the wind out of their goat-skins and carry them home again upon their asses by land,

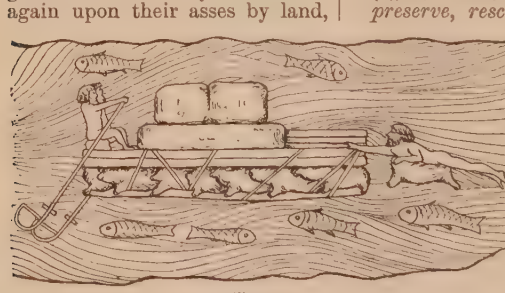


FIG. 53.

to make other voyages down the river." (John Eldred, in Arber's *An English Garner*, vol. III, p. 163.) Still more recently the English archæologist Layard used large rafts of this kind in transporting ponderous pieces of sculpture down the Tigris.

σχεδόν, adv., *almost, nearly, about,* of number, iv. 7. 6, 8. 15; *chiefly,* i. 8. 25; of time, *almost, about,* i. 10. 15, iii. 1. 33, 2. 1.

σχεῖν, see ἔχω.

σχῆμα, ατος, τό (√σεχ in ἔχω), *shape, form, military formation,* i. 10. 10. (Cf. Eng. *scheme.*)

σχίζω, ἔσχισα, ἐσχίσθην, *cleave, split,* i. 5. 12, iv. 4. 12. (Cf. Eng. *schism, schist.*)

σχολάζω, ἐσχόλασα, ἐσχόλακα (σχολή), *be unoccupied, be at leisure,* ii. 3. 2. (Cf. Eng. *scholastic.*)

σχολαῖος, α, ον (σχολή), *leisurely, slow,* iv. 1. 13.

σχολαίως, adv. (σχολαῖος), *in a leisurely manner, slowly, lazily,* i. 5. 8; comp., σχολαίτερον, i. 5. 9.

σχολή, ῆς, ἡ, *leisure, time for anything,* with dat. of pers. and inf., i. 6. 9, iv. 1. 17; dat. as adv., σχολῇ, *slowly,* iii. 4. 27, iv. 1. 16. (Cf. Eng. *school, scholar.*)

σῴζω, σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, σεσω-(σ)μαι, ἐσώθην (cf. σῶος), *save, preserve, rescue,* also sometimes *conduct safely, bring back safely,* i. 10. 3, ii. 3. 25, iii. 2. 4, 10; of things, *save, keep, preserve, retain,* i. 10. 3, ii. 5. 11, iii. 2. 39; pass., *be saved, save oneself, escape, return safely,* ii. 1. 19, 4. 6, 19, 5. 14, iii. 1. 6, 2. 3, 3. 4.

Σωκράτης, ους, ὁ, (1) *Socrates,* a celebrated Athenian philosopher, the son of Sophroniscus and Phaenarete, was born about 470 B. C. He learned the trade of his father, a sculptor, and practised it, but in his later years he devoted

practically all his time to philosophic thought and discussion. He did not, however, shun the ordinary duties of the Athenian citizen, and, in particular, is said to have fought bravely for Athens in several battles. The philosophy of Socrates differed widely in its scope and methods from the systems of the day. Holding himself aloof from the investigation of physical phenomena, and scorning the logical and rhetorical subtleties of the sophists, he maintained that the proper object of the highest philosophy is to determine that which is truly good and noble, and that its proper application is to the conduct of daily life. He gathered around him a company of young men—among them Plato, Xenophon (cf. iii. 1. 5, 7), and Alcibiades—with whom he discussed ethical, political, and religious problems in a peculiar style, characterized by constant questioning of his interlocutors, which has received its name from him. Socrates's eccentric personality and his original way of treating old problems could not fail to provoke severe criticism, and his critics were further embittered by the fact that he had friends among the members of the then discredited oligarchic party. These causes led to his being tried on charges of impiety and corrupting the youth of the city. He was found guilty by a small majority and sentenced to drink the poisonous hemlock (399 B. C.). Socrates left no writings, and his teachings were recorded only by his pupils, esp. Plato and Xenophon. The *Memorabilia* of the latter writer contain his recollections of his great teacher. (2) *Socrates*, an Achaean general, a friend of Cyrus, raised a force of hoplites with which he joined the expedition at Sardis (i. 1. 11, 2. 3). He was among the Greek officers treacherously captured and put to death by the Persians (ii. 5. 31, 6. 1, 30).

σῶμα, ατος, τό, *body, person*, i. 9. 23, iii. 1. 23, 2. 20; τὰ ἑαυτῶν σώματα, periphrasis for *them, themselves*, i. 9. 27; so σώματα ἀνδρῶν, *men*, iv. 6. 10; *life, person*, i. 9. 12, ii. 1. 12.

σῶος, ᾱ, ον, also contracted σῶς, σῶν or σῶς, σᾶ, σῶν, *safe, alive and well*, ii. 2. 21, iii. 1. 32.

Σῶσις, ὁ (Doric form of Σωσίᾱς), *Sosis*, a Syracusan general, i. 2. 9.

σωτήρ, ῆρος, ὁ (σῴζω), *saviour, preserver*, an epithet of Zeus, i. 8. 16, iii. 2. 9.

σωτηρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (σωτήρ), *safety; preservation, deliverance*, ii. 1. 19, iii. 1. 26, 2. 9, 32.

Σωτηρίδᾱς, ου, ὁ, *Soteridas*, a Secyonian hoplite, is insolent to Xenophon and is punished by the soldiers, iii. 4. 47–49.

σωτήριος, ᾱ, ον (σωτήρ), *relating to deliverance* or *safety, salutary*, iii. 3. 2; *portending deliverance*, ii. 6. 11; neut. pl. as subst., τὰ σωτήρια, *sacrifices in thanksgiving for deliverance*, iii. 2. 9, iv. 8. 25.

σωφροσύνη, ης, ἡ (σώφρων, *temperate, prudent*, from σῶος and φρήν, *midriff, heart, mind*), *moderation, self-control, discretion*, i. 9. 3. This virtue was specially praised by the Greeks because it implied the observance of a golden mean in the conduct of life, and the avoidance of all extreme and intemperate actions.

T

τάλαντον, ου, ὁ (√ταλ, τλα, *bear, lift*, cf. τλήμων, τολμάω, Lat. *tollo*), originally *scale*, hence *that which is weighed, weight*, esp. a fixed weight equivalent to sixty minas, *talent*, about 57¾ pounds avoirdupois; also a sum of money, not

coined but determined by weight, amounting to sixty minas (see *μνᾶ*), or about $1,080; *a talent*, i. 7. 18, ii. 2. 10, iii. 5. 8.

τἄλλα, τἆλλα, for *τὰ ἄλλα*.

ταμιεύω, *ταμιεύσω, τεταμίευμαι* (*ταμίᾱς*, orig. *carver*, from √*τεμ*, *ταμ* in *τέμνω*, *cut*; then *steward*), *be a steward, dispense as a steward*; hence, in middle, with regard to dividing an enemy's forces, *parcel out*, ii. 5. 18.

Ταμώς, *ώ, ὁ*, *Tamos*, an Egyptian officer of Cyrus, father of Glus; he brought Cyrus's fleet around from Ionia to Cilicia, i. 2. 21, 4. 2, ii. 1. 3.

ταξίαρχος, *ου, ὁ* (*τάξις, ἄρχω*), *commander of a τάξις, taxiarch*; this rank was between that of *στρατηγός* and *λοχαγός* (iii. 1. 37), and was perhaps the same as that of the *ὑποστράτηγος* (cf. iii. 1. 32); the taxiarch of hoplites seems to have commanded two companies (see *τάξις*). Among the light-armed troops he probably commanded only 100 men, like the *λοχαγός*; cf. iv. 1. 26 and 28.

τάξις, *εως, ἡ* (*τάττω*), *arrangement*, of an army, *discipline*, i. 2. 18; also *formation, order*, iii. 2. 38, 4. 19; hence *τὰ ἀμφὶ τάξεις, tactics*, ii. 1. 7; *regular order, line of battle*, esp. common in the phrase *ἐν τάξει*, i. 7. 20, 8. 19, ii. 2. 8, 3. 10, iii. 2. 17; for *εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὅπλα τίθεσθαι*, see *τίθημι*; of an army in battle array or in camp, *ranks, lines*, i. 8. 8, 10, 16, ii. 2. 14, 3. 2, iii. 1. 32; one's *position* in the ranks of an army, *post*, i. 8. 3, iii. 4. 48, iv. 3. 29; *a body of troops, division*, of indefinite or unknown number; applied to both Greek and barbarian troops, i. 2. 16, 5. 14, iii. 4. 14, iv. 4. 8; also of cavalry, iv. 3. 17, 22; a division of definite number may be meant in iv. 7. 2 (the number 200 for each *τάξις* of hoplites is proved by vi. 5. 11); in the case of peltasts a *τάξις* seems to have consisted of 100 men, iv. 3. 22 (see also references under *ταξίαρχος*).

Τάοχοι, *ων, οἱ*, *Taochi, Taochians*, a warlike and independent tribe occupying territory on the northern frontier of Armenia, iv. 4. 18, 6. 5; the Greeks captured one of their fortresses after a desperate resistance, iv. 7. 1 ff.

ταπεινός, *ή, όν*, of places, *low-lying*; of persons, *humble, submissive*, ii. 5. 13.

τἀπιτήδεια, for *τὰ ἐπιτήδεια*.

ταράττω, *ταράξω, ἐτάραξα, τετάραγμαι, ἐταράχθην, trouble, disturb, agitate*, of persons, ii. 4. 18; of troops, *disorder, throw into confusion*, iii. 4. 19, 23.

τάραχος, *ου, ὁ* (*ταράττω*), *confusion, tumult*, i. 8. 1. (Not used by Attic writers except Xen.; the common Attic form is *ταραχή*.)

Ταρσοί, *ῶν, οἱ*, *Tarsus*, the chief city of Cilicia, on the river Cydnus, i. 2. 23, 25, 26. It was the birthplace of the apostle Paul. A town near the site of the ancient one is still called Tersus.

τάττω, *τάξω, ἔταξα, τέταχα, τέταγμαι, ἐτάχθην, arrange, set in order*, esp. in military language, of soldiers, *draw up, form in line, station*, with *ὄπισθεν* and gen., iv. 2. 9; esp. frequent in pass., where in addition to the above meanings it may sometimes be translated *be in line, take a position, be in such and such a formation* (*in troops, in phalanx, four deep*, etc.), i. 2. 15, 16, 7. 11, 8. 23, 24, 9. 31, ii. 3. 19, iii. 2. 17, 36, iv. 8. 1, 10; middle, *post oneself, take up a position*, i. 7. 9; *appoint, assign, detail* for any duty, with dir. obj. and inf., i. 5. 7, iii. 1. 25; with *πρός* and acc., ii. 3. 11; similarly in pass., abs., iv. 6. 22, with inf., iv. 3. 30; the aor. pass. with *ὑπό* and gen. may be rendered *at the*

command of, acting under orders from, i. 6. 6, ii. 6. 13; ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ, *at the post assigned*, iii. 3. 18. (Cf. Eng. *tactics, syntax, taxidermy, phyllotaxis.*)

ταῦρος, *ου, ὁ, bull*, ii. 2. 9. (Akin to Lat. *taurus*, Eng. *steer.*)

ταὐτά, for τὰ αὐτά.

ταύτῃ, adv. (orig. dat. fem. sg. from οὗτος), of place, *in this direction, this way*, i. 10. 6; *at this place, here, there*, iv. 2. 4, 3. 5, 5. 36; of manner, *in this way*, iii. 2. 32; *herein, in this*, ii. 6. 7.

τάφος, *ου, ὁ, tomb, grave*, i. 6. 11. (Cf. Eng. *cenotaph, epitaph.*)

τάφρος, *ου, ἡ* (akin to τάφος), *ditch, trench*, for irrigation or defence, ii. 3. 10, 13, 4. 13; ὀρυκτή is added to emphasize the distinction between an artificial ditch and a natural water-course, i. 7. 14.

τάχα, adv. (ταχύς), *quickly, presently*, i. 8. 8, iv. 4. 12.

ταχέως, adv. (ταχύς), *swiftly, fast, speedily*, ii. 2. 12, iii. 4. 15, iv. 1. 17.

τάχιστα, τάχιστος, see ταχύς.

τάχος, *ους, τό* (ταχύς), *speed, swiftness*, ii. 5. 7.

ταχύς, *εῖα, ύ, speedy, swift*, iii. 3. 15; superl. τάχιστος, τὴν ταχίστην ὁδόν, *by the quickest (shortest) road*, i. 2. 20; frequently without ὁδόν, τὴν ταχίστην, *in the quickest manner, as soon* or *as speedily as possible*, i. 3. 14, iii. 3. 16, iv. 3. 24, 4. 22. Neut. sing. as adv., ταχύ, *quickly, soon, speedily*, i. 5. 3. 9. 29, ii. 3. 6, 8, 9, iii. 4. 27; for βάδην ταχύ, see βάδην; comp., θᾶττον, *more quickly, sooner, faster*, i. 2. 17, 5. 2, 8, iii. 5. 6; superl. τάχιστα, usually connected with other words in phrases meaning *as soon as possible, as quickly as possible*; in these some form of δύναμαι frequently occurs; ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα, and similar phrases, i. 3. 14, 6. 9, iii. 1. 38, 4. 4, iv. 2. 1; ὅτι τάχιστα, iv. 3. 29, 32; ᾗ ἐδύναντο τάχιστα, i. 2. 4; ὅπῃ δύναιντο τάχιστα, iv. 5. 1. In the sense of *as soon as*, ὡς τάχιστα, iv, 3. 9, 6. 15, ἐπὰν τάχιστα, iv. 6. 9, ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα, iii. 1. 9.

τέ, copulative conj., enclitic (akin to Lat. *-que*), *and*. It occurs alone several times, i. 3. 11, 5. 14, 9. 5, ii. 5. 9, 27, 6. 9, 21, iv. 1. 13, iv. 8. 8, 12, 13; τε . . . τε, i. 8. 3, iii. 2. 11, 39, 4. 35, iv. 5. 12, 8. 13; very common is τε καί or with intervening words τε . . . καί, *not only . . . but also, both . . . and*; but the τε is often best omitted in translating; see i. 1. 5, 2. 1, 9, 3. 1, 5. 8, 10, 8. 5, 9. 1, ii. 2. 8, etc.; the combination of τε and καί is often used to indicate coincidence in time, where English employs a subordinate temporal clause; cf. ii. 1. 7, iii. 2. 1, iv. 6. 2. For οὔτε . . . τε, μήτε . . . τε see οὔτε and μήτε.

τέθνατον, τέθνηκα, τεθνηκώς, see θνῄσκω.

τέθριππον, *ου, τό* (τέτταρες, ἵππος), *team of four horses, four-horse chariot*, iii. 2. 24. See cut under ἡνίοχος.

τείνω, τενῶ, ἔτεινα, -τέτακα, τέταμαι, ἐτάθην (akin to Lat. *tendo, stretch, teneo, hold, tenuis, thin*, Eng. *thin*), *stretch*, intrans., *exert oneself, hasten*, like Lat. *contendo*, with ἄνω and πρός with acc., iv. 3. 21. (Cf. *hypotenuse.*)

τεῖχος, *ους, τό, wall*, i. 4. 4, of a city, iii. 4. 7; *fortification, fortress*, iii. 4. 10; for τὸ Μηδίδας τεῖχος, see under Μηδίδας τεῖχος.

τεκμαίρομαι, τεκμαροῦμαι, ἐτεκμηράμην (cf. τεκμήριον), *decide by means of a sign, infer, judge*, with dat., iv. 2. 4.

τεκμήριον, *ου, τό, sign, proof, evidence*, i. 9. 29, 30, iii. 2. 13.

τέκνον, *ου, τό, offspring, child*, i. 4. 8, iv. 5. 28.

τελέθω, only pres. and imperf. (*τέλος*), *become*, *be*, iii. 2. 3. (Poetic word.)

τελευταῖος, ᾱ, ον (*τελευτή*), *last*, in time, iv. 1. 5; of place, *hindmost*, *last* in a marching column, iv. 2. 16; as subst., *οἱ τελευταῖοι*, the rearguard, iv. 1. 10, 3. 24, 5. 22.

τελευτάω, *τελευτήσω*, *ἐτελεύτησα*, *τετελεύτηκα*, *ἐτελευτήθην* (*τελευτή*), *bring to an end*, *finish*; esp. with *βίον* understood, *end one's life*, *die*, i. 1. 3, 9. 1, ii. 1. 4, 6. 1, 15, iii. 2. 17; ptc. *τελευτῶν* as adv., *finally*, iv. 5. 16.

τελευτή, ῆς, ἡ (cf. *τέλος*), *end*; esp. *τελευτὴ τοῦ βίου*, *death*, i. 1. 1. 9. 30; also in this sense without *βίου*, ii. 6. 29, iii. 2. 7.

τελέω, τελῶ (rarely *τελέσω*), *ἐτέλεσα*, *τετέλεκα*, *τετέλεσμαι*, *ἐτελέσθην* (*τέλος*), *bring to an end*, *finish*, *complete*; of a debt, *discharge*, hence, in general, *pay*, iii. 3. 18.

τέλος, *ους*, *τό*, *end*, *result*, i. 10. 8; *supreme authority*, pl. *authorities*, *government*, *magistrates*, of the Ephors at Sparta, ii. 6. 4; acc. sg. as adv., *finally*, *at last*, i. 9. 26, 10. 13, ii. 3. 26, 4. 13.

τερμίνθινος, η, ον (*τέρμινθος*, *terebinth* or *turpentine-tree*), *of terebinth* or *turpentine*, *χρῖμα*, *turpentine ointment*, iv. 4. 13. The turpentine of the ancients was not obtained from the resin of pines, but from that of the terebinth (*Pistacia terebinthus*, closely related to the pistache-tree), an evergreen tree native to Western Asia and the region around the Mediterranean. This so-called Chian or Cyprian turpentine is still a product of some value in commerce. The kernels of another tree of this family (*Pistacia oleosa*) yield a fragrant oil used as a perfume in the Orient. This article may be Xenophon's *χρῖμα τερμίνθινον*.

τέταρτος, η, ον (*τέτταρες*), *fourth*, iii. 4. 32; *τετάρτῃ* (sc. *ἡμέρᾳ*), *on the fourth day*, iv. 8. 21.

τετρακισχίλιοι, αι, α (*τετράκις*, *four times*, *χίλιοι*), *four thousand*, i. 1. 10, 2. 3, iii. 4. 2.

τετρακόσιοι, αι, α (*τέτταρες*), *four hundred*, i. 4. 3, 10. 18, iii. 3. 6; sing. with a collective noun, i. 7. 10.

τετταράκοντα, indecl. num. (*τέτταρες*), *forty*, i. 5. 13, ii. 2. 7.

τέτταρες, α (akin to Lat. *quattuor*), *four*, i. 2. 12, 15, 20, 5. 6, ii. 4. 25, iv. 3. 5. (Cf. English *tetrahedron*, *tetrapody*, *tetrarch*, *trapezoid*.)

Τευθρανίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ, *Teuthrania*, a district in the southwestern part of Mysia, including the important city of Pergamus, ii. 1. 3.

τεύξεσθε, see *τυγχάνω*.

τέχνη, ης, ἡ, *art*, *skill*; also *contrivance*, *device*, *means*, *πᾶσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ*, *by all manner of means*, iv. 5. 16. (Cf. Eng. *technology*, *technique*.)

τέως, adv., *so long*, usually with the time-limit indicated by a clause introduced by *ἐπεὶ δέ*; *τέως μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας*, *as long as they were ascending*, iv. 2. 12.

τῇ, adv. (dat. fem. of *ὁ* in demonstrative sense), *here*, *τῇ μὲν . . . τῇ δέ*, *in one place . . . in another*, iv. 8. 10; passing from the local meaning to that of manner or means, *in one way . . . in another*, *in some respects . . . in others*, iii. 1. 12.

τήκω, *-τήξω*, *-έτηξα*, *τέτηκα*, *ἐτήχθην* (rare) and *ἐτάκην* (akin to Eng. *thaw*), *melt*; pass. and perf. act. intrans., *melt*, *thaw*, of snow, iv. 5. 15.

Τηλεβόᾱς, ου, ὁ, *Teleboas*, a tributary of the Euphrates, flowing into it west of Lake Van (Thospitis), iv. 4. 3. It is now called Karasu, although some travellers identify it with the Bitlistchai.

τήμερον, adv. (*τ-*, dem. prefix, cf. the *τ-* forms of *ὁ*; *ἡμέρᾱ*), *to-day*, i. 9. 25, iii. 1. 14, iv. 6. 8; *ἡ τήμερον*

ἡμέρᾱ, *the present day, to-day*, cf. Lat. *hodiernus dies*, iv. 6. 9.

Τημνίτης, ου, ὁ, *Temnite*, citizen of Temnus, a town of Aeolis on the Hermus river, iv. 4. 15.

τηνικαῦτα, adv., *at that time, then*, resuming after a clause introduced by ἡνίκα or ἐπεί, iv. 1. 5, 2. 3.

τιάρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ, *tiara*, an Oriental headdress similar in some respects to the turban worn to-day by Eastern peoples, ii. 5. 23; see Fig. 50 under στρεπτός. A special form of the tiara, called τιάρᾱ ὀρθή, or the upright tiara, was worn exclusively by kings; see Fig. 54, which represents an Armenian king wearing the τιάρᾱ ὀρθή.

FIG. 54.

Τίγρης, ητος, ὁ (Old Persian *Tigra, swift as an arrow*), *Tigris*, a large river flowing southeast through Armenia and Assyria and joining the Euphrates at Kurna, i. 7. 15, ii. 2. 3, 4. 13 ff., iii. 4. 6, 5. 1, iv. 4. 3. The Tigris is formed by two branches, the larger of which, the Shat, or Western Tigris, rises from the slopes of Mt. Taurus in the province of Karput, north of Diarbekr. Its sources are very near those of the Euphrates. The smaller eastern branch, which the Greeks crossed on their march through Armenia (iv. 4. 3), rises in the neighborhood of Lake Van. The modern Arabic name of the Tigris is Dijlah.

τίθημι, θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, ἐτέθην; the perf. mid. was supplied by κεῖμαι (√θε, akin to Lat. *dare*, Eng. *do, doff*), *place, put, rest*, with πρός and acc., i. 5. 13; of public games, *hold, institute*, i. 2. 10; mid., in the phrase θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, sometimes *ground arms*, for rest, etc., i. 5. 17, 10. 16; also, *order arms, i. e.*, rest the spear on the ground, and drop the shield to the earth with its upper edge resting against the legs (cf. i. 5. 13); this position partially relieved the soldier of the burden of his arms, while it kept him in a position to assume the defensive instantly; see i. 5. 14, 6. 4, ii. 2. 8, iv. 2. 16, 3. 17; also *to halt under arms*, or *to take up a position under arms*, ii. 2. 21, iv. 3. 26. (Cf. Eng. *thesis, hypothesis, synthetic, theme.*)

Τῑμᾱσίων, ωνος, ὁ, *Timasion*, from Dardanus in the Troad, was elected general to succeed Clearchus, iii. 1. 47. He was the youngest of the generals except Xenophon, iii. 2. 37.

τῑμάω, τῑμήσω, etc. (τῑμή), *honor, hold in honor, reward with gifts of honor*, i. 3. 3, 8. 29, 9. 4, 14, 28, ii. 6. 21, 27, iii. 2. 5.

τῑμή, ῆς, ἡ, orig. *value, price*, then, *esteem, honor, glory*, i. 9. 29, ii. 1. 17, 5. 38, iii. 1. 37.

τίμιος, ᾱ, ον (τῑμή), *honorable, conferring honor*, or *held in honor, esteemed*, i. 2. 27, 3. 6.

τῑμωρέω, τῑμωρήσω, etc. (τῑμωρός, *helper*, orig. *guardian of one's honor*, from τῑμή and ὁράω), *help, aid*; mid., *take vengeance*, with ὑπέρ and gen., i. 3. 4; *punish*, i. 9. 3; pass., *be punished*, ii. 5. 27, 6. 29.

τῑμωρίᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (τῑμωρέω), *punishment*, ii. 6. 14.

Τιρίβαζος, ου, ὁ, *Tiribazus*, governor of Western Armenia, a favorite officer of Artaxerxes, iv. 4. 4; when encountered by the Greeks on their march homeward he made a treaty with them, iv. 4. 6, but planned an attack upon them, § 18, 5. 1; his design was discovered, and he fled in a panic,

leaving his tent to be plundered by the Greeks, iv. 4. 21.

τίς, τί, gen. *τίνος*, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* used both in direct and in ind. questions, and both as subst. and adj., i. 3. 16, 18, 4. 13, 14, 8. 16, ii. 1. 10, 11, 2. 10, 5. 15, iii. 1. 6, 5. 14, iv. 5. 10, 34, 8. 5; neut. sg. as adv., *τί, why?* ii. 1. 10, 4. 3, 19, 5. 22, iii. 4. 39.

τις, τι, indef. pron., enclitic; as subst., *somebody, anybody, something, anything, a part*, i. 4. 8, 5. 8, 8. 18, 9. 3, ii. 2. 11, 4. 4, 5. 29, iii. 4. 23, iv. 1. 14, 5. 4; so sometimes when the writer or speaker has in mind a definite person whom he does not wish to name, i. 4. 12, iii. 3. 3; as adj., *a, some, a certain, a kind of*, i. 2. 20, 5. 8, 8. 8, 10. 12, ii. 2. 10, 17, iii. 1. 4, 3. 18, 4. 23, iv. 1. 17, 3. 27. The indefinite pronoun appears with modifying force in a number of phrases, esp. with *ὁ μὲν . . . ὁ δέ*, as *τὰ μέν τι . . . τὰ δέ τι, partly . . . partly*, iv. 1. 14, *οἱ μέν τινες, some few*, iv. 3. 33, cf. ii. 3. 15; *μία τις ἐλπίς, even one hope, any single hope*, ii. 1. 19; *πόση τις, about how large*, ii. 4. 21; *μᾶλλόν τι, rather more*, iv. 8. 26; *ὁποῖόν τι, whatever, what sort of a thing*, ii. 2. 2, iii. 1. 13.

Τισσαφέρνης, ους, ὁ, *Tissaphernes*, satrap of Lydia, Caria, and Ionia, an able but treacherous and unscrupulous Persian, who played an important part in the political relations of Greece and Persia in the latter years of the fifth century B.C. Acting as agent for the Persian king, he furnished Sparta with money to prosecute the war against Athens, and secured the abandonment of the Greek cities of Asia Minor to Persian rule. When Darius appointed Cyrus to supersede him as satrap of Lydia, he became a bitter enemy of the young prince, although for a time he kept up the appearance of friendship (i. 1. 2). Later, however, he accused Cyrus of plotting against Artaxerxes (1. 3), and rendered valuable service to the king by frustrating the revolt of Miletus (1. 7) and informing him of the expedition of Cyrus (2. 4, 5). He was one of the four commanders of the royal army (7. 12), and acquitted himself creditably at Cunaxa. In return for his services Artaxerxes appointed him to the offices and dignities formerly held by Cyrus (ii. 5. 11). He conducted negotiations with the Greeks and professed himself willing to give them safe-conduct back to Greece (ii. 3. 18, 5. 16), but treacherously murdered their leaders (5. 32). After this he followed the retreating Greeks and gave them considerable annoyance (iii. 4. 13). After the successful retreat of the Ten Thousand, Tissaphernes was engaged in several campaigns which ended in a disastrous defeat of the Persians by Agesilāus. Parysatis, who had a grudge against Tissaphernes for his enmity to Cyrus, seized the opportunity to discredit him with Artaxerxes, and at her instigation he was put to death at Celaenae (395 B.C.).

τιτρώσκω, τρώσω, ἔτρωσα, τέτρωμαι, ἐτρώθην, *wound, inflict a wound*, ii. 2. 14, iii. 3. 7, 10, 4. 26, 30, iv. 3. 33; with *διά* and gen., i. 8. 26; with *εἰς* and acc., ii. 5. 33.

τλήμων, ον, gen. *ονος* (√ *ταλ, τλα, lift, bear*, cf. Lat. *tollo, lift*), *bearing, suffering, wretched, miserable*, iii. 1. 29.

τοι, postpositive enclitic particle, with intensive force (originally old form of dat. of *σύ*), *you know, indeed, truly, certainly*, ii. 1. 19, 5. 19, iii. 1. 18, 37.

τοιγαροῦν, inferential particle (*τοί, γάρ, οὖν*), *therefore of course, and*

so naturally, i. 9. 9, 15, 18, ii. 6. 20.

τοίνυν, inferential particle (*τοι*, *νύν*), *therefore, then, so then, well then*, ii. 1. 22, 3. 5, 5. 41, iii. 1. 36, 37, 2. 27, 39, iv. 6. 17, 8. 5.

τοιόσδε, *τοιάδε*, *τοιόνδε*, dem. pron. (*τοῖος*, *such*, -δε dem. suffix, cf. *ὅδε*), *such as this, of this kind*, referring to what follows; used esp. with verbs of speech as *ἔλεξε τοιάδε*, *he spoke as follows*, i. 3. 2, 9, 7. 2, ii. 3. 17.

τοιοῦτος, *τοιαύτη*, *τοιοῦτον* or *τοιοῦτο*, demonstrative pron. (*τοῖος*, *such*, *οὗτος*), *of such sort* or *kind, of such character, such*, referring to a description that has gone before, sometimes used in connection with the article, ii. 1. 16, 5. 6, 13, 6. 15, iii. 1. 44, 2. 13; frequently used in neuter as subst. *τοιοῦτον*, *τοιαῦτα*, *such a thing, such things*, ii. 4. 11, 5. 4, 5, iv. 1. 28; so in referring to the substance of a speech just quoted, i. 3. 14, ii. 4. 7; *ἐν τοιούτῳ*, *in such a crisis, in such a critical situation*, i. 7. 5; *τούτων τοιούτων ὄντων*, *such being the case*, ii. 5. 12; *τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων*, *when we have such grounds for friendship*, ii. 5. 24; *ὡς τοιούτῳ χρῆσθαι*, *use him as such a creature* (*i. e.* as a beast of burden), iii. 1. 30.

τολμάω, *τολμήσω*, etc. (√ *ταλ*, *endure*), *endure, undertake, be bold enough, not hesitate*, with inf., iii. 2. 32, iv. 4. 12; *venture, dare*, with inf., ii. 2. 12, 3. 5, iii. 2. 11, 16, 29.

Τολμίδης, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Tolmides*, an Elean herald, ii. 2. 20.

τόξευμα, *ατος*, *τό* (*τόξον*), *arrow*, i. 8. 19, iii. 4. 4, 17, iv. 1. 10, 2. 28, 3. 6.

τοξεύω, -*τοξεύσομαι*, *ἐτόξευσα*, *τετόξευμαι*, *ἐτοξεύθην* (*τόξον*), *shoot with a bow, shoot an arrow*, iii. 3. 7, 10, 4. 14, 17, iv. 1. 16, 2. 28; pass., *be struck by an arrow, be shot*, i. 8. 20, iv. 1. 18.

τοξικός, *ή*, *όν* (*τόξον*), *relating to the bow*; as subst., *ἡ τοξική* (*sc.* *τέχνη*), *archery*, i. 9. 5. (Hence Eng. *toxic, toxicology*.)

τόξον, *ου*, *τό*, *bow*, iii. 3. 15, 4. 17, iv. 2. 27, 28, 4. 16.

τοξότης, *ου*, *ὁ* (*τόξον*), *bowman, archer*; soldiers of this kind formed a part of the light-armed contingent in the Greek army, iii. 4. 26, iv. 3. 27, 28, 8. 15; among them Cretans and Scythians, who probably composed the majority of this force, were considered especially good marksmen, i. 2. 9, iii. 4. 15; archers were an important part of the Persian army and of the forces of the other Asiatic tribes with whom the Greeks came in contact, i. 8. 9, iii. 3. 6, 4. 2. For an illustration of a Persian archer, see Fig. 25 under *κάνδυς*.

τόπος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *place, region, district*, i. 5. 1, iv. 4. 4, 6. 2. (Cf. Eng. *topography, Utopia, topic*.)

τοσόσδε, *τοσήδε*, *τοσόνδε*, dem. pron. (*τόσος*, *so great*, encl. suffix -δε), *so great, so much*, pl., *so many*; but in ii. 4. 4, *so few*, as shown by the context.

τοσοῦτος, *τοσαύτη*, *τοσοῦτον* or *τοσοῦτο*, dem. pron. (*τόσος*, *so great*, *οὗτος*), *such in amount, so great, so large, so much*, pl. *so many*, often in connection with *ὅσος*, like Lat. *tantus . . . quantus*, ii. 1. 16, 5. 18, 20, 6. 18, iii. 1. 36, 5. 7, iv. 1. 20, 8. 12; of time, *so long*, i. 9. 1, ii. 4. 26; of space, *so far, so much space*, i. 8. 13, iii. 3. 10, 4. 37, iv. 6. 13; with verbs of speaking, referring to what is to follow, or summing up what has gone before, *thus much, only this*, i. 3. 15, ii. 1. 9, 5. 15; with comparatives, *τοσούτῳ*, *so much*; neut. acc. as adv., expressing degree, *τοσοῦτον*, *in so far, to this extent only*, iii. 1. 45.

τότε, adv., *then, at that time*, i. 1. 6, 2. 12, 8. 23, ii. 3. 1, 4. 22, 6. 11, iii.

2. 15, iv. 3. 11, 5. 35; *οἱ τότε*, *the men of that time*, ii. 2. 20.

τράγημα, *ατος*, *τό* (*τρώγω*, *nibble*, *eat*), usually plural, *sweetmeats*, *dessert*, ii. 3. 15.

Τράλλεις, *εων*, *αἱ*, *Tralles*, a city of northern Caria near the Maeander river, i. 4. 9. Its site was probably in the neighborhood of the modern town of Aïdin Guzelhissar.

τράπεζα, *ης*, *ἡ* (*τέτταρες*, *πούς*), *table*, orig. a table with four legs; *dining-table*, iv. 5. 31. (Cf. Eng. *trapeze*, *trapezoid*.)

Τραπεζούντιος, *ᾱ*, *ον* (**Τραπεζοῦς**), *Trapezuntian*; as subst., *Trapezuntian*, *inhabitant of Trapezus*, iv. 8. 23.

Τραπεζοῦς, *οῦντος*, *ἡ*, *Trapezus*, an important city on the southern coast of the Black Sea. It was founded in Colchian territory by colonists from Sinope, iv. 8. 22. It is the modern Trebizond or Trabuzun, capital of the vilayet of that name.

τραῦμα, *ατος*, *τό* (*τιτρώσκω*), *wound*, *injury*, i. 8. 26, iv. 6. 10. (Cf. Eng. *traumatic*.)

τράχηλος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *neck*, *throat*, i. 5. 8.

τρᾱχύς, *εῖα*, *ύ*, *rough*, *rugged*, with dat., iv. 3. 6; *ἡ τρᾱχεῖα* (*sc. γῆ*), *rough* or *uneven ground*, iv. 6. 12; of the voice, *harsh*, ii. 6. 9.

τρεῖς, *τρία*, gen. *τριῶν* (akin to Lat. *tres*, Eng. *three*), *three*, i. 1. 10, 8. 12, iv. 4. 3; *τρεῖς καὶ δέκα*, *thirteen*, i. 5. 5.

τρέπω, *τρέψω*, *ἔτρεψα* and *ἔτραπον* (poetical), mid. *ἐτρεψάμην* and *ἐτραπόμην*, *τέτροφα* and *τέτραφα*, *τέτραμμαι*, *ἐτρέφθην* and *ἐτράπην*, *turn*; esp. *εἰς φυγὴν τρέπειν*, *put to flight*, *rout*, i. 8. 24; of the mind, *divert*, iii. 1. 41; mid. intrans., *turn*, abs. or with *πρός* and acc., iii. 5. 13, iv. 5. 30, 8. 19; of luxurious living, with *ἐπί*, *turn to*, *resort to*, *indulge in*, ii. 6. 5; of a place, *look* towards, *look* in such and such a direction, with *πρός* and acc., iii. 5. 15.

τρέφω, *θρέψω*, *ἔθρεψα*, *τέτροφα*, *τέθραμμαι*, *ἐθρέφθην* (only the ptc. in Attic prose) and *ἐτράφην*, *nourish*, *support*, *maintain*, *feed*, of men and animals, i. 1. 9, 10, iv. 5. 25; *rear*, *bring up*, pass., *be reared*, *be brought up*, iii. 2. 13.

τρέχω, *δραμοῦμαι*, *ἔδραμον*, *-δεδράμηκα*, *-δεδράμημαι*, *run*, i. 5. 2, 8, iv. 8. 26; with *εἰς* or *ἐπί* and acc., i. 5. 13, iv. 3. 33, 5. 18.

τρέω, *ἔτρεσα* (akin to Lat. *tremo*, *tremble*), *tremble*, *quake*; with acc., *quail before*, *show fear of*, *flee from* (for fear), i. 9. 6. The word is rare in Attic prose; but at Sparta it was a technical term used to describe a skulker in battle, *ὁ τρέσας* = *coward*.

τρία, see *τρεῖς*.

τριάκοντα, indecl. num. (*τρεῖς*), *thirty*, i. 2. 9, 11, ii. 6. 20, iv. 6. 6.

τριᾱκόσιοι, *αι*, *α* (*τρεῖς*), *three hundred*, i. 1. 2, 2. 3, 9, ii. 5. 35, etc.

τριήρης, *ους*, *ἡ* (*τρεῖς*, *√ερ* in *ἐρέσσω*, *row*), *sc. ναῦς*, *ship with three banks of oars*, *trireme*, *galley*, *war-ship*, i. 2. 21, 3. 17, 4. 7, 8. The trireme was the established type of war-vessel in Xenophon's time. It was a long vessel with narrow beam and provided with a ram (see *ναῦς*). But its characteristic feature was the arrangement of the oars in three banks. This did not, as might be supposed, make it necessary for the vessel's gunwale to be built high out of the water, because the oarsmen of the upper banks did not sit directly above those of the lower, but an oblique arrangement was adopted, as illustrated in Fig. 55. Besides, it is probable that the oarsmen of the second row (*ζυγῖται*) were seated farther in towards the middle of the ship than those of the uppermost

row (θρανῖται) and those of the lowest (θαλαμῖται); thus a still greater compression would be made possible. The oars used would necessarily differ in length, according as they were to be used on a higher or a lower level. Those of the θρανῖται would be longer than those of the ζυγῖται, and these again longer than those of the θαλαμῖται. The full complement of a trireme's oarsmen was probably 170, 31 for the uppermost bank on each side, and 27 each for the middle and lowest banks. They did not, however, all work at once, but served in watches. Besides the oarsmen, each trireme carried from thirty to fifty other men, officers, sailors, and marines.

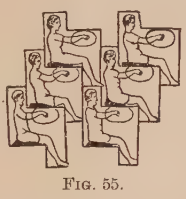


Fig. 55.

τρίπηχυς, υ (τρεῖς, πῆχυς), *of three cubits, three cubits long*, iv. 2. 28.

τρισάσμενος, η, ον (τρίς, thrice, ἄσμενος), *thrice glad, very glad*, iii. 2. 24.

τρισχίλιοι, αι, α (τρίς, *thrice*, χίλιοι), *three thousand*, i. 6. 4.

τρίτος, η, ον (τρεῖς), *third*, i. 7. 1, iii. 4. 28, iv. 2. 14; phrases, τῇ τρίτῃ (*sc.* ἡμέρᾳ), *on the third day* (*i. e.* on the second day after the starting-point), i. 7. 20, ii. 3. 25, so also τρίτῃ without art., iv. 8. 21; τὸ τρίτον, *the third time*, i. 6. 8; ἐπὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, *at the third signal*, ii. 2. 4.

τριχῇ, adv. (τρεῖς), *threefold, in three divisions*, iv. 8. 15.

τρίχινος, η, ον (θρίξ, τριχός, *hair*, cf. Eng. *trichinosis*), *of hair, made of hair*, iv. 8. 3.

τρόπαιον, ου, τό (τροπή), *trophy, memorial of victory*, iii. 2. 13, iv. 6. 27. The name is derived from τροπή, τρέπω, because the trophy was erected on the field where an enemy had been put to flight. The memorial consisted of a full set of arms taken from the enemy, fastened upon the trunk of a tree or upon an artificial pillar of wood, stone, or metal, and provided with an inscription. See Fig. 56, from a Greek coin. (Hence Eng. *trophy*.)

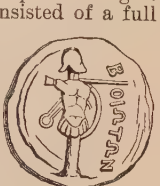


Fig. 56.

τροπή, ῆς, ἡ (τρέπω), *a turning* of the enemy, *rout, defeat, discomfiture*, i. 8. 25.

τρόπος, ου, ὁ (τρέπω), *turn, way, manner, means*, ii. 5. 20; so in various phrases, τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, *in this manner, thus*, i. 1. 9; τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ, *in the same way*, iv. 2. 13; τρόπῳ τινί, *after a fashion*, ii. 2. 17; ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου, *in any* (*possible*) *way, at any cost, no matter how*, iii. 1. 43; *character* (cf. the Eng. expression *turn of mind*), *ways, habits, tastes*, i. 2. 11, 9. 23, ii. 6. 8. (Cf. Eng. *trope, tropic, heliotrope*.)

τροφή, ῆς, ἡ (τρέφω), *support, maintenance*, i. 1. 9. (Cf. Eng. *atrophy, hypertrophy*.)

τρῦπάω, τετρύπημαι (τρῦπη, *hole*), *bore, pierce*; τὰ ὦτα τετρῦπημένος, *with his ears bored* (for earrings), iii. 1. 31.

τρωτός, ή, όν (τιτρώσκω), *capable of being wounded, vulnerable*, iii. 1. 23.

τυγχάνω, τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα, *hit, strike*, with gen., iii. 2. 19; hence, *get, obtain, gain*, with gen. of thing, i. 9. 29, ii. 6. 18; with gen. of person and gen. of thing, i. 4. 15; of death, *meet*, ii. 6. 29, iii. 2. 7; with ptc., *happen, chance;* in these cases the participle contains the leading idea and in translating is often to be made the principal verb, while the form

of τυγχάνω is rendered by an adverbial phrase, *as it happened, by chance*, etc., i. 1. 2, 8, 10, 5. 8, 14, 9. 20, 10. 3, ii. 1. 7, 2. 14, 3. 2, 5. 37, iv. 1. 24, 2. 8, 8. 26; ἐτύγχανον λέγων, *I was just saying*, iii. 2. 10; the participle is supplied from the context, ii. 2. 17, iii. 1. 3.

Τυριάειον, ου, τό, *Tyriaëum*, a city of southern Phrygia, near the modern Ilgun, i. 2. 14.

τῦρός, οῦ, ὁ, *cheese*, pl., ii. 4. 28. (Cf. Eng. *butter*, from βούτῡρον, lit. *cow-cheese*.)

τύρσις, εως and **ιος, ἡ** (akin to Lat. *turris, tower*), *tower, turret*, iv. 4. 2.

τύχη, ης, ἡ (cf. τυγχάνω), *fate, fortune*, ii. 2. 13.

τύχοι, τυχών, see τυγχάνω.

Υ

ὑβρίζω, ὑβριῶ, ὕβρισα, ὕβρικα, ὕβρισμαι, ὑβρίσθην (ὕβρις), *be wanton* or *insolent, exhibit arrogance; treat with insolence, maltreat, injure, abuse*, pass., iii. 1. 13, 29.

ὕβρις, εως, ἡ, *wanton violence, insolence, arrogance*, iii. 1. 21.

ὑγιαίνω, ὑγίᾶνα (ὑγιής, *healthy*, cf. Eng. *hygiene*), *be healthy, be well*, iv. 5. 18.

ὑδροφορέω (ὕδωρ, φορέω), *carry water*, iv. 5. 9.

ὑδροφόρος, ον (ὕδωρ, φέρω), *carrying water*; as subst., *water-carriers*, iv. 5. 10.

ὕδωρ, ατος, τό (akin to Lat. *unda, wave*, Eng. *water, wet*), *water*, i. 5. 7, 10, ii. 3. 10, 13, iii. 5. 10, iv. 3. 6, 21; ὕδωρ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ, *rain*, iv. 2. 2. (Hence Eng. *hydrostatics, hydrogen, hydrant* (*hy*)*dropsy*).

υἱός, see **ὑός**.

ὕλη, ης, ἡ (perhaps akin to Lat. *silva, forest*), *forest, wood*; also *shrubbery, bushes, wood*, i. 5. 1, iii. 5. 10.

ὑμεῖς, see **σύ**.

ὑμέτερος, ᾱ, ον (ὑμεῖς), *your, yours*, ii. 1. 12, 13, 3. 19, 5. 13, 41.

ὑός, οῦ, ὁ (this is the spelling of the inscriptions of Xen.'s time; also written υἱός), *son*, iv. 6. 1, 3.

ὑπάγω (ἄγω), *lead under, lead on gradually*; mid., *lead on craftily, induce*, ii. 4. 3; with cogn. acc., *suggest craftily*, ii. 1. 18; act. intrans., *advance slowly* or *cautiously*, iii. 4. 48, iv. 2. 16.

ὑπαίτιος, ον (αἴτιος), *under an accusation, accountable, responsible, liable to blame*; ὑπαίτιόν τι, *a cause for blame*, iii. 1. 5.

ὑπακούω (ἀκούω), *listen, heed*, with gen., iv. 1. 9.

ὑπαντάω, ὑπήντησα (ἀντάω, *meet*, not used in Attic prose), *meet, go to meet*, iv. 3. 34.

ὕπαρχος, ου, ὁ (ἄρχω), *under-officer, lieutenant, subordinate commander*, i. 2. 20, 8. 5; also *under-satrap, lieutenant-governor*, an officer not directly responsible to the Persian king, but to another satrap, iv. 4. 4.

ὑπάρχω (ἄρχω), *begin, make a beginning, be the first*, with ptc., ii. 3. 23; *exist, be ready, be at hand*, ii. 2. 11, cf. τοιούτων ἡμῖν εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων, *when we have such grounds for friendship*, ii. 5. 24; *be on one's side, favor, be devoted to, serve*, i. 1. 4, 9. 17.

ὑπασπιστής, οῦ, ὁ (ἀσπίς), *shield-bearer, squire*, an attendant of heavy-armed soldiers and officers, iv. 2. 20.

ὕπειμι (εἰμί), *be under, lie under*, iii. 4. 7.

ὑπέρ, prep. with gen. and acc. (akin to Lat. *super, above*). With gen., of place, *over, above*, i. 10. 12, iii. 4. 29, 39, 41, iv. 2. 6, 10, 3. 1, 6, 23; for ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν, see **δεξιός**; once with a verb of motion, *from over*, iv. 7. 4; in a geographical use, of the relative location of places,

above, beyond, i. 10. 14, ii. 6. 2; *for, in behalf of, in defense of*, i. 3. 4, 9. 31, iii. 5. 6, iv. 8. 24. With acc., *beyond*, i. 1. 9. In composition, **ὑπέρ** signifies *over, for, exceedingly*. (Cf. Eng. *hypercritical*.)

ὑπερβάλλω (**βάλλω**), *throw over*, then intrans., *go beyond, pass over, cross over, cross*, with acc., iv. 4. 20, 5. 1, 6. 8; **τὸ ὑπερβάλλον τοῦ στρατεύματος**, *the part of the army crossing, each division as it crossed*, iv. 1. 7.

ὑπερβολή, ῆς, ἡ (**ὑπερβάλλω**), *act of passing over, crossing*, i. 2. 25; *mountain pass*, iii. 5. 18, iv. 1. 21, 5. 18, 6. 5 ff.

ὑπερδέξιος, ον (**ὑπέρ, δεξιός**), *above on the right*; then simply *above, elevated, on higher ground*, of a strategic position, iii. 4. 37.

ὑπερέρχομαι (**ἔρχομαι**), *go over, pass across*, with acc., iv. 4. 3.

ὑπερέχω (**ἔχω**), *be above; project*, of spears thrust into a stream, iii. 5. 7; *overhang*, of a cliff, iv. 7. 4.

ὕπερθεν, adv. (**ὑπέρ**), *from above, above*, i. 4. 4.

ὑπερύψηλος, ον (**ὑψηλός**), *very high, exceedingly high*, iii. 5. 7.

ὑπέσχετο, etc., see **ὑπισχνέομαι**.

ὑπήκοος, ον (**ὑπακούω**), *listening to*, hence *attentive to a command, obedient, subject*, with dat., i. 6. 6.

ὑπηρετέω, ὑπηρετήσω, ὑπηρέτησα, ὑπηρέτηκα, ὑπηρέτημαι (**ὑπηρέτης**), *be a servant, serve, help, assist*, with dat., i. 9. 18, ii. 5. 14; *furnish, provide*, with dat. of pers. and acc. of thing (supplied from context), iii. 5. 8.

ὑπηρέτης, ου, ὁ (**ἐρέτης, rower**), orig. *under-rower*, then *underling* of any kind, *servant, attendant, assistant, helper*, i. 9. 18, 27, ii. 1. 9, 5. 14.

ὑπισχνέομαι, ὑποσχήσομαι, ὑπεσχόμην, ὑπέσχημαι (collateral form of **ὑπέχομαι**; **√σεχ** in **ἔχω**), *undertake, promise, engage*, with acc., i. 7. **5**, iv. 5. 29; with acc. and dat. of person, i. 7. 18, 9. 7; with fut. inf., i. 3. 21, iii. 4. 2; with dat. of pers. and fut. inf., i. 4. 13, ii. 3. 20, iii. 1. 4; with aor. inf. (rare) and dat. of pers., i. 2. 2.

ὕπνος, ου, ὁ (**√σϝαπ**; akin to Lat. *somnus, sopor, sleep*, Middle Eng. *sweven, dream*), *sleep*, iii. 1. 11. (Cf. Eng. *hypnotism*.)

ὑπό, also by elision and euphonic change **ὑπ', ὑφ'**, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. (akin to Lat. *sub, under*), *under*. With gen., *under*, no example in first four books of Anab.; but freq. in sense of agency, *by, at the hands of*, with pass. verbs, i. 1. 10, 3. 10, 8. 21, ii. 6. 15, iii. 1. 10; so when the gen. is not a person but a thing, i. 4. 17, iii. 1. 13; with verbs passive in meaning but not in form, where the gen. is either of pers. or thing, i. 3. 4, iv. 3. 2, 14, 5. 12, 7. 6; expressing cause, *through, because of, from*, i. 5. 5, ii. 2. 11, iii. 1. 3, iv. 4. 14; **ὑπὸ μαστίγων**, *under the lash*, iii. 4. 25. With dat., *under, beneath*, also *at the foot of*, with verbs of rest, i. 2. 8, 10. 14, iii. 4. 24, iv. 7. 10; with acc., *under*, with expressions of motion, i. 8. 27, 10. 14, iii. 4. 37, iv. 7. 8. In composition **ὑπό** signifies *under*, but also has the force of *secretly;* and like the Lat. *sub* it often indicates a degree of a quality less than that denoted by the simple adj., hence *somewhat, rather*.

ὑποδεής, ές (**δέω**), only in comp. **ὑποδεέστερος**, *somewhat lacking, inferior*, with gen. i. 9. 5.

ὑποδέχομαι (**δέχομαι**), *receive* in a friendly manner, *welcome*, i. 6. 3.

ὑποδέω (**δέω, bind**), *bind under*, esp. in mid., *tie under one's feet, put one's shoes on;* **ὑποδεδεμένοι**, *shod, with one's shoes on*, iv. 5. 14.

ὑπόδημα, ατος, τό (**ὑποδέω**), *shoe*, probably originally *a sandal*, because

sandals consist simply of a sole bound to the foot by thongs; then *shoe* of any kind, whether a sandal or a high shoe or boot laced about the ankle and calf of the leg. Heavy shoes with uppers were probably used by the soldiers, iv. 5. 14.

ὑποζύγιον, *ου, τό* (*ζυγόν, yoke,* cf. *ζεύγνῡμι*), *that which is put under the yoke, yoke-animal, beast of burden*, ii. 2. 15, 18; esp. common in pl., *pack-animals, baggage-animals*, of the oxen, mules, and asses used by the army in transporting arms and supplies, i. 3. 1, 5. 5, 7. 20, ii. 1. 6, 2. 4, iii. 3. 6, iv. 3. 30, 5. 36.

ὑπολαμβάνω (*λαμβάνω*), *receive under* one's protection, said of exiles, i. 1. 7; *take up a conversation, "chime in," answer*, ii. 1. 15, iii. 1. 31; *μεταξὺ ὑπολαβών, interrupting*, iii. 1. 27.

ὑπολείπω (*λείπω*), *leave behind*; pass., *be left behind, be abandoned*, of persons or things, i. 2. 25, 8. 18, iv. 3. 25, 5. 15.

ὑπολύω (*λύω*), *loose under*; mid., *untie one's shoes*, iv. 5. 13.

ὑπομαλακίζομαι (*μαλακίζομαι, ἐμαλακισάμην, ἐμαλακίσθην, be softened, become effeminate*, from *μαλακός, soft*), *grow soft*, hence *show weakness, lose courage*, ii. 1. 14.

ὑπομένω (*μένω*), *stay behind, wait*, iv. 3. 15; *wait, stop, halt*, iii. 4. 21, iv. 1. 16, 17; with acc., *wait for*, iv. 1. 21; *stand one's ground*, iv. 4. 21.

ὑπόμνημα, *ατος, τό* (*μιμνήσκω*), *reminder*, i. 6. 3.

ὑπόπεμπτος, *ον* (*ὑποπέμπω*), *sent with treacherous design, a treacherous emissary*, iii. 3. 4.

ὑποπέμπω (*πέμπω*), *send secretly* or *insidiously, send as a treacherous agent*, ii. 4. 22.

ὑποπτεύω, *ὑποπτεύσω, ὑπώπτευσα, ὑπωπτεύθην* (√*οπ*, see *ὁράω*), perhaps orig. *look askance at*, hence *view distrustfully, suspect, surmise*, with acc. and inf., i. 3. 1, ii. 3. 13, 5. 28, iv. 2. 15; *be apprehensive, fear*, with *μή* and opt., iii. 1. 5; *apprehend*, with acc., i. 1. 1.

ὑποστράτηγος, *ου, ὁ* (*στρατηγός*), *lieutenant-general*, iii. 1. 32.

ὑποστρέφω (*στρέφω*), *turn about*; in a transferred sense, *evade an issue, avoid a trap, parry a question*, ii. 1. 18.

ὑπόσχοιτο, ὑποσχόμενος, see *ὑπισχνέομαι*.

ὑποφαίνω (*φαίνω*), *show from under, show slightly*; of the day, *dawn, break*, iii. 2. 1, iv. 2. 7, 3. 9.

ὑποφείδομαι (*φείδομαι, φείσομαι, ἐφεισάμην, spare*), *spare a little*, iv. 1. 8.

ὑποχείριος, *ον* (*χείρ*), *under the hands*, with dat. *into the hands of, in the power of, subject to*, iii. 2. 3.

ὕποχος, *ον* (*ὑπέχω*), *subject to, under control of*, with dat., ii. 5. 7.

ὑποχωρέω (*χωρέω*), *withdraw gradually, make way*, with dat., i. 4. 18; *retreat, retire*, i. 7. 17; *move on slowly, make way* (cf. *ὑπάγω*), iv. 5. 19.

ὑποψίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (√*οπ*, see *ὁράω*), *suspicion, distrust*, ii. 4. 10, 5. 5, with *ὅτι* clause, i. 3. 21; pl., *feelings of distrust*, ii. 5. 1, 2; *apprehension, uneasiness, anxiety*, iii. 1. 21.

ὑστεραῖος, *ᾱ, ον* (*ὕστερος*), *coming later, following, succeeding*; in various phrases with *ἡμέρᾱ* understood, *τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ* (*sc.* *ἡμέρᾳ*), *on the next day, the day after*, i. 2. 21, 7. 19, ii. 2. 18, 5. 27, iii. 3. 20, 4. 37; *εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν, on the next day*, ii. 3. 25, iv. 1. 15; *τὴν ὑστεραίαν, during the next day*, iii. 5. 13.

ὑστερέω, ὑστέρησα, plupf. *ὑστερήκει* (*ὕστερος*), *be later, come too late for*, with gen., i. 7. 12.

ὕστερος, *ᾱ, ον* (akin to Eng. *out, outer, utter*), *later, coming after,*

following, of time, i. 5. 14, ii. 2. 17; of place, *behind, in the rear*, iii. 4. 21; neut. ὕστερον as adv., *later, afterwards*, i. 3. 2, 6. 7, 7. 13, iii. 2. 13; with gen., i. 5. 16, iv. 3. 34; with dat. of degree of difference, i. 8. 8, ii. 5. 32.

ὑφηγέομαι (ἡγέομαι), *lead on slowly*, iv. 1. 7.

ὑφίημι (ἵημι), *let down, put under, slacken*; intrans., *give way, admit, concede*, with acc. and inf., iii. 5. 5; mid., *submit, yield, surrender*, iii. 1. 17, 2. 3.

ὑφίστημι (ἵστημι), *place under; post secretly*, τινάς understood, iv. 1. 14; mid. and 2 aor. act., *undertake, offer oneself, volunteer*, iv. 1. 26, 27, 28; also *withstand, resist, offer opposition*, iii. 2. 11.

ὑφοράω (ὁράω), *look at from below, view with suspicion*, ii. 4. 10.

ὑψηλός, ή, όν (ὕψος), *high, lofty*, i. 2. 22; neut. as subst., τὸ ὑψηλόν, *high place, elevation, height*, iii. 4. 25.

ὕψος, ους, τό (cf. ὑπέρ), *height*, ii. 4. 12, iii. 4. 7, 9, 11.

Φ

φαγεῖν, φάγωσιν, etc., see ἐσθίω.

φαιδρός, ά, όν, *bright, shining*; of the face, *beaming, cheery*, ii. 6. 11.

φαίη, see φημί.

φαίνω, φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνθην (strictly passive) and ἐφάνην, *show, bring to light*, iv. 3. 13; intrans., *shine*, iv. 4. 9; pass., *be shown, show oneself, come into view, appear, be seen*, i. 5. 7, 6. 1, 11, 8. 8, 10. 16, 19, ii. 1. 2, 2. 15, 18, iii. 2. 9; with inf. and pred. adj., *seem, appear, prove to be, turn out*, i. 9. 15, but more frequently with pred. adj. alone, the inf. perhaps being understood, i. 3. 19, 9. 15, ii. 6. 11, iii. 4. 13, iv. 3. 27; so with an adv. phrase in pred., iv. 3. 16; with ptc., ii. 5. 38, iv. 5. 28, cf. i. 9. 19, where οὐ φθονῶν ἐφαίνετο may be rendered *he showed that he did not envy* or *it was clear that he did not envy*. (Cf. the Eng. derivatives *phase, phenomenon, phaenogam, phantom, fantasy* and *fancy, epiphany, diaphanous*.)

φάλαγξ, γγος, ή (cf. Eng. *phalanx*), *phalanx, line of battle*, i. 8. 17, 18, 10. 10. The term is used most frequently of a formation of troops with extended front and comparatively slight depth. The ordinary arrangement allowed a depth of eight men, but for reviewing purposes the front might be still further extended and the depth reduced to four; see i. 2. 17 and cf. § 15. That the intervals between ranks and files might vary considerably is indicated by the use of πυκνός in describing a formation in close order, ii. 3. 3. The φάλαγξ with extended front is contrasted with a formation in columns with narrow front, iv. 8. 10–12, 16, 17; cf. also the phrase ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, used in describing the change from such a column formation to the line of battle, iv. 3. 26, 6. 6. The use of the term φάλαγξ, however, is not limited to the line of battle. It is used of an army in square (πλαίσιον), iii. 3. 11, 4. 26, and of an army in camp, ii. 1. 6.

Φαλῖνος, ου, ὁ, *Phalīnus*, a Greek serving with Tissaphernes as instructor in tactics and drill-methods, who tried to dissuade the Greeks of Cyrus's army from resisting Artaxerxes, ii. 1. 7, 10 ff., 2. 1.

φανερός, ά, όν (φαίνω), *in plain sight, visible, evident, open*, i. 7. 17, ii. 5. 1, iv. 1. 23; frequently used with ptc. in a personal constr. which may be rendered into English by various personal and impersonal phrases; so φανερὸς ἦν πειρώμενος,

it was evident that he tried, or *he evidently tried*, "*he made no secret of his endeavor*" (Dakyns), i. 9. 11; **ἐπιβουλεύων φανερὸς γέγονας**, *you have been detected in a plot, have been proved guilty of treachery*, i. 6. 8; **φανεροὶ ἦσαν καταβαίνοντες**, *they were seen to be descending*, iv. 3. 24; similarly, i. 9. 16, ii. 5. 40, 6. 19, 23, iii. 1. 36, 2. 20, 24, iv. 3. 33. Phrase **ἐν τῷ φανερῷ**, *openly, publicly*, i. 3. 21. (Cf. Eng. *phanerogam.*)

φανερῶς, adv. (**φανερός**), *openly, without concealment*, i. 9. 19.

φαρέτρᾱ, ᾱς, **ἡ** (**φέρω**), *quiver*, iv. 4. 16. See Figs. 3 and 25.

φάρμακοποσίᾱ, ᾱς, **ἡ** (**φάρμακον**, *drug* —cf. Eng. *pharmacy*—and **πίνω**), *the drinking of a drug* or *poison*; hence the *stupor* or *illness resulting from taking poison*, iv. 8. 21.

Φᾶσιᾱνοί, ῶν, **οἱ** (**Φᾶσις**), *Phasiāni, Phasians*, a tribe living along the upper course of the Araxes (Phasis) river in Armenia, iv. 6. 5.

Φᾶσις, ιος, **ὁ**, *Phasis*, now Pasin Su, a name given to the upper course of the Araxes (Armenian *Erash*) river, which rises in the mountains of Armenia northwest of Lake Van and flows with an easterly course until it joins the Cyrus (Kur) and empties into the Caspian Sea, iv. 6. 4.

φάσκω, only pres. and impf. (**φᾱ** in **φημί**), *say, assert*, often with a notion of pretending, *allege, claim*, with inf., iii. 5. 17, iv. 4. 21, 8. 4. (This verb is used only in pres. and impf., and is rare in pres. ind.; Xen. seems to use only the ptc.)

φέρω, οἴσω, **ἤνεγκα** and **ἤνεγκον**, **ἐνήνοχα**, **ἐνήνεγμαι**, **ἠνέχθην** (**ἐνεφερ** of pres. akin to Lat. *fero* and Eng. *bear*), *bear, carry, bring*, i. 9. 26, iii. 4. 32, 47, iv. 3. 6; so of nonmaterial things, ii. 1. 17, 4. 1; *carry off*, ii. 1. 6, iv. 1. 8; for the phrase **φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν**, see **ἄγω**; of pay, *receive, draw*, i. 3. 21; of crops, *produce*, i. 2. 22; of a road, *lead*, with **ἐπί** and acc., iii. 5. 15. Pass., *be borne, be carried swiftly, be hurled, rush, fall*, i. 8. 20, iv. 2. 3, 7. 6, 12, 14; of a sling-bullet, *carry*, iii. 3. 16. Note the phrases **χαλεπῶς φέρειν, βαρέως φέρειν**, *be annoyed, troubled, grieved*, abs. or with dat. of cause, i. 3. 3, ii. 1. 4. (Cf. Eng. *Christopher, phosphorus.*)

φεύγω, **φεύξομαι** and **φευξοῦμαι** (the latter rare in Attic prose, perhaps not in Xen.), **ἔφυγον**, **πέφευγα** (akin to Lat. *fugio, flee*), *flee, take flight, run away*, i. 2. 18, 5. 3, 8. 19, ii. 1. 3, 2. 16, 5. 7, iii. 3. 9, 4. 35, iv. 2. 27, 3. 21, 4. 21; with **πρός** and acc., iii. 2. 17; with **ἐπί** and acc., iv. 1. 8; with object acc., *flee from, run away from*, iii. 2. 35; *flee from one's country, be banished, be exiled, go into exile*, iv. 8. 25; ptc., **ὁ φεύγων**, *the exile*, i. 1. 7, 9. 9; with **ἐκ** and gen., i. 3. 3.

φημί, **φήσω**, **ἔφησα**, rare in fut. and aor., which tenses are usually supplied by **ἐρῶ** and **εἶπον**, *say*, in the widest sense, *declare, maintain, state, assert*, with inf. alone or with nom. and inf. or acc. and inf., i. 2. 25, 3. 17, 20, 8. 26, ii. 1. 3, 5. 38, 6. 10, iii. 1. 4, 29, 2. 24, iv. 1. 24, 2. 19, 4. 18, 8. 7; abs., i. 6. 6, 8. 26; so in sense *say yes*, i. 6. 7; *admit*, with acc. and inf., iii. 2. 23; **ἔφη** is frequently introduced after the first few words of a speech in ind. discourse, i. 6. 7, 8. 17, ii. 1. 9, 2. 12, iii. 1. 34, 4. 40, iv. 6. 16, 7. 7; so **ἔφασαν**, ii. 3. 7, iv. 8. 26. **ἔφη** in an answer = *said yes*, i. 6. 7, **οὐκ ἔφη**, *said no*, iv. 1. 23. A neg. which the Eng. idiom places with a dependent clause is in Greek closely connected with **φημί**, hence **οὔ φημι** may be rendered *I deny, I refuse*, as well as *I say . . . not*; cf. i. 3. 1, 7. 8, 4. 12, iv. 1. 21, 24, 5. 15. (Cf. Eng. *euphemism, prophet.*)

φθάνω, *φθήσομαι* and (doubtful in Xen.) *φθάσω, ἔφθασα* and *ἔφθην, get before, get ahead, be beforehand with, outstrip, anticipate, do anything before another person,* often translated by an adverbial phrase denoting priority of action, as in the example from iii. 4. 49 given below; abs., iv. 6. 11, strengthened by *πρῶτος,* iii. 4. 20; with acc. of person and ptc. containing the leading idea, *φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους, they got upon the height before the enemy,* iii. 4. 49, so without acc., i. 3. 14; with *πρίν* and inf., ii. 5. 5, iv. 1. 4, 21.

φθέγγομαι, *φθέγξομαι, ἐφθεγξάμην, ἔφθεγμαι, make a sound, shout,* i. 8. 18, iv. 5. 18; of a trumpet, *sound,* iv. 2. 7. (Cf. Eng. *diphthong, apophthegm.*)

φθείρω, *φθερῶ, ἔφθειρα, ἔφθαρκα* and *-έφθορα, ἔφθαρμαι, ἐφθάρην, destroy, corrupt,* of a country, *lay waste, devastate,* iv. 7. 20.

φθονέω, *φθονήσω, ἐφθόνησα, ἐφθονήθην* (*φθόνος, envy*), *envy,* with dat. of pers., i. 9. 19.

φιάλη, *ης, ἡ, cup,* especially a broad, flat, saucer-like drinking-cup without handles and either entirely without a base or else having a very slightly projecting flattened surface to steady the vessel. In the bottom there was sometimes a small, hollow projection made by pushing up the clay from below, into which a finger could be inserted for convenience in handling. Similar vessels were made of silver or other metals, iv. 7. 27. See Fig. 57. The *φιάλη,* like the *patera* of the Romans, was used especially in pouring libations. (Cf. Eng. *phial, vial.*)

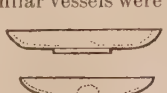


FIG. 57.

φιλαίτερον, see *φίλος.*

φιλέω, *φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα, πεφίληκα* (Pindar), *πεφίλημαι, ἐφιλήθην* (*φίλος*), *love,* of friends and members of the same family, i. 1. 4, 9. 25, 28.

Φιλήσιος, *ου, ὁ, Philesius,* an Achaean chosen as general to succeed Menon, iii. 1. 47.

φιλία, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*φίλος*), *friendship, friendly relations, favor, liking, attachment,* i. 6. 3, ii. 1. 10, 5. 8, 24, 6. 13, 30; with gen. of person, i. 3. 5, 6; *διὰ φιλίας, πρὸς φιλίαν,* see the prepositions.

φιλικός, *ή, όν* (*φίλος*), *like a friend, friendly,* iv. 1. 9.

φιλικῶς, adv. (*φιλικῶς*), *in a friendly manner, amicably,* ii. 5. 27.

φίλιος, *ᾱ, ον* (*φίλος*), *friendly, at peace,* of persons and things, i. 6. 3, ii. 5. 18; of a country, i. 3. 14, ii. 3. 26, iii. 2. 9, iv. 1. 8; so without *χώρᾱ, a friendly country,* ii. 3. 27.

φίλιππος, *ον* (*ἵππος*), *fond of horses,* sup., i. 9. 5. (Cf. Eng. *Philip.*)

φιλόθηρος, *ον* (*θήρᾱ, hunting, the chase*), *fond of the chase,* sup., i. 9. 6.

φιλοκερδέω (*φιλοκερδής, loving gain,* cf. *κέρδος*), *be greedy of gain, be bent on profit,* i. 9. 16.

φιλοκίνδῡνος, *ον* (*κίνδῡνος*), *loving danger, venturesome, daring,* ii. 6. 7, sup., i. 9. 6.

φιλομαθής, *ές* (*μανθάνω*), *fond of learning, eager for knowledge,* i. 9. 5.

φιλονῑκίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*νίκη*), *desire for victory, rivalry, emulation,* iv. 8. 27.

φιλοπόλεμος, *ον* (*πόλεμος*), *fond of war, loving warfare,* ii. 6. 1, 6, 7.

φίλος, *η, ον, friendly, well disposed, attached,* with dat., i. 1. 5, 3. 19, 4. 2, 6. 8; comp. *φιλαίτερος,* with dat., i. 9. 29; as subst., *ὁ φίλος, friend, adherent, partisan, favorite,* i. 1. 2, 7. 6, ii. 1. 5, 2. 3, 6. 17, iii. 2. 5, iv. 4. 4. (Cf. Eng. *philanthropy, Philadelphia, bibliophile, philtre, philology.*)

φιλόσοφος, *ου, ὁ* (*σοφός*), *lover of wisdom, philosopher*, ii. 1. 13.

φιλοτῑμέομαι, *φιλοτῑμήσομαι, πεφιλοτίμημαι, ἐφιλοτῑμήθην* (*φιλότῑμος, loving honor*, from √*φιλ* and *τῑμή*), *be eager for honor, be ambitious*, hence *be jealous*, with *ὅτι* clause, i. 4. 7.

φιλοφρονέομαι, *ἐφιλοφρονησάμην* and *ἐφιλοφρονήθην* (*φίλος, φρονέω*), *feel friendly, show kindness* or *friendship*, abs. or with dat. of pers., ii. 5. 27, iv. 5. 29, 32; with acc., *greet cordially*, iv. 5. 34.

φλυᾱρέω, *φλυᾱρήσω* (*φλύᾱρος, silly talk*), *talk nonsense*, iii. 1. 26, 29.

φλυᾱρίᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ* (*φλυᾱρέω*), *idle talk, nonsense, folly*, i. 3. 17.

φοβερός, *ά, όν* (*φόβος*), *causing fear, fearful, alarming, terrible*, abs., ii. 5. 9; with dat. of person and dative inf., iii. 4. 5.

φοβέω, *φοβήσω, ἐφόβησα* (*φόβος*), *frighten, terrify*, with acc. of person and *μή* clause, iv. 5. 17; usually as pass. deponent, *φοβέομαι, φοβήσομαι, πεφόβημαι, ἐφοβήθην, be frightened, fear, be afraid, be alarmed, dread*, abs., ii. 4. 18; with acc. of person, i. 9. 9, ii. 5. 5, 6. 10, 25; with acc. of thing, ii. 6. 14, 19, iii. 1. 10, 20; with *μή* clause, i. 8. 13, iii. 1. 12 (also with *ὅτι* clause), 4. 34; with inf. and *μή* clause, i. 3. 17.

φόβος, *ου, ὁ* (Homeric *φέβομαι, flee*), *fear, terror, dread, apprehension*, i. 8. 18, ii. 3. 9, 6. 19; with gen. of artic. inf., iii. 1. 18; with simple inf., ii. 4. 3; *panic, alarm*, ii. 2. 19, 21; *means of causing fear*, hence *threats*, iv. 1. 23; *τὸν ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους φόβον, the terror with which the Greeks inspired the barbarians*, i. 2. 18. (Cf. Eng. *hydrophobia*.)

Φοινῑκη, *ης, ἡ* (perhaps from *φοῖνιξ, date-palm*, hence orig. *Palm-land*), *Phoenicia*, i. 4. 5, 7. 12, a name applied by the Greeks to the coast districts of Syria and Palestine lying between the Lebanon range and the sea. The northern and southern limits of the country probably varied at different historical periods. According to some authorities Phoenicia extended from the mouth of the Orontes river on the north to Mount Carmel on the south. Others included also the Philistian coast as far south as Gaza. The principal cities were Tyre and Sidon. The Phoenicians were famous as sailors and merchants, and are credited with the invention of several useful arts, among them writing, counting, dyeing, and glass-making. Their alphabet is the source of the Greek.

φοινῑκιστής, *οῦ, ὁ* (*φοινῑκοῦς*), *wearer of the purple*, i. 2. 20, title of certain dignitaries of the Persian court, who had the privilege of wearing garments of this color; but according to some authorities the word should be translated *purple-dyer*, the title of the supervisor of the royal purple-fisheries and dye-works.

φοινῑκοῦς, *ῆ, οῦν*, contr. from *φοινῐκεος, ᾱ, ον* (*φοῖνιξ, purple*, from *Φοῖνιξ, a Phoenician*), *purple* or *dark red*, i. 2. 16, a dye obtained by the Phoenicians from the small purple-shell (*Murex trunculus, Purpura patula*, and other species).

φοῖνιξ, *ῑκος, ὁ, date-palm, palm-tree*, i. 5. 10, ii. 3. 10, 14–16. The date-palm (*Phoenix dactylifera*) is a handsome tree from 60 to 80 feet in height, native to northern Africa, Syria, Arabia and eastward to India. Its fruit (*βάλανος*) is an important article of food in the countries named, and the terminal bud (*ἐγκέφαλος*) is also eaten like cabbage. From the juice of the fruit and also from the sap of the tree a kind of wine was prepared,

Φοῖνιξ, ῑκος, ὁ, *a Phoenician*, pl., i. 4. 6. (See **Φοινίκη**.)

φορέω, φορήσω, ἐφόρησα, -πεφόρηκα, πεφόρημαι, -εφορήθην (**φέρω**), *carry habitually*, *wear*, i. 8. 29.

φράζω, φράσω, ἔφρασα, πέφρακα, πέφρασμαι, *tell*, *say*, *relate*, with acc., or acc. and rel. clause, ii. 4. 18, iv. 5. 29, 34; *bid*, *command*, *give orders*, with dat. of person and inf., i. 6. 3; with dat. of person and acc. of thing, ii. 3. 3. (Cf. Eng. *phrase*, *paraphrase*, *periphrasis*.)

φρέαρ, ατος, τό, *well*, iv. 5. 25.

φρονέω, φρονήσω, ἐφρόνησα, πεφρόνηκα (**φρήν**, *diaphragm*, regarded as the seat of thought), *think*, *understand*, *have knowledge*, *be wise*; **μόνος ἐφρόνει ἃ δεῖ τὸν ἄρχοντα**, *he alone had the judgment demanded of a general*, ii. 2. 5; **μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ**, *pluming himself on this event*, iii. 1. 27.

φρόνημα, ατος, τό (**φρονέω**), *thought*, *mind*, *spirit*, *resolution*, *courage*, iii. 1. 22, 2. 16.

φρόνιμος, ον (**φρήν**, cf. **φρονέω**), *sensible*, *prudent*, *wise*, i. 10. 7, ii. 5. 16, 6. 7.

φροντίζω, φροντιῶ, ἐφρόντισα, πεφρόντικα (**φρήν**, cf. **φρονέω**), *be thoughtful*, *take thought*, *devise means*, with **ὅπως** and opt., i. 6. 8; *be anxious*, ii. 3. 25.

φρουραρχία, ας, ἡ (**φρούραρχος**), *office of* **φρούραρχος**, *position as commander of a garrison*, i. 4. 15.

φρούραρχος, ου, ὁ (**φρουρά**, *garrison*, **ἄρχω**), *commander of a garrison*, i. 1. 6.

φρουρέω, φρουρήσω, ἐφρούρησα, -πεφρούρημαι, ἐφρουρήθην (**φρουρός**, *watcher*, *guard*, from **πρό** and **ὁράω**), *watch*, *guard*; pass. ptc., *under guard*, i. 4. 8.

φρύγανα, ων, τά (**φρύγω**, *roast*, *parch*), *dry sticks*, *brushwood*, iv. 3. 11.

Φρυγία, ας, ἡ (**Φρύξ**), *Phrygia*, a large district in the interior of Asia Minor, bounded on the north by Bithynia and Paphlagonia, on the east by Cappadocia and Lycaonia, on the south by Cilicia and Pisidia, and on the west by Mysia, Lydia, and Caria, i. 2. 6, 7, 19. This district is called Greater Phrygia (**Φρυγία ἡ μεγάλη**) in i. 9. 7, to distinguish it from Lesser Phrygia, a name sometimes given by the Greeks to the southern shore of the Propontis.

Φρύξ, υγός, ὁ, *a Phrygian*, *native of Phrygia*, i. 2. 13.

φυγάς, άδος, ὁ (**φεύγω**), *refugee*, *exile*, *fugitive*, i. 1. 9, 11, 2. 2, 7. 5, ii. 6. 4, iv. 2. 13.

φυγή, ῆς, ἡ (**φεύγω**), *flight*, *full retreat*, *rout*, i. 8. 24, iii. 2. 17, iv. 1. 17, 2. 12, 8. 19.

φυγόντες, see **φεύγω**.

φυλακή, ῆς, ἡ (**φυλάττω**), *act of guarding*, *watch*, *guard*; **ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχειν**, *hold in custody*, iv. 5. 29; *guard duty*, *picket service*, iii. 1. 40; so **φυλακὰς φυλάττειν**, *do picket duty*, ii. 6. 10; of a body of soldiers on such duty, *guard*, *watch*, *picket*, ii. 4. 17, 23, iv. 2. 14, 5. 19; *bodyguard*, i. 2. 12; *garrison*, i. 1. 6, 4. 4; of a division of the night, *watch*, iv. 1. 5.

φύλαξ, ακος, ὁ (**φυλάττω**), *guard*, *sentinel*, *picket*, iv. 2. 5, 4. 19.

φυλάττω, φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, -πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι, ἐφυλάχθην, *keep watch*, *be on guard*, abs., i. 2. 22, 4. 5, ii. 4. 23; with acc. of person or place, *guard*, *keep under guard*, *watch*, *defend*, i. 2. 1, 2. 21, 4. 4, iv. 1. 20, 2. 1, 6. 1, 11. Mid., *guard oneself*, *be on one's guard*, *keep a look-out for danger*, *be cautious*, abs., ii. 5. 37, 6. 24, iv. 7. 8; with **μή** and subj. or opt., ii. 2. 16, 4. 16, iv. 6. 15; with acc. of person, *be on one's guard against*, *beware of*, i. 6. 9, ii. 4. 10, 5. 3. (Cf. Eng. *phylactery*.)

φῡσάω, πεφύσημαι, ἐφῡσήθην (**φῦσα**, *bellows*), *blow up*, *inflate*, iii. 5. 9.

Φύσκος, *ου, ὁ, Physcus,* a river flowing from the east and emptying into the Tigris in the neighborhood of Opis, ii. 4. 25. It is perhaps the Adhem, but some travellers maintain that what Xen. called the Physcus river was only a large canal.

φύω, *φύσω,* ἔφῡσα and ἔφῡν, *πέφῡκα* (akin to Lat. *fui, futurus,* Eng. *be*), *bring forth, produce,* used of vegetable growth, i. 4. 10. (Cf. Eng. *physic, neophyte, euphuism.*)

Φωκαΐς, *ίδος, ἡ* (*Φώκαια, Phocaea*), *Phocaean woman, woman of Phocaea,* i. 10. 2 (see note on the passage). Phocaea was an important Ionic city on the coast of Asia Minor, northwest of Smyrna.

φωνή, *ῆς, ἡ* (akin to *φημί*), *voice,* ii. 6. 29; *language, dialect,* iii. 1. 26, iv. 8. 4. (Cf. Eng. *phonetic, telephone, phonograph.*)

φῶς, *φωτός, τό, light,* iii. 1. 12. (Cf. Eng. *photograph, phosphorus, photometer.*)

X

Χαλδαῖοι, *ων, οἱ, Chaldaeans,* a warlike and independent people inhabiting certain districts of the Armenian mountains, iv. 3. 4. They may be the same as the Chalybes mentioned in iv. 4. 18. These Chaldaeans of Armenia are thought to have been the original stock from which the Chaldaeans of Babylonia separated.

χαλεπαίνω, χαλεπανῶ, ἐχαλέπηνα, ἐχαλεπάνθην (*χαλεπός*), *be harsh* or *severe,* hence *be angry, be provoked,* abs. or with dat. of person, i. 4. 12, 5. 11, iv. 5. 16; with *ὅτι* clause, i. 5. 14; used with the same meaning in pass., with *ὅτι* clause, iv. 6. 2.

χαλεπός, *ή, όν, hard, grievous, painful,* iii. 1. 13; *hard, difficult,* iii. 2. 2, 4. 36, iv. 5. 3, so with inf., ii. 6. 24; of a fortified place, *difficult of access,* iv. 8. 2; of persons, *harsh, severe, stern,* ii. 6. 9, 12; *χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρός, a very bitter enemy,* i. 3. 12. Note the phrase *τὸ χαλεπὸν αὐτοῦ, his sternness,* ii. 6. 11; *τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος, the severity of the wind,* iv. 5. 4.

χαλεπῶς, adv. (*χαλεπῶς*), *painfully, with difficulty; χαλεπῶς κάμνω, I am working hard,* iii. 4. 47; *χαλεπῶς φέρω, am grieved, am troubled,* with dat. of cause, i. 3. 3.

χαλῑνόω, *ἐχαλίνωσα, -κεχαλίνωμαι* (*χαλῑνός, bridle*), *put a bridle on, bridle,* iii. 4. 35.

χαλκός, *οῦ, ὁ, bronze,* a mixture of copper and tin; also any article of bronze, *a bit of bronze, a piece of bronze armor; χαλκός τις ἤστραπτε, there was a flash of bronze,* i. 8. 8.

χαλκοῦς, *ῆ, οῦν,* contr. from *χάλκεος, ᾱ, ον* (*χαλκός, bronze*), *made of bronze, bronze,* i. 2. 16.

χάλκωμα, *ατος, τό* (*χαλκός*), *anything made of bronze, bronze vessel,* iv. 1. 8.

Χάλος, *ου, ὁ, Chalus,* a river of Syria flowing through Chalybon, the modern Haleb or Aleppo, i. 4. 9. It is now called the Kuweik or Nahr-el-Haleb.

Χάλυβες, *ων, οἱ, Chalybes* or *Chalybeans,* a warlike people dwelling on the confines of Armenia and Pontus, iv. 4. 18, 5. 34, 6. 5, 7. 15. On account of the skill of the Chalybes in iron-working the Greeks gave the name *χάλυψ* to steel; hence the Eng. word *chalybeate.*

χαράδρᾱ, *ᾱς, ἡ, bed of a stream, ravine, gorge,* iii. 4. 1, iv. 2. 3.

χαρίεις, *ίεσσα, ίεν* (*χάρις*), *graceful, pretty*; of a plan, *clever,* iii. 5. 12.

χαρίζομαι, *χαριοῦμαι, ἐχαρισάμην, κεχάρισμαι* (*χάρις*), *give pleasure, show kindness, do a favor, gratify, oblige,* abs., i. 9. 24, with dat., ii.

3. 19; with dat. of person and acc. of thing, *ἐὰν αὐτῷ ταῦτα χαρίσωνται, if they do him this favor, if they gratify him in this*, ii. 1. 10.

χάρις, *ιτος*, *ἡ* (√*χαρ* in *χαίρω*, *rejoice*), *the quality of pleasing, grace, favor*; also *graciousness, kindness*, then the sense of kindness shown, *gratitude, thanks*; *χάριν εἰδέναι, feel gratitude, be grateful*, with dat., i. 4. 15; with same meaning, *χάριν ἔχειν*, with dat., ii. 5. 14; *χάριν ἀποδιδόναι, return a favor*, i. 4. 15. (Cf. Eng. *eucharist*.)

Χαρμάνδη, *ης*, *ἡ*, *Charmande*, a city on the right bank of the Euphrates in the Arabian desert, now Hit, i. 5. 10.

χειμών, *ῶνος*, *ὁ* (cf. *χιών*), *storm, bad weather*, iv. 1. 15; *cold, winter*, i. 7. 6.

χείρ, *χειρός*, *ἡ*, *hand*, i. 5. 15, 8. 3, 24, 9. 13, 10. 1, ii. 3. 11, 5. 33, iii. 1. 17, 2. 33; *wrist, arm*, i. 5. 8; *εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν τινι, to put oneself in another's power*, i. 2. 26; for *εἰς χεῖρας δέχεσθαι, ἰέναι*, see the verbs; for *οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες*, see *βάλλω*. (Cf. Eng. *chirography, chiromancy, chiragra*, and *surgeon*, from *chirurgeon*.)

Χειρίσοφος, *ου*, *ὁ*, *Cheirisophus*, a Spartan general, joined Cyrus's expedition at Issus with 700 hoplites (i. 4. 3). After the death of Cyrus he was one of the messengers that carried to Ariaeus the offer of the throne made by the Greeks (ii. 1. 5, 2. 1). He warmly seconded Xenophon's efforts to arouse the Greeks after the murder of their generals (iii. 1. 45, 2. 1), and led the van of the army on the retreat (iii. 2. 37, iv. 1. 6). His relations with Xenophon were friendly (cf. iv. 5. 34) except in one instance (iv. 6. 3). Cheirisophus was made commander-in-chief later in the expedition, and died at Calpe.

χειροπληθής, *ές* (*χείρ*, *πίμπλημι*), *filling the hand, as large as the hand can hold*, iii. 3. 17.

χειροποίητος, *ον* (*χείρ*, *ποιέω*), *made by the hand, artificial*, of a road, distinguishing it from a mere trail, iv. 3. 3.

Χερρόνησος, *ου*, *ἡ* (*χέρρος*, older form *χέρσος*, *mainland*, *νῆσος*), *peninsula*; in the Anab. the term is always applied to *the Thracian Chersonese*, or *Chersonēsus*, a peninsula of the Thracian territory extending along the Hellespont opposite the Troad, i. 1. 9, 3. 4, ii. 6. 2.

χήν, *χηνός*, *ὁ*, *ἡ* (akin to Sanskrit *hańsa*, *goose*, Lat. *anser*, German *Gans*, Eng. *goose, gander*), *goose*, i. 9. 26.

χίλιοι, *αι*, *α*, *a thousand*, i. 2. 3, iii. 4. 2.

χῖλός, *οῦ*, *ὁ*, *grass cut for fodder, fodder, forage*, i. 5. 7, 6. 1, 9. 27, iv. 5. 25; *ξηρὸς χῖλός, hay*, iv. 5. 33.

χίμαιρα, *ας*, *ἡ*, *she-goat*, iii. 2. 12. (Cf. Eng. *chimaera*.)

Χῖος, *ᾱ*, *ον* (*Χίος*, *ἡ*, *Chios*), *Chian, of Chios*; as subst., *ὁ Χῖος, Chian, native of Chios*, iv. 1. 28, 6. 20. Chios, now Scio, is an island lying in the Aegaean Sea off the Ionian coast of Asia Minor. In ancient times it was famous for its wine and figs, and it still has a valuable export trade in mastic, oranges, and lemons.

χιτών, *ῶνος*, *ὁ* (probably of Semitic origin), *undergarment, chiton, tunic*. This garment was made of a single piece of cloth of the desired length, and of a width sufficient to give a loose fit about the chest. This was folded down the middle, and the fold formed one side of the garment, the two edges the other. These edges might be sewed together, but very often they were left open, and the opening was concealed by arrang-

ing the garment properly and securing it in the right position by a belt. The upper edges, about the neck and shoulders, were fastened by pins or buttons. An armhole was cut in the folded side; on the other the arm projected between the open edges. The length of the chiton was regulated by the belt. For convenience in rapid walking and running it was drawn somewhat above the knees, and the surplus was allowed to hang over the belt blouse-fashion; hence the use of the word **εὔζωνος** = *agile*. The material of the chiton was usually wool. Its color was generally white, but purple ones were sometimes worn by the Greek soldiers, i. 2. 8. The Persians used fabrics of various colors, often adorned with embroidery, i. 5. 8. The above description applies to the tunic worn by men. That of women was longer, reaching to the ankles, was frequently made of linen, and might be provided with sleeves. For further description, see Gulick's *Life of the Ancient Greeks*, pp. 154–163. Fig. 58 shows a common type of the chiton.

FIG. 58.

χιών, όνος, ἡ (cf. Lat. *hiems, winter*), *snow*, iv. 4. 8, 11, 5. 15, 18, 36.

χοῖνιξ, ικος, ἡ, *choenix*, a Greek dry measure, the forty-eighth part of a medimnus (**μέδιμνος**), i. 5. 6. It contained a little more than a quart, U. S. measure.

χοίρειος, ᾱ, ον (**χοῖρος**, *young pig, porker*), *of a pig*; **κρέᾱ χοίρεια**, *pork*, iv. 5. 31.

χορεύω, χορεύσω, etc. (**χορός**, *dance, chorus*, whence Eng. *chorus, choir*), *dance*, iv. 7. 16.

χόρτος, ου, ὁ (orig. *enclosure, feeding-place*; akin to Lat. *hortus, garden*, Eng. *garden, yard*), *grass, forage*, i. 5. 5, ii. 4. 11; **χόρτος κοῦφος**, *hay*, i. 5. 10.

χράομαι, χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι, ἐχρήσθην, *use, make use of, employ*, with dat., which may be omitted when easily supplied from the context, i. 4. 8, 9. 5, 19, ii. 1. 12, 5. 13, 6. 27, iii. 2. 21, 4. 17, 5. 10, iv. 4. 13; with two dats., one of the person or thing used, the other of the purpose for which it is used, ii. 1. 6, iv. 2. 28, cf. i. 5. 3, where the first dat. is not expressed; with dat. and **εἰς** with acc., iii. 4. 17; with dat. of person and acc. (neuter) of the purpose, i. 3. 18, iii. 1. 40, iv. 8. 11, cf. ii. 1. 14, where the dat. is omitted; *have the use* or *advantage of, avail oneself of, enjoy, possess*, i. 3. 5, 9. 17, iv. 1. 22; *treat as, find*, with two dats., i. 4. 15, ii. 5. 11, 6. 13, 25, iii. 1. 30, iv. 6. 3.

χρή, really a noun, **ἐστί** being understood; hence impf. **χρῆν** for **χρὴ ἦν**; sometimes, however, the word was treated as an impers. verb, hence the impf. with augment, **ἐχρῆν**; *it is advisable, it is necessary, one must*, with acc. and inf., i. 4. 14, ii. 5. 27, iii. 2. 24; with inf. alone, the acc. being supplied in thought, i. 3. 11, ii. 1. 2, 16, 2. 2, 4.

χρῄζω, chiefly pres. in Attic, rarely impf., *need, desire, wish*, abs. or with inf., i. 3. 20, 8. 22, ii. 5. 2, iii. 4. 41, iv. 8. 5.

χρῆμα, ατος, τό (**χράομαι**), *that which is used, thing, article*; generally in pl., **χρήματα**, *things, goods, belongings, property, possessions*, i. 3. 14. 4. 8, 9. 12, 19, 10. 3, 18, ii. 4. 27, iii. 1. 37; esp. *money*, i. 1. 9, 2. 27, 4. 12, 9. 17, ii. 6. 5, 6, 17.

χρῆναι, see **χρή**.

χρῆσθαι, see *χράομαι.*

χρήσιμος, η, ον and **ος, ον** (*χράομαι*), *useful, serviceable, of use,* abs. or with dat., i. 6. 1, ii. 5. 23, 6. 14, iii. 4. 17, iv. 2. 28.

χρηστός, ή, όν, verbal of *χράομαι, useful, serviceable*; of persons, *good, worthy, trusty,* i. 8. 1. (Cf. Eng. *chrestomathy.*)

χρῖμα, ατος, τό (*χρίω*), *unguent, ointment, salve,* iv. 4. 13.

χρίω, χρίσω, ἔχρισα, κέχρῖμαι, rub, anoint; mid., *anoint oneself,* iv. 4. 12. (Hence, Eng. *chrism, Christ.*)

χρόνος, ου, ὁ, *time, period, while,* i. 3. 2, 8. 8, 22, 9. 11, ii. 1. 17, 3. 22, iii. 4. 12, 36, iv. 2. 7; **πολλοῦ χρόνου,** *in a long while,* i. 9. 25. (Cf. Eng. *chronic, chronometer, synchronous, anachronism.*)

χρῡσίον, ου, τό (dim. of *χρῡσός*), *gold made into coins* or *ornaments,* esp. *gold coin, money,* i. 1. 9, 7. 18.

χρῡσός, οῦ, ὁ, *gold,* iii. 1. 19. (Cf. Eng. *chrysalis, chrysanthemum, chrysolite.*)

χρῡσοῦς, ῆ, οῦν, contracted from *χρύσεος, ᾱ, ον* (*χρῡσός*), *of gold, golden,* i. 2. 10, 27, 7. 7, 10. 12; of a sword, perhaps *gilded* or *gold-mounted,* i. 2. 27, 8. 29.

χρῡσοχάλῑνος, ον (*χρῡσός, χαλῑνός, bridle*), *with gold-mounted bridle,* i. 2. 27.

χώρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ, *place,* esp. in military language, *the place assigned to a soldier or officer, position, post, station,* i. 5. 17, 8. 17, iii. 4. 33, iv. 8. 15; *region, country, land, territory,* i. 1. 11, 2. 1, 7. 4, 9. 19, ii. 1. 11, 2. 13, 4. 21, iii. 4. 31, 5. 14, iv. 3. 1, 5. 34, 8. 22. (Cf. Eng. *chorography.*)

χωρέω, *χωρήσω* and *χωρήσομαι, ἐχώρησα, κεχώρηκα, -κεχώρημαι, -εχωρήθην* (*χῶρος, place,* cf. *χώρᾱ*), *make room, give place,* hence *move, move forward, advance,* i. 10. 13, ii. 4. 10, iv. 2. 15, 7. 11; of missiles, *penetrate,* with **διά** and gen., iv. 2. 28; of measures, *hold, contain,* i. 5. 6.

χωρίον, ου, τό (dim. of *χῶρος, place*), *place, spot,* iv. 1. 16, 2. 28, 5. 15, 7. 20, so of a city or a palace, i. 4. 6, iii. 4. 24; esp. a place that is by nature easily defensible or is artificially fortified, *strong position, stronghold, fortress,* frequently with such adjs. as *ἐχυρός, ἰσχῡρός, ὀχυρός,* i. 2. 24, ii. 5. 7, iv. 2. 1, 9, 12, 7. 2, 11, 8. 2; *space,* iii. 3. 9, iv. 7. 6, 8. 12.

χωρίς, adv., *separately, apart,* iii. 5. 17; as adv. with gen., *apart from,* i. 4. 13.

Ψ

Ψάρος, ου, ὁ, *Psarus,* a river rising in southern Cappadocia, on the slopes of the Anti-Taurus range, and flowing southwest into the Mediterranean, i. 4. 1. It is now called the Sihun.

ψέλιον, ου, τό, *bracelet, armlet,* i. 2. 27, 5. 8, 8. 29. Such ornaments were worn by the Persian nobles. See Fig. 59.

FIG. 59.

ψευδής, ές (*ψεύδω*), *false, untrue,* ii. 4. 24.

ψεῦδος, ους, τό (*ψεύδω*), *falsehood, untruth, lie, deceit,* ii. 6. 26.

ψεύδω, ψεύσω, ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην, *deceive, beguile,* rare in active; pass., *be deceived, make a mistake,* abs. or with cogn. acc., i. 8. 11, ii. 2. 13, iii. 2. 31; mid., *ψεύδομαι, be deceitful, lie, play false, deceive,* abs. or with acc. of person, i. 3. 5, 10, 9. 7, ii. 6. 22; with acc. of thing, *state falsely,*

fabricate, ii. 6. 28. (Cf. Eng. *pseudo-*, *pseudonym.*)

ψηφίζομαι, ψηφιοῦμαι, ἐψηφισάμην, ἐψήφισμαι, ἐψηφίσθην (ψῆφος, ἡ, *pebble* used in voting), *cast a vote*, *vote*, *vote upon*, *resolve*, *decree*, with inf., acc. and inf., or acc. alone, i. 4. 15, iii. 2. 31, 33. The verb is used even when the voting is done by show of hands; cf. the last example.

ψῑλός, ή, όν, *bare*, *uncovered*; but as Orientals never appear bareheaded, ψιλήν in i. 8. 6 must be rendered *unprotected*, *i. e.* wearing the tiara only; similarly, *without defensive armor*, *light-armed*, of Cretan archers, iii. 3. 7; of a country, *bare*, *barren*, i. 5. 5.

ψῑλόω, ψῑλώσω, ἐψίλωσα, ἐψίλωμαι, ἐψῑλώθην (ψῑλός), *lay bare*, *strip*; pass., with gen., *be cleared of*, *be left* or *evacuated by*, i. 10. 13, iv. 3. 27.

ψοφέω, ἐψόφησα (ψόφος), *make a sound*, *clang*, *ring*, iv. 3. 29.

ψόφος, ου, ὁ, *noise*, iv. 2. 4.

ψῡχή, ῆς, ἡ (ψύχω, *blow*, *make cool*), *breath of life*, hence *soul*, *spirit*, iii. 1. 23, 42; *life*, iii. 2. 20. (Cf. *Psyche*, *psychic*, *psychology*, *metempsychosis.*)

ψῦχος, ους, τό (ψύχω, *blow*, *make cool*), *cold*, iv. 5. 12; pl., *rigors of winter*, iii. 1. 23.

Ω

ὦ, interj., *O*, frequently expressed with the voc., i. 4. 6, 6. 6, 7. 5, ii. 1. 10, 5. 39, iii. 1. 45, 2. 34, iv. 6. 14, etc.; it is best left untranslated in English; with the voc. of proper names it is omitted only in abrupt, excited address, as i. 5. 16.

ᾧ, see ὅς.

ὧδε, adv. (ὅδε), *in this way*, *thus*, *in the following manner*, *as follows*, i. 1. 6, 5. 10, ii. 2. 4, 5. 15, iii. 1. 27, iv. 6. 7; **ὧδέ πως,** *about as follows*, i. 7. 9.

ᾠδή, ῆς, ἡ (ᾄδω), *song*, iv. 3. 27. (Cf. Eng. *ode*, *parody*, *prosody.*)

ᾤετο, ᾠήθησαν, see οἴομαι.

ὠθέω, ὤσω and ὠθήσω (poetic), ἔωσα, ἔωσμαι, ἐώσθην, *push*, *thrust*, *shove*; mid., *thrust out of one's way*, *push out*, with acc. and ἐκ with gen., iii. 4. 48.

ὠμοβόειος, ᾱ, ον (ὠμός, βοῦς), *of raw oxhide*, *covered with rawhide*, iv. 7. 22, 26.

ὠμός, ή, όν (perhaps akin to Lat. *amārus*, *bitter*), *raw*, *uncooked*, iv. 8. 14; of character, *rough*, *bearish*, *savage*, ii. 6. 12.

ὤμοσαν, see ὄμνῡμι.

ὤν, see εἰμί.

ὠνέομαι, ὠνήσομαι, ἐώνημαι, ἐωνήθην (aor. mid. supplied by ἐπριάμην, see πρίασθαι), *buy*, *purchase*, ii. 3. 27; with gen. of price, iii. 1. 20. (Cf. ὦνος, *price.*)

ὤνιος, ᾱ, ον (ὦνος, *price*), *purchaseable*, *for sale*; τὰ ὤνια, *articles for sale*, *wares*, i. 2. 18.

Ὦπις, ιδος, ἡ, *Opis*, a city of Assyria on the Physcus river near its confluence with the Tigris, ii. 4. 25. (Ruins at Manjur.)

ὥρᾱ, ᾱς, ἡ (akin to Eng. *year*; cf. Lat. *hora*, Eng. *hour*, *horoscope*), *time of the year*, *season*, i. 4. 10, ii. 3. 13; *time of day*, *time*, *hour*, iii. 5. 18, iv. 8. 21; *right time*, *proper time*, *the time*, with inf., or dat. and inf.; the copula ἐστί is often omitted: i. 3. 11, 12, iii. 2. 32, 4. 34, 40, iv. 6. 7, 16.

ὡραῖος, ᾱ, ον (ὥρᾱ), *in season*, *at the right time*; of persons, *in the bloom of youth*, ii. 6. 28.

ὡς, rel. adv. (ὅς), *as*, with verbs, i. 2. 15 (verb understood), 4. 7, 6. 6, 10. 6, ii. 1. 4, 12, 3. 21, 4. 23, 6. 7, etc.; with nouns and adjs., i. 1. 2, 3. 15, 4. 15, ii. 1. 10, 5. 3, 6. 29, iii. 3. 2;

with a circumstantial ptc. *ὡς* "implies that the statement of the participle is the thought of some one mentioned in the context" (Goodell, § 593 c), *as, on the ground that, with the assumption that, thinking that, alleging that*, i. 1. 10, 11, 2. 1, 19, 10. 8, ii. 1. 10, 6. 4, 20, iii. 3. 7, iv. 2. 5, 3. 2; with fut. ptc., *with the intention of, expecting to*, i. 1. 3, 11, 4. 7, 8. 10, ii. 3. 21, 29, 4. 25, iii. 1. 17, 2. 11, iv. 3. 3, 4. 18; similarly with gen. abs., i. 1. 6, 11, 3. 6, 8, 10. 6, ii. 1. 21, iii. 4. 3. *ὡς* appears with a number of prepositional phrases, to which it imparts in many cases an idea of pretence or mere appearance similar to its force with ptcs.; it may be rendered *as, as if, apparently, ostensibly*, i. 2. 1, 8. 23, 9. 23, ii. 3. 27, 5. 30, iv. 3. 11, 21, 3. 31; from this connection with preps. probably arose the use of *ὡς* as a preposition itself (for *ὡς πρός*), with persons only, with acc., i. 2. 5, ii. 3. 29, 6. 1. With numerals *ὡς* has the force of *about, approximately*, i. 2. 4, 6. 4, 7. 15, 10. 4, ii. 2. 7, 5. 30, 6. 20, iv. 7. 16; cf. the phrase *ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολύ, for the most part, as a rule*, iii. 1. 42, 43, 4. 35. With adjs. and advs., *how*, iii. 1. 40, iv. 1. 20; esp. with various superl. expressions, as *ὡς μάλιστα, ὡς τάχιστα*, and the like, *as much as possible, as quickly as possible*, etc., i. 1. 6, 3. 11, 14, 6. 3, ii. 2. 12, 4. 24, 5. 14, iii. 1. 38, iv. 6. 1, cf. i. 8. 11, ii. 6. 2, 8. Note the phrase *ὡς συνελόντι εἰπεῖν, to put it briefly, in a word*, iii. 1. 38.

As conj., in ind. questions, *how*, i. 6. 5, ii. 3. 11; introducing ind. discourse, like *ὅτι, that*, with indic. or opt., i. 1. 3, 3. 15, 4. 8, 8. 18, ii. 1. 14, 4. 19, 24, 6. 8, 10, iii. 2. 11; causal, *as, since, because*, ii. 4. 17; of time, *as, when*, i. 1. 4, 5. 12, 8. 18, 25, iii. 4. 44, iv. 3. 27, 7. 11, 12; similarly *ὡς τάχιστα, as soon as*, iv. 3. 9, cf. iv. 6. 15, where it is used with a ptc., if the reading is right; of purpose, *that, in order that*, with subj. and opt., i. 1. 5, 3. 14, 6. 9, 9. 21, ii. 4. 17, iii. 1. 18, 35, 47; with *ἄν* and subj., ii. 5. 16; denoting result, *so as, so that*, like *ὥστε*, with inf., ii. 3. 10, 6. 9, iii. 5. 7; esp. of an intended result, i. 5. 10, 8. 10, 15, iii. 4. 25, iv. 3. 29, 6. 13; *βραχύτερα ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι, too short a distance to reach*, iii. 3. 7; see note on the passage.

ὡς, adv., also written *ὥς* (*ὅς*), *thus, so*, "an epic survival in prose"; *οὐδ' ὡς, not even under those circumstances*, i. 8. 21, iii. 2. 23.

ὡσαύτως, adv. (*ὡς, αὐτός*), *in this same manner, in like manner, likewise*, iii. 2. 23, iv. 7. 13.

ὥσθ', see *ὥστε*.

ὧσιν, see *εἰμί*.

ὥσπερ, rel. adv. (*ὡς*), *as, like, just as*, with subst., i. 5. 3, 8. 8, 29, ii. 4. 10, 6. 29, iv. 5. 32; with verbs *as, just as*, sometimes answering to a preceding or following *οὕτω*, i. 3. 9, 4. 12, 5. 8, 10. 10, ii. 4. 13, 6. 12, 26, iii. 1. 29, iv. 1. 19; denoting mere appearance, *as it seemed, as it were, apparently*, i. 3. 16, iv. 3. 5, 11; with gen. or acc. abs., *as if*, i. 3. 16, iii. 1. 14, iv. 8. 21.

ὥστε, conj. (*ὅς, τε*), *and so, so that, so as*, often preceded by a demonstrative, as *τοσοῦτος, οὕτω*; with ind., *and so, so that*, often standing at the beginning of a clause or sentence, when it may sometimes be rendered *hence, therefore*, i. 1. 8, 3. 10, 7. 7, 19, 9. 28, 10. 19, ii. 3. 25, 4. 2, 5, iii. 3. 11, 5. 13, iv. 1. 16; with pot. opt., ii. 5. 15; with inf., of result, sometimes of an intended result, *so that, so as to*, i. 4. 8, 6. 2, 6, ii. 2. 17, 3. 3, 11, 4. 26, 5. 15, iii. 3. 14, 5. 11, iv. 2. 27; with acc. and inf., i. 1. 5, 5. 13, ii. 4. 27, iii. 4.

22, iv. 7. 17; *on condition that*, ii. 6. 6.

ὦτα, see *οὖς*.

ὥτε, ἐφ' ᾧτε, see *ἐπί*.

ὠτειλή, *ῆς, ἡ, wound, scar*, i. 9. 6.

ὠτίς, *ίδος, ἡ* (prob. from *οὖς*, because of the long ear-feathers of the bird), *bustard*, i. 5. 2, 3.

ὤφελε, see *ὀφείλω*.

ὠφελέω, ὠφελήσω, etc. (*ὄφελος*), *be of use to, help, benefit, aid, assist*, with acc., i. 1. 9, 3. 4, 6, iii. 3. 18.

ὠφέλιμος, *ον* (*ὠφελέω*), *of use* or *advantage, useful, serviceable, to the purpose*, i. 6. 2, iv. 1. 23.

THE END

1252	1365	1173	1130	105
949	952, 959	1175-1177	1181	106
1586	1449-50	1120	1220, 8	907
1563, 7	981	1471, 2	974	160
1261	955, 1	1560	998	911
1487	1588	1403	1253, 2	152
1179	1060	1109	1431	126
1372	926	1037	1219, 2	121
	1848		1094, 5	121
	1069		899, 2	125

1225	1574	1184	1212, 3(b)
899, 4	1060	1206, 1	1519
1563, 1	1192	1058	
965	1152	1153	
1532	1255	1206, 2	
	1165	895, 2	

1. ἀἰσθάνομαι
2. ἀκούω
3. ἀποδείκνυμι
4. ἀποκτείνω
5. ἀποδίδωμι
6. ἀπόλλυμι
7. ἀτιμάζω
8. ἀφικνέομαι
9. ἀναβαίνω
10. διαβαίνω
11. καταβαίνω
12. βούλομαι
13. ἐθέλω
14. βουλεύω
15. ἐπιβουλεύω
16. γυνή p.60
17. δύναμαι
18. δύναμις
19. ἐλπίς p.48
20. ἐξέτασις
21. ἐξελαύνω
22. ἔρχομαι
23. εὐδαίμων
24. ἡγέομαι
25. ἵστημι
26. ἀφίστημι
27. καθίστημι
28. κινδυνεύω
29. λανθάνω
30. λείπω
31. μένω
32. νομίζω
33. οὖν
34. παῖς
35. παρασκευάζω
36. πείθω

1.50 indefinite; D & Grant

1. until is expressed by ἕως, ἕστε ἄν, μέχρι, πρίν. πρίν also means until, but only after a negative.

2. When until refers to definite time, it takes the indic., usually aorist. ἔμειναν, ἕως ἀφίκοντο, waited until they arrived.

3. When until refers to indef. time a) ἄν and the subj. is used after a primary tense, and (b) the optative without ἄν after secondary tenses. The aorist is the tense commonly used.

(a) μαχοῦμαι μέχρι ἄν τὴν πόλιν ἕλω
I shall fight until I take the city.

(b) ἔμειναν ἕως ἔλθοι.
They waited until he should come.

37. πειράω try, infin.
38. πλήρης full of, gen.
39. πορεύομαι advance
40. πούς foot
41. πρίν until
42. τάττω arrange
43. τελευτάω bring to an end, finish
44. τελευτή end
45. ὑπισχνέομαι promise
46. ὑποπτεύω suspect
47. χρῆμα money
48. ἀποχωρέω retreat
49. ἐπιχωρέω advance

Page 100 in grammar Page 101 in Gram

Aor { fraes. / Simpler. / Past. } all moods

Κοραξ one of 17 boys to choose money for learning bad and bad ways.

ϵ + a = η
a + ϵ = ā
a + o = ω

ὡ ὧ ϛ τϵ = ὥστε that
ὅτι ἅ, ὡς, ὅ ὅτι ὡς = in order that

ἧ ν κ ἰ ο ς
c y c k ϵ

Reason

Page 35

1,
3,
5, Σ
6,
Σ

Page 88

3
9
11
26
37
42
46
49

Σ

ΩΩ δϵ direction toward Swarthy Phil

— ∇ϵν " from which

Age of Pericles
Parthenon. Olympian games
[illegible] erected Ictinus
[illegible] Phidias (gold & ivory statues)